Fourth Edition

FORENSIC SCIENCE

The Basics

Kathy Mirakovits • Jay A. Siegel

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Fourth Edition

FORENSIC SCIENCE

the basics

Jay A. Siegel
Emeritus Professor of Forensic Science
Michigan State University
East Lansing, Michigan, USA

Kathy Mirakovits
Adjunct Professor, Kalamazoo Valley
Community College,
Kalamazoo, Michigan, USA

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

Fourth edition published 2022
by CRC Press
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

and by CRC Press
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

© 2022 Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

First edition published by CRC Press 2006
Second edition published by CRC Press 2010
Third edition published by CRC Press 2016

CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

Reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, but the author and publisher cannot assume responsibility for the validity of all materials or the consequences of their use. The authors and publishers have attempted to trace the copyright holders of all material reproduced in this publication and apologize to copyright holders if permission to publish in this form has not been obtained. If any copyright material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so we may rectify in any future reprint.

Except as permitted under U.S. Copyright Law, no part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, access www.copyright.com or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC), 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. For works that are not available on CCC please contact mpkbookspermissions@tandf.co.uk

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

ISBN: 978-0-367-25149-9 (hbk)
ISBN: 978-1-032-02140-9 (pbk)
ISBN: 978-0-429-31875-7 (ebk)

Typeset in New Century Schoolbook
by SPi Global, India

Access the companion website: www.routledge.com/cw/mirakovits

In Memoriam: Jay A. Siegel, PhD

The field of forensic science has lost one of its most engaging and influential members, **Dr. Jay A. Siegel**, who died at home in his sleep on September 25, 2017, in Mt. Arlington, NJ, due to heart failure at the age of 71.

Dr. Siegel earned a PhD in Chemistry from George Washington University in 1975. After working for several years as a forensic chemist with the Virginia Bureau of Forensic Sciences, Dr. Siegel spent more than 35 years as a forensic science educator and researcher at Metropolitan State College in Denver, CO, Michigan State University (Professor Emeritus) in East Lansing, MI, and Indiana University Purdue University in Indianapolis, IN, where he also served as a department chair. He also served as a visiting professor at universities in Australia and China. Through his role as a forensic science educator, he mentored hundreds of practicing forensic scientists, many of whom are leaders in the field today.

Dr. Siegel was a leading national expert and author in the field of forensic science and was a highly sought-after consultant, participating in several high-profile cases throughout the country. He was a member of the National Academy of Sciences Committee that authored *Strengthening Forensic Science in the United States: A Path Forward,* an objective external review of forensic science that continues to shape reforms in the field. He authored numerous publications in forensic science journals and several textbooks in the field and served as editor of the *Encyclopedia of Forensic Sciences.* He was a member of the *Journal of Forensic Sciences* Editorial Board for 25 years (1983–2008) and served as a commissioner on the Forensic Science Education Programs Accreditation Commission (FEPAC) from 2003 through 2008.

For his work as both a forensic scientist and educator, Dr. Siegel was honored with several prestigious awards in the field. In 2005, he was named the Paul L. Kirk Award Winner, the highest honor given by the Criminalistics Section of the American Academy of Forensic Sciences (AAFS). In 2009, he was honored as a Distinguished Fellow by the AAFS and was also presented with the Distinguished Alumni Award from George Washington University. In 2012, he was honored with the Distinguished Service Award from the Midwest Association of Forensic Scientists.

For all his awards and accomplishments in the field, Dr. Siegel was most proud of the students he had taught and mentored. He was an excellent professor who did his best to give his students opportunities and was proud of the accomplishments of his former students who seized those opportunities. No visit to his laboratory was ever complete without him speaking glowingly of his graduates and showing off his bulletin board full of business cards of former students practicing in the field. Dr. Siegel will be sorely missed by those whose lives he touched.

Christopher Bommarito, MS, author of this article, was a student of and close friend to Dr. Siegel.

Contents

Preface xix
Authors xxi
Contributors xxiii

PART I: Forensic Science and Investigation

Chapter 1: Introduction to Forensic Science 3
- *Learning Objectives*
- *Chapter Outline*
- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is Forensic Science?*
- *History and Development of Forensic Science*
- *What Is a Forensic Scientist?*
- *The United States Forensic Science System*
- *Other Forensic Science Systems*
- *The Organization of Forensic Science Laboratories*
- *Examination of the Forensic Sciences by Outside Organizations*
- *After the National Research Council's NAS Report*
- *Scientific Working Groups Reform and Support Quality Assurance*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*

Chapter 2: Crime Scene Investigation 41
- *Learning Objectives*
- *Chapter Outline*
- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Crime Scene as Recent History*
- *Crime Scene Investigation Process*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

Chapter 3: Nature of Evidence 67
- *Learning Objectives*
- *Chapter Outline*
- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Classification of Evidence*
- *Addressing the NAS Report Concerns About Pattern Evidence*
- *Positive and Negative Controls*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

PART II: Tools of the Trade

Chapter 4: Separating Complex Mixtures **91**

Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Physical Separation of Mixtures
Solid-Phase Extractions
Chromatography
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web

Chapter 5: Light and Matter **121**

Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
What Is Light?
Light as a Wave: The Electromagnetic Spectrum
Properties of Waves
Energy of Light: The Photon
Interactions of Light Energy and Matter
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web

Chapter 6: Microscopy **143**

Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Lens: How Objects Are Magnified
Compound Microscope
Modifications of the Compound Microscope
Electron Microscopy
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web

Chapter 7: Detector Dogs as Forensic Tools **169**
Susan Stejskal

Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Scenarios
Forensic Tool: Canine Olfaction
Back to the Cases
Utility in Forensics
Summary

Test Yourself
References
On the Web

Chapter 8: Digital Evidence, Computer Forensics and Investigation 189
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Challenges
Physical Versus Virtual Crimes
Computer Crime
Criminal Law
Computer Crime Investigation
Wireless and Handheld Devices
Digital Cell Phone and Handheld Investigation
Computer Forensics
Legal Proceedings
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Case Studies

Chapter 9: Forensic Engineering 211
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Engineering Profession
Forensic Engineer
Forensic Engineering Case Studies
Accident Reconstruction
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Case Study

PART III: Patterns and Impressions

Chapter 10: Fingerprints and Other Impressions.......................................247
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction: A Note on Pattern Evidence
Quest for a Reliable Method of Personal Identification
Origin of Fingerprints
Anatomy of Fingerprints
Detection and Visualization of Fingerprints
Comparison of Fingerprints
Comparison of Single Fingerprints
Automated Fingerprint Identification Systems (AFIS and IAFIS)
Common Questions about Fingerprints
Other Impressions: Footwear and Tire Treads

Summary
Test Yourself
References
On the Web
Case Studies

Chapter 11: Questioned Documents 287
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
What is a Questioned Document?
Questioned Document Examiner
Handwriting Analysis
Erasures, Obliterations and Alterations
Typewriters, Photocopiers and Digital Devices
Paper Examination
Ink Examinations
Physical Matches on Torn Paper
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Case Studies

Chapter 12: Firearms and Toolmarks..317
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Firearms Identification
Anatomy of a Live Round (Cartridge)
Examination of Firearms Evidence
Digital Imaging Systems for Ammunition
Distance-of-Fire Determinations
Toolmarks
Summary
Test Yourself
References
On the Web
Case Studies

PART IV: Forensic Biology

Chapter 13: Forensic Pathology... 351
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
How to Become a Forensic Pathologist
Investigation of Death: Coroners and Medical Examiners
Death Investigation Process
Postmortem Interval: Time of Death
Exhumations
Teamwork Approach

Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Case Study

Chapter 14: Anthropology and Odontology 373
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Forensic Taphonomy
Human Skeleton
Individualization of Human Bone
Collection of Bones
Forensic Odontology
Summary
Try It Yourself: Pelvic Bones and Age
Test Yourself
Further Reading
Helpful Websites
Forensic Taphonomy
Body Farm links
Forensic Odontology
Case Studies

Chapter 15: Forensic Palynology and Entomology 401
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Forensic Palynology: Pollen and Spores as Evidence
Becoming a Forensic Palynologist or Forensic Entomologist
Forensic Entomology—Finding the PMI: The Life Cycle of the Blowfly
Decomposition of a Body after Death
Factors that Affect PMI
Entomological Investigation and Evidence Collection
Summary
Test Yourself
References
On the Web
Forensic Palynology
Using pollen to track drugs
Forensic Entomology
Case Studies

Chapter 16: Serology 423
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Blood
Analysis of Blood
Confirmatory Tests for Blood
Species Determination
Other Biological Fluids and Stains
Bloodstain Pattern Analysis

Summary
Trigonometry Calculation for Locating a Bloodstain
Try It Yourself: The Genetics of Blood Typing
Test Yourself
Further Reading
Useful Websites
Agglutination & blood typing
Blood Testing
BPA
Case Study

Chapter 17: DNA Typing.. 455
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
What Is DNA?
Collection and Preservation of DNA Evidence
History of DNA Typing
Current Method of DNA Typing: STRs
Mitochondrial DNA
CODIS
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Case Studies

Chapter 18: Hair.. 485
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
What Is Hair?
Hair Growth
Hair Color
Structure of Human Hair
Human versus Nonhuman Hairs
Hair Treatment and Damage
Comparison of Human Hairs
What Can Be Determined from the Structure of Hair?
DNA Analysis of Hair
Hair as a Source of Drugs
Summary
Test Yourself
References
On the Web
Case Study

PART V: Forensic Chemistry

Chapter 19: Illicit Drugs.. 507
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction

Illicit Drugs
Control of Illicit Drugs in the United States
Marijuana
Preparation and Ingestion
Analysis of Illicit Drugs
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Case Study

Chapter 20: Forensic Toxicology 533
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Forensic Toxicology
Becoming a Forensic Toxicologist
Principles of Pharmacology
Pharmacology and Toxicology of Ethyl Alcohol
Absorption of Ethanol
Drunk Driving Laws
Field Sobriety Testing
Measurement of BAC
Driving Under the Influence of Drugs
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Driving Under Influence of Drugs
DRE Information
Case Study

Chapter 21: Fibers, Paints and Other Polymers 557
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
What is a Polymer?
Textile Fibers
Types of Fibers
Fiber Morphology
Analysis of Synthetic Fibers
Chemical Analysis of Fibers
Interpretation of Fiber Evidence
Paints and Other Coatings
Types of Paint
How Cars Are Painted
Collection of Paint Evidence
Analysis of Paint
Evidentiary Value of Paint
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Paint Analysis
Fiber Analysis
Case Studies

Chapter 22: Glass and Soil 585
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronym
Introduction
Glass
Glass as Forensic Evidence
Soil
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web
Glass
Soil Analysis
Case Studies

Chapter 23: Fires and Explosions 609
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
What is a Fire?
Extinguishing a Fire
Incendiary Fires
Investigation of a Fire
Role of Accelerants
Analysis of Fire Scene Evidence
Analysis of Accelerants
Explosions
Investigation of Bombing Scenes
Summary
Test Yourself
References
On the Web
You Tube Arson Fire Videos
Fire Statistical Sources
Case Study

PART VI: Additional Forensic Science Topics

Chapter 24: Presentation of Forensic Evidence in Court........ 641
Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
Admissibility of Evidence
Forensic Laboratories: Accreditation, Certification and Laboratory Reports
Expert Testimony
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web

Chapter 25: Forensic Psychology 663
Stephanie Scott-Snyder

Learning Objectives
Chapter Outline
Mini Glossary
Acronyms
Introduction
What Is Forensic Psychology?
Behavioral Evidence Analysis: The Truth About Profiling
Treatment and Evaluation of Offenders
Research
Summary
Test Yourself
Further Reading
On the Web

Index 685

Preface

The fourth edition of *Forensic Science: The Basics* updates the work done by various commissions and committees to address the issues raised in the National Academy of Sciences 2009 report, "Strengthening Forensic Science in the United States: A Path Forward". The National Commission on Forensic Sciences, formed in 2013, worked toward promoting validity and cohesiveness in the forensic sciences and criminal justice systems until it was disbanded in 2017. Currently the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) and its Organization of Scientific Area Committees (OSAC) are striving to involve stakeholders in discussions to recommend policy changes throughout the various forensic science disciplines.

This edition continues the tradition of previous editions of *The Basics* in maintaining a high-quality introductory text that introduces a broad range of forensic science topics. Similar to successful previous editions of this book, the fourth edition continues to adhere to the authors' basic philosophy about teaching forensic science: build upon students' knowledge of the natural and physical sciences and introduce them to the applications of science to the justice system. The book takes students through the basic concepts of what makes forensic science a unique blend of criminal justice and science, introducing them to crime scene investigation and the criminal justice system from the crime to the court. It still contains basic foundations in the tools of forensic science, including separation sciences, spectroscopy and microscopy. Then, this foundation is used to teach students how to apply scientific concepts and methods to analyze evidence. The areas of forensic biology and chemistry are covered in detail as well as the pattern evidence types such as fingerprints, firearms, toolmarks and questioned documents.

Updates, changes and additions have been made to the fourth edition without changing the basic structure and philosophy of forensic science. Revisions to Chapter 1 on reform efforts are included after the NAS report recommendations. The present-day questioning of the validity of pattern evidence in the courtroom is addressed in Chapter 3, Nature of Evidence. Many of the chapters have a new section at the end of the chapter called "Case Study(s)". The Case Study section presents a synopsis of a criminal case or cases containing the type of forensic evidence discussed in that chapter. Another addition to content can be found in Chapter 15, formerly Forensic Entomology, which now includes a section on forensic palynology, the application of the study of pollen and spores to civil and criminal incidents. Chapter 15 is now titled Forensic Palynology and Entomology.

Chapter 25, Forensic Psychology, is a unique new chapter that has been added to the book. Forensic psychology and its role in criminal investigations have generated a great deal of interest, partly due to media emphasis on crimes that involve psychological issues. This chapter gives students an overview of the how psychology and the law mesh in the criminal justice system. Law enforcement officers often encounter persons whose mental processes control their criminal behavior. A forensic psychologist can assist by imparting a greater understanding of mental issues that drive criminal. Stephanie Scott-Snyder has provided court-mandated therapy to offenders, conducted risk assessments, worked closely with law enforcement, and provided crisis intervention to victims of violent crime. She is an adjunct faculty member at a New York City metro area university, where she teaches

Forensic Psychology. She is the author of *Introduction to Forensic Psychology: Essentials for Law Enforcement* and *When Women Offend: Crime and the Female Perpetrator*. Prior to her work within the criminal justice system, Scott-Snyder was a Writer-Producer and Creative Director for network television, with specific expertise in true crime projects.

One of the most exciting developments in the evolution of *Forensic Science: The Basics* is our treatment of laboratory exercises. The fourth edition chapters continue to flow nicely with the laboratory manual written by Kathy Mirakovits and Gina Londino. Kathy is one of the authors of *Forensic Science: The Basics* and a retired high school forensic science teacher, who currently teaches forensic science at the community college level. Gina is a lecturer in forensic science at Indiana University–Purdue University Indianapolis. She teaches basic lecture and laboratory courses in forensic science as well as forensic microscopy. The book can be used by itself or in conjunction with *Forensic Science: The Basics*. It is comprehensive in nature, with exercises in many of the areas covered by this book as well as lists of materials and how to obtain them. In many cases, the laboratory exercises in the manual do not require expensive instrumentation or laboratory equipment. Look for it when you decide to adopt *Forensic Science: The Basics*, it is titled, *The Basics of Investigating Forensic Science* and is currently in its 2nd Edition.

The authors have designed this book to meet and exceed your wants and needs in teaching an introductory class in forensic science. The book is comprehensive enough to be used in a one or two introductory course in forensic science. Each chapter is complete and stands on its own, and they can be used in any order that is comfortable to the teacher. Hopefully you will enjoy using the book and your students will see it as a primary resource. Any suggestions, comments or questions are welcomed and encouraged.

Authors

Jay A. Siegel held a PhD in analytical chemistry from the George Washington University, Washington, DC and received its Distinguished Alumni Scholar award in 2009. He worked as a forensic chemist with the Virginia Bureau of Forensic Sciences for three years, analyzing illicit drugs, fire residues, paints and fibers. He then spent 25 years as professor and director of the Forensic Science Program in the School of Criminal Justice at Michigan State University. In 2004, he went to Indiana University–Purdue University Indianapolis (IUPUI) as founder and director of the Forensic and Investigative Sciences Program in the School of Science. In 2008, he was named the chair of the Department of Chemistry and Chemical Biology. He retired from IUPUI in 2012. Dr. Siegel was the coauthor of *Fundamentals of Forensic Science, 3rd Edition* (Elsevier), the coeditor of *Encyclopedia of Forensic Sciences, 2nd Edition* (Elsevier), the coauthor of *Forensic Science: A Beginner's Guide, 3rd Edition* and the coeditor of *Forensic Science Policy & Management: An International Journal*. He testified over 200 times in federal and military courts in seven states. He was named distinguished fellow of the American Academy of Forensic Sciences in 2009.

Kathy Mirakovits is a retired high school teacher of forensic science and physics. She currently teaches forensic science and physics at Kalamazoo Valley Community College in Kalamazoo, Michigan. Kathy holds an MS in science education from Western Michigan University, a bachelor's degree in science education from Miami University and has completed over 15 graduate hours in forensic science. She has taught general science, physical science, chemistry, biology, earth science and physics at the high school and two-year college level for a total of 30 years. Additionally, Kathy conducts workshops across the United States for teachers who wish to learn the application of forensic science in a school curriculum. Information on those workshops can be found at her website: www.forensicscience-ed.com. She has developed numerous forensic science educational products for a national science supplier and has led workshops at the National Science Teachers Association (NSTA) in forensic science.

Kathy has served as president of the Michigan Chapter of the American Association of Physics Teachers (AAPT) and as a curriculum writer for the Michigan Department of Education. Currently, Kathy is on the Board of Directors for the Michigan Science Teachers Association. She has received the RadioShack Science Teaching Award and has been a two-time state finalist for the Presidential Award for Excellence in Math and Science Teaching (PAEMST).

Contributors

Christopher A. Puckett is the Director of the Special Investigation Unit for Avalon (formerly DIGITS), with offices in Ohio, Florida, Nebraska, Michigan and throughout New York. During his 21-year Law Enforcement career as an Investigator with the New York State Police, Christopher investigated crime scenes and motor vehicle collisions. Christopher was assigned to the Forensic Identification Unit for the State Police, where he processed major crime scenes for physical evidence. Christopher was also assigned to the Bureau of Criminal Investigation, where he investigated major crimes that were reported to the Division of State Police. Christopher provided investigation, research and reconstruction of thousands of motor vehicle collisions involving property damage, physical injury and death for numerous clients and agencies in the private sector. These investigations included the use of applicable theories in collision.

Stephanie Scott-Snyder is a forensic mental health clinician. She has provided court-mandated therapy to offenders, conducted risk assessments, worked closely with law enforcement and provided crisis intervention to victims of violent crime. She is an adjunct faculty member at a New York City metro area university, where she teaches Forensic Psychology. Scott-Snyder graduated first in her class from Fairleigh Dickinson University with a Master of Arts degree in Forensic Psychology and is an associate member of the American Psychological Association, a lifetime member of Psi Chi the International Honor Society in Psychology, a clinical member of both ATSA (The Association for the Treatment of Sexual Abusers) and New Jersey ATSA and is clinically certified as a forensic counselor (CCFC) by the National Association of Forensic Counselors (NAFC). She is the author of *Introduction to Forensic Psychology: Essentials for Law Enforcement* and *When Women Offend: Crime and the Female Perpetrator.* Prior to her work within the criminal justice system, Scott-Snyder was a Writer-Producer and Creative Director for network television, with specific expertise in true crime projects.

Susan Stejskal, LVT, PhD, has been a law enforcement K9 handler for almost 20 years, Stejskal has been recognized by the courts as a subject matter expert in canine olfaction and the training and deployment of detector canines. She has developed training in a variety of forensic areas for detectives, investigators, crime scene personnel and canine handlers from law enforcement agencies around the United States and Canada. Stejskal serves as a regional evaluator for the United States Police Canine Association (USPCA), a member of the U.S. National Institute of Science and Technology's Organization of Scientific Area Forensic Committee Dogs and Sensor Subcommittee, and has been a past member of the Michigan Mortuary Operations Response Team. She is an avid presenter at national, regional and state conferences throughout the United States and has provided hands on training for numerous police units across the United States and Canada. Sue is the author of several research articles, book chapters and books including "Death, Decomposition, and Detector Dogs: from science to scene" (CRC Press, copyright 2012) and "Bugs, Beds and Breakfasts" (CDCS, copyright 2019).

PART I

Forensic Science and Investigation

CRIME SCENE

1

Introduction to Forensic Science

CRIME SCENE - DO NOT ENTER

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define forensic science and describe its various areas
2. To be able to describe the major events in the history of forensic science and relate them to modern day practice
3. To be able to describe the duties of a forensic scientist
4. To be able to describe the organization of federal, state and local forensic science laboratories
5. To be able to diagram and describe the flow of evidence through a crime laboratory
6. To be able to describe the qualifications for becoming a forensic scientist
7. To be able to get information on careers in forensic science

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What is Forensic Science?*
    - *Depth and Breadth of Forensic Science*
    - *Forensic Science Versus Crime Scene Investigation*
    - *Criminalistics*
    - *Pathology*
    - *Anthropology*
    - *Odontology*
    - *Engineering*
    - *Entomology*
    - *Behavioral Forensic Sciences*
    - *Digital Evidence*
- *History and Development of Forensic Science*
- *What Is a Forensic Scientist?*
    - *So You Want to Be a Forensic Scientist*
    - *For More Information on Careers in Forensic Science*
- *The United States Forensic Science System*
- *Federal Forensic Science Laboratories*
    - *The Justice Department*
    - *The FBI Laboratory*
    - *The Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA)*
    - *The Department of the Treasury*
    - *The Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (BATF)*
    - *The Secret Service (USSS)*
    - *The Internal Revenue Service (IRS)*
    - *The Department of the Interior*
    - *The United States Postal Service*
    - *State and Local Forensic Science Systems*
    - *Private Forensic Science Laboratories*
- *Other Forensic Science Systems*
    - *The United Kingdom*
    - *Australia*
    - *Columbia*
- *The Organization of Forensic Science Laboratories*
- *Examination of the Forensic Sciences by Outside Organizations*
    - *Recommendation 1*
    - *Recommendation 2*
    - *Recommendation 3*
    - *Recommendation 4*
    - *Recommendation 5*
    - *Recommendation 6*
    - *Recommendation 7*
    - *Recommendation 8*
    - *Recommendation 9*
    - *Recommendation 10*
    - *Recommendation 11*
    - *Recommendation 12*
    - *Recommendation 13*
- *After the National Research Council's NAS Report*
- *Scientific Working Groups Reform and Support Quality Assurance*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
    - *Multiple Choice Questions*
    - *Match Each of the Following Terms with Its Definition*

  - *Fill in the Blanks*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*

Mini Glossary

Behavioral forensic sciences: Applications of psychology and psychiatry to criminal matters including competency, interrogation and crime scene reconstruction.

Computer forensics: Applications of computer science to criminal and civil offenses including the use of computers to commit crimes and the use of computers to help solve crimes.

Criminalistics: Analysis of physical evidence generated by a crime scene. Also, the pattern science areas of forensic evidence including fingerprints, firearms and questioned documents.

Forensic anthropology: Analysis of skeletal remains recovered from crime scenes for the purposes of developing a biological profile and identification of the remains.

Forensic engineering: Application of engineering principles in forensic cases including failure analysis and traffic accident reconstruction.

Forensic entomology: Study of insect activity and cadavers assist in the determination of time of death (postmortem interval) and for other forensic purposes.

Forensic odontology: Synonymous with forensic dentistry. Analysis of dentition for the purposes of human identification and injuries. Also, analysis of bite marks.

Forensic pathology: Determination of the cause and manner of death in cases of unattended or suspicious death.

Forensic science: Application of science to matters involving the public or applications of science to legal matters.

Forensic scientist: A scientist who analyzes evidence generated by criminal or civil offenses and who can offer expert testimony concerning the evidence in court of law.

Lay witness: A witness to a crime who testifies what she/he saw or heard. Lay witnesses do not normally give opinions. They are contrasted with expert witnesses who do have to render opinions at times.

Acronyms

AAFS	American Academy of Forensic Sciences
BATF	Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives
CSI	Crime Scene Investigation or Investigator
DEA	Drug Enforcement Administration
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
FEPAC	Forensic Science Education Program Accreditation Commission
FSS	Forensic Science Service (United Kingdom)

FWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
IRS	Internal Revenue Service
NAS	National Academy of Sciences
NCFS	National Commission on Forensic Science
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
USPS	U.S. Postal Service
USSS	United States Secret Service

Introduction

Forensic science, forensic computing, forensic art, forensic accounting, forensic psychology. Forensic is the buzzword of the twenty-first century. It seems like there is forensic everything. More than 150 colleges and universities in the United States and more than 300 in the United Kingdom now offer some type of forensic science degree program. Movies, books and TV shows that are about forensic science abound. Everyone is familiar with the site of a white robed scientist peering into a microscope or staring at a computer screen and uttering some dramatic statement about evidence from a crime: the hair came from the victim, the DNA matches the suspect, the white powder is cocaine. At this writing, the TV show *CSI* is still going strong. Why the sudden popularity? After all, forensic science has been practiced in one form or another for over 5000 years. An important reason is that recent serious cases have occurred in the United States and elsewhere where forensic science has played a major role. Jon Benet Ramsey, OJ Simpson, Theodore Bundy and the Green River Killer have all exploded onto the headlines in recent years and forensic science has played an important part for all of them. People all over the world are fascinated by crime, its investigation and its solution. People enjoy using clues to solve puzzles and problems. They are concerned with violent crime and want to do something about it. All of this feeds into the popularity of forensic science. The major impact of this field seems to have been on women. Today, more than 80% of all students in forensic science education programs in the United Sates are women, and this trend seems to be the same in other countries such as Australia and England. In some ways, the booming interest in forensic science is not a new phenomenon. For more than a century, people have been fascinated by the exploits of Sherlock Holmes, the clever detective penned by Arthur Conan Doyle. In just the past few years, there have been several movies and TV series about the great detective. As far back as the early days of TV and the movies, there have been shows about crime, policing, lawyers and criminals. In recent years, the focus has shifted to forensic science. Although some people decry *CSI* and the other shows about forensic science, the fact is that they have raised the public conscience about science and its role in crime solving. Forensic science provides a unique way of teaching students the principles of science as well as problem-solving, critical thinking, oral and written skills, and the role of bias in the practice of science.

Is the portrayal of forensic science and scientists in the media accurate? What do forensic scientists really do? How is forensic science presented in court and what effect does it have on juries as they deliberate the fate of the accused? This is what this book is all about. You will learn about the various branches of forensic science, how crime labs are organized, how evidence is collected and analyzed and how scientific testimony is presented in court.

What Is Forensic Science?

In the ancient Roman Empire, the Senate used to conduct its meetings in a public place called the *forum*. Anyone who wanted to could listen to the great debates of the day and watch government in action. The key here is that the forum was a place where everyone could come and observe. The term forum is Latin for public and forensic is derived from that term. “Forensic science” implies, then, something about science and public. In the broadest sense then, forensic science can be defined as the methods of science applied to public matters. By this definition, forensic science does not necessarily have to do with crime; however, the term has evolved in modern times to mean the application of science to court or criminal matters. Most forensic scientists work in the criminal area of the justice system, although civil cases are an important component of forensic science. In this book, focus will be on the applications of science to criminal matters.

Depth and Breadth of Forensic Science

If forensic science means science applied to criminal and civil law, one may wonder which of the sciences are forensic sciences? The answer may surprise you. Any science can be a forensic science if it has some application to justice. Think about how many different areas of science could potentially be brought to bear on solving crimes. Many medical, physical and biological sciences have forensic applications, as do math, business practices, sociology and psychology. The list is nearly endless. The most common areas of science that have forensic applications are described later. This will give you an idea of the “big tent” that is forensic science.

Forensic Science Versus Crime Scene Investigation

There is a good deal of confusion about the relationship between forensic science and crime scene investigation/investigators (CSI). Part of this may be due to TV shows such as *CSI*, which blur the distinctions between them by depicting the same people who collect evidence from a crime scene as the ones who analyze the evidence in the crime lab. In reality, these are different functions, but with some overlap. CSIs are usually, but not always, police officers who are trained and then assigned to the crime scene unit. They learn how to recognize evidence, protect it from contamination, collect it properly, thoroughly document its location and condition and maintain a chain of custody to help authenticate the evidence when it gets to court. Some CSIs have a science background but many do not. Some CSIs are also trained in some procedures that could be considered forensic science because they involve preliminary (or complete) analysis of some types of evidence. Examples include preliminary analysis of suspected illicit drugs (so-called “field tests”), collection and analysis of fingerprints, and documentation and analysis of bloodstain patterns. To the extent that they analyze this evidence and reach scientific conclusions and then testify in court as experts, these investigators would be considered to be forensic scientists and this part of their job would be forensic science. This type of activity among CSIs is relatively rare but still common enough to bear mention. Under normal circumstances, the job of CSIs stops when the evidence is delivered to the laboratory where the actual work of the forensic scientist begins. Most people in the forensic science field do not consider crime scene investigation activities to be part of forensic science in spite of the fact that many crime scene units are administratively within the crime lab structure and that increasingly forensic scientists are going to some crime scenes to help with investigations.

Criminalistics

The term criminalistics was first coined by Paul Kirk, considered by many to be the father of forensic science in the United States. In some quarters, criminalistics is synonymous with forensic science and the two terms are often used interchangeably. In California, forensic scientists are often officially called criminalists. The term can be used to describe the comparative forensic sciences such as fingerprints, questioned documents, firearms and toolmarks. Most commonly, however, criminalistics refers to the myriad of types of physical evidence generated by crime scenes. This includes illicit drugs, blood and DNA, fire and explosive residues, hairs and fibers, glass and soil particles, paints and plastics, fingerprints, bullets and much more.

A Bit of History: Paul Kirk

Paul Leland Kirk was a chemist and forensic scientist. He held a PhD in biochemistry from the University of California at Berkeley. He started his career at Berkeley in the biochemistry department and became interested in forensic science when authorities asked him to examine evidence from a rape case. Because of his interest and experience in microscopy, he was asked to head up the new Berkeley criminology program in 1937. He subsequently worked as a microscopist on the Manhattan Project where he helped isolate fissionable material for making bombs. In 1946, he returned to Berkeley and headed up the technical criminology major and served as head of the criminalistics department. Kirk is best known professionally for his work in the Sam Sheppard murder case. In this case, Dr. Sam Sheppard was falsely accused of murdering his wife. He escaped from custody and helped the police find the "one armed" man who committed the crime. This case was the basis for *The Fugitive* book, TV show and movie. Kirk examined bloodstain patterns from the scene and his subsequent report and testimony at the second trial helped free Sheppard. Today, Kirk's legacy lives on in the Paul Kirk award, the highest award given by the "Criminalistics" section of the American Academy of Forensic Sciences (AAFS).

Pathology

When some people think of forensic science, they envision dead bodies and autopsies. Some people got this idea originally from watching the TV show *Quincy*. The part of forensic science that is concerned with determining how and why people die is called forensic pathology. The forensic pathologist is a medical doctor who first specialized in pathology and then in forensic pathology. Forensic pathologists determine the cause and manner of death in cases where someone dies under suspicious or other circumstances as prescribed by state law. Many forensic pathologists work for state or local medical examiners or coroners. These are appointed or elected officials who must decide when a medicolegal autopsy (an autopsy in a case of suspicious death or homicide) is needed and they must sign death certificates that indicate the cause and manner of death. Medical examiners and coroners do not usually perform the autopsies themselves. They employ forensic pathologists to do this. Forensic pathology is discussed in detail in Chapter 13. If you would like to learn more about medicolegal autopsies, check out http://www.nlm.nih.gov/exhibition/visibleproofs/education/medical/index.html.

Anthropology

A Bit of History: An Early Case in Forensic Anthropology

In 1849, a Boston physician, Dr. George Parkman was murdered. The suspect in the case was John Webster, a professor of chemistry at Harvard, who was in considerable debt to Dr. Parkman. The *modus operandi* of the crime was that Professor Webster incinerated Dr. Parkman. When investigators searched through the ashes, they found some remains of skull and some badly damaged remains of dentures. The prosecution retained several experts in osteology and physiology who examined the bone fragments. They determined that they belonged to a white male, about 50–60 years of age, about 6 ft tall. Dr. Parkman was 60 years old and 5 ft 11 in. tall. In addition, experts matched the dentures to Dr. Parkman (Berryman, 13 *Crime Lab Digest*, 1986).

Forensic anthropologists work with skeletal remains. They identify bones as being human or animal. If animal, they determine the species. If human, they determine from what part of the body the bone originated. If they have the right bones, gender can be determined. Sometimes, age can be approximated and racial characteristics determined, and even socio-economic status may be estimated. If there is an injury to a skeleton or major bones, the anthropologist can help determine the cause of the injury or even death. Forensic anthropologists do other things besides identifying bones. They also work closely with skulls. It is possible to literally build a face onto a skull using clay and wooden or plastic pegs of various sizes. Using charts that give average tissue depth figures for various parts of a face, an anthropologist constructs a face and then makes judgments as to eye, nose and mouth characteristics. Facial reconstruction can be useful in helping to identify a missing person from the face built up on the recovered skull. It is also possible for a forensic anthropologist to superimpose a skull onto a picture of a face to see if they are one and the same person. This is not usually definitive but can be quite helpful in establishing the identity of a skull. The process of building a face on a skull and the process of superimposition of skulls and faces is now done nearly exclusively by computer, a much faster and more accurate process. Forensic anthropology is discussed in detail in Chapter 14.

Odontology

Odontology is a synonym for dentistry. You may be curious about how a dentist could be a forensic scientist. Actually, there are several applications of dentistry to forensic science. A few years ago in Pennsylvania, a burglar broke into a house and ransacked it for valuables while the owners were on vacation. During his foray, he got hungry and rooted through the refrigerator for something to eat. He found a hunk of Swiss cheese and took a bite. Later he was arrested, trying to fence (sell on the black market) the stolen merchandise. When the police investigated the home looking for clues that would tie him to the scene, they found the cheese. A forensic dentist made a cast of the bite mark in the cheese and matched it to an impression of the burglar's teeth.

The most famous case where bite marks were crucial evidence involved Theodore Bundy. He was suspected of killing more than 30 young women in his career as a serial killer. He operated first in Washington, Utah and Colorado, and then moved to Florida. During his last homicide, he bit his victim on her buttock after strangling her. A forensic dentist was able to match Bundy's teeth to this bite mark. He was executed in Florida for this murder in 1993.

Key Figures in Forensic Science: Ted Bundy

Ted Bundy was born in 1946 in Vermont in a home for unwed mothers. His father's identity was not conclusively determined. He was raised by his grandparents. He later moved to Washington State where he went to high school. Before he graduated from high school, he was a thief and shoplifter. In high school and early in college, he was quite introverted and had poor social skills. After graduation from high school, he went to the University of Washington and ultimately earned a degree in psychology. By all accounts, he was an honors student and well liked by his teachers. He subsequently began law school there but dropped out.

Some experts including those who knew Bundy believe that he started his killing spree during his early teens. At one point, he told is attorney that he attempted his first kidnapping when he was in college. The earliest murders that could conclusively be attributed to him occurred when he was 27. He started a string of brutal killings of young, white women in Washington and Oregon, and then Utah and Colorado. He was caught in Colorado but escaped twice from jail and fled to Florida where he resumed his rampage after more than 2 years. His last murders took place in Tallahassee at a sorority house. It was these murders for which he was tried and ultimately executed. Some of the crucial evidence in these murders was a bite mark that he left on the buttock of one of his victims. At his trial, a forensic odontologist testified that he matched the bite mark to a cast made of Bundy's teeth. Several jurors told the media after the trial that this was the crucial piece of evidence against Bundy. This was the first instance in the United States where bite marks had been used as evidence in this fashion. It should be noted that, as Bundy's execution date neared, he tried to buy time or get his sentence commuted to life in prison by offering to tell families where the bodies of some of his victims were in exchange for their writing letters to the judge asking for clemency. Not one family agreed to this, and he was electrocuted in January of 1989.

Forensic odontologists can also be very helpful in identifying the remains of victims of mass disasters such as airplane crashes. Sometimes, bodies are so badly burned or dismembered the only way to identify the remains is by using dental records. Postmortem dental records are taken and matched to X-rays taken before death.

Finally, forensic dentists may play a role in child or other abuse cases. A forensic dentist can often tell if facial injuries received by a person were the result of falling down a flight of stairs or if they were due to blunt force injury such as striking the person with a fist or other object. Forensic odontology is covered in more detail in Chapter 14.

Engineering

Forensic engineers can be valuable in cases where something has gone wrong with a mechanical or structural entity or in cases of automobile crashes. A few years ago, a balcony collapsed in the lobby of a Hyatt hotel in Kansas City. Many people were on the balcony at the time watching a rock concert going on in the lobby, several stories below. Questions arose about why the balcony collapsed. Forensic engineers were called in to examine the structural remains of the balcony and the concrete that fell. They concluded that the construction of the balcony was faulty and contributed to its failure. Failure analysis is one of the major contributions that forensic engineers make to the justice system. Figure 1.1 shows the damage to the Hyatt hotel in Kansas City after the walkway collapse. When the World Trade Center buildings in New York City were destroyed by airplane crashes, forensic engineers were called in to investigate the disaster. The buildings were constructed to withstand such an impact, and the engineers were asked to determine why the structure failed.

The majority of the work of forensic engineers is in the investigation of traffic crashes. Accident reconstruction is used to determine speeds, directions of impact and who was driving the vehicle at the time of the crash. Insurance companies and police departments use forensic engineers quite extensively in traffic incident investigation. Forensic engineering is covered in more detail in Chapter 9.

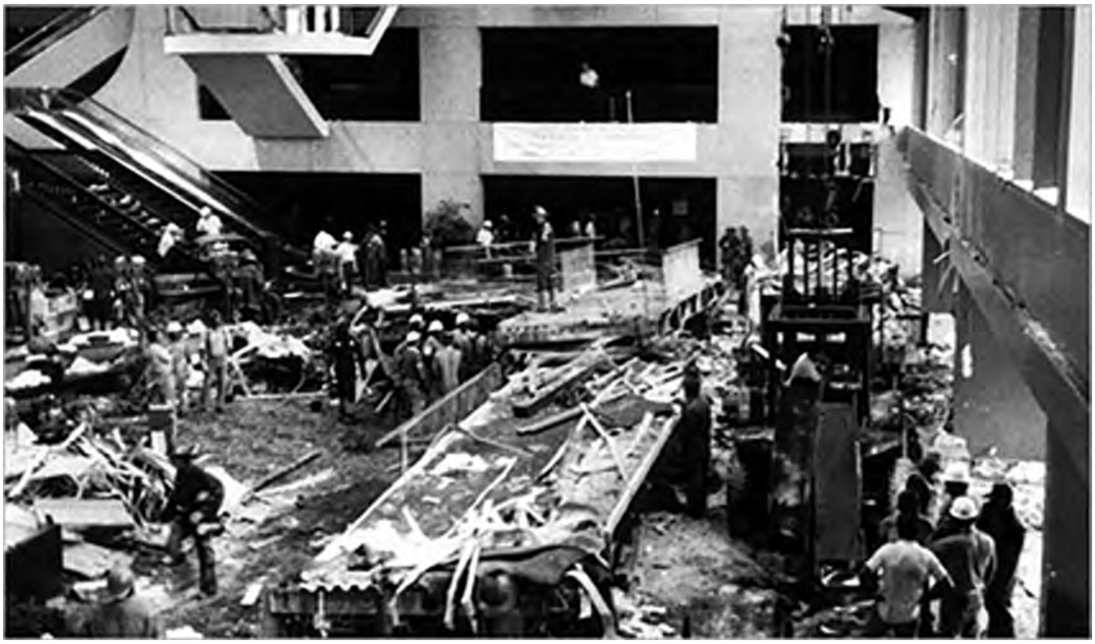


Figure 1.1 Wreckage of the collapsed Hyatt Regency Hotel in Kansas City. Associated Press file photo. With permission.

Entomology

When a person dies and the body is exposed to the elements, who gets there first? Not witnesses or detectives—it is flies, more specifically a species commonly called the blow fly. During the bombing of the Murrah Federal Building in Oklahoma City, bodies were buried in the tons of rubble from the collapsed building. Investigators literally followed the flies into the rubble and were able to locate some bodies this way. Female blow flies and other insects lay their eggs in decaying flesh. Different insects do this at different times. Other insects such as beetles and wasps will attack and feed off the insects and the eggs. Depending upon temperature and other environmental factors, this parade of visitors takes place at surprisingly consistent time intervals. By inspecting the corpse, forensic entomologists can give a pretty good estimate of the time since death whether the body has been there for many hours or several days.

In addition to the postmortem interval, there is other information that can be gained from studying insects feeding on a corpse. If a person has been poisoned, the flies and other insects will ingest some of the poison. A toxicologist can capture some of these critters, chop them up and extract the poison and identify it. There are also cases where a person took cocaine and then died. Some of the maggots became abnormally large in size owing to their ingestion of the cocaine. Forensic entomology is covered in detail in Chapter 15.

Behavioral Forensic Sciences

Forensic psychiatry and psychology have been long contributors to the forensic sciences. As long as there has been crime, people have wrestled with the concept of responsibility. Our laws and those of most other countries have long had provisions for how people are treated who commit crimes and have diminished capacity. If a person is truly insane, can she be held responsible for committing a crime? Although the definitions vary as to what constitutes responsibility, insanity, etc., it falls to forensic psychiatrists and psychologists to examine defendants and render expert opinions to courts. There are real differences between psychiatrists and psychologists. Psychiatry is a medical specialty attained by medical doctors. Psychology is a behavioral science that does not involve medical training. Both have a role to play in determining responsibility for committing crimes.

Forensic psychologists play other roles in the criminal justice system. Some crime investigations include a component of psychological crime reconstruction. Serial killers and others who commit multiple crimes develop habits and traits that show up time after time as they commit crimes. Discovering and understanding these patterns can help lead investigators to the right suspect. Specially trained forensic psychologists can examine a series of crime scenes and develop some theories about the type of person who committed the crimes. It must be noted that this is much more art than science and can be fraught with uncertainties. A case in point is the Washington, DC, snipers case of October 2002. Forensic psychologists and criminal investigators initially determined that the killer was a young, white male. As it turned out, the killers were two black males. Such attempts to determine a profile of a serial killer can be very difficult even if there are many incidents to draw upon for data. Figure 1.2 is a drawing of the car that the killers used when killing their victims.

Psychological profiling has also been used in other criminal and civil areas. For example, the Transportation Security Administration (TSA) uses forensic

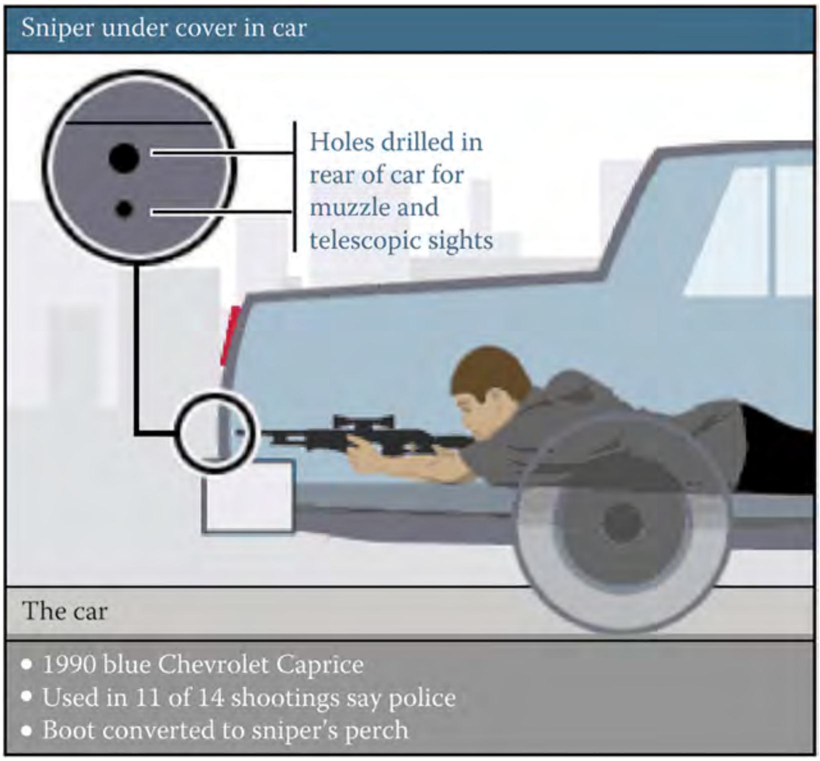

Sniper under cover in car
Holes drilled in rear of car for muzzle and telescopic sights
The car
• 1990 blue Chevrolet Caprice
• Used in 11 of 14 shootings say police
• Boot converted to sniper's perch

Figure 1.2 A drawing of a car outfitted so that a sniper can fire a weapon out of the back without being detected. This is similar to the setup used by the DC snipers.

psychologists to create profiles of what a likely airplane hijacker might look like or behave like so security checkpoint officials can subject people who meet the profile to additional screening. This has been going on for many years in one form or another. The Department of Homeland Security has a similar program for border guards to help spot potential terrorists.

There are other types of behavioral forensic scientists. Some study interrogation and investigation techniques such as polygraph instruments to determine their accuracy and usefulness in criminal and civil investigations. Others do research in developing new areas of interrogation and deception detection.

Digital Evidence

This area is sometimes called digital forensics as well as by other descriptors. Computers and other electronic devices such as cell phones have become very important in crime today, both as instruments of crime and in helping to solve crime. Many criminals and criminal enterprises conduct much of their business and keep their business records on computers. Sometimes, these records are highly encrypted. When caught, criminals often try to erase or physically destroy the data to avoid it being used against them. Computer forensic scientists and engineers study ways to recover data even from smashed hard disk drives. They also learn how to handle a computer found at a crime scene, especially one that is turned on. Computers are also used to steal identities from people as well as merchandize from companies. They can be used to disrupt entire networks and hack into otherwise secure, private websites. Computers can also be used to help solve crimes. They can track people, store incriminating data that can be used against criminals and help test and improve computer security. Digital forensics is one of the fastest growing areas of forensic science and will continue to grow in the future. Digital evidence is covered in more detail in Chapter 8.

History and Development of Forensic Science

When did people actually start doing forensic science? When was science first applied to answering questions about crimes or civil issues? Some baby boomers remember the *Quincy* TV show as the first time they saw forensic science in action. Twenty- and thirty-somethings think of the OJ Simpson case as the beginning of the use of science to solve real crimes. Today, many people think of *CSI* as the birth of forensic science. In reality, some aspects of forensic science have been at least recognized for centuries. An excellent outline of the history of forensic science in the form of a timeline has been published by Norah Rudin and Keith Inman and can be found on the web at http://www.forensicdna.com/Timeline020702.pdf. This organizes the history of forensic science by time. The earliest milestones in all areas are covered first and then gradually brought up to date. In this chapter, data from the timeline referenced earlier will be used to illustrate the history of forensic science highlighting three important examples: fingerprints, crime laboratories and blood analysis.

As in many other fields of knowledge, the Chinese were the first to discover the value of forensic science in identification. They were the first to use fingerprints to identify the owner of objects such as pottery, but, of course, had no formal classification process. In later centuries, a number of scientists, such as Marcello Malphighi, noted the presence of fingerprints and that they had interesting characteristics, but did not make any connection to personal identification. The first person to recognize that fingerprints could be classified into types (nine major kinds) was John Purkinji, a professor of anatomy. In 1880, a Scottish physician, Henry Faulds published an article in the journal *Nature* that suggested that the uniqueness of fingerprints could be used to identify someone. This was quickly followed in the 1890s by Frances Galton, who published the first book on fingerprints, Juan Vucetich, who developed a fingerprint classification system that is still used today in South America and Sir Edward Henry, who developed the fingerprint classification system that has been adopted in the United States and Europe.

The development of a forensic science infrastructure including crime labs is much more recent but quite interesting. For example, the first detective force was developed in France, *The Sûreté of Paris* in 1810 by Eugene Vidocq. In 1905, President Teddy Roosevelt established the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI), but the FBI lab was not established until 1932. The first crime laboratory was established in France in 1910 by Edmund Locard, a professor of forensic medicine. He later espoused his famous *Locard Exchange Principle*, which will be discussed in Chapter 3. In the United States, the first crime laboratory was established by August Vollmer, chief of police in Los Angeles. The first journal devoted to forensic science was begun by Calvin Goddard and his staff in 1930 at the newly formed Scientific Crime Detection Laboratory on the campus of Northwestern University. The journal was called *American Journal of Police Science*. It was later changed to the *Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science*. In 1937, Paul Kirk established the first university-based forensic science program at the

University of California at Berkeley. It was called *Technical Criminology*. Dr. Kirk is generally considered to be the father of modern forensic science in the United States. In 1950, AAFS was founded in Chicago. The AAFS is the largest forensic science society in the world and has members from many different countries. The Academy began publication of the *Journal of Forensic Sciences*, the professional journal of forensic science, shortly after AAFS was founded.

The realization that blood and body fluids had the potential for being important evidence in criminal investigation is an old idea. Bloody palm prints were used as evidence more than 1000 years ago in Rome. In 1853, Ludwig Teichmann developed the first of a number of crystalline tests still used today in the characterization of blood. His test detected the presence of hemoglobin. The German scientist, Schőnbein, developed the first presumptive test for blood. It takes advantage of the ability of hydrogen peroxide to react with hemoglobin. This was in 1863. In 1900, Karl Landsteiner made the major breakthroughs in the analysis of blood when he determined that there are actually four types of human blood. This became the basis for the ABO blood typing system and set the stage for all further work in serology. Landsteiner won the Nobel Prize for his work in 1930. Max Richter took Landsteiner's results and adapted them to blood stains, such as those found in crime scenes. Fifteen years later, Leone Lattes, a professor in Italy, developed a test to determine blood type in the ABO system and wrote a book about how to type dried stains. There were a number of advances over the next 30 years, culminating in the work of Sir Alec Jeffries of the University of Leicester. In 1984, Jeffries used a technique called *DNA Fingerprinting* to solve a double murder case in England, the first case solved by DNA analysis. The year before, Kary Mullis developed the *polymerase chain reaction* (PCR), which is the basis for all DNA typing in forensic cases today. He also won the Nobel Prize for his work.

What Is a Forensic Scientist?

Since practically any science can be a forensic science at times, many scientists can be forensic scientists. It is partially a matter of what they do in their jobs but also a matter of training and education. Forensic pathologists, for example, are educated as physicians and then trained as pathologists. After that, they can get specialized training in the forensic aspects of pathology and become certified as a forensic pathologist. This assures that they will have the proper education, training and licensure to practice their pathology on medicolegal cases. There is, however, a critical shortage of certified forensic pathologists in the United States and many medicolegal autopsies are performed by pathologists who have no forensic training. Are they forensic pathologists by virtue of their performing forensic autopsies? Most pathologists would agree that they are not. The situation is somewhat different for forensic anthropologists, odontologists and entomologists. There are a few forensic anthropology degrees but essentially none in odontology or entomology. There are certifications for all three that result in a designation as forensic anthropologist, odontologist or entomologist. The fact is, however, that most of what would be considered forensic cases in these areas are performed by noncertified but professional scientists. With increased attention being paid to these forensic sciences, questions of who should be performing forensic analysis becomes more important.

The majority of forensic scientists work in crime laboratories on the local, state or national level. Most forensic science laboratories are associated with law enforcement agencies; for example, Detroit Police Department Crime Lab, Indiana State Police Forensic Lab, FBI Lab. Although early in their history most of these laboratories were staffed by enlisted officers, special agents and the like, today, increasing numbers are civilians and have no police duties. One of the reasons for this is that, as forensic science has become more sophisticated and rigorous, it has been harder to find scientifically trained police officers. The other reason for this is that police departments want to put more officers on the street and are transferring analysts out of the lab to law enforcement duty.

In a crime laboratory, forensic scientists have two major duties; to analyze evidence and to testify in court. Forensic science laboratories behave in a reactive role. When a crime is committed, the crime scene unit collects the evidence and turns it over to the police investigators (sometimes detectives) who then bring it to the crime lab. In some cases, the crime scene investigation unit may turn it directly over to the lab. The lab scientists then analyze the evidence. They generally do not have much input into what evidence is collected, although there may be occasions where a forensic scientist asks the police to collect additional items of evidence for comparison or further analysis. In recent years, there has been an increasing trend toward having forensic scientists attend at least some crime scenes. For example, the Michigan State Police Forensic Science Division forms teams of forensic scientists that are called upon to help process serious crime scenes such as those in which there is a dead body. These scientists work along with the police CSI team to help process the scene and collect evidence.

The other major duty of forensic scientists is to testify in court. In the U.S. criminal justice system, there are basically two types of witnesses that testify in court, lay and expert witnesses. A lay witness is someone who is not an expert but has something to contribute to help the judge or jury determine the guilt or innocence of the accused. This person may have been an eyewitness to a crime, a victim or someone who knows something about the suspect or the crime. Such witnesses are supposed to testify only to what they have perceived with their five senses; touch, taste, smell, sight or hearing. They are not to give their opinions. It is the jury's job to make conclusions about the evidence presented to them, not the witness. For example, if a witness offers testimony that the driver of a car involved in a traffic accident was drunk, that conclusion would not be permitted in court. Being "drunk" in the motor vehicle code sense requires an expert finding of sufficient alcohol in the driver's body exceeding the legal limit.

The other type of witness in a court is an *expert witness*. This is a person who has knowledge and/or skills, derived from education and/or experience, which qualifies him or her to take a set of facts and reach conclusions not attainable by the average person (the judge or jury). Most people think of experts as being PhD scientists or doctors and although many of them are, other experts may derive their expertise from experience rather than formal education. For example, suppose that a man is driving down a mountainous road when his car's brakes fail. He crashes his car and dies. The police investigator would want to know why the brakes failed. Were they old and in need of repair? Were they installed improperly by a mechanic? Were they tampered with so that they would fail purposefully? Each of these explanations would call for a different response by the justice system. If someone were put on trial for killing the driver, it would not be prudent to have the jury go to the garage where the wrecked car was stored and have the jurors inspect the brakes to see what caused them to fail. Most jurors would not have the knowledge to inspect the brakes (the facts) and draw conclusions (the opinions) about how they failed. An expert brake mechanic should be called upon to inspect the brakes and determine the cause of their failure. This individual can give testimony as an expert about the failure of the brakes.

Whether a trial is by jury or judge, it is the judge's responsibility to decide if expert testimony is needed and who is qualified to offer it. Even if a forensic scientist has testified hundreds of times, he or she must be requalified as an expert for every trial. It is important that the expert explain complex scientific or technical principles in a language that a jury can understand. Forensic scientists must be equally competent in the trial part and the scientific part of their jobs. The legal aspects of forensic science are covered in more detail in Chapter 24.

So You Want to Be a Forensic Scientist

So now you know what forensic scientists do and where they work, but what does it take to be one? This depends upon what type of forensic scientist you want to be and what type of work you want to do. Becoming a forensic scientist requires both education and training. We shall discuss a few of the more common areas of forensic study. Table 1.1 is a chart that summarizes selected forensic science careers, optimal education and job markets.

Crime laboratory forensic scientist—The entry-level requirements for forensic scientists who work in the traditional areas of forensic science in a forensic science laboratory vary with the particular discipline. Forensic chemists analyze chemical evidence such as drugs, fibers, paints, explosives, fire residues, etc. They would be expected to have a strong background in chemistry and related sciences as well as microscopy. Forensic biologists are responsible for the analysis of blood, other body fluids and, particularly, DNA. They should have a strong background in the biological sciences including molecular biology, genetics and population statistics, as well as chemistry and biochemistry. For those forensic scientists who analyze pattern evidence such as fingerprints, firearms and toolmarks and questioned documents, educational requirements are somewhat less specific. Methods of analysis of these types of evidence have evolved over the years to include chemical, microscopic and even biological tests, and it is advisable that those who specialize in pattern evidence have some background in the natural and physical sciences and statistics.

Until the middle of the twentieth century, most people who would work in the natural or physical science areas of a forensic science laboratory pursued a bachelor of science degree in one of the chemical or biological sciences. Starting in the 1940s, some institutions began to offer forensic science classes of a general nature that students could take as electives. Later, some classes in specific areas such as questioned documents or firearms began to show up. Then, a few universities began to offer entire degrees in forensic science. These started as largely criminal justice programs with science, forensic science and law classes included. Often, an internship in a forensic science laboratory was also available. As the twentieth century wore on, forensic science became ever more popular, fueled by the rise of movies, books and TV shows that glamorized the field. Many universities and colleges offered forensic science degrees that ranged from very rigorous curricula dominated by chemistry, biology and math coursework to those that were little more than criminal justice with an internship thrown in. Presently, there are more than 100 forensic science degree programs in the United States and more than 300 in the United Kingdom! This situation put a great burden on students

TABLE 1.1
Types of Careers and Best Educational Preparation for Various Areas of Forensic Science

Career	Job Description	Optimal Education	Job Market
Crime lab forensic scientist	Analyze scientific evidence Testify in court	At least a BS degree in science MS degree preferred	Robust but spotty More than 2400 new forensic scientist needed
Forensic pathologist	Determine cause and manner of death in suspicious or unattended deaths	BS or BA degree +4 year-medical school degree + 3–4-year residency in pathology + 1–2-year residency in forensic pathology	Excellent. There is a nationwide, critical
Forensic anthropologist	Excavate crime scenes and analyze skeletal remains	PhD in physical or forensic anthropology	Most forensic anthropologists teach at colleges and do forensic anthropology on the side. Job market is small
Forensic odontologist	Analyze bite marks, facial injuries and identify human remains from dental work	BS or BA degree +4 years of dental school. No residencies in forensic dentistry	Few people make a living strictly on forensic dentistry. Most have conventional dental practices and do forensic work on the side. Job market is small
Forensic engineer	Reconstruct vehicle accidents, structural failure analysis, explosion analysis, electrical systems	PhD in engineering, lots of experience	Most forensic engineers are in private practice. Need for experienced engineers is pretty large
Computer forensic scientist	Determine role of computers in crime Reconstruct media devices and computers Track down criminals who hack into sites and steal identities	Experience is most important consideration. Bachelor's degree in relevant field is desirable	Some are in private practice. Many work for colleges as teachers/researchers and do forensic work on the side

who wanted to become forensic scientists and their academic advisors. With all of these forensic science degrees, how is one to decide which ones are rigorous and relevant enough to arm one with the credentials needed to work in a forensic science laboratory?

In the early part of the twenty-first century, the AAFS and the American Society of Crime Laboratory Directors (ASCLD) teamed up to create an accreditation process whereby colleges and universities could qualify for accredited status for their forensic science programs. The process started with the creation of a Technical Working Group on Forensic Science Education (TWGED), made up of more than 40 scientists and practitioners. They developed a set of curricular mandates and requirements that must be met for a program to be accredited. This, in turn, led to the formation of a Forensic Science Education Accreditation Commission (FEPAC), which contained five forensic science educators, five ASCLD members and one public member. They took the recommendations from TWGED and created an accreditation process for BS and MS degrees in forensic science. To become accredited by FEPAC, a forensic science degree program must meet rigorous curricular, infrastructure and staffing requirements. Emphasis is placed on courses in the natural, biological, physical and mathematical sciences, forensic science, law and criminal justice. Internships or other similar experiences are required. At the graduate level, a research experience is also required. Currently, approximately 30 BS and MS degree programs are accredited. A student who attends one of these programs is assured of a rigorous, science-based degree that will qualify them for employment in virtually every forensic science laboratory in the United States.

Information about FEPAC and its accreditation program as well as the educational requirements for accreditation and a current list of accredited degree programs can be found at the website of the AAFS: www.aafs.org.

- *Forensic pathologist*: To become a forensic pathologist, you first need to graduate from college with an excellent academic record. Then, you must graduate from medical school, requiring another 4 years. After medical school, you complete a residency in pathology that takes an additional 4 years. Finally, an additional residency in forensic pathology is recommended in order to become certified. This takes another year to complete.
- *Forensic anthropologist*: Few crime labs can afford to hire a forensic anthropologist full time. If you have another area of specialization such as trace evidence or DNA typing, you could get hired by a crime lab and then do anthropology cases as they come up. Another way of getting into the field is to obtain a PhD in physical or forensic anthropology and teach and do research at a university and then local crime labs would come to you for your services as needed.
- *Forensic odontologist*: This is similar to the route for a forensic pathologist except that you would complete dental school instead of medical school. There are few (if any) residencies in forensic odontology; therefore, you would have to work with police departments on an as-needed basis.
- *Forensic engineer*: This career requires education in engineering and the more the better. Usually, PhDs are in demand for forensic engineering. Most forensic engineers have their own private companies that are hired by prosecutors or defendants.
- *Computer forensic scientist*: There are few education programs that turn out computer forensic scientists. People who work in this area invariably have a strong interest and educational background in computer science and engineering. Their designation as computer forensic scientists arises from the types of cases that they work on or the type of research and teaching that they do.
- *Related careers*: Not everyone wants to be a forensic scientist in a laboratory. Some people decide that they want to work in a career that makes use of their strong science background and perhaps a forensic science education. There are a large number of related careers that one could consider. If you decide to be a lawyer, a science background can be very handy in the field of patent law. Many patents require practice and skill in reading and digesting sometimes complicated journal articles and books. These particular skills are highly developed in a science education. Environmental forensic science is becoming a major area of environmental science. Scientists work for environmental analytical laboratories determining pollution levels in air, water and soil and can help companies comply with environmental laws or, conversely, help government agencies track down and prosecute polluters. The pharmaceutical industry is very interested in people with a strong analytical chemistry background. Many forensic science educational programs teach the chemistry and analysis of illicit drugs; information that can be valuable in a career in pharmaceutical chemistry. The insurance industry is also interested in employing scientists including those with a forensic science background. They do

investigations of fires, explosions, traffic accidents, stolen automobiles and other property incidents to help determine if a crime was committed or a covered loss occurred.

For More Information on Careers in Forensic Science

The websites of any of the federal agencies listed in the section on the organization of Federal forensic science labs will provide information about how one joins that organization as a forensic scientist. In addition, one can check the website of the state or local law enforcement agency where crime labs are housed for information about obtaining employment.

General job and career information in forensic science can be found at the AAFS: www.aafs.org. The Academy is the major national organization for forensic scientists. There is a section on their website with job openings in the field. They also have written information on careers in forensic science.

Information about careers in particular areas of forensic science can be found on the websites of their association or society. A few of the more common ones are

- AAFS: www.aafs.org
- National Association of Medical Examiners: www.thename.org/
- Society of Forensic Toxicologists: www.soft-tox.org/
- American Society of Questioned Document Examiners: www.asqde.org/
- American Board of Forensic Anthropology: www.csuchico.edu/anth/ABFA/
- Forensic Entomology: www.forensic-entomology.com/
- Association of Firearm and Tool Mark Examiners: www.afte.org/index_forum.php
- American Society of Forensic Odontology: www.forensicdentistryonline.org/new_asfo/newasfo.htm

The United States Forensic Science System

There are approximately 400 forensic science laboratories in the United States. Most of them are public labs supported by a unit of federal, state or local government. Others are private labs. A laboratory may be full service, running tests in all of the major areas of forensic science. Others may conduct only the most common examinations of evidence such as drugs, firearms and fingerprints. The federal government and all 50 state governments administer some form of laboratory system or network.

Federal Forensic Science Laboratories

Most people are familiar with the FBI laboratory, and many people think that it is the only crime lab that is run by the U.S. government. The fact is that there are many federal laboratories, and they are located within several cabinet departments. Figure 1.3 is a diagram of how the federal forensic science labs are arranged.

The Justice Department

Most of the federal crime labs are located within the Department of Justice (DOJ). They are under the administrative control of the Attorney General of the United States.

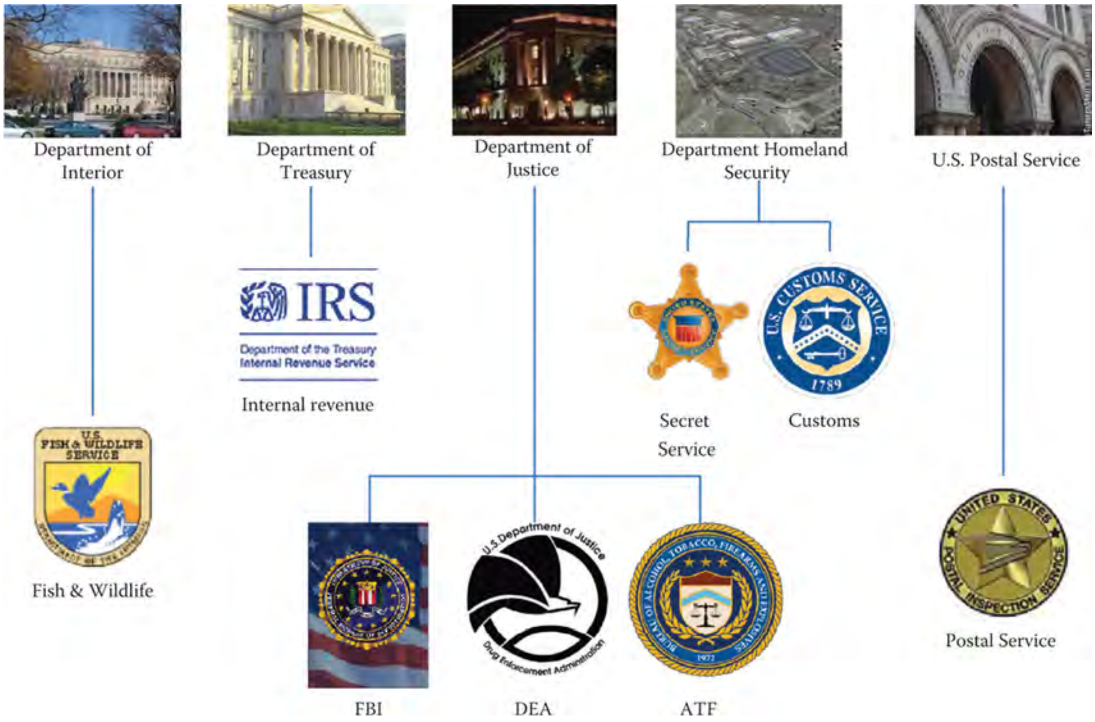

Department of Interior
Department of Treasury
Department of Justice
Department Homeland Security
U.S. Postal Service
IRS
Department of the Treasury Internal Revenue Service
Internal revenue
Secret Service
Customs
Fish & Wildlife
FBI
DEA
ATF
Postal Service

Figure 1.3 An organizational chart of the major federal forensic science laboratories.

The FBI Laboratory

The FBI (www.fbi.gov/) has its laboratory in Quantico Virginia. It is supported by the Forensic Science Research and Training Center (FSRTC), also located in Quantico. The FBI lab is one of the best-known and most prestigious forensic science laboratories in the world. The FBI lab supports the law enforcement and antiterrorism missions of the FBI by analyzing evidence generated by these activities. The FBI lab also processes evidence sent in by state and local law enforcement agencies or crime labs. Personnel from the FBI lab will also travel to foreign countries to help indigenous law enforcement agents solve crimes against U.S. citizens and those with global implications. Figure 1.4 is the FBI Training Center and Research Laboratory in Quantico, Virginia.

The Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA)

The DEA (www.usdoj.gov/dea/) has a network of regional laboratories located in Washington, DC, Miami, Chicago, Dallas, San Francisco and New York. They are supported by the Special Testing and Research Lab in Virginia. The DEA analyzes illicit drugs seized by DEA agents and by task forces made up of state or local drug agents working with the DEA. They also work with foreign countries to help eradicate illicit drugs or help prevent their importation into the United States. The DEA shares training facilities with the FBI in Quantico, Virginia.

The Department of the Treasury

Most people are surprised to find that the Department of the Treasury has crime labs, but in fact they have several. These labs have definite areas of responsibility.

Figure 1.4 The FBI Training Center and Research Laboratories, Quantico, Virginia.

The Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (BATF)

The BATF (www.atf.treas.gov) has a number of missions that are supported by a network of its three laboratories located in Beltsville, Maryland, Atlanta and San Francisco. As the name of the agency suggests, agents of the BATF are in charge of making sure that all alcohol produced in or imported into the United States has the proper tax stamp indicating that the correct taxes have been paid. This is a revenue function that explains why the agency used to be in the Department of the Treasury. Likewise, the BATF has similar functions in the tobacco industry to ensure that the proper taxes have been paid on cigarettes and that contraband tobacco products such as Cuban cigars are not imported illegally. The firearms mission is a bit different. The Bureau is charged with making sure that illegal firearms are not produced, imported or exported and that the proper taxes and duties are paid on them. In addition to the areas mentioned earlier, the BATF labs have some of the world's leading experts in fire and explosive analysis and they work with law enforcement agencies all over the world. The labs also have expertise in trace evidence, fingerprints and questioned documents.

The Secret Service (USSS)

When most people think of the Secret Service (www.ustreas.gov/usss/index.shtml), they picture serious, dark-suited people guarding the President of the United States and other domestic and international VIPs. Certainly, the protective function is the most visible part of the Service, but not the only one. The Secret Service maintains a laboratory in Washington, DC, that has several functions. It supports the protective services of the agency by continuously developing methods that counter attempts to harm the people that the Service is guarding. In addition, the agency is charged with preventing attempts at counterfeiting money and credit cards. This explains why the agency is in the Department of the Treasury. As one would expect, there are leading experts in counterfeiting and questioned documents as well as trace evidence employed in the Secret Service lab.

The Internal Revenue Service (IRS)

No discussion of the Department of the Treasury would be complete without mention of the IRS (www.irs.gov/). The IRS is charged with making sure that everyone pays their fair share of taxes according to the law, and there are many IRS agents who do that job. They are supported by a laboratory in Chicago, whose major expertise lies in the area of questioned documents. This lab has experts in handwriting, typewriting and printers, inks, and papers. In addition to their analytical work, they carry out numerous training activities for other agencies.

The Department of the Interior

Wait, doesn't the Department of the Interior (www.lb.fws.gov/) take care of the National Parks and National Forests and the environment? What do they need with a crime lab? Doesn't the FBI have jurisdiction in the parks and forests? Well, yes and no. The FBI lab has a lot of experts but none in wildlife biology and animal body parts. So, in 1987, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (FWS) established the world's first and only laboratory that specializes in wildlife forensic science in Ashland, Oregon. This lab supports the enforcement activities of the Fish and Wildlife agents who patrol the National Parks and Forests to help prevent poaching and hunting of endangered species. The lab also supports such efforts worldwide.

The United States Postal Service

The U.S. Postal Service (USPS) (www.usps.com/postalinspectors/crimelab.htm) has an investigative arm that swings into action when someone uses the mail to commit a crime. Such crimes can include fraud, extortion, mailing anthrax or another dangerous substance to a government official, illegal gambling or other shady activities such as pyramid schemes, etc. The United States Postal Service Laboratory in Washington, DC, supports these investigative activities. The emphasis here is on document analysis but other areas of forensic science are also represented. These include trace evidence and fingerprints. The Postal Service is a quasi-governmental agency, meaning that it is private but is also government subsidized.

State and Local Forensic Science Systems

Each of the 50 states in the United States has a public crime lab system. The types and numbers of laboratories depend upon the size and population of the state. For example, Montana has one laboratory that serves the entire state, whereas California has more than 50 public laboratories that operate at all levels of government. Every state has at least one, publicly funded forensic science laboratory. Governmental units that administer crime labs include the state police, state highway patrol and attorney general's office. Some states have a consolidated laboratory division, which may also include health department, toxicology and agricultural laboratories and state medical examiner or coroner. For example, the Michigan State Police have seven regional laboratories throughout the state. The headquarters lab in Lansing is considered to be full service. It has all of the forensic science services needed in the state including toxicology and behavioral forensic sciences. The other six labs have the services that are in the most demand locally such as drug analysis, trace evidence, firearms and fingerprints. In addition to state-run laboratories, most states have some locally controlled facilities. In Maryland, some of the larger counties have laboratories attached to the county police. In California, the county sheriff in many large counties such as Los Angeles has an associated crime lab. Many large cities also have their own crime labs, usually within the city police department. These include New York City and Los Angeles.

Private Forensic Science Laboratories

Besides the federal, state and local forensic science crime labs, there are numerous private laboratories and their number is increasing. These range from one person "niche" laboratories where one type of forensic science analysis is done, to nationwide networks of labs that may do several types of analysis. Many of the one-person labs have been started by forensic scientists who have retired from a public laboratory. They continue to ply their trade using prior contacts and word of mouth or print advertising to build a client base. In the criminal arena, they usually work for defendants. The prosecutor has the use of the local or state public laboratory, and in most cases, the defendant cannot have access to the public facilities unless a judge specifically orders it. The private labs perform a service to the criminal justice system by providing resources for defendants of crimes. A few private laboratories operate in the public arena. For example, the Northern Illinois Police Crime Laboratory is a private laboratory that contracts its services to the northeastern areas of Illinois between Chicago and the Wisconsin border near Milwaukee. Another example is Bode Laboratories, which has a nationwide network of private DNA labs that provide paternity testing services to public and private clients. Bode performs the majority of noncriminal paternity cases in the United States each year. One area where private labs seem to prosper is forensic engineering. Most professional forensic engineers are privately employed. They may work for the prosecutor, the plaintiff or the defendant. Some are connected with colleges or universities and work as consultants on the side.

Other Forensic Science Systems

There is no standard organizational structure for a forensic science laboratory system. Each country has a system that best meets its needs. Organizational decisions are based on historical precedent, population and its distribution, resources available and levels and patterns of crime.

The United Kingdom

England and Wales used to have a public laboratory system, The Forensic Science Service (FSS). More than 20 years ago, the FSS changed to a "pay as you go" system. However, in recent years it has been losing lots of money and was finally abolished about 5 years ago. Now, forensic science services are delivered mostly by private laboratories.

Australia

In a country the size of the United States but with 10% of the population, where most people live on the coast, one would expect a different type of forensic science system. Each of the seven states in Australia supports some type of laboratory. These range from single, full service laboratories such as the Victoria Police Science Centre near Melbourne, to the fragmented system in New South Wales, which has separate laboratories for firearms and fingerprints and for drugs and for chemical evidence. There is also a laboratory within the Australian Federal Police in Canberra.

Columbia

A large South American country, Columbia's judicial system has undergone major changes in recent years. These include development of a forensic science laboratory system. There are four regional laboratories. Three are part of the federal Law Enforcement system that includes the Prosecutor General and the National Police. The fourth lab is a medical lab that supports the national medical examiner system.

The Organization of Forensic Science Laboratories

If you were to look at the inside of a forensic science laboratory, it would, at first glance, look like any other analytical laboratory. There are lots of instruments, glassware, implements and scientists in white lab coats and safety glasses. Like most laboratories, forensic science labs are secure facilities that allow only very limited, escorted access to the public. But if you look a little deeper into a forensic science lab, you would see some things that you would not find in other types of scientific labs. Many crime labs have few windows because windows are less secure. On the other hand, questioned document examiners like to have windows in their sections because they like to have natural light for document examination. The common sections of a crime lab are listed later. Figure 1.5 is a chart that shows the major sections of a typical crime lab.

In order for physical evidence to be admissible in a court for a trial, it must be authenticated. That is, there must be proof that the evidence seized at the crime scene is the same evidence that is now being introduced into court. There must be a document that records who was in custody of the evidence at all times. The evidence must be kept in a secure container such that any attempt to breach the seal would be evident. When the evidence container is opened the person opening, it must reseal it with initials, date and time. All of these procedures and the custody record collectively make up the chain of custody. An improper chain of custody can be grounds to render evidence inadmissible.

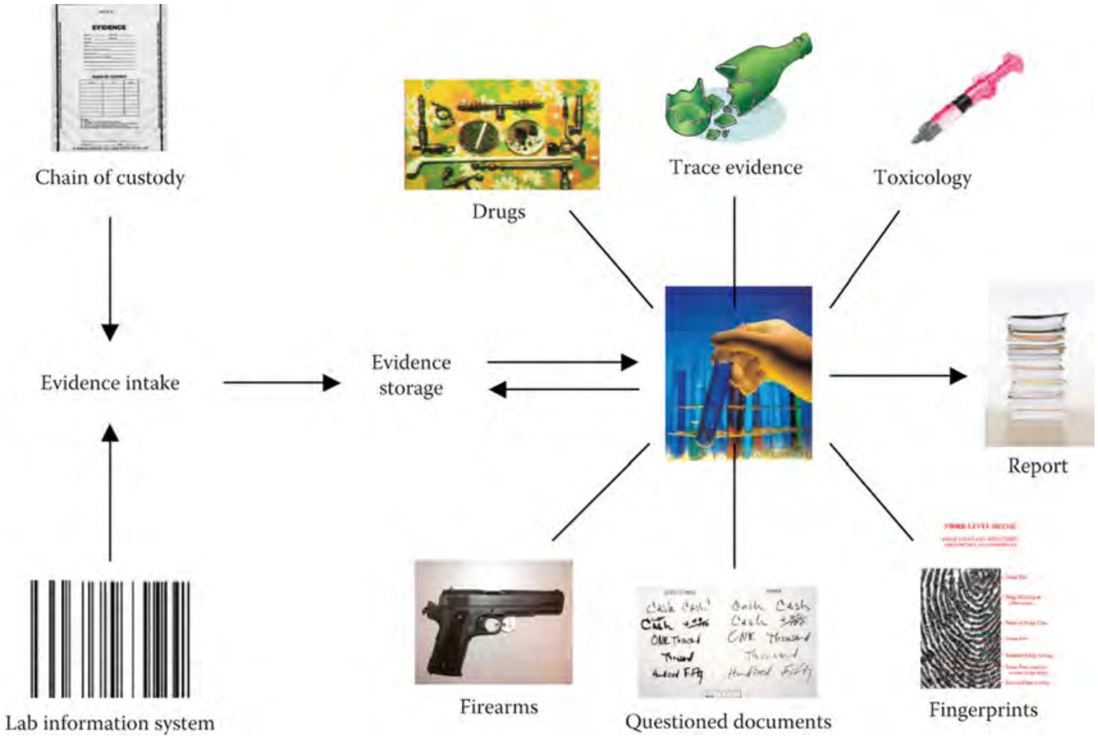


Figure 1.5 Various sections of a typical forensic science laboratory.

Once impounded, the evidence will be put in a locked storage room. At some point, the evidence will be assigned to one or more scientists for processing. Some items of evidence require more than one type of analysis and decisions will have to be made about which section analyzes it first. One of the important considerations here is to make sure that one test done on the evidence does not ruin it for another test. For example, suppose a gun is submitted for evidence and the gun may have the suspect's fingerprints on it along with some blood spots. The gun will have to be test fired so a known bullet can be recovered for comparison. The blood will have to be removed and tested for DNA. The fingerprints will have to be carefully lifted and compared with the suspect's prints. The order in which these tests are done is important. When a decision is made, the evidence is turned over to the scientist, who uses the bar code to log possession of the evidence.

1. *The intake section*: This is at the front of the lab. There will usually be an intake officer who will log in the evidence to the *laboratory information system* (LIMS). Typically, a bar code will be affixed to all of the pieces of evidence. Each item will have its own, unique identification number.
2. *The analysis area(s)*: This is the familiar laboratory setting. In most cases, the scientists' offices are kept in a separate place away from the instruments. The area where the chemicals are kept is also isolated from the instruments since chemicals and electronics are not compatible. Each scientist will have a dedicated area of the lab for evidence handling. The instruments are used by all of the scientists. In many larger laboratories,

each scientist has his or her own safe or other locking storage device for keeping evidence while it is in his or her custody.

3. *Other sections of the lab*: Depending upon the size and nature of the lab, there may be other sections that are used by scientists from time to time. Some labs have a garage where cars can be kept for inspection and searching. Many firearms sections have huge, stainless steel tanks that are full of water. These are used to test-fire weapons for comparison with bullets or cartridges recovered from crime scenes. Some large labs have collections of seized weapons as well as ammunition. If there is a polygraph section of the lab, there will be one or more interrogation rooms.

Examination of the Forensic Sciences by Outside Organizations

Over the past few decades, there have been many studies of the status of forensic science or some of its major areas of study. Several of the more important studies have been conducted by committees of the National Academy of Sciences (NAS), an arm of the National Research Council. The NAS traces its beginnings to around 1865, when it was formed by President Abraham Lincoln as a means of providing the Congress with scientific advice and expertise. The Congress provides the NAS with funds to create study committees in many scientific areas. In 2006, the forensic science community (representatives of most of the major forensic science organizations in the United States) approached the Congress with a request to form a committee to study the needs of forensic science in the twenty-first century and to make recommendations for improvement. A 17-member committee was formed by the NAS. The Committee was made up of forensic scientists, other scientists, legal and other scholars and members of the judicial system in the United States. Over a period of more than 2 years, the Committee met eight times, partly in open session and partly closed to the public. In 2009, the Committee issued a report; “Strengthening Forensic Science in the United States: A Path Forward”. This report contained 13 recommendations for improvement in the forensic sciences. In the more than 5 years since the report came out, there has been a great deal of discussion in the forensic science and criminal justice communities as well as the public at large. Many of the recommendations, if implemented, would have major impact on forensic science and some of its most important fields. At this writing, none have been officially implemented but the Congress has held several hearings on the report and several pieces of potential legislation have been introduced into both houses of the Congress. Since the NAS report came out, a White House science and technology committee was formed to further study the issues that were raised by the NAS report, and most recently, a new National Commission on Forensic Science (NCFS) has been created by the Departments of Justice and Commerce [the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)].

The 13 recommendations are listed, *verbatim*, below. In Chapter 3, those that are specifically concerned with the issues of the status of various types of evidence and their admissibility will be discussed. These will be reinforced in other chapters of this book that are impacted by the recommendations. Copies of the report are available at various sites on the Web.

Recommendation 1

To promote the development of forensic science into a mature field of multidisciplinary research and practice, founded on the systematic collection and analysis of relevant data, Congress should establish and appropriate funds for an independent federal entity, the National Institute of Forensic Science (NIFS). NIFS should have a full-time administrator and an advisory board with expertise in research and education, the forensic science disciplines, physical and life sciences, forensic pathology, engineering, information technology, measurements and standards, testing and evaluation, law, national security and public policy. NIFS should focus on

1. Establishing and enforcing best practices for forensic science professionals and laboratories
2. Establishing standards for the mandatory accreditation of forensic science laboratories and the mandatory certification of forensic scientists and medical examiners/forensic pathologists—and identifying the entity/entities that will develop and implement accreditation and certification
3. Promoting scholarly, competitive peer-reviewed research and technical development in the forensic science disciplines and forensic medicine
4. Developing a strategy to improve forensic science research and educational programs, including forensic pathology
5. Establishing a strategy, based on accurate data on the forensic science community, for the efficient allocation of available funds to give strong support to forensic methodologies and practices in addition to DNA analysis
6. Funding state and local forensic science agencies, independent research projects and educational programs as recommended in this report, with conditions that aim to advance the credibility and reliability of the forensic science disciplines
7. Overseeing education standards and the accreditation of forensic science programs in colleges and universities
8. Developing programs to improve understanding of the forensic science disciplines and their limitations within legal systems
9. Assessing the development and introduction of new technologies in forensic investigations, including a comparison of new technologies with former ones

Recommendation 2

The NIFS, after reviewing established standards such as ISO 17025, and in consultation with its advisory board, should establish standard terminology to be used in reporting on and testifying about the results of forensic science investigations. Similarly, it should establish model laboratory reports for different forensic science disciplines and specify the minimum information that should be included. As part of the accreditation and certification processes, laboratories and forensic scientists should be required to utilize model laboratory reports when summarizing the results of their analyses.

Recommendation 3

Research is needed to address issues of accuracy, reliability and validity in the forensic science disciplines. The NIFS should competitively fund peer-reviewed research in the following areas:

1. Studies establishing the scientific bases demonstrating the validity of forensic methods.
2. The development and establishment of quantifiable measures of the reliability and accuracy of forensic analyses. Studies of the reliability and accuracy of forensic techniques should reflect actual practice on realistic case scenarios, averaged across a representative sample of forensic scientists and laboratories. Studies also should establish the limits of reliability and accuracy that analytic methods can be expected to achieve as the conditions of forensic evidence vary. The research by which measures of reliability and accuracy are determined should be peer reviewed and published in respected scientific journals.
3. The development of quantifiable measures of uncertainty in the conclusions of forensic analyses.
4. Automated techniques capable of enhancing forensic technologies.

Recommendation 4

To improve the scientific bases of forensic science examinations and to maximize independence from or autonomy within the law enforcement community, Congress should authorize and appropriate incentive funds to the NIFS for allocation to state and local jurisdictions for the purpose of removing all public forensic laboratories and facilities from the administrative control of law enforcement agencies or prosecutors' offices.

Recommendation 5

The NIFS should encourage research programs on human observer bias and sources of human error in forensic examinations. Such programs might include studies to determine the effects of contextual bias in forensic practice (e.g., studies to determine whether and to what extent the results of forensic analyses are influenced by knowledge regarding the background of the suspect and the investigator's theory of the case). In addition, research on sources of human error should be closely linked with research conducted to quantify and characterize the amount of error. Based on the results of these studies, and in consultation with its advisory board, the NIFS should develop standard operating procedures (that will lay the foundation for model protocols) to minimize, to the greatest extent reasonably possible, potential bias and sources of human error in forensic practice. These standard operating procedures should apply to all forensic analyses that may be used in litigation.

Recommendation 6

To facilitate the work of the NIFS, Congress should authorize and appropriate funds to NIFS to work with the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), in conjunction with government laboratories, universities and private laboratories, and in consultation with Scientific Working Groups (SWGs), to develop tools for advancing measurement, validation, reliability, information sharing and proficiency testing in forensic science and to establish protocols for forensic examinations, methods and practices. Standards should reflect best practices and serve as accreditation tools for laboratories and as guides for the education, training and certification of professionals. Upon completion of its work, the NIST and its partners should report findings and recommendations to NIFS for further dissemination and implementation.

Recommendation 7

Laboratory accreditation and individual certification of forensic science professionals should be mandatory, and all forensic science professionals should have access to a certification process. In determining appropriate standards for accreditation and certification, the NIFS should take into account established and recognized international standards, such as those published by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). No person (public or private) should be allowed to practice in a forensic science discipline or testify as a forensic science professional without certification. Certification requirements should include, at a minimum, written examinations, supervised practice, proficiency testing, continuing education, recertification procedures, adherence to a code of ethics and effective disciplinary procedures. All laboratories and facilities (public or private) should be accredited, and all forensic science professionals should be certified, when eligible, within a time period established by NIFS.

Recommendation 8

Forensic laboratories should establish routine quality assurance and quality control procedures to ensure the accuracy of forensic analyses and the work of forensic practitioners. Quality control procedures should be designed to identify mistakes, fraud and bias; confirm the continued validity and reliability of standard operating procedures and protocols; ensure that best practices are being followed; and correct procedures and protocols that are found to need improvement.

Recommendation 9

The NIFS, in consultation with its advisory board, should establish a national code of ethics for all forensic science disciplines and encourage individual societies to incorporate this national code as part of their professional code of ethics. Additionally, the NIFS should explore mechanisms of enforcement for those forensic scientists who commit serious ethical violations. Such a code could be enforced through a certification process for forensic scientists.

Recommendation 10

To attract students in the physical and life sciences to pursue graduate studies in multidisciplinary fields critical to forensic science practice, Congress should authorize and appropriate funds to the NIFS to work with appropriate organizations and educational institutions to improve and develop graduate education programs designed to cut across organizational, programmatic and disciplinary boundaries.

To make these programs appealing to potential students, they must include attractive scholarship and fellowship offerings. Emphasis should be placed on developing and improving research methods and methodologies applicable to forensic science practice and on funding research programs to attract research universities and students in fields relevant to forensic science. The NIFS should also support law school administrators and judicial education organizations in establishing continuing legal education programs for law students, practitioners and judges.

Recommendation 11

To improve medicolegal death investigation:

1. Congress should authorize and appropriate incentive funds to the NIFS for allocation to states and jurisdictions to establish medical examiner systems, with the goal of replacing and eventually eliminating existing coroner systems. Funds are needed to build regional medical examiner offices, secure necessary equipment, improve administration and ensure the education, training, and staffing of medical examiner offices. Funding could also be used to help current medical examiner systems modernize their facilities to meet current Centers for Disease Control and Prevention–recommended autopsy safety requirements.
2. Congress should appropriate resources to the National Institutes of Health (NIH) and NIFS, jointly, to support research, education and training in forensic pathology. NIH, with NIFS participation, or NIFS in collaboration with content experts, should establish a study section to establish goals, to review and evaluate proposals in these areas, and to allocate funding for collaborative research to be conducted by medical examiner offices and medical universities. In addition, funding, in the form of medical student loan forgiveness and/or fellowship support should be made available to pathology residents who choose forensic pathology as their specialty.
3. NIFS, in collaboration with NIH, the National Association of Medical Examiners, the American Board of Medicolegal Death Investigators and other appropriate professional organizations, should establish a Scientific Working Group (SWG) for forensic pathology and medicolegal death investigation. The SWG should develop and promote standards for best practices, administration, staffing, education, training and continuing education for competent death scene investigation and postmortem examinations. Best practices should include the utilization of new technologies such as laboratory testing for the molecular basis of diseases and the implementation of specialized imaging techniques.
4. All medical examiner offices should be accredited pursuant to NIFS-endorsed standards within a timeframe to be established by NIFS.
5. All federal funding should be restricted to accredited offices that meet NIFS-endorsed standards or that demonstrate significant and measurable progress in achieving accreditation within prescribed deadlines.
6. All medicolegal autopsies should be performed or supervised by a board certified forensic pathologist. This requirement should take effect within a timeframe to be established by NIFS, following consultation with governing state institutions.

Recommendation 12

Congress should authorize and appropriate funds for the NIFS to launch a new broad-based effort to achieve nationwide fingerprint data interoperability. To that end, NIFS should convene a task force comprising relevant experts from the National Institute of Standards and Technology and the major law enforcement agencies (including representatives from the local, state, federal and, perhaps, international levels) and industry, as appropriate, to develop

1. Standards for representing and communicating image and minutiae data among Automated Fingerprint Identification Systems (AFIS). Common data standards would facilitate the sharing of fingerprint data among law enforcement agencies at the local, state, federal and even international levels, which could result in more solved crimes, fewer wrongful identifications and greater efficiency with respect to fingerprint searches.
2. Baseline standards—to be used with computer algorithms—to map, record and recognize features in fingerprint images, and a research agenda for the continued improvement, refinement and characterization of the accuracy of these algorithms (including quantification of error rates).

Recommendation 13

Congress should provide funding to the NIFS to prepare, in conjunction with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the FBI, forensic scientists and CSIs for their potential roles in managing and analyzing evidence from events that affect homeland security, so that maximum evidentiary value is preserved from these unusual circumstances and the safety of these personnel is guarded. This preparation also should include planning and preparedness (to include exercises) for the interoperability of local forensic personnel with federal counterterrorism organizations.

After the National Research Council's NAS Report

Based on the needs outlined in the 2009 NAS Report, the White House National Science and Technology (NSTC) Committee on Science formed a Subcommittee on Forensic Science (SoFS). This subcommittee convened five Interagency Working Groups (IWG) which included one on standards, practices and protocols (SPP IWG); one dealing with accreditation and certification (AP IWG); one on education, ethics and terminology (EET IWG); another looking at research, development testing and evaluation (RDT&E IWG); and the last group on outreach and communication (OC IWG). These groups met for over three years and addressed topics such as accreditation of forensic science laboratories, certification and proficiency testing of forensic science examiners, certification of medicolegal death investigators (coroners and medical examiners), as well as developing a national code of ethics for forensic science service providers.

The SoFS worked on issues until the end of 2012. The following year, in February of 2013 the forensic science reform duties were passed on to the U.S. DOJ and the NIST. These two governmental agencies designed a new committee, the NCFS to examine the role of forensic science and forensic evidence in the

TABLE 1.2
Structure of the National Commission on Forensic Science

Mission Statement	The mission of the Commission is to enhance the practice and improve the reliability of forensic science.
Objectives and Scope of Activities	To provide recommendations and advice to Department of Justice concerning national methods and strategies for the following: • Strengthening the validity and reliability of the forensic sciences (including medicolegal death investigation) • Enhancing quality assurance and quality control in forensic science laboratories and units • Identifying and recommending scientific guidance and protocols for evidence seizure, testing, analysis and reporting by forensic science laboratories and units • Identifying and assessing other needs of the forensic science communities to strengthen their disciplines and meet the increasing demands generated by the criminal and civil justice systems at all levels of government
Duties of the Commission	To recommend priorities for standards development to the Attorney General To review and recommend that the Attorney General endorse guidance identified or developed by subject-matter experts To develop proposed guidance concerning the intersection of forensic science and the courtroom To develop policy recommendations, including a uniform code of professional responsibility and minimum requirements for training, accreditation and/or certification To consider the recommendations of the National Science and Technology Council's Subcommittee on Forensic Science To identify and assess the current and future needs of the forensic sciences to strengthen their disciplines and meet growing demands

Source: U.S. Department of Justice. (n.d.) National Commission on Forensic Science, *Charter, U.S. Department of Justice, National Commission on Forensic Science*. Retrieved from: https://www.justice.gov/ncfs/file/624216/download

courts. The mission of the NCFS was to enhance the practice and improve the reliability of forensic science. (The details of the NCFS charter are listed in Table 1.2.)

A hallmark trait of the committee was the incorporation of a variety of stakeholders in forensic science and the legal system. On the 39-member panel were forensic science service providers, prosecutors, defense attorneys, law enforcement personnel, judges, scientists and academics. The members of the committee not only came from federal jurisdictions, but also from local and state entities. All recommendations agreed to by the NCFS were then sent to the Department of Justice for review and approval by the U.S. Attorney General.

The NCFS was commissioned for a two-year term and held its first meeting in 2014. The charter was renewed for a second term and met until it was disbanded by the Attorney General in 2017. The work of the members yielded approximately 20 recommendations to the Attorney General. These recommendations dealt with research funding, the evaluation of forensic science methods and practice, recommended surveys of forensic science capabilities of agencies, requested the formation of a national office for medicolegal death investigation and suggested accreditation of medicolegal death investigation offices. Additionally, recommendations were made regarding forensic science service providers, recommending they become accredited and be subject to periodic proficiency testing. Other notable suggestions to the Attorney General were to develop a new code of professional responsibility for forensic laboratories, implement improvements in AFIS, and encourage medical examiner and coroner offices to electronically network. The NCFS also requested the development of written policies for documenting evidence from examination to reporting results at trial. Other courtroom reforms proposed by the Committee were to remove the phrase "reasonable scientific certainty" from expert court testimony and they also requested directives on pretrial discovery.

Scientific Working Groups Reform and Support Quality Assurance

As early as 1988, various Technical Working Groups (TWGs) were formed within forensic science disciplines to coordinate the workings of lab personnel that would assure quality, uniformity and best practices. The first was TWGDAM or Technical Working Group on DNA Analysis Methods. This was followed by other groups: TWFFIBE for fibers, TWGFAST for fingerprints (friction ridge analysis, study and technology), TWGDRUG for controlled substances, TWGIT for imaging and TWGDOC for questioned documents.

Ten years after the formation of the first TWGs, the name was changed to SWG or Scientific Working Group and more groups were created. All in all, there were 21 SWGs from a wide range of forensic science specialties. Examples are SWGSTAIN (bloodstain pattern analysis), SWGDOG (dog and orthogonal detector), SWGGUN (firearms and toolmarks), SWGTOX (toxicology) and SWGFEX (fire and explosives). A complete list of the Scientific Working Groups can be found at the NIST website (www.nist.gov). The working groups produced over 200 documents that detailed best practices and set standards within the subject group. However, the groups came under scrutiny because they were independent organizations with no organized rules and regulations and their recommendations were not enforceable.

Soon after the formation of the National Committee on Forensic Science, the National Institute of Justice and the FBI stopped funding the work of most of the SWGs. The efforts of these groups shifted to the newly formed Organization of Scientific Area Committees or OSAC. OSAC falls under the supervision of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). The organization of the committees and subcommittees are shown in Figure 1.6 and Figure 1.7.

OSAC's overarching group is the Forensic Science Standards Board (FSSB) under which are three resource committees and five scientific communities. There are 25 subcommittees (see Figure 1.7) that replace most of the SWGs and add a few extra subcommittees; a methods subcommittee and a DNA interpretation subcommittee.

Different in this new structure are the accessibility of the resource committees and the inclusion of legal matters along with the more structured organization by including all stakeholders under one umbrella. The goal of the OSAC is to enhance the use of forensic science in the United States by assisting in the development of robust forensic science standards and by recommending the adoption of those standards by the forensic science community.

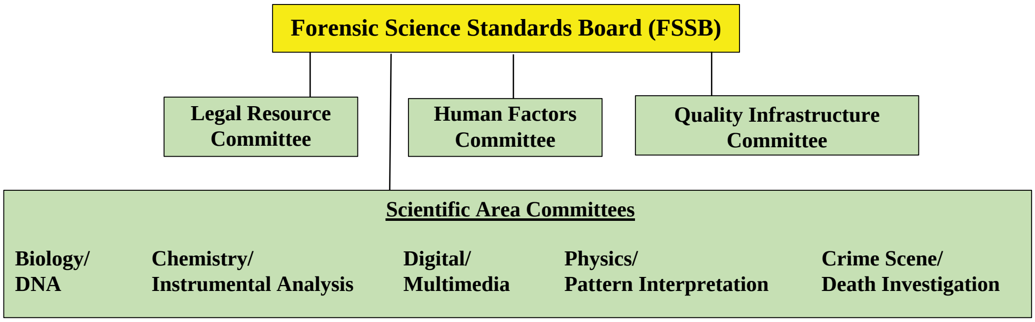

Forensic Science Standards Board (FSSB)
Legal Resource Committee
Human Factors Committee
Quality Infrastructure Committee
Scientific Area Committees
Biology/ DNA
Chemistry/ Instrumental Analysis
Digital/ Multimedia
Physics/ Pattern Interpretation
Crime Scene/ Death Investigation

Figure 1.6 The structure of the Organization of Scientific Working Committees (OSAC) under the umbrella of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). The five committees have discipline specific subcommittees.

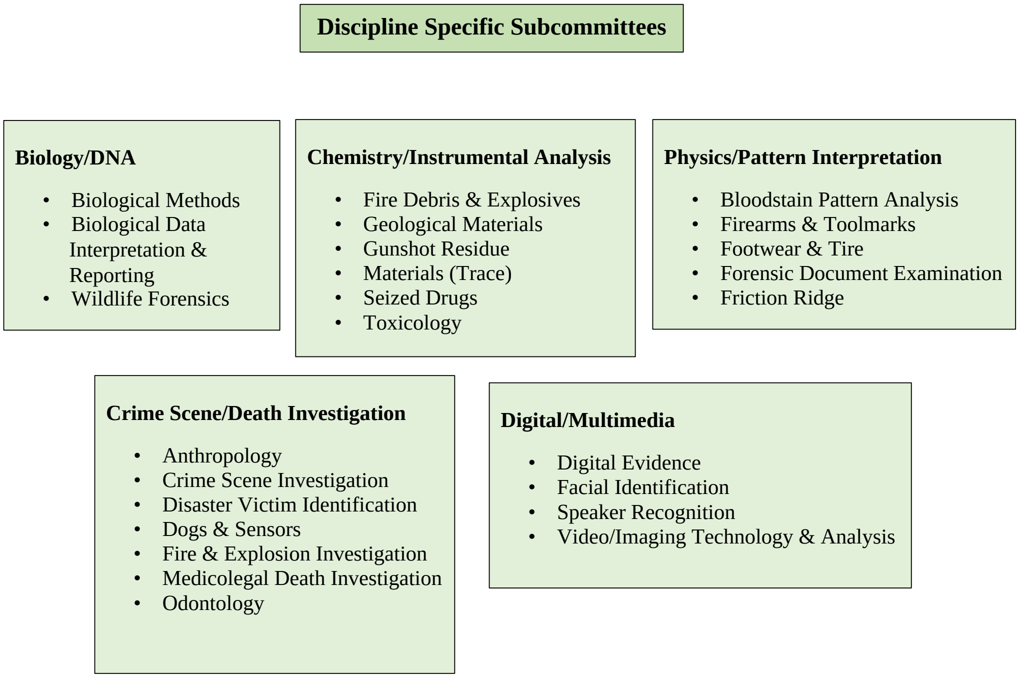

Discipline Specific Subcommittees
Biology/DNA
Biological Methods
Biological Data Interpretation & Reporting
Wildlife Forensics
Chemistry/Instrumental Analysis
Fire Debris & Explosives
Geological Materials
Gunshot Residue
Materials (Trace)
Seized Drugs
Toxicology
Physics/Pattern Interpretation
Bloodstain Pattern Analysis
Firearms & Toolmarks
Footwear & Tire
Forensic Document Examination
Friction Ridge
Crime Scene/Death Investigation
Anthropology
Crime Scene Investigation
Disaster Victim Identification
Dogs & Sensors
Fire & Explosion Investigation
Medicolegal Death Investigation
Odontology
Digital/Multimedia
Digital Evidence
Facial Identification
Speaker Recognition
Video/Imaging Technology & Analysis

Figure 1.7 The discipline-specific subcommittees for the Organization of Scientific Area Committees.

Another group working on forensic science reform is the Center for Statistics and Applications in Forensic Evidence (CSAFE). This group is comprised of four universities whose mission is to expand research in pattern evidence analysis to include statistical analysis. Universities participating are Iowa State University, Carnegie Mellon University, University of California-Irvine and the University of Virginia. Committee membership is broad, with 60 members ranging from statisticians, researchers, engineers, forensic scientists, medical practitioners, computer scientists, lawyers and others. Current research seeks to generate statistical data in the areas of blood patterns, firearms and toolmarks, questioned document analysis and shoeprint and tread mark analysis. The CSAFE partners are working with NIST Forensic Science Center for Excellence to develop and implement training programs for judges, lawyers and forensic science personnel in order to educate them in the areas of technical and statistical interpretation of pattern and digital evidence.

Summary

Forensic science is the application of scientific methods to solving crimes. Any science can be a forensic science if it has an application to the criminal justice system. The largest area of forensic science is criminalistics, which includes the physical evidence that commonly occurs at crime scenes. There are about 400 crime labs in the United States. Several departments in the Federal Government have forensic science labs. These include Justice, Treasury and Interior. Each state has its own forensic science laboratory system. These include labs run by state or local government.

Forensic scientists analyze evidence and testify in court as expert witnesses. They may also go to some crime scenes where especially serious or notorious crimes have been committed. Crime laboratories must be secure so that evidence can be protected. There are many types of labs but they all have an intake section, an analysis section and a storage location for evidence.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following Federal Departments does *not* have a forensic science lab?
   a. Interior
   b. Justice
   c. Commerce
   d. Treasury
   e. All of these have forensic science labs
2. Which of the following is generally *not* considered to be a forensic science?
   a. Chemistry
   b. Biology
   c. Anthropology
   d. Odontology
   e. Sociology
3. California has about ___% of the crime labs in the United States
   a. 10
   b. 50
   c. 25
   d. 12
   e. 1
4. Which of the following is *not* part of forensic anthropology?
   a. Matching teeth to a bite mark
   b. Identification of skeletal remains
   c. Building a face on a skull
   d. Superimposition of the picture of a face onto a skull
   e. Determining the gender of a skeleton
5. DNA typing is part of
   a. Forensic pathology
   b. Criminalistics

   c. Odontology
   d. Engineering
   e. Criminal investigation

6. If a forensic science laboratory uses a barcode system as part of its evidence identification, the barcode would be affixed to the evidence when
   a. The evidence is about to be analyzed
   b. When the final report is written
   c. As soon as the evidence is accepted by the lab
   d. When the evidence is put in central storage
   e. When the evidence is returned to the submitting officer
7. Which of the following is *not* a forensic application of science?
   a. Identification of human remains through dental X-rays
   b. Verifying the composition of an aspirin tablet before it leaves the factory
   c. Identification of a bag of tablets taken from a car when the driver is stopped for erratic driving
   d. Determination of why a Ferris wheel crashed at an amusement park when three people were killed
8. From the time you graduate from high school until you are certified as a forensic pathologist takes about ___ years.
   a. 4
   b. 8
   c. 12
   d. 13
   e. 16
9. Go to the AAFS (www.aafs.org) and look up "Daubert Tracker". This service permits a site visitor to
   a. Tracks Dauberts
   b. Keeps the forensic scientist up to date on some legal aspects of scientific evidence
   c. Determine when the annual Academy meeting is
   d. Keep track of new types of scientific evidence
   e. Tracks dues payments to the Academy
10. On the website for the Society of Forensic Toxicology (www.soft-tox.org), the definition of forensic toxicology includes all of the following *except*
   a. Postmortem forensic toxicology
   b. Analysis of suspected drug powders
   c. Forensic urine testing
   d. Analysis of blood and body fluids for human performance altering drugs
   e. All of these are included in the definition of forensic toxicology

Match Each of the Following Terms with Its Definition

11. Determines cause and manner of death_____
12. Identifies people from their teeth_____
13. Reconstructs hard disc drives_____
14. Analyzes bone fragments_____
15. Determines role of insects in investigations_____
16. Determines how a bridge collapsed_____

a. Anthropology
b. Pathology
c. Entomology
d. Computer forensics
e. Engineer
f. Odontologist

Fill in the Blanks

17. The ____________ is the United Kingdom national forensic science system.
18. Mail fraud is investigated by the ____________.
19. The federal laboratory whose responsibility is the investigation and analysis of illicit drugs is the ____________.
20. The two major duties of a forensic scientist in a crime lab are ____________ and ____________.
21. The national "umbrella" organization for forensic science in the United States is the ____________.
22. When evidence is brought into a crime laboratory it is delivered to the ____________ section.

Short Answer Questions

23. What makes a science "forensic"? Give an example of dentistry (odontology) that is forensic and one that is not. Do the same thing for engineering.
24. An increasing trend in crime scene investigation is to have forensic scientists from a crime lab go to some crime scenes and help the CSIs with searching the scene for evidence. What advantages and disadvantages would there be to this practice?
25. Since 1992, the national forensic science system in the United Kingdom now operates on a fee per service basis; everyone, police and defendants alike, is charged for forensic analysis, whereas in the United States, crime labs are generally run be a unit of government and they are for the use of police and prosecutors only. Defendants have no access to public crime lab facilities. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each system? Why do you think that the United Kingdom changed over to fee-for-service model?

Further Reading

James, S. H. and J. J. Nordby (eds.). (2003). *Forensic Science: An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

National Research Council. (2009). *Strengthening Forensic Science in the United States: A Path Forward*. National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Siegel, J. and P. Sauko (eds.). (2011). *Encyclopedia of Forensic Sciences*, vols. 1–4, 2nd edn. Academic Press, London, U.K.

Thorwald, J. (1964). *The Century of the Detective*. Harcourt, Brace & World, New York.

On the Web

How does a forensic anthropologist analyze bone fragments? http://www.anthro4n6.net/forensics/.

Learn all about forensic entomology. https://www.crimesceneinvestigatoredu.org/forensic-entomologist/

2

Crime Scene Investigation

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to describe the characteristics of a crime scene
2. To be able to list the steps in the investigation of a crime scene
3. To be able to list the steps in the collection of evidence
4. To be able to define the chain of custody and describe its elements
5. To be able to list and describe the ways of searching a crime scene
6. To be able to list and describe the ways of documenting a crime scene
7. To be able to complete a rough draft and final sketch of a mock crime scene

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Crime Scene as Recent History*
- *Crime Scene Investigation Process*
    - *Crime Occurs and is Discovered*
    - *First Officer at the Crime Scene*
    - *Protocol at the Crime Scene*
    - *Preliminary Scene Examination*
    - *Systematic Search of the Crime Scene*
    - *Recording the Crime Scene*
    - *Collection of Evidence*
    - *Recognition of Evidence*
    - *Collection*
    - *Packaging and Preserving Evidence*
    - *Preserving Evidence*
    - *Reconstruction*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
    - *Multiple Choice Questions*
    - *True or False*
    - *Short Answer Questions*
    - *Match Each of the Following Terms with its Explanation*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Authentication: Documenting who has possession of crime-related evidence from the point of collection to its appearance in a court of law.

Chain of custody: A physical log for a single piece of evidence that documents who had possession of the evidence and when the evidence was in his or her possession. It is a flowchart of the movement of evidence from collection to processing at the crime lab to presentation in court.

Corpus delicti: The Latin translation is “body of crime”. *Corpus delicti* means that it must be proven that a crime has occurred before an individual can be convicted of committing a crime. For example, a death must be ruled a homicide before anyone can be tried for murder or a fire must be ruled as an arson in order for a person to be tried for setting the fire.

CSI: The acronym for crime scene investigation or crime scene investigator.

Documentation: Recording in detail the conditions when the crime occurred.

Druggist’s fold (or evidence fold): Small pieces of evidence are packaged in druggist folds (papers) to ensure that they are not lost. They are sometimes also referred to as “evidence folds”. The folded paper is then placed in standard evidence packaging.

Exemplars: These are baseline, known evidence such as fingerprints, DNA, hair or voiceprints collected from suspects or victims in order to compare with evidence taken from a crime scene. Exemplars are sometimes referred to as “knowns” or “controls”.

First responder: The initial police officer at the crime scene is regarded as the first responder.

Modus Operandi (MO): The Latin translation means “mode of operation”. This refers to the style or method that a criminal uses when committing a crime. For repeat offenders, an MO may assist investigators in locating the suspect due to his or her characteristic way of committing the crime.

***Postmortem* Interval (PMI):** *Postmortem* interval is the length of time from discovery of a dead body to the time the victim died.

Probative: A piece of evidence that tends to prove or disprove a fact or assertion.

Protocol: In criminal investigations, protocol is an established, detailed plan or procedure that must be implemented for evidence to be valid.

Search methods: Evidence may be located using a systematic approach to survey the site. These methods employ spiral, grid, line or zone techniques.

Sting operation: Law enforcement agents stage a scenario whereby criminals are encouraged to commit crimes that they would probably have committed anyway.

Tamper-evident packaging: Specific types of containers or packages for crime scene evidence that have seals that can only be opened by tearing or cutting, thereby giving proof of access.

Acronyms

BATF	Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and explosives
CSI	Crime scene investigation or crime scene investigator
MO	Modus operandi
PMI	Postmortem interval

Introduction

A crime has been committed. It was a recent event, but it happened in the past, therefore a crime scene can be thought of as a piece of history. Like all historical places, the crime scene has a story to tell. Anthropologists and archaeologists investigate places where ancient civilizations once lived. They look for evidence of who lived there and how they lived. Perhaps they will find clues as to the fate of the citizens. Historians examine the site of a Civil War battlefield to learn many things, like how the battle was fought, how many people fought and died, what they wore and what armaments they used. Crime scene investigators carefully and systematically sift through a crime scene to learn how and when the crime was committed, who committed it and why and perhaps what items may have been removed from the scene. All of these historical scenes—the ancient village, the hundred-year-old battlefield and yesterday’s homicide scene—contain evidence that, if properly collected, analyzed and interpreted, tells the story behind the events that took place.

Crime Scene as Recent History

It is useful to think of a crime scene as history because it has much in common with older historical sites. The proper methods of conducting an archaeological dig and reconstruction of a battle are similar to the methods that should be used to successfully search a crime scene. Some areas of similarity are as follows:

Timing: A historical scene changes all the time, especially if it is outdoors. For ancient ruins, this may not be too important in the short run. A couple of weeks of delay in searching a ten-thousand-year-old village will probably have little consequence. For crimes that occurred only a few hours or days ago, however, *time may be of the essence*. For example, if a burglary is not discovered and solved within an hour after it occurs, research has shown that it probably never will be. The trail gets cold really quickly.

Plan of attack: There must be a plan for *systematically searching the site* that ensures that no stone is left unturned without needlessly covering the same area again and again.

Safety issues: *Safety of the scene searchers* must be considered. Hazards at the ancient remains of a city are going to be different from those at a modern crime scene, although the flooring in a house that had major fire damage may be just as unstable as the ancient ruins of a building.

Appropriate personnel: Only *highly qualified, trained personnel should conduct the search* of the site.

Controlling the scene: *Contamination must be minimized* by permitting access to the site to as few people as possible. Additionally, those persons at the scene may be asked to give elimination samples if necessary to compare with collected evidence. For example, CSI team members may be asked for samples of their DNA.

Documentation: Every instance of searching an historical site further changes it. Evidence is found and then is moved or removed. Gathering evidence is a vital part of learning the story of the site. Once it changes, it will never be the same again. This is an important concept in searching a crime scene. The *crime scene must be documented thoroughly* so that a record can be made of its condition when the crime occurred. This includes labeling the location of each piece of evidence when it is discovered. Ultimately, the evidence will be useful in establishing that a crime has actually occurred and someone must be prosecuted for it, a process called *corpus delicti*.

One major difference in the documentation of a crime scene from that of historical sites is that there must be a *chain of custody* for each piece of evidence that is removed from the scene. The chain of custody begins when the evidence is discovered.

In the remainder of this chapter, the crime scene investigation process will be detailed. Evidence collection procedures described are the recognition of evidence, documentation of evidence, collection of evidence and the delivery of evidence to the laboratory for analysis.

Crime Scene Investigation Process

A number of procedures take place at a crime scene. Some procedures are always followed, while others depend on the nature of the scene and the circumstances surrounding the crime. Figure 2.1 shows the overall process that takes place during a crime scene investigation.

Crime Occurs and Is Discovered

There are three ways that crimes are discovered:

1. A witness sees a crime in progress and reports it to the police.
2. The victim of a crime reports it to the police.
3. The police discover a crime in progress.

In the first case, someone witnesses a crime in progress. An example of this is when someone is walking down the street at night and sees someone leaving a dark electronics store with arms full of merchandize. Another example is when someone hears what sounds like a gunshot at a next door neighbor's house and runs over to investigate, only to find the owner dead or injured. No one else seems to be around.

In an example of a crime being reported by a victim, the owner of a small business arrives at work one morning and finds that the safe has been opened and

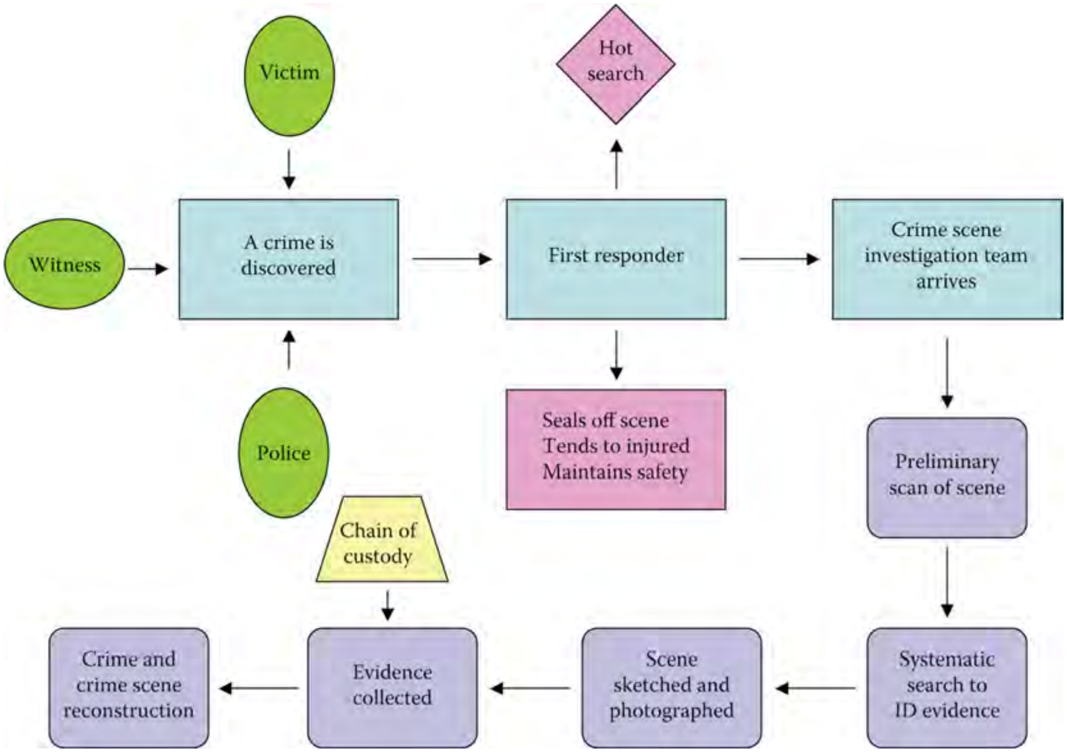

Victim
Hot search
Witness
A crime is discovered
First responder
Crime scene investigation team arrives
Police
Seals off scene
Tends to injured
Maintains safety
Preliminary scan of scene
Chain of custody
Crime and crime scene reconstruction
Evidence collected
Scene sketched and photographed
Systematic search to ID evidence

Figure 2.1 This diagram shows the steps in a typical crime scene investigation.

money stolen. The owner calls the police to report the robbery and the crime scene investigation begins.

A situation where a police officer discovers a crime in progress is when an officer stops a speeding car and finds a hoard of illegal weapons in the back seat. Police may also "discover" a crime by staging a *sting operation*. These are situations where law enforcement agents set up a scenario whereby criminals are encouraged to commit crimes that they would probably have done anyway.

Example of a Sting Operation

A sting operation is set up by the local police and/or federal agents as a type of proactive law enforcement. One of the earliest examples of a sting operations occurred in Washington, DC, in the 1960s. This was a joint FBI and Washington, DC Police Department operation to combat major theft rings operating in the city. The agents and police set up a storefront operation and put the word out on the street that the store was a well-financed "fencing" operation (a fence is someone who buys stolen merchandise and resells it at a profit). Further, the word was that this operation was being run by "organized crime" (the Mafia). Anyone who had something of value to sell would get top dollar with no questions asked.

The "store" was rigged with a one-way mirror so that the police could videotape the "sales" through the glass without being detected. All the crooks could see was a mirror. To make sure that each seller would look at the camera, a picture of a bikini-clad model was prominently posted.

The sting operation was supposed to last a month and had a budget of several thousand dollars. It was so wildly successful that the operation ran out of money in a week and had captured more than two hundred transactions on tape. Included in the haul were stacks of stolen Social Security checks and typewriters (no computers back then) from government buildings.

In order to avoid having to track down all of the crooks and arrest them, the "owners" advertised a big party at the end of the operation. Virtually all of the participants were invited and were promised a chance to meet the "Godfather". What they got were handcuffs and a trip to jail. Faced with a videotape of their "transactions" every one of the scofflaws pled guilty to theft.

First Officer at the Crime Scene

Archaeological digs and battlefield reconstructions involve large teams of searchers from the very start. In a crime scene search, however, the discovery of the crime usually results in a police officer being dispatched to the scene. This officer has several important duties, usually in this order:

1. *Ascertain whether the perpetrator is still at the scene*: If so, a hot search for the perpetrator should commence immediately. If this proves futile, later on, detectives or criminal investigators will likely perform a cold search, whereby people in the neighborhood are interviewed to determine whether they saw the crime being committed or saw the perpetrator flee the scene or observed other suspicious events.

2. *Tend to the injured*: If an ambulance is needed, it should be called right away. Waiting can cost lives.
3. *Notify supervisors, medical examiner, crime scene team or other personnel*: It will take time for requested personnel to arrive at the location. Once the team has arrived, the investigation process can commence.
4. *Secure consent or a warrant to search the scene*: Unless there is an emergency situation, such as threats to someone's life or safety, destruction or removal of evidence or possible escape of the perpetrator, the officer should obtain the right to enter a crime scene. According to the fourth amendment of the U.S. Constitution, in order for the crime scene search to be constitutional, "consent must be given voluntarily by a person reasonably believed by law enforcement officers to have lawful access and control over the premises. In most cases, this will be the person who called police to the scene". If consent is not possible, a warrant or judicial order authorizing a search must be obtained.
5. *Secure the scene*: Contamination of the scene must be minimized. The number of people who have access to the scene must be limited and the entry and exit paths of these personnel should be determined. Initially, it is advantageous to make the scene perimeter large to prevent loss of any pertinent evidence. For example, if a crime occurred in a home, consider the entry and exit of the perpetrator as important and secure the outside of the home, too. Footprints and tire tracks are just as important as the physical evidence found inside a residence. If a body is found in the woods, the potential scene can be quite large and isolating it can be difficult.
6. *Avoid walking through the scene and searching for evidence*: Remember that any contact with a crime scene alters it forever. Searches of even localized crime scenes must be done by professionals who have formulated a search plan. In some cases, what appears to be the scene of the crime may not be. The site may have been set up to look like a crime scene so as to divert attention from the real scene.
7. *Note any obvious safety hazards*: Strange smells could be gas or potentially dangerous chemicals that may pose a fire or poison hazard. Structures may be weakened or rigged to kill or maim. Electrical wires may be exposed. The job of the first officer at the scene is not to remediate these hazards but to protect others from them and to warn personnel who subsequently come to the scene. The 1991 Universal Studios movie, *Backdraft* had a scene that illustrates the situation where a crime scene is rigged to cause harm to investigators. A fire was set in a building that was then completely sealed up. When the oxygen became depleted and could no longer support flames, the fire began to smolder. When the fire department arrived and broke in to the building, the onrush of oxygen into the building caused the fire to explode into flame. Firemen were killed and injured. This also happens in real-life fires and may occur naturally as a fire proceeds.

Protocol at the Crime Scene

The examination of a crime scene must follow the *protocol* established for the crime scene investigative unit. Protocol is a detailed plan or procedure established by law enforcement that must be implemented for evidence to be valid and admissible in a court of law. Following protocol insures that all crime scenes will be investigated in the same manner by using established guidelines. Following procedural guidelines becomes important when police officers and crime scene investigators must testify in court regarding the validity of evidence.

As soon as possible after the crime scene has been discovered and protected, the *crime scene investigation* (CSI) *unit* will arrive. If there is a deceased individual at the scene, someone from the medical examiner's or coroner's office will take charge of processing the body. This person will normally be a forensic pathologist who certifies that the person is dead and makes a preliminary determination of the *postmortem interval* (PMI) or the time since death. This topic will be covered in more detail in the chapter on forensic pathology. If there is a body at the scene, some police departments dispatch a death scene CSI squad to process and remove the body from the scene. This processing includes photographing the body, making sure all trace evidence is protected and gathered and transporting the body to the medical examiner's or coroner's laboratory.

Once any victim(s) has been cared for, the crime scene unit, usually made up of specially trained police officers, takes charge of the crime scene. Each member of the team has a defined role, such as sketching the scene, photographing the scene, searching the scene for evidence or documenting the collection of evidence. Fingerprint and blood spatter technicians may also be called to the scene if needed.

Preliminary Scene Examination

The first duty of the CSI unit is to conduct a preliminary examination of the scene. This is done for a number of reasons. Safety hazards can be promptly addressed and remediated. The boundaries of the crime scene must be ascertained. This may be a simple process if the crime clearly occurred in one room of a house (keeping in mind that routes of entry and escape can be very important sources of evidence). If the crime is outdoors, then fixing the boundaries of the scene can be very difficult. The area where the crime was committed may only be the primary crime scene. Perpetrators often carry evidence away from the scene and there may be one or more secondary locations where important evidence may be found.

Additionally, if preliminary examination of the scene has some aspects similar to other recent crimes in an area, the investigators may look at the modus operandi or MO of the crime. MO is the pattern or method of operation that a criminal repeatedly uses during an illegal act. A repetitive MO could imply the work of a single criminal in more than one crime.

Systematic Search of the Crime Scene

After the preliminary examination of the scene has been made, systematic documentation and searching begins. This is a meticulous process carried out to minimize alteration of the scene, which can happen if personnel are not careful when conducting their investigation. Photographing the scene is carried out as early as possible. Although regular film photography is still used in crime scene investigations, the recent trend has been to use digital photography because digital photographs can be seen immediately. In addition, digital pictures are easily incorporated into computerized crime records and reports. It is also common for the crime scene team to use videotape or digital movies to complete a walk-through of the scene. This is very effective for the jury in order to get an overall sense of the scene. It is important, however, for the audio of the tape to be silenced so that no comments are inadvertently shared that could influence a jury.

One of the first decisions to be made is the search pattern that will be used at the crime scene. There are four basic types of *search methods* that can be used, depending on the type of crime scene. For example, if the entire crime scene is one room of a house, a search may begin at one end of the room and proceed in a *spiral* fashion toward the center or may be a back-and-forth (*line*) pattern across the room. If the scene includes several rooms, each one is searched systematically using a *zone* method. If the scene is outdoors in a large area, it may be necessary to divide the scene into *grids* and then search each grid. Examples of each method are shown in Figure 2.2.

Sometimes, unusual tactics are used to search a crime scene such as those described in the 1984 shooting of police officer Yvonne Fletcher at the Libyan Embassy in London, England. It is seldom necessary to devote the large amounts of investigative resources that were used in this case, but the crime was very serious and had major political implications at the time. Also, the police had lost one of their own and they were eager to find the evidence that would bring the killer(s) to justice. This case illustrates that sometimes unusual methods are needed to effectively search a crime scene.

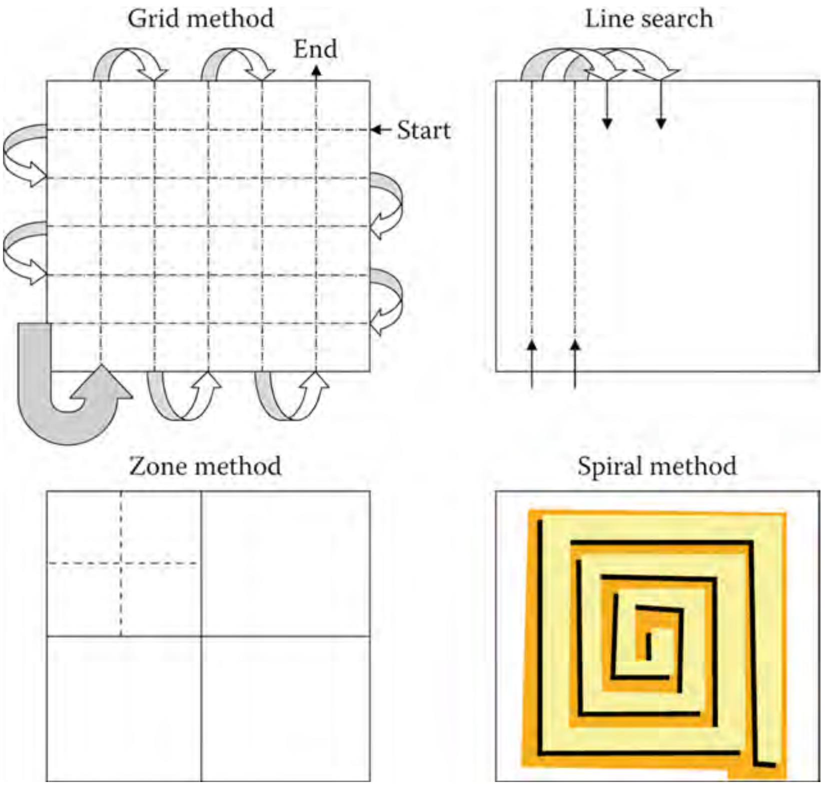


Figure 2.2 Four general methods used to systematically search a crime scene.

Yvonne Fletcher

On April 27, 1984, an 11-day siege ended at the Libyan Embassy in London. The siege was the result of the shooting of a London police officer, Yvonne Fletcher, on April 17. Witnesses saw smoke and flame from a first floor window of the Embassy right before the officer fell. When she was loaded onto a gurney and taken to the hospital, a slug that had hit her fell out of her body and onto the ground. The slug was missing when the forensic pathologist did the *post-mortem* examination. It was very important to find the slug so it could be compared to the weapon if found. The area in question was a large courtyard in front of the embassy. More than 50 police officers gathered in the courtyard and then crawled shoulder to shoulder on their hands and knees all the way across the courtyard in search of the slug. It was found and later matched to the suspect weapon.

Something for You to Do

Go into the largest room in your house (this may be the garage). Ask someone in your family to plant a piece of "evidence" in the room. This could be a small object that could be evidence in a real crime. It could be hair, fiber or paint chips, or other trace evidence. You should figure out how you would search this scene to make sure you cover the entire scene. You also want to make sure you do not go over the same ground more than once so as to minimize contact and contamination of the scene. Draw a diagram of the search pattern you would use to search this scene.

Now go into the smallest room in your house and repeat this exercise. Next go outdoors to your front yard or backyard or a nearby park and repeat the exercise again. Did you decide to use the same type of search pattern in each case? Why? In which case(s) would you try and get help in searching the scene? After you have developed a strategy for searching each scene, pick one and try to find the object.

See if your strategy works. You may not be able to find the object, especially if you do not know what you are looking for or you may inadvertently step on it or track extraneous material into the scene and mistake this for evidence. This is what crime scene investigators face every day in their work. Crime scene investigation is a difficult process even for experienced investigators.

Recording the Crime Scene

Historically, there have been two basic methods of documenting a crime scene and recording its condition and the locations of all of the evidence. The first was making a sketch of the crime scene, while the second was using photography to document a scene. Each method enhanced the effectiveness of the other.

The crime scene sketch was done by first making a freehand sketch and then taking measurements of the positions of various objects with reference to at least two fixed positions in the scene. Later on, this sketch would be translated into a scale drawing of the scene. The second method was by still photography (35 mm) using regular film. Many pictures would be taken under various light conditions and at various distances and angles in the hope that some would properly record the scene. Measuring instruments, such as small rulers, would be put in photographs where size perspective was important, as with shoeprints and tire treads. Without a scale to show size for such evidence, it would be difficult to admit such evidence into court as demonstrative evidence. Figure 2.3 shows a picture of a shoeprint. Note the ruler in the picture.

Today, the situation is different but some of the old practices are still used. Hand-drawn crime scene sketches, as shown in Figure 2.4, are still used and measurements taken, but the scale drawings are often rendered on a computer that has specialized crime scene reconstruction software.

Additionally, some law enforcement departments may use a device called a "Total Station" to take dimensions of a crime science in lieu of the more cumbersome tape measures. This digital mapping system is commonly used in accident reconstruction. The Total Station uses a laser range finder and a computer to determine coordinates and measure angles in the vertical and horizontal planes. It functions similar to an electronic surveying device that you may see being used by two workers along a highway. Moreover, the Total Station is capable of recording three-dimensional information from the crime scene, which can be very useful if there are multiple levels.

GPS (Global Positioning Systems) is another technology driven tool being used to document crime scenes, especially those that occur in remote locations or in a wooded area. In areas where there is no fixed point(s) from which to take measurements, a GPS position or positions can be marked and crime scene evidence can be measured from those coordinates and documented.

Sometimes, scale models of crime scenes are made from cardboard, wood, plaster and the like. An extreme example of modeling is performed at the

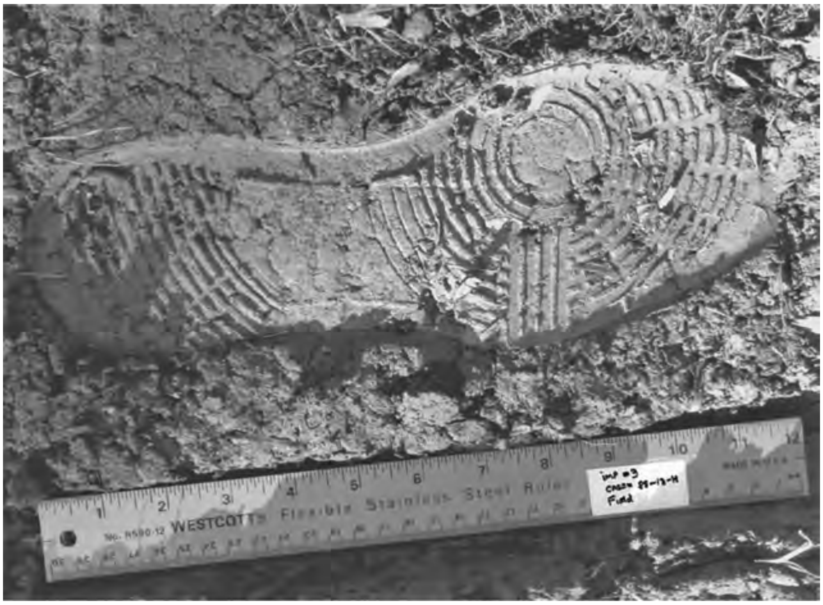


Figure 2.3 A shoeprint in soil with a ruler. The ruler is used to show the size of the shoeprint. From Bodziak, W.T., *Footwear Impression Evidence*, 2nd edn., Taylor & Francis, New York, 2000. With permission.

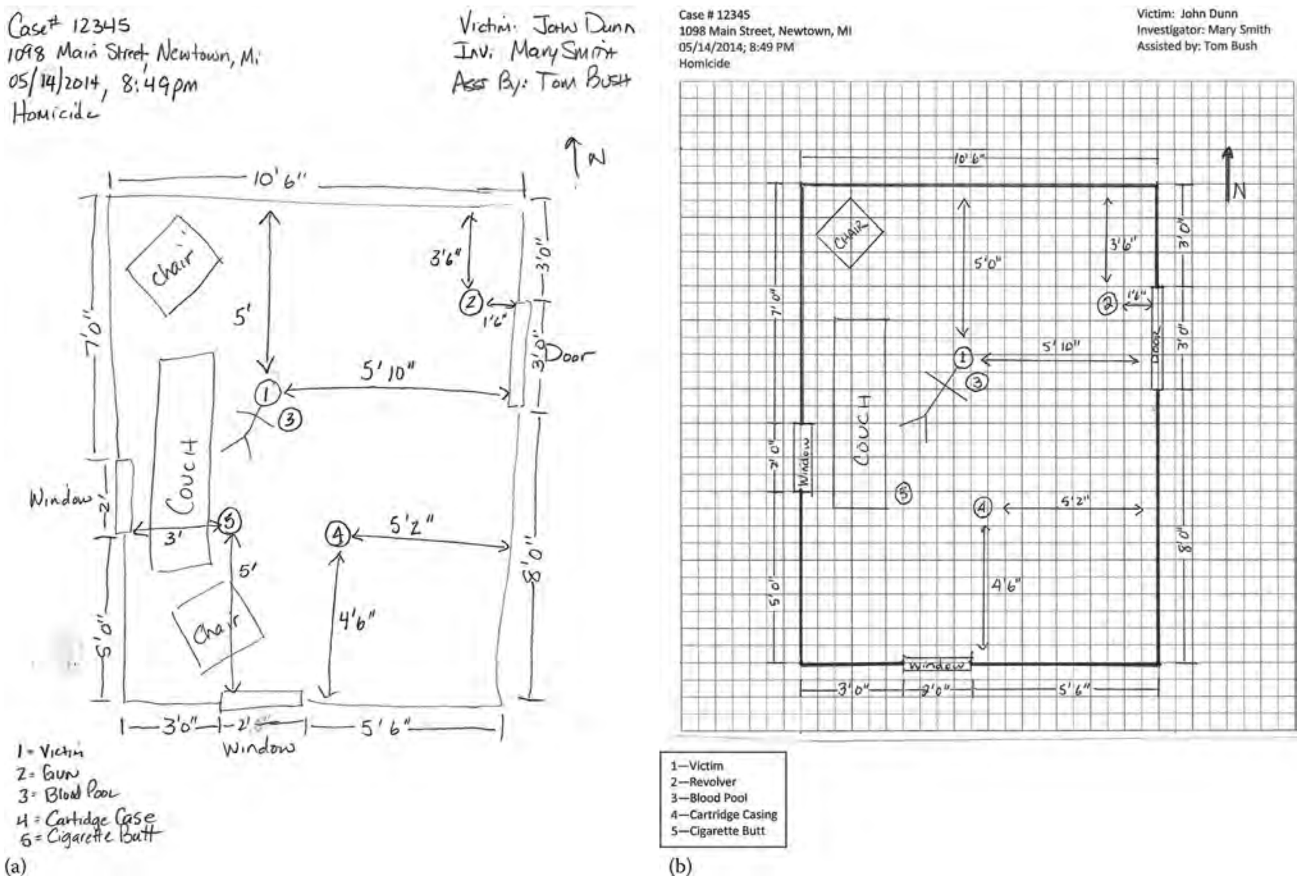
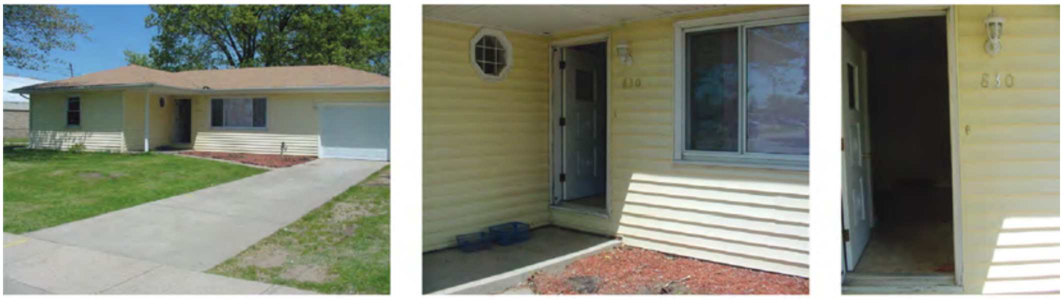

Case# 12345
1098 Main Street Newtown, MI
05/14/2014, 8:49pm
Homicide
Victim: John Dunn
Inv.: Mary Smith
Asst By: Tom Bush
N
10'6"
7'0"
3'6"
3'0"
5'
1'6"
5'10"
3'0"
Door
Chair
Couch
Window
2'
3'
5'2"
5'
4'6"
8'0"
5'0"
Chair
3'0"
2'
5'6"
Window
1 = Victim
2 = Gun
3 = Blood Pool
4 = Cartidge Case
6 = Cigarette Butt
(a)
Case # 12345
1098 Main Street, Newtown, MI
05/14/2014; 8:49 PM
Homicide
Victim: John Dunn
Investigator: Mary Smith
Assisted by: Tom Bush
10'6"
N
CHAIR
5'0"
3'6"
3'0"
7'0"
1'6"
5'10"
DOOR
3'0"
2'0"
Window
COUCH
5'2"
8'0"
4'6"
5'0"
Window
3'0"
2'0"
5'6"
1—Victim
2—Revolver
3—Blood Pool
4—Cartridge Casing
5—Cigarette Butt
(b)

Figure 2.4 (a) Example of a rough sketch—done at the crime scene. (b) Example of a final draft crime scene sketch.

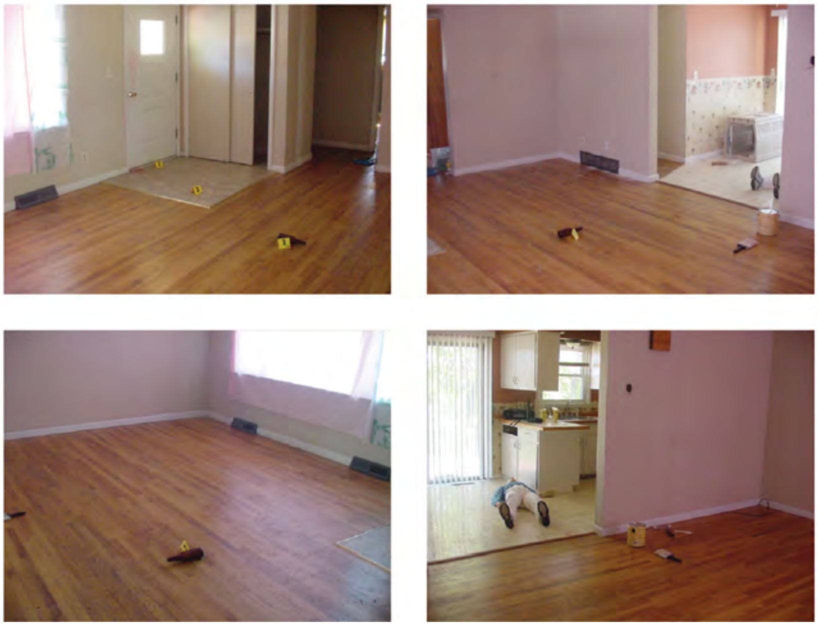
federal Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (BATF) at its fire research laboratory near Beltsville, MD. In cases where a fire has occurred in an apartment or house, a construction crew builds an exact model of the structure to scale and then recreates the fire conditions as precisely as possible so the progress and damage caused by the fire can be studied. The BATF laboratory employs professional builders to construct the structures that are then sacrificed to research. The fires are carried out in a huge building equipped with exhaust fans and filters that prevent particulates and harmful gases from escaping.

Today, crime scenes are often videotaped. A crime scene investigator will walk the crime scene with a video camera and take footage from all angles. This can take the place of some of the still photography, but will not replace the crime scene sketch. There is even one company, 3rd Tech, which makes an automatic video system. A camera is set up in a room and it takes thousands of frames of the scene in a 360° arc that, when reconstructed, provides unprecedented details about the locations of objects and perspectives at the scene.

The 35 mm cameras are still used at crime scenes to photograph individual objects, but this method of taking photos is rapidly being replaced by digital photography. Advantages to digital photography of crime scenes include the ability to easily incorporate pictures into reports and the ability to examine a photo right after it has been taken so the photographer will know right away if the picture is



Distance shot of residence, walkway to entrance, front door entrance



Living room views from all four corners.

Figure 2.5 Crime scene photography. Outside photographs should document the entire residence, the path to the residence and the entrance. Similar shots should be made of the rear of the home. Each room should be photographed entirely and as seen from all four corners.

useable. Digital photographs can also be *enhanced* or touched up using computer software such as Adobe Photoshop®. This is not the same as *altering* digital photos, which would be called into question in a court of law. The forensic photographer must inform the court which photos were enhanced and what was done to enhance them. Enhancement is used only to make the original photo clearer for presentation to the jury, and must never be used to change the photographic evidence or alter it.

Photographs are taken in an organized manner. First, the entire scene is photographed from each corner of the structure, room or object. Then the item of interest is photographed from a distance, mid-range and then close-up with and without a scale in the picture. Figure 2.5 shows outside and interior room photography. Figure 2.6 illustrates photography of a victim.

Additionally, it is useful to photograph any bystanders at the crime scene. These photographs can aid in identifying witnesses or in some cases the actual perpetrator, as criminals sometimes like to watch the police process crime scenes.

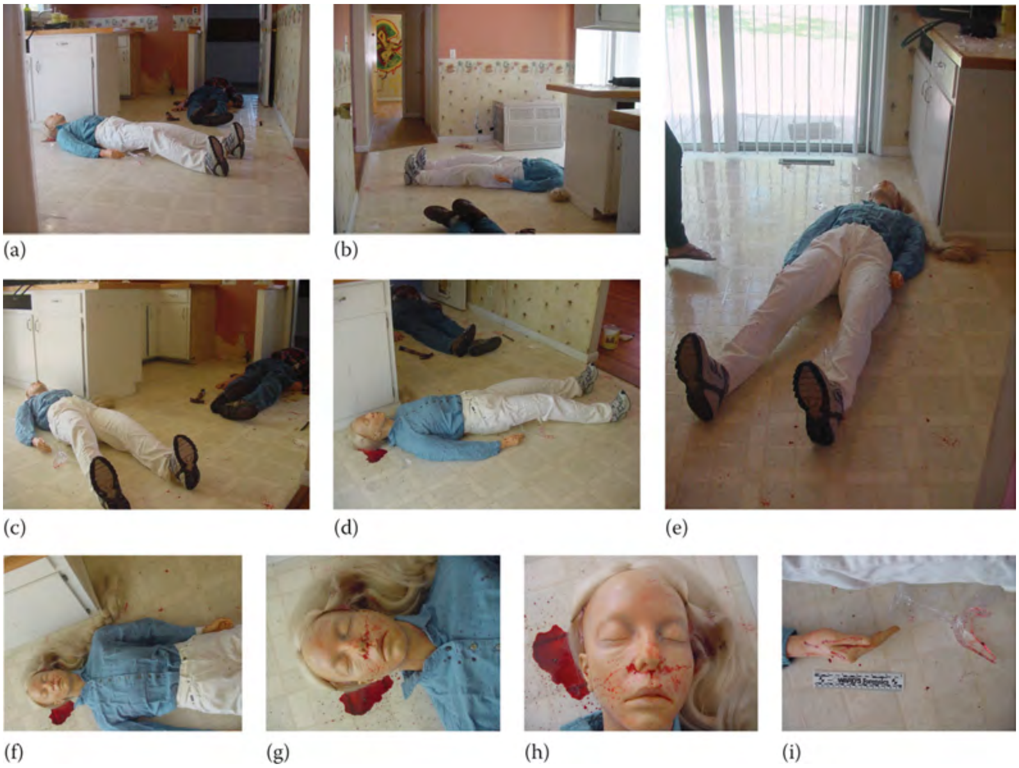


Figure 2.6 Crime scene photography. The female victim is photographed at various locations in the room (a–e). Then close-up shots are captured of her injuries and potentially important evidence (f–i).

Collection of Evidence

There is an old saying in crime labs: “You cannot make chicken salad out of chicken feathers”. This is a reminder that the results of the scientific analysis of evidence from a crime scene are only as good as the evidence brought to the lab. If evidence is contaminated or degraded or the wrong evidence is collected, the evidence will be of limited or no value. The collection, preservation and packaging of evidence are crucial to a successful criminal investigation. Under ideal circumstances, crime scene investigation would be done by the forensic scientists who analyze the evidence because they know best how to recognize, collect, preserve and package it.

Unfortunately, caseloads being what they are, forensic scientists cannot afford the time it would take to process all crime scenes. The trend today, however, is to have a forensic scientist team respond to homicides and other serious crimes and they work with the crime scene investigators to process the scene. They form a team of experts whose areas of expertise might be important to the investigation. This would include DNA analysts, serologists (who are experts in locating and collecting small blood stains or other body fluids and who can process blood spatter patterns) and trace evidence scientists (who are adept at recognizing which trace evidence is important and how to properly collect it). Other specialists may be called in from time to time. For example, one or more forensic drug chemists are usually called on to help investigate scenes of clandestine drug activity such as a methamphetamine lab operation. These scenes can be very dangerous

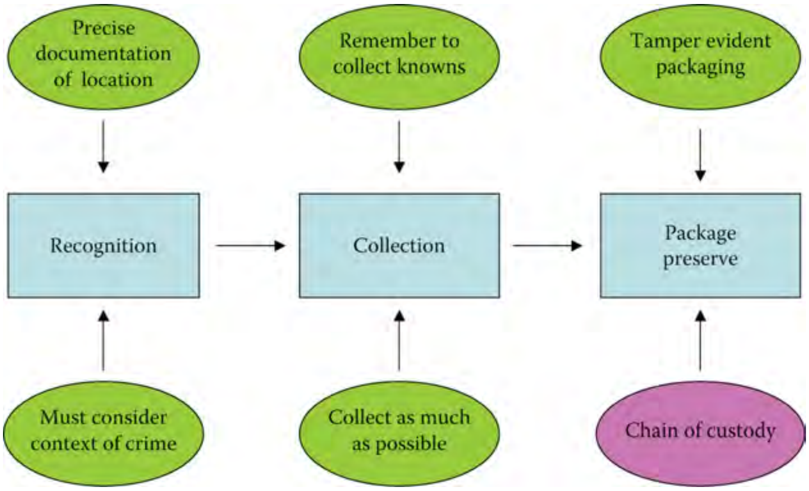

Precise documentation of location
Remember to collect knowns
Tamper evident packaging
Recognition
Collection
Package preserve
Must consider context of crime
Collect as much as possible
Chain of custody

Figure 2.7 The steps in the evidence collection process.

because of flammable chemicals and a lack of safety concerns by the homeowner. Clandestine laboratories are discussed in greater detail in the chapter on illicit drugs. When forensic scientist crime scene teams are sent to help local crime scene investigators process complex scenes, there is an agreement in place that establishes when the lab team is sent out and how the chain of command at the crime scene will be determined.

Three major steps in the process of evidence collection are recognition, collection and packaging/preservation. Each has other considerations that are important for the other steps. Figure 2.7 shows how these steps and their associated processes are related.

Recognition of Evidence

An object at a crime scene must be recognized as evidence before it can be collected. When you did the exercise of searching a room in your house or outdoors for evidence, you had the advantage of knowing what is supposed to be in these rooms. It is easier to recognize something that is out of place or does not belong to that place. That advantage is lost at a crime scene. The crime scene investigators do not know what objects belong to that particular location and therefore they do not know what objects may have been left there by the perpetrator. So how do investigators know what *is* evidence and what *is not*? This takes a thorough knowledge of what is likely to be present at the scene of a given type of crime. Homicides, burglaries, sexual assaults and other types of crimes usually contain characteristic types of evidence that the crime scene investigator would hope or expect to find. For a homicide, this might be a weapon, blood, fiber, hair and fingerprints. For a burglary, one might expect to find tools, glass, soil and perhaps fingerprints. For a rape scene, investigation often turns up hair, fiber and body fluid such as semen. This does not mean, of course, that these are the only items that will be present. These are guidelines that investigators use to start their search. The context of the crime, the type of crime and the type of scene are very important in providing clues to what evidence should be present. If the crime looks similar to another recent one, investigators might be watchful for evidence that would suggest the same MO and therefore the same perpetrator.

In general, there is no such thing as too much evidence. If an investigator has doubts about whether an object is significant, it should be collected and sent to the lab. As the investigation proceeds and the scene is reconstructed, it will be easier to determine whether the material is actually evidence. Once the crime scene unit is finished with the scene and it is released to the owners, it will not be possible to return and collect more evidence. For example, suppose an investigator comes upon fibers at a scene and neglects to collect them. Later on, it is determined that these fibers are important evidence, but the owners have taken possession of the premises and have vacuumed the carpets. The evidence is lost forever.

Once evidence is located but before it is collected, its exact location must be recorded. This may be done by photography and/or measurements with respect to a fixed object. This is necessary so that when reconstruction of the crime scene is done, the location of the evidence will be known. After it is moved and taken to the lab, evidence cannot be relocated at the scene. Besides the location of the evidence, other information must be recorded for chain of custody purposes. This will be discussed in more detail in the “Packaging and Preserving” section.

Collection

How much evidence should be collected? The short answer is: as much as possible. At clandestine drug laboratories, everything that could have any remote connection with the manufacturing operation is collected. In the case of illicit drug seizures, all of the drugs are collected, even if tons are involved. The forensic science laboratory will sort out the issue of sampling for analysis purposes later. In many cases involving trace evidence, the lack of sample may limit the tests that the scientists can do. In addition, the rules of evidence in the United States require that the defendant be given a fair chance to perform tests on the evidence. If it can be shown that there was more evidence available that was not collected or the government crime lab used all that was collected, the defense attorney may be able to have the evidence excluded from the trial on the grounds that the defense did not have an opportunity to analyze the evidence with its own expert.

Another important consideration in the collection of evidence is the issue of comparison samples, or “knowns”. Knowns are also referred to as *exemplars*. Exemplars are baseline, known evidence such as fingerprints, DNA, hair or voiceprints collected from suspects or victims for comparison with evidence taken from a crime scene. (The concept of known versus unknown evidence is further discussed in the next chapter.) With many types of evidence, the *probative* value or significance in the case can be greatly enhanced if it can be compared with and linked to a known material or object. Fingerprints found on an object have little meaning unless they can be compared to the exemplar fingerprints of a suspect and then shown to have originated from that person. Known evidence may be found at the crime scene or may be taken later from a suspect or another location linked to the primary crime scene. Known evidence (or exemplars) may link a suspect to the crime or may serve as elimination samples—samples that clear an individual from involvement in the crime.

A Really Big Case

In 1985, the U.S. Coast Guard seized a private boat that was racing up the Atlantic Coast near Virginia. The boat was boarded and 8.5 tons (17,000 lb) of suspected marijuana was found. This was taken to the Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) lab in Washington, DC, where it was identified as marijuana. Then it was transported to the Baltimore garbage incinerator where it was to be destroyed. The defense attorney in the case wanted the evidence analyzed by his own expert prior to its destruction. The expert (one of the authors of this book) went to the incinerator and found hundreds of bales of marijuana, each weighing hundreds of pounds. He took representative core samples from each bale. A DEA chemist followed behind and also took a sample from each bale. After each bale was sampled, it was incinerated. The resulting total sample weighed approximately 5 lb. This raises the issue of representative sampling of large exhibits of drugs. This topic is covered in the chapter on illicit drugs.

Packaging and Preserving Evidence

Once the evidence has been located and collected, it must be properly packaged. This may not seem too important at first glance, but it can be critical to a case. There are physical, scientific and legal requirements that determine how evidence should be packaged, and today appropriate packaging is available for all types of evidence.

Attention to detail and following proper protocol are vital when collecting evidence. Only one type of item can be collected per container or package. Crime scene personnel must change their gloves and tools after each item is collected to avoid contamination. These procedural guidelines make collection and preservation a long, tedious process, but they are essential for the proper preservation of evidence.

Chain of custody: Rules of evidence in federal and every state court in the United States require that all evidence be *authenticated*. Authentication requires:

1. A record of *who is in possession* of the evidence from the time it is collected at the crime scene until the time it is delivered to court. This detailed record is called the *chain of custody.*
2. The evidence must also be *uniquely identified* (e.g., using a bar code) in such a way so that it cannot be confused with any other piece of evidence and so that it can be shown that the evidence being used in court is the same evidence that was taken from the crime scene.
3. The evidence must also be *packaged* in *tamper-evident packaging.* This is both a document and a process that insures the integrity of the evidence. If the chain of custody has a substantial break—one that would seriously call into question the quality or integrity of the evidence—the evidence may be ruled inadmissible in court.

At one time, certain evidence from sexual assault cases was frequently challenged on chain of custody grounds. In cases of sexual assault, the victim is taken to a hospital (or often now to a SANE clinic—sexual assault nurse examiner). The victim's clothing is removed pursuant to an examination by a nurse or doctor. In years past, the clothes might be left in an examining room or elsewhere in the clinic that was not secure from the public. This clothing could potentially be the

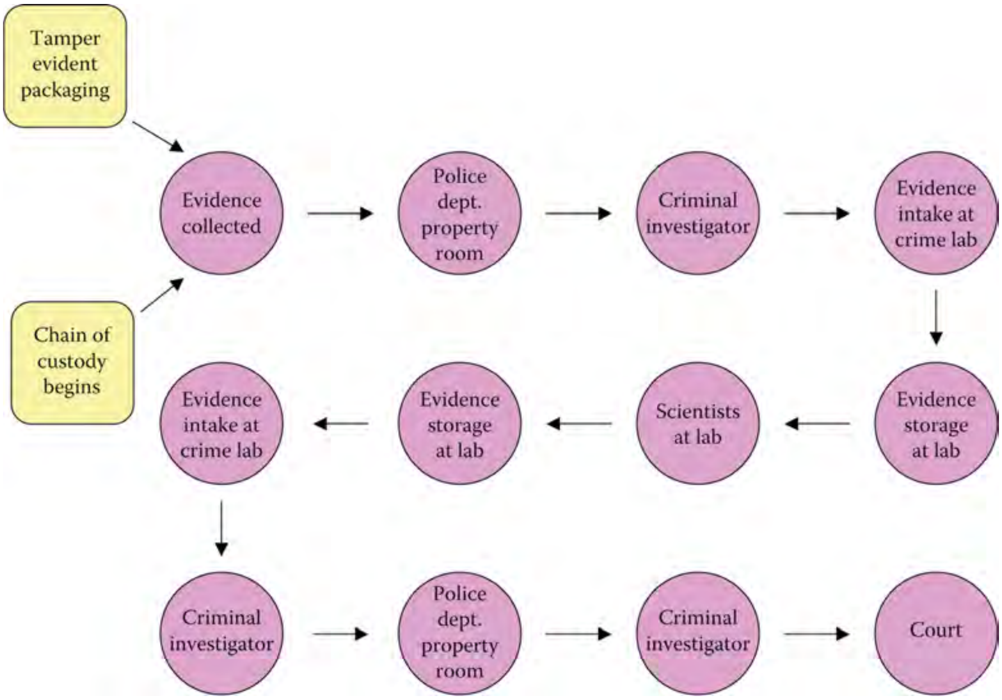

Tamper evident packaging
Chain of custody begins
Evidence collected
Police dept. property room
Criminal investigator
Evidence intake at crime lab
Evidence storage at lab
Scientists at lab
Evidence storage at lab
Evidence intake at crime lab
Criminal investigator
Police dept. property room
Criminal investigator
Court

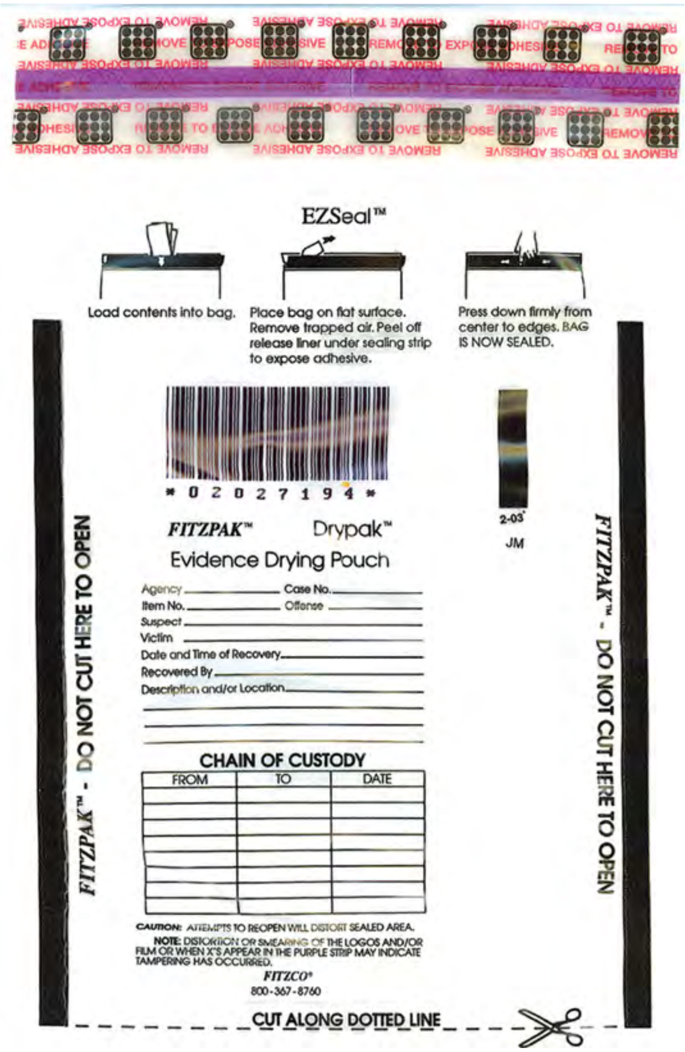
Figure 2.8 The flow of evidence from crime scene to court.

source of critical evidence of the identity of the perpetrator, especially in these days of DNA typing. Since no one was in possession and in charge of the evidence, the chain of custody might have been seriously damaged and evidence from these clothes might not have been admissible. Today, most hospitals and clinics have doctors and nurses who are trained in the collection and preservation of evidence from the victim. Crime labs or SANE clinics now supply doctors and nurses with “rape kits”—evidence kits that contain packaging for various types of evidence such as hair, vaginal swabs, individual articles of clothing and so on. The packaging is suitable for the criminal justice system and the chain of custody.

Figure 2.8 shows a typical journey of evidence from crime scene to court with chain of custody considerations along the way. Note how many times the evidence changes hands during its journey. This is why it is so important to maintain a record of who is in possession of the evidence at any given time.

Two of the most important elements of the chain of custody are tamper-evident packaging and the custody form. Tamper-evident packaging is just that. Once the package is sealed, no one can open it without leaving evidence that the package was opened. It must be cut or torn to get inside. This is sometimes erroneously called “tamper-proof” packaging, but there is no such thing. Any package can be opened using whatever force is necessary. In addition, there must be a form, sometimes incorporated in the package itself that has space for whoever has custody of the evidence to sign and date the form. Every time the evidence changes hands, the donor and receiver sign and date the form. This form is kept with the evidence at all times. Figure 2.9 is an example of a chain of custody form.

An alternative to the tamper-evident container is tamper-evident tape. This can be applied to any bag, box or pouch. It is very sticky and shreds when removed. Also, some of the glue from the tape is left behind on the package. Figure 2.10 shows one type of evidence tape.


REMOVE TO EXPOSE ADHESIVE
FITZPAK™ - DO NOT CUT HERE TO OPEN
FITZPAK™ - DO NOT CUT HERE TO OPEN
2-03
JM

EZSeal™

Load contents into bag.

Place bag on flat surface. Remove trapped air. Peel off release liner under sealing strip to expose adhesive.

Press down firmly from center to edges. BAG IS NOW SEALED.

* 0 2 0 2 7 1 9 4 *

FITZPAK™ Drypak™

Evidence Drying Pouch

Agency ____________ Case No. ____________
Item No. ____________ Offense ____________
Suspect ____________
Victim ____________
Date and Time of Recovery ____________
Recovered By ____________
Description and/or Location ____________

CHAIN OF CUSTODY

FROM	TO	DATE

CAUTION: ATTEMPTS TO REOPEN WILL DISTORT SEALED AREA.

NOTE: DISTORTION OR SMEARING OF THE LOGOS AND/OR FILM OR WHEN X'S APPEAR IN THE PURPLE STRIP MAY INDICATE TAMPERING HAS OCCURRED.

FITZCO®
800-367-8760

CUT ALONG DOTTED LINE

Figure 2.9 Tamper-evident packaging.

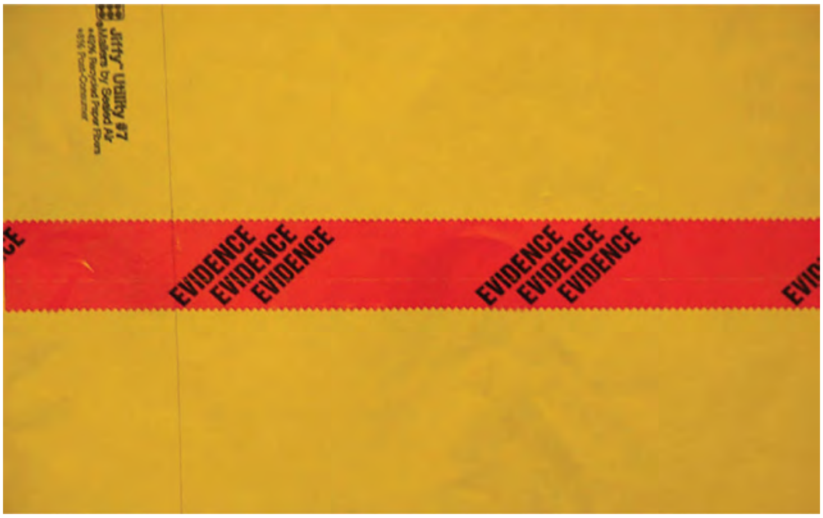

EVIDENCE EVIDENCE EVIDENCE

Figure 2.10 Tamper-proof evidence tape.

Preserving Evidence

In addition to being tamper-evident, packaging for evidence must also be designed to preserve the evidence to the maximum extent possible. From the time evidence is collected, it may be weeks or months until scientists at the crime lab are able to analyze it (many labs have several months of case backlogs). Different types of evidence require unique packaging to preserve it. Some of the more common evidence types that need special packaging are the following:

Living plants (marijuana) must be packaged in "breathable" containers such as paper bags. If the plants are packaged in airtight containers, they will rot and may become useless.

Biological evidence (wet blood or body fluids) should be allowed to dry or, if packaged wet, the container must be breathable. Blood can also be packaged in a glass or plastic culture tube that contains a preservative, usually ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA).

Wet paint should be allowed to dry or packaged in breathable container.

Trace evidence (hair, fiber, small paint chips or glass) should be placed in an envelope or plastic baggie sealed on all sides. It is not recommended to use tape to hold this evidence (commonly called a "tape lift"). The glue in the tape can interfere with the chemical analysis of the evidence and the evidence may be difficult to remove from the tape. Evidence can be put in a *druggist's fold* (also called an *evidence fold*) and then put into a tamper-evident envelope. A druggist fold is a piece of paper folded in such a way as to keep the evidence from leaking or falling out.

Small amounts of powder should be put in paper with a druggist's fold and then an envelope or baggie.

Fire residue must be put in an airtight container. Unused paint cans are best. If fire residue is put in breathable containers, the accelerant will evaporate.

As a side note, *fingerprints* are typically the last evidence taken at the scene due to possible contamination of fingerprint dust with other crime scene evidence.

Reconstruction

Remember that a crime scene is a slice of recent history. It has a story to tell and the evidence at the scene helps tell the story. Each piece of evidence contributes to the story. Once the evidence has been collected, analyzed and compared to known evidence, the criminal investigators, often with the help of forensic scientists, attempt to reconstruct the crime, including the identities of the victim(s) and the perpetrator(s) and the sequence of events that took place leading to the crime. The focus here is, of course, to link the suspect(s) to the crime through evidence and build a case that will stand up in court and convince a judge or jury of the guilt of the suspect beyond any reasonable doubt. Many types of evidence and circumstances go into building such a case, but one of the major foci must be the place where the crime occurred and the evidence that always accompanies the commission of any crime.

Summary

A crime scene is a place where a recent historical event—a crime—has taken place. As such, it has a story to tell about the events leading up to the crime, the crime itself and the immediate aftermath including the escape of the perpetrator from the scene. Like scenes of ancient history, crime scenes contain clues or evidence that help tell the story of the crime. This evidence must be recognized, carefully collected and preserved, and delivered to a crime laboratory for analysis.

The basic steps in crime scene investigation include

Discovery of the crime
First officer responds
Crime scene protocol
Preliminary scene examination
Systematic search
Documentation
Evidence collection and preservation
Reconstructing the crime

This process must meet legal requirements, including the chain of custody, in order for the evidence to be admissible in court.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. A crime scene does *not* have which of the following in common with historical events:
   a. Highly trained persons should be involved in the investigation
   b. A systematic plan must always be followed
   c. The safety of the searchers is important
   d. Care should be taken to avoid contamination
   e. Documentation of items collected is optional
2. The purpose of documenting the chain of custody of evidence is
   a. To make sure it gets to the correct scientist in the lab
   b. To keep the evidence from falling out and getting lost
   c. To make sure that the evidence is admissible in court
   d. To keep it from getting stolen
   e. To be able to identify the type of evidence
3. Which of the following is *not* a duty of the first responder to a crime scene?
   a. Tend to injured people
   b. Transport a dead body to the morgue
   c. Seal off the crime scene
   d. Notify crime scene investigators
   e. Perform a hot search
4. Search methods of a scene include which of the following:
   a. Grid, line, zone and aerial
   b. Grid, line, zone and spiral

   c. Line, zone, aerial and spiral
   d. Zone, spiral, sweep and line
   e. Aerial, sweep, line and zone
5. Photographs of a crime scene should be taken
   a. From a distance, mid-range and close-up with and without a scale
   b. From a distance, mid-range and close-up with a scale
   c. From a distance and close-up with and without a scale
   d. From four views at a distance and close-up
   e. Only from mid-range and close-up

True or False

6. All crime scene searches can be done by the grid method.
7. A cold search takes place long after the crime has occurred and assumes that the perpetrator has left the area.
8. An emergency medical technician (EMT) goes to a death scene to certify the death and make preliminary determinations as to the PMI.
9. A situation in which a police department sets up a scenario where people can commit crimes if they choose is called a reconstruction.
10. A druggist fold is used to package trace evidence.
11. Hand-drawn sketches of crime scenes are no longer done because of computer crime scene software.
12. All crime scenes are searched using the same type of search pattern.

Short Answer Questions

13. List at least three roles that crime scene investigators can play at a crime scene.
14. Research and describe the difference between a primary crime scene and a secondary crime scene.
15. List three types of evidence that should be placed in “breathable” containers and explain why it is important to use these types of containers.

Match Each of the Following Terms with Its Explanation

16. Chain of custody	a. The police officer who responded to a 911 call
17. *Corpus delicti*	b. The methods of a suspect when committing a crime
18. Exemplar	c. The length of time from death to discovery of a body
19. First responder	d. A staged event to cause a suspect to commit a crime
20. *Modus operandi*	e. The log of evidence from crime scene to court
21. PMI	f. Evidence used for comparison, a known sample
22. Probative	g. Containers for evidence that seal and prevent altering
23. Protocol	h. Evidence that can prove or disprove
24. Sting operation	i. Deems it necessary to prove a crime occurred
25. Tamper-evident	j. Detailed plan or procedure followed in an investigation packaging

Further Reading

Bodziak, W. T. (2000). *Footwear Impression Evidence*, 2nd edn. Taylor & Francis, New York.
Fisher, B. A. J. (2004). *Techniques of Crime Scene Investigation*, 7th edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
Grant, S. (2005). *CSI: Crime Scene Investigation: Secret Identity*. IDW Publishing, New York.
Wecht, C. H. (2004). *Crime Scene Investigation*. Reader's Digest, New York.

On the Web

http://science.howstuffworks.com/csi.htm.
www.crime-scene-investigator.net.
www.mycriminaljustice.com.
www.feinc.net/cs-inv-p.htm.
www.crimeandclues.com/crimescene.htm.
www.nist.gov/syste3m/files/documents/forensics/Crime-Scene-Investigation.pdf.
www.webadventures.rice.edu/Games/CSI-The_Experience.

Case Study

Case Study: The Murder of Helle Crafts

Helle Crafts, 39, was a flight attendant for Pan Am Airlines who had finished an overseas flight on November 18, 1986 (Figure 2.11). She was dropped off at her home in Newtown, Connecticut by a colleague around 7 pm, a bit later than expected due to a flight delay caused by a strong headwind from an approaching snowstorm. She was never seen or heard from again.

After almost two months, police arrested her husband, Richard Crafts, 49, the father of her three children, and charged him with her murder (Figure 2.12).

Figure 2.11 Helle Crafts.

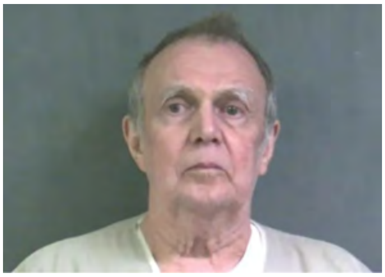


Figure 2.12 Richard Crafts in 2020, released from prison.

This case had multiple areas for crime scene investigation and collection of evidence.

Richard Crafts, a pilot for Eastern Airlines and former U.S. Marine, and his wife Helle were having marital problems. Helle was filing for divorce based on Richard's alleged affairs with other women. Richard was a strong and sometimes violent man who was sometimes cruel to his wife and children. He also worked part time with local law enforcement. When Helle was unaccounted for by her friends and family, Richard suggested that she had gone to Denmark to visit her ill mother. When that story did not pan out, he said she was off somewhere taking a vacation, he was not sure where she was, and for all he knew she might just show up one day. Luckily the Crafts had hired a nanny, Marie Thomas, who took care of the children while Richard worked for the airline and the local police agency.

Meanwhile Helle's friends and the private investigator she had hired to look into Richard's possible affairs were becoming alarmed by her absence without contacting any of them. Adding to their anxiety about her disappearance was the statement that she had made to a number of her friends, "If something happens to me, don't think it was an accident".

Eventually the police began investigating Helle's disappearance. Her car was found at the airport terminal. Marie Thomas reported that she had seen a dark stain about the size of a grapefruit on the bedroom carpet prior to its being pulled up and removed by Richard Crafts. Crafts had gone on a buying spree between November 10th and the 20th, for items such as a chain saw, a large chest freezer, bed linens, new carpeting, a large dump truck, fireproof gloves and a flathead shovel. He also rented a large woodchipper and a U-Haul truck (when his dump truck purchase had issues).

One of the major breaks in the case came from a snowplow operator who said he saw a man with a U-Haul truck and woodchipper late in the evening of November 20th and in the early morning hours of November 21 along the road adjacent to Lake Zoar. He thought it was strange to be running a chipper at that hour and during bad weather. A second witness also saw a U-Haul and chipper at the same location at 7 pm the evening of the 20th and even reported seeing piles of wood chips and bags of cloth or plastic in the back of the opened truck.

The Craft home was searched and traces of type O blood (Helle's blood type) were found in the bedroom and on the mattress. The blood spatters were determined to be due to probable blunt force trauma to the victim. Crime scene investigators searched the area where the witnesses saw the woodchipper and uncovered evidence that they were in the right location—a portion of an envelope addressed to Helle Crafts! In total the teams who searched the area and the lake found 3 ounces of human tissue, 69 slivers of human bone, 2660 strands of blonde hair, 5 droplets of human blood, a piece of human tooth, a partial dental crown, a cut piece of human skull, a part of a human finger, a fingernail and part of a toenail. Another very important find was a Stihl chain saw in the lake water with the serial number filed off. Lab personnel were able to raise the filed number and tied it to a recent purchase made by Richard Crafts. There was significant evidence found on teeth of the chain saw: human tissue, blonde hair and blue fibers that matched the rug from the Crafts bedroom. An odontologist who examined the dental crown and dental records found that it matched Helle Crafts.

Richard Crafts was arrested and charged with the murder of Helle Crafts by blunt force trauma in the bedroom of their home. He allegedly put her body in a freezer, chopped it into smaller pieces using the chain saw, bagged the pieces, froze them solid and then ran the body parts along with some wood through the woodchipper and into the lake. Some of the parts did not make it into the water along with the portion of the envelope that was found. Police theorize that this came from the pocket of a bathrobe that the victim was wearing at the time of her murder.

The first trial of Richard Crafts was in July of 1988 and ended in a mistrial. A second trial in 1989 was conducted in a different Connecticut city. This time the defendant was found guilty of the murder of Helle Crafts. It is interesting to note that this was the first conviction in Connecticut for murder in which an entire body was never recovered. He was sentenced by the judge to 50 years in prison. In early 2020, Crafts was released from incarceration 20 years early based on good behavior and prison work. As of this writing Crafts, now 82 years old, was living in a halfway house for veterans in Connecticut.

Read more details about this case: Lee, Henry C. with Thomas W. O'Neil. (2002) *Cracking Cases: the science of solving crimes.* Prometheus Books, New York.

https://morbidology.com/the-wood-chipper-murder-helle-crafts/
https://murderpedia.org/male.C/c/crafts-richard.htm
https://www.newtownbee.com/01302020/richard-crafts-moved-to-homeless-shelter-for-veterans/

3

Nature of Evidence

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to describe the difference between real and demonstrative evidence
2. To be able to describe the difference between known and unknown evidence
3. To be able to recognize when evidence is known and when it is unknown
4. To be able to define class evidence and individual evidence
5. To be able to determine whether a characteristic is class or individual
6. To be able to define identification and individualization
7. To be able to define and give examples of positive and negative controls
8. To be able to define a false positive and false negative test

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Classification of Evidence*
    - *Physical–Nonphysical Evidence*
    - *Real–Demonstrative Evidence*
    - *Known–Unknown Evidence*
    - *Individual–Class Evidence*
    - *Questions Raised about the Analysis of Pattern Evidence by the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) Forensic Science Committee*
- *Addressing the NAS Report Concerns About Pattern Evidence*
    - *Identification*
    - *DNA Typing Situation*
- *Positive and Negative Controls*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
    - *Multiple Choice Questions*
    - *True or False*
    - *Match the Examples on the Left with the Type of Evidence on the Right*
    - *Fill in the Blanks*
    - *Short Answer Questions*
    - *A Classroom Activity*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Class evidence: Evidence that cannot be associated with one particular object or person. It can only be put into a group of similar pieces of evidence.

Demonstrative evidence: Evidence that does not arise from the crime itself but is created to illustrate or explain evidence. Crime scene drawings or photographs are examples.

Evidence: Anything that will make an issue more or less true than it would be without the evidence.

False negative test: A chemical test that turns out negative even though it should have been positive.

False positive test: A chemical test that turns out positive even though it should have been negative.

Identification of evidence: The process of describing and documenting chemical, biological and/or physical characteristics of evidence.

Individual evidence: Evidence that can be associated with one particular person or object.

Known evidence: Evidence whose source or ownership is known at the time it is collected.

Material: Evidence is material if it pertains to the particular case that is being tried or investigated.

Negative control: A material, usually a matrix, which would be expected to respond negatively to a particular chemical test.

Nonphysical evidence: Evidence such as eye witness or expert testimony or interpretation of an analytical test.

Physical evidence: Evidence that consists of objects or people or materials taken from them.

Positive control: A material or chemical that would be expected to respond positively to a particular chemical test.

Probative: A piece of evidence that tends to prove or disprove a fact or assertion.

Real evidence: Evidence that is generated directly from criminal activity.

Relevant: Evidence that is both material and probative that pertains to the case at hand and tends to prove or disprove something about the case.

Unknown evidence: Evidence whose source or ownership is not known at the time it is discovered.

Acronyms:

DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid
CSAFE	Center for Statistics and Applications in Forensic Evidence
NAS	National Academy of Sciences
NCFS	National Committee on Forensic Science
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
OSAC	Organization of Scientific Area Committees for Forensic Science

Introduction

In Chapter 2, we learned that crime scene investigation is a type of reconstruction. It is somewhat like an archeological dig where anthropologists painstakingly search through the scene to find artifacts (evidence) of who lived at the scene, when they lived there, how they lived, and why and how they left. Sometimes, we call evidence clues. They are hints or pieces of data that help reconstruct a scene; in our case, a crime scene. Evidence can be thought of as something that supports or rejects a theory about a crime, how it occurred and who committed it. Evidence is defined in law books as *anything that would make an issue more or less likely that it would be without the evidence*. Another way of expressing this would be that evidence is *anything that tends to prove or disprove something at issue*. So does this mean that a crime scene investigator should seize everything at a crime scene in the hope or presumption that it might help prove or disprove something? More importantly, how does one decide what is evidence and what isn't? This is, of course, partly a question of experience but more an issue of context. A crime scene investigator will view the scene carefully to determine what type of crime may have occurred and that will guide her in what may be evidence and should be collected. Interestingly, the popularity of the TV show *CSI: Crime Scene Investigation* has resulted in a situation where juries often question why some evidence was not collected (like it would be on the show). This has caused prosecutors to direct investigators to collect practically everything—just in case. This situation even has a name: the CSI Effect!

Another concept in law also provides guidance as to which evidence should be collected. A rule of law states that evidence must be *relevant* if it is to be admitted into evidence. This means that it must be *material* (it must pertain to the particular crime being investigated and not some previous incident) and *probative* (it must actually prove something). Thus, crime scene investigators are guided by whether a potential piece of evidence passes or is likely to pass the relevance test. For example, at a homicide scene where the victim was killed by being shot with several bullets, what purpose would be served by seizing kitchen knives (assuming they are not bloody or in the victim)? The knives would not be relevant. This concept will be covered in more detail in Chapter 24.

Classification of Evidence

Evidence may be categorized in a number of different ways. At first glance, one may wonder why there should be so many different ways of doing this. As it turns out, the class or type of evidence can be very important in determining what value it has, how it should be collected, what else should be collected (controls, exemplars) and, most important, what conclusions can be drawn from a scientific examination of the evidence. There are also legal distinctions among different types of evidence that help determine its admissibility in court. The major classification systems for evidence are listed and discussed later. These schemes apply to all evidence, not just scientific or technical:

- Physical–nonphysical
- Real–demonstrative
- Known–unknown
- Individual–class

Physical–Nonphysical Evidence

Physical evidence consists of objects or things. Nonphysical evidence is verbal testimony about a crime or it may be someone's actions during a crime. If someone is seen running away from a bank robbery holding a bag of money, the action of running away is nonphysical evidence while the bag of money is physical evidence. The reason for discussing this somewhat obvious distinction is to emphasize that not every piece of evidence is an object. Courtroom dramas often focus on motive: why someone would commit a crime? This can be critical evidence. A motive is often required as an element of a crime. Sometimes, the distinction can be tricky. If a witness identifies a suspect at the scene of a bank robbery, what is the evidence? The suspect? The witness? The testimonial evidence of the identification? Suppose a polygraph test has been administered to a suspect as a means to detect deception. A qualified examiner interprets the polygraph chart and renders an expert opinion in court as to the truthfulness of the suspect. What is the evidence here? The machine? The squiggles on the chart? The testimony of the expert? Figuring out what is actually the evidence can be tricky but is very important.

Real–Demonstrative Evidence

Real evidence is that which is generated by criminal activity. It is found at the crime scene or elsewhere and pertains to the crime. It may be fingerprints left at the scene or those obtained from a suspect. It may be drugs or blood or bullets. Real evidence, however, may not be found at the crime scene. If someone is shot and killed and there is no weapon at the scene, a search of a suspect's house may turn up the gun. It is no less evidence because it was not found at the crime scene. Of course, testing will have to be done to prove that this is the gun that actually fired the fatal bullets. The vast majority of evidence in criminal cases is real evidence.

Demonstrative evidence, on the other hand, is created to help explain or clarify real evidence. It is produced after the crime and not by the crime. Crime scene investigators always make sketches or videotapes of crime scenes and sometimes produce scale drawings or physical models if needed. This way the crime scene is preserved for the jury long after it has been turned back to the owner. Increasingly, computer simulations of events such as fires, explosions, vehicle crashes, structural failures, etc., are produced to help determine how an incident occurred or to reconstruct it for a judge or jury. Demonstrations may be performed to illustrate the value or characteristics of evidence. About 20 years ago, one of the authors of this book was involved in a civil case that involved the issue of whether a certain hair product (a curl activator) could have caused the victim's hair to catch on fire when a lit match head accidentally flew into her hair during the act of lighting a cigarette. In order to answer this question, many samples of hair were tested with and without the product by dropping lit match heads into the hair and determining how long it took for the hair to catch fire. The entire process was videotaped and the tape shown to the jury. They were able to see that the hair product actually retarded burning. The videotape is a classic example of demonstrative evidence.

Known–Unknown Evidence

Probably the most important question that is asked about evidence found at a crime scene is: *Where did this come from?* In other words: *From what person or object did this arise?* The technical term for this source information is provenance. The value of every piece of real evidence arises from its association with someone or something that was involved in the crime. Crime scene reconstruction depends upon making these associations. We use the term *unknown evidence* to refer to evidence that is discovered at a crime scene and its origin or source is not known. A bullet found in the body of the victim of a homicide is unknown evidence. The criminal investigator is going to want to know where this bullet came from. What gun fired it? At the time it is discovered to be evidence, however, the bullet's source is unknown. Suppose a burglar breaks into a house by breaking a glass window and climbing through. On his way in he cuts himself on the broken glass that is still in the window, leaving some blood on the glass. Some of the broken glass from the window falls to the ground where the burglar steps on it and gets some imbedded in his shoe. After the crime is committed, the investigators examine the scene and find the blood on the glass in the window. The blood is an unknown; its source is not known to the police. The glass in the window is a known; it obviously comes from the window. The glass on the floor around the window is an unknown. It would be tempting to say that it must have come from that window, but there is no proof. It could have been there since before the crime was committed. When the suspect is arrested, a search warrant may be obtained to search his house for evidence, especially his shoes. The glass found embedded in his shoes is an unknown. It could have come from anywhere. In order to find out if it could have come from the glass in the window, it will have to be compared with glass taken from the broken window (known evidence). It is very important to be able to categorize evidence in this way. It guides criminal investigators and forensic scientists in their decisions about what evidence has to be tested and what known evidence must be collected in order to perform the tests.

Something for You to Do

What follows is a crime scenario and a list of possible pieces of evidence. Identify each one as known or unknown. If the evidence is unknown, then determine what known must be collected so that it can be compared to the unknown.

A man was walking across a street carrying a load of Christmas presents. A light blue car came careening down the street and hits the man with the right front fender of the car, killing him instantly. The car sped away from the scene at a high rate of speed without stopping. A witness who saw the crash called the police with a description of the car and a partial license plate number. A few minutes later, a car matching the description was stopped by police for speeding and suspicion of vehicular homicide. The car was then impounded. Upon inspection of the car, the crime scene investigator noted that the right front fender was badly damaged and some paint was missing. The right front headlight was broken and part of the glass lens was missing. The damaged area of the fender had some black fibers imbedded in it. Examination of the hit and run scene revealed that the victim's black coat had some light blue paint flecks imbedded in it. There were also a few flecks of glass in the fibers of the coat. The street around the victim's body had pieces of broken glass strewn about.

Possible Evidence

The victim's black coat and fibers taken from it
Fibers found imbedded in the damaged fender of the suspect car
Glass taken from the broken headlight of the suspect car
Glass from the street around the victim
Glass taken from the victim's coat
Paint chips taken from the victim's coat
Paint taken from the damaged area of the car

Individual–Class Evidence

In the previous section, we were asking questions about the origin or source of evidence. Now, we must examine what types of answers can be given to these questions. Consider, for example, a fingerprint left on a wine glass at the scene of a crime. This might be evidence of the perpetrator's presence at the scene. It is clearly unknown evidence. If a suspect is identified, a fingerprint examiner can compare the print on the wine glass with fingerprints known to be from the suspect. The question of association now becomes: *With what certainty can we conclude that an unknown print from a crime scene came from a particular finger on a particular person?* For more than 100 years, fingerprint examiners have testified in court that a latent fingerprint found on an object *definitely came* from a particular finger of a particular person. Fingerprint experts will testify that they are sure of this conclusion to a degree of reasonable scientific certainty. Now consider a case where some blue denim fibers (blue jeans) are found on an overturned chair in a room where a dead body is found clothed in white polyester pajamas. Later a suspect is identified who is wearing blue jeans. Fibers from these blue jeans are compared with those from the chair at the scene in order to determine if the jeans were the source of these fibers. In this case, the fiber expert could only testify that blue denim fibers found at the scene of the murder *could have come from* the pants worn by the suspect. Analysis of evidence of this type cannot support a conclusion that the unknown fibers definitely came from the blue jeans worn by the suspect. There is certainly a difference in the conclusions reached by the scientists in these two cases. In the first case, the examiner has concluded that there is only one finger that could have left the fingerprint on the object at the crime scene. In the other case, the examiner concludes that the fibers are similar to those from the pants worn by the suspect but they could also be from another pair of pants of the same type, made of the same fibers. Why is there a difference in the conclusions? The answer lies in the concept of individuality and uniqueness. In the case of fingerprints, the examiner concludes that there are characteristics of each fingerprint on each person that makes that print unique. The argument goes that, if there are enough of these unique characteristics in the pattern of a latent fingerprint found on an object, then that latent print must have come from the one single finger. The underlying principle is that all fingerprints are measurably, demonstrably unique. This will be discussed further in Chapter 10.

In the case of the blue denim fibers, the examiner was unable to conclude that the fibers from the crime scene definitely came from the pair of pants worn by the suspect. This is because the fibers in a given pair of pants are not unique. Mass production of textiles means that there are sure to be many pairs of pants made from the same batch of fibers and there is nothing that is unique about any one pair. Even if the unknown fibers from the crime scene had exactly the same characteristics as those from the suspect's pants, it does not rule out the possibility that fibers from another pair of pants would also match exactly.

The two examples given earlier, fingerprints and fibers, are examples of *individual* and *class* evidence, respectively. One way of defining individual evidence is that it is evidence that could have arisen from only one source, in the case given earlier, one fingerprint. Class evidence is evidence that could have any of several possible sources. In most cases, the number of possible sources is unknown. There is another important concept at work here and that is *probability.* If a fingerprint examiner concludes that the print on the wine glass came from the suspect's right index finger, she is really saying that the probability that the fingerprint came from someone else is negligible. Any chance that the print could have another source can be ignored. On the other hand, the fiber examiner's conclusion implies that there could be other pairs of pants besides those worn by the suspect that could have been the source of the unknown fibers. This being the case, an important question would be: *What is the probability that the fibers came from the pants worn by the suspect?* Certainly a jury that would be considering the guilt or innocence of the suspect would want to know how likely it is that the source of the unknown fibers were his jeans. Unfortunately, in most cases, forensic scientists do not have enough data about the frequency of evidence such as fibers to calculate or even estimate such probabilities. This is a major weakness in the value of such evidence but at this time is the state of the science. These concepts will be discussed in more detail in the chapters that follow on the various types of evidence.

Questions Raised about the Analysis of Pattern Evidence by the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) Forensic Science Committee

Some of the oldest examples of the admission of scientific evidence into U.S. courts have been fingerprints, firearms and questioned documents. Some of these types have been admitted into courts at trial for more than 100 years. In these cases and others, conclusions are rendered about the association of known and unknown evidence and, in many cases, these include statements of individuality between evidence from a crime scene and exemplars taken from a suspect. Thus, for more than 120 years, fingerprint examiners have made statements in court that a fingerprint found on an object at the scene of a crime CAME from a particular finger on the suspect (the fingerprint was INDIVIDUALIZED to the suspect's finger). The same types of conclusions have been and are expressed in courts all over the United States in cases that compare spent bullets and cartridges to particular weapons and to the identification of the author of handwriting.

The curious, or perhaps, disturbing situation with these types of conclusions is that in none of these types of evidence has there ever been creditable SCIENTIFIC proof of the underlying principles of these evidence analyses. So, for example, in order for a conclusion of individualization of a fingerprint left at a crime scene to a known print to be valid, it must be shown that all fingerprints are demonstrably and measurably unique, or that the markings left on bullets and/or cartridges fired from a rifled weapon are unique to that weapon, or that every person's handwriting is demonstrably and measurably different from everyone else's. None of these principles (hypotheses) have been established by systematic, rigorous, controlled scientific studies. Some forensic examiners in these areas will assert that in their vast experience in case work they have never seen two fingerprints (or handwriting) from different individuals that were indistinguishable or have never seen markings on bullets or cartridges made by different weapons were indistinguishable, which proves that these types of evidence are unique. There are several problems with these positions. First, the actual (ground) truth of the source of such evidence is not known (except perhaps by the perpetrator) and so the forensic examiner's conclusion cannot be independently verified. Second, the limited examples of research that looks into these issues are conducted on pristine fingerprints or bullets/cartridges or large samples of handwriting. In actual casework, the evidence is often less than ideal, being smudged, damaged or limited. Third, there are no current standards for what actually constitutes a concordance between known and unknown evidence. There is no agreement on how many matching ridges must be present on the known and unknown fingerprints, or markings on known and unknown bullets and cartridges, or how many common characteristics must exist on known and unknown handwriting. Absent such standards, how can experts agree on what constitutes a "match" between known and unknown evidence? Fourth, there is no statistical evidence of how common ridge patterns, bullet/cartridge markings or handwriting characteristics are in casework, making expressions of error rates, confidence intervals or certainty of conclusions, virtually impossible.

All of these issues were discussed extensively at meetings of the NAS Forensic Science Committee, and they figured repeatedly and significantly in the recommendations of the Committee in their report. These can be seen especially in Recommendation 3, which calls for scientific studies on the validity of forensic analytical methods, and their reliability and accuracy as well as in Recommendation 6, which seeks to develop tools for advancing measurement, validation and reliability of testing in the forensic sciences.

Addressing the NAS Report Concerns About Pattern Evidence

The National Committee on Forensic Science (NCFS) discussed in Chapter 1 addressed the concerns brought forward by the NAS Report during their meetings from 2014 to 2017, but did not come to complete resolution of all the concerns. The assessment of pattern evidence remained a subjective, problematic area of forensic investigation. A core concern was that pattern evidence evaluation had no standard as to what constituted enough similarity to be considered to be a "match". Unlike DNA analysis, there were no statistical estimates of uncertainty in pattern evidence (fingerprints, blood pattern analysis, firearms and treadprints). After the Department of Justice disbanded the NCFS in 2017, much of the work to standardize and address statistical validation of pattern evidence was transferred to the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). Within NIST, two departments are currently working on forensic science validation; the Center for Statistics and Applications in Forensic Evidence (CSAFE) and the Organization of Scientific Area Committees (OSAC) for Forensic Science. CSAFE is a consortium of university scientists and statisticians that are researching validation and statistics in blood pattern analysis, firearms, toolmarks, fingerprints, shoeprints and treadmarks. OSAC is comprised of Scientific Area Committees (SACs) in 25 different forensic science areas. The pattern evidence committees are addressing validation and statistical analysis for their areas of expertise. As of this writing the committees are working on developing computer algorithms that would automate some aspect of the fingerprint process, reducing the human error and improving efficiency and reliability. Firearms ID research has already developed algorithms that can analyze breech face markings using three-dimensional surface scans via a computer. It will take time, but there is progress toward improved validation of pattern evidence.

Identification

When evidence is collected from a crime scene or an object or suspect, what happens to it when it gets to the laboratory? What types of analysis do forensic scientists perform on evidence? There are two major types of analysis: *identification* and *comparison*. The first, identification, is always performed on all evidence, known or unknown. Identification is a process of discovering chemical, biological and/or physical properties of a piece of evidence. In the case of the fingerprint on the wine glass, the examiner would visualize the print and remove it from the wine glass and preserve it. She would then examine it carefully, noting its size and shape and the patterns that the ridges on the print form (level 1 detail). Then there would be further examination to determine exactly what types of ridges are present and their location relative to each other (level 2 details called *minutiae*).

The examiner might even note the presence and positions of microscopic sweat pores and similar features (level 3 detail). All of these details are physical characteristics of the fingerprint. When known fingerprints are obtained and brought to the lab, the same process is used to identify them. Then the details from the known and unknown prints are carefully compared. The overall patterns of the prints (level 1) must of course be the same. This pattern is a *class characteristic*. It is common to many fingerprints. If there are enough corresponding level two minutiae, these are the individualizing characteristics, the ones that enable the examiner to conclude that the unknown and known prints have a common source; the same finger made them. If level 3 characteristics are also present, they provide further confirmation. In this case, the fingerprint examiner purports to *individualize* the evidence because of the presence of unique ridge characteristics. Examine Figure 3.1. It shows level 1 and 2 characteristics from known and unknown palm prints and how the prints are compared.

Now consider the blue denim fibers discussed earlier. The fibers found on the chair will be examined in the laboratory by a forensic chemist. She will note the length and diameter of the fibers as well as their shape. She will also determine their exact color by a spectroscopic technique (see Chapter 5 for a detailed discussion). She will also determine the chemical composition of the fibers (e.g., cotton, wool, acrylic, etc.). These physical and chemical characteristics constitute the identification phase of the analysis of the fibers. When the blue jeans are recovered, representative samples of fibers are collected from them and they are identified in the same way. If all of the physical and chemical characteristics of the known and unknown fibers are the same, some of them may be compared side by side under a microscope. Even with all of this testing, the examiner will only be able to conclude that the known and unknown fibers belong to the same class; blue denim fibers. There are no unique characteristics present in these fibers, so no conclusion of individuality would be permitted. This is the fundamental difference between class evidence and individual evidence. Individual evidence must contain

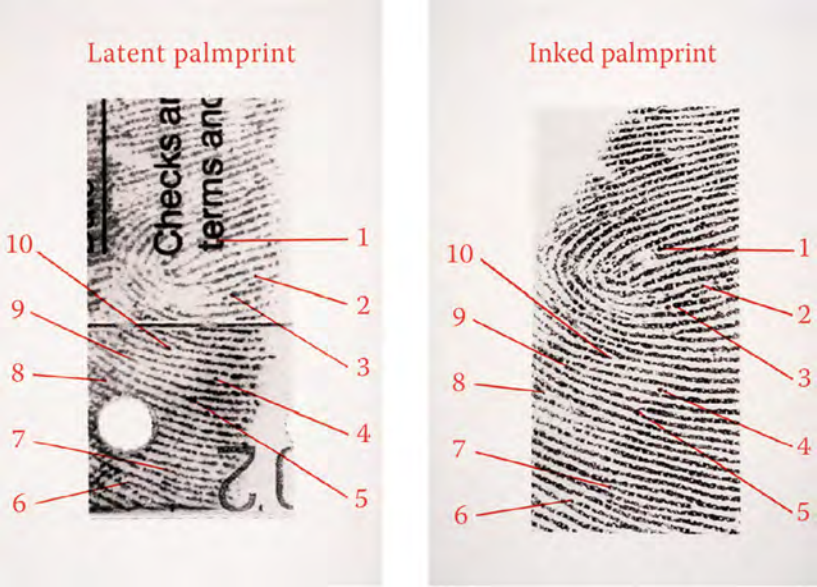


Figure 3.1 Palm print comparison. The examiner found 10 points of identification on the partial palm print lifted from the crime scene and was able to find the 10 corresponding points on an inked palm print from the suspect. (Courtesy of David Zauner.)

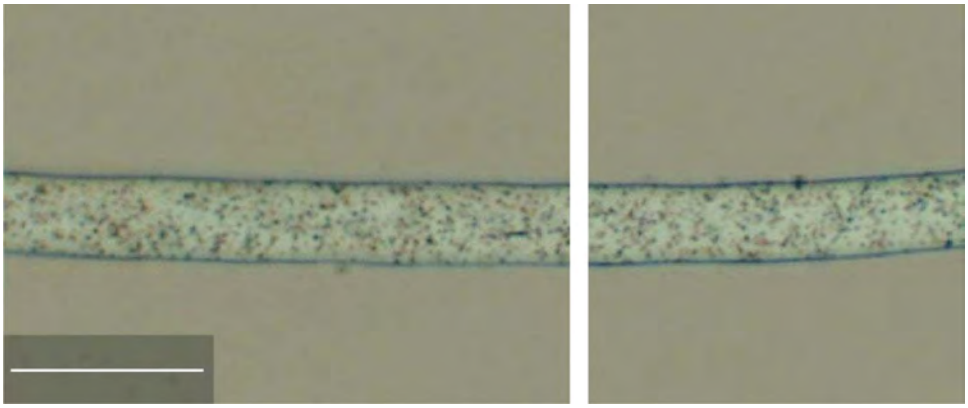


Figure 3.2 Synthetic fiber comparison. The two photomicrographs of these fibers indicate many similarities and no unexplainable differences between them. The examiner can conclude that the fibers could have arisen from the same source. (Courtesy of Max Houck.)

unique characteristics found only in the known and unknown evidence and not found in any other members of this class of evidence. Side-by-side comparison must be performed and sufficient unique characteristics must be present in both the known and unknown evidence and there must be no unexplainable differences. What constitutes sufficient unique characteristics is a function of the type of evidence and the experience of the examiner. Figure 3.2 shows a comparison of two fibers under a microscope.

All physical evidence types can be classified as being class or individual evidence. Table 3.1 contains a list of some evidence types that are considered to be individualizable along with the characteristics that lead to this conclusion. There is also a list of some evidence types that are not individualizable along with why they are not.

TABLE 3.1
Some Types of Individual and Class Evidence Showing the Major Characteristics

Individualizable Evidence	**Individualizing Characteristics**
Fingerprints	Level 2 and 3 minutiae details
Handwriting	Individual, unique style and characteristics
Shoeprints and tire treads	Unique characteristics that develop with time, damage and wear
Large pieces of paint or glass or paper, etc.	Fracture or tear match with unique edge characteristics
DNA	Rarity of any DNA type makes probability of two people with same DNA extremely improbable
Class Evidence	**Why Not Individual?**
Tiny glass or paint fragments	Too small to fracture match, no unique chemical or physical properties
Soils	No classification system. Too much variability between nearby samples
Hairs and fibers	No unique characteristics. Hair can be individualized if DNA present
Illicit drugs, explosives, fire residues, etc.	Can identify all chemical components but no unique characteristics

In those cases where individualization is possible, there are a few points that have to be considered and kept in mind:

- There is no set number of unique points that must be present in the known and unknown for any of these evidence types. At one time, there were standards for the number of points that had to be demonstrated for fingerprints, but this standard varied from state to state in the United States and from country to country, so there really was no standard. Today the standard is that there must be enough points present for the examiner to be sure of her conclusion that that the unknown and known have a common source.
- With the exception of DNA, there is no statistical data for any of these evidence types that can support the certainty of a conclusion. There is no data about the uniqueness of a particular fingerprint or shoeprint or bullet that would allow an examiner to state that the unknown matched the known to a degree of 90% or 95% or 98% certainty. The examiner can only conclude that the fingerprints or shoeprints or bullets "match" and have a common source. This has led to some problems with questions of rates of error for these types of analysis. Since examiners do not know the certainty of their conclusions, they leave no room for error and cannot explain what the error rate is. Some examiners thus conclude that the error rate is zero, which is, of course, not possible in a scientific examination. In one study of error rates of fingerprints conducted by an international forensic science organization, 19% type 1 (false positive conclusions) were obtained. These disturbing findings call into question the individuality of fingerprints and examiners' ability to successfully compare knowns and unknowns.
- There has been insufficient rigorous, scientific validation of the principles that underlie the conclusions of individuality of these evidence types (except for DNA). For example, when a firearms examiner concludes that a bullet came from a particular weapon, the principle that underlies the conclusion is that each weapon leaves unique markings on the surface of bullets that were fired from that weapon. The markings on the surface of such bullets become a sort of signature of that weapon. But this principle has not been subjected to the level of rigorous scientific testing that would be needed to firmly establish the conclusions to a degree of scientific certainty. However, this principle has been accepted in courts for many years and there have been few questions raised about it until very recently. There have also been trials where the validity of conclusions of individuality has been challenged for handwriting and fingerprints. Some courts have ruled that handwriting evidence has not been proven to be unique. One Federal court questioned the premise that all fingerprints are unique, but admitted the fingerprint. In a recent case in Baltimore, Maryland, the judge ruled that there was no scientific basis for the conclusion of individuality of fingerprints. These decisions may have implications about the admissibility of some or all of these types of evidence in court in the future. We will return to this issue in more detail in Chapter 24 on legal aspects of forensic science.

To summarize so far, all scientific evidence is identified, meaning that relevant physical, biological and chemical characteristics are described and documented. In order to establish individuality in those evidence types that have this potential, there must be sufficient unique characteristics that are common to the known and

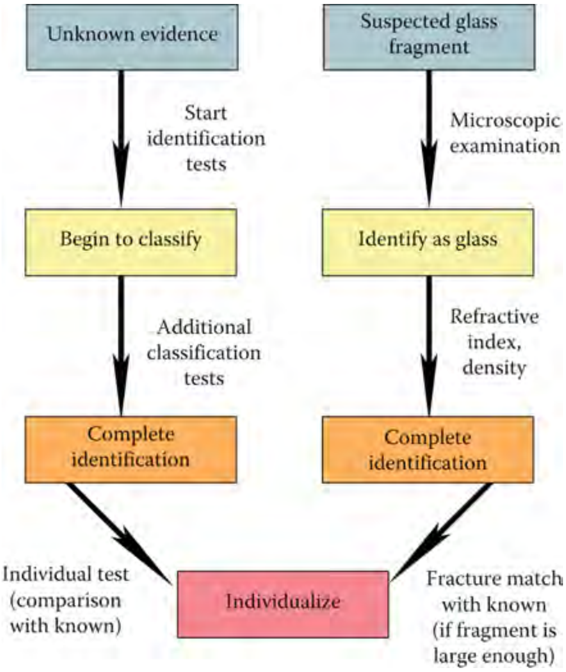

Unknown evidence
Start identification tests
Begin to classify
Additional classification tests
Complete identification
Individual test (comparison with known)
Suspected glass fragment
Microscopic examination
Identify as glass
Refractive index, density
Complete identification
Fracture match with known (if fragment is large enough)
Individualize

Figure 3.3 A scheme for the analysis of evidence using a glass comparison as an example. First, screening tests are done that show similarities and differences between the known and unknown. Additional classification tests are done followed by a more specific individualizing test, if it exists. This may lead to a determination of the exact source of the unknown glass. (Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.)

unknown evidence. Figure 3.3 illustrates the classification of evidence in general and a specific illustration of the process with glass fragments.

DNA Typing Situation

The science of DNA analysis has developed to the point that it is usually considered to be individual evidence. Virtually every forensic science laboratory in the world recognizes this. The mode of comparison of known and unknown biological samples for DNA is different than that for other types of potentially individualizable evidence. Recall that the principle for individualization of fingerprint, handwriting, firearms evidence, etc., is that the evidence is purported to contain unique characteristics that would not be found in other evidence of that type. The difference with DNA evidence is that the characteristics that are being compared are not unique to that one person. When DNA is typed, comparisons are made between the known and unknown DNA at more than a dozen locations. The structure of the DNA is determined at each of these locations. These parts of human DNA are not unique but they are *polymorphic*; there are multiple forms within the human population. Each person possesses one or two forms (depending upon the DNA of their parents) of DNA at each location and the status of each location is independent of the others. There is also reliable data about how common each form is in the human population. We know that if a piece of known DNA and unknown DNA have the same forms at all 13 locations, then the probability that the two pieces of DNA have the same source is so astronomically high that all other possible sources are essentially eliminated. Thus, what makes DNA different from other types of evidence is that there is quantitative data that helps in making associations of evidence with a particular source. This will be covered in more detail in Chapter 17.

Positive and Negative Controls

Suppose you are a forensic serologist in a crime lab and you receive evidence from a homicide where the victim was alleged to have been stabbed to death with a knife. You receive a shirt that was worn by the victim at the time of the alleged homicide. The shirt has red stains on it that you are asked to identify. One of the first tests performed on such evidence is a test to determine whether the stains are in fact blood. There are a number of tests that determine if a red stain is blood. One of the more popular tests is called the phenolphthalein test. If a red stain is blood, it will react with phenolphthalein to give a purple color. There are other substances that will also turn purple, but these *false positives* are well known to forensic scientists. The phenolphthalein test is run by moistening a sterile swab and applying it to the stained area until transfer of some of the stain is noted on the swab. The swab is then tested with the phenolphthalein reagent. If the reagent turns purple, it is possible that blood is present. In reality, this test could come out positive for two reasons. The first, of course, is that the stain is really blood. But it could be that the stain is not blood but that there is something in the fibers of the shirt that causes the test to give a false positive reading. A false positive test is one that comes out positive when it should be negative. How do we detect which is occurring in this case? The best way is to take some fibers from the shirt that have no blood on them and test them exactly the same way as with the fibers that contain the stain. The fibers without the stain should come out negative when the test is run on them. If that is the case, then the positive result on the fibers with the stain must be due to the stain, which we would then presume to be blood. We call the fibers that have no stain on them; *negative controls*. A negative control is a known substance or material that would be expected to yield a negative result to a particular test. A negative control should always be run whenever a chemical test is being run on a substance that is mixed with a matrix such as the shirt. This guards against the matrix being the reason for the positive test.

Now let us suppose that in the bloody shirt case given earlier the phenolphthalein test comes out negative. No color change is observed. There are two reasons why this could happen. The first is the obvious one; the red stain is not blood. It is ketchup or beet juice or something like that. The other reason is that the test may not be working properly. Maybe one of the reagents has deteriorated or was improperly prepared. In this case, the failure of the test to react to what is actually blood would be called a *false negative* test. One sure way to find out would be to take a sample of known blood and run the test on that. If it comes out positive, as it should, then we know that the test is working properly. The known blood is called a *positive control*. This is a substance that would be expected to respond positively to the test. Positive controls should always be run any time a chemical test is used to avoid false negative results. The consequences of getting false positive and false negative tests can be serious but false positive results are more so. A person can be falsely accused of a crime on the basis of a false positive result. The criminal justice system should always operate in a manner that minimizes false arrests or accusations. Remember also that good science dictates that both false positive and false negative results should be avoided.

Summary

Evidence can be classified in a number of different ways:

- Physical/nonphysical
- Real/demonstrative
- Known/unknown
- Class/individual

If evidence is discovered at a crime scene and its source (the object or person it came from) is not known, then the evidence is considered to be unknown. Evidence collected from particular people or objects is known. Unknown evidence is compared to known evidence to help determine the source of the unknown. All evidence undergoes an identification process whereby its physical and chemical characteristics are discovered and described. The evidence is put into successively smaller classes. If the evidence has unique characteristics and can be compared to known evidence with the same characteristics, then the unknown can be put into a class of one and is said to be individual evidence. Individual evidence can be associated with one object or person.

Many analytical tests must be verified to make sure that they are working properly. Positive controls are used to make sure that the chemicals in a test are functioning properly so that there are no false negative results. Negative controls are used to make sure that only the target of the test will react with the reagents in the test and that a false positive reaction is not being seen.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. A positive control
   a. If not used, will cause a false positive test
   b. Has an unknown source
   c. Is used in a confirmatory test only
   d. Is a substance that is expected to give a positive result to the test
2. An individual test
   a. Puts the evidence in a class of one
   b. Is run on one piece of evidence at a time
   c. Always gives inconclusive results
   d. Is only run on chemical evidence
3. Identification
   a. Always individualizes evidence
   b. Describes physical and chemical properties of evidence
   c. Always requires a comparison test
   d. Is only done on positive controls
4. Unknown evidence
   a. Means evidence whose source is never determined
   b. Means evidence whose source is unknown at the time it is discovered

   c. Can never be individualized
   d. Is always class evidence
5. The statement in court that “the evidence found at the crime came from the suspect” conveys the meaning that
   a. The evidence is individual evidence
   b. The evidence is class evidence
   c. The evidence is unknown
   d. The evidence is demonstrative
6. Which of the following is demonstrative evidence?
   a. Fibers found on the victim of a homicide
   b. Fibers taken from the suspect in the homicide
   c. A scale drawing of the crime scene
   d. The getaway car used by the suspect to flee the crime
7. Which of the following is an example of demonstrative evidence?
   a. Soil tracked into a kitchen in a burglary case
   b. A gun found in the possession of a suspect in a homicide case
   c. Photographs of the scene of a fatal automobile crash
   d. A plaster cast of a shoeprint recovered from the garden of a home where a burglary took place
   e. None of these

True or False

8. For a fingerprint examiner to conclude that a fingerprint on a gun was left by the suspect in a murder case, there must be at least 16 unique ridge details in the known and unknown prints.
9. The individuality of DNA evidence is based on the probability that no two people have the same DNA type.
10. A suspected accelerant (e.g., gasoline) is found at a fire scene in a chair cushion. A sample of the cushion without the accelerant would be a positive control.

Match the Examples on the Left with the Type of Evidence on the Right

11. A scale model crime scene drawing
12. A blood sample taken from the suspect of a crime
13. A human hair found on a car seat in a kidnapping case
14. Shoeprints
15. A polygraph chart

a. Unknown evidence
b. Nonphysical evidence
c. Individual evidence
d. Demonstrative evidence
e. Known evidence

Fill in the Blanks

16. A false positive test can occur when the scientists fail to run the test on a ____________________.
17. Evidence that is generated by crime scene activity and which can be found at the crime scene or elsewhere is ____________________ evidence.

18. ____________________ is the process of describing and documenting physical, chemical or biological properties of evidence.
19. Evidence that cannot be associated with one particular person or object is ____________________.
20. Large pieces of glass can be individualized by a ____________________ test.

Short Answer Questions

21. Why are some types of evidence individual whereas others are class?
22. How is DNA different than other types of individual evidence?
23. What is demonstrative evidence? Give an example. Of what value is it?
24. What is unknown evidence? How does it become known?
25. What is a false positive test? Why should they be avoided if at all possible.

A Classroom Activity

A man goes into a bank to commit a robbery. He shoves a handwritten note to the teller demanding money. He gets the money and starts to leave the bank when a guard tries to stop him. The robber shoots and fatally wounds the guard. But, before dying, the guard gets off a shot, which nicks the robber in the arm, causing him to bleed. Classify each of the following types of evidence as either "known" or "unknown".

1. Blood spots found on the floor near the entrance to the bank
2. The note demanding money given to the teller
3. A sample of the robber's handwriting
4. A bullet test fired from the robber's gun

Further Reading

James, S. H. and J. J. Nordby (eds.). (2003). *Forensic Science: An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Kirk, P. L. (1994). *Crime Investigation*, 2nd edn. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

O'Hara, C. E. and J. W. Osterburg (1949). *An Introduction to Criminalistics*. MacMillan, New York.

Thorwald, J. (1966). *Crime and Science, First* American edn. Harcourt Brace & World, New York.

On the Web

A discussion of *Daubert v. Merrill Dow*: https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/509/579/

A discussion of the Frye case: http://www.casebriefs.com/blog/law/evidence/evidence-keyed-to-fisher/lay-opinions-and-expert-testimony/frye-v-u-s/.

Discussion of Frye v. United States, Scientific Evidence: https://law.jrank.org/pages/2006/Scientific-Evidence-Frye-v-United-States.html

Federal Rules of Evidence 2020 Edition: https://www.rulesofevidence.org

Federal Rules of Evidence, Complete Text: https://www.law.cornell.edu/rules/fre

Case Study

Case Study: Missing Evidence—No Body in Murder Trial

It is difficult to convict someone of murder when no body is recovered. In the case of Doug Stewart, that hurdle was overcome by forensic evidence and a forthright accomplice. Thirty-two-year-old Michigan native Venus Stewart, wife of Doug and the mother of their two young children, went to the mailbox early in the morning on April 26, 2010 in her pajamas. She was never seen or heard from again. What unfolded in the coming months and then eight years later was a strange tale of murder and deceit.

Doug Stewart met Venus McComb in 2002 when she was 24 years old and a university student in West Michigan. They both were enamored with each other and decided to marry in less than a week, eloping to Ohio to be married by a judge. Venus' parents, Terese and Larry McComb, were shocked.

Venus and Doug had two children, two girls. Doug, a former Marine, was a stay-at-home dad while his wife worked at a local bank. Besides caring for the two toddlers, he spent much of his time doing online gaming, particularly X-Box online with other gamers. The marriage began to fall apart and the couple began arguing with each other. They had some trial separations and then in 2009, Venus suggested they move away from Michigan and start over with the girls in Newport News, Virginia. Doug got a job as a truck driver and the family moved into an apartment. But soon the arguments and marriage difficulties arose again. Venus claimed Doug was abusive and, in 2010, she left Virginia with the children and dog and flew home to Colon, Michigan to live with her parents. Doug claimed she could not take the pressure of being a mom and left, so he went to the police to file a missing person's report, only to find out Venus had been there earlier to file a complaint against him. The Newport News police department would not follow through on the complaint, so she decided to leave and head home to Michigan.

After Venus returned to Michigan with her two girls to her parents' home, she and Doug began a custody battle for the children. After two months of hearings, Venus won custody of the girls and Doug, who was still living in Virginia at their apartment, was awarded phone contact only.

Approximately one week later, on April 26, 2010, Terese McComb (Venus' mother) left early in the morning for work at a local restaurant. Her husband, Larry, a truck driver, was still sleeping, along with her two granddaughters. Venus was awake and after her mother left, went out to the mailbox, still in her pajamas. She did not return.

Larry McComb was awakened by his noisy granddaughters at about 8 am and got up to see why Venus was not quieting the girls. Thirty-two-year-old Venus Stewart was nowhere to be found. Her wallet, keys and cellphone were still in the house. Larry called 911 to report her missing. When the Michigan State police showed up at the McComb residence, Larry showed the officer a few things that were out of place outside the house. First, the gravel in the driveway had a patch that was disturbed as if it was pushed, second, there was a pink hair tie on the ground near the drive and third, there was a tarp wrapper from Walmart under his boat trailer that did not belong to him. Figure 3.4 shows police photos at the McComb home.

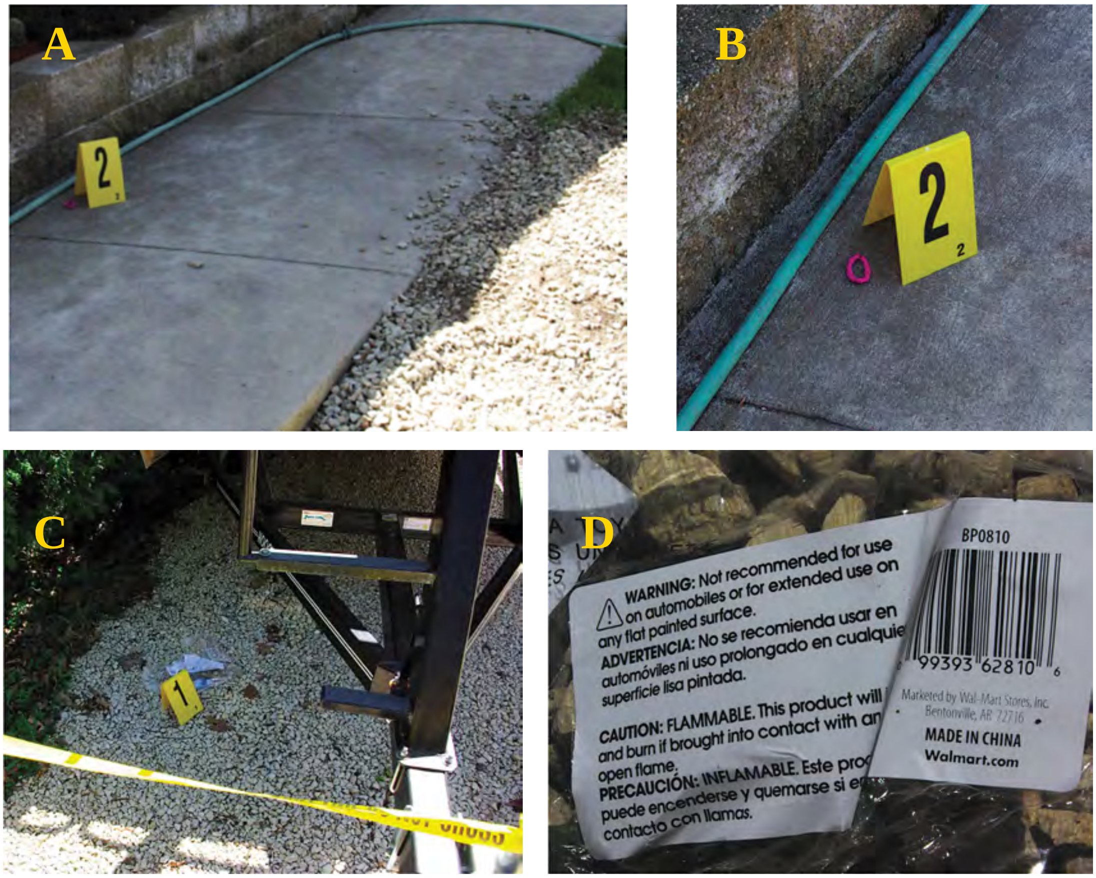

A
2
B
2
C
1
D
WARNING: Not recommended for use on automobiles or for extended use on any flat painted surface.
ADVERTENCIA: No se recomienda usar en automóviles ni uso prolongado en cualquie superficie lisa pintada.
CAUTION: FLAMMABLE. This product will and burn if brought into contact with an open flame.
PRECAUCIÓN: INFLAMABLE. Este pro puede encenderse y quemarse si e contacto con llamas.
BP0810
99393 62810 6
Marketed by Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. Bentonville, AR 72716
MADE IN CHINA
Walmart.com

Figure 3.4 Photo A-gravel disturbed in McCombs driveway. Photo B-Pink hair tie on sidewalk. Photo C-Tarp wrapper under boat trailer. Photo D-Wrapper bar code and Walmart label. (*Photos courtesy of the Michigan State Police.*)

MSP (Michigan State Police) searched the area and could not find any signs of Venus. They attempted to contact Doug Stewart to see if he knew her whereabouts or if she had contacted him. Doug finally answered their call that evening and he said he had been in Virginia all day and had not heard from her. He stated that he had been to his lawyer's office in the morning making a payment. The two secretaries in the office to whom he made the payment could verify this. The FBI in Virginia checked out his story and indeed a payment had been made by Doug that morning. The secretaries stated that Doug was wearing a ball cap, hooded sweatshirt with the hood pulled up and sunglasses, and he said he was in a hurry so he dropped off the payment without getting a receipt. Authorities in Newport News also checked video surveillance in the apartment complex where Doug Stewart lived and verified that a man similar to Doug was seen in the elevator lobby, the garage and driving away in his car.

Two months passed and still no contact from Venus or any trace of her anywhere in Michigan or Virginia. Authorities had no suspects, except for Doug Stewart, however it appeared he had been in Virginia at the time of her disappearance. Doug continued to claim that Venus ran away from her family and that she was hiding somewhere. Meanwhile, Virginia police and representatives from the MSP got a search warrant for Doug's apartment and truck. In the truck they found a Walmart receipt for a shovel, a ball cap, gloves and a tarp. The receipt was from a Walmart in Van Wert, Ohio on April 25, 2010. Police returned to Doug's lawyer's office to double check that Doug was in their office the morning of April 26th. The secretaries stated that the man paid Doug's bill, but they really could not see his face due to the sunglasses and hoodie. Zeroing in on Doug Stewart, state police began checking his cell phone records. Three to four days prior to Venus' disappearance, Doug had made numerous calls to one number. On the 25th of April, his cell phone was turned off and was not turned on again until the evening of the 26th when again there were calls to the same number as before. That number belonged to Ricky Spencer who lived in Bear, Delaware.

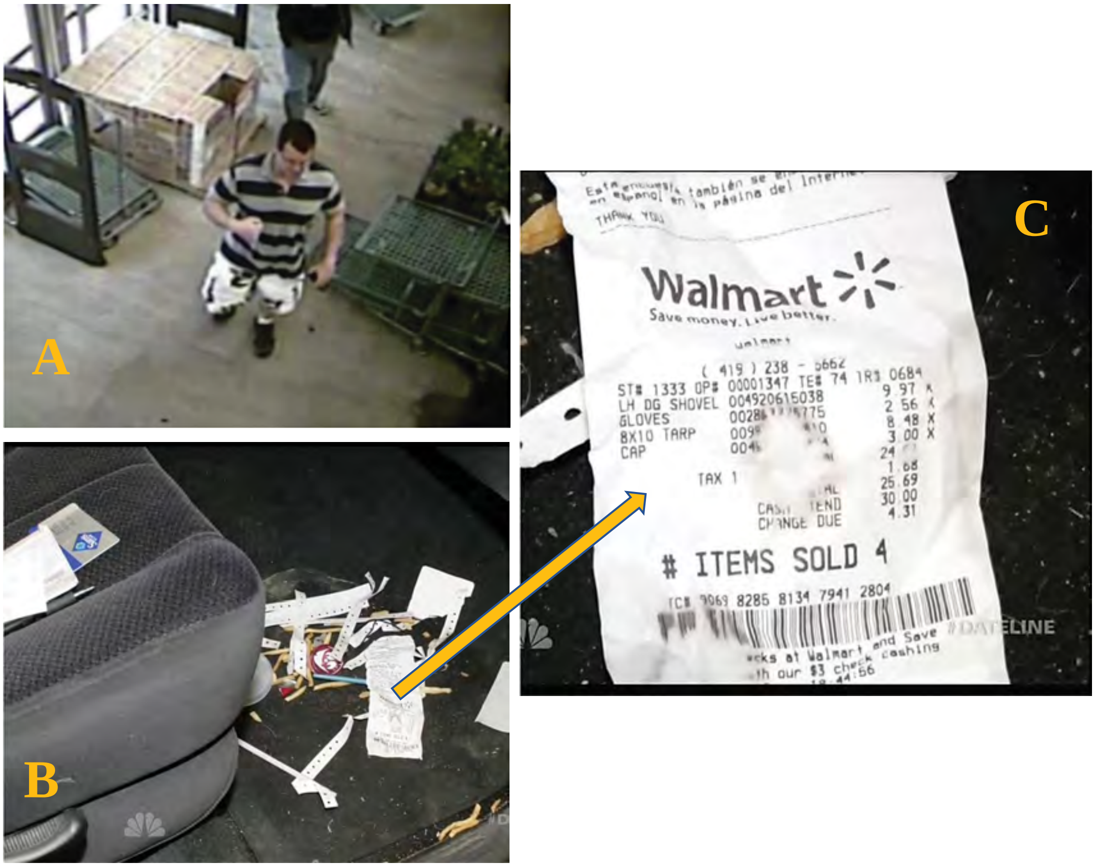
Ricky Spencer was a 20-year-old college student who lived with his parents. He knew Doug Stewart through online gaming and had been playing X-Box Live with Doug for about a year and a half. Authorities interviewed Ricky in Delaware about his relationship with Stewart and initially Ricky was vague, but after questioning he told a bizarre story of deception, abduction and murder.

The two men had never met other than via online X-Box games. However, Doug invited Ricky to spend his April spring break week with him in Newport News, enticing him with spending time at a local amusement park, drinking and gaming. Ricky accepted. After a few days of fun, Doug began complaining about Venus, portraying her as an abusive mother whom he thought might harm his two little girls. He asked Ricky if he would help by posing as him in Newport News while he went up to Michigan to "get rid of her" and bury her body. Initially resistant, Ricky finally agreed.

Cell phone records for Ricky indicate he talked to Doug the morning of the 25th of April and then he turned off his phone. He did, however, turn his phone back on later in the morning and cell tower data indicated he was in Virginia near Doug's apartment. Doug had given Ricky his credit card and keys to his car and apartment. Ricky was to make himself seen by video cameras, wearing Doug's clothing and driving his car. Doug also told him to charge food to his credit card and make the lawyer payment the morning of the 26th.

After Ricky's interview, Doug Stewart was arrested in Michigan, where he was staying temporarily. Police declared Venus Stewart as deceased without having located her body and began to build their charge of premeditated first-degree murder. The MSP discovered that Doug had bought a TracFone with a credit card, making it identifiable and easy to trace. The phone put him in Van Wert, Ohio (where the Walmart was located) on the 25th and then the next morning in west Michigan less than 10 miles from where Venus and the children were staying. Walmart had video of Doug in the store purchasing the shovel, tarp and other materials. Plus, he had the Walmart receipt in his truck (see Figure 3.5). The tarp wrapper found under the boat trailer at the McComb home had a fingerprint on it. The fingerprint was determined to be that of Doug Stewart.

February 2011 in Centerville, Michigan, the murder trial of Doug Stewart began. Although Venus's body was not found, the prosecutor believed he had enough evidence to convince the jury that Doug Stewart planned and carried out the murder of his wife, Venus.



THANK YOU

Walmart
Save money. Live better.

(419) 238 - 5662
ST# 1333 OP# 00001347 TE# 74 TR# 0684
LH DG SHOVEL 004920615038 9 97 X
GLOVES 0028 2 56 X
8X10 TARP 009 8 48 X
CAP 004 3 00 X
24
TAX 1 1 68
25 69
CASH TEND 30 00
CHANGE DUE 4 31

ITEMS SOLD 4

TC# 9069 8285 8134 7941 2804

Figure 3.5 Photo A-Doug Stewart in Ohio Walmart. Photo B-Ohio Walmart receipt in Stewart's truck. Photo C-Close up of receipt showing purchases.

The receipt in the truck, the fingerprint on the tarp at the scene, the cell phone records, etc. were good evidence, but the testimony of Ricky Spencer was key to the state's case. A month later, on March 11, 2011, the jury found Doug Stewart guilty of premeditated first-degree murder. On April 18, 2011 a judge sentenced him to life in prison without possibility of parole. Ricky Spencer made a deal with the prosecution for his testimony and pled guilty to conspiracy to commit murder. He was sentenced to a year in jail.

In prison Doug Stewart insisted that he was innocent and that Venus was hiding away somewhere. He exhausted all his attempts to appeal his conviction and sentence. Finally, in October of 2018, he admitted that he had abducted and strangled his wife, and then buried her body in a wooded area in Kalamazoo County, north of her parents' home. Why did he finally admit to the murder? Doug's sister pressured him into telling the truth for his family and his daughters. In addition, he requested and was granted access to X-Box games in prison in exchange for the location of his wife's body. Stewart led state police to the area where he buried her and the remains recovered were identified as that of Venus Stewart (Figure 3.6) Finally, on December 15, 2018, she was laid to rest next to her father who had passed away earlier that same year, not knowing that his daughter body would finally be found.

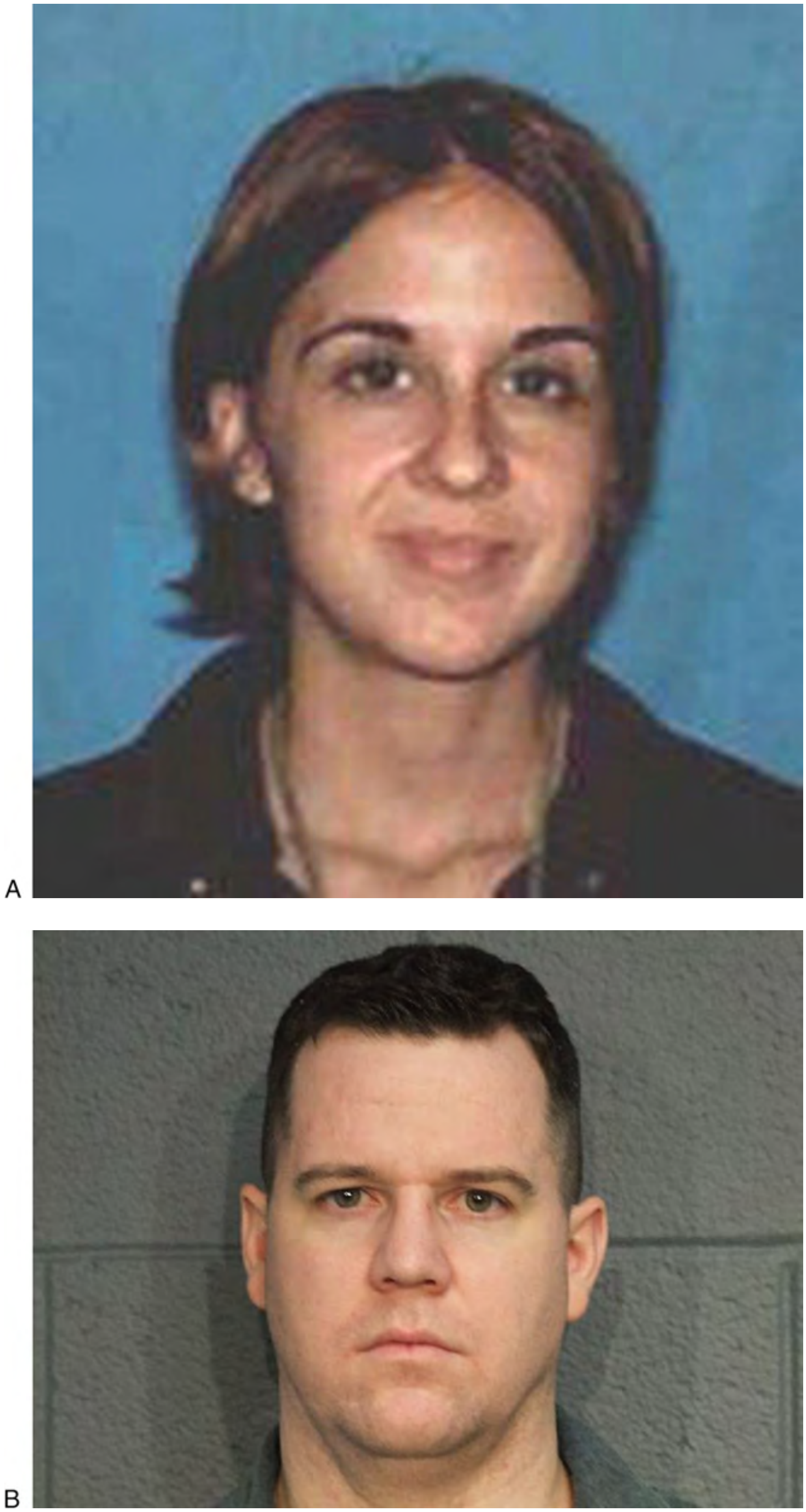
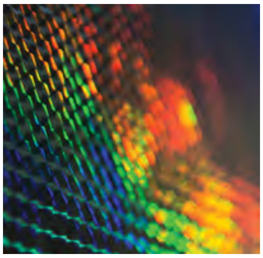


Figure 3.6 A and B Venus and Doug Stewart.

For more information: https://www.mlive.com/news/g66l-2019/01/ce148b38d79275/how-murdered-mother-venus-stewarts-body-was-finally-found-8-years-later.html

PART II

Tools of the Trade



4

Separating Complex Mixtures

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to explain the concept of pH
2. To be able to recognize polar and nonpolar substances and distinguish between them
3. To be able to explain how a liquid extraction of an acid or basic drug is carried out
4. To be able to define and characterize the different types of chromatography
5. To be able to explain the basic principles of gas chromatography
6. To be able to explain the basic principles of high-performance liquid chromatography
7. To be able to explain the basic principles of thin-layer chromatography
8. To be able to explain the basic principles of electrophoresis

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Physical Separation of Mixtures*
  - *Using Solvents to Separate Solids*
  - *Polarity*
  - *Rule of Thumb in Chemistry*
  - *pH*
- *Solid-Phase Extractions*
- *Chromatography*
  - *Quantitative Analysis*
  - *Types of Chromatography*
  - *Gas Chromatography*
  - *Pyrolysis Gas Chromatography*
  - *High-Performance Liquid Chromatography*
  - *Thin-Layer Chromatography*
  - *Running Thin-Layer Chromatography*
  - *Detection of TLC Analyte Components*
  - *Interpreting TLC Plates*
  - *Electrophoresis*
  - *Gel Electrophoresis*
  - *Capillary Electrophoresis*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*

Mini Glossary

Adsorption: A process whereby a solid in solution or liquid is attracted to the surface of a finely divided solid such as charcoal.

Analyte: The mixture of substances that are to be analyzed or separated.

Chromatography: A family of separation techniques based upon the attraction of components of an analyte by a stationary or mobile phase.

Electrophoresis: A type of chromatography where the mobile phase is an electric current. It is capable of separating substances which are very similar in structure, such as fragments of DNA.

Elution: After an analyte component is captured by a stationary phase in chromatography, it can be washed off with a suitable solvent. This process is called elution.

Gas chromatography: A type of chromatography where the stationary phase is a solid and the mobile phase is a gas.

High-performance liquid chromatography: A type of chromatography where the mobile phase is a liquid or liquid solution and the stationary phase is a solid or viscous liquid in a column. The analyte is dissolved and then mixed with the mobile phase and then pumped through the stationary phase.

Immiscible: A condition whereby two liquids will not mix or dissolve in one another. Examples include water and gasoline.

Ionic: Made up of ions, which are molecules that have extra electrons (negative ions) or are deficient in electrons (positive ions).

Liquid–liquid extraction: A type of extraction process where the analyte is dissolved in a liquid and then extracted with an immiscible liquid to remove one or more components.

Mobile phase: A liquid solution or gas that carries the analyte over or through the stationary phase in chromatography.

pH: The negative logarithm of the concentration of H^+ in an aqueous solution. A measure of the acidity of the solution.

Polarity: The property of molecules whereby they act like magnets with a positive and negative side. Nonpolar molecules are neutral, having neither a positive or negative side.

Pyrogram: A chromatographic chart of peaks representing fragments of a substance that has undergone pyrolysis.

Pyrolysis: Heating a substance to high temperatures in the absence of oxygen. Instead of burning, the substance decomposes into simpler fragments. Pyrolysis can be carried out with gas chromatography to analyze substances with high boiling points such as plastics, paints and fibers.

Separatory funnel: A piece of glassware that is used to separate two immiscible liquids.

Solid-phase extraction: An extraction method whereby a finely divided solid is used to adsorb liquids or solids in solution

Stationary phase: A solid or viscous liquid that attracts various components of the analyte and separates them.

Thin-layer chromatography: A type of chromatography where the stationary phase is a solid that is coated onto the surface of a plastic or glass plate. The mobile phase is a liquid or solution that travels through the stationary phase by capillary action carrying the analyte.

Retention factor (Rf): In thin-layer chromatography, the retention factor is the ratio between the distance that a given analyte component traveled up the plate from the point where the analyte spots are made, to the distance that the mobile phase travels. An Rf is specific to a substance using a particular stationary phase and a particular mobile phase.

Resolution: The ability of a chromatographic system to separate and detect two closely related compounds.

Acronyms

GC	Gas chromatography
GLC	Gas–liquid chromatography
HPLC	High-performance liquid chromatography
PyGC or PGC	Pyrolysis gas chromatography
TLC	Thin-layer chromatography

Introduction

Very few substances in our environment exist in a pure state. Air is a solution of many gases including oxygen, nitrogen, carbon dioxide, many pollutants and other substances. Our drinking water contains many minerals, salts and unfortunately, pollutants. The same is true with forensic chemical evidence. In some cases, only one component of the mixture is important. An example of this would be a white powder that contains an illicit drug such as cocaine that has been mixed with other inert powders such as sugars. These are used to dilute the drug in order to maximize profit. In other cases, the entire mixture is the evidence. For example, gasoline is a common accelerant used to start fires. It contains over 300 separate substances. It is identified as gasoline by separating these substances from each other and examining the separated components. It is the only substance that has these particular hydrocarbons in unique proportions. There are many cases where forensic chemists are called upon to identify one or more components of a mixture. Often, it is necessary to separate the mixture into individual substances before identifying them. Sometimes, the evidence consists of many exhibits or large quantities of a single mixture. Other times the mixture occurs in only trace amounts in a particular case. Figure 4.1 shows various kinds of complex mixtures.

Many types of chemical evidence consist of mixtures. There are solid mixtures such as illicit drugs, paint chips containing pigment and polymers or piles of rubble containing explosive residues. There are liquid/solid mixtures such as soil that contains liquid residues from an accelerant used in a fire. There are liquid mixtures such as gasoline or blood. Each of these different types of mixtures requires different methods of handling and analysis, including methods to

Figure 4.1 Examples of complex mixtures. Milk is both a solution and suspension and is very complex. Soil is a mixture of organic and inorganic solids. Paint is also both a solution and suspension and is one of the most complex commercial products.

separate the components of the mixtures. In some cases, we are interested in separating and perhaps identifying most or all the components of the mixture. In other cases, only one component of the mixture is of interest such as the drug in an illicit drug mixture or the explosive residue in a pile of rubble at the scene of an explosion. In this chapter, we will discuss various types of mixtures and how they are separated into individual components and how they analyzed. We will consider large quantities of mixtures and very small ones, and various combinations of solid and liquid mixtures.

Physical Separation of Mixtures

A physical separation is used when one or more of the components of the mixture must be separated from the rest of the mixture and recovered. An example of this is the explosive residue in the pile of rubble mentioned earlier. Most of this debris is not evidence and thus not important to investigators. But the debris may contain particles of undetonated explosive and/or pieces of the bomb that contained the explosive, perhaps pieces of a timing device or some tape that held the bomb together. The best method for sifting through this rubble may be physically sorting using a low-power stereomicroscope. The stereomicroscope magnifies objects and allows them to be viewed in three dimensions. This is discussed in detail in Chapter 6. This can be a time-consuming, arduous task, and requires a skilled examiner who can identify particles of explosives and explosive devices.

Another example of a physical separation occurs in adulterated products. One of the authors had a case a few years ago where glass particles had been added to a package of salad mix. The product had to be hand searched to pick out the glass particles from the vegetables.

Sometimes, a single sieve or a set of nested sieves can be very useful for physically separating solid mixtures. If one is trying to find bullet fragments in a pile of sand, a sieve of the appropriate mesh to pass the sand through but trap the bullet fragments can be used. Sometimes, soil samples are profiled by separating the soil into particles of various sizes. A set of nested sieves, with each one having successively smaller mesh sizes, can be used. A soil sample is dried and weighed and then poured through the nest of sieves. Various size ranges of particles are trapped in each sieve. The percentage of each size range in the soil sample can then be calculated by weighing the contents of each sieve. Figure 4.2 shows a set of nested sieves.

Something for You to Do

You can make your own sieves by purchasing some screen material at a hardware store. You can buy screens of different meshes (the size of the spaces between the screen wires). A sieve can be made by stretching some screen material across a frame made of wood or metal and fastening it with nails or staples. The mixture can be placed in the sieve. Put a bucket or other container underneath and gently shake the sieve. Particles smaller than the mesh size will pass through the screen into the bucket, leaving behind only the larger

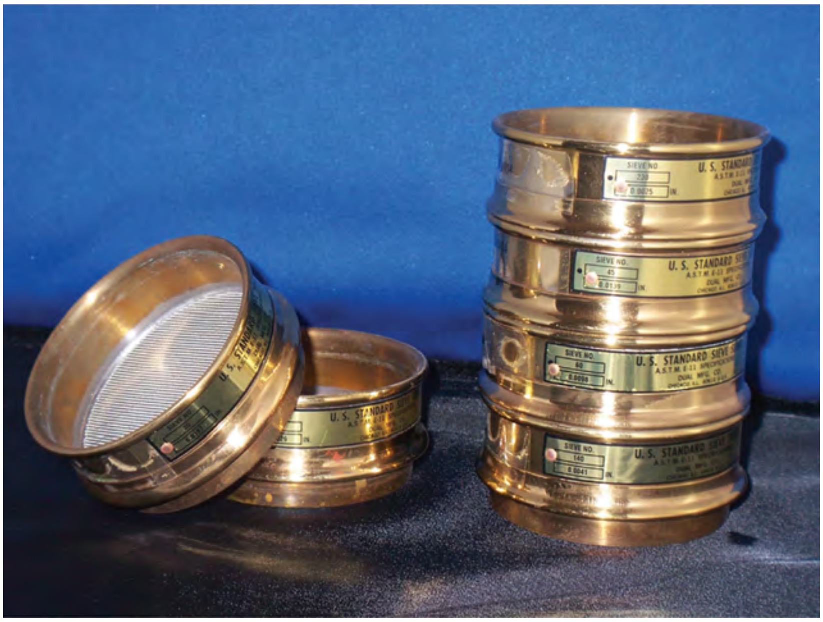


Figure 4.2 A group of nested sieves. Each sieve has a finer mesh than the one above it. The sieves are put in a series and soil or other material is poured through it. After gentle shaking, the soil is distributed throughout the sieves by particle size.

pieces. Strainers and colanders are kitchen appliances that are also essentially sieves.

For this exercise, you will need a sieve or two and a magnifying glass or other small magnifier. Take some dirt and put it in three small plastic containers. To one, add a penny and mix thoroughly. To the second, add a couple of metal staples. To the third, add some table salt. Now figure out what the best way would be to recover the "evidence" (the penny, the staples and the salt) from the soil mixture. The best way of recovery for one type of evidence may be different than for another type. In determining the best method, consider that you want to get as much of the evidence as possible in the shortest amount of time. You cannot use water or another solvent. Remember to consider some useful properties of pennies, staples and salt when you design your strategies.

Using Solvents to Separate Solids

In the exercise given earlier, it would be tempting to take advantage of the solubility of table salt in water and just add water to the soil containing the table salt. Then the water could be poured off and evaporated, thus recovering the table salt. This would be acceptable, except for the fact that other water-soluble substances might also dissolve, and then when the water is evaporated they would recrystallize and mix with the salt, or the components of the table salt (sodium and chloride ions) could react with other substances in the soil and form new substances.

Separating parts of a mixture by their differential solubility in water or other solvents should only be done when the examiner has a good idea of what else is in the mixture or when the crystal structure of the component is not an issue. Solubility can be a very powerful means of separating mixtures. It is especially effective in cases where the particles are so small that it would be difficult or impossible to physically separate them or when there is only a small amount of material available to process. The proper use of solvents to separate components of a mixture relies on two properties of solids and solvents: *pH* and *polarity*. These are two chemical properties of substances that are determined by their structure. They can often be manipulated and exploited to make them favorable candidates for separation. In the discussion that follows, these properties will be used to illustrate how an illicit drug can be separated from a typical mixture of inert powders that are used as cutting agents used to dilute the drug. A typical case involves a baggie of white powder that contains cocaine mixed with fructose, a sugar that is a common cutting agent for illicit drugs. The chemist's goal here is to separate the cocaine from the cutting agent. In these cases, the particles of cocaine and sucrose are extremely small and very well mixed, so it is not possible to physically separate them even under a microscope. Instead, the chemist will rely on pH and polarity to effect the separation. The ultimate purpose of this separation will be to confirm the presence of the cocaine. In order to do this, the cocaine must be pure; completely free of the sucrose. The separation method that is employed in these cases is called a *liquid–liquid extraction*. This type of separation involves the use of two *immiscible* solvents. These are liquids that do not dissolve or mix with each other. Cooking oil and water are examples of immiscible solvents. Before discussing the details of the liquid–liquid extraction, we need to look closer at pH and polarity, the two properties that we will exploit to help separate the two solids.

Polarity

Students in elementary school learn that a magnet has two *poles*, north and south, and that electric charges can be either positive or negative. The same is true with certain kinds of chemicals. Some are *neutral*. They do not have poles. Other molecules are unbalanced, and they have a positive side (deficient in electrons) and a negative side (excess electrons). These substances are called *polar*, whereas the ones that do not have positive or negative sides are called *nonpolar*. There are degrees of polarity in chemistry, and it is possible for one substance to be more or less polar than another one. Some can be described as *slightly polar* or *very polar*. The most polar substances have actual, identifiable positive and negative sides. Made up of positive and negative ions, they are called *ionic substances*. They are always solids. Sodium chloride (table salt) is an example of an ionic compound. It is designated as Na^+Cl^-, and it is pretty clear which end is positive and which end is negative. Figure 4.3a shows some polar and nonpolar substances. The ones shown in this figure are all liquids and gases. Note that water is included in the polar substances. Figure 4.3b shows the polarity of water in detail.

Rule of Thumb in Chemistry

Why is it that some solids or liquids are soluble in certain liquids but others are not? Olive oil and vinegar make a nice salad dressing but the two liquids do not mix at all. Ethyl alcohol is very soluble in water. Add some flavorings and you have alcoholic beverages. Table salt is very soluble in water but not in cleaning fluid. The reason for this lies in the polarity of the two substances. The substance that is being dissolved is called the *solute*. The substance that the solute is dissolved in

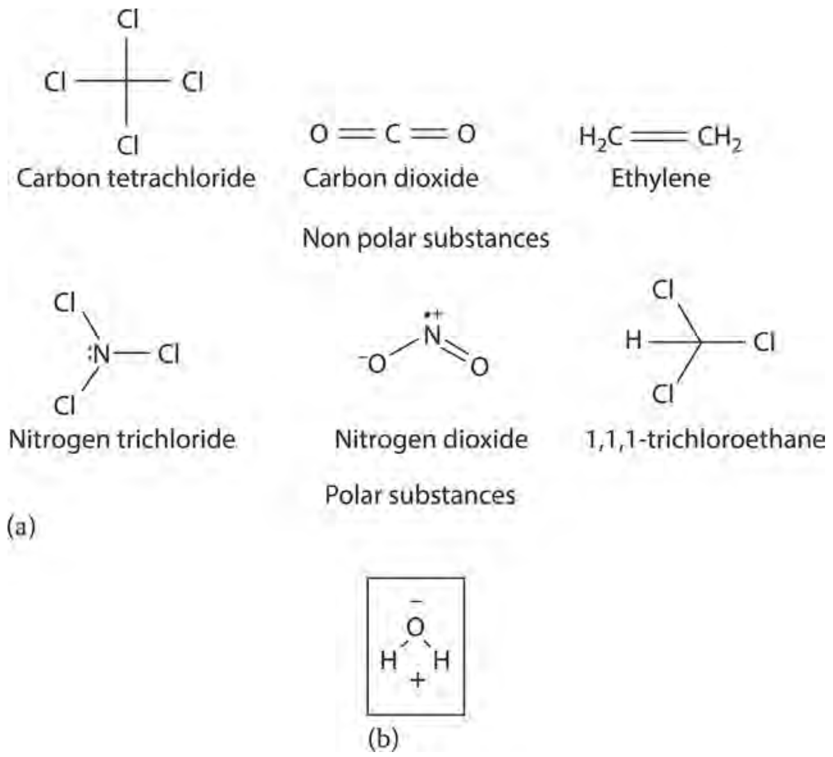


Figure 4.3 Some polar and nonpolar substances. (a) Shows some nonpolar and polar substances. Polar substances are, in general, asymmetric. (b) Molecular structure of water, which shows polarity.

is called the *solvent*. There is a simple yet important rule that pertains to solubility. It is simply stated as follows: *like dissolves like*. This means that if you want to dissolve a solute in a solvent, both should be either polar or nonpolar. If you try to mix gasoline and water, they will not dissolve in each other. Two layers will form, with the gasoline on the top. This is because gasoline and other *hydrocarbons* are nonpolar and water is polar. The gasoline is on top because it has a lower density than water. On the other hand, table salt, Na^+Cl^-, is very polar and will dissolve readily in water. Most organic compounds, but not all, being made of carbon and other elements, tend to be nonpolar relative to inorganic compounds. We would expect most organic compounds to have limited or no solubility in water. Most drugs are organic, and most are not very soluble in water. There are many exceptions, and some of them will be pointed out along the way.

pH

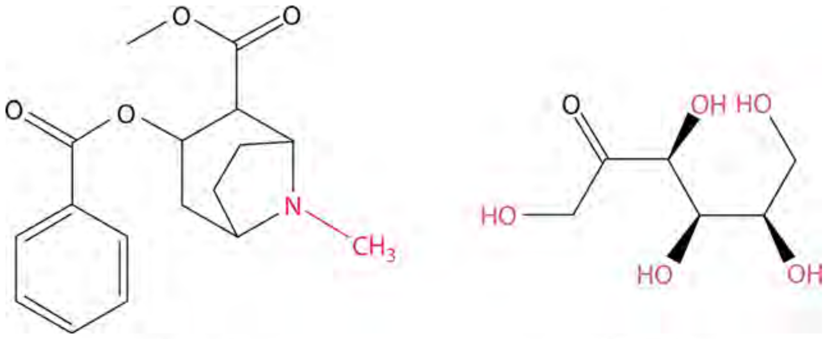
The term “pH” describes how acidic or basic a substance is. An acidic substance is one which, when dissolved in water, contains an excess of hydrogen ions (also called protons), which are designated as H^+. When hydrogen ions are mixed with water, they attach to the water molecules and are designated as hydronium ions or H_3O^+. A basic or alkaline substance is one that has an excess of hydroxide, OH^- ions. In pure water, a few molecules will dissociate forming some hydronium and hydroxide ions as shown in Equation 4.1.

$$\begin{aligned} &\underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O} + \underset{\text{Acid}}{H^+} \rightarrow \underset{\text{Hydronium ion}}{H_3O^+} \\ &\underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O} + \underset{\text{Base}}{OH^-} \rightarrow \underset{\text{Hydroxide ion}}{OH^- + H_2O} \end{aligned} \tag{4.1}$$

This only happens to a very few molecules, 10^{-14} mol/L, forming 10^{-7} mol/L of each ion. If an acidic substance is dissolved in the water, it will furnish additional H_3O^+ ions to the solution, making the concentration of H_3O^+ higher than 10^{-7}. Likewise, a basic solution dissolved in water will grab H_3O^+ ions from the water or furnish OH^- ions to the solution, thus increasing the OH^- concentration. Instead of describing the acidity or alkalinity of a solution in terms of these tiny exponential numbers, we use a shorthand notation called pH. The *p* in pH stands for the "negative logarithm of the concentration in moles per liter". We could just as easily describe this as the pOH. In this notation, a concentration of 10^{-7} mol/L of hydronium ions would be expressed in pH units as 7. An acidic solution has a H_3O^+ greater than 10^{-7} or a pH of less than 7. Likewise, a basic solution has a pH greater than 7. The pH of pure water is exactly 7.

You may be familiar with acids such as hydrochloric acid (HCl) or sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), or bases such as sodium hydroxide (NaOH) or ammonium hydroxide (NH_4OH), which is also called *ammonia water* or just *ammonia* ($NH_3 - H_2O$). Many other substances are acidic or basic when dissolved in water. This is true even of substances that appear to be neutral but that have some acidic or basic character to them. Many drugs fall into this category including cocaine. This can be exploited in the problem of separating cocaine from sucrose and we will turn to this issue now. The structures of cocaine and fructose are shown in Figure 4.4.

Fructose, like most complex sugars, is a neutral compound. Also, like most sugars, it is fairly soluble in water, even though it is neutral. The –OH groups that are attached to the carbon atoms in the molecule make it more soluble than one would think, but do not make sucrose basic. The OH groups do not come off the carbon atoms and form OH^- ions in the water. Cocaine is a slightly basic drug. It is basic because of the $–NCH_3$ group in the molecule. It is only very slightly soluble in water, and when it does dissolve, it takes a proton (an H^+ ion) away from some of the water and puts it on the $–NCH_3$ group, making it a $–NH^+CH_3$ group, leaving an OH^- behind in the water so the water has a slightly



Cocaine Fructose

Figure 4.4 Cocaine and fructose. Cocaine-free base is a large molecule that has several polar centers but overall is considered to be nonpolar. Fructose is quite polar like most sugars and is very soluble in water, which is also polar.

higher pH. This is shown in Equation 4.2 below. This is why cocaine is classified as a slightly basic drug. Trying to separate cocaine from fructose by adding water would not work because a little of the cocaine would dissolve and some of the fructose would also dissolve, so neither the water solution nor the undissolved solids would be pure. Remember that the goal of this separation is to obtain pure cocaine.

$$\underset{\text{Cocaine}}{C_{17}H_{21}NO_4} + H_2O \leftrightarrow C_{17}H_{22}NO_4^+ + OH^- \tag{4.2}$$

Using the polarity and pH properties of cocaine and sucrose, we can now separate a mixture of the two. All that is needed is a dilute acid solution (hydrochloric acid is usually used), a dilute basic solution (ammonium hydroxide is usually used), an immiscible solvent such as chloroform ($CHCl_3$) and an apparatus known as a *separatory funnel*. Follow along using Figure 4.5 as the process is described.

1. The cocaine/sucrose mixture is added to the dilute acid solution. The cocaine will become slightly polar as shown in Equation 4.2 and will readily dissolve in the acid. Some of the sucrose will also dissolve in the acid owing to its slightly polar nature even though it is a neutral compound. It may be necessary to filter the solution to remove any undissolved sucrose. This is put into a separatory funnel.

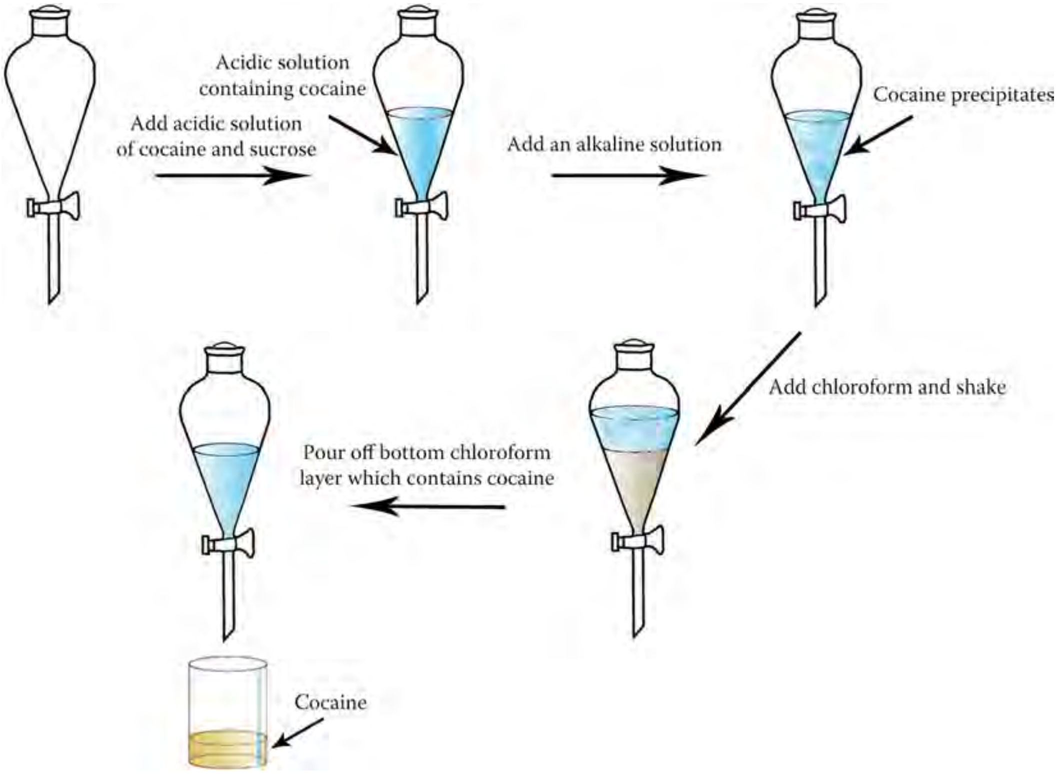

Acidic solution containing cocaine
Add acidic solution of cocaine and sucrose
Add an alkaline solution
Cocaine precipitates
Add chloroform and shake
Pour off bottom chloroform layer which contains cocaine
Cocaine

Figure 4.5 Separation of cocaine from sucrose. This process takes advantage of the nonpolar nature of cocaine in its free-base state. It can be made more polar with the addition of hydrochloric acid. This makes it soluble in water. After separation, an alkaline substance is added, regenerating the free base, which is insoluble in water and thus, the purified cocaine precipitates. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

2. The solution is now made basic by adding the dilute basic solution. When this happens, the excess OH^- ions will remove the extra proton from the cocaine ion, regenerating the nonpolar cocaine molecule. This is the reverse of Equation 4.2. Since the water solvent is polar, the cocaine is no longer soluble and it precipitates out. The solution becomes cloudy. The sucrose, being neutral, stays in solution.
3. Now the chloroform is added to the separatory funnel. This solvent is very nonpolar and will not mix with the water. It is more dense than water and will settle to the bottom of the separatory funnel. When the funnel is shaken, the cocaine will dissolve in the chloroform (like dissolves like). The sucrose will stay in solution in the water.
4. The chloroform layer is now poured out from the bottom of the funnel. It can be evaporated leaving the solid cocaine behind. The separation has now been accomplished.

Just about any basic drug can be separated from other substances this way as long as only the drug of interest is basic. Cocaine is often diluted with other, cheaper drugs such as lidocaine, which is also a basic drug. It will behave chemically the same way as the drug and no separation will take place. Other means must be used to separate multiple basic compounds in the same mixture. The same kind of process can be used with acidic drugs and neutral cutting agents like fructose. The solvents are changed, and where acidic solutions are used with basic drugs, basic solutions are used with acidic drugs. Everything is reversed.

Solid-Phase Extractions

Some solids such as finely divided charcoal have the ability to grab and hold dissolved solids or some volatile liquids in a mixture. These materials can be directly extracted from the mixture and *adsorbed* onto the surface of the charcoal or other adsorbent. This process is called *solid-phase extraction* because the adsorbent is a solid. One of the most common examples of solid-phase extraction in forensic science is the trapping of fuel residues from the debris collected from a fire scene. A finely divided solid such as charcoal or polymer called Tenax© is coated onto a small plastic strip. The strip is then suspended from the inside of the top of a sealed paint can containing fire debris suspected of containing an accelerant such as gasoline. The can is gently heated, driving the gasoline fumes into the air space above the debris. These fumes will then attach to the surface of the charcoal strip. After a time, the strip is removed and the fire residues can be desorbed (removed from the strip) and further analyzed. In addition to charcoal, adsorbents can be made from finely divided particles of several synthetic solid materials and coated on strips or wires. These can be dipped directly into a liquid solution containing a substance of interest such as a drug. The drug will adsorb onto the surface of the polymer and will thus be separated from the solution. Solid-phase extraction has become very popular because it is quick and easy and sensitive.

Chromatography

Separation processes such as liquid–liquid extractions, sieving and physical separations work well when there is a relatively large amount (at least a few grams) of material present. When only very small amounts of chemical evidence are available, these methods are not suitable and other ones must be used. Over the past decades, a whole series of separation methods have been developed that are designed for small amounts of material. These methods can efficiently separate vanishingly small amounts of material, as little as 10^{-12} g (picograms). Of course at these levels, the pure substance is not isolated and recovered. Instead, it may be subject to further analysis to confirm its identity. These evolving methods are collectively a family called *chromatography*. The term *chromatography* means to analyze by color. The original chromatography experiments involved separation of plant pigments. Plants contain many pigments within their leaves, some of which change color with the seasons. Analytical chemists wanted to separate, isolate and identify these pigments. Some leaves were ground up, and a solvent was added to dissolve the pigments. A large glass column, about 3 cm in diameter and about 60 cm long, was filled with silica (very pure sand) or a similar finely divided solid. The plant pigment containing solution was then poured through the column. As the pigments traveled down the column by gravity, they separated into individual colors, each one becoming affixed to the silica in the column at various points along the way. This separation occurred because each of the pigments differed in their attraction to the solid particles in the column. Some of the pigments were strongly attracted and would leave the solution early in the process. Others were only weakly attracted and would take longer to attach to the particles. The effect was to separate most or all of the pigments into bands of color fixed to the solid bed. Figure 4.6 illustrates how this happens.

After all of the solution has been poured through the column, the various bands of color can be separately removed by several methods. The column could be dismantled, and each area of colored silica could be separated. Solvents would be added to each area to redissolve that pigment, and then the silica would be filtered out. Another way of removing each pigment involves adding a solvent or series of solvents that removes the bands from the column individually. This process is called *elution*. This method of pigment separation was the first type of chromatography. Today, this is called *column chromatography*. It requires relatively large amounts of mixture. It also requires that the components of the mixture be soluble in a suitable solvent and that they be colored, otherwise they cannot be detected. The human eye is the *detector* in this instrument. Today, there are much better methods of detection that are not based on color and methods that can separate much smaller amounts of material.

The family of chromatography methods differs in details, but all are based on similar principles. In chemistry parlance, the mixture that is to be separated is called the *analyte*. Every substance in a mixture is a component of the analyte. For example, a mixture of heroin, procaine and maltose would be a three-component analyte. Gasoline would be an analyte and each of the more than 300 different substances in gasoline would all be components of the analyte. All forms of chromatography contain two phases, the *stationary phase* and the *mobile phase*. The stationary phase is the filling in the column, as described earlier, or it may be a thin coating of a material like silica that is put onto a microscope slide or piece

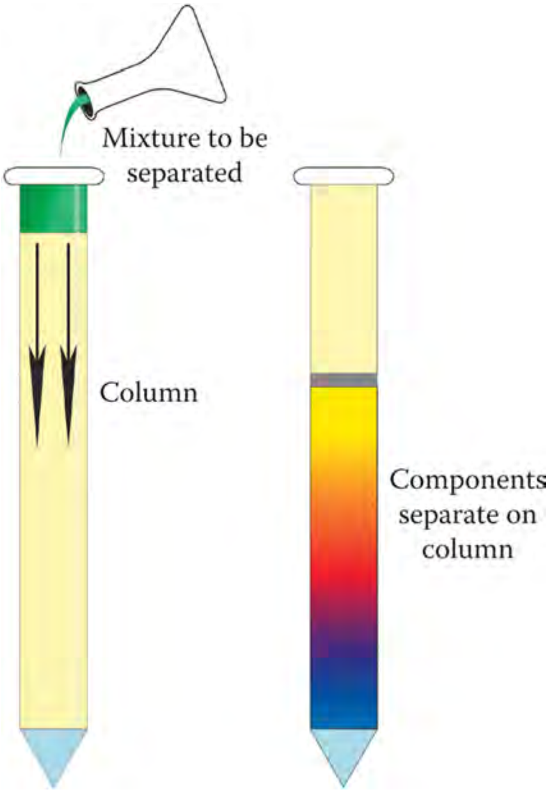


Figure 4.6 Separation of plant pigments by column chromatography. The mixture of plant pigments is dissolved in an organic solvent and then poured onto the solid-phase column. The pigments are attracted to the column in different degrees and so they separate. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

of plastic or may line the inside walls of a very narrow column. It is called the stationary phase because it does not move. It is fixed in one place; the inside of a column or coated onto a plastic or glass plate. Today's columns are very narrow (they can be the diameter of a human hair) and can be very long (some are 60 m in length). The mobile phase can be a liquid or liquid solution or an inert gas, such as helium. The mobile phase is usually pumped under pressure, carrying the analyte through the stationary phase. The mobile phase does not mix with the stationary phase. They are completely incompatible. The function of the stationary phase is to act as a carrier or transporter of the analyte. This means that the analyte must be completely soluble in the mobile phase. As the analyte is carried by the mobile phase through the stationary phase, there are interactions between the various components of the analyte and the surface of the stationary phase. Different components interact differently with the stationary phase. Some components are strongly attracted and others weakly or not at all. The more that a component of the analyte interacts with the stationary phase, the longer it takes for it to make it all the way through to the end. This is how mixtures are separated. When a component of the analyte reaches the end of the stationary phase, it interacts with a detector that signals its presence and, in some cases, determines how much of that component is present. Although detectors do not identify substances, they can detect very small amounts of material whether or not they are colored. This makes chromatography techniques very versatile because they can detect a wide variety of substances in very small quantities. The interaction of the analyte

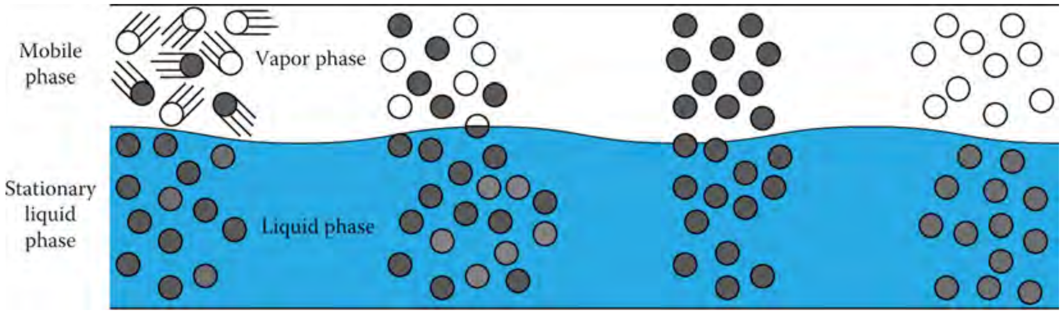


Figure 4.7 Attraction of analyte components to the stationary phase of a column. The two components of the mixture are attracted differently to the stationary phase and thus they separate as they travel through and over the stationary phase. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

components is based upon two factors: polarity and size. Recall the maxim that "like dissolves like", which referred to the ability of polar solutes to dissolve in polar solvents, etc. The same principle holds true for the interactions between molecules of an analyte component and the surface of the stationary phase. If an analyte component is polar, it will be more strongly attracted to a polar stationary phase. The same holds true with nonpolar analyte components and stationary phases. Since few substances have exactly the same polarity, all components of a given analyte would be expected to be attracted differently to a stationary phase and thus would all eventually separate. This is shown graphically in Figure 4.7.

Another mechanism for separating components of an analyte is called *mass action*. This is simply a recognition that size matters. In the case of chromatography, different size molecules move at different rates in a mobile phase regardless of the nature of the stationary phase. Heavier molecules move slower than lighter ones. Consider the Boston Marathon. Thousands of people line up in the same place and then all run more than 23 miles. At the end, they are all separated by their ability to run fast and indirectly by size (lighter people run faster?). The other way that mass enters into chromatography is that the molecules of analyte have to work their way through and around the stationary phase molecules and lighter ones can do that easier and get through faster. Consider a large leaf and a small leaf floating down a stream. It is easier for the small leaf to float through obstacles such as stones or branches and the lighter leaf generally goes down the stream faster.

Quantitative Analysis

In addition to separating components of an analyte, some types of chromatography can be used to determine how much of a substance is present in a mixture. This is often exploited to determine the quantity of a drug sample in a mixture. In those types of chromatography that rely on pushing an analyte mixture through a column containing a stationary phase, the detector signals the presence of a component and plots it on a graph in the form of a roughly triangular shaped peak. The computer that plots the data keeps track of the size of the peak (its area). The area under a peak is directly proportional to the concentration of the analyte component being detected. The way that the computer calculates area is by starting a counter when the peak begins and stops the counter when the peak ends. The area data is stored as "counts". A sample of the drug whose concentration is known is analyzed right after the unknown. The areas under the peaks of the known and unknown along with the concentration of the known can then be used to calculate the concentration of the unknown. Consider the following problem:

Something for You to Do

A forensic drug chemist wishes to find out the percent heroin in a small bag submitted to the laboratory. Part of the analysis is a chromatography test. The chemist weighs out 100 mg of the unknown and dissolves it in 100 mL of methyl alcohol and injects 10 µL into a chromatograph. A peak corresponding to heroin emerges and the computer calculates that its area is 10,000 counts. The chemist then obtains some pure heroin from her standards safe and dissolves 100 mg of that into 100 mL of methanol. She then injects the same amount, 10 µg, into the chromatograph. The computer calculates that the area under the heroin peak is 50,000 counts. What is the percent heroin in the mixture?

Types of Chromatography

The family of chromatography techniques is very large. A discussion of all of them is beyond the scope of this book. In any case, only a few types are commonly used in forensic science and we will discuss them in some detail. They are gas (or gas–liquid) chromatography (GC), high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and thin-layer chromatography (TLC). These types of chromatography differ in stationary phase and mobile phase. GC and HPLC use columns to hold the stationary phase, whereas TLC uses a small glass or plastic plate that is coated with the stationary phase. Each of them has their own advantages and disadvantages.

Gas Chromatography

For the following description, see Figure 4.8, which is a diagram of a gas chromatograph. In GC, the stationary phase is usually a very thick, viscous liquid coated onto the inside walls of a thin glass or plastic column. These materials can range from fairly nonpolar to quite polar. The mobile phase is an inert gas (vapor) such as helium, nitrogen or hydrogen, which is put under pressure. These inert gases are always very nonpolar. Since the analyte must dissolve completely in the mobile phase, it is heated to high enough temperatures to convert at least some of it to a vapor.

This is accomplished in the *injector*, where the analyte and mobile phase are combined. The analyte may be a solid, liquid or vapor. If it is a solid, it is dissolved in a suitable solvent, put into a syringe and injected into the injector. The high temperature in the injector evaporates the solvent and vaporizes the analyte, which is mixed with the mobile phase. They are carried to the column containing the stationary phase where the components of the analyte are separated. As each component reaches the end of the stationary phase, it enters a detector. GC detectors are designed to create an electrical current when a component of the analyte is present. The strength of the current is proportional to the amount of analyte. This current is sent to a computer where it displays the analyte components as a series of peaks. Figure 4.9 is a one component chromatogram of caffeine. There are many tiny peaks in the trace. These are noise and impurities.

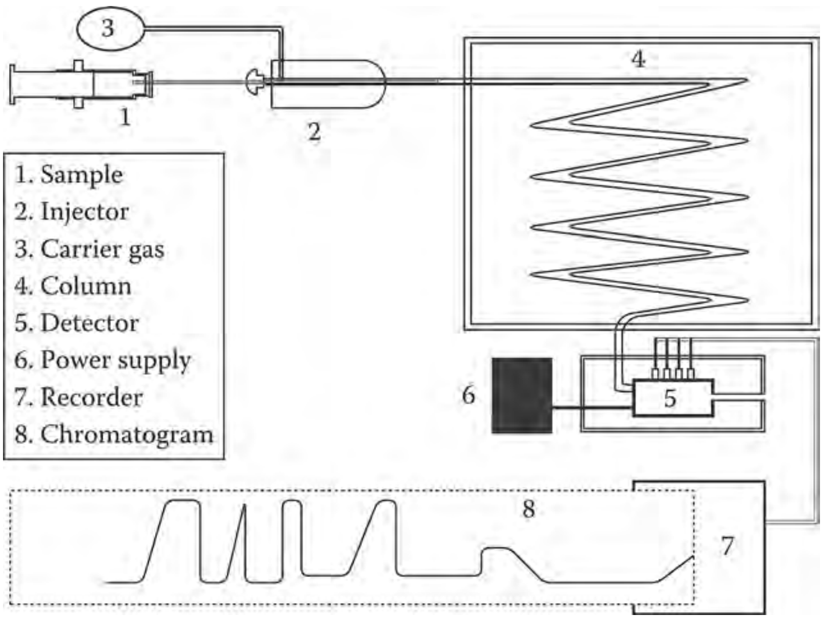

3
1
2
4
1. Sample
2. Injector
3. Carrier gas
4. Column
5. Detector
6. Power supply
7. Recorder
8. Chromatogram
6
5
8
7

Figure 4.8 Diagram of a gas chromatograph. Each peak in the chromatogram at the bottom represents a different substance. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

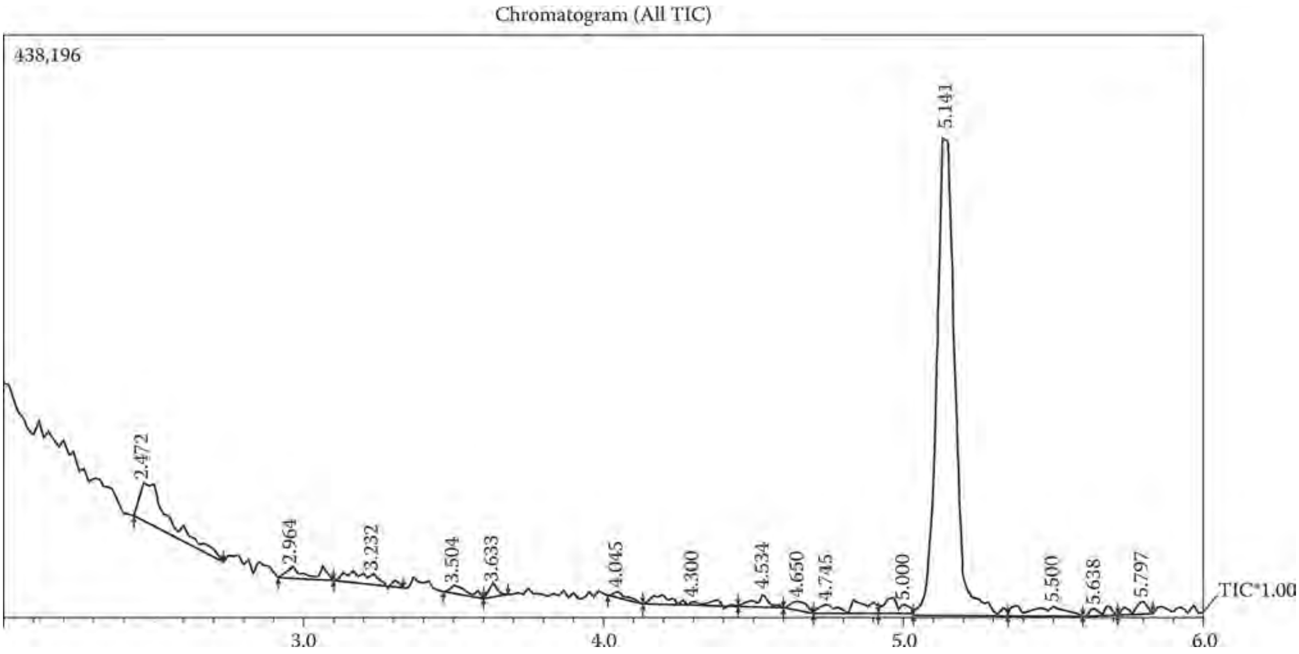


Figure 4.9 Chromatogram of caffeine. The beginning of the run is cut off. It would have a huge peak for the solvent. The rest of the small peaks are instrumental noise and minor impurities.

The peak at 5.141 min is caffeine. The solvent peak is suppressed because it is so large relative to the caffeine.

One important detector for GC is worth discussing because it is widely used in forensic analysis. It is a *mass spectrometer* (MS). This instrument is attached directly to the gas chromatograph. Every component of the analyte that emerges from the GC enters the MS. In this instrument, a beam of electrons bombards the

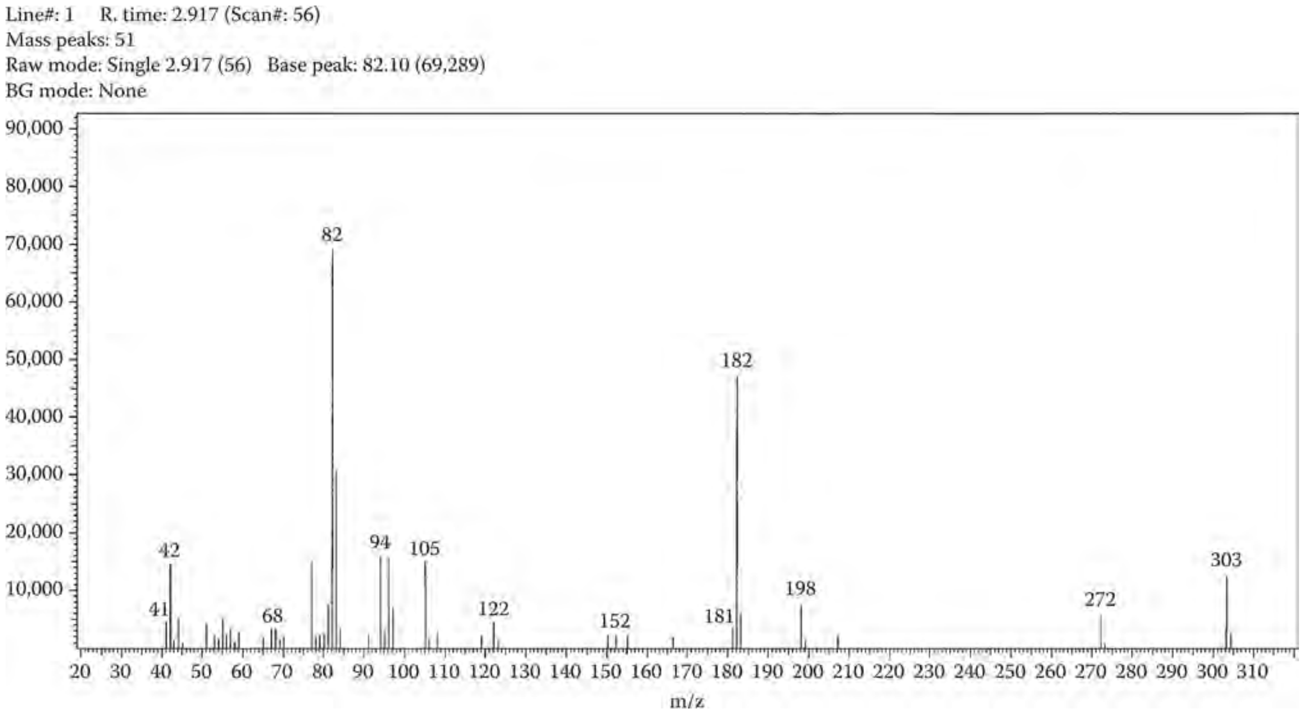


Figure 4.10 Mass spectrum of cocaine. The highest peak at 303 is the unfragmented cocaine molecule. The other peaks are stable fragments created during ionization of the cocaine in the mass spectrometer.

molecules of analyte. These impart energy to the molecules, which makes them unstable and causes them to decay into more stable fragments and lose an electron from each fragment and causing the fragment to become an ion. These ions are separated and displayed as a series of vertical lines arranged in order of increasing mass. Each substance has a unique pattern of fragments and this pattern can be used to identify the component with certainty. When a GC is connected to an MS, complex analytes can be separated into individual components and each can be identified. This is a great advantage of GC/MS and the vast majority of forensic science labs have them. Figure 4.10 is the mass spectrum of cocaine.

Pyrolysis Gas Chromatography

As versatile as gas chromatography is, there are many materials of forensic interest that it cannot handle, simply because they cannot be easily converted to a vapor, which is necessary for GC analysis. The practical temperature limit of a GC instrument is about 300°C because many analytes will decompose when the temperature is higher than this. Evidence such as fibers, paints, plastics, rubber and other polymers cannot be vaporized at 300°C. They require much higher temperatures, 700°C–1000°C. This can be achieved using an instrument called a *pyrolyzer*. This is essentially a furnace capable of being heated to up to 1000°C. It is connected to the injector of the GC, filled with mobile phase and the analyte in its solid form is introduced. When the pyrolyzer is heated, the analyte vaporizes, mixes with the mobile phase and then is swept into the stationary phase. Since the pyrolyzer contains only the analyte and mobile phase, no air or oxygen is present and the analyte will not burn, but it does decompose into smaller, stable fragments, which are characteristic of that material. These fragments are separated by the GC and displayed on a chart called a *pyrogram*. Each pyrogram is

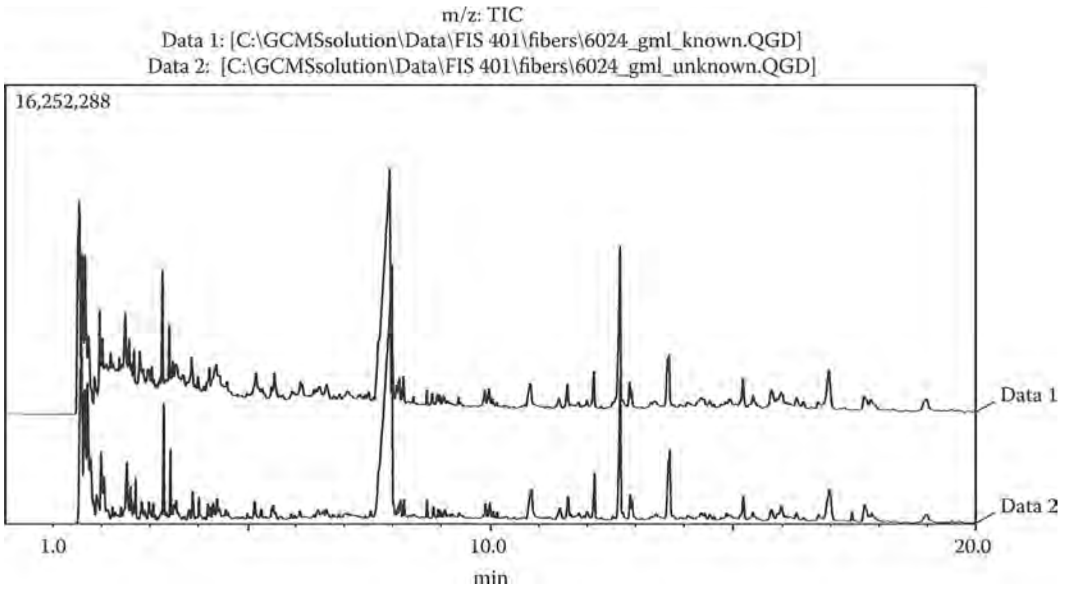


Figure 4.11 These are partially overlaid pyrograms of two fibers. The pyrograms are very similar and are clearly of the same chemical type, polyester in this case. Even though both fibers are of the same type that does not provide enough evidence that they came from the same garment.

characteristic of the type of material present. Figure 4.11 is a pyrogram of two polyester fibers. All such fibers would have similar pyrograms, and these would be different than pyrograms for polyester, nylon, etc.

With refinements such as pyrolysis and mass spectrometry, gas chromatography is perhaps the most versatile technique in the forensic science arsenal. Just about all forensic chemical evidence can be analyzed by GC. This includes drugs, poisons, fire residues, inks and paper, fibers, soils, glass, alcohol, plastics, paints, rubber and many other materials. GC instruments can be outfitted with robot autosamplers, which permit the analyst to introduce many samples over time with minimal operator time and effort. The speed and value of GC/MS instruments have helped to revolutionize clinical and forensic toxicology with its ability to quickly determine which drugs a person has taken in an overdose case. Many lives have been saved.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography

Recall the original chromatography experiments where plant pigments were separated by dissolving them in a mobile phase solvent and then pouring them through a solid bed of stationary phase. The mobile phase traveled through the stationary phase under the influence of gravity and this could take hours to complete. The columns were large and a large amount of analyte was required in order to be able to detect a single component on the column by its color. This was the first form of what we now call *liquid* chromatography, so called because the mobile phase is a liquid or liquid solution. Today, we use much smaller columns requiring much less sample, and the mobile phase is pumped under pressure through the stationary phase resulting in experiments that take a few minutes rather than hours. Because of this dramatic increase in the performance and efficiency, we call this technique, high-performance liquid chromatography.

In HPLC, the stationary phase can be a viscous liquid such as that used in GC and some of these are used in either technique. In most HPLC applications, the viscous liquid is coated onto the surface of microscopic, inert beads that are then used to fill the column. In addition, however, solid stationary phases are also used. The polarities of stationary phases in HPLC can vary from the very nonpolar to the very polar. The mobile phase is a liquid or a solution of two or more liquids. These can also vary in polarity from nonpolar to polar. This is an advantage over gas chromatography, where the mobile phase is always very nonpolar. With HPLC, a greater variety of substances can be separated. In addition, by incorporating two or more liquid pumps, the composition and polarity of the mobile phase can change on the fly during a run. This adds even more flexibility to the technique. HPLC is generally run at room temperature. The analyte must be soluble in the mobile phase. It is dissolved and then injected into an injector where it is mixed with the mobile phase, which is then pumped through the column containing the stationary phase. The detectors used in liquid chromatography are different than those used in GC, because they are detecting liquid solutions rather than vapor solutions; however, they work on the principle of converting a signal of the presence of an analyte component to an electric current. The output is a chart with each component of the analyte represented by a triangular peak as in GC. Thus these HPLC chromatograms can be used for quantitative analysis as with GC. Figure 4.12 is a photograph of an HPLC.

HPLC is widely used in forensic chemistry. It is useful for substances that cannot be heated without decomposing and for relatively nonvolatile liquids. Pyrolysis cannot be used but it is common now to incorporate a mass spectrometer as a detector for identification of the separated analyte components. Some of the

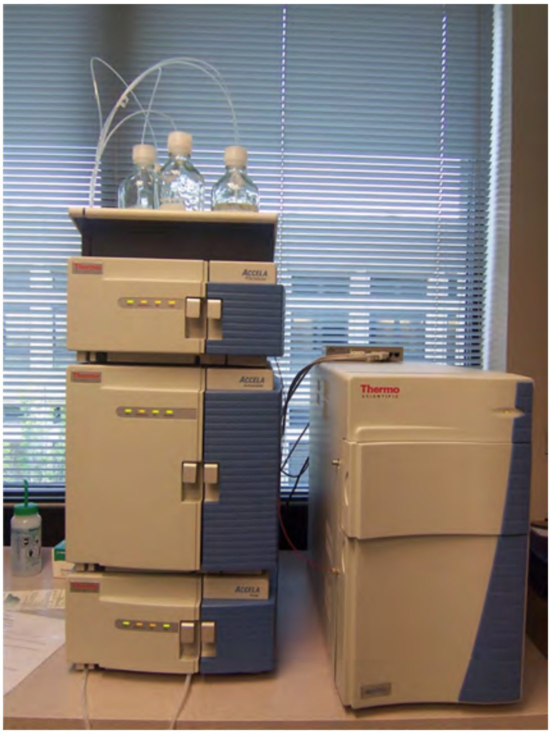


Figure 4.12 A photograph of an HPLC instrument. These instruments are generally quite modular so that a variety of pumps can be mounted into the system. There is also room for several detectors mounted in series.

types of evidence commonly analyzed by HPLC include, inks, dyes, pigments, drugs, alcohol in drunk driving cases, soil extracts, explosive residues and some fire residues.

Thin-Layer Chromatography

GC and HPLC are similar in that they both employ a stationary phase housed in a hollow column, either coating the inside walls or filling the column with particles. These then require a sample delivery system (injector), a way to force the mobile phase through the stationary phase (pumps or pressure) and sophisticated detectors that permit the display of signals through a computer when an analyte component gets through the stationary phase. Although these types of chromatography are extremely versatile and sensitive, they are also expensive and, of necessity, can process only one sample at a time. One of the oldest chromatographic techniques was developed along different lines. Instead of a tubular column holding the stationary phase, certain types of paper could serve as the stationary phase. The analyte would then be dissolved in a small amount of solvent. Tiny spots of this analyte would be made at one end of the paper just above the bottom. The paper would then be dipped in the mobile phase, which would travel up the paper by a process known as *capillary action*, carrying the analyte with it. As the various components travel up the paper, they separate. This is called *paper chromatography*. It was developed nearly 100 years ago. Over time it has undergone major enhancements. The paper has been replaced by a glass or plastic plate onto which a thin coating of a pure solid is coated. This is the stationary phase. There are a wide variety of solids that can be used of varying polarity, adding versatility compared to just having to use paper. This type of chromatography is called *thin-layer chromatography*. It is widely used in forensic science laboratories for a variety of evidence. It is the most versatile type of chromatography because of the wide variety of stationary and mobile phases, its portability and low cost, and the ability to run more than one analyte at a time.

Running Thin-Layer Chromatography

Figure 4.13 shows a typical TLC apparatus and set up. The plastic or glass plate is usually the size of a microscope slide although sometimes much larger ones are used for preparative work. The stationary phase coatings are commonly pure, finely divided silica (sand) or alumina (aluminum oxide), or even any of several types of wax. The thickness of the coating can range from a few microns to 1 mm or more. The stationary phase is mixed with a binder that holds it onto the surface of the plate. The mobile phase is a liquid or liquid solution just as in HPLC. The solution can contain various concentrations of polar and/or nonpolar liquids that determine its overall polarity. The analyte can be a mixture of solids or liquids, although solids are generally used.

A small amount of the solid is dissolved in a suitable, volatile solvent such as methanol or chloroform. This can be done in a spot plate. A small capillary tube with an inside diameter of about 5 μg is dipped into the solvent which fills the tube. The end of the tube is then touched to the stationary phase about 1 cm above the bottom of the plate. This makes a small spot of analyte. It may be necessary to over-spot an analyte to make sure that enough has been loaded onto the plate. This is usually a matter of trial and error. If over-spotting is done, the spot is allowed to dry before over-spotting in order to avoid getting too large a spot. The goal is to make a spot that is as small as possible. It is possible to then load another

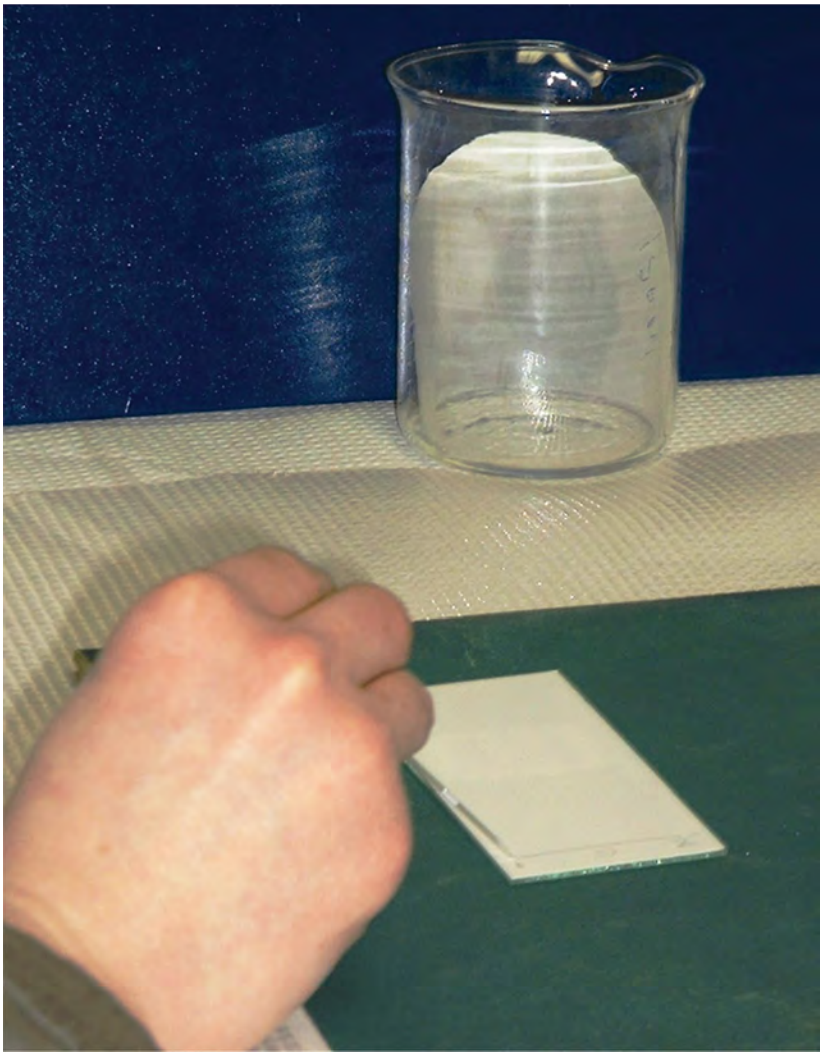


Figure 4.13 A thin-layer chromatography apparatus. The filter paper in the beaker is there to keep the atmosphere inside the container saturated with mobile phase. This can greatly improve the quality and reproducibility of the chromatogram.

analyte or standard next to the first one, leaving at least a couple of spot diameters between spots. Once the analytes have been loaded, the plate is placed into a chamber that contains mobile phase. The amount of mobile phase should not be so great as to cover the spots. Usually, a piece of filter paper is used to line the inside of the chamber to saturate the chamber with mobile phase vapor. This improves the chromatography. Once the plate comes in contact with the mobile phase, the liquid travels up the plate. As the mobile phase travels up through the stationary phase, it carries the analyte. Interactions of the analyte components with the stationary and mobile phases cause them to separate. When the mobile phase has reached the top of the plate, the plate is removed from the chamber and dried.

Detection of TLC Analyte Components

There are several ways of detecting the presence of analyte component spots on the plate. One common way is to pretreat the stationary phase with a fluorescent dye. When the plate is put under an ultraviolet light, the most common dye that is employed in TLC fluoresces with a green color. In those places where analyte spots are present, the green color is masked and a dark spot appears. Another way to visualize some materials is to take advantage of their fluorescence. Illuminating them with an ultraviolet light will cause them to fluoresce. The most versatile way of visualizing spots is by spraying them with a reagent that reacts with the analyte to form a colored product. Some of these spray reagents are specific for certain types of materials. Examples include *Fast Blue BB*, which colors the naturally occurring cannabinoids in marihuana red to orange depending upon which one(s) are present, and Ehrlich's reagent, which colors LSD and similar substances, purple. Other spray reagents are more general in their color reactions. *Greiss* reagents (a series of two) color all nitrate containing compounds bright red. Even more nonspecific is *Iodoplatinate* reagent, which adds iodine across carbon–carbon double bonds and turns the analyte brown. These and other sprays are not completely specific for a single substance. The advantage to using a fluorescent plate or taking advantage of the native fluorescence of an analyte component is that treating the spots with a spray reagent is destructive and the separated analyte component cannot be used for further analysis.

Something for You to Do

You can do some chromatography at home. It will be similar to TLC, and you will end up with a custom T-shirt. You can also practice your technique on large pieces of blotter paper.

Take a clean white T-shirt (or piece of blotter paper). Get some liquid inks like the kinds that are used in fountain pens or ink refills for ink jet printers. Get a couple of different colors. To get the best results, you may have to dilute the ink with water. Make sure that you put something like blotter paper between the front and back of the T-shirt so the ink does not bleed through. Using an eyedropper, drip ink onto the shirt. You can over-spot the same place to make the spots bigger and darker. You can drop the ink from several feet up to make splatters. When the ink hits the shirt, it will spread out away from the drop point in all directions like waves in a pond after a stone is dropped into it. The various dyes that make up the colorants in the inks will separate as the inks spread out. Depending upon the complexity of the colorants, you may see several dyes in one ink. If you make several spots in different parts of the shirt, they will run together as they spread out, resulting in some interesting effects. While you are having fun designing your own clothes, remember that you are actually doing chromatography.

Interpreting TLC Plates

When the spots have been visualized, the *retention factor*, Rf, is measured. The retention factor is the ratio between the distance that a given analyte component travels up the plate from the point where the analyte spots are made to the distance that the mobile phase travels. An Rf is specific to a substance using a particular stationary phase and a particular mobile phase. It is a good way of comparing results between laboratories if the same conditions are used. It is important to remember that the Rf of a substance is not unique. There may be many different

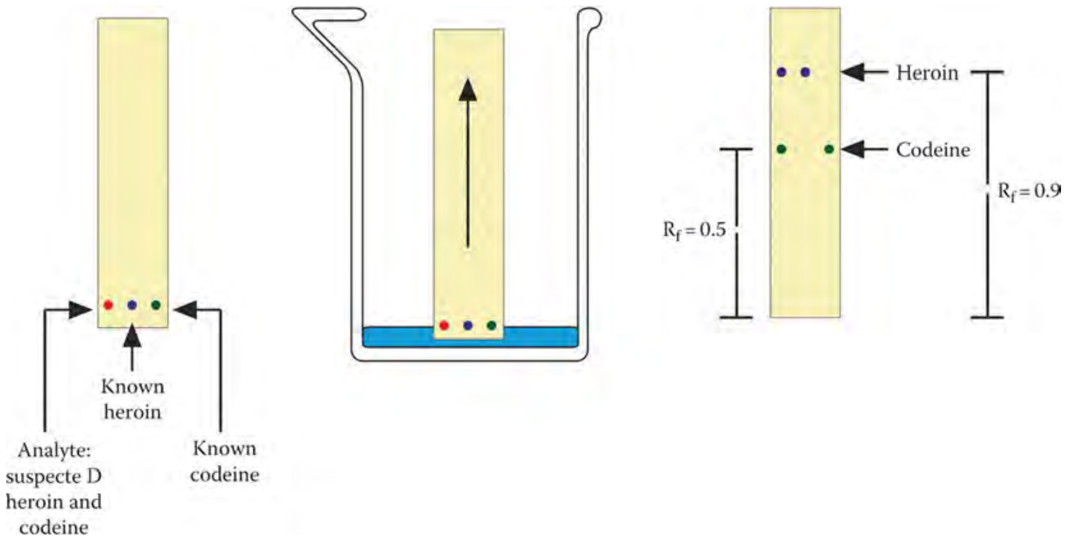


Figure 4.14 A TLC plate with Rfs of the various analyte components. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

substances that have the same Rf in a TLC experiment, so this technique, like other chromatographic methods, is not used for absolute identification. TLC is often used to give presumptive or tentative information about the presence of a substance. For example, if an unknown white powder has a spot with the same Rf as the spot from a known sample of morphine, it can be presumed that morphine is present, but this still must be confirmed by other tests. Figure 4.14 illustrates the use of Rfs to make tentative identifications.

Thin-layer chromatography is used on a wide variety of evidence types. These include drugs, inks and dyes, explosive residues, cosmetics such as lipsticks and nail polishes, and many other types. It is very quick, inexpensive and versatile.

Electrophoresis

One of the few drawbacks of chromatography is that these techniques do not result in absolute identification of the separated substances in an analyte. The peaks in a gas chromatogram or liquid chromatogram and the spots in a thin-layer chromatogram are not unique to one particular substance. This is due to the concept of *resolution*. Resolution in chromatography is the ability of the technique to separate very similar substances. It frequently happens that two substances in an analyte are so similar that they won't separate and will show up as one peak or one spot. (Question: how do we know or find out if a peak or spot is really one substance?) We can usually design a chromatographic system that will separate common mixtures that occur as evidence such as drugs or fiber dyes, etc., but sometimes it is not possible to separate components of a mixture by conventional chromatographic methods. An important example is DNA. DNA is analyzed by isolating pieces or fragments that differ from person to person. These fragments may differ only slightly in length or composition and cannot be separated and displayed as separate units by conventional chromatography. In such cases, the technique of *electrophoresis* can be used. Electrophoresis is a form of chromatography; it is used to separate components of a mixture and display them as spots or peaks. One type of electrophoresis is similar to liquid chromatography. Another type is similar to TLC. In both cases, there are, however, important differences. The stationary phases are somewhat different although they are solid materials. The mobile phase is very different. It is an electric current! There are two major types of electrophoresis used in forensic science: *gel* and *capillary*. They are described below.

Gel Electrophoresis

Gel electrophoresis is somewhat like TLC, but there are important differences. The stationary phase in electrophoresis is a slab of a gelatin-like material, usually *agarose* or *polyacrylamide*. Instead of being a thin layer, the slab is several millimeters thick. The DNA fragment mixture is mixed with a bit of liquid and put in wells that are made at one end of the gel. The entire gel slab is then immersed in a buffer solution that maintains a constant pH. A strong electric current (hundreds or even thousands of volts) is then put across the gel with the negative pole on the side where the DNA has been deposited. The other side of the slab has the positive pole. The buffer imparts a slightly negative charge to the DNA. When the current is turned on, the DNA will flow toward the positive pole because of its negative charge. The moving electric current is actually the mobile phase in electrophoresis. The current carries the DNA fragments through the gel. After a couple of hours, the current is turned off. The DNA fragments will have separated. The principle of separation of DNA fragments by gel electrophoresis is essentially mass action. The lighter, smaller fragments travel faster and farther through the gel than the heavier, larger ones, so the fragments are separated. When the electrophoresis is finished, the DNA is stained with a fluorescent dye or treated with a radioactive material that will expose an X-ray film to visualize the DNA fragments. For most DNA typing applications, gel electrophoresis has been supplanted by capillary electrophoresis because of its higher resolution and ability to determine the quantity of DNA present as well as the types. Figure 4.15 is a diagram of a gel electrophoresis apparatus.

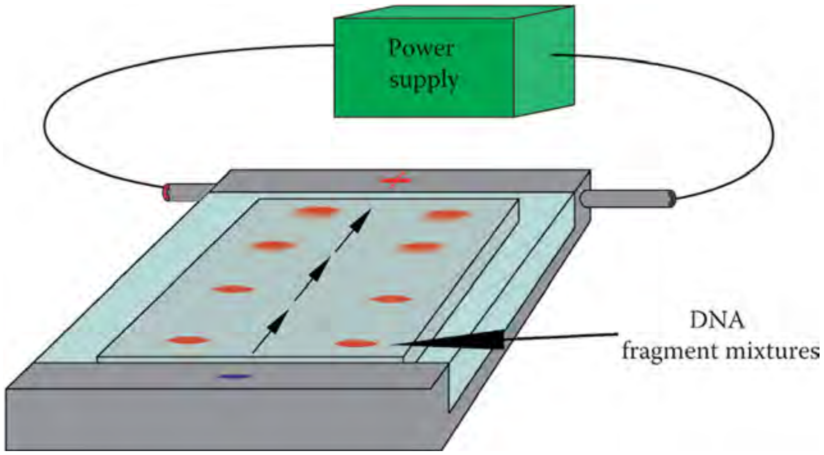


Figure 4.15 A gel electrophoresis apparatus. The power supply puts an electric charge onto the gel slab, positive on one side and negative on the other. The DNA fragments are loaded onto the negative side of the gel and they migrate toward the positive side, separating as they travel through the gel. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

Capillary Electrophoresis

A diagram of a capillary electrophoresis instrument is shown in Figure 4.16. Instead of using a sizable slab of gel, capillary electrophoresis uses a very thin capillary column that holds the stationary phase, often a polyacrylamide gel. Both ends are immersed in a buffer. An electric charge is put across the column. When the analyte, such as DNA fragments, are introduced into the column, they travel through and are detected by their fluorescence. As in gel electrophoresis, the mobile phase is an electric current. The advantages of the gel column over the gel slab are that it is very efficient at separating DNA fragments and it is much more sensitive. In some experiments, only a few nanograms of material are needed for separation. As with HPLC, the results of the analysis show a series of peaks, each of which represents a fragment of DNA. These peaks yield quantitative information as well as the size of each fragment. Figure 4.17 shows an *electropherogram* of a DNA sample. Note that this electropherogram shows peaks in several different colors. This is due to different fluorescent dyes that are applied to different categories of DNA fragments. The purpose of this process is to make interpretation easier.

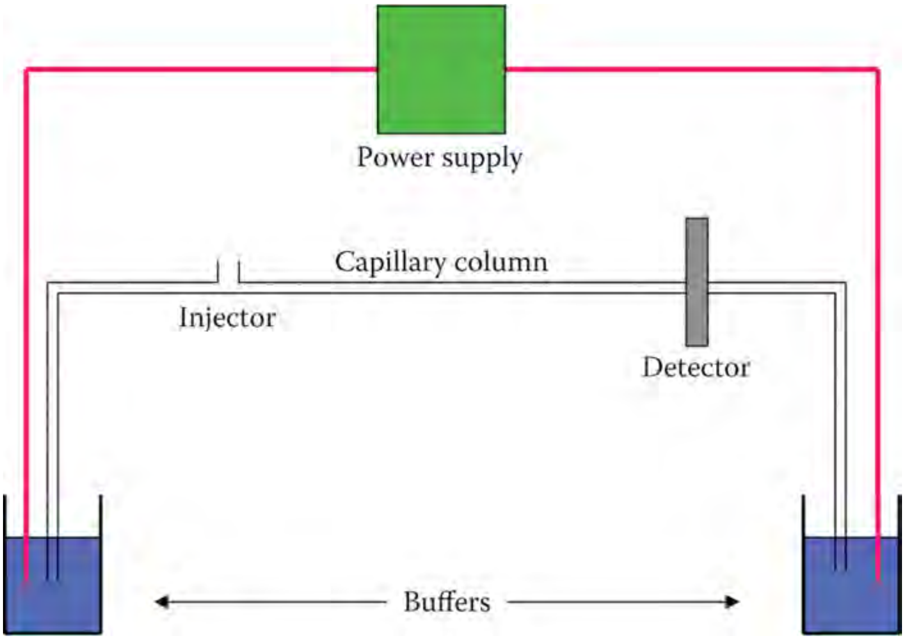


Figure 4.16 A capillary electrophoresis instrument. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

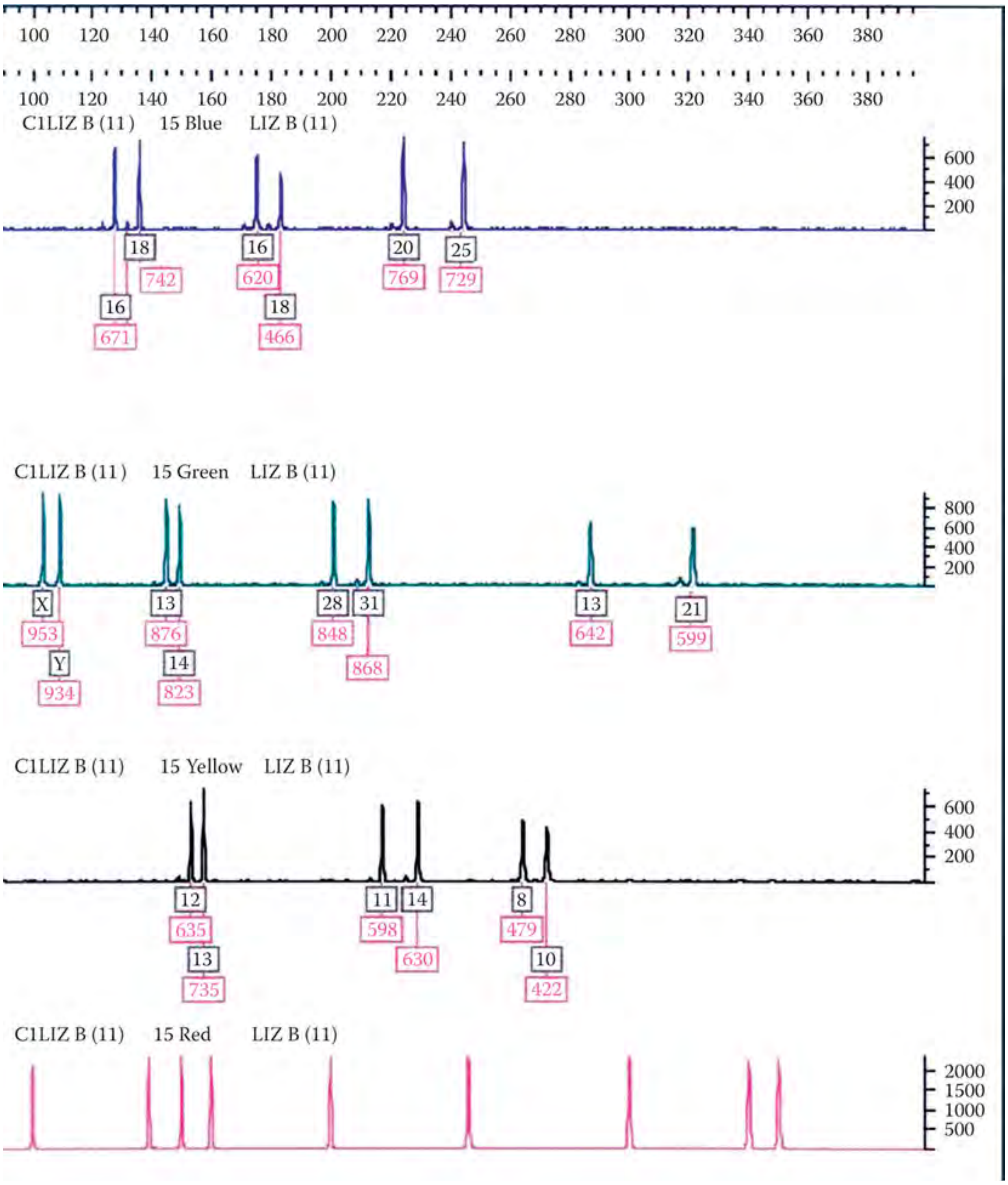


Figure 4.17 An electropherogram of a DNA sample. The various DNA fragments are put in three groups, each with its own fluorescent dye. Each fragment shows up as one or two peaks, depending upon inheritance from the mother and father.

Summary

Because very few types of chemical evidence are in a pure state, the material(s) of interest must be separated from the rest of the evidence. Most often, physical separation of the analyte is not possible or practical because of the amount of material and the time it would take to effect a separation. As a result, chemical separations are usually used to separate the evidence from the unneeded substances. The type of chemical separation employed depends upon the nature and amount of material present. For large amounts of materials (grams or more), liquid or solid-phase extractions can be used. For smaller amounts of material, one of several forms of chromatography is usually employed. If the analyte is stable at high temperatures and can be easily vaporized, then gas chromatography is most often employed. If not, then either high-performance liquid chromatography or thin-layer chromatography can be employed. For materials that are extremely similar such as DNA fragments, a variation of liquid chromatography called electrophoresis is used. The principle of separation in all types of chromatography is that different analyte components have a greater or lesser affinity for the stationary or mobile phase. An important characteristic of chromatography is resolution, the ability to separate two closely related substances.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. A solution whose pH is 9 has
    a. An H^+ concentration of 9
    b. An H^+ concentration of –9
    c. An H^+ concentration of 10^9
    d. An H^+ concentration of 10^{-9}
2. A polar compound
    a. Is insoluble in water
    b. Always has oxygen
    c. Has a positive side and a negative side
    d. Has a pH of less than 7
3. In gas chromatography, the mobile phase
    a. Is an inert gas
    b. Is a liquid solution
    c. Is always polar
    d. Is located in a column
4. A mixture of four basic drugs
    a. Cannot be separated
    b. Would show four peaks on a chromatogram
    c. Must be separated using a liquid extraction method
    d. Can only be separated using thin-layer chromatography
5. In HPLC,
    a. The mobile phase is a solid
    b. A coated microscope slide is the stationary phase
    c. The mobile phase moves through the stationary phase by gravity
    d. The mobile phase is a liquid solution or pure liquid
6. All types of chromatography
    a. Have a stationary phase and a mobile phase
    b. Have chromatograms with peaks on a chart
    c. Can be used to separate explosive residues from the debris of an explosion
    d. Have a liquid mobile phase
7. Gel electrophoresis
    a. Cannot separate DNA fragments
    b. Is similar to gas chromatography

   c. Has a very thin column for the stationary phase
   d. Uses an electric current as the mobile phase
8. The first experiments that led to the development of chromatography
   a. Used an inert gas as the stationary phase
   b. Showed that plant pigments could be separated and located by their color
   c. Used pumps to push the mobile phase through the column
   d. Were very much like today's thin-layer chromatography
9. One of the major differences between GC and HPLC is that
   a. GC has a liquid mobile phase
   b. GC uses columns to hold the mobile phase, whereas HPLC does not
   c. GC columns are heated, whereas HPLC columns are kept at room temperature
   d. HPLC always uses at least two liquids in its stationary phase
10. An ionic compound
   a. Is more likely to dissolve in a polar solvent such as water than a nonpolar solvent
   b. Always has a pH greater than 7
   c. Generates excess OH– when dissolved in water
   d. Cannot be separated from another ionic compound in a mixture

True or False

11 Chromatography techniques are used for separation and absolute identification of substances.
12 In order to be analyzed by gas chromatography, an analyte must be thermally stable up to about 300°C.
13 pH is a measure of the acidity of an aqueous solution.
14 Electrophoresis is similar to liquid chromatography except for the nature of the mobile phase.
15 In HPLC, the mobile phase is always a gas.
16 In thin-layer chromatography, the mobile phase is a liquid or solution.

Match Each Term with Its Definition

17. Retention time
18. Polarity
19. Adsorption
20. Electrophoresis
21. Thin-layer chromatography
22. Mobile phase

a. Carries the analyte through the stationary phase
b. Mobile phase is electric current
c. More than one sample can be separated at the same time
d. Time it takes a sample to move through stationary phase
e. Process where a solid grabs and holds an analyte
f. Property of a substance where it acts like a magnet

Short Answer Questions

23 What is polarity? Give some examples of polar and nonpolar substances.
24 What is a mobile phase? What is its purpose in chromatography?
25 How is gel electrophoresis similar to thin-layer chromatography? How is it different?

Further Reading

Saferstein, R. (2002). Forensic applications of mass spectrometry, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 1, 2nd edn., R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Staford, D. T. (1988). Forensic capillary gas chromatography, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 2, R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Suzuki, E. M. (1993). Forensic applications of infrared spectroscopy, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 3, R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

On the Web

A brief outline to chromatography with some good illustrations: http://antoine.frostburg.edu/chem/senese/101/matter/chromatography.shtml.

Animations of gas chromatography and electrophoresis and how they work: http://www.shsu.edu/~chm_tgc/sounds/sound.html.

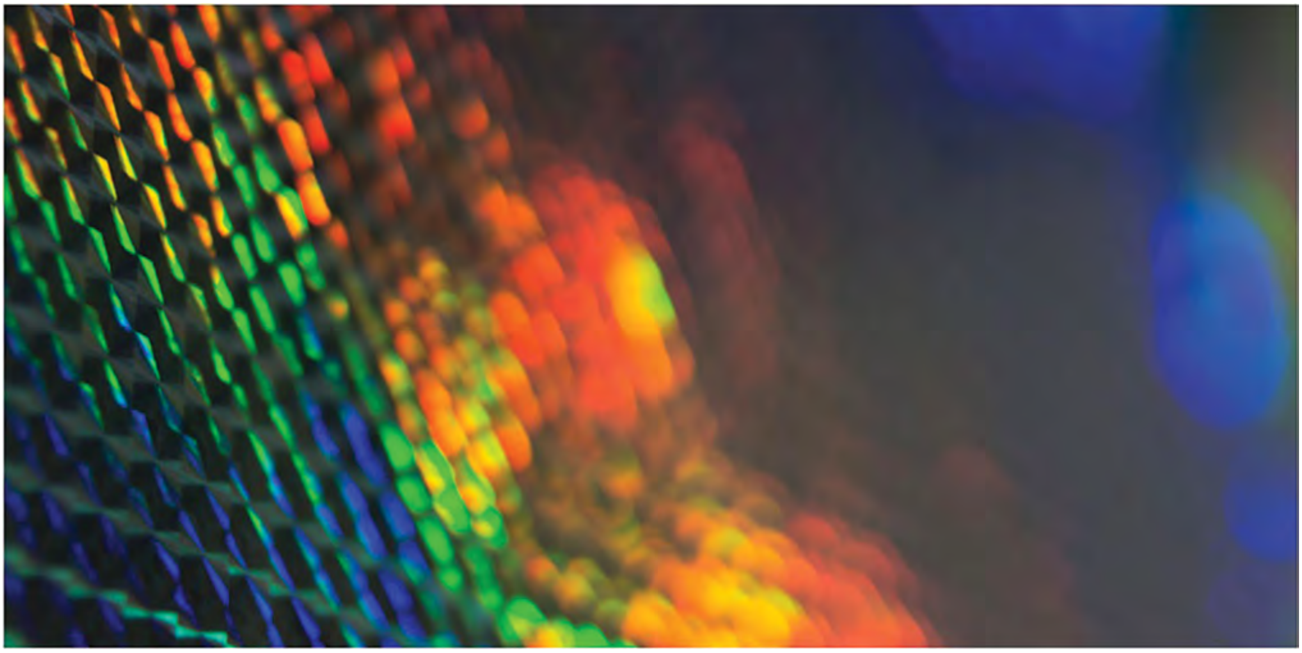
Videos of solid-phase microextraction: http://www.sigmaaldrich.com/analytical-chromatography/video/spme-video.html.

YouTube video of a liquid–liquid extraction: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vcwfhDhLiQU.

Modes of capillary electrophoresis: https://www.shsu.edu/~chm_tgc/primers/pdf/CEs.pdf.

5

Light and Matter



Learning Objectives

1. To be able to describe the wave nature of light
2. To be able to define and describe the properties of a wave: wavelength, frequency, period and amplitude
3. To compute the wavelength and/or frequency of a wave using wave formulas
4. To be able to describe the particle nature (quantum nature) of the absorption of light
5. To be able to describe the major regions of the electromagnetic spectrum and their effects upon matter
6. To be able to describe the effect of UV/visible light on matter and the types of matter that absorb these types of light
7. To be able to describe the effect of infrared on matter and the types of matter that absorb these types of light
8. To be able to sketch and label a typical spectrophotometer
9. To be able to define mass spectrometry

10. To be able to sketch and label a diagram of a mass spectrometer
11. To be able to describe how substances are ionized and analyzed in mass spectrometry
12. To be able to define *parent peak* and *base peak*

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is Light?*
- *Light as a Wave: The Electromagnetic Spectrum*
- *Properties of Waves*
- *Energy of Light: The Photon*
- *Interactions of Light Energy and Matter*
    - *Spectrophotometer*
    - *Ultraviolet/Visible Spectrophotometry*
    - *Infrared Spectrophotometry*
    - *Mass Spectrometry*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
    - *Multiple Choice Questions*
    - *True or False*
    - *Short Answer Questions*
    - *Problem-Solving*
- *Further Reading*
- *On The Web*

Mini Glossary

Electromagnetic (EM) spectrum: A large range of wavelengths of radiation that can travel through a vacuum.

Frequency of a wave: A property of a wave that is determined by the number of complete cycles of the wave moving past a given point in a time interval (usually a second).

Infrared (IR) radiation: An invisible wave in the electromagnetic spectrum characterized by lower frequency and longer wavelength, and sensed as heat.

Longitudinal wave: A wave in which the individual particles move back and forth parallel to the direction of energy transfer.

Period of a wave: A property of a wave that indicates the time taken for one complete cycle of a wave.

Photon: A discrete bundle or quantum of electromagnetic energy in the form of light.

Transverse (sine) wave: A wave that oscillates perpendicular (at right angles) to the direction of energy transfer.

Ultraviolet (UV) radiation: An invisible wave in the electromagnetic spectrum characterized by higher frequency and shorter wavelength, falling between X-rays and visible light.

Visible light: Part of the electromagnetic spectrum that is discernable by the human eye.

Wavelength: A property of a wave determined by the linear distance between two successive identical parts of a wave.

Acronyms

EM	Electromagnetic
FTIR	Fourier transform infrared spectrophotometry
IR	Infrared
LDMS	Laser desorption mass spectrometry
MALD	Matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization
UV	Ultraviolet

Introduction

Some shirts are red while others are blue. Exposing food to microwaves cooks it quickly and silently. X-rays can see the interior of a human body. All of these events occur because of the interaction between *electromagnetic radiation* and the atoms and molecules that comprise all matter. Electromagnetic radiation is energy in the form of waves. Some electromagnetic radiation is very energetic, such as X-rays and gamma radiation while other types have relatively very little energy associated with them, such as microwaves and radio waves. Most forms of electromagnetic radiation are invisible to the human eye, whereas a small portion of the electromagnetic spectrum is manifested as *light energy*. Some of this light is visible to humans as color. This chapter will describe the effects of some of the forms of electromagnetic radiation on matter. As we will see, certain materials can be characterized and even identified by measuring the changes they undergo when exposed to certain types of electromagnetic radiation. This can be significant forensically as part of the process of identifying unknown samples taken at a crime scene as evidence.

Many people use the term “light” to mean all electromagnetic radiation, whereas others refer to light as only the electromagnetic radiation we can see. In this chapter, the two terms will be used interchangeably.

What Is Light?

Light is radiant energy that comes to earth via our sun. Visible light, that which we sense with our eyes, is only a small portion of the energy that travels through the vacuum of space to our planet. The sun’s energy travels in the form of *electromagnetic waves*, which are fluctuations of electric and magnetic fields that transport energy from one location to another (see Figure 5.1). These waves are able to move through space as they do not need a medium (particles) transfer the energy.

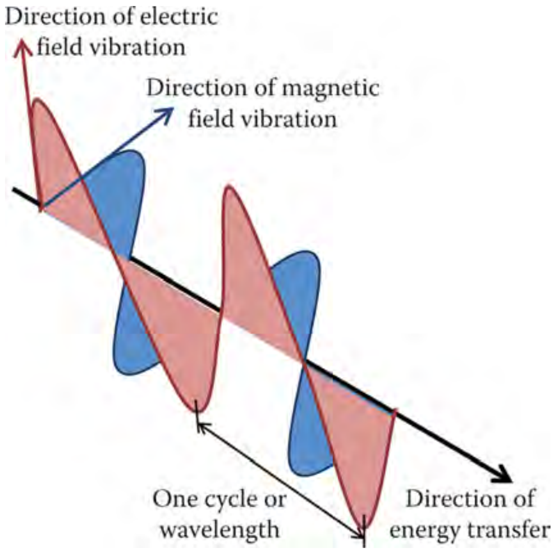

Direction of electric field vibration
Direction of magnetic field vibration
One cycle or wavelength
Direction of energy transfer

Figure 5.1 The magnetic and electric field orientation in an electromagnetic wave.

Visible light exhibits what is called a “dual nature”, meaning it can act as an electromagnetic wave and as a particle called a *photon*. Scientists make use of this dual nature in various instruments used in research and testing.

Light as a Wave: The Electromagnetic Spectrum

Other forms of electromagnetic radiation are not visible to the naked eye and include radio waves, television waves, microwaves, *infrared waves*, *ultraviolet waves*, X-rays and gamma rays. All of these waves have one property in common; they all travel at the same speed, the speed of light. But they differ and are classified according to their wavelength and frequency.

The shortest wavelength waves that we normally encounter in our world are gamma rays. Because they have the shortest wavelength, they are the highest energy waves of those in the spectrum. We will examine this relationship later in the chapter. The longest wavelength waves are radio waves, which are lowest in energy. If the electromagnetic radiation is arranged in order of increasing wavelength (or decreasing frequency), it is known as the *electromagnetic* (*EM*) *spectrum*. This arrangement is shown in Figure 5.2.

Proceeding from left to right on the chart, the wavelengths go from longest to shortest and the frequencies from lowest to highest. The long wavelength radio waves have wavelengths that are in the range of 1–10 m long. TV waves are slightly shorter wavelengths. Because these two types of waves are long wavelength, low-frequency waves they contain very little energy and are not harmful to humans. The next shorter wavelength region belongs to microwave radiation. Energy beams with these wavelengths cause molecules to spin. Microwaves are used to cook foods by causing the water molecules in the food to rotate rapidly. These spinning water molecules come in contact with each other and generate heat by friction. The heat produced cooks the food.

One of the most important areas of the electromagnetic spectrum is the *infrared* (*IR*) *region*. Infrared radiation is invisible energy characterized by lower frequency

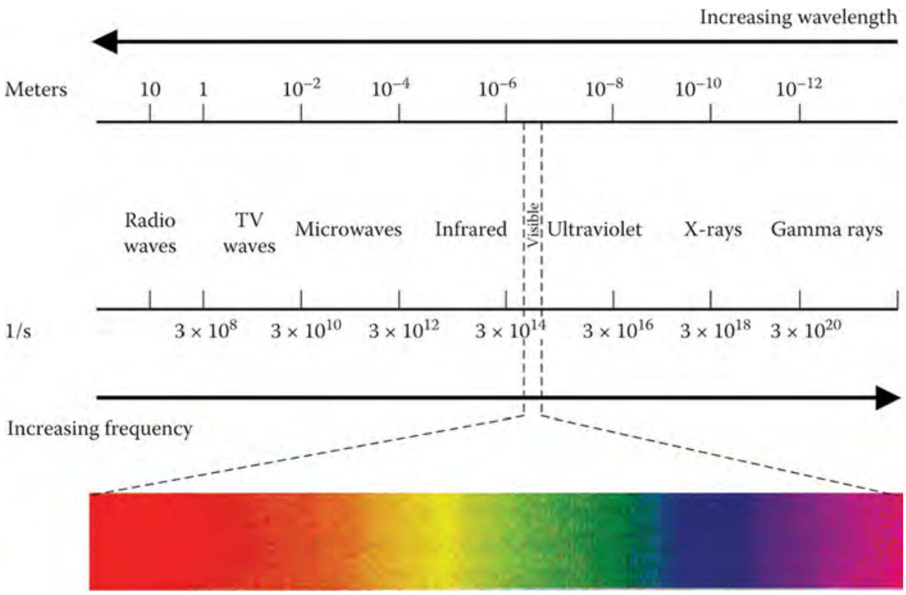

Increasing wavelength
Meters
10
1
10^{-2}
10^{-4}
10^{-6}
10^{-8}
10^{-10}
10^{-12}
Radio waves
TV waves
Microwaves
Infrared
Visible
Ultraviolet
X-rays
Gamma rays
1/s
3×10^8
3×10^{10}
3×10^{12}
3×10^{14}
3×10^{16}
3×10^{18}
3×10^{20}
Increasing frequency

Figure 5.2 The electromagnetic (EM) spectrum. The visible region of light is a very narrow band between the infrared (IR) and the ultraviolet (UV) regions.

and longer wavelength, and sensed as heat. Radiation in this region causes the bonds in molecules to vibrate as if the bonds were springs. Every type of bond in every molecule will vibrate and there are many ways that a bond can undergo vibrations. Because of this, infrared spectra are very complex and unique. This will be discussed in more detail later.

Radiations with higher frequencies than infrared are visible to the naked eye. This visible region is usually described by its wavelengths, which are measured in nanometers. Visible light ranges from about 400 to 800 nm (10^{-9} m). Note in Figure 5.2 that visible light proceeds from red to violet as the frequency increases. This is why the region below the visible red light in frequency is called infrared. *Infra* means "below". The next higher frequencies comprise the *ultraviolet* (*UV*) region. The term *ultra* means "above". This region is above the frequency of visible violet light. Light in the visible and UV regions have outermost electrons that absorb energy and move to higher atomic levels or orbitals. When they drop back to their ground state orbitals, these electrons must release energy in the form of visible or ultraviolet light. Ultraviolet light possesses enough energy to damage living cells. UV energy causes sunburn and can cause skin cancer.

Light with shorter wavelengths such as X-rays and gamma (γ)-rays possess enough energy to severely damage living cells and can destroy them. Gamma rays are emitted by nuclear weapons in great quantities and are one reason why exposure to a nuclear explosion is usually fatal.

Properties of Waves

There are two types of wave motion, longitudinal and transverse. Both wave types transfer energy from one place to another by repeatable motion of energy or particles. Sound waves are *longitudinal waves* and need a medium for the transfer of sound energy. The molecules in the medium move back and forth, creating regions of high and low pressure. As the molecules compress and expand, they collide and transfer the energy parallel along the wave. The basic structure on a longitudinal wave is shown in Figure 5.3. Although these types of waves are not used in the instrumentation discussed in this chapter, it is important to realize how sound waves are different from the waves of the EM spectrum. Radio waves are *not* sound waves, but are part of the electromagnetic spectrum and therefore do not need a medium for travel.

Light as a wave can be described as electromagnetic energy that oscillates in cycles (refer to Figure 5.1). It can be described as a *transverse wave* or sine wave. A transverse wave is shown in Figure 5.4. It is *periodic*, meaning that it oscillates back and forth repeatedly. The direction of its oscillation is perpendicular to the direction of energy propagation. There are several ways that a transverse wave can be described. The *wavelength* (λ) is the distance between any two adjacent peaks or valleys of the waves. It is measured in units of length that vary with the type of wave. For example, radio waves are very long and are measured in meters. X-rays, on the other hand, are very short and are measured in micrometers (μm or 10^{-6} m), which are millionths of meters.

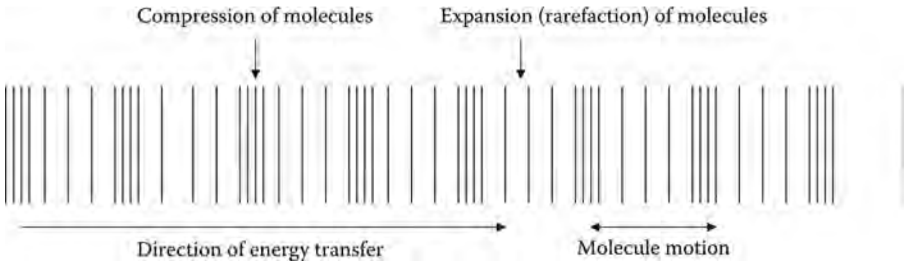

Compression of molecules
Expansion (rarefaction) of molecules
Direction of energy transfer
Molecule motion

Figure 5.3 A longitudinal sound wave. The areas of high density of molecules are due to *compression* of the air and the areas of low density of molecules are due to *expansion* (called a *rarefaction*) of the air. The motion of the molecules is parallel to the direction of energy transfer.

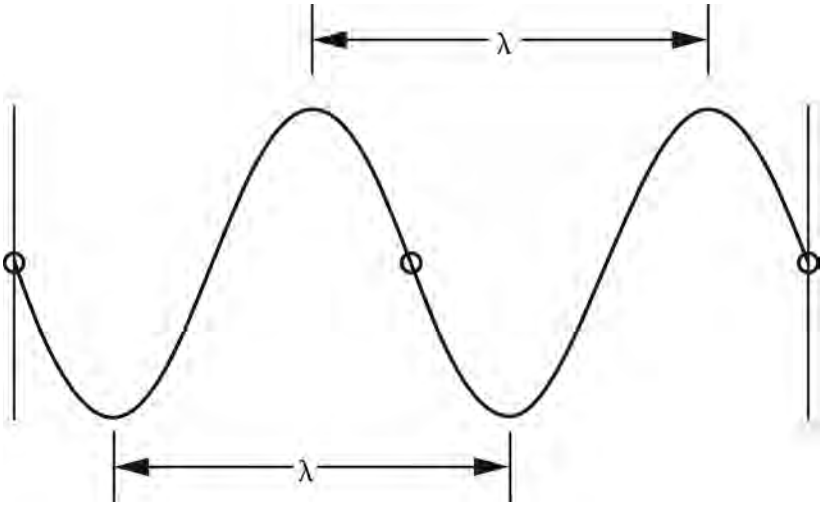


Figure 5.4 Light can be visualized as a series of transverse or sine waves. A given photon of light can be described in terms of its wavelength (λ), the distance between two adjacent peaks or valleys.

Another way of describing waves is by their *frequency* (f). The frequency of light is the number of cycles that pass a given point in 1 second. If you were standing on a street corner and could see and count the waves of red light being emitted by a traffic signal, the number of waves that pass you in 1 second (s) would be the frequency of that light. Frequency is measured in *Hertz* (Hz). One Hertz = one cycle per second. Its units are expressed as (1/s or /s).

The *period* (T) of a wave is a measure of time. It is the time taken for the wave to complete one cycle and is measured in seconds. Since both period and frequency have time in common, they are related to each other. The frequency (cycles/s) of a wave is the inverse of the period (s/cycle) of a wave. Equation 5.1 shows this relationship.

$$f = \frac{1}{T} \tag{5.1}$$

Additionally, frequency and wavelength are related to each other. They are also inversely proportional; as one gets larger, the other gets smaller. This is because the velocity of light is always the same (as it travels through air or a vacuum). The velocity of light (c) is approximately 3×10^8 m/s. If you are back at that street corner counting waves, you would notice that waves from the red stop light have longer wavelengths than waves emanating from the green light. Further, you would count fewer red waves passing you in 1 s than green ones because they are both traveling at the same speed. The relationship between the speed of light, its wavelength and its frequency is expressed in Equation 5.2.

$$c = \lambda f \tag{5.2}$$

where

c is the speed of light in m/s
λ is the wavelength in m
f is the frequency in Hz or /s

Note that the speed of light must have the same length units as the wavelength because in order for any equation to be valid its units must be the same on both sides. This equation allows us to determine the wavelength of any beam of light if we know its frequency and *vice versa*.

Sample Problem

Suppose your favorite FM radio station is at 120 on the dial. We want to calculate the wavelength of this station. FM stations broadcast in the megahertz region of the electromagnetic spectrum. This station has a frequency of 120 MHz or 120×10^6 Hz (/s). Recall that the speed of light is 3×10^8 m/s.

Rearranging Equation 5.1 we get: $\lambda = c/f$
Since $c = 3 \times 10^8$ m/s and $f = 120 \times 10^6$/s
Substitute in the equation and solve:

$$\lambda = \frac{3\times10^8 \text{ m/s}}{120\times10^6 \text{ /s}} = 2.5 \text{ m}$$

The final wavelength is **2.5 m**. Radio waves are very long indeed!

On Your Own

Go back to that street corner and look at the green light. Suppose you could measure its wavelength and found it to be 500 nm. A nanometer is 10^{-9} m. How many green waves would pass you in 1 s? (*Answer*: 6×10^{14}/s)

Energy of Light: The Photon

In restaurants, freshly cooked food is often kept hot until served by placing it under an infrared lamp. Clearly this type of light is hot. It contains energy. In fact, all radiation contains energy. Early in the twentieth century, a man named Max Plank deduced that radiation is made up of discrete bundles of energy called quanta. He deduced that the amount of energy in these quanta is directly dependent on the frequency of vibration. From the work of Max Plank came the notion that light, a form of radiation, contains these bundles or quanta of energy, which we call *photons* of light.

The metric unit (SI unit) of energy is the joule (J). Another common unit of energy is the erg. The joule is a larger energy unit than the erg such that one joule is equal to 10^7 ergs. Equation 5.3 shows how frequency (f) and energy (E) are related.

$$E = hf \tag{5.3}$$

In this equation, energy (E) is measured in joules (J) and frequency in 1/s. h is a constant of proportionality to get the units the same on both sides of the equation. It is called *Plank's constant* and its units are joules × seconds (J s). It has the value of 6.626×10^{-34} J s or 6.626×10^{-27} erg s.

Sample Problem

Now let us see how much energy the waves that carry your favorite FM station have.

Recall that the frequency is 120×10^6 Hz.

By substituting in Equation 5.3, we get

$$E = \left(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J s}\right) \times \left(120 \times 10^6 / \text{s}\right) = 7.95 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{J}$$

On Your Own

Calculate the energy of that beam of green light from the traffic light on the corner.

(*Answer*: 3.98×10^{-19} J)

Compare your value to the energy of the radio station. What does this tell you about how the frequency is related to energy?

If you have the wavelength of light instead of the frequency, substitute the wave equation (5.2) solved for frequency into Equation 5.3. The energy of the light can be calculated from the new Equation 5.4:

$$\text{Since } f = c/\lambda \; E = hc/\lambda \tag{5.4}$$

Interactions of Light Energy and Matter

Many types of electromagnetic radiation can affect materials. Forensic science is most interested in those interactions that help describe or identify particular substances that are encountered as evidence. These substances include drugs, explosives, fibers, paints and others. The areas of the electromagnetic spectrum that are most important to forensic scientists are the infrared, the visible and the ultraviolet regions. These will be discussed separately, but first it is necessary to learn how the interactions of light and matter are measured, recorded and displayed.

The types of interactions that matter undergoes when exposed to light depend upon the energy (and thus the frequency) of the light. The interactions with a particular substance are dependent upon its chemical structure. Different substances interact with certain wavelengths of light but not others.

Infrared, ultraviolet and visible light interact with electrons and bonds in molecules. Normally, these electrons reside in their lowest energy state, which is closest to the nucleus of the atom. Electromagnetic radiation will cause the electrons and bonds to absorb energy and move to a higher energy level further from the atomic nucleus. The amount of energy absorbed by the radiated molecule is measured. Quantum mechanics dictates that the packet or *photon* of radiation must contain the exact energy needed to promote an electron or bond to a higher level. The molecule cannot absorb half of the frequency (or energy) and reject the rest. If a photon has 10^5 joules of energy, a substance cannot absorb 10^2 and reject the rest. Think of climbing a staircase. You can be on one stair or another stair, but you cannot be between the stairs. So it is with electrons. They can be on one level or another but not between the levels. This is shown graphically in Figure 5.5.

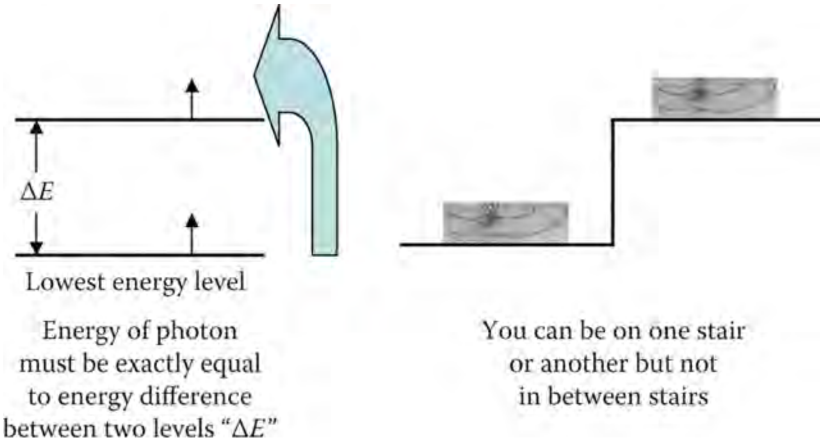

ΔE
Lowest energy level
Energy of photon must be exactly equal to energy difference between two levels "ΔE"
You can be on one stair or another but not in between stairs

Figure 5.5 Energy levels of electrons are quantized. An electron can only exist in a lower or higher energy state but not between them. A photon of light must have energy exactly equal to the difference in energy between two electronic states in order for it to be absorbed by the molecule and promote an electron to a higher state. This is analogous to a shoe being on one stair or another but it cannot be between the stairs.

Spectrophotometer

Each material will absorb energy from some photons and not others. An instrument called a *spectrophotometer* is used to measure which frequencies (or wavelengths) of light are absorbed and how much. A simplified diagram of a spectrophotometer is shown in Figure 5.6.

The source emits light of all of the wavelengths in that region of the spectrum. Different types of sources are used for each type of light. For example, a *Nerntz Glower* emits light in the infrared region. A *xenon lamp* is used to obtain visible light and a *deuterium lamp* emits ultraviolet light.

The *monochromator* is usually a prism or grating. It has the property of *refracting* (bending) light waves. Shorter wavelength light is refracted to a greater degree than long wave light. In the visible range, violet light is bent more than red light. The ability of a monochromator to refract light enables it to separate the light from the source into individual wavelengths. The monochromator can be turned slowly so that different wavelengths are exposed to the sample over time. During the course of a run, all of the wavelengths will reach the sample eventually. The type of sample holder used in a spectrophotometer depends upon what type of analysis is being performed. In some cases, liquids or solutions are best, in others, solids are used.

As the light passes through the sample, some of it will be absorbed, the rest transmitted. The light that is transmitted reaches the detector. The type of detector used depends upon the type of light being analyzed. For example, infrared light detectors are generally some type of *thermocouple*, a device that is able to convert heat into electricity. The more light that reaches the detector, the more electricity can be generated. For UV and visible light, a *photocell* is used. A photocell converts light to electricity and like the thermocouple, creates more electricity when it receives more light.

The monochromator and the detector are both controlled and monitored by a data processor, which is usually a computer. The data processor collects data about the wavelength of light and the response of the detector. It ultimately creates a plot of wavelength (or frequency) versus the amount of light transmitted or absorbed by the sample. This plot is called a *spectrum*.

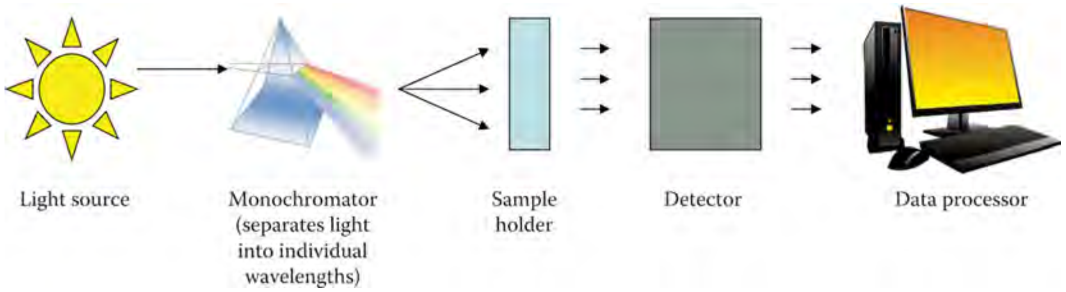


Figure 5.6 A typical spectrophotometer. The light source will differ depending upon the type of light (e.g., infrared or visible) that is being studied. The monochromator separates the light into individual wavelengths using a prism. The detector design depends upon the type of light being analyzed. For example, a UV light detector would be a type of photocell.

Ultraviolet/Visible Spectrophotometry

One of the most important characteristics of evidence is its color. This is most useful in paints and fibers. For example, there are many red fibers and, although the human eye is a very good discriminator of color, it can be fooled. Scientific evidence analysis requires something more objective than a scientist's opinion that two fibers are the same color. There is also the problem of *metamerism*, the property of color where two objects may appear to be the same color in one type of light but different in another (see Figure 5.7).

In the end, the only objective means of determining the exact color of an object is to measure the amounts and wavelengths of visible light that it absorbs. This requires a visible spectrophotometer.

The absorbance of visible and ultraviolet light depends upon the outer shell or valence electrons; those that participate in the covalent chemical bonds that bind atoms together in molecules. As it turns out, not all molecules absorb light in the ultraviolet/visible region. Only those molecules that have bonds of low enough energy will be UV/visible active. The best UV/visible absorbers are molecules with *conjugated carbon-carbon (or nitrogen) double bonds*. These are double bonds that alternate with single bonds. Some examples are shown in Figure 5.8.

The structure of crystal violet, a common blue dye found in ball point pen inks is shown in Figure 5.9. Note the large number of conjugated double bonds in this molecule. This explains its bright color. Most dyes and pigments are highly conjugated.

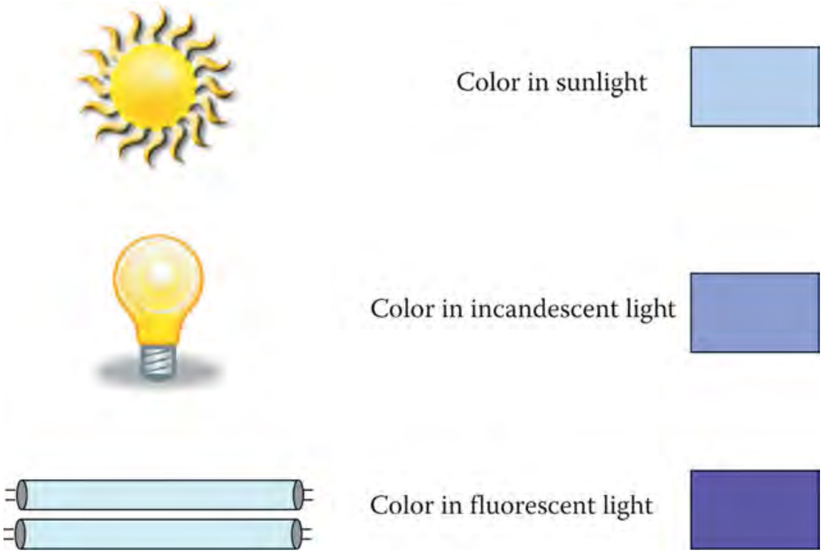
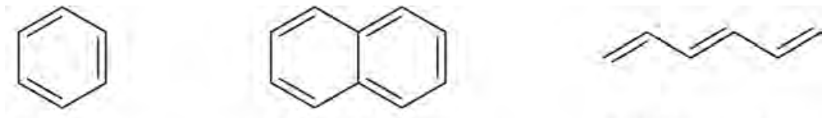


Figure 5.7 Metamerism is the effect that different light sources have on the color of an object. The hue of the color changes depending on the source of illumination.



Benzene Naphthalene 1,3,5 Hexa triene

Figure 5.8 These substances are examples of molecules that readily absorb UV light.

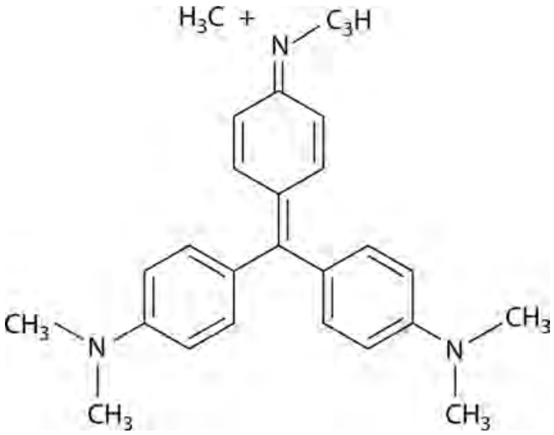


Figure 5.9 The structure of crystal violet.

As mentioned previously, UV/visible spectra arise from the transition of valence electrons from a lower energy level to a higher one. In most molecules, spectra are relatively simple, with only one or two transitions. Because of the energy supplied by room temperature, the transitions tend to be very broad. The UV spectrum of heroin is shown in Figure 5.10. Note that there are two absorptions (peaks) that lie close to each other and are quite broad.

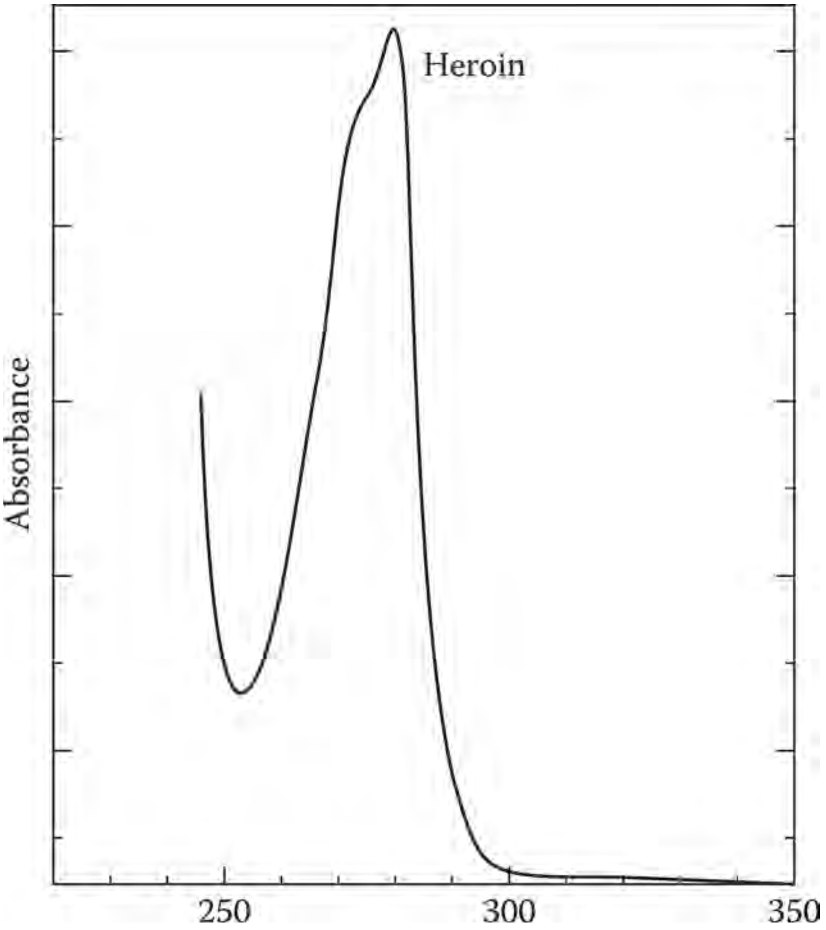


Figure 5.10 The ultraviolet spectrum of heroin.

Sometimes, it is necessary or desirable to obtain the visible and/or UV spectrum of a microscopic sample such as a single fiber. In such a case, a UV/visible microspectrophotometer is used. This instrument is a combination of a microscope and a spectrophotometer. It is explained in detail in Chapter 6.

Infrared Spectrophotometry

Every covalent chemical bond consists of one, two or three pairs of electrons between two atoms. Each atom usually contributes half of the electrons in the bond. The best way to understand how infrared spectrophotometry occurs is to consider each bond as two weights connected by a spring. This is shown in Figure 5.11, where the red and green balls represent the two atoms and the spring represents the bond. Two weights connected by a spring are collectively called a *harmonic oscillator*. If the spring is stretched, it will vibrate back and forth at a constant frequency that depends upon the strength of the spring and the masses of the two weights. Any change, however slight, in the mass of either weight or the strength of the spring, will change the harmonic frequency. So it is with atoms that are joined by chemical bonds. Each bond will absorb just the right energy (quantized) to get the bond vibrating. Every type of bond connecting every type of atoms will have different frequencies of vibration. Not only that, but each bond can undergo several different types of vibrations, each one requiring a different energy photon of light. Figure 5.12 shows some of the vibrations of the water molecule.

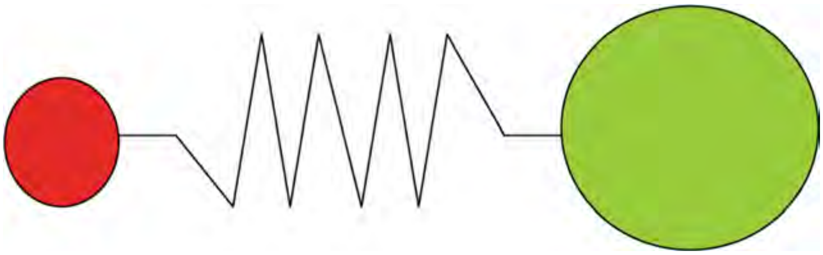


Figure 5.11 The absorption of infrared energy by a molecule can be visualized by considering a spring with weights at each end. In order to get the spring vibrating, energy of the exact magnitude must be available. The amount of energy depends upon the strength of the spring and the masses of the two weights. Likewise, the photon of infrared light that will be absorbed by a bond depends upon the strength of the bond and the masses of the atoms that are bonded.

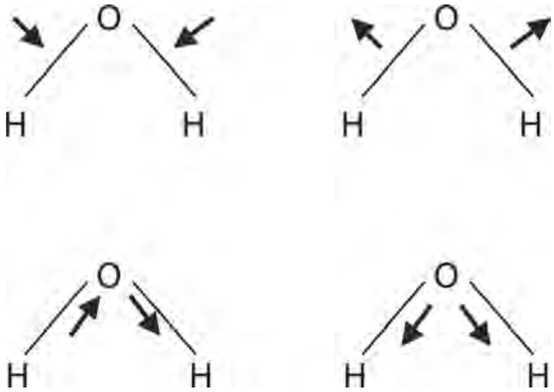


Figure 5.12 These are some of the vibrations that a water molecule can undergo. Some of these will show up as peaks in the infrared spectrum of water. Not all molecular vibrations are active in the infrared region.

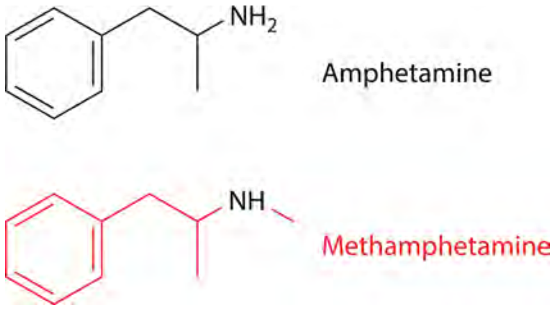


Figure 5.13 Structures of methamphetamine and amphetamine.

The more bonds there are in a molecule, the more vibrations there are and the more complex will be the infrared spectrum. Even very similar molecules can have different infrared spectra. Figure 5.13 shows the structure of amphetamine and methamphetamine. Figure 5.14 shows their infrared spectra. Even though the molecules are very similar in structure, their infrared spectra can be easily differentiated.

Infrared spectra are so complex that each molecule has a unique spectrum. This means that infrared spectrophotometry can be used to unequivocally identify a pure substance.

Sometimes, it is necessary or desirable to obtain the infrared spectrum of a microscopic sample such as a single fiber, a bit of ink or a small paint chip. In these cases, an IR microspectrophotometer can be used. This instrument is a combination of a microscope and in infrared spectrophotometer. It is explained in detail in Chapter 6.

These basic principles of the spectrophotometer apply to UV/visible and infrared instruments. Today's infrared spectrophotometers work on a somewhat different principle. Instead of the monochromator that selects which wavelengths of light reach the sample, the source light is sent instead to a *Michaelson Interferometer*. This apparatus converts the light beam containing all the wavelengths of infrared light into an *interferogram*, which is a set of all of the wavelengths of light formed into a pattern of added and subtracted intensities of light. The interferogram is then projected on to the sample that absorbs and transmits the light as usual. The interferogram is then turned back into individual wavelengths using a mathematical process called the *Fourier transform*. The wavelengths and absorptions are then plotted as usual. This type of infrared spectroscopy is called *Fourier transform infrared spectrophotometry* (FTIR).

Mass Spectrometry

Up until now, we have been looking at the interactions of electromagnetic radiation and matter focusing on UV/visible and infrared light. Now, the focus will shift to another type of interaction. Instead of using light as a means of delivering energy to matter, a beam of high-speed electrons can be used. A pure chemical substance is converted to a vapor and introduced into an evacuated chamber and then bombarded with a beam of high-speed electrons. The energy of the electrons is absorbed by the substance. This causes the substance to lose an electron of its own and form a positive ion. In mass spectrometry, this is called the *molecular* (M^+) *ion*. In some cases, the molecule will lose two electrons and

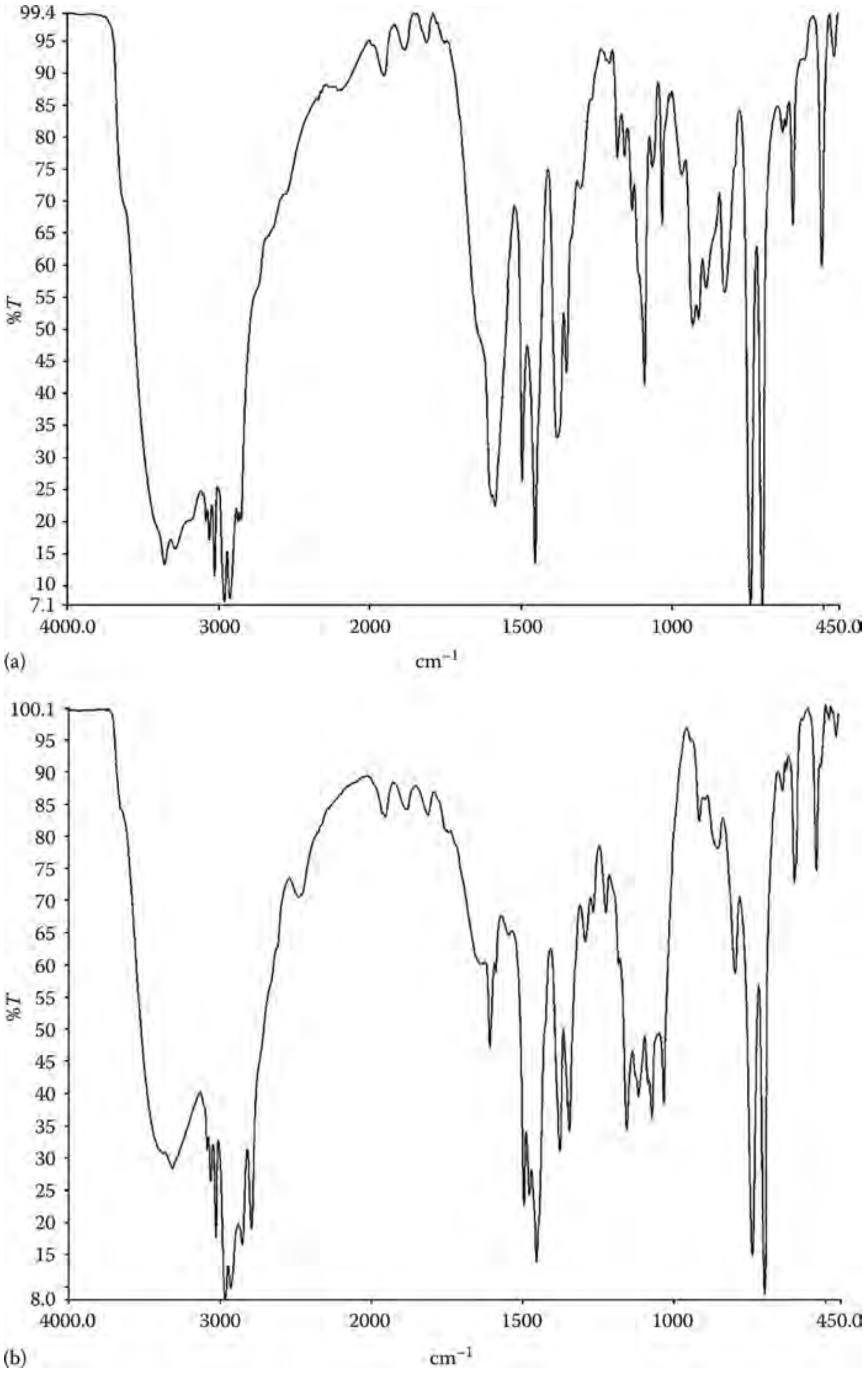


Figure 5.14 Infrared spectra of amphetamine (a) and methamphetamine (b). Even though the molecules are structurally similar, their infrared spectra can be used to differentiate them.

will then have a +2 charge, but this relatively rare. The M$^+$ ion is usually unstable and will decompose, producing *daughter ions*. These are fragments of the original molecule that are also positive ions. Depending upon their stability, the daughter ions may undergo further decomposition into smaller fragments. If a substance is subjected to bombardment with an electron beam under the same conditions each time, the number, amounts and sizes of each fragment will be reproducible.

After the ionization step, the ions are accelerated down a tube and focused using magnets. This step separates the fragments by weight. A mass detector is used to arrange the fragments by increasing mass and displaying them as vertical lines from smallest mass to largest. A diagram of a mass spectrometer is shown in Figure 5.15. The mass spectrum of cocaine is shown in Figure 5.16. With few exceptions, the pattern of fragments and their relative amounts is unique to each substance so mass spectrometry can be used to identify a pure chemical compound.

Strictly speaking, a mass spectrum does not show the masses of the fragments but the mass (*m*) divided by the charge of an electron (*e*) or *m*/*e*. This is because, as mentioned earlier, some molecules or fragments may lose two electrons. A fragment with a mass of 78 that has lost two electrons would show up at *m*/*e* 39 (78/2).

Certain ions have special significance in a mass spectrum. The ion that represents the original molecule without any fragmentation is called the *parent peak*. The mass of this ion is the molecular weight of the substance. Knowing the molecular weight can be very important in identifying unknown materials. The fragment that is most stable and has the highest abundance is called the *base peak*. In the mass spectrum of cocaine in Figure 5.16, the base peak of cocaine is 82 and the parent peak is at 303.

There are a large number of modifications of the basic mass spectrometer in use today. There are different types of sources, methods of ionization, sample chambers and focusing systems. For example, instead of an electron beam as the source of energy, a variable energy laser beam can be used. The beam can be focused on the sample, which can be a solid or vapor. The laser ionizes the molecules in the sample but does not contain enough energy to cause fragmentation. The only ion that is seen in the mass spectrum is the parent peak, making it easy to determine the molecular weight of an unknown substance. This type of mass

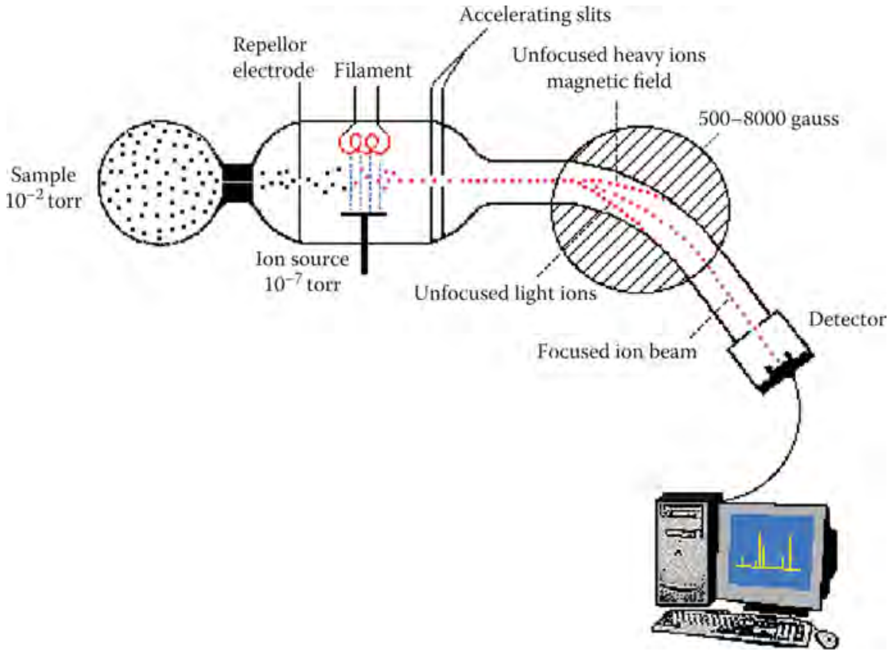


Figure 5.15 Diagram of a mass spectrometer. Reprinted from William Reusch, http://www.cem.msu.edu/~reusch/VirtualText/Spectrpy/MassSpec/masspec1.htm. With permission.

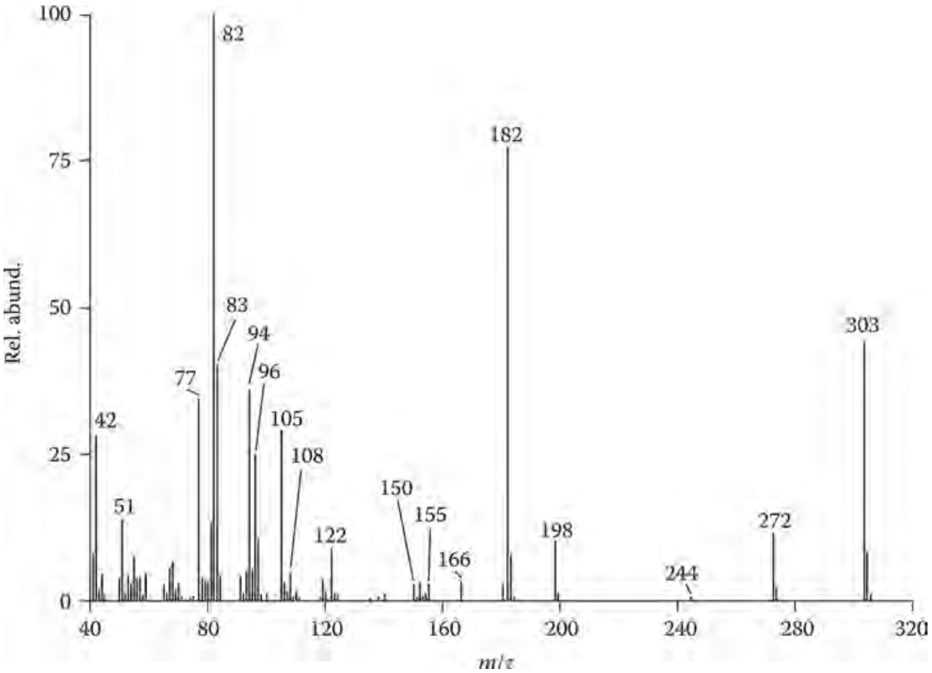


Figure 5.16 Mass spectrum of cocaine.

spectrometry is called laser desorption mass spectrometry (LDMS). Sometimes, it is difficult to transfer the energy from the laser directly to the sample, so the sample is embedded in a conducting matrix that accepts energy from the laser and transfers it to the sample. This type of mass spectrometry is called matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization (MALDI). LDMS and MALDI have been used on a number of types of evidence, most recently on inks. LDMS spectra of ink on paper can be generated directly, without removing the ink first.

Summary

Light has the unique character of presenting as an electromagnetic wave or as a particle. Light waves are transverse waves consisting of oscillations of electric and magnetic fields that travel through space. Light as a particle is a packet of energy called a photon. Waves can be described by their frequency (the number of waves that pass by each second) or by wavelength, the distance between the same points on two, adjacent waves. The energy associated with a photon of light is dependent upon its frequency; the higher the frequency, the more energy. Light waves are arranged into the electromagnetic spectrum. Each region of the spectrum contains waves that have different effects upon matter.

The interactions of light and matter are measured using a spectrophotometer. This instrument consists of a light source, a monochromator that selects the wavelengths of light that reach the sample, the sample compartment, a detector for determining which wavelengths of light were transmitted through the sample and a data processor that collects information about the wavelengths of light and the amount of light absorbed and transmitted by the sample.

The areas of the electromagnetic spectrum that are of most interest to forensic scientists are the ultraviolet/visible range and the infrared range. When matter is exposed to UV/visible light, it promotes electrons to higher orbitals. These spectra tend to be broad with only one or two major peaks. Not all substances absorb UV/visible light. Organic compounds that have conjugated double bonds are the most active in this region. Visible light is a narrow region of the UV/visible spectrum whose wavelengths of light can be seen by the human eye as color.

The infrared region causes the bonds between atoms in all substances to vibrate. There are several different types of vibrations that can take place in a chemical bond. Infrared spectra are so complex that the spectrum for each chemical substance is unique.

Mass spectrometry uses a beam of electrons to interact with light. The electrons cause the substance to lose one or sometimes two of its own electrons, forming a positive ion. This ion may undergo degradation to smaller ions. The ions are separated and detected by the mass spectrometer and displayed as a series of peaks of increasing mass to charge ratio. The mass spectrum for a pure substance is reproducible and unique to that substance.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The velocity of light in a vacuum or air is approximately
   a. 3×10^{10} m/s
   b. 3×10^{8} m/s
   c. 186,000 m/s
   d. 186,000 miles/min
2. The number of light waves that pass a point in 1 s is called its
   a. Frequency
   b. Wavelength
   c. Period
   d. Quantum
3. As the frequency of light increases
   a. Its energy increases
   b. Its wavelength increases
   c. Plank's constant increases
   d. Its energy decreases
4. Plank's constant
   a. Is a measure of the speed of light in frequency units
   b. Is a measure of wavelength
   c. Relates the energy of a photon of light to its frequency
   d. Varies with the medium that the light is passing through
5. The part of the spectrophotometer that selects the wavelength of light that reaches the sample is
   a. The Nernst glower
   b. The monochromator
   c. The photocell
   d. The thermocouple

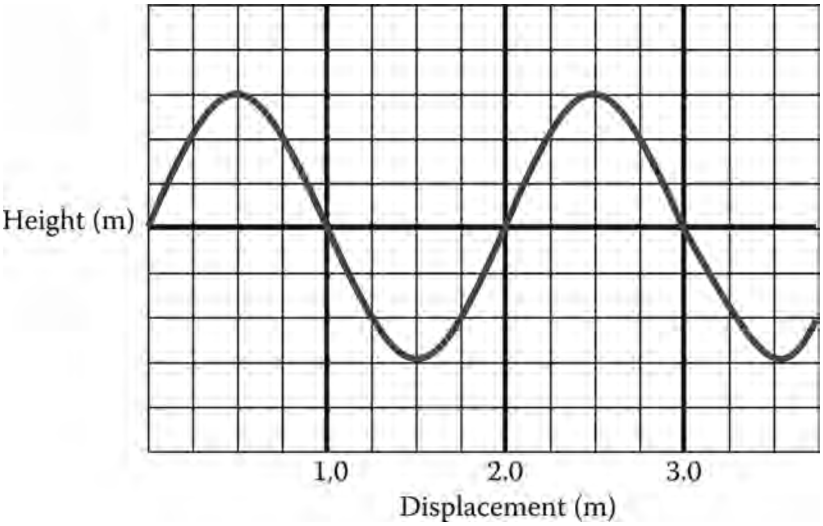
6. If a spectrophotometer has a photocell detector and a xenon lamp source, it is a
   a. Mass spectrometer
   b. An infrared spectrophotometer
   c. A microwave instrument
   d. A UV/visible spectrophotometer
7. The type of spectrometry that measures the energy absorbed by molecules causing bond vibrations is
   a. UV/visible
   b. Infrared
   c. Mass
   d. X-ray
8. The type of spectrometry that uses electrons to bombard a sample is
   a. Scanning electron microscopy
   b. Mass spectrometry
   c. Infrared spectrophotometry
   d. Microwave spectrometry
9. The parent peak in a mass spectrum refers to
   a. A substance used to calibrate the instrument
   b. The most abundant ion
   c. An ion that has lost two electrons
   d. The molecular ion
10. The ____________ spectrum is so complex it is considered to be unique
    a. Visible
    b. Ultraviolet
    c. Infrared
    d. Microwave
11. Light has a "dual nature", which means that it can act as both
    a. A transverse and longitudinal wave
    b. A wave and a particle
    c. A photon and a quanta
    d. An electric wave and a magnetic wave
12. The period of a wave is
    a. The number of waves passing a point in a second
    b. The number of waves passing a point in a meter
    c. The time it takes for one complete wave to pass a point
    d. The distance it takes for one complete wave to pass a point
13. A photon is
    a. An electromagnetic wave
    b. An object that splits light into its component colors
    c. The time for a complete wave
    d. A discrete packet of energy
14. As the wavelength of radiation increases, its energy
    a. Increases
    b. Decreases
    c. Stays the same
15. All forms of radiation in the electromagnetic spectrum have what in common?
    a. Wavelength
    b. Frequency
    c. Period
    d. Velocity

True or False

16. Light is an oscillating longitudinal wave.
17. Electrons can absorb electromagnetic energy in discrete packets called photons.
18. The period and frequency of a transverse wave are inversely related to each other.
19. Spectrophotometers are used to determine what frequencies of light are absorbed by a substance.
20. If a wave has a high frequency, it will also be high in energy content.

Short Answer Questions

21. Explain what happens to the electrons in an atom when they absorb a photon of energy.
22. Sketch the basic structure of the spectrophotometer.
23. Determine the wavelength of the following transverse wave.



Problem-Solving

24.
   a. Green light has a wavelength of 510 nm. What is the frequency of the light?
   b. One possible frequency of X-rays is 30 × 10^{15} Hz. What is the wavelength of this X-ray?

25.
   a. Calculate the energy content in each of the radiation sources in Problem 24.
   b. Another electromagnetic wave has an energy of 1.98 × 10^{-17} J, find the wavelength.
   c. What type of EM wave is this?

Further Reading

Humecki, H. J. (ed.). (1995). *Practical Guide to Infrared Microspectroscopy*. Marcel Dekker, New York.

Perkampus, H. H. and H. C. Grinter. (1992). *UV-Vis Spectroscopy and Its Applications (Springer Laboratory)*. Springer Verlag, New York.

Skoog, D. A., Holler, F. J., and T. A. Nieman. (1997). *Principles of Instrumental Analysis*, 5th edn. Brooks Cole, Belmont, CA.

On the Web

For background on the dual nature of light: http://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/physics/articles/ekspong/index.html.

Infrared radiation: http://www.gemini.edu/public/infrared.html.

Ultraviolet radiation: http://www.biospherical.com/nsf/student/page3.html.

Properties of Light: https://www.pveducation.org/pvcdrom/properties-of-sunlight/properties-of-light

6

Microscopy

10 / 0.25
160/0.17

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to describe the light path through a simple lens
2. To be able to define a compound microscope and describe the light path through it
3. To be able to name the parts of a compound microscope
4. To be able to describe how a comparison microscope is constructed
5. To be able describe how a stereo microscope is constructed
6. To be able to define plane polarized light
7. To be able to describe how a polarized light microscope works
8. To be able to describe how a scanning electron microscope works
9. To be able to define and describe energy-dispersive X-ray analysis

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
  - *Types of Microscopes*
  - *Forensic Microscopy*
- *Lens: How Objects Are Magnified*
  - *Simple Magnifiers*
  - *Compound Magnifiers*
- *Compound Microscope*
- *Modifications of the Compound Microscope*
  - *Comparison Microscope*
  - *Stereomicroscope*
  - *Polarized Light Microscope*
  - *Microspectrophotometry*
- *Electron Microscopy*
  - *An Unusual Case Involving SEM/EDX*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*

Mini Glossary

Analyzer: A removable polarizer in a microscope that has a fixed plane of polarization.

Anisotropic: The property of matter whereby it reacts differently to light depending upon the direction the light strikes the specimen.

Backscattered electrons: Electrons form the primary beam that is reflected off the surface of a specimen in an electron microscope.

Binocular: A microscope with two ocular lenses.

Body (viewing) tube: The part of the compound microscope that holds the ocular and objective lenses.

Comparison bridge: A device in a comparison microscope that uses mirrors to focus light from two stages to oculars that are next to each other.

Comparison microscope: Two compound microscopes that are connected with a comparison bridge that enables the observer to view two objects at the same time, one with each eye.

Compound microscope: A microscope consisting of two convex lenses. The first magnifies the object creating a virtual image, and the second magnifies this image to yield a further magnified image. The total magnification is the produce of the magnification of each lens.

Condenser: A lens that focuses light from the illuminator to the specimen.

Depth of focus: A measure of how far inside the object the image will be in focus.

Diaphragm: A device in a microscope that eliminates extraneous light from the illuminator.

Electron microscopy: A type of high-resolution microscopy that uses a beam of electrons to magnify a specimen. The electron microscope is capable of magnifying an object more than 200,000 times.

Energy-dispersive X-ray analysis: Identification of a chemical element by the characteristic X-rays it emits when it is bombarded with a beam of electrons in an electron microscope.

Eyepiece (ocular): A convex lens placed at the top of the body tube of the microscope. The observer looks through the ocular at the object.

Field diaphragm: A device in a microscope that controls the intensity of light that reaches the specimen.

Field of view: The amount of a specimen that is in view at any one time.

Focal length: There are points on each side of a lens where an object would be in exact focus. The distance between these two points is the focal length of that lens.

Isotropic: The property of matter whereby it reacts the same way no matter what direction light that strikes it is coming from.

Microspectrophotometry: A combination of a microscope and a spectrophotometer that permits the analysis of microscopic specimens.

Monocular: A microscope with a single ocular lens.

Objective lens: The second lens, located at the bottom of the body tube, usually on a turret, which contains several lenses of varying magnification.

Polarized light: Light that passes through a special filter that allows only light in a single plane to pass through.

Reflected light microscopy: A type of microscopy where light is reflected off the surface of an opaque object and then passes through the lenses to the observer's eye.

Refraction: Bending and slowing of a light beam as it passes through a transparent medium. All transparent gases, liquids and solids refract light.

Resolution: The ability of the human eye to see two closely spaced objects. It is the minimum distance between two objects that can still be seen as two distinct objects.

Scanning electron microscopy: A type of electron microscopy where electrons reflect off the surface of a specimen and are captured and magnify the specimen.

Secondary electrons: Electrons that are emitted by a specimen in an electron microscope when it is bombarded by a beam of primary electrons.

Simple magnifier: A device that employs a single convex lens to magnify an object.

Spectrophotometer: An instrument used to measure the interaction of light and matter.

Spectroscopy: The interaction of light and matter.

Stage: The platform upon which the specimen is viewed.

Stereo microscope: A microscope made with two objective lenses that focus in a slightly different place on the specimen so that the observer can see the specimen in three dimensions.

Transmission electron microscopy: A type of electron microscopy that uses thin sections of specimens that the electron beam can pass through.

Transmitted light microscopy: A type of microscopy where light passes through a transparent specimen to the observer's eye.

Trinocular: A microscope with two ocular lenses and a holder for a camera that can see what the observer sees under the microscope.

Virtual image: An image created by a convex lens on the other side of the lens from the observer. It is not a real image and a screen placed on that side of the lens will not show the image.

Working distance: The distance between the objective lens and the stage.

Acronyms

EDX	Energy-dispersive X-ray analysis
EM	Electron microscope
PLM	Polarized light microscope
SEM	Scanning electron microscopy
× Times	The amount of magnification of an image. 10× = 10 times magnification.

Introduction

If there is such a thing as a universal instrument of science, it is the microscope, or perhaps "microscopes," because there are many different kinds. Microscopes are so versatile that they have become indispensible in all types of scientific and technical laboratories; medical, environmental, pharmaceutical, geological and, of course, forensic science. Practically, every forensic science laboratory in the world has at least one, and usually several, microscope. Practically, all types of forensic evidence are analyzed by at least one type of microscope. The reasons for the popularity of microscopes in a crime laboratory are numerous:

1. Sample preparation is often minimal. Usually, the object of interest is placed under the microscope without preparation beyond using a microscope slide and cover slip. Sometimes, thin sections of a material may be prepared or the object may be immersed in a liquid of particular refractive index to improve viewing, but that is usually the extent of it.
2. Microscopes can be used for separation and identification. A material of interest such as suspected explosive residues may be mixed with debris such as that from an explosion. Individual particles of explosive can be picked out and physically separated and sometimes identified by their overall appearance and crystal structure.
3. In the majority of cases, microscopy is nondestructive. Little or no material is consumed during analysis by microscopy. This is very important in forensic science where the evidence often consists solely of a few particles of a material. If it is consumed during analysis, there is no way that reanalysis can take place or further work can be done

on it. Microscopy is also very versatile. There are microscopes that magnify an object only a few times while the operator manipulates it in three-dimensional space, thus revealing important information about its surface characteristics. There are also microscopes that can magnify an object more than 200,000 times and, at the same time, determine its elemental composition. Some microscopes can magnify images while comparing two objects side by side and are equipped with high-resolution cameras that can photograph what the operator sees. Lenses, filters and polarizers permit viewing of an object under various light conditions, thus increasing the amount of information available about it.

4. Microscopes can be combined with other analytical instruments such as spectrophotometers (Chapter 5) to extend the instrument's capabilities. For example, an infrared microspectrophotometer can isolate and magnify a single fiber and then collect its infrared spectrum.

In this chapter, we will explore the roles that microscopy plays in forensic science. We will look at everything from a simple hand magnifier that magnifies an object two or three times to an electron microscope that is capable of magnifying an object more than 200,000 times. We will see how basic microscopes can be modified to compare two objects or illuminate them with polarized light or magnify an object in three dimensions.

Types of Microscopes

Microscopes are usually differentiated by the amount of useful magnification they can provide without distorting the appearance of an object. Several of the most useful microscopes in a forensic science laboratory are based upon the *compound microscope*. Most of this chapter will be devoted to the compound microscope and its modifications. Compound microscopes normally can be used to magnify an object from about 40 to 1000 times. Simple microscopes can be used to magnify an object approximately 4–20 times. At the other end of the scale, electron microscopy can magnify an object more than 200,000 times.

Forensic Microscopy

Because of the versatility of microscopes, one type or another is used on nearly every kind of scientific evidence. In some types of evidence or some cases where evidence is limited, most or all of the analysis is done by microscopy. In the hands of a skilled microscopist, many objects and materials can be completely identified by using a microscope and no other analysis is needed. In most situations, however, microscopy is teamed with other techniques of analysis. For example, a microscope may be used to perform preliminary screening or analysis to learn about the general features, size distribution, purity, color or other characteristics of an object. Table 6.1 presents some of the common types of forensic evidence and the types of microscopes that are employed in their analysis. The last column indicates whether the microscope is the main tool for analysis or is used as part of a team of instruments or techniques.

TABLE 6.1
Common Types of Forensic Evidence and Types of Microscopes Employed in their Analysis

Type of Evidence	Type(s) of Microscopes	Level of Use
Bullets and cartridges	Comparison	Principle
Drugs	Stereo, simple compound	Ancillary
Dust	Basic compound, polarizing	Principle
Fibers	Basic compound, polarizing, microspectrophotometer	Ancillary
Fingerprints	Magnifying glass	Principle
Glass	Basic compound	Principle
Hair	Basic compound	Principle
Paint	Basic compound, microspectrophotometer	Ancillary
Soil	Magnifying glass	Principle
Serology	Magnifying glass, basic compound	Principle
Toolmarks	Magnifying glass, comparison	Principle
Gunshot residue	Scanning electron microscopy	Principle
Paint fragments, other microscopic particles	Scanning electron microscopy	Ancillary

Lens: How Objects Are Magnified

Simple Magnifiers

A lens is usually a circular curved object made of glass or another transparent material. Glass lenses are the highest quality. For most microscopes, the lenses are *convex*. They are wide in the middle and then taper around the edges. Convex lenses bend and focus light to a point on the other side of the lens. The bending of light by a lens is called *refraction*. A single lens can be used as a *simple magnifier*. If you take a magnifying glass and focus it on an object, you see an enlarged view of the object. The light rays from the object to the eye form a *virtual image* further away from the lens. This is called a virtual image because it is not real. If you held a white screen up in the plane where the image would be, it would not show up on the screen. The formation of a virtual image by a simple convex lens is shown in Figure 6.1.

The size and shape of the lens determine the amount of magnification it can achieve. The main factor is the *focal length* of the lens. There are points on each side of a lens where an object would be in exact focus. The distance between these two points is the focal length of that lens. This is shown in Figure 6.2.

Another important characteristic of lens optics is *resolution*, the ability of the human eye to see two closely spaced objects. It is the minimum distance between two objects that can still be seen as two distinct objects. The human eye can distinguish two objects next to each other easily from a distance of about 80 cm. At this distance, two objects can be separated by about 20 mm. If we want to see more detail in an object with better resolution, we need to magnify the object. As magnification increases, the light passing through the lens must be increasingly refracted. In order to do this, the lens diameter must decrease. If we want to

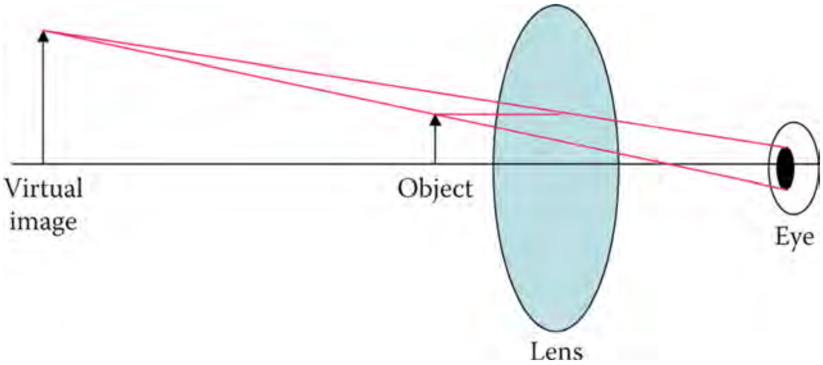


Figure 6.1 A simple convex lens. As light passes through the lens, it is refracted (bent) and forms virtual image on the other side of the lens that is magnified according to the size and degree of curvature of the lens.

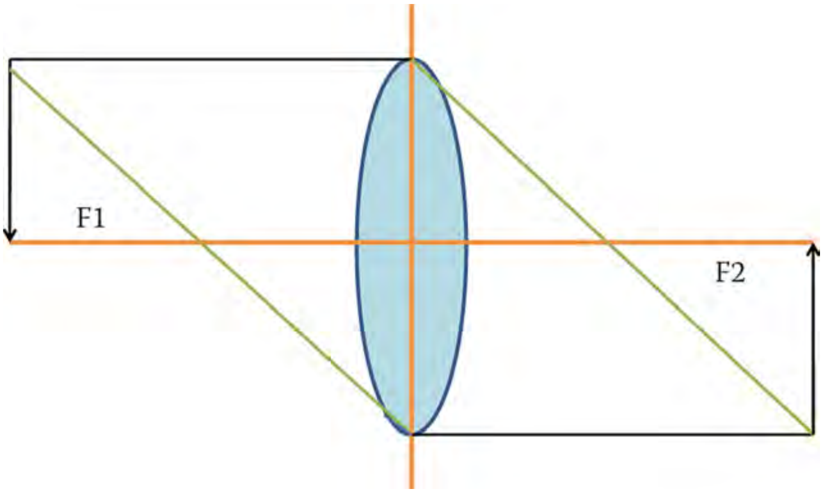


Figure 6.2 Focal length of a lens. The focal length of a lens is the distance between two in-focus images on either side of the lens.

magnify an object 100 times, we would need a simple lens of about ½ in. in diameter. This limits the practical magnifications of simple hand lenses to about 15×.

Compound Magnifiers

As explained earlier, the geometry of a simple lens limits its magnification. It is often necessary or desirable to magnify an object 100 times or more. This can be accomplished by using a *compound magnifier*. This employs two simple lenses arranged in a line. The first lens magnifies the object as shown in Figure 6.1. The other lens is placed at the location of the virtual image produced by the first lens. The virtual image is magnified by the second lens producing a real image whose total magnification is the product of the magnification of each lens. Thus, if the first lens magnifies the object 10 times and the second lens magnifies it 20 times, the total magnification is 200 times. Figure 6.3 shows how two convex lenses magnify an object. The practical limits of magnification using compound lenses are about 1000×. With specialized lenses, it is possible to go even higher, but there are limits. As the magnification increases, the resolution of the system also

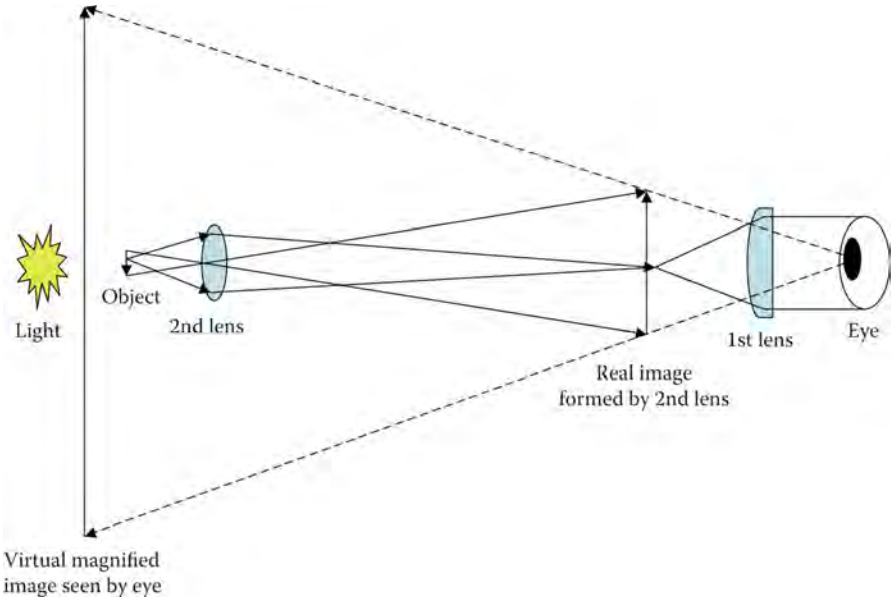


Figure 6.3 Compound lenses. Two convex lenses will magnify an object equal to the product of the magnification of each lens. The first lens magnifies the object, creating a virtual image. The second lens is placed so that magnifies this image, creating a real image.

increases. At some point, however, there will no longer be an increase in resolution with continued magnification. This *empty magnification* results in increasingly fuzzy images.

Compound Microscope

The design of a basic compound microscope has been remarkably stable since it was invented over 100 years ago. There have been improvements in virtually every part of the instrument so that even an inexpensive model can be suitable for many applications. A compound microscope basically consists of two convex lenses, a stage to mount the object, a system to project light through the lenses or reflect off the surface of the object being studied and a system for focusing objects. Refer to Figure 6.4 as the various parts of a compound microscope are described in it.

At the top of the microscope, you look through the first convex lens, the *eyepiece* or *ocular*. If there is one eyepiece, it is referred to as *monocular*. In many microscopes, there are two identical eyepieces, one for each eye; both show the same field of view. This is called a *binocular* eyepiece. Increasingly, microscopes are even *trinocular*; there are the two ocular lenses and a tube for a video camera that can project an image into a computer where it can be viewed, printed and saved. Most ocular lenses have 5× or 10× magnification. In binocular instruments, one or both of the oculars may be focusable independently to compensate for differences in vision in each eye. Oculars can be outfitted with fine cross hair lines so that an object can be centered in the field of view. Sometimes, a measuring scale can be etched into an ocular. This can be used, along with a calibration slide, to accurately measure the size of an object. The ocular is at the top of the *viewing tube*. This tube contains both lenses.

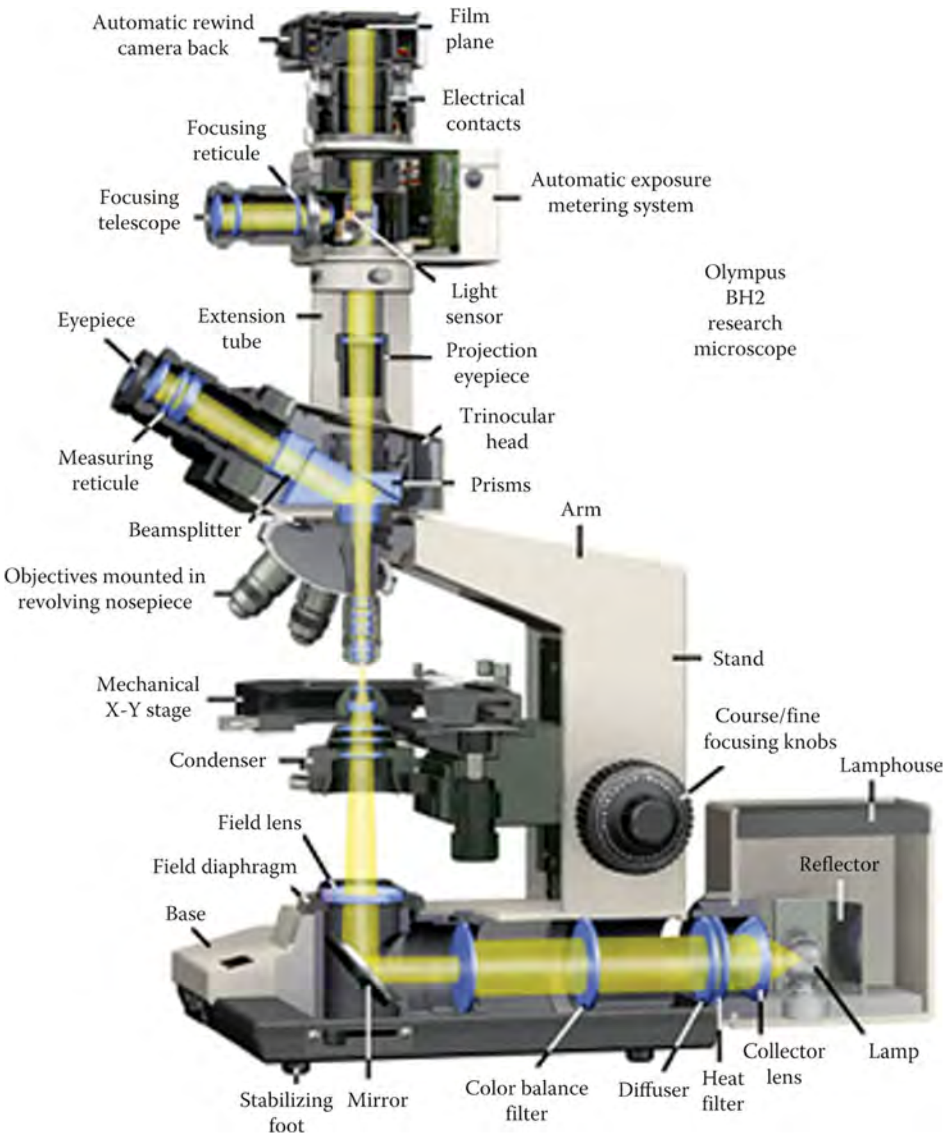

Automatic rewind camera back
Film plane
Electrical contacts
Focusing reticule
Focusing telescope
Automatic exposure metering system
Light sensor
Olympus BH2 research microscope
Eyepiece
Extension tube
Projection eyepiece
Trinocular head
Measuring reticule
Prisms
Beamsplitter
Arm
Objectives mounted in revolving nosepiece
Stand
Mechanical X-Y stage
Course/fine focusing knobs
Condenser
Lamphouse
Field lens
Field diaphragm
Reflector
Base
Collector lens
Lamp
Stabilizing foot
Mirror
Color balance filter
Diffuser
Heat filter

Figure 6.4 The compound microscope. See the text for descriptions of each part.

Below the ocular, at the bottom of the viewing tube is the other convex lens, the *objective* lens (or just, objective), so called because of its proximity to the object. Most microscopes today have several objective lenses (e.g., 4×, 10×, 20×) mounted on a turret that can be turned, thus swinging a particular objective into place. Objective lenses have many special characteristics and may be chosen for particular applications. Their characteristics are etched into the body of the lens.

The *stage* of the microscope is a horizontal surface where the sample is mounted. It has a hole in the center where light emanating from the light source underneath the stage is passed through the sample. In some microscopes, the stage is circular and rotates 360°. In other microscopes, the stage is fixed. There may be special holders or clips for microscope slides on the stage. The object that is being viewed is mounted on the stage. Most often the object is put on a microscope slide and held there with a cover slip. Stages can be rotated or moved up and down or left and right to center the object in the field of view. There are two types of illumination systems. If the object is thin and transparent, then *transmitted light* microscopy is used. The light shines up from below the object, and the light source is located underneath the stage. Light passes through the hole in the stage onto the object. Between the light source and the stage, there is a *condenser*. This is a lens that focuses and condenses the light onto the object. It has its own *diaphragm* that is used to eliminate extraneous light. The microscope may also have a *field diaphragm* that controls the intensity of light that reaches the object. Some microscopes can magnify opaque objects such as bullets or cartridges. Light cannot pass through these objects so light sources mounted beneath the object will not be of much use. Instead, *reflected light microscopy* is used. In this microscope, the light source is external and is aimed at the object from the top or side. The light reflects off the surface of the object and then passes through the objective and ocular lenses. This concept will be discussed later in the section on comparison microscopes.

When viewing an object, the examiner must first decide how much of it should be in view at one time. This is the *field of view*. The field of view is inversely proportional to the magnification. A microscopist will usually mount an object at low-power magnification to survey as much of the object as possible. Then magnification can be increased to focus on one part of the object with a higher resolution. The *depth of focus* is a measure of how far inside the object the image will be in focus. This can be useful where a transparent object is heterogeneous and the analyst wants to be able to see the different parts in focus at the same time. Depth of focus increases as magnification decreases.

Every microscope has a focusing system. Focusing is accomplished in one of two ways. Either the viewing tube is raised or lowered or the stage is raised or lowered. Two focusing knobs are used; one for coarse focus and the other for finer adjustments. Microscopes can also be outfitted with many accessories that help tailor it for particular applications. There may be light filters, interference filters or, most importantly, polarizers that are mounted usually below and/or above the stage. Polarized light microscopy will be discussed later in this chapter.

Modifications of the Compound Microscope

The basic compound microscope is very versatile, offering a variety of magnifications, sample holders and types of illumination and has achieved great popularity in forensic analysis. It is also a very flexible instrument. A number of modifications have been made to compound microscopes over the years to extend its capabilities. Some of these are quite simple, whereas others are major overhauls that can multiply the cost of the microscope several times over. In this section, we will discuss four major types of modifications of the basic compound microscope described earlier that extend its utility greatly, making it useful for most types of forensic evidence. These modifications include

- Comparison microscope
- Stereo microscope
- Polarized light microscope
- Microspectrophotometer

Comparison Microscope

Consider the following forensic situation: you have received two bullets (or two human hairs or two fibers) that you must compare microscopically. You have one compound microscope at your disposal, modified so it can use reflected light for the bullets as needed. How could you use this microscope to compare two similar objects to see if they have the same or different microscopic characteristics? In some cases, you could mount both objects on the same slide but then you cannot manipulate them separately and you cannot do this with large objects such as bullets. You could view one object at a time and try to remember or draw the characteristics you see but that would be far from useful. If you had a binocular or trinocular instrument, you could mount a camera and take pictures of each object and compare the pictures. Unfortunately, no picture has the resolution of the human eye and some data are bound to be lost. Clearly, the best solution to the problem would be to be able to see both objects under the microscope at the same time and be able to manipulate them independently and then photograph the comparison of the two objects. A compound microscope can be modified to accomplish this. Actually, this requires two compound microscopes. The result is a *comparison microscope*. These microscopes are universally employed in crime laboratories for the analysis of bullets and cartridges and widely used for the comparison of hairs, fibers, glass, tears and fractures.

The comparison microscope consists of two compound microscopes that are connected with a comparison bridge. A picture of a typical comparison microscope is shown in Figure 6.5.

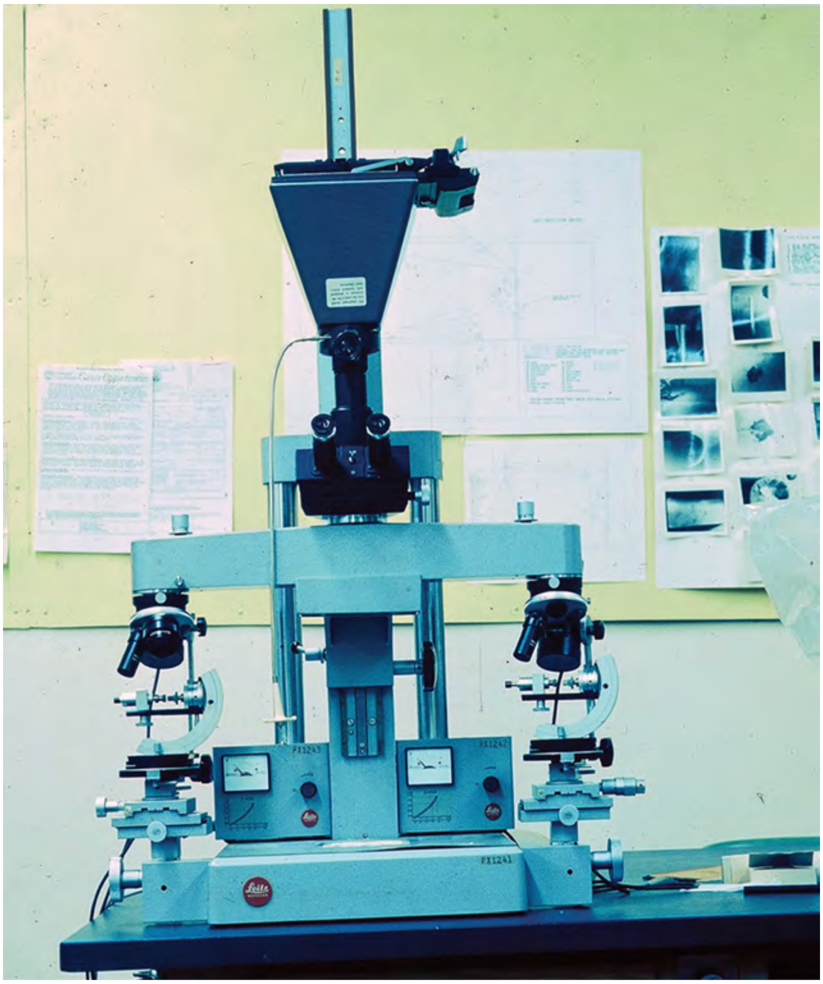


Figure 6.5 The comparison microscope. Specimens are mounted on each stage. The comparison bridge near the top directs each image to a separate ocular lens. Both specimens can be seen simultaneously, one with each eye.

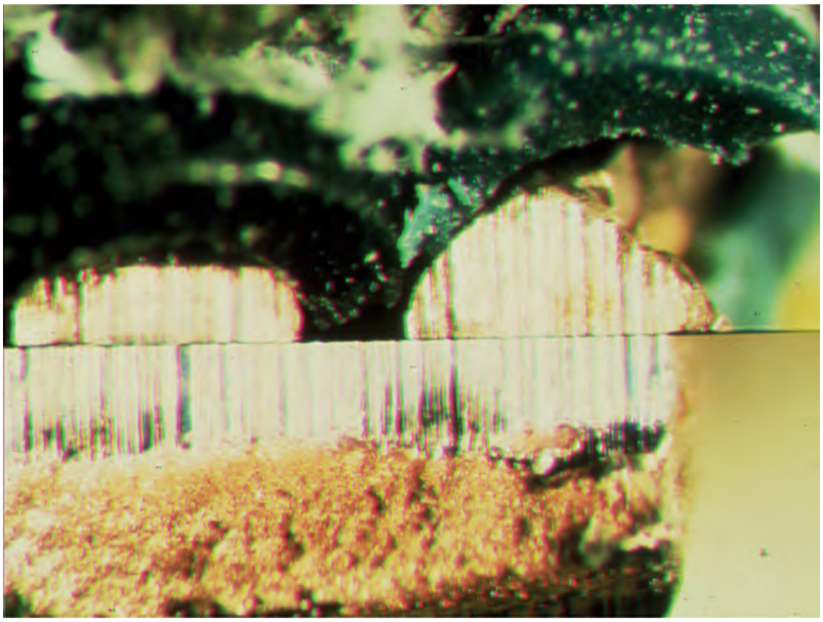


Figure 6.6 Comparison of two toolmarks under a comparison microscope. The image at the bottom is a piece of metal cut by a large pair of wire cutters. The image at the top is two wires from a bundle of telephone cables that were alleged to have been cut by the wire cutters. The wire on the right is an excellent match from the wire cutters. The wire on the left is not line up correctly with the part of the metal that was cut by the same part of the wire cutter blade.

There are two separate microscope bodies each with its own stage and objective lenses. Some have transmitted light sources with all of the accompanying optics including condensers and field diaphragms. Others have external light sources on each stage for reflected light microscopy. Some comparison microscopes have both transmitted and reflected light sources. Instead of oculars at the top of each microscope, the two viewing tubes are connected by a *comparison bridge* that culminates in a binocular or trinocular eyepiece. See Figure 6.6 for a photomicrograph of two cut wires.

The comparison bridge consists of a closed tube containing two sets of identical mirrors that direct the light from the objective lenses toward the center of the bridge. Additional mirrors then direct the light from each microscope up to a monocular eyepiece. The two eyepieces are mounted next to each other so that the examiner can look through them at the same time. The left eye sees the object on the left stage, and the right eye sees the object on the right stage. There is a line down the middle of the images from top to bottom that indicates how much of the combined image is from the left microscope and how much from the right. The comparison bridge mirrors can be manipulated so that only one of the two images is in view. Also, the two images can be overlaid one on top of the other. Virtually, all modern comparison microscopes have a camera mounted on the eyepiece to capture the compared images. Figure 6.7 shows a photomicrograph of the stria (horizontal markings on the surface of bullets made by the inside of the barrel) on two bullets under a comparison microscope.

In addition to the standard flat stage, many comparison microscopes have specialized sample holders for objects such as bullets and cartridges. A bullet holder is shown in Figure 6.8.

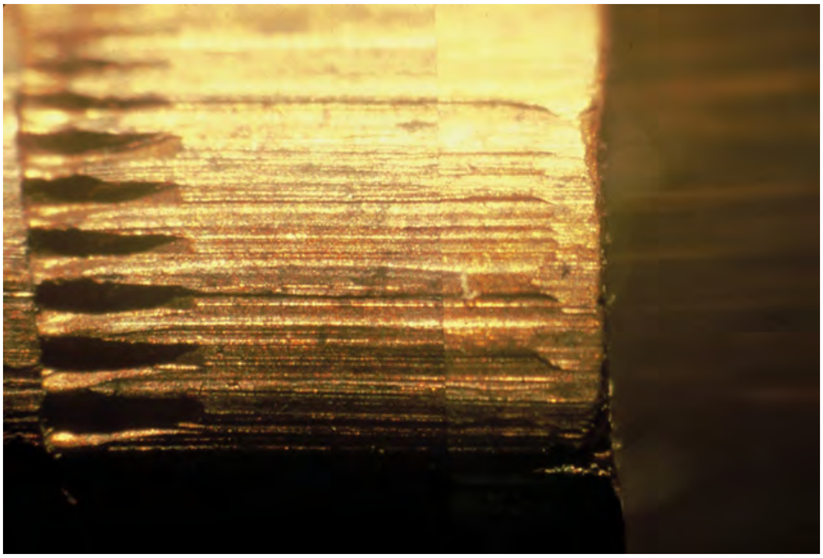


Figure 6.7 Photomicrograph of markings on the sides of two bullets fired from same weapon. Note the vertical line in the middle of the picture. This demarks the field of view seen by each eye. The markings on the two bullets can be easily compared this way.

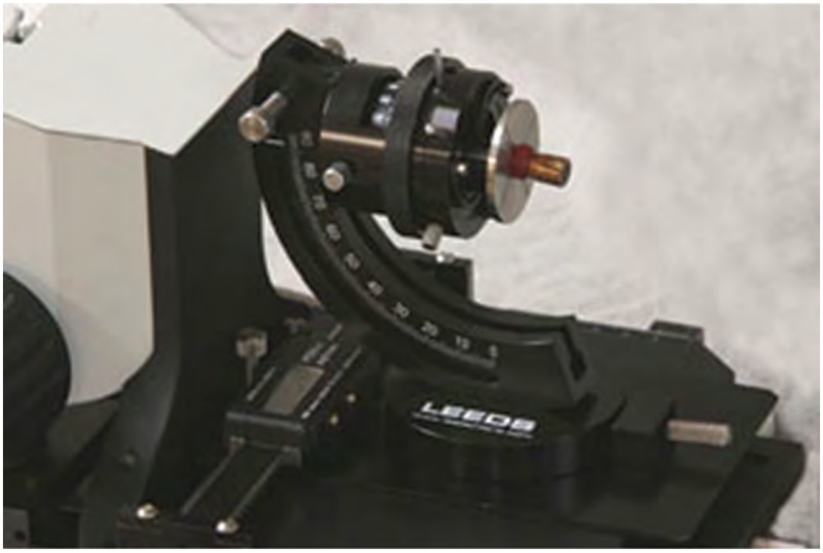


Figure 6.8 A bullet holder that fits on the stage of a comparison microscope. This type of holder permits manipulation of the bullet in all directions and, in addition, allows it to be rotated on its long axis. Courtesy of Leeds Forensic Systems, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.

Stereomicroscope

As we have seen so far, hand magnifiers are used on flat objects and can magnify them up to about 15×. Basic compound microscopes can magnify images over 1000 times but need transmitted light for high magnifications. Reflected light can be used on opaque objects at lower magnifications but only surface characteristics can be examined. Sometimes, a laboratory receives evidence that is three-dimensional in nature. It is necessary to magnify and view all sides of the evidence and be able to manipulate the evidence while viewing it. In such cases, only low magnification is required, usually 25× to 50×. For such applications, the stereomicroscope was developed. Stereomicroscopes are always binocular; these usually have several objective lenses of varying magnification and a long *working distance*, the space between the stage and the objective lens. In a stereomicroscope, the stage is below the objective lens, and in some models, there is no stage; the object is placed on the table. Working distances are often 6–12 in. Another important point: because of the optics involved, compound microscopes always invert the object but the stereoscope contains additional optics that orient the object as it is without the microscope, making manipulation easier.

A basic stereomicroscope is shown in Figure 6.9. Notice that there is no stage in this model. The illumination source is a ring of light surrounding the objective and pointing down toward the table surface.

The light path through the microscope is shown in Figure 6.10. The stereo microscope consists of two monocular, compound microscopes mounted side by side and aligned so that the objective lenses are slightly offset so that they view slightly different parts of the object, resulting in a three-dimensional appearance. Today, many stereomicroscopes have a trinocular head that permits the addition of a real-time digital video camera that allows the examiner to view the object on a computer screen. The image can then be manipulated and enhanced and photographed.

As you might expect, there are many applications of stereomicroscopy in forensic science. One common use is in the analysis of marihuana. The leaves and seeds of the plant have characteristic shapes and appearances. There are two different types of hairs on the top and bottom surfaces of the leaves. One of the major examinations of marihuana consists of viewing the various structures on the leaves and the appearance of the seeds under the stereomicroscope at about 25× magnification. A photograph of marihuana leaves under a stereomicroscope is shown in Figure 6.11.

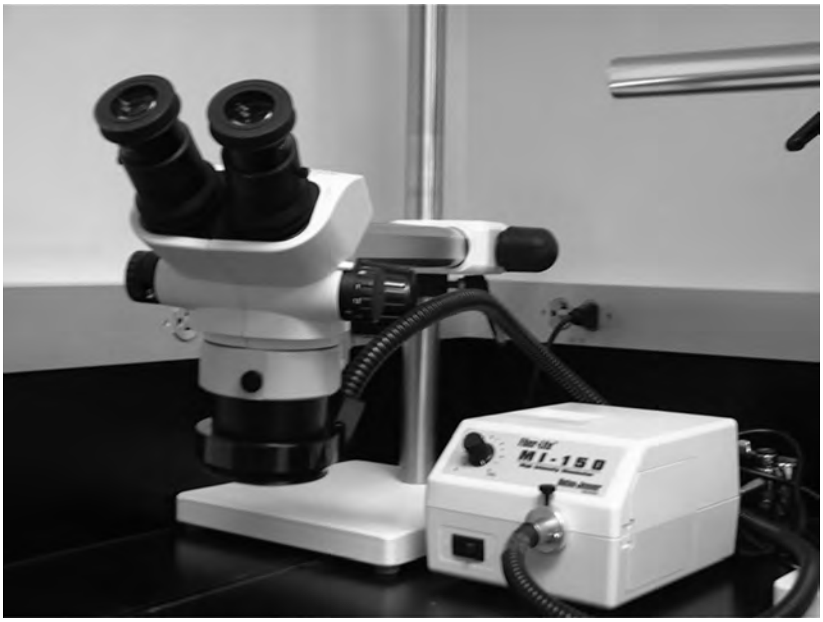


Figure 6.9 A stereo microscope. Note the absence of a stage. Specimens are mounted directly on the table. Light is supplied by a light ring below the objective lens.

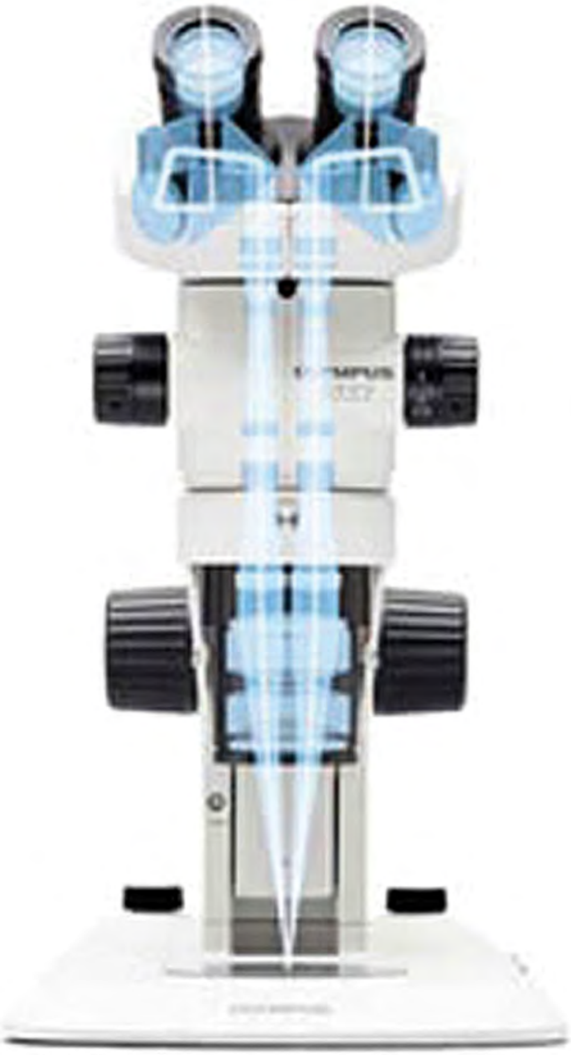


Figure 6.10 The light path through a stereo microscope. Note that the two light paths converge slightly away from each other, thus creating a three-dimensional image.

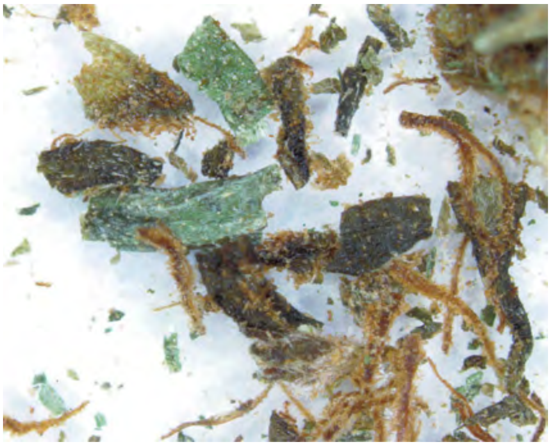


Figure 6.11 Marihuana leaf material under a stereo microscope at 40× magnification.

Polarized Light Microscope

With some relatively minor modifications, a compound microscope can have polarized light capabilities. This is one of the most powerful tools in the forensic science laboratory. Unfortunately, many, if not most, forensic scientists rely heavily on analytical instrumentation and do not take the time or effort needed to learn how to use this powerful tool. One can discover details about the structure of materials and their surface characteristics that can lead to identification.

With respect to optical properties, there are two types of materials. The first consists of substances such as gases, liquids and some solids whose structure is such that they react to light the same way no matter what direction it comes from or how it strikes the material. Such materials are designated *isotropic*. The other types of material, which are mostly solids, react to light differently depending upon its orientation and direction. These are designated *anisotropic*. Consider corduroy pants. The fabric has ribs that are aligned in one direction. The structure of many solids is such that they have a kind of alignment and they will react differently to light that is in the direction of the alignment than to light that is 90° away from the alignment. When light is emitted from a source, it travels in waves that can be aligned in any direction. A *polarizer* is a kind of light filter. It blocks out all light except that which is traveling in a single plane, the one aligned with the polarizer. This is called *polarized light*. This can be seen in Figure 6.12.

Anisotropic materials have a preferred directionality to their structure. Polarized light will have different optical effects on these substances depending upon how the light is aligned with the preferred direction. A PLM contains two polarizers. One, aptly called the polarizer, is located below the stage and is aligned east–west, so that the only light that gets through is aligned east–west. When it strikes the object on the stage, it will react in some way by showing a particular color. If the object is rotated, it will show a different color if it is anisotropic. The other polarizer is located above the stage. It is oriented north–south, the opposite of the orientation of the polarizer. It is called the analyzer. If east–west light from the polarizer tries to pass through the analyzer, none will get through. This is shown in Figure 6.13.

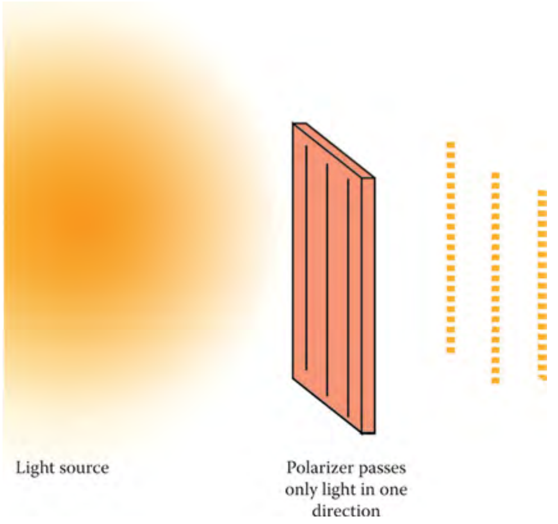


Figure 6.12 How light is polarized. Light normally travels in waves in all directions and planes. A polarizer is a filter that blocks out all light except that which is traveling in one particular plane. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

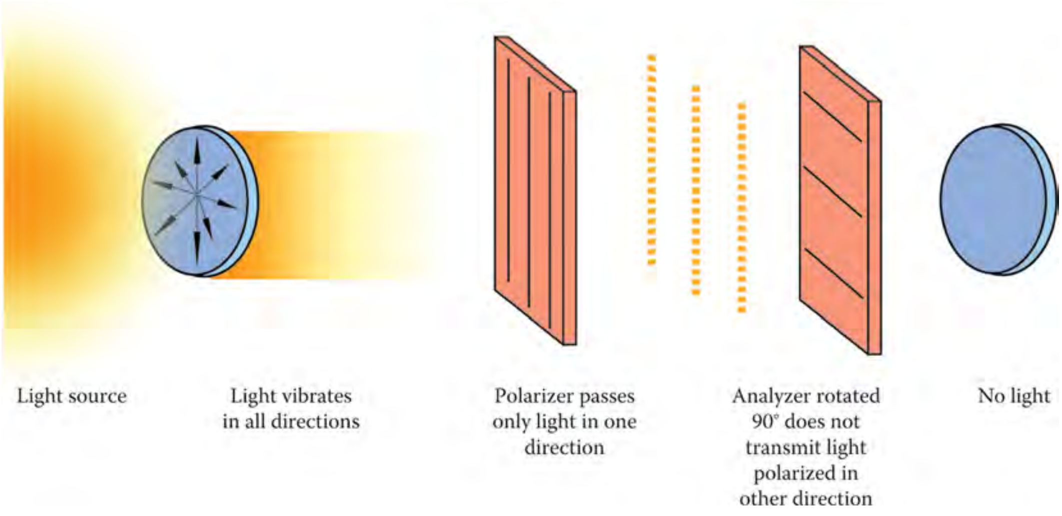

Light source
Light vibrates in all directions
Polarizer passes only light in one direction
Analyzer rotated 90° does not transmit light polarized in other direction
No light

Figure 6.13 Crossed polarizers. If the two polarizers are oriented 90° from each other, then no light will emerge from the second one. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

If an isotropic material is placed between the crossed polarizers, no light should emerge through the analyzer because the material does not affect the light at all. If, however, an anisotropic material is placed between the two polarizers, the material will slightly change the direction of the light so that some of it will get through the analyzer and the image of the material will be seen.

Figure 6.14 shows some white acrylic fibers that are exposed to polarized light. Because of their structure, many fibers are anisotropic and will show different colors depending upon the alignment of the polarized light. Some of the fibers in this figure appear blue while others are orange. This is due to the way they are aligned relative to the polarized light.

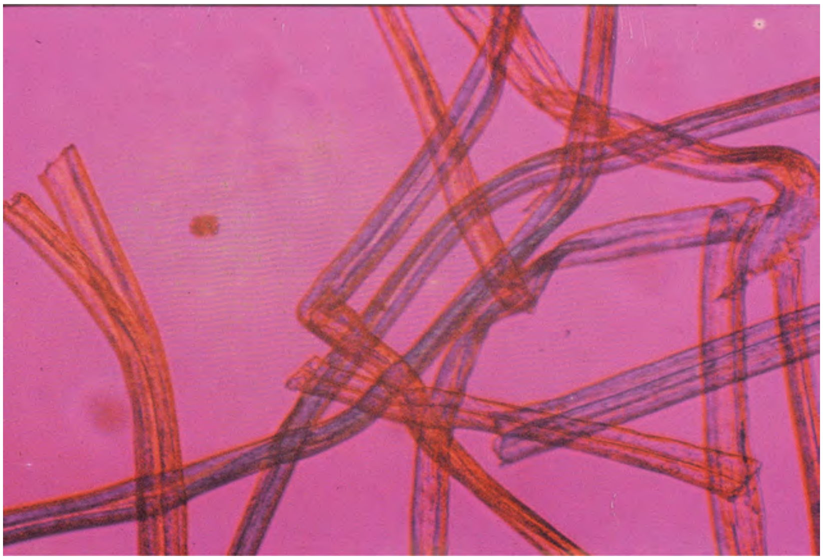


Figure 6.14 White acrylic fibers under polarized light. The orange and blue interference colors are due to the different interactions of the fibers owing to their orientation toward the polarized light.

Microspectrophotometry

As we have seen in the discussion of polarized light, it is clear that certain materials will react when exposed to some types of light. Light may be absorbed or reflected by the material. When a transparent material absorbs light, some of it may pass through, some may be scattered and some may be affected to the extent that it changes wavelength. The behavior of light and its measurement when it interacts with matter is called *spectroscopy*, and the measuring instrument is called a *spectrophotometer*. This is discussed in detail in Chapter 5. It is pretty easy to measure the effects of matter on light when there is a relatively large quantity of matter. In forensic science, however, we often receive only very small amounts of material such as a single fiber or tiny paint chip. We would like to know the exact color of a fiber and whether two fibers are exactly the same color, for example, but conventional spectroscopy cannot be performed because of the small amount of material available. To solve this problem, forensic scientists employ a *microspectrophotometer*, a marriage between a microscope and a spectrophotometer. In microspectrophotometry, a sample such as a fiber is mounted under a microscope. After the light passes through the sample and the image is magnified, it is sent to the spectrophotometer for analysis. Any transparent object that can be suitably magnified by the microscope is a candidate for microspectrophotometry.

There are two types of microspectrophotometers. One type is essentially a microscope where the light source may be ultraviolet, visible or infrared light. This passes through the sample that is mounted on the microscope stage. After passing through the lenses, the light is channeled to a detector, as it is in a conventional spectrophotometer. A picture of a UV–visible-near infrared microspectrophotometer is shown in Figure 6.15.

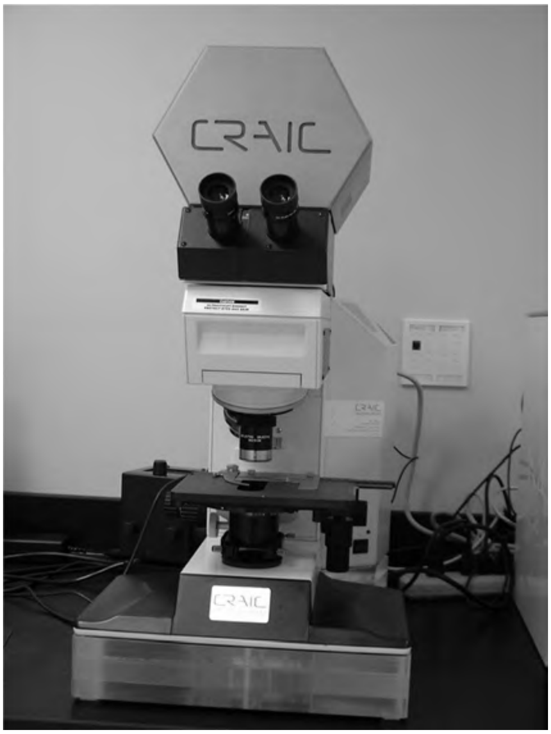


Figure 6.15 A microspectrophotometer. The large box on top of the microscope is the detector. Ultraviolet, visible and near infrared light can be used as the light source.

The size of the light beam that reaches the sample can be controlled either manually through an iris diaphragm or electronically through a computer. The size of the spot of light is seen as a "cursor" under the microscope or on a computer screen. The light cursor can be moved around the object to obtain a spectrum of a particular part. In some cases, the amount of sample within the cursor is controlled by changing the objective lens to increase or decrease magnification. In other cases, the size and shape of the cursor can be controlled from the computer. It is necessary to properly adjust the cursor because a correct spectrum can only be obtained if all of the light that reaches the detector has passed through the object. No stray light should reach the detector. A picture of pieces of cosmetic glitter under the microscope in Figure 6.15 is shown in Figure 6.16.

The other type of microspectrophotometer is shown in Figure 6.17. This is essentially a conventional infrared spectrophotometer that has a microscope mounted as an accessory. Under the control of a computer, the light from the spectrophotometer can be redirected so that it passes through the microscope where it interacts with the object mounted on the stage. In the instrument pictured in Figure 6.17, there is no ocular on the microscope. There is instead a digital camera that is connected to the computer. The magnified object is shown on the computer screen. A mechanical "joystick" controls the movement of the stage.

Whether the microspectrophotometer is a modified microscope or a modified spectrophotometer is a matter of manufacturing choice. The same type of instrument (ultraviolet or infrared) can be configured either way.

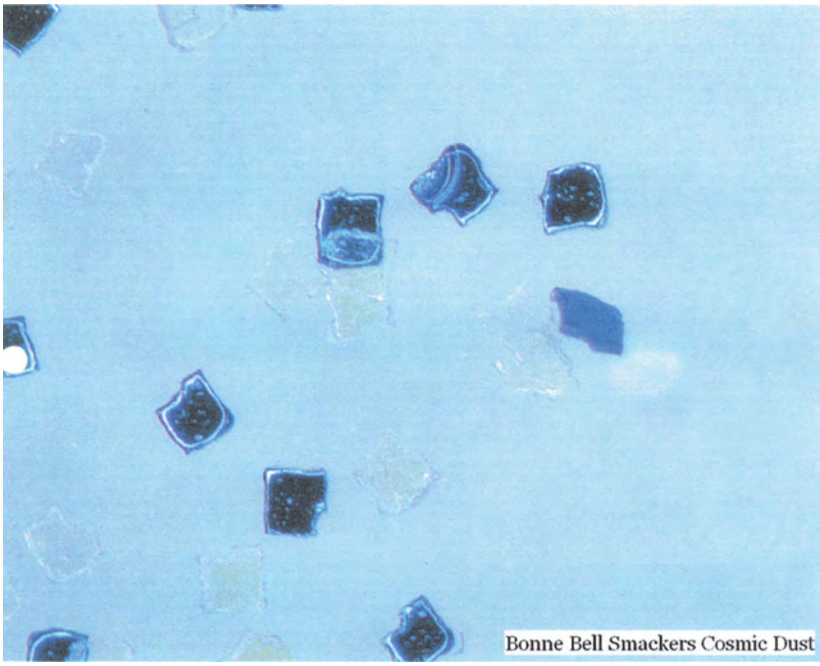


Figure 6.16 Cosmetic glitter particles under a microspectrophotometer.

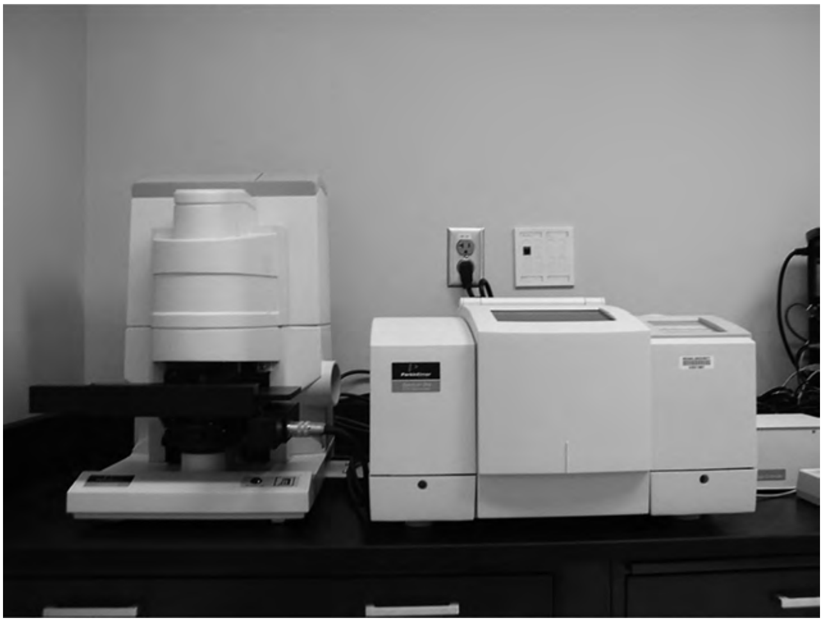


Figure 6.17 An infrared microspectrophotometer. The infrared spectrophotometer is on the right side of the picture. This is connected by a light pipe to the microscope on the left. The infrared light travels from the bench, through the microscope, and then to a detector mounted inside the microscope. There is no ocular lens. Instead, there is a video camera that captures the images and sends them to a computer. The stage is controlled by a "joy stick."

Electron Microscopy

All of the compound microscopes discussed thus far suffer from the same limitation: they can achieve a maximum magnification of about 1000 power. At magnifications over about 400 power, the object and objective lens must usually be immersed in a special liquid to alter the refractive index so that the object can be clearly viewed. This magnification limitation is due to the need to increase the curvature and decrease the size of the lens so much that it causes distortion of the light above these values. There is also a limit to the amount of resolution that can be obtained from this optical system of magnification. In forensic science, however, there are many instances when it is necessary to magnify images higher than the maximum of a light microscope. An instrument that could accomplish this would have to use a magnification system other than light and lenses. The *electron microscope* uses electrons rather than light to magnify images. There are no lenses involved so distortion of light is not an issue. Magnifications exceeding 200,000 times are easily achievable. There are two types of electron microscope. If an image is made thin enough, then a beam of electrons can pass through a material and interact with it. This is called *transmission electron microscopy*. This type of electron microscopy is not commonly used in forensic science since most of the forensic applications require relatively thick particles that the electrons cannot pass through. The other type of electron microscopy is called *scanning electron microscopy* and the measuring instrument is called the scanning electron microscope (SEM). An SEM can magnify an image from about 50 to more than 200,000 times. A photograph of an SEM is shown in Figure 6.18. A simplified

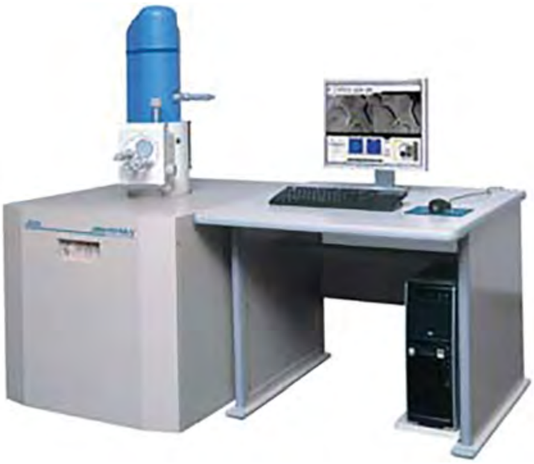


Figure 6.18 A scanning electron microscope.

schematic of how an SEM works is shown in Figure 6.19. A tiny object is usually mounted on a metal stub and put in an evacuated sample compartment. In order to get proper interactions between the electron beam and the object, it must be able to conduct electricity. A coating of carbon or gold is usually applied to the object to facilitate this. A beam of electrons is aimed at the object. The object absorbs most of the electrons. Where the beam touches the object, it causes *secondary electrons* to be emitted from the chemical elements present in the object. In addition, some of the original electrons in the beam aimed at the object reflect off the surface. These are called *backscattered electrons*. Both secondary and backscattered electrons are captured, amplified and aimed at a cathode ray tube (CRT), which is essentially a television tube. The inside of the screen of the tube contains phosphorescent materials that glow when struck with electrons. The primary electron beam is scanned across the object, and a magnified image of the object shows up on the CRT.

When the beam of electrons from the SEM source strikes the material that is being magnified, a great deal of energy is absorbed by the material. This causes the atoms that make up the material to be unstable and their nuclei to emit X-rays. Each chemical element has its own characteristics set of X-rays of particular frequencies. Some SEMs have the capability of measuring these X-rays. This technique is called *energy dispersive X-ray analysis* (EDX). An *X-ray analyzer* captures the X-rays and displays them by frequency and quantity. It will also assign element identities to each bundle of X-rays by their frequencies. For example, many samples of gunshot residue contain particles of the primer used to set off the propellant (see Chapter 12). Most common ammunition primers today contain barium, antimony and lead. If gunshot residues are analyzed by SEM, they will emit X-rays whose frequencies are characteristic of these elements. The presence of these elements in spherical particles from suspected gunshot residue constitutes proof of the presence of a primer. Figure 6.20 shows the display from an X-ray analyzer of a suspected primer particle from gunshot residue. The presence of antimony, barium and lead can clearly be seen.

SEM/EDX is one of the most versatile analytical methods in forensic science because it allows the microscopist to visualize and examine extremely small particles in three dimensions as well as determine the chemical composition of many materials.

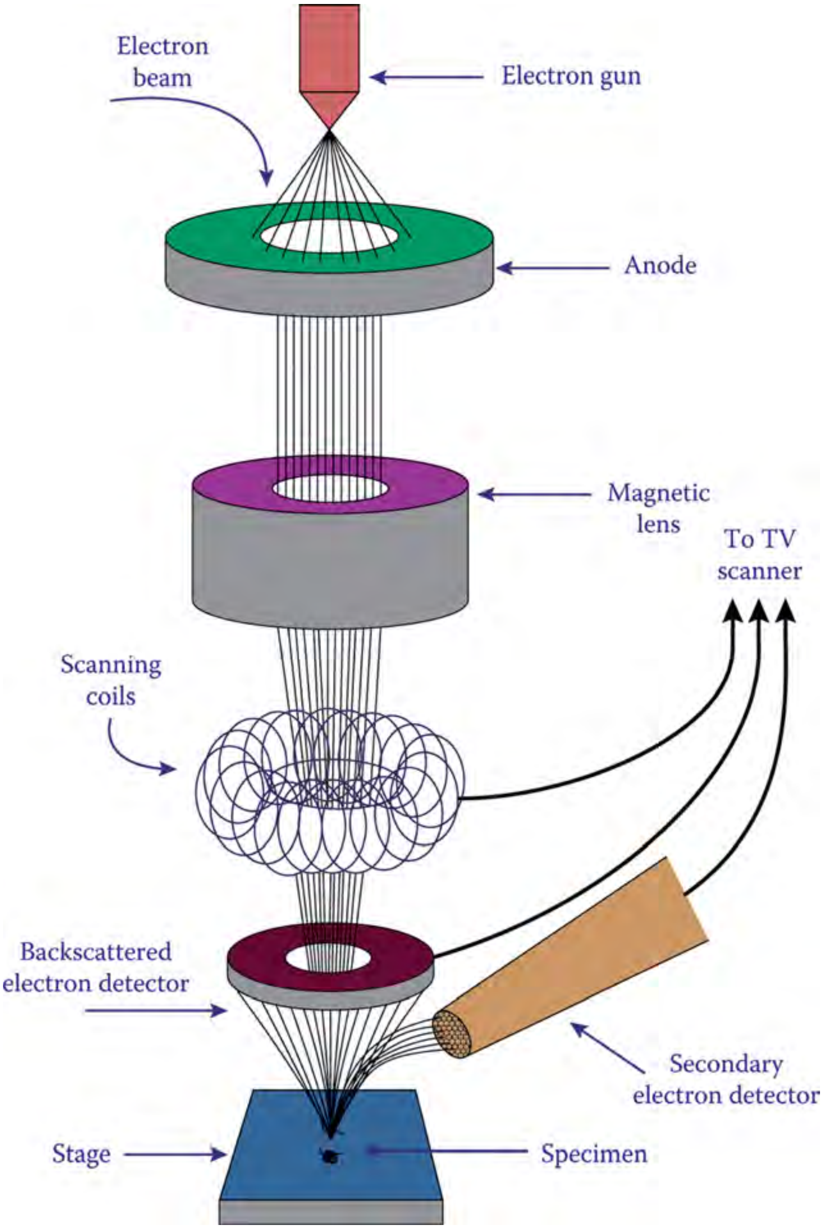

Electron beam
Electron gun
Anode
Magnetic lens
To TV scanner
Scanning coils
Backscattered electron detector
Secondary electron detector
Stage
Specimen

Figure 6.19 A simplified diagram of how an SEM operates. The electron gun produces electrons that are focused through a magnetic lens onto the specimen. Backscattered electrons are captured by a detector and sent to a cathode ray tube or computer screen where the object is visualized. Secondary electrons may also be captured and analyzed. Courtesy of Josh Klesel, Material Sciences Unit, Iowa State University, Ames, IA.

An Unusual Case Involving SEM/EDX

One of the authors of this book was involved in a case where a homeowner was installing a gas water heater in his own home. He tried to get the pilot light to ignite using the automatic igniter built into the heater, but was unable to. He then lit a match to try and get the pilot light ignited, and this caused an explosion. A forensic engineer was brought in to examine the remains of the water heater. He noted that an orifice that was supposed to carry gas to the pilot light assembly was partially clogged. The attorneys involved in the case wanted to know what

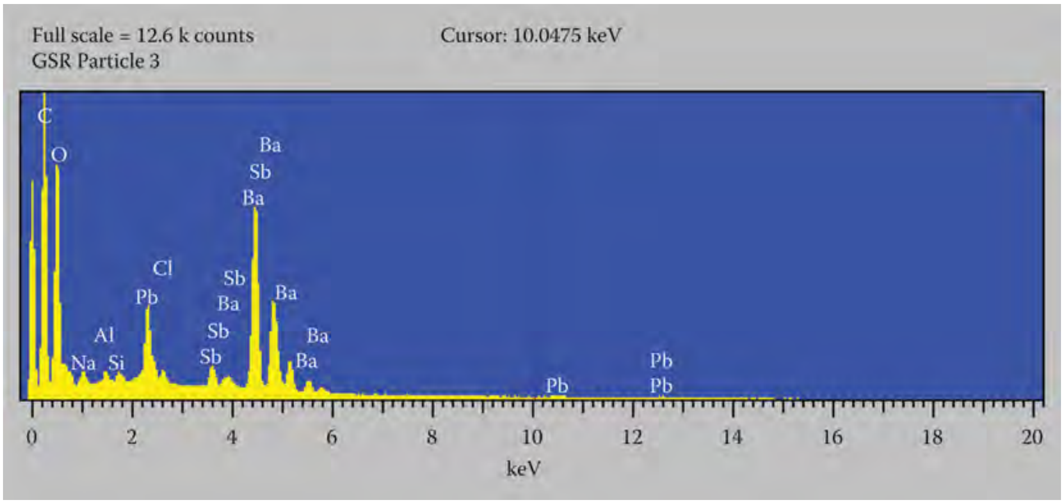


Figure 6.20 The printout from an energy dispersive X-ray analyzer focused on a particle of suspected gunshot residue. Note the presence of barium, antimony and lead, which are characteristic of gunshot residue.

was blocking the orifice. It was thought that, rather than being a foreign material, the blockage was caused by improper machining or cleaning of the orifice during manufacture. The diameter of the orifice was approximately 20 μm, the approximate thickness of a human hair.

It was decided that the only hope of analyzing such a tiny particle would be to ream out the orifice with a fine wire while holding it over top of an SEM sample stub. This was accomplished; the particle landed on the stub and was held there by sticky tape. The particle was smaller than the size of a period (.) on this page. The stub was inserted into the SEM. The particle was clearly visible and EDX analysis indicated the presence of mostly zinc with some tin. The piece of metal that contained the orifice was made mostly of iron with some copper. Therefore, the blockage had to have come from the outside. It could not be a part of the metal left behind when the orifice was reamed out. The origin of the particle was never determined.

Summary

Microscopy is the most powerful tool in the analytical arsenal of forensic science. Much of the evidence received in a crime laboratory consists of microscopic particles. Microscopy enables the forensic examiner to see this evidence, and in some cases, identify it without further analysis. Microscopes range from simple hand magnifiers to powerful electron microscopes. The simplest microscope is the convex lens. Two convex lenses constitute the optics of the compound microscope. The combined magnification of a multiple lens system is the product of the magnification of each lens. The compound microscope can be operated as a transmitted light system or a reflected light system. The major parts are the light source, condenser and iris diaphragm to control the light. The object sits on a moveable stage. There are one or more objective lenses above the stage. They are at the bottom of the body tube. At the top is the ocular or eyepiece lens. Practically, all microscopes have a coarse and a fine focus. The practical limit of magnification of a lens is measured by its numerical aperture. A microscope can magnify an image more than 1000 times. Microscopes can operate in transmission or reflection mode. A transmission microscope is the most popular. It requires that the object being magnified be transparent and thin enough to allow sufficient light through. Reflecting microscopes shine light on the surface of an opaque object and magnify it. It is useful for evidence such as bullets and cartridges.

The comparison microscope consists of two compound microscopes connected by a comparison bridge so that the examiner can see two objects at the same time, one with each eye. This permits direct observation of the microscopic characteristics of the two objects. The stereo microscope is a low-power instrument that enables viewing of objects in three dimensions and allows the examiner to manipulate the object easily because of a long working distance. The polarizing light microscope has two polarizing filters that block out all light except that which propagates in a particular plane. This kind of light is useful for examining the characteristics of anisotropic substances, which behave differently depending upon how the light is aligned. Microspectrophotometers are a combination of a microscope and a spectrophotometer. These instruments allow the generation of ultraviolet, visible or infrared spectra of a microscopic object whose size precludes analysis by conventional spectrophotometers. The SEM uses a beam of electrons to magnify an object. The beam strikes a sample causing it to emit secondary electrons that are captured, amplified and displayed using a CRT. This enables magnifications of up to 200,000 times. At the same time, the elements in the object emit X-rays whose frequencies are characteristic of the elements in the object. EDX analysis displays the X-rays by frequency and determines which elements are present and in what relative concentrations.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The ocular of a compound microscope has a magnification of 10× and the objective has a magnification of 10×. The total magnification of the microscope is
    a. 10×
    b. 20×
    c. 100×
    d. 1000×
2. The objective lens of a compound microscope has an N.A. of 0.4. The maximum useful magnification of the microscope is
    a. 400×
    b. 1000×
    c. 10×
    d. There is not enough information given to calculate this
3. The part of the microscope that focuses the light on an object is the
    a. Iris diaphragm
    b. Coarse focus
    c. Condenser
    d. Body tube

4. The polarizing filter in a PLM that is located above the objective is called the
   a. Polarizer
   b. Analyzer
   c. Abbe condenser
   d. Iris
5. A substance that reacts the same to light polarized in any direction is
   a. An isotope
   b. Anisotropic
   c. Isotropic
   d. Divergent
6. The part of the comparison microscope that allows the examiner to view two objects simultaneously is called the
   a. Comparator
   b. Comparison bridge
   c. Spectroscope
   d. Stage
7. A stereo microscope can best be described as
   a. Two compound microscopes aligned so that they each see a slightly different part of an object
   b. Two compound microscopes aligned with a comparison bridge
   c. A compound microscope with two separate stages and one ocular
   d. A compound microscope with two eyepieces and a camera mount
8. In SEM, secondary electrons
   a. Strike the object releasing other electrons
   b. Strike the object and then reflect off the surface
   c. Are emitted when a beam of primary electrons strikes the object
   d. Are emitted by the nucleus of the various elements when the object is struck by a beam of X-rays
9. In microscopy, resolution is a measure of
   a. The ability of the lenses to separate two tiny details that are close together
   b. The total magnification power of the microscope
   c. The empty magnification of the microscope
   d. The ability of an electron microscope to determine the presence of a large number of elements

True or False

10. Empty magnification is magnification above the level where resolution is increased.
11. Two polarizers aligned 90° from each other will block out all light.
12. A stereo microscope consists of two complete compound microscopes connected by a comparison bridge.
13. A simple convex lens creates a magnified real image of an object.
14. A trinocular microscope has three objective lenses mounted on a turret.
15. An electron microscope uses secondary electrons to magnify an image.
16. Liquids and gases are usually isotropic

Match Each Term with Its Definition

17. Compound microscope
18. Electron microscope
19. Stereomicroscope
20. Comparison microscope
21. Simple hand magnifier
22. Polarizing microscope

a. Has a polarizer and an analyzer
b. Permits viewing of two objects at once
c. Consists of a single convex lens
d. Long working distance, three-dimensional
e. Basic two convex lens microscope
f. Magnify images more than 100,000 times

Short Answer Questions

23 Show by diagram how a virtual image of an object is created by a convex lens.
24 Why is there a practical limitation of magnification by a compound microscope about 1600×? What causes this?
25 How does a comparison microscope work? What are its advantages over just using two compound microscopes?

Further Reading

DeForest, P. R. (2002). Foundations of forensic microscopy, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. I, 2nd edn., R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

McCrone, W. C. (1986). Forensic microscopy, in *Forensic Science*, 2nd edn., G. Davies, ed. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC.

Palenik, S. (1988). *Microscopy and microchemistry of physical evidence, in Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 2, R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River NJ.

On the Web

An excellent resource for microscopy. Includes descriptions of various types of microscopy, virtual microscopy and even a museum of microscopy: https://micro.magnet.fsu.edu

Beautiful photomicrographs: https://www.thephotoargus.com/35-stunning-examples-photomicrographs/

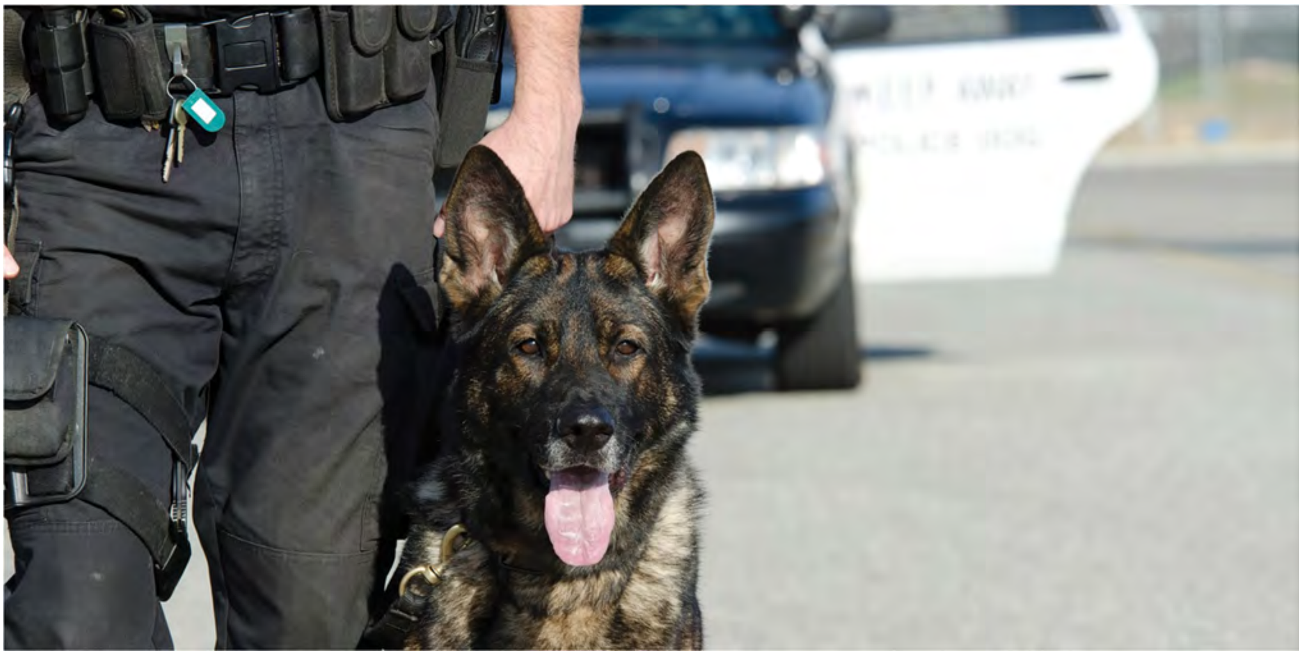
Free online journal: Microscopy & Analysis: http://www.microscopyebooks.com/.

Homepage of the Microscopy Society of America: http://www.microscopy.org/.

7

Detector Dogs as Forensic Tools

Susan Stejskal



Learning Objectives

At the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to

1. Understand the basics of the canine olfactory system and how it works
2. Understand the differences between the capacities of human and canine olfaction
3. Understand what trained dogs are capable of detecting
4. Understand the basic steps in training a detector dog
5. Understand the role of canines in forensic science and law enforcement

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Scenarios*
  - *Accelerant Detection*
  - *Forensic Evidence Detection*
  - *Narcotics Detection*
  - *Human Remains Detection*
- *Forensic Tool: Canine Olfaction*
  - *Know the Nose*
  - *Anatomy*
  - *Odor*
  - *Nostrils and Nasal Passage (Turbinates)*
  - *Olfactory Receptor Cells (ORCs) and Olfactory Receptors (OR)*
  - *Olfactory Nerves and Bulb*
  - *Function of the Canine Olfactory System*
  - *Interspecies Differences*
  - *Training the Tool*
  - *Initial Training: Odor Recognition*
  - *Trained Notification Behavior*
  - *Pairing or Linking Behaviors*
  - *Training for Deployment*
  - *Certifications*
  - *Maintenance Training*
  - *Role of the Handler*
  - *Deploying the Tool*
- *Back to the Cases*
  - *Accelerant Detection*
  - *Forensic Evidence Detection*
  - *Narcotics Detection*
  - *Human Remains Detection*
- *Utility in Forensics*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Match Each of the Following Terms with Its Definition*
- *References*
- *On the Web*

Mini Glossary

Alert: A characteristic change in ongoing behavior in response to a trained odor/scent, as interpreted by the canine handler. The components of the alert may include: change of behavior (COB), interest and final response or indication. The trained response of a detector dog to indicate finding a target odor by barking, scratching or digging is considered as an active response.

Air scenting: A technique used by a canine to locate a target odor/scent. The canine searches for the target odor/scent on wind/air currents and attempts to identify/work on an odor/scent cone to the source of the odor/scent.

Chemoreceptors: Specialized cells with receptors that combine with a specific chemical to send a nerve impulse to the brain.

Detector dog: Highly trained canines used to find specific target odors.

Final response: A behavior that a canine has been trained to exhibit in the presence of a target odor/scent source. This behavior may be either passive (sit, stare, down, point, etc.) or active (bite, bark, scratch, jump, etc.). Also known as a trained final response.

Odor: Volatile chemicals emitted from a substance that are able to be perceived by olfaction.

Olfactory bulb: The area of the brain involved in odor detection.

Olfactory receptors: The receptors in the olfactory system that interact with chemical stimuli.

Olfactory system: The body system that is responsible for the sense of smell.

Passive response: A type of response that the canine displays/indicates in a manner that does not disturb the environment (i.e., sit, stand, lie quietly or focus/stare after the detector canine has detected a trained odor.

Scent: Volatile chemicals emitted from a live human that are perceived by the canine through olfaction.

Turbinates: A highly coiled pathway in the canine nose that helps warm, filter and humidify inhaled air before it gets to the lungs.

Acronyms

ADD	accelerant detector dog
EDD	explosive detector dog
FEDD	forensic evidence detector dog
HRD	human remains detector
NDD	narcotics detector dog
OR	olfactory receptors
ORCs	olfactory receptor cells
OSAC	Organization of Scientific Area Committees
SWGDOG	Scientific Working Group on dectector Dog and Orthogonal device Guidelines

Introduction

Dogs have lived with man for thousands of years helping by providing protection, hunting and companionship (Figure 7.1).

Over time, dogs have become an integral part of everyday life, working alongside people helping them live richer, safer and fuller lives. Service dogs are defined by the Americans with Disabilities Act as a "dog that is individually trained to work or perform tasks for the benefit of an individual with a disability including a

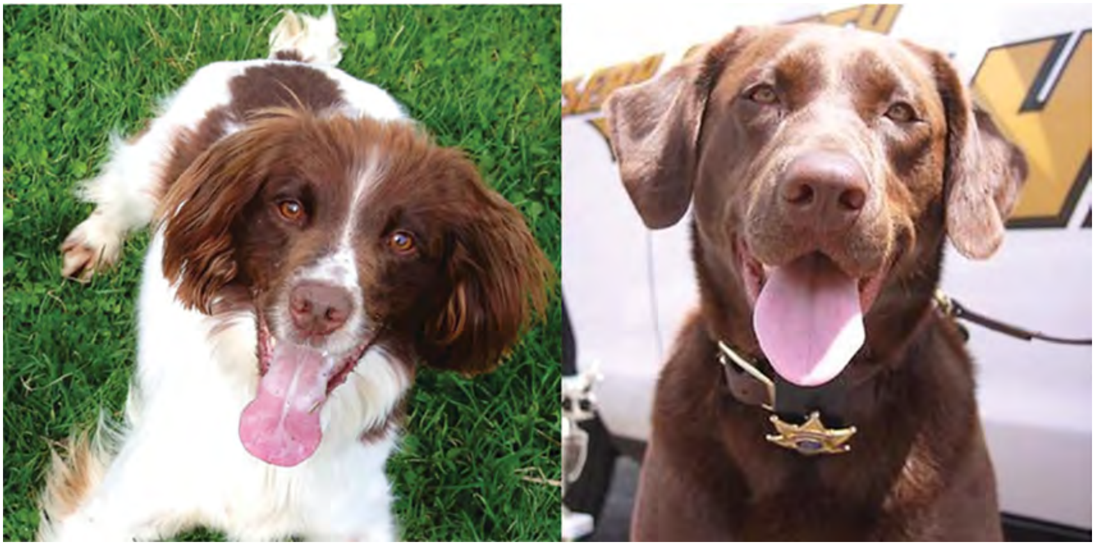


Figure 7.1 Dogs are willing partners. (Photo courtesy of S.M. Stejskal.)

physical, sensory, psychiatric, intellectual, or other mental disability" (ADA, 2020). However, due to their keen sense of smell, the role of dogs has expanded over the past several years. One of those roles is the use of trained detector dogs as forensic tools to assist law enforcement in criminal investigations.

This chapter addresses how trained dogs can be used in detector work. Much of the information found in this chapter is based on the book *Death, Decomposition, and Detector Dogs: From Science to Scene*, published by CRC Press (Stejskal, 2013).

Scenarios

The following scenarios demonstrate how detector dogs can assist with potential criminal investigations.

Accelerant Detection

There has been another house fire in an area where there are many rental units (Figure 7.2).

The owner of the property is apparently in arrears on taxes for this property and several others. The fire inspector reports that the fire may not have started accidentally.

Forensic Evidence Detection

A tip came in about a possible human trafficking ring at a motel on the edge of town. A law enforcement task force is assembling for a raid.

Narcotics Detection

A major delivery service has contacted the local police department with reports of multiple packages being delivered to a suspected drug house. They have just

Figure 7.2 Fully engulfed house fire. (Photo courtesy of R. Hetu.)

received another large box scheduled for delivery and so are waiting for direction on what to do next.

Human Remains Detection

A 32-year-old man disappeared about 18 months ago. It is suspected that his roommate at that time killed him, but the local police department has not been able to locate the decedent. New information has just come in alerting the police to a possible location where the body may have been left. The area is state game land and has very large, heavily wooded areas with marshes and lakes.

Forensic Tool: Canine Olfaction

Know the Nose

Humans depend primarily on their sense of sight to get through their day. People watch body language and facial expressions of others to guide their social interactions; they read books and signs, watch television and use computers to communicate. People depend on their eyes.

Dogs go through their days reacting to their environment through their sense of smell. Unlike humans, dogs are designed to use their nose (Figure 7.3).

Anatomy

In order to understand how dogs are able to use their noses so effectively, it is necessary to understand the basics of how the olfactory system is "built" and how it functions. Although the anatomy and physiology of olfaction is essentially the same in humans and dogs, there are major differences that make the dog nose much more sensitive. There are many books that provide information about the

Figure 7.3 The tool! (Photo courtesy of S.M. Stejskal.)

canine olfactory system (Helton, 2009; Horowitz, 2009; Pearsall and Verbruggen, 1982; Rebmann et al., 2000; Jezierski, et al., 2016).

Simply, olfaction depends on odor getting through the nose to specialized cells that can send a message to the brain. This is described in the following.

Odor

The first part of olfaction requires scent or odor. Odor is made up of chemicals carried with water vapor in air. Different odors are made up of different chemicals of varying amounts in air.

Nostrils and Nasal Passage (Turbinates)

Air carrying odor chemicals is inhaled through the nostrils (or nares), and when a dog exhales, the anatomy of the nares forces the air out to the side. With the air pushed away, the next breath the dog takes contains new air and new odor which then passes into the nasal canal or passage. Part of the passage includes the turbinates, a highly coiled pathway with an extensive blood supply and cells that help warm, filter and humidify the air before it gets to the lungs.

Olfactory Receptor Cells (ORCs) and Olfactory Receptors (OR)

Deep in the nasal turbinates, there are areas where the olfactory receptor cells (ORCs) are located. These bipolar nerve cells are very different from the other cells—one end has specialized cilia (hair-like projections) that are located in the nasal passage (Figure 7.4).The olfactory receptors (OR) are located on the cilia of the ORCs. The other end of the ORCs is the “nerve” that is capable of sending information to the brain (Figure 7.5). Each receptor is unique and will interact with a specific chemical.

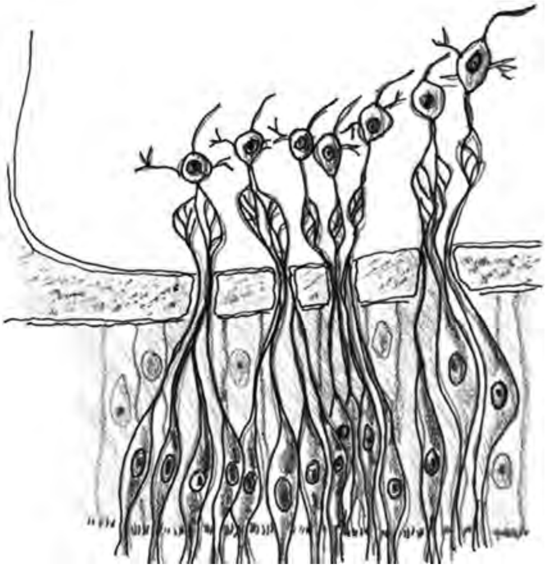


Figure 7.4 Close-up representation of the olfactory receptor cells with cilia (bottom) in the nasal passage and the neuronal interface (top). (Drawing courtesy of M.L. Fojtik.)

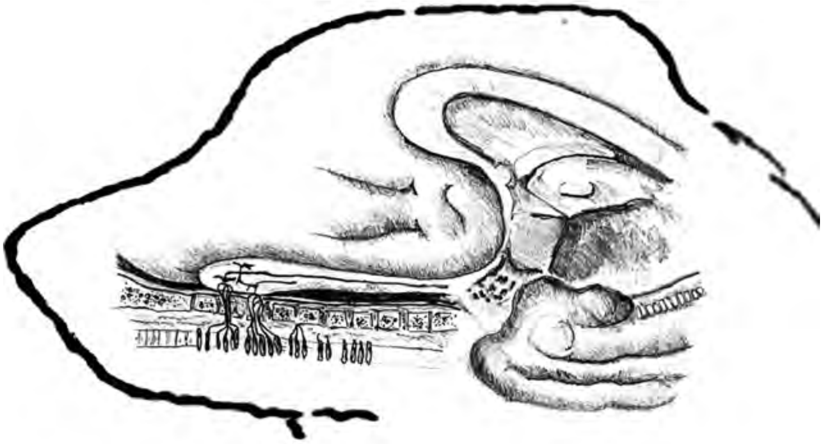


Figure 7.5 Representation of the canine olfactory system highlighting the olfactory receptor cells and the olfactory bulb. (Drawing courtesy of M.L. Fojtik.)

Olfactory Nerves and Bulb

Each ORC can send electrical signals to the brain. Because there are millions of ORCs, each one "ties" in to make up the olfactory nerves which feed into the olfactory bulb. The bulb is the part of the brain that processes the incoming messages to determine what odor was detected. If that odor is something that has been encountered before (example: SKUNK!), then the brain processes it and determines what the odor is. Then a message may be sent from the brain giving directions to the rest of the body (RUN!).

Function of the Canine Olfactory System

Like the human taste buds, the OR are also chemoreceptors because they rely on interactions with chemicals to function. Simply, chemoreceptors work like a lock and key, where the chemical is the key and the receptor is the lock. Human taste buds (sweet, sour, salty and bitter) provide a nice example of how chemoreceptors work. If a person eats something sugary and sweet, the sugar molecules will bypass the sour, salty and bitter taste buds. But when that sugar (key) hits the sweet receptor (lock) and fits, the nerve cell is unlocked and a message is sent to the brain. The person knows he just ate something sweet!

In olfaction, air containing many different types of chemicals is breathed in. As the air passes through the turbinates, each chemical will potentially pass by millions of receptors. If a chemical matches a receptor, like a key fitting in a lock, the receptor is activated and sends an electrical message via the olfactory nerves to the olfactory bulb in the brain.

Although training a detector dog will be covered in another section, it may help to understand how a dog may use its nose. For the canine, there is a big difference between breathing and sniffing. When a dog breathes through his nose, some of the inhaled air passes by and encounters the ORCs. When a dog breathes through his mouth, less of the air makes it into the nasal passage and the ORCs. But sniffing is different. Sniffing involves the intake of short, rapid bursts of air into the nose, and with this, forces the air into areas where ORCs are concentrated. Sniffing allows more air containing odor chemicals to reach the ORCs.

Interspecies Differences

There are many differences between the human and canine olfactory systems that explain the greater olfactory acuity seen in dogs. Some of those differences include:

Capacity of air inhaled: According to Pearsall and Verbruggen (1982), the German Shepherd Dog can breathe in five times more air than a human. That is primarily due to the highly coiled turbinates found in the dog that gives the dog more capacity and surface area. To help understand the difference between the dog and human, the coiling and length of the dog turbinates is like a 50 ft garden hose compared to a short kitchen sink sprayer hose of the human. This difference gives the dog much greater carrying capacity for inhaled air and greater surface area.

Number of ORCs: Because of the increased surface area of the canine turbinates, there is more room for more ORCs than the human. Coren and Hodgson (2011) provided estimates of 5 million ORCs in the human compared to a range of 125–300 million in the dog. The surface area containing ORCs in the human is estimated to be about 1.6 in.^{2} compared to 26 in.^{2} in the dog (Kaldenbach, 1998).

Types of ORs: Research has shown that there are more than 1000 genes that control the ORs in the dog, likely creating many different types of chemoreceptors in the dog nose. These ORs are unique and each likely binds with a chemical with a specific size, shape and/or structure (Lesniak et al., 2008). Genetic diversity among individual dogs and breeds probably accounts for the variation in their olfactory abilities (Tacher et al., 2005).

Size of the olfactory bulb in the brain: Because of the greater number of ORCs in the dog, the olfactory bulb is about 40 times larger than the olfactory bulb in the human (Correa, 2005). It is obvious that the dog requires more brain power to process all the incoming information. Additionally, differences in microscopic structure of the olfactory bulb have been reported in dogs of different ages, demonstrating that the olfactory system develops with age (Wei et al., 2008).

Directionality: Dogs have a unique nasal airflow pattern that occurs during sniffing—each nostril can receive separate odor samples which, after being processed in the brain, allow a dog to localize the source of the odor (Craven et al., 2009). The human does not have this ability. This provides the dog an opportunity to follow air containing odor that he is trained to locate.

Olfactory fatigue: When a human smells an odor for the first time, it may seem very strong. But as time goes on, the perception of the strength of the odor decreases. This is actually due to an adaptive temporary inability to distinguish a particular odor after prolonged exposure in the human. This response is called olfactory fatigue (NIH, 2014). Unlike the human, the canine olfactory system does not experience olfactory fatigue. As long as the odor is still present, the concentration or strength of the odor will not decrease.

In summary, the olfactory system of the dog allows it to smell a range of distinct and different odors with sensitivity far greater than that of the human. Because of these anatomical and physiological differences, a dog is able to detect a “higher resolution of scent”. This results in the dog’s scent picture being one of high resolution and detail and the human’s of low quality and poor focus (Theby, 2010) (Figure 7.6).

Training the Tool

Due to the sensitivity of canine olfaction and the trainability of dogs, the use of detector dogs has greatly expanded through the last few decades. Dogs are commonly used to locate the odor of narcotics, explosives and accelerants as well as to detect things like bed bugs, agricultural pests, contraband, counterfeit drugs and money. Dogs are trained to assist people through their ability to detect medical conditions such as seizures, diabetes, cancer, etc. (Cornu et al., 2011; Gilden, 2008; Palosuo, 2011; Waggoner, 2001; Jezierski, et al., 2016).

Figure 7.6 Not all cameras or noses are the same! (Photo courtesy of S.M. Stejskal.)

The training method used to teach a dog to detect a substance is basically the same across the detector dog disciplines. It consists of three major parts: odor recognition, training a specific notification behavior, and then linking those two behaviors together. This is a repetitive process that trains a dog to associate the target odor with a positive outcome (reward). The detector dog has to be able to perform this work, reliably and consistently, in a variety of places with different environmental conditions.

Initial Training: Odor Recognition

This most basic, yet essential, odor recognition part is what makes a detector dog. Whether training the dog to locate a beehive with colony collapse (Johnson, 2009) or to detect cell phones in prison (Coren, 2011), the training starts the same way.

The training aids should be the target odors that a detector dog would find in a real-world setting. Odor recognition involves isolating the target odor and allowing the dog to smell it. When the dog smells it or shows interest in the target odor, he is rewarded. Rewards vary among dogs and trainers, but usually involve either food, toys or praise. Each time the dog encounters the odor, he is fed, played with or praised, with the reward being given at or near the odor source.

Trained Notification Behavior

The next step involves training some kind of behavior that the dog will perform when he encounters the target odor. Often the training of the notification response is done at the same time as odor recognition, but is done separately. Although the term used to describe how the dog will notify the handler that he has encountered the odor may vary, the term "response" will be used for this section. Most detector dogs will be trained to perform either an active or passive response or indication. Examples of active responses are barking, and scratching/digging. Passive responses are as the name indicates, usually a sit or down.

Pairing or Linking Behaviors

Once the dog has learned to recognize the target odor and perform the trained response as separate exercises, it is time to start linking the two together. Continuing with the same methods used to train odor recognition, once the dog demonstrates that he has located the target odor, the handler will cue (command) the dog to do its trained response. In the case of some detector dogs, this will require the command "sit" as the dog shows the interest in the source. Until the dog sits, no reward is given. As soon as the dog sits, the reward is delivered. This is repeated over and over in different settings with the verbal cue dropped as the dog begins to perform the trained response automatically on his own.

According to the Organization of Special Area Committees for forensic science (OSAC, 2020), the term alert is defined as a "characteristic change in ongoing behavior in response to a trained odor, as interpreted by the handler. The components of the alert may include: change of behavior (COB), interest, and final response or indication".

The dog uses a method called air scenting when looking for the target odor. OSAC describes this as "a technique used by the dog to locate a target odor/scent. The canine searches for the target odor/scent on wind/air currents and attempts to identify/work on an odor/ scent cone to the source" (2020). Once locating even a whiff of target odor, the dog will show a very characteristic change in behavior, working toward higher and higher concentrations of the target odor. Then, if the concentration of the target odor is present in the air and enough of the ORs send messages to the brain, the detection threshold (concentration of chemical in the air) is met (Helton, 2009). After processing the incoming information, the brain will send a message to the rest of the dog to perform its trained response, alerting the handler that the odor has been located. The handler's role is to interpret the dog's action and determine the location of the target odor.

Training for Deployment

The next part is the never-ending training of the dog to get ready for operational use. This is the time when target odors are placed in real-life settings, with the team training inside buildings, outside in the woods or locating odor from sources hidden in vehicles, packages, etc.

Training also includes working in different environmental conditions. These conditions (temperature, humidity, barometric pressure, wind speed and direction, etc.) provide a critical influence on, if, or how the target odor disperses. Explosive detector dogs (EDDs) who work in an airport will face far different conditions that an HRD dog looking for odor from a cold case burial. It is important for the K9 team to train in conditions similar to ones in which they may be deployed.

Each additional target odor (e.g., adding bone, blood, etc., for HRD dog) requires more training, depending on where and how the dog will be deployed. The dog team will also work in areas where there are no training aids (negative or blank area search) or in areas where there are distracting odor sources. By expanding the locations, sites and/or conditions the team may encounter in the real world, the dog team becomes prepared to work in a number of locations and environmental conditions.

Certifications

Following the initial training, the canine detector teams are usually certified before being put into service to determine if a team can be considered to be "mission ready" (Rebmann et al., 2000). This evaluation should not only consider whether the dog can indicate the scent source, but how the handler plans the search, how effectively the handler works the area, control of the dog and whether the dog performs its trained alert appropriately.

Certification is an evaluation process. Although there are currently no national standards for certification among detector disciplines, there are a few states that have them. Many detector canine teams certify through national police canine associations that will hold annual certification trials.

Maintenance Training

This is the last phase of training; it is continuous in nature and never ends throughout the detector dog's career. This is training where the dog's "library" of odors may be expanded, working under more challenging conditions, and usually decreasing the dog's detection threshold. Periodic proficiency assessments are commonly recommended and usually include working the dog team in an area where the handler (and dog) does not know the location of the training aid (blind area search). These assessments should be frequently done to determine how the team is performing and to address any training gaps that may arise.

The dog team continues to undergo maintenance training, proficiency assessments and certifications until the team is retired.

Role of the Handler

Often people think that the role of the handler is limited to bringing the detector dog to the scene and letting it do its work. Nothing could be further from the truth—the handler and dog make up the K9 team. The handler's job is to train the dog, keep training the dog, go through periodic proficiency assessments and certifications, maintain records and keep the dog healthy and ready to work when needed. And then when called, the handler brings the dog to the search area, but must understand the conditions that can influence the dispersion and/or availability of odor before the dog is ever worked. The handler must work with the dog to ensure a successful outcome, whether it is locating the odor or not. In summary, a successful dog handler is a highly trained and skilled practitioner who can use the forensic tool (the dog) efficiently and accurately.

Deploying the Tool

It is very important that canine handlers understand how their dogs work and as important, what affects the availability of odor to their dog. A critical point to understand that the odor must be available to the dog for the dog to locate it. Odors do not disperse uniformly from a source and instead, are highly affected by the movement of air which can cause "discontinuous and complex patterns" of odor. Environmental conditions may cause there to be areas of air with varying concentrations of chemicals or none at all (Helton, 2009). Due to the characteristics of different types of chemicals, odors may become trapped or pool in specific areas, providing an odor "sink" for detector dogs. One way to understand how odor may disperse is through the example of smoke from a fire (Figure 7.7).

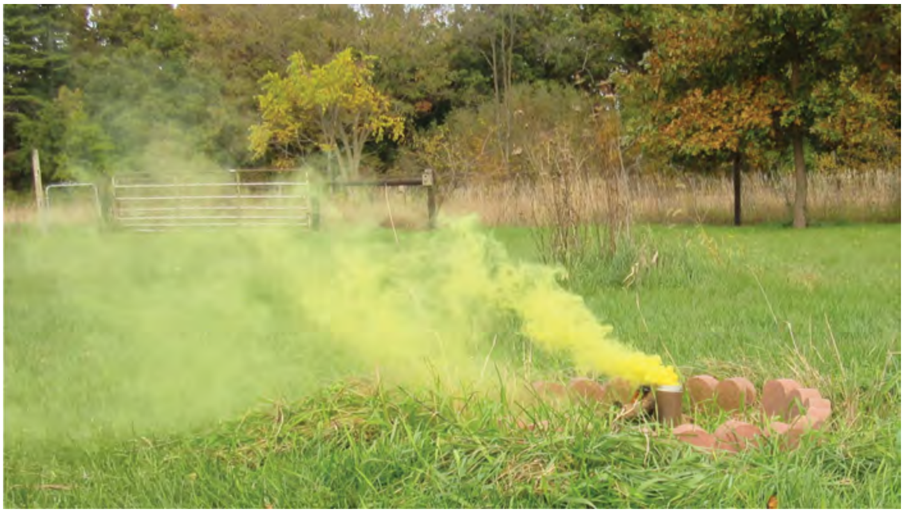


Figure 7.7 Smoke provides a visual example of how odor may disperse from a source. (Photo courtesy of S.M. Stejskal.)

Back to the Cases

Accelerant Detection

After the fire was out, the scene cool and the structure was deemed safe, a fire investigator went out on behalf of the insurance company. After a preliminary search of the structure, an accelerant detector dog (ADD) was requested in order to conduct a search for trace ignitable liquids. Prior to conducting a search of the structure, the handler was briefed by the fire investigator and was informed that the fire occurred a few weeks earlier.

The structure was a single story, wood sided, single family dwelling. The canine team conducted an exterior/interior search of the structure/fire debris (Figure 7.8).

The AD dog gave a trained final response for an ignitable liquid at three locations inside the house including cloth bedding, papers and a small section of carpet. Following established procedures, the items were photographed, collected and submitted for laboratory examination (NFPA, 2014). Each of the items tested positive for gasoline.

Forensic Evidence Detection

A person staying at small motel reported suspicious activity, believed to be associated with human trafficking. A raid of the room yielded location of a female who was likely held hostage. There was no other person found in the room. After processing the room for any apparent evidence, the crime scene investigators called a detector canine team to help locate another potential source of forensic evidence (Schal et al., 2018).

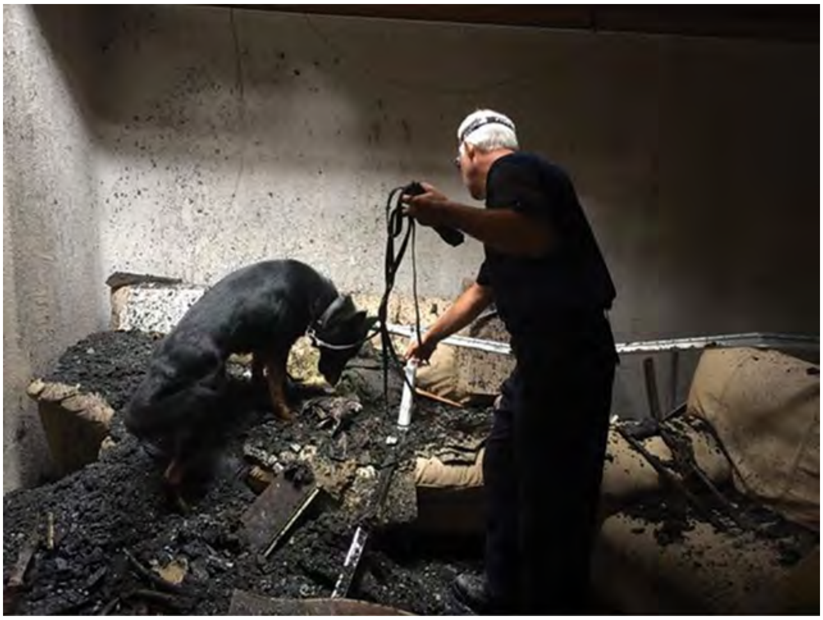


Figure 7.8 Accelerant detector dog team at work. (Photo courtesy of R. Hetu.)

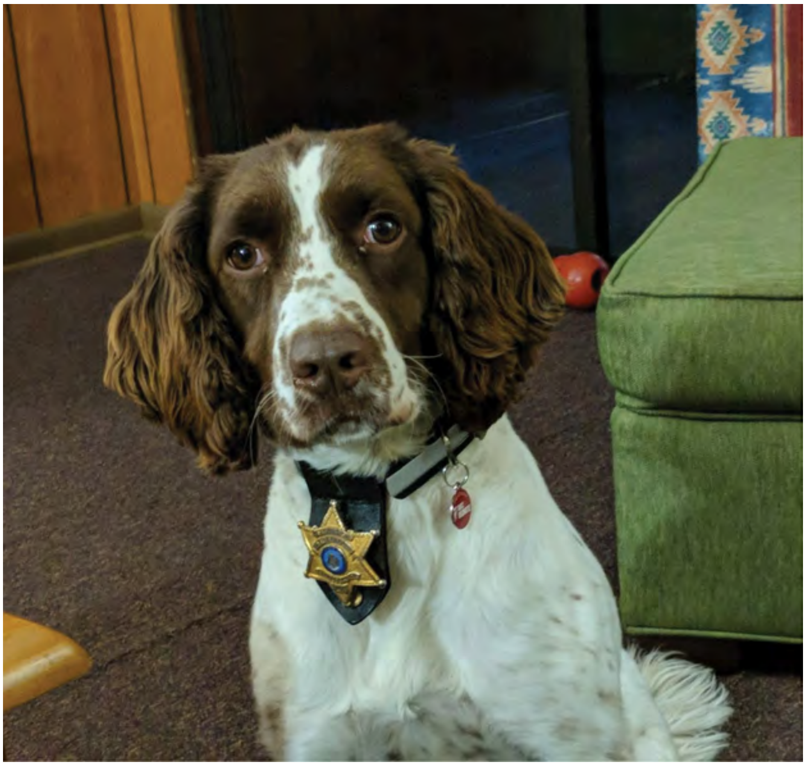


Figure 7.9 Deputized Cimex/Forensic Evidence Detector Dog (Photo courtesy of S.M. Stejskal)

A certified Cimex detector canine team that was deputized by the local sheriff's department was brought in and searched the room (Figure 7.9). The dog performed its trained final response and five live adult *Cimex lectularius* (common bed bugs) were found between the bed mattress and box springs. The bed bugs were collected and submitted to the crime laboratory for extraction of human DNA. Results produced DNA profiles which helped identify two suspects and linked their presence to that room.

Narcotics Detection

The local police department deployed a NDD team. At the instruction of the handler, the suspicious parcel was placed among similar sized parcels with the K-9 team not knowing which parcel was suspect. The NDD team arrived at the location and conducted a sniff of the packages. The dog performed his trained response at the suspect package and based on that, a search warrant was obtained. Inside the package were two boxes with high heeled, knee-high leather boots that contained two pounds of marijuana hidden inside (Figure 7.10).

Human Remains Detection

New information was received about the possible location for a 32-year-old man who disappeared about 18 months ago. Because the area is state game land, no

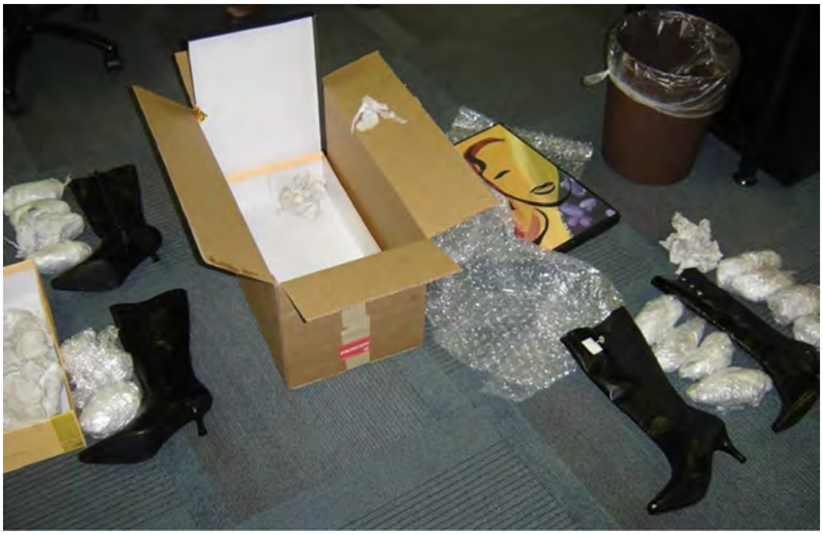


Figure 7.10 Yield from search by narcotics detector dog. (Photo courtesy of R. Kerimian.)

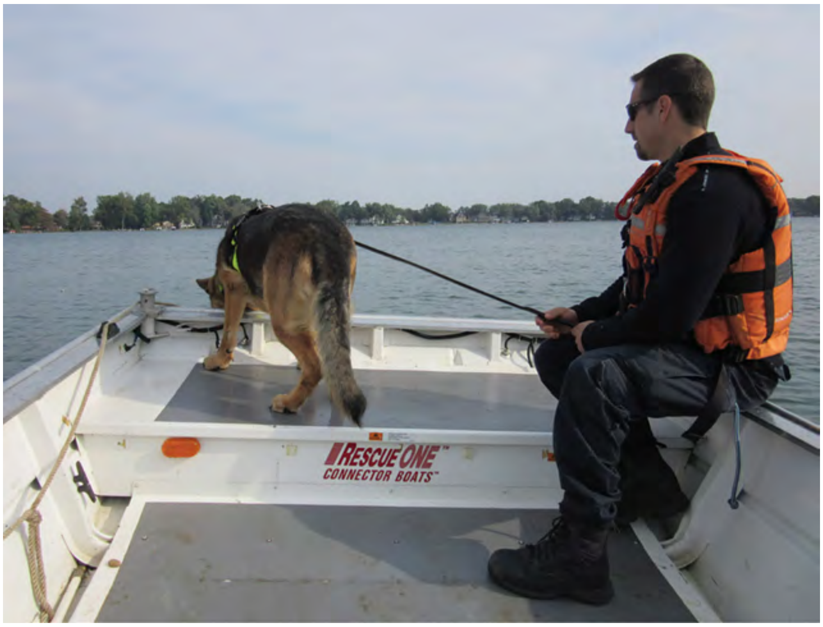


Figure 7.11 Human remains detector dog working from a boat. (Photo courtesy of S.M. Stejskal.)

warrant was required. Two certified HRD dogs were requested and independently were deployed in two separate areas.

The first team deployed in a boat (Figure 7.11). There was no change in behavior or alerts demonstrated by that dog. The second team was deployed to search an area in the state game land (Figure 7.12). While working that area, the HRD dog located a decedent, believed to be the victim they were trying to locate.

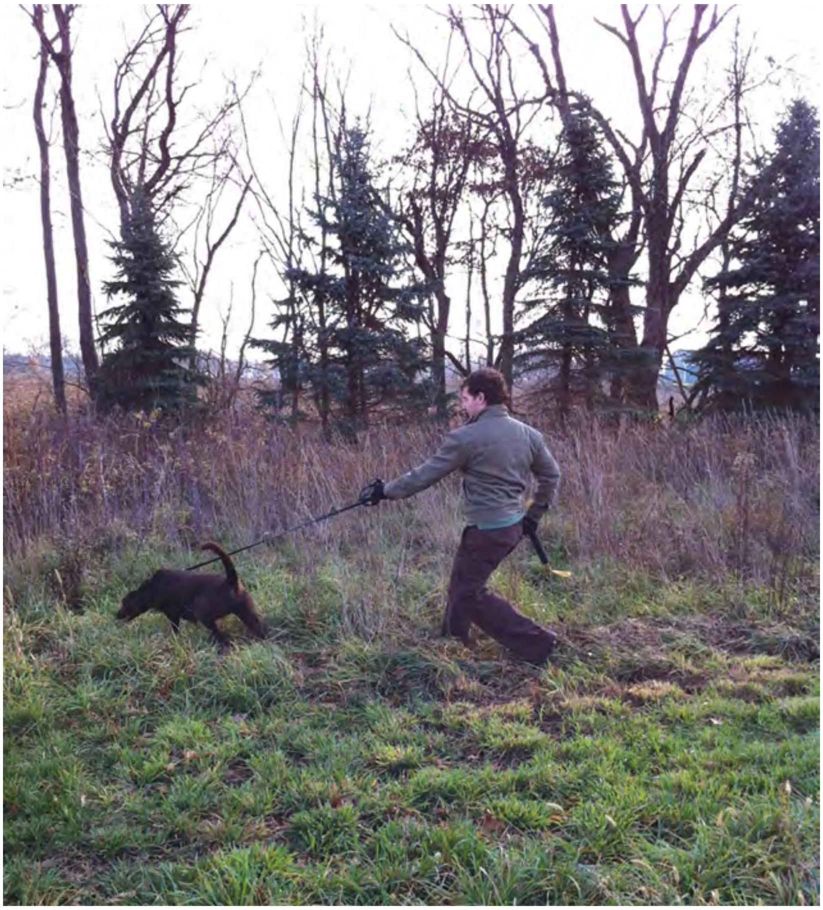


Figure 7.12 Human remains detector dog working in a field. (Photo courtesy of S.M. Stejskal.)

Utility in Forensics

The role that trained detector dogs bring to the criminal justice systems has been recognized in the public arena, and more importantly, in the courts (Ensminger, 2011; People v. Montano, 2017; Jezierski, et al., 2016). Because of this, there was a move in the early 2000s to develop "best practices" for many aspects of detector dogs. The Scientific Working Group on detector Dog and Orthogonal device Guidelines (*SWGDOG*) was made up of a partnership of professionals from local, state, federal and international agencies and charged with the task of developing consensus-based best practice documents. These were designed to help improve the "consistency and performance of deployed teams in combination with detection devices to improve interdiction efforts as well as courtroom acceptance" (SWGDOG, 2014).

This effort continues today with the creation of the Organization of Scientific Area Committees for Forensic Science (OSAC) Dogs and Sensors Subcommittee. OSAC is a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) whose mission is to strengthen forensic science in the United States (NIST, 2014). The OSAC Dogs and Sensors Subcommittee "focuses on standards and guidelines related to performance of deployed dog/handler teams and optimization of their combination with electronic detection devices" (OSAC, 2020).

Summary

Detector dogs have found a niche in many areas of forensic science. From bed bugs to human remains to narcotics detection, the sensitivity of the canine nose is an important tool that is used to aid investigations. By understanding canine behavior, it is possible to train dogs to locate and alert the handler of a target odor. Handlers need to be aware of surroundings, hazards and environmental conditions in order to efficiently and safely deploy their detector dogs. The dog doesn't do it alone; the detector team is the canine and the handler.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The olfactory system is responsible for the sense of
   a. Sight
   b. Smell
   c. Taste
   d. Hearing
2. Odor is carried through the air with the help of
   a. Oxygen
   b. Carbon dioxide
   c. Water vapor
   d. Carbon monoxide
3. The coiled pathways in the nose line with blood vessels are called
   a. Turbinates
   b. Tubules
   c. Olfactory bulbs
   d. Olfactory receptors
4. One of the following is NOT a function of the turbinates
   a. Warming the air
   b. Filtering the air
   c. Making the air moist
   d. Increasing the flow of the air
5. Olfactory receptor cells are a type of
   a. Nerve cell
   b. Brain cell
   c. Nasal cell
   d. Blood cell
6. The olfactory receptors are a type of
   a. Pressure receptor
   b. Chemoreceptor
   c. Baroreceptor
   d. Neuroreceptor

7. Dogs can breathe in more air than humans primarily due to
    a. Their noses are bigger
    b. Their nostrils are flared
    c. The turbinates are more coiled
    d. The lungs are bigger
8. The sense of smell is processed in which part of the brain?
    a. Frontal lobe
    b. Hippocampus
    c. Sensory bulb
    d. Olfactory bulb
9. Olfactory fatigue is defined as
    a. Decrease in perceived strength of smell due to lack of sleep
    b. Decrease in perceived strength of smell due to aging
    c. Decrease in perceived strength of smell due to prolonged exposure
    d. Decrease in perceived strength of smell due to infection
10. SWGDOG and then OSAC was formed to
    a. Keep a database of detector dog DNA
    b. Keep a database of detector dog handler contact information
    c. Develop and train K9 handlers
    d. Develop best practice guidelines and federal standards for detector dog teams

True or False

11. Dogs and humans have equal scenting capabilities.
12. Odor is made up of chemicals carried on oil droplets in air.
13. The olfactory bulb is responsible for processing messages sent from the brain.
14. Turbinates are located in the brain.
15. Taste buds are a type of chemoreceptors.
16. Research shows that dogs and humans have similar capacity to establish odor directionality.
17. Passive final responses are the preferred type for explosive detector dogs.
18. Certified detector dogs are always able to locate what they are trained to find.

Short Answer Questions

19. List four odors that dogs are regularly trained to detect.
20. List and describe three major steps in training a detector dog.

Match Each of the Following Terms with Its Definition

21. The part of the brain that responds to smell
22. The part of the cell that responds to chemical odor stimulation
23. Any cell that responds chemical stimulation
24. Canine response is barking or scratching
25. Canine response is sitting or lying down

a. Active alert
b. Chemoreceptor
c. Olfactory bulb
d. Olfactory receptor
e. Passive alert

References

ADA – Americans with Disabilities National Network. (2020). Service Animals and Emotional Support Animals. Retrieved on April 23, 2020 from https://adata.org/guide/service-animals-and-emotional-support-animals.

Coren, S. (2011). Cell phone sniffing dogs: A new weapon against high tech crime. *Psychology Today*, December 18, 2011. Retrieved on November 14, 2014 from: https://psychologytoday.com/blog/canine-corner/201112/cell-phone-sniffingdogs-as.

Coren, S. and Hodgson, S. (2011). Understanding a dog's sense of smell. Retrieved on November 1, 2014 from: http://www.dummies.com/how-to/content/understanding-a-dogs-sense-of-smell.navId-323759.

Cornu, J., Cancel-Tassin, G., Ondet, V., Girardet, C., and Cussenot, O.. (2011). Olfactory detection of prostate cancer by dogs sniffing urine: A step forward in early diagnosis. *European Urology* 59:197–201.

Correa, J. E. (2005). The dog's sense of smell. Alabama Cooperative Extension System—UNP-66. http://www.aces.edu (accessed January 12, 2011).

Craven, B. A., Paterson, E. G., and Settles, G. S.. (2009). The fluid dynamics of canine olfaction: unique nasal airflow patterns as an explanation of macrosomia. *The Royal Society*. Retrieved on November 14, 2014 from: http://rsif.royalsocietypublishing.org/content/7/47/933.abstract.

Ensminger, J. J. and Papet, L. E. (2012). Chapter 19: Cadaver dogs, in *Police and Military Dogs: Criminal Detection, Forensic Evidence, and Judicial Admissability*. Ensminger, J. J., ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton FL.

Gilden, J. (2008). Trained dogs able to detect ovarian cancer's specific scent. *Medical News Today*, June 27, 2008. Retrieved on November 14, 2014 from: http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/printerfriendlynews.php?newsid=113085.

Helton, W. S. (2009). Chapter 5: Overview of scent detection work—Issues and opportunities, in *Canine Ergonomics: The Science of Working Dogs*. Helton, W. S., ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Horowitz, A. (2009). *Inside of a Dog: What Dogs See, Smell, and Know*. Scribner (A Division of Simon & Schuster), New York.

Jezierski, T, Ensminger, J., and Papet, L.E.. (2016). *Canine Olfaction Science and Law: Advances in Forensic Science, Medicine, Conservation, and Environmental Remediation.* CRC Press, Boca Raton FL.

Johnson, J. (2009). Maryland dog sniffs out diseased bee colonies, *Washington Post*, March 5, 2009. Retrieved on November 1, 2014 from: washingtonpost.com.

Kaldenbach, J. (1998). *K9 Scent Detection: My Favorite Judge Lives in a Kennel*. Detselig Enterprises Ltd., Calgary, Alerta, Canada.

Lesniak, A., Walczak, M., Jezierski, T., Sacharczuk, M., Gawkowski, M., and Jaszczak, K.. (2008). Canine olfactory receptor gene polymorphism and its relation to odor detection performance by sniffer dogs. *Journal of Heredity* 99(5):518–527.

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA). (2014). NFPA 921: Guide for fire and explosion investigations. Retrieved on November 23, 2014 from http://www.nfpa.org.

National Institute of Health (NIH). (2004). Sense of smell. Retrieved on November 15, 2014 from http://www.tools.niehs.nih.gov.

National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). (2014). OSAC Committees. Retrieved on November 15, 2014 from http://www.NIST.gov/forensics/OSAC.

Organization of Special Area Committees for Forensic Science (OSAC). (2020). Dogs & Sensors Subcommittee. Retrieved on April 23, 2020 from https://www.nist.gov/topics/organization-scientific-area-committees-forensic-science/dogs-sensors-subcommittee.

Palosuo, N. (2011). 'Viagradogs' sniff out fake medicines. *PfizerWorld*. Retrieved on April 18 2011 from http://world.pfizer.com/Pages?ViagradogsSniffsOutFakeMedicines.aspx?:Referrer=Newsletter.

Pearsall, M. D. and Verbruggen, H. (1985). *Scent: Training to Track, Search, and Rescue*. Alpine Publications, Loveland CO.

People of the State of Illinois v. Montano, 77 N.E.3d 114, 2017 Ill. App. 2d 140326 (Ill. App. Ct. 2017). Retrieved on April 23, 2020 from http://casetext.com/case/people-v-montano-38

Rebmann, A., David, E., and Sorg, M.. (2000). *Cadaver Dog Handbook: Forensic Training and Tactics for the Recovery of Human Remains*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Schal, C., Czado, N., Gamble, R., Barrett, A., Weathers, K., and Lodhi, K.M. (2018). Isolation, identification, and time course of human DNA typing from bed bugs, Cimex lectularius. *Forensic Sci Int* 293:1–6.

Stejskal, S. M. (2013). *Death, Decomposition, and Detector Dogs: From Science to Scene*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

SWGDOG. (2014). Scientific Working Group on detector dogs and orthogonal device guidelines. Retrieved on November 30, 2014 from: http://www.swgdog.org.

Tacher, S., Quignon, P., Rimbault, M., Dreano, S., Andre, C., and Galibert, F. (2005). Olfactory receptor sequence polymorphism within and between breeds of dogs. *Journal of Heredity* 96(7):812–816.

Theby, V. (2010). *Smellorama: Nose Games for Dogs*. Veloce Publishing Ltd., Dorchester, U.K.

Waggoner, L. P. (2001). *Canine olfactory sensitivity and detection odor signatures for mines/ UXO, testing support for Tuft's Medical School E-nose, and fate and effects team participation (MDA972-97-1-00026)*. Auburn University, Auburn, AL.

Wei, Q., Zhang, H., and Guo, B. (2008). Histological structure difference of dog's olfactory bulb between different age and sex. *Zoological Research* 29(5):537–545.

On the Web

Organization of Scientific Area Committee on Forensic Science; National Institute of Standards and Technology: www.nist.gov/forensics/OSAC/sub-dogs.cfm.

Scientific Working Group on detector Dog and Orthogonal detector Guidelines: swgdog.org.

8

Digital Evidence, Computer Forensics and Investigation[*]

---

[*] Various portions of the following chapters, from the following three books, were combined to comprise this chapter:
Welch, T., Information Security Management Handbook, 6th edn., Harold F. Tipton and Micki Krause (eds.), Section 10.2, Auerbach Publications.
Ciaramitaro, B., Digital Forensics Explained, G. Goglin (ed.), Chapter 9, Auerbach Publications.
Goglin, G. (ed.), Digital Forensics Explained, Chapter 5, Auerbach Publications.
Marcella, A., Jr. and D. Menendez (eds.), Cyber Forensics: A Field Manual for Collecting, Examining, and Preserving Evidence of Computer Crimes, 2nd edn., Chapters 4 and 12, Auerbach Publications.

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define and describe cybercrime
2. To be able to define and describe computer crime
3. To be able to define and describe digital and computer forensics
4. To be able to describe the various aspects of a computer crime investigation
5. To understand and describe the role of cell phones and other portable devices in computer crime
6. To be able to describe the reporting aspects of computer crime investigation

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Challenges*
- *Physical Versus Virtual Crimes*
- *Computer Crime*
- *Criminal Law*
- *Computer Crime Investigation*
    - *Determine if Disclosure is Required*
    - *Investigative Process*
    - *Identify the Type of System That Is to Be Seized*
    - *Obtaining and Serving Search Warrants*
    - *Executing the Plan*
- *Wireless and Handheld Devices*
- *Digital Cell Phone and Handheld Investigation*
    - *Tools of the Trade*
    - *Introduction to Social Media*
    - *Investigating Using Social Media*
    - *Investigative Reporting*
- *Computer Forensics*
- *Legal Proceedings*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
    - *Multiple Choice Questions*
    - *True or False*
    - *Match Each Definition with the Term*
    - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Cybercrime: Any criminal act dealing with computers, computer networks or other digital devices.

Computer crime: Any illegal act for which knowledge of computer technology is essential for its perpetration, investigation or prosecution.

Computer forensics: The study of computer technology as it relates to the law, and involves the collection of computer evidence as it relates to criminal activity.

Digital forensics: The search for and collection of evidence following a crime over various digital media, including computers, smartphones, thumb drives, external hard drives, laptops, etc.

Jurisdiction: The geographic area where the crime had been committed and any portion of the surrounding area over or through which the suspect passed, is en route to, or going away from, the actual scene of the crime.

Ransomware: A type of malware that encrypts a computer and denies access until a sum of money is paid.

Acronyms

COTS	Commercial off-the-shelf
GLBA	Gramm–Leach–Bliley Act of 1999
HIPAA	Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act
NET	No Electronic Theft
PDA	Personal digital assistant
SoX	Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002
ISP	Internet Service Provider

Introduction

Computer, cell phone and handheld technology have advanced exponentially over the last several years. The same technology that has allowed for the advancement and automation of many business processes, not to mention personal use, has also opened the door to many new forms of computer abuse. While some of these systems attacks merely use contemporary methods to commit older, more familiar types of crime, others involve the use of completely new forms of criminal activity that have evolved along with the technology.

New technology provides new opportunities for criminals and crimes both in the physical and virtual (digital) worlds. Police now monitor criminals' use of the Internet and computer technology to commit a wide range of financial crimes and crimes involving malicious destruction of others' property. This chapter will look at computer crime and investigations, the nature of digital evidence and computer forensics and the emergence of social media as a tool for investigators. Throughout it, keep in mind that any device capable of recording and storing digital, audio and video data may contain digital evidence relevant—and in some cases, essential—to a digital forensic investigation.

Challenges

Incidents of computer-related crime and fraud have increased dramatically over the past several decades. Despite this, there have been a limited number of prosecutions and even fewer convictions. This is due to both the nature of the crime and the limits of expertise and resources within the legal, law enforcement and investigative community. Add to this the myriad phone and wireless handheld devices and the knowledge and skill an investigator needs to be able to handle and extract evidence is immense.

Cybercrime is typically described as any criminal act dealing with computers or computer networks. It is also called by other names (e-crime, computer crime or Internet crime in different jurisdictions), which have roughly the equivalent meanings. Regardless of the definitions, the use of computers and the Internet in the commission of crimes requires investigators to apply cyber forensic techniques to extract data for those investigating, prosecuting and passing the ultimate judgment on the offenders in such cases. Identity theft, a term almost unheard of 30 years ago, now makes up a large portion of the caseloads of police agencies and prosecutors throughout the world.

In reality, these identity theft cases present very little that is actually new in the realm of criminal behavior. However, the emergence of new technology requires the law enforcement community—from police and investigators to prosecutors to judges—to utilize different strategies and different tools in addressing the new ways today's criminals commit these traditional crimes. In addition to pornography, fraud and identity theft, computers and the Internet allow malicious cybercriminals to violate copyright protection, cause enormous damage to data and equipment and to lure children—and even adults—into situations where they can be sexually and physically assaulted or exploited.

Computer crime investigation and digital forensics are also evolving sciences that are affected by many external factors: continued advancements in technology, societal issues, legal issues, etc. There are many gray areas that need to be sorted out and tested through the courts. Until then, cyber attackers and criminals will have a clear advantage and computer abuse will continue to increase.

Physical Versus Virtual Crimes

When a detective responds to a homicide scene, one of the first things she or he does is to make sure that the area is protected from anyone who would change or remove the evidence. Yellow crime scene tape goes up. Patrol officers are posted to enforce the boundary. Nobody enters the area inside the tape without specific authority and, even then, careful notes are made detailing exactly when the person came under the tape and what the person did. These precautions are critical because at trial the prosecutor will need to establish that the evidence was not contaminated. There may be trace evidence like fibers or hairs that link the suspect to the killing. Blood and fingerprint evidence will be gathered. Without crime scene integrity, a jury cannot properly draw conclusions about the crime because neither the investigators nor the evidence will have credibility.

Computer crime evidence requires the same care and control; however, it exists in such a different form that the precautions connected with its discovery, storage and retrieval are much different. The investigator is required to establish procedures or protocols that guarantee that evidence from data storage media is unchanged from the time of its seizure or discovery. The computer forensic investigator will need to put up the electronic equivalent of yellow crime scene tape to make sure that the data is not compromised.

This means that, at a minimum, forensic investigators must have adequate knowledge of computer hardware systems, computer forensics software and the typical consumer software that will usually be seized. Additionally, investigators need a solid understanding of the requirements of the relevant constitutional law and evidentiary law. The legal knowledge enables them to conduct their investigations in a way that does not run afoul of suspects' rights—ensuring admissibility of evidence—and in a way that allows them to understand the procedural requirements of evidence seizure (e.g., how to legally obtain subscriber information from an Internet Service Provider (ISP)).

Computer Crime

According to the *American Heritage Dictionary*, a "crime" is any act committed or omitted in violation of the law. This is a problem for law enforcement when dealing with computer-related crime because some of today's computer-related crime has not violated any formal law. The laws in many states, as currently constituted, generally envision situations involving traditional types of criminal activity, such as burglary, larceny, fraud, etc. Unfortunately, the modern computer criminal, unless perpetrating crimes in the physical world, reveals the difficulties in applying older traditional laws to situations involving "computer-related crimes." While some federal laws have been passed, and some states work to amend their laws, some jurisdictions are still woefully behind. And the nature of cybercrime is such that crimes can often be perpetrated from across the world and, in many cases, anonymously.

In 1979, the United States Justice Department established a definition for "computer crime", stating that "a computer crime is any illegal act for which knowledge of computer technology is essential for its perpetration, investigation, or prosecution". Computer crime has basically evolved into what we now call cybercrime, which is any criminal or illegal act that involves a computer or computer network. The computer can be either the target of the crime or used as a tool to commit the crime. In many cases, cybercrimes are committed remotely via the Internet. Cybercriminals try to illegally obtain confidential information from individuals, corporations or governments. Examples of crimes that fall under this category are: child pornography, identity theft, copyright violations, phishing scams (attempts to acquire usernames and passwords), introduction of malware, viruses or worms remotely and cyberstalking.

In early 2020 the FBI reported a quadrupling of reported cybercrime incidents. This was tied to the Cononavirus Pandemic (COVID-19) which infected many individuals with the virus and caused numerous fatalities. Cybercriminals took advantage of the shortages worldwide for medical equipment and the generosity of persons who wanted to help those in need. Internet sites were posted by these criminals that were fraudulent and only existed for the profit of the perpetrator. There were fraudulent charities, fraudulent loan and personal assistance companies, fraudulent marketing of personal protective equipment or PPEs (N-95 masks, gowns, face shield and gloves) and extortion attempts. Additionally, there were reports of insecure Internet vendors who advertised materials for sale with the sole purpose of acquiring a company's personal data. Health and research institutes reported foreign intrusions to their computer networks in an attempt to gain access to research data on treatment and vaccines for COVID-19.

Computer hackers have evolved malware attacks into a new threat to computers and computer networks of schools, hospitals and municipal governments. It is called ransomware and the hacker usually uses email with a link that if activated, infects the computer and linked network with a malware that locks the data in the network. The computer system that is compromised then gets an email from the hacker asking for a sum of money in Bitcoin (virtual currency that keeps the recipient anonymous) in exchange for the decryption key. Often there is a penalty for delaying the payment or for trying to bypass the virus. The FBI has encouraged companies hit by this extorsion attack not to pay the ransom, however some companies have paid the hijackers the Bitcoin without reporting the incident in order to avoid negative publicity and get their files back. Riviera City, a city in Florida, had its computer network attacked by cyberhackers. City officials paid the $600,000 in Bitcoin in order to reinstate their network. In any ransomware attack there is no guarantee that the entire system will be restored without loss of files. Hackers could also hide malware in the system unbeknownst to the users. Another more detailed example of a ransomware attack can be found in the Case Studies section at the end of this chapter.

Criminal Law

Criminal law falls under two main jurisdictions: Federal and State. Although there are many federal and state statutes that may be used against traditional criminal offenses, many cases fail to reach prosecution or fail to result in conviction. The reason is due large to gaps which exists in the Federal Criminal Code and the individual state criminal statutes.

Some new state laws have gone into effect over the last several years to keep abreast of the constant changes in the technological forum. Some of these issues, such as privacy, copyright infringement and software ownership, are yet to be resolved; thus, we can expect many more changes to the current collection of laws. Some of the computer-related crimes, which are addressed by the new state and federal laws, are

- Unauthorized access
- Exceed authorized access
- Intellectual property theft or misuse of information
- Child Pornography
- Theft of services
- Forgery
- Property theft (i.e., computer hardware, chips, etc.)
- Invasion of privacy
- Denial of services
- Computer fraud
- Viruses
- Sabotage (data alteration or malicious destruction)
- Extortion
- Embezzlement
- Espionage
- Terrorism

Just as there has been legislation at the State level, there have also been federal policies affecting computing, and potential computer crime, passed into law:

Electronic Communications Privacy Act (1986)
Computer Security Act (1987)
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) of 1996
Economic Espionage Act of 1996
National Information Infrastructure Protection Act (1996)
No Electronic Theft ("NET") Act of 1997
Wire Fraud Act (1997)
Digital Millennium Copyright Act (1998)
Children's Online Protection Act (1998)
Identity Theft and Assumption Deterrence Act (1998)
Gramm–Leach–Bliley Act (GLBA) of 1999
Local Law Enforcement Hate Crimes Prevention Act (2001)
Computer Fraud and Abuse Act (2001)
Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002 (SoX)
USA PATRIOT and Terrorism Prevention Reauthorization Act of 2005 (HR 3199)
Child Pornography Prevention Act (2005)

Since the enactment of these laws and policies, computer crimes are on the increase as our world increases its reliance on digital information to carry out day to day business and personal activities. Data breeches in the United States rose from 157 million to 781 million in a ten-year span (2005–2015). In just one year (2016) there were close to 1100 data breeches in the United States, exposing over 36 million records. Due to the uptick in cybercrime, the federal government has enacted new cyber security laws in addition to amending older ones in an effort to strengthen security.

- Cybersecurity Information Sharing Act (CISA) in 2015
- Cybersecurity Enhancement Act of 2014
- Federal Exchange Data Breach Notification Act of 2015
- National Cybersecurity Protection Advancement Act of 2015
- Consumer Privacy Protection Act of 2017

Computer Crime Investigation

Computer crime investigation should start immediately following the report of any alleged criminal activity. At a minimum, the investigator must ascertain if a crime has occurred; and if so, he or she must identify the nature and extent of the abuse. It is important for the investigator to remember that the alleged attack or intrusion may not be a crime at all.

The preliminary investigation usually involves a review of the initial complaint, inspection of the alleged damage or abuse, witness interviews and, finally, examination of the system and system logs. If during the preliminary investigation it is determined that some alleged criminal activity has occurred, the investigator must address the basic elements of the crime to ascertain the chances of successfully prosecuting a suspect either civilly or criminally.

If it is a physical crime and the computer or device in question is related to a physical crime, the same procedural measures to collect, preserve and document the examination of the evidence must be ensured. Often, any investigation of suspect devices will be done in tandem with the police investigation.

Determine if Disclosure is Required

If the crime or fraud occurs to a corporation or entity, it must be determined if a disclosure is required or warranted, due to laws or regulations. Disclosure may be required by law or regulation or may be required if the loss affects a corporation's financial statement. If an insurance claim is to be submitted, a police report is usually necessary. When making the decision to prosecute a case, the victim must clearly understand the overall objective.

Keep in mind that a civil trial and criminal trial can happen in parallel. Information obtained during the criminal trial can be used as part of the civil trial. The key is to know what you want to do at the outset, so all activity can be coordinated. Once probable cause has been identified, law enforcement officers have the ability to execute search warrants, subpoenas and wire taps. The warrant process was formed in order to protect the rights of the people.

The fourth amendment to the Constitution of the United States established the following:

> The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

There are certain exceptions to this. The "exigent circumstances" doctrine allows for a warrantless seizure, by law enforcement, when the destruction of evidence is impending. In *United States v. David*, the court held that "When destruction of evidence is imminent, a warrantless seizure of that evidence is justified if there is probable cause to believe that the item seized constitutes evidence of criminal activity."

A major issue that affects a law enforcement investigation is jurisdiction. Jurisdiction is the geographic area where the crime had been committed and any portion of the surrounding area over or through which the suspect passed, is en route to, or going away from, the actual scene of the crime. Any portion of this area adjacent to the actual scene over which the suspect, or the victim, might have passed and where evidence might be found is considered part of the crime scene. When a system is attacked or otherwise compromised remotely, where did the crime occur? Most courts submit that the crime scene is the victim's location. But what about "en route to"? Does this suggest that a crime scene may also encompass the telecommunications path used by the attacker? If so, and a theft occurred, is this interstate transport of stolen goods? There seem to be more questions than answers but only through cases being presented in court can precedence be set. It will take time for the answers to shake out.

The majority of law enforcement agencies have limited budgets and, as such, place an emphasis on problems related to violent crime and drugs. Also, with technology changing so rapidly, many law enforcement officers lack the technical training to adequately investigate an alleged intrusion.

The same problems hold true for the prosecution and the judiciary. To successfully prosecute a case, both the prosecutor and the judge must have a reasonable understanding of high-tech laws and the crime in question. This is not always the case. Additionally, many of the current laws are woefully inadequate. Even though an action may be morally and ethically wrong, it is still possible that no law is violated. Even when there is a law that has been violated, many of these laws remain untested and lack precedence. Because of this, many prosecutors are reluctant to prosecute high-tech crime cases.

Investigative Process

As with any type of criminal investigation, the goal of the investigation is to know who, what, when, where, why and how.

Once the decision is made to further investigate a criminal incident, or a computer or device potentially involved in a criminal incident, the next course of action for the investigative team is to establish a detailed investigative plan, including the search and seizure plan. The plan should consist of an informal strategy that will be employed throughout the investigation, including the search and seizure:

- Identify any potential suspects
- Identify potential witnesses
- Identify whether a suspect is known or not
- Determine what type of system and/or device is to be seized
- Identify the Search and Seizure Team Members
- Obtain a Search Warrant (if required)
- Determine if there is risk of the suspect destroying evidence or causing greater losses

Identify the Type of System That Is to Be Seized

It is imperative to learn as much as possible about the target computer system(s) or device(s). If possible, obtain the configuration of the system, including the network environment (if any), hardware and software. The following data should be acquired prior to the seizure:

- Is a security system in place on the system, If so, what kind? Are passwords used? Can a root password be obtained?
- Where is the system located? Will simultaneous raids be required?
- Obtain the required media supplies in advance of the operation
- What law has been violated? Discuss the elements of proof. These should be the focus of the search and seizure.
- What is your probable cause? Obtain a warrant if necessary.
- Determine if the analysis of the computer system will be conducted on site or back in the office or forensics lab.

Obtaining and Serving Search Warrants

If it is believed that the suspect has crucial evidence at his or her home or office, then a search warrant will be required to seize the evidence. If a search warrant is going to be needed, then it should be done as quickly as possible before evidence can be tampered with or otherwise destroyed. The investigator must establish that a crime has been committed and that the suspect is somehow involved in the criminal activity. He or she must also show why a search of the suspect's home or office is required. Prior to the execution of the plan, the investigative team should ascertain if the suspect, if known, is currently working on the system. If so, the team must be prepared to move swiftly, so that evidence is not destroyed. The investigator should determine if the computer is protected by any physical or logical access control systems and be prepared to respond to such systems. It should also be decided early on what will be done if the computer is on at the commencement of the seizure. The goal of this planning is to minimize any risk of evidence contamination or destruction.

Executing the Plan

The first step in executing the plan is to secure and control the scene. This includes securing the power, network servers, wireless and telecommunications links. If the suspect is near the system, it may be necessary to physically remove the individual. This allows the investigative team to protect the evidence and continue with the investigation. Investigator should enter the area slowly so as not to disturb or destroy the evidence. They should evaluate the entire situation. In no other type of investigation can evidence be destroyed more quickly.

The investigator may wish to videotape the entire evidence collection process. There are two schools of thought on this. The first is that if you videotape the search and seizure, any mistakes can nullify the whole operation. The second school of thought is that if you videotape the evidence collection process, many of the claims by the defense can be silenced. In either case, an investigator must be careful what is said if the audio is turned on. The crime scene should be sketched and photographed before anything is touched. Sketches should be drawn to scale. Still photographs of critical pieces of evidence should then be taken. At a minimum, the following should be captured:

- Layout of desks and computers (include dimensions and measurements)
- Configuration of all the computers on the network
- Configuration of the suspect computer, including network connections, peripheral connections, internal and external components and system backplane
- Suspect computer display
- Any additional relevant handheld and or phone devices (unless these items are the sole source of digital evidence)

Finally, phones, answering machines, desk calendars, day-timers, fax machines, pocket organizers, electronic watches, etc., are all sources of potential evidence. If the case warrants, seize and analyze all sources of data, both, electronic and manual. Document all activity in an Activity Log and, if necessary, secure the crime scene.

Wireless and Handheld Devices

To this point, we have referenced primarily computers, with some mention of handheld devices. The reality is that computing capabilities have expanded so broadly that desktops and laptops have given rise to tablets, personal digital assistants (PDAs) and multipurpose cell phones—all of which could be categorized as mini-computers. As such, all of these are devices in which criminal can perpetrate crimes and otherwise house valuable evidence (Figure 8.1).

Handheld devices are considered embedded systems; that is, systems that are designed primarily to do one thing. However, functionality has been expanded in mobile devices such as tablets and similar devices, so there is significant overlap in capabilities between handhelds and mobile devices. Because of this, the following discussion will treat handheld and mobile devices as synonymous even though there may be some distinguishing characteristics between the two. Characteristics that complicate forensics include the active device nature of handhelds and mobile

Figure 8.1 In addition to desktop and laptop computers, all such handheld and cell phone devices are capable of holding valuable evidence.

devices. Storage capacities have historically been relatively small, but with advances in cloud technology, local storage is not a limiting factor in terms of device functionality. The communication, remote connectivity and ability for storage in the cloud all need to be taken into consideration in the processing of this physical evidence.

Understanding mobile forensics is an exercise in adaptability due to both the vast number of devices and the rapid rate of innovation. Between different brands, operating systems, connectivity to the cloud through carriers and various wireless connections, phones versus handhelds and the increasing blurred distinctions between them, there are various dynamics for an investigator to consider.

Mobile devices often have the ability to be modified or wiped remotely. This is a security feature, but it also can be used to destroy evidence and make it unrecoverable in an investigation. One way of removing this threat is to utilize Faraday technology such as a Faraday bag or a Faraday cage. Faraday technology traces its roots to the nineteenth-century physicist Michael Faraday. He discovered that an electrical charge is carried on the exterior surface of a conductor, that is, the charge had no influence on anything contained within the conductor. By using this principle, a cell phone can be placed inside a Faraday device such as a Faraday cage or a Faraday bag and thus prevent the device from receiving cell signals and outside connectivity. Faraday bags are often sealed with Velcro and care must be taken to ensure that a proper seal is made in order to establish a signal shield.

An investigator should be aware that a powered on cellular device placed in a Faraday container might begin searching for service. This can drain battery life quickly. Placing the device in an airplane mode can help minimize the battery drain. Connecting the device to a charger by running a cable through an opening in the Faraday container can act like an antenna, which would establish signal connection and defeat the purpose of the Faraday container. It is possible to connect a self-contained trickle charger to the phone to help maintain battery life and place both the phone and the charger in the Faraday container.

One of the complexities with investigating mobile devices and cell phones is the variety of information sources and, often, figuring out how they fit together. Some of the sources of evidence in mobile devices are as follows:

- Provider/carrier
- Pen link register—call detail, subscriber ID, equipment ID and personal ID number/personal unlock key
- Phone
- Calls, text messaging and media (i.e., graphics, audio/video and pictures)
- SIM card
- Text messages, phone numbers (typically no graphics)
- Media card (graphics, audio/video and pictures)

Typical provider information includes originating and terminating phone numbers, equipment ID, initiating and terminating towers, service type, service date/time and length of service/call. An investigator should verify the information before submitting their report. An investigator must also have an understanding of how cell phones work.

Digital Cell Phone and Handheld Investigation

Of course, the first step to any forensic investigation is to make sure that you have the authority to initiate the investigation. Laws and rationale for an investigation vary, and ethical practices should always be a primary objective. What is legal and what is ethical are not always the same thing, and an investigator needs to consider both aspects carefully. Once this is answered, the investigator should plan the investigation.

The steps to investigate a cell phone incident have many similarities to computer investigations, but there are also some distinct differences. Cell phones are often passcode protected, so if a phone is active, it should remain in active state if there is any question about being able to gain access if the device were to be turned off. However, remote wiping is a concern, so the device should be placed in a Faraday bag to prevent wiping from occurring. Checking the device settings to make sure that it does not revert to protected mode is also a prudent precaution.

Cell phones often have media cards and SIM cards, which are additional sources of information. A common location for serial number and model information is on a sticker underneath the battery. Since maintaining power is often an issue, use of a search engine to find images of a phone is often a preferred way of determining model information. After the investigation is complete, the battery can be removed and the model information verified.

Tools of the Trade

There are numerous software tools to help investigators, some that are quite expensive and others that are actually freeware. Certain forensic tools for investigators attempt to support as many devices as possible. Other forensic tools focus on a targeted environment such as Apple iOS devices and those that use the Android OS. This specialization can allow the vendor to go deeper in its forensic analysis and provide more detailed analysis for investigators. Likewise, some tools target specific functions of wireless devices. For example, a forensic tool may be able to extract the address book entries, but not text messages. It is important to have multiple tools that have overlapping capabilities.

Although mobile forensic tools often generate a detailed report, documenting the device and circumstances around the device should still be done. Similar to forensically processing a computer, mobile device investigation is well served by using a form to document both the device and the investigation. The reason this is beneficial is that multiple tools may be used in a forensic examination, so keeping track of what types of analysis and which tools have been used can become difficult. Submitting a seizure form along with the seizure itself can assist in documenting an investigation and reduce errors and omissions.

Introduction to Social Media

The transition from static Web pages and content online to more collaborative technology is what marked the beginning of Web 2.0. With the introduction of Web 2.0, Internet-based sites and tools—that are collectively known as social media—have led to an explosion of user-created content and collaboration.

Social media refers to Internet-based technology tools that allow individuals to communicate, collaborate and establish a community with others. There are several categories of social media, each of which provides different information and functionality to its users. Here is a brief list of the most common social media tools and notable sites:

- Social Networking (e.g., Facebook, Google+).
- Email (e.g., Gmail, Yahoo! Mail).
- Blogs (short for Web logs, running log entries made by individuals or entities; blog search engines such as Technorati and Digg).
- Microblogs (e.g., Twitter; Twitter is the most recognizable player in this space).
- Event coordination (e.g., http://www.meetup.com). Members join groups they are interested in, unified by a common interest.
- Location identification (e.g., Foursquare). Utilizes Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) services to identify where users are.
- Multimedia sharing (e.g., Flickr and YouTube). Repositories for user-created multimedia content.
- Search. (Search Engines are a fundamental function for many users. Examples include Google, Bing, Yahoo!, and some countries have established their own specific search engines such as Baidu (http://www.baidu.com) in China.)
- Wikis (e.g., Wikipedia.com; created for the collaborative development of content by multiple users).
- Web conferencing (various vendors provide software with text chat, video conferencing, sharing of desktops, sharing of files, polling and discussion sessions functionality).
- Virtual Worlds (e.g., Second Life and such games as World of Warcraft) are digital worlds created virtually using computer technologies.

Investigating Using Social Media

The most common element of all the social media sites and technologies described earlier is the massive amount of information posted, created and linked to by individual users. These data collections provide forensic investigators with an invaluable resource useful in a variety of investigations and analyses (Figure 8.2). Let us now examine the various social media tools with a focus on using them to conduct forensic investigations.

Forensic investigation involves looking for digital evidence and information in support of investigations conducted by the law enforcement personnel, military organizations, internal investigators, private investigators and researchers. As you have learned so far in this chapter, forensic investigation involves two key elements: data and people.

When we consider forensic investigation of social media, we also rely on these two elements. How can we track the flow of data and information through social media sites and technologies? How can we track people, their roles and place in an organizational structure and their knowledge and information through social media? There are some significant distinctions between traditional digital forensics and social media forensics that are important to highlight.

In a traditional case of digital forensics, one or more computer devices are examined for evidence or relevant information. The focus is primarily on a single medium, the computer. In addition, in traditional digital forensics, the focus is often on a single individual or small group of individuals.

In social media forensics, however, the focus is much broader. One or more persons of interest may post information in any number of social media sites, using any number of social media technologies. In addition, social media is often used to organize events, of which some may have nefarious or hostile intent. Social media forensic analysis, by its very nature, will also involve a degree of social network analysis in which organizational structures, key players and linkages between them are examined and identified. When conducting a social media forensic examination, it is important that an investigator be much broader in the search for evidence or relevant information. Such social media investigations using social media forensics include street gangs, pornography rings, terrorist organizations and white-collar crimes.

Talk
Gmail
Twitter
Google+
Instagram
Facebook
YouTube
Social Media
LinkedIn
Flickr

Figure 8.2 While social media has led to vast amounts of user-created content, collaboration and online communities, it can also provide forensic investigators with an invaluable resource useful in a variety of investigations.

Investigative Reporting

The goal of the investigation is to identify all available facts related to the case. The investigative report should provide a detailed account of the incident, highlighting any discrepancies in witness statements. The report should be a well-organized document that contains a description of the incident, all witness statements, references to all evidentiary articles, pictures of the crime scene, drawings and schematics of the computer and the computer network (if applicable) and, finally, a written description of the forensic analysis. The report should state final conclusions, based solely on the facts. It should not include the investigator's opinions, unless he or she is an expert. Keep in mind that all documentation related to the investigation is subject to discovery by the defense; so be careful about what is written down!

Computer Forensics

Computer forensics is the study of computer technology as it relates to the law. The objective of the forensic process is to learn as much about the suspect system as possible. This generally means analyzing the system using a variety of forensic tools and processes. Bear in mind that the examination of the suspect system may lead to other victims and other suspects. The actual forensic process will be different for each system analyzed as there are many tools available to the forensic analyst to assist in the collection, preservation and analysis of computer-based evidence. Before analyzing any system, it is extremely important to protect the systems and disk drives from static electricity. The analyst should always use an anti-static or static-dissipative wristband and mat before conducting any forensic analysis.

There are a number of commercially available utilities that allow the analyst to quickly create a directory tree, list system files, identify hidden files and to conduct keyword searches. The analyst should make notes during each step in the process, especially when restoring hidden or deleted files, or modifying the suspect system. The analyst should also note that what may have happened on the system may have resulted from error or incompetence rather than from a malicious user. It is a good idea to check for viruses to, first, note their existence and, secondly, to avoid potential contamination.

Since forensic analysis can be a laborious and time-consuming process, it is sometimes better to distribute the workload to other analysts and case agents. Since it would be too costly to have multiple forensic systems and to replicate the suspect data on multiple hard drives, it may be more effective to make copies of the hard disk contents that can be distributed and analyzed by different individuals. This is certainly more cost effective and will likely accelerate the analysis process.

Copying data should be structured in a way that will enhance the forensic process. There are many search tools that can assist the forensic analyst in his endeavor to locate damaging evidence. Some are designed specifically for computer forensic work. Some of these tools are commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) applications that were created for some other reason, other than forensics. It just so happens that these applications work well in a forensic environment. Remember that if the data is not on the hard disk, it may be on backup hard drives, thumb drives or other form of backup media. Even if the data was recently deleted from a computer system, there may be a backup that has all of the original data.

Legal Proceedings

A brief description of the legal proceedings that occur subsequent to the investigation is necessary so the victim and the investigators understand the full impact of their decision to prosecute. Discovery is the process whereby the prosecution provides all investigative reports, information on evidence, list of potential witnesses, any criminal history of witnesses and any other information except how they are going to present the case to the defense. Any property or data recovered by law enforcement will be subject to discovery if a person is charged with a crime. However, a protective order can limit who has access, who can copy and the disposition of certain protected documents. These protective orders allow the victim to protect proprietary or trade secret documents related to a case.

If the defendant is held to answer in a preliminary hearing or the grand jury returns an indictment, a trial will be scheduled. If the case goes to trial, interviews with any witnesses will be necessary. The trial may not be scheduled for some time based upon the backlog of the court that has jurisdiction in the case. Additionally, the civil trial and criminal trial will occur at different times, although much of the investigation can be run in parallel.

Summary

As you probably gleaned from this chapter, computer crime investigation is more an art than a science. It is a rapidly changing field that requires knowledge in many disciplines. Although some of the concepts may be difficult to grasp, as with most investigations, computer investigations are still based on sound and traditional investigative procedures. Planning is integral to a successful investigation. The investigator may have the added responsibility of building a team of specialists and, again, examination of digital evidence from devices may coincide with more traditional police detective work and investigations.

With knowledge of the law and forensics, the investigative team may be able to piece together who committed a crime, and how and why the crime was committed. Finally, to be successful, the computer crime investigator must, at a minimum, have a thorough understanding of the law, the rules of evidence as they relate to computer crime and computer forensics. With this knowledge, the investigator should be able to adapt to any number of situations involving crimes perpetrated using computers and wireless devices. Likewise, the investigation can uncover data on those crimes where evidence is stored on devices, in GPS or user logs, or in the cloud. Social media can likewise be used to prove or disprove the perpetration of crimes in the physical world.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1 Which of the following devices is not generally used in committing computer crime?
   a. Laptop
   b. GPS

   c. PDA
   d. Cell phone
   e. Tablet computer

2 Which of the following is generally not a type of data that is sought in investigating computer crime?
   a. Mailed letters
   b. Digital data
   c. Audio data
   d. Video data
   e. Emails

3 Which type of crime is not generally associated with modern computer crime?
   a. Malicious destruction of property
   b. Sexual predation
   c. Identity theft
   d. Breaking and entering of a business
   e. Disruption of utilities such as power grids

4 Which of the following is not common to physical and virtual crimes?
   a. Discovery of evidence
   b. Processing of dead bodies
   c. Chain of custody maintenance
   d. Retrieval of evidence
   e. Documentation of the crime scene

5 Which of the following is not necessary for the digital forensic investigator to have knowledge of?
   a. Computer hardware systems
   b. Computer software systems
   c. Relevant legal rules
   d. Procedures for seizing evidence
   e. All of the above are necessary

6 Which of the following is not a recognized computer crime?
   a. Denial of service
   b. Sabotage
   c. Child Pornography
   d. Assault
   e. Embezzlement

7 Which of the following is not a federal law that impacts computer crime?
   a. Computer Fraud and Abuse Act
   b. Wire Fraud Act
   c. Frye Act
   d. Sarbanes–Oxley Act
   e. Computer Security Act

8 Which is not part of a proper computer crime investigation?
   a. Determination of whether a crime has occurred
   b. Immediately turning off a computer that is on when discovered
   c. Examination of surrounding physical evidence
   d. Determination of the need to obtain search and seizure warrants
   e. Examination of the computer operating system

9 A detailed computer crime investigation plan contains which of the following:
   a. Identify potential witnesses and suspects
   b. Identify the digital devices that are to be seized and examined
   c. Obtain needed warrants

   - d. Determine the risks of a suspect destroying digital evidence
   - e. All of the above

10 All of the following data should be obtained about a digital device prior to seizure except:
   - a. What is the probable cause?
   - b. What laws may have been violated
   - c. What computer security systems are in place?
   - d. Whether the suspect can afford to hire an attorney
   - e. Are passwords being used to access data

True or False

11. Over the past three decades the frequency of computer-related crimes has remained fairly steady.
12. Computer forensics is the study of computer technology as it relates to the law.
13. The content of social media has become a major source of data for forensic investigators.
14. When a cell phone is discovered as evidence of a computer crime, it should immediately be turned off to prevent remote erasing of its data.
15. A Faraday container is a type of packaging that is used for digital evidence to prevent anyone but the investigator from gaining access to the contents.
16. As in physical crime investigation, the first order of business at a cybercrime scene is to secure and protect the scene.
17. The fifth amendment of the U.S. Constitution controls how and when a cybercrime scene can be searched.

Match Each Definition with the Term

18. Commercial off-the-shelf	a. Blog
19. Any criminal or civil violation dealing with computers	b. Denial of service
20. A type of social media	c. COTS
21. The act of preventing use of a utility or corporation by disrupting its computer controlled systems	d. Faraday bag
22. A container that prevents a cell phone inside from receiving external cell signals	e. Cybercrime

Short Answer Questions

23. What is the difference between computer crime and computer forensics? Give examples of each.
24. What are the major considerations when investigating a cybercrime when a cell phone is involved?
25. Discuss the role that social media have in the investigation of cybercrime?

Further Reading

Ciaramitaro, B. (2013). Social media forensics, In *Digital Forensics Explained*, G. Goglin, ed. Auerbach Publications, Boca Raton, FL.

Goglin, G. (ed.). (2013). *Digital Forensics Explained*. Auerbach Publications, Boca Raton, FL.

Marcella, A. Jr. and D. Menendez. (2008). *Cyber Forensics: A Field Manual for Collecting, Examining, and Preserving Evidence of Computer Crimes*, 2nd edn. Auerbach Publications, Boca Raton, FL.

Welch, T. (2007). Section 10-2, In *Information Security Management Handbook*, 6th edn., H.F. Tipton and M. Krause, eds. Auerbach Publications, Boca Raton, FL.

On the Web

https://www.fbi.gov/investigate/cyber—The FBI cybercrime website.

https://criminal.findlaw.com/criminal-charges/cyber-crimes.html—Some legal aspects of cybercrime.

https://www.interpol.int/Crimes/Cybercrime—Cybercrime website of Interpol, an international umbrella organization for policing worldwide.

https://www.interpol.int/How-we-work/COVID-19–International fraud attempts during COVID-19 outbreak

https://www.appknox.com/blog/united-states-cyber-security-laws. Description of newly enacted laws.

Case Studies

Case Study: Ransomware Attack on Atlanta

In 2018 the IT infrastructure for the city of Atlanta, Georgia had been criticized for its weak configuration. It was susceptible to attack by cybercriminals. On March 22, 2018, two Iranian hackers, Faramarz Shahi Savandi and Mohammad Mehdi Shah Mansouri, infected the Atlanta network with a SamSam virus. The SamSam malware does not gain access using phishing emails, but instead guesses weak usernames and passwords.

For over a week, the databases for Atlanta's court system and citizen online billing, as well as law enforcement computer access was down. Even the Wi-Fi at the Atlanta International Airport was affected by the ransomware. A fee of $51,000 in Bitcoin was requested by the hackers. Atlanta officials did not pay the ransom, but instead invested millions to get their system up and running using IT vendors and other specialists.

Atlanta's municipal computer system was not the only target of these two Iranian cybercriminals. Other systems affected by the SamSam ransomware included the Port of San Diego, Los Angeles County's Hollywood Presbyterian Medical Center, Colorado's Department of Transportation and the city of Newark, New Jersey. Newark reportedly paid the Bitcoin ransom of $30,000.

The United States Justice Department, who indicted Savandi and Mansouri for extortion, claims that the duo had, by 2018, collected greater than $6 million in ransom payments. Although the pair has been indicted for their crimes, the United States and Iran do not have an extradition treaty, so they will, most likely, not stand trial in a U.S. court. *For more information: https://statescoop.com/one-year-after-atlantas-ransomware-attack-the-city-says-its-transforming-its-technology/*

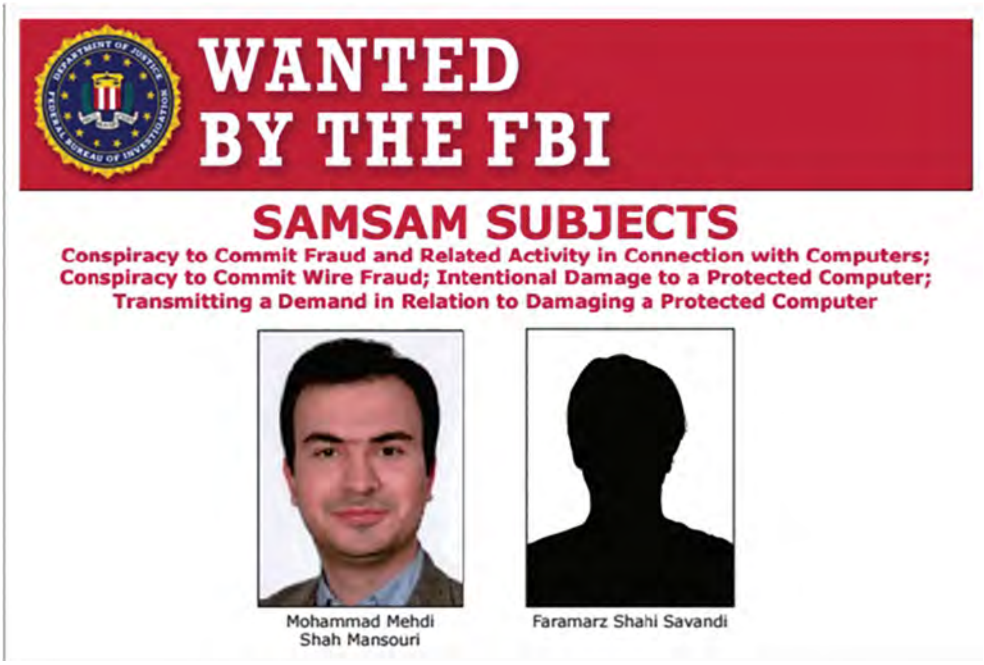

WANTED
BY THE FBI
SAMSAM SUBJECTS
Conspiracy to Commit Fraud and Related Activity in Connection with Computers; Conspiracy to Commit Wire Fraud; Intentional Damage to a Protected Computer; Transmitting a Demand in Relation to Damaging a Protected Computer
Mohammad Mehdi Shah Mansouri
Faramarz Shahi Savandi

Figure 8.3 The two Iranian ransomware hackers, Mansouri and Savandi, who used the SamSam malware to hijack the city of Atlanta's computer network. They are wanted by the FBI for conspiracy to commit fraud among other charges.

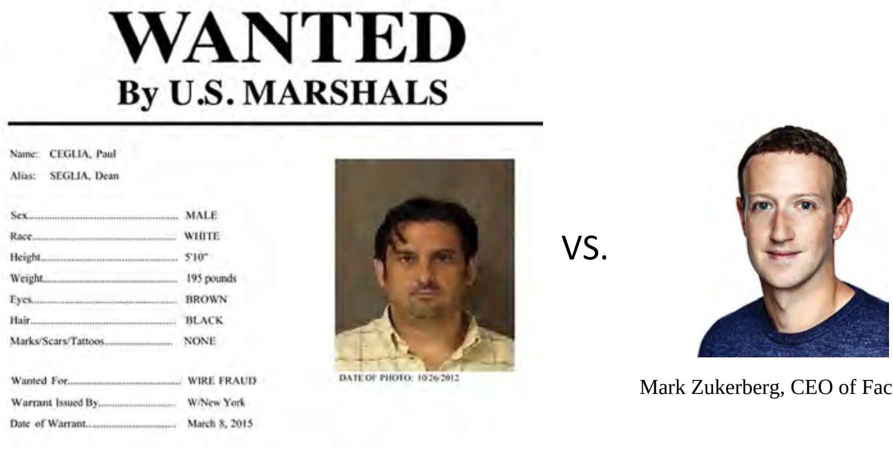
Case Study: Digital Forensics—Paul Ceglia vs Mark Zuckerberg

In 2010, Paul Ceglia, a resident of Wellsville, New York, sued Facebook and its CEO Mark Zuckerberg, claiming that he was owed 50% of the company. Ceglia, a wood pellet salesman, had hired Zuckerberg in 2003 when Zuckerberg was a student at Harvard University to do some website work for Ceglia's company, StreetFax. Zuckerberg was paid $1000 for his work. In the lawsuit, Ceglia claimed that he paid an additional $1000 as an investment in a project that Mark was working on called "The Page Book".

Court evidence that Paul Ceglia produced was a two page contract outlining his share of the interest in The Page Book website. Ceglia also gave the court numerous email communications about the partnership that he alleged were between Mark Zuckerberg and himself.

Facebook's digital forensics investigators were allowed by the court to analyze Ceglia's home computers and digital equipment. They found the original 2003 contract between Ceglia and Zuckerberg and it was not the same contract brought to court by Ceglia. Additionally, investigators found six USB jump drives, one of which contained an image of the alleged contract, which was found to be an altered form of the original. Forensic experts gained access to Mark Zuckerberg's Harvard emails and found communications between him and Ceglia in regard to the work done on StreetFax, but nothing was mentioned about The Page Book or the extra contract. The emails Ceglia had brought to court in his lawsuit had been fabricated. As a result of the evidence brought forth by the digital forensics investigation, the court dismissed the case against Facebook and Mark Zuckerberg.

In addition, due to the fraud involved in this case by Paul Ceglia's manipulation of computer documents and email communications, federal officials pressed charges against Ceglia. He was arrested in 2012 and charged with fabricating evidence for personal gain. Family members posted a $250,000 bail and Ceglia was homebound with a GPS tether. In early 2015, Paul Ceglia removed his tether and jumped bail with his wife, two children and the family dog. He spent months dodging authorities in the United States and then headed to Ecuador, where he remains today. In 2019 Ecuador denied Ceglia's extradition to the United States. Paul Ceglia plans to remain in Ecuador and never return to the United States. *For more information: https://www.nbcnews.com/tech/social-media/court-tosses-out-facebook-lawsuit-against-fugitive-paul-ceglia-s-n487476*



WANTED
By U.S. MARSHALS

Name: CEGLIA, Paul
Alias: SEGLIA, Dean

Sex	MALE
Race	WHITE
Height	5'10"
Weight	195 pounds
Eyes	BROWN
Hair	BLACK
Marks/Scars/Tattoos	NONE
Wanted For	WIRE FRAUD
Warrant Issued By	W/New York
Date of Warrant	March 8, 2015

DATE OF PHOTO: 10/26/2012

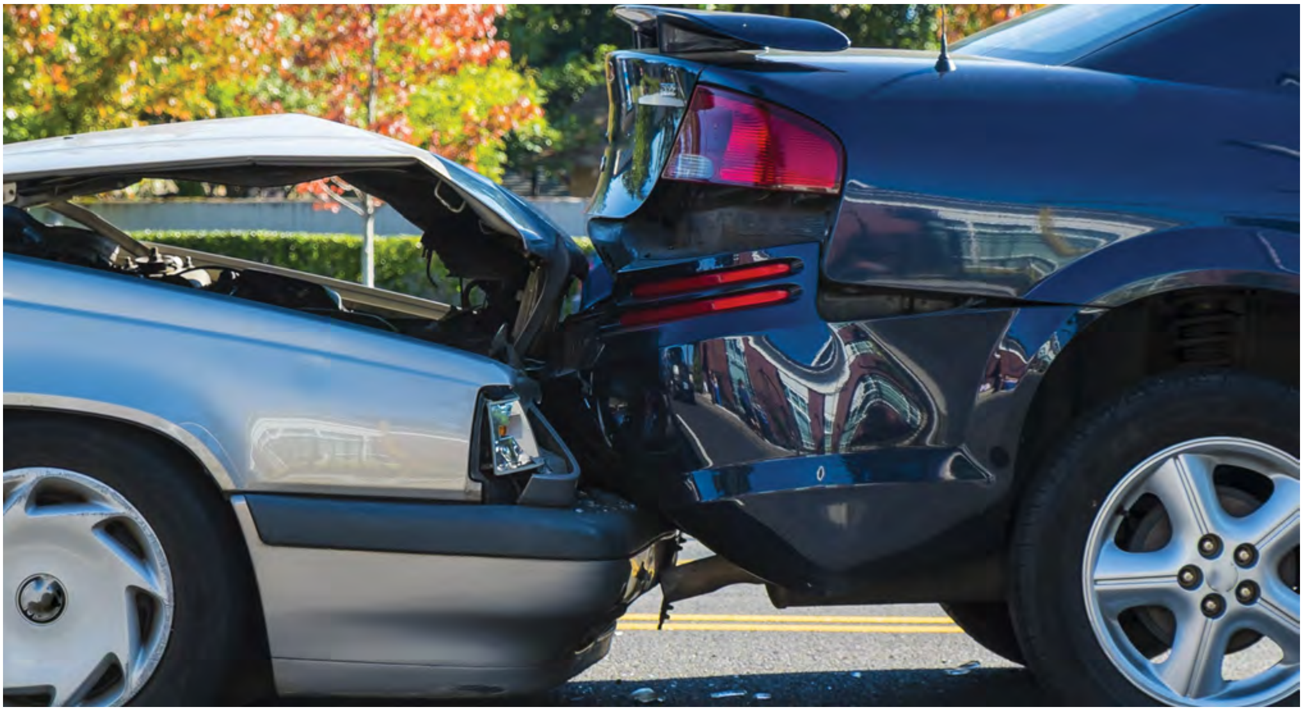
VS.

Mark Zukerberg, CEO of Facebook

Figure 8.4 Paul Ceglia (left) sued Mark Zukerberg (right) in 2010 for 50% interest in Facebook claiming he had computer documents that verified this partnership with Zuckerberg.

9

Forensic Engineering*



Learning Objectives

1. To understand the role of a forensic engineer in failure analysis cases
2. To be able to give examples of types of cases that a forensic engineer would investigate
3. To describe the function of a forensic investigator in a forensic engineering case
4. To understand the role of a collision reconstructionist in a motor vehicle collision
5. To describe the type of investigative work involved in an automobile accident
6. To appreciate the role of physics and mathematics in forensic engineering type of investigations

---

* The authors would like to thank Christopher Puckett who provided photos, updates and reviewed the accident reconstruction portion of this chapter.

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
  - *Terminology*
- *Engineering Profession*
  - *History of Engineering*
  - *What Does an Engineer Do?*
- *Forensic Engineer*
  - *Engineers versus Forensic Engineers*
  - *What Does a Forensic Engineer Do?*
- *Forensic Engineering Case Studies*
  - *Space Shuttle Challenger Disaster*
  - *Tacoma Narrows Bridge Collapse*
  - *Hyatt Regency Walkway Collapse*
  - *Stage Collapse at the Indiana State Fairgrounds*
- *Accident Reconstruction*
  - *Vehicular Collisions and Physics*
  - *Education and Training*
  - *Investigative Procedures*
  - *At the Scene*
  - *Post-scene Analysis*
  - *Additional Post-scene Analysis*
    - *The Mysterious "Black Box"*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Match Each Definition with the Term*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Accident reconstruction: The application of the principles of physics and engineering to vehicular collisions in order to recreate or explain how the incident occurred.

Drag factor: A numeric ratio that gives an indication of the frictional properties between the road surface and tires of a vehicle.

Engineer: An individual who applies knowledge of science to the design and construction of various types of machines to improve society.

Engineering: The application of the principles and mathematics of science to produce products that make life easier and/or more efficient.

Forensic engineering: The application of the science and process of engineering to solve cases of a judiciary nature.

Hot shock: The deformation of a lightbulb filament in a vehicle lamp.

Liability: A state of being legally responsibility for something.

Physics: The study of matter and energy and how they interact in nature.

Primary defects: Structural defects that arise due to design flaws, manufacture flaws, construction mistakes or faulty materials used in construction.

Scientist: An individual who studies the laws of nature.

Secondary defects: Product defects due to design problems, but not identified until the material has been used by the public.

Skid mark: A black mark on a road surface left by the heating of tire rubber due to braking and sliding the tire on the road.

Yaw: A pattern of skid marks caused by the side slipping of the rotating tire in a nonbraking turn of a vehicle.

Acronyms

ACM	Airbag control module
DUI	Driving under the influence
ETWS	Electronic total work station
EDR	Event data recorder
FWA	Federal Works Administration
GPS	Global positioning system
NAFE	National Academy of Forensic Engineers
NASA	National Aeronautics and Space Administration
NHTSA	National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

Introduction

A walkway collapses, the temporary stage at a State Fair falls to the ground, a nuclear power plant has a meltdown, a space shuttle explodes in midair, two cars collide at an intersection or a pickup truck flies through the glass window of a restaurant. Every one of these events would involve a forensic investigator who specializes in either engineering or motor vehicle collisions. A common thread is that both types of investigators apply the concepts of physics and the language of mathematics to interpret the events at the accident scene (Figure 9.1).

When an accident occurs, it changes the circumstances. There may be damage to property. This damage could be minimal or extensive. Individuals may be injured. The injuries could be minor, serious or fatal. Structures could be damaged that subsequently could affect the daily lives of other individuals. In any accident, minor or substantial, it is important to ascertain what events occurred to cause the accident. An accident is called such because it is something that is not supposed to happen. If it does, then the reason for it must be determined.

If the accident is due to a part or machine malfunction, then that fault must be discovered so that further accidents can be avoided. If the accident is due to the careless actions of an operator, then that person might need to be arrested and prosecuted. It is the role of the investigators in this area of forensic science to reconstruct events to determine failure, be it human or nonhuman in causality (Figure 9.2).

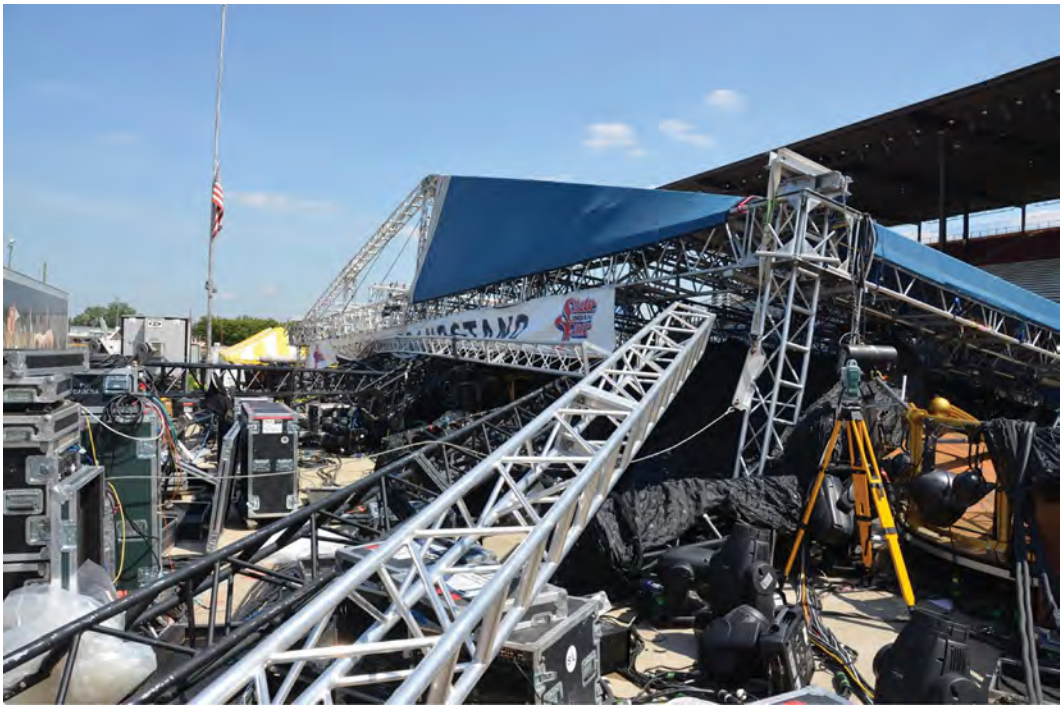


Figure 9.1 The aftermath of a structure collapse. Photo courtesy of Gary Chambers, Wolf Technical Services, Inc., Indianapolis, IN.

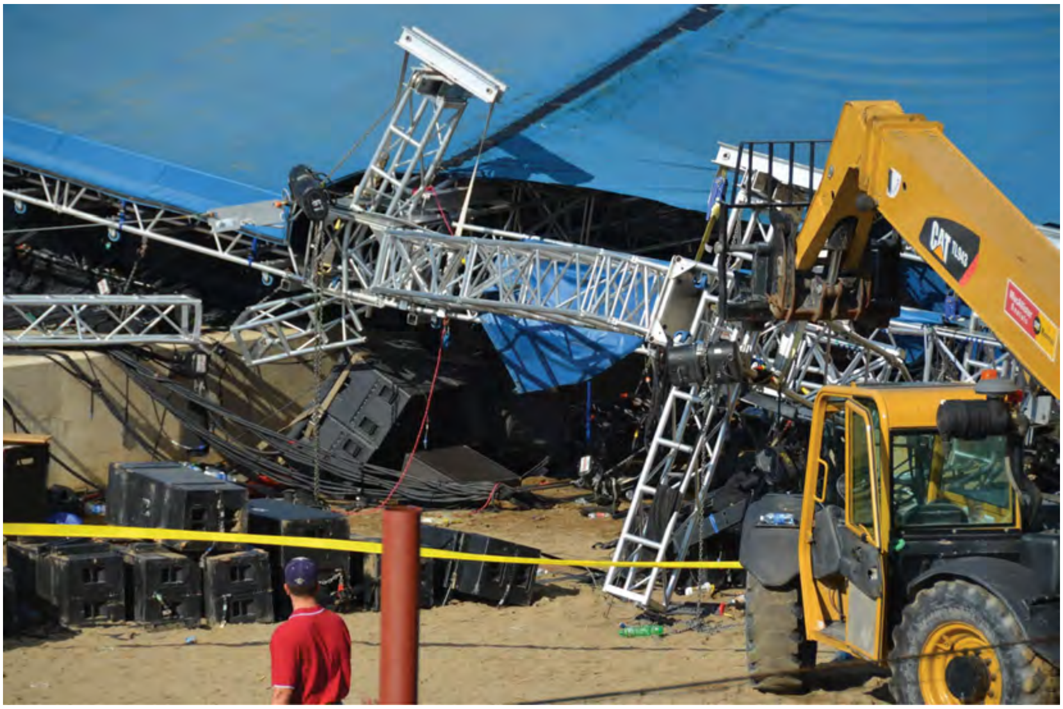


Figure 9.2 Starting the forensic engineering investigation. Photo courtesy of Gary Chambers, Wolf Technical Services, Inc.

This chapter will explore the types of investigations that are rooted in engineering and physics. An overview of the types of investigations, the basic procedures followed in the various types of investigations and some engineering and accident cases will be included as examples.

Terminology

An *engineer* is someone who applies knowledge of science to the design and construction of various types of machines to improve society. A *scientist* concentrates on understanding the laws of nature and our physical world, whereas the engineer uses that same body of knowledge to design practical objects that make living in the physical world more productive, safer and pleasant.

The engineer is a scientific problem solver. In designing systems, an engineer not only must design a device that solves a problem, but also passes restrictions due to government regulations, and space limitations by the contracting company. The new design must be more efficient and take less time than the previous device. Oh, and of course, it should do all that in a cost-effective manner. By the very nature of their training, the engineer is a good forensic investigator, being able to look at more than one aspect of a situation. According to the National Academy of Forensic Engineers (NAFE), *forensic engineering* is "the application of the art and science of engineering in matters which are in, or may possibly relate to, the jurisprudence system, inclusive of alternative dispute resolution." By knowing how to design a good system, the forensic engineer also has a practical knowledge of inefficient and poorly designed systems, which is key to reconstructing an industrial or civil accident.

Some forensic engineers are trained to investigate motor vehicle accidents. If a forensic engineer is hired to investigate a car accident, most likely they are investigating the collision for a private insurance company. The majority of motor vehicle accidents are investigated by local or state police agencies. Each year in the United States, over two million people are injured in car crashes, another 32,000 people die in a crash and countless other collisions only cause injury to the vehicles involved. Because there are so many motor vehicle accidents every day, it would be very ineffective and costly to have a forensic engineer investigate all vehicle crashes. This area of investigation is best done by police officers trained in *accident reconstruction* or collision reconstruction. Accident reconstruction is the area of forensic science that uses the physical evidence at the scene to determine how and why the vehicular accident occurred.

Engineering Profession

History of Engineering

If you think about the earliest feats of structural engineering, the Pyramids in Egypt most likely come to mind. To build monuments of such magnificence without the assistance of modern tools and devices is mind boggling to most. Construction had to be planned and coordinated by individuals whom today we would call engineers. It has been said that one of the first engineers was the Egyptian architect and physician, Imhotep, the designer of the pharaoh's tomb, the Step Pyramid in the 2600s BC. This is an engineering marvel that has lasted through time.

In addition to the marvels of Egyptian design and construction, the Romans also mastered the mathematics and science of structural engineering with building feats such as the Colosseum, Roman theatres, Roman baths, aqueducts and roads. The Romans were builders and material designers. Around the second-century BC, they crafted a concrete mixture used to construct the Pantheon, which has withstood the sands of time.

Architects and engineers continued to design great structures thorough history; however, the materials changed as our knowledge of science changed. In the thirteenth century, metal working was incorporated into engineered structures. More diversity and sophistication in structural design arose in the eighteenth century with the development of schools of engineering. Academia was now awarding degrees in the areas of civil and mechanical engineering. This was followed by the Industrial Revolution and the discovery of electricity. In addition to electric lighting, engineers could now design convenience devices that operate using electric current, stoves, televisions, vacuum cleaners, etc. A new branch of engineering, electrical engineering, was born.

Other engineering professions were developed as our world's industrial knowledge grew. Chemical engineering grew out of our more industrialized society. Our need for knowledge in metallurgy, production of processed foods, development and production of drugs and medicine and production of fibers for the textile industry increased our need for chemical engineers. Paper engineering and nuclear engineering are twentieth-century products of our society's need for products and energy. The need for advanced medical treatments and artificial body parts gave rise to biomedical engineering. Computer engineers are an integral part of our digital age. Today, there are so many various fields of engineering that almost any student who enjoys science and mathematics could find a field that would be of interest as a profession.

What Does an Engineer Do?

Engineers are problem solvers. Our quality of life over the years has been enhanced by the work of engineers. They design systems that make life easier, safer and/or more efficient. They need to have an understanding of science and be able to apply that knowledge to solve a challenge. Engineers must be creative. They need also to be flexible, as sometimes their designs may need to change due to parameters of which they have no control.

Basically, all engineers employ similar approaches to problem-solving, no matter the specialty or complexity of the issue. First, they must isolate the problem using scientific analysis methods. Then, a plan of attack or design of a solution is developed. Within this development are hours of research and consultation. Construction of a working model or prototype to test follows the design process. Extensive testing is done. This can then lead to redesign, possibly more research and consulting, and more testing. Once the final product is produced, additional testing is done to certify that the product is safe and follows whatever protocols that may be in place, many times involving the environment. Product testing also involves examination for any defects post operation. Additionally, the design engineer may be involved in training operators on proper safety, handling and maintenance of equipment.

In this profession, the individual must have a working knowledge of scientific principles applicable to the type of engineering work being done as well as mathematical skills. The engineer spends a great deal of time on the computer and is skilled in the use of graphic design software to construct prototypes. Presentation and communication skills are necessary to effectively share ideas and engage in discourse.

Besides civil and mechanical engineers, the industry recognizes almost 25 different engineering specialties. Those include biomedical, nuclear, chemical and environmental engineers. In addition, there are computer, electronic and aeronautical engineers, as well as agricultural and industrial engineers. These are just a few of the many various engineering specialties. It is interesting to note that some of these specialties can apply their training to other fields as well. For example, a chemical engineer may be able to use their skills in a medical field and an electronic or electrical engineer may apply their engineering expertise to an occupation involving computers. This chapter focuses on the application of various fields of engineering to the areas of forensic science and the legal profession.

Forensic Engineer

Engineers versus Forensic Engineers

The forensic engineer is also a problem solver. However, unlike the regular engineer, the forensic engineer is not involved in birth of a new product or structure, but in the aftermath of product or structural failure. This could include collapse of buildings, bridges or homes. It could involve accidents in aerospace or the automotive industry. Basically, the forensic engineer is called upon to investigate why an engineered product failed in its operation in any way. Forensic investigations can be criminal in nature or civil, involving *liability* in personal or property damage.

Failure of products, structures or parts of structures can be due to aging, lack of maintenance, faulty materials or design. The investigator uses engineering skills to determine which of these might apply to the failure in each case. Depending on the outcome of the investigation, penalties may be dispensed. Quite often in these cases, the forensic engineer works for insurance companies who provide property coverage for the structures and liability coverage for the owners. In other instances, a worker might sue his boss for injuries, claiming the employer had faulty equipment; in this case, a civil lawsuit.

Sometimes, an accident is due to tampering with a product. In this case the investigation becomes more criminal in nature. Intentionally causing failure that leads to damage, injury or possibly death pairs the forensic engineer with law enforcement. Detectives and engineers work together to determine what happened, how it happened and who might have the knowledge and expertise to intentionally compromise the item.

What Does a Forensic Engineer Do?

Forensic engineers inspect failures and reconstruct, if necessary, the conditions prior to the accident to determine any improprieties. Accidental events are diverse. Events could be caused by structural failure, malfunction of machines or operator error. Most of the time the engineer is called in long after the event occurred. The investigator must examine equipment, hopefully undisturbed, to determine the point and cause of failure. Once cause is determined, then the investigator must establish who was liable for the accident. The outcome of the liability investigation will determine if the case will end up in either a civil or criminal court. If the determination is criminal (intentional tampering), the investigation will look very similar to any other crime scene investigation. Evidence is collected from the scene, extensive photographs are taken, witnesses are interviewed and forensic testing is done in the crime lab. Forensic engineers can work for law firms, government agencies and private consulting companies or be employed by a large industrial manufacturer.

There are two areas of defect that are investigated when failure occurs. *Primary defects* are those that arise due to design flaws, manufacture flaws, construction mistakes or faulty materials used in construction. Defects that are considered as secondary are those that are the result of operation or use. *Secondary defects* can be due to design problems, but unfortunately are not identified until the material has been used by the public. Good examples of these are product recalls issued by manufacturers as a result of various degrees of product failure or safety issues in the marketplace. Many child care products or toys are recalled due to safety concerns that may not have been anticipated by the engineer and manufacturer.

In these types of accident cases, it is common for the forensic engineer to be called to court to testify as an expert witness. There are many forensic engineers in private practice, working for their own agency or as part of a team. In a criminal case, the independent forensic engineer can be hired by the prosecution or by the defense. In a liability case, an insurance company may hire the engineer to determine fault or no fault.

Experience is vital to be an expert forensic engineer. Most forensic engineers have years of experience in their chosen field of engineering. Some of the engineering specialties that contribute greatly to forensic investigations include civil, mechanical and materials engineering. Engineers who expand their work to include forensic investigations in most cases have over 25 years of work experience past their advanced degree (usually a PhD). This is not a beginning job, but more likely the last one before retirement.

Forensic Engineering Case Studies

Space Shuttle Challenger Disaster

In 1986, the nation watched as the first teacher was embarking on her inaugural journey into space from Kennedy Space Center in Florida. Christa McAuliffe did not fulfill her dream. The January 28th mission was cut horribly short when, less than 2 minutes after liftoff, the *Challenger Space Shuttle* exploded in midair. All seven crew members, Michael J. Smith, Ronald McNair, Dick Scobee, Gregory Jarvis, Ellison Onizuka, Judith Resnik and Ms. McAuliffe, perished in this disaster. Following the disaster, President Reagan commissioned a group to investigate the explosion and to determine the cause. The group was called the Rogers Commission, after the head of the investigation, William P. Rogers, former secretary of state. Members of the commission included Neil Armstrong and Sally Ride, former astronauts, pilot Chuck Yeager and Richard Feynman, a physicist, among the list of credentialed commission members (Figures 9.3 and 9.4).

After an extensive investigation that included looking at frame-by-frame camera footage of the launching and flight of the space shuttle, interviews of National

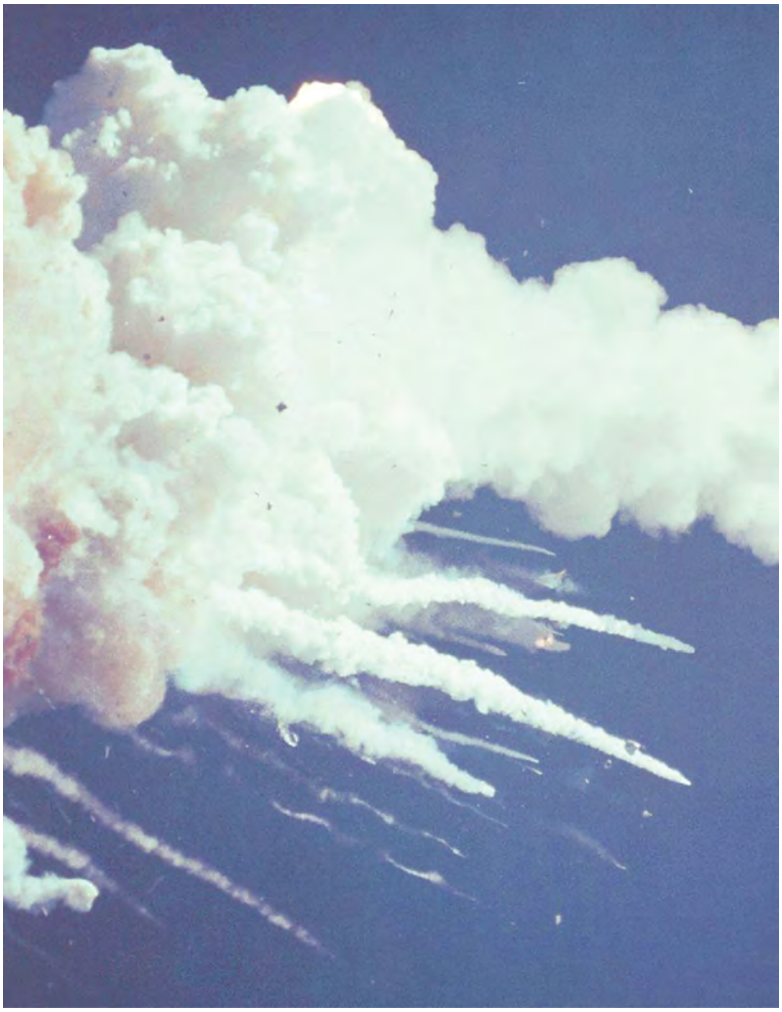


Figure 9.3 Explosion of the *Challenger* Space Shuttle January 28, 1986. From http://grin.hq.nasa.gov/IMAGES/SMALL/GPN-2000-001423.jpg.

Figure 9.4 Richard Feynman testifying for the Rogers Commission in 1986. AP photo, Dennis Cook/Associated Press.

Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) personnel and administrators and engineers for Morton Thiokol (the firm that built the *Challenger* shuttle), the Rogers Commission made their report to Congress. History recounts that it was physicist Richard Feynman who went straight to the Thiokol engineers for background information on the design and operation of the shuttle. Feynman is credited for finding the problem with the O-rings, a sealing mechanism on the solid rocket fuel tank joints. These seals were to prevent hot gases from escaping the rocket fuel tanks as the tanks heat up and expand. It was discovered, however, that these seals do not work effectively in cold temperatures. At launch time on the 28th, the temperature was in the mid-30 degrees Fahrenheit. Cold temperatures limit the expansion of the seals that prevent the hot gas from escaping. *Challenger*'s O-rings did not seal and allowed the release of hot gas from the solid rock fuel tanks. These hot gases caused the fittings to expand and impinge on the external fuel tank. The fitting expansion resulted in structural failure and led to the release of hydrogen gas and the explosion of the shuttle.

Once the commission identified the cause of the accident, the investigation turned to the company who designed the shuttle, Morton Thiokol. It was determined that the Morton Thiokol engineers knew that the O-rings did not respond well in cold temperatures; however, Thiokol management and NASA officials did not respond appropriately to these design flaws in the O-rings of the solid rocket fuel tanks. As a result of the disaster, NASA's shuttle program was grounded for more than 2 years in order to complete a restructuring of protocols and a redesign of the solid rocket fuel tanks.

Tacoma Narrows Bridge Collapse

The Tacoma Narrows Bridge was built in 1940 to span the Tacoma Narrows in the state of Washington. Claiming to be one of the lightest bridges of its kind and one of the most modern suspension bridges of that period, it was to be an engineering marvel. From the time of its completion, people noticed that the bridge had a sway to it and affectionately gave the bridge the nickname, "Galloping Gertie". One day in November of that same year, the winds were howling at 40–45 mph. The sway of the bridge was severely affected by the winds. Gertie began undulating in a wave-like motion as if the bridge was made of flexible rubber instead of concrete. The wave motion seemed to increase in amplitude until finally the structure could not withstand the swaying and broke apart in the center of the bridge. Concrete, wire supports and one lone abandoned automobile tumbled into the Narrows (Figure 9.5).

Postcollapse inspection showed the cables were twisted by the violent wave motion of the bridge. Even the huge metal towers at either end of the suspension bridge suffered irreparable damage. The metal was bent and buckled due to the twisting torsional wave of the roadway.

What caused this disaster? When designing the Tacoma Narrows Bridge, engineers were striving for a lighter, less bulky suspension bridge. However, less weight also meant less inertia and the bridge was more susceptible to motion by the force of winds. The higher winds caused the bridge to resonate and create standing waves that only amplified the crests and toughs of the wave motion. It has been estimated that the amplitude of the swaying bridge was over 20 ft. At some point, the displacement of the undulating road was too much for the supports and concrete road and it began to crumble in the middle, tearing the bridge apart.

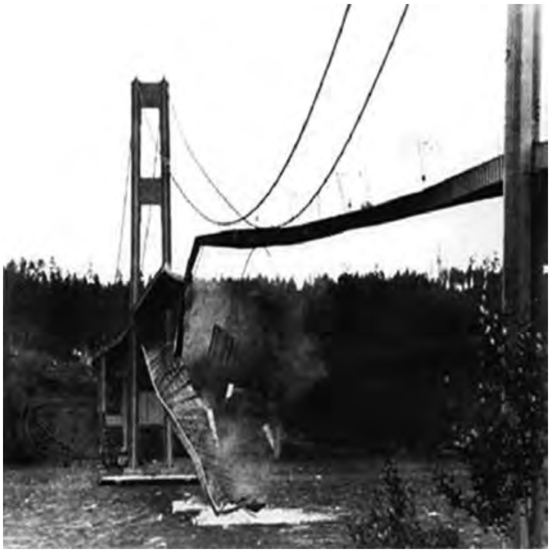


Figure 9.5 Tacoma Narrows Bridge, November 1940, breaking apart after winds caused it to oscillate like waves on a spring.

The Federal Works Administration (FWA) organized a group of three prominent engineers to investigate why this structure was adversely affected by wind. Their findings were not surprising; the cause of failure was the "random action of turbulent wind." The more important question that followed was why designers of the Tacoma Narrows Bridge did not know that the lightweight design would rise and fall dangerously in the wind. An interesting finding by the engineer panel was that the deck and girding performed like an airfoil, causing lift and drag like an airplane. Clearly, more research in aerodynamics needed to be conducted before more suspension bridges of similar design could be built. It is unfortunate, but the collapse of the Tacoma Narrows Bridge acted as a wakeup call for engineers involved in designing large suspension bridges. The effects of aerodynamic forces on such structures needed to be studied and tested thoroughly before any new construction commenced.

Hyatt Regency Walkway Collapse

On July 17, 1981, disaster struck at the Hyatt Regency Hotel in Kansas City, Missouri. A suspended walkway connecting one half of the hotel to the other above an open atrium collapsed, killing 114 people and injuring upward of 200 more. Unlike the Tacoma Narrows Bridge incident, this tragedy was not due to design flaws in the walkway, but rather mistakes in manufacturing and changes made to the design during construction.

There were three suspended walkways above the first floor atrium. The bridge connecting the second floor sections and the one connecting the fourth floor sections were stacked one above the other, leaving the third floor walkway slightly offset and free from the other two. The original design had one large connecting ceiling rod for support of the two walkways. Due to issues with threading during manufacture and transport of such a large rod, the design was changed from one rod to two, smaller in size. Additionally, there were changes to placement of the rods and what walkways they would support. Unfortunately, one of the beams carried the load of two beams and the nuts at the attachment were not designed to hold against the increased weight.

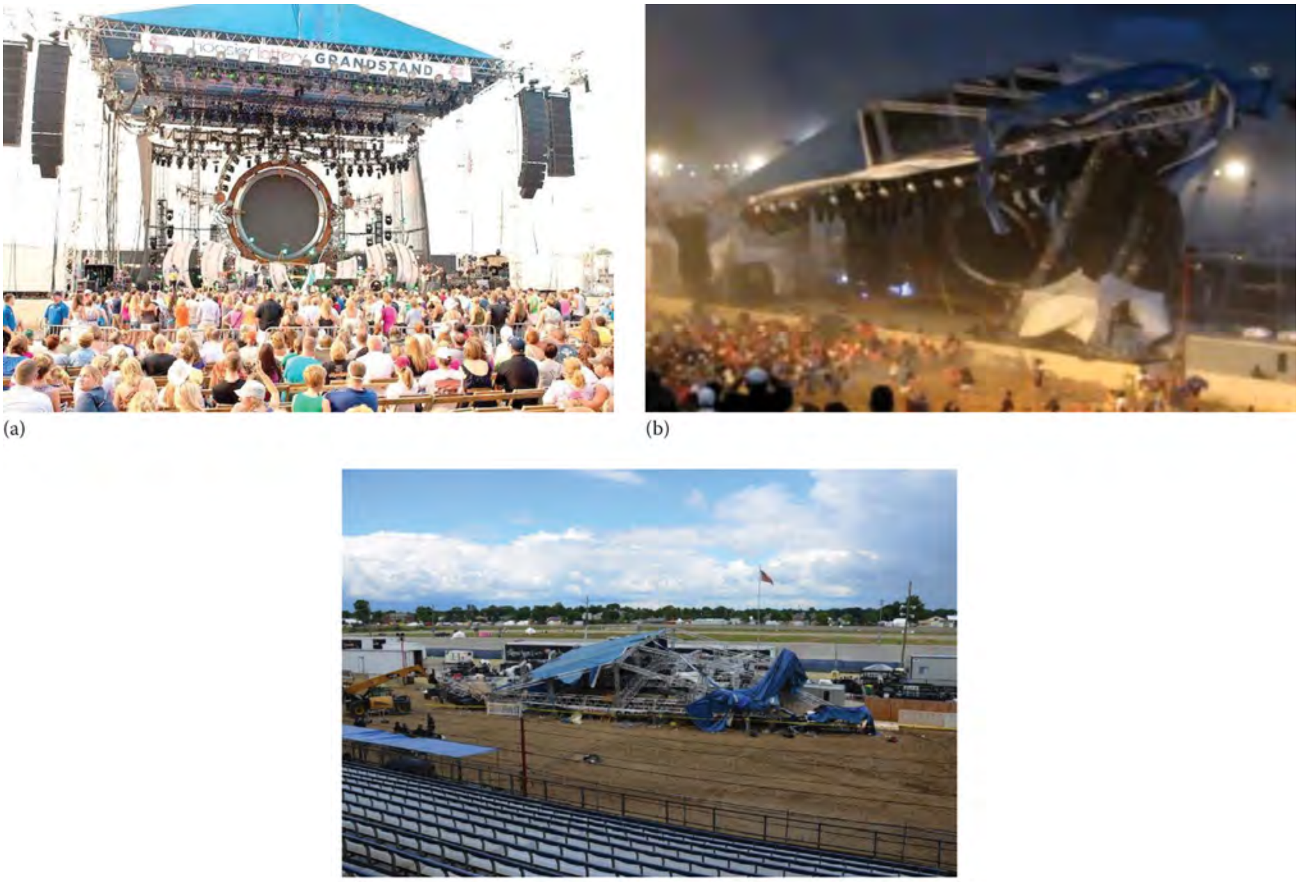
On the day of the collapse, there was a dance party in the atrium on the first floor and it was very crowded. Spectators lined the second, third and fourth floor walkways for a great view of the show from above. People were both standing and dancing on the suspended hotel bridges. Unfortunately, the changed support rods were barely strong enough to support the weight of the walkway itself, let alone 30–40 people, some jumping up and down while dancing. Soon the fourth floor walkway gave way and tumbled down on to the second floor bridge below it, causing both structures to crash into the crowded atrium below. The third floor walkway, given its offset placement, was not affected.

Forensic investigation found various issues, mostly with the construction of the walkway. First, there was a flaw in the design of the walkways in that the weight-bearing load of people was not correctly taken into consideration when planning the connections. The bigger issue revolved around the changes made to original plans. The design engineer should have consulted with the manufacturer regarding the size and design of the support rods. When the changes were made, substituting the two rods for the single, there was no consultation among parties involved. The fabricator did not discuss changes with the design engineers, no testing was done to ensure that the change would not adversely affect the support of the walkways and no final checks were completed to be sure the specs matched the final product. This disaster could have been avoided if communication between design engineers, fabricators in the manufacturing sector, civil engineers and construction personnel would have continued throughout the entire build from its inception to completion.

Stage Collapse at the Indiana State Fairgrounds

Sugarland was due to take the stage at the Indiana State Fairgrounds and play to a packed crowd of fans. It was near dusk on a summer day in Indianapolis, Indiana, on August 13, 2011. There were severe storms predicted in the Midwest. The stage was a temporary grandstand assembled for performances during the state fair. The country music duo was due to take the stage at approximately 8:45 pm. Officials monitoring the conditions and the management of Sugarland conversed back and forth about whether to cancel the concert or continue after the opening act finished. They decided to continue with the concert and take the stage at 8:50. The stage collapsed at approximately 8:46 pm. Seven people perished and 58 were injured (Figure 9.6).

The Indiana State Fair Commission called an investigation by two firms, Thornton Tomasetti and Witt Associates. The Chicago-based Tomasetti Firm was assisted by Wolf Technical Services, a forensic engineering group in Indianapolis. The methodology used to investigate this disaster was site surveying and extensive documentation, onsite testing of the support structures, wind tunnel testing of mock stage models, metallurgical evaluation, computer modeling of the structure and data analysis including calculations. It was determined that there were two major factors in the tragedy; failure to meet industry safety standards for the stage rigging and lack of an organized emergency plan and policy in case of inclement weather. Structurally, the stage rigging and supports were inadequate and not up to industry code. Additionally, there were no inspections of the temporary structure prior to the concert. Industry safety standards dictate that these structures must be able to withstand winds up to 68 mph. The Indiana stage and roof



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 9.6 Photo sequence of the Indiana State Fair Hoosier Grandstand stage collapse August 13, 2011: (a) the daytime photo prior to collapse, (b) the stage beginning to fall in the evening and (c) the aftermath and the beginning of the investigation. Photos courtesy of Gary Chambers, Wolf Technical Services, Inc., Indianapolis, IN.

were held in place by support wires fastened to concrete barriers. Upon inspection it was determined that the rigging built for the stage would only maintain support in winds of 25, maybe up to 43 mph, much lower than the required 68 mph. Figure 9.7 shows evidence that the concrete barriers that were anchoring the guy wires moved a substantial distance prior to collapse. Evidence post collapse showed the webbing on the ratchet straps failed and the metal columns supported by the guy wires bent at the footing when they fell.

Records show the stage began to fail when the winds reached 33 mph. Total collapse occurred after a 3 second wind gust of approximately 59 mph. Once the rigging gave way, the remaining supports and roof began to lean to the right. Once the supports failed, gravity pulled the entire structure to the right and slightly forward, down onto the stage platform and the crowd at the front of the stage.

The cancellation or not decision-making process behind the scenes prior to the concert was faulty and disorganized. Backstage, there was confusion between the band management and the state fair event coordinators. Fair officials were unsure about whether to call off the concert. They monitored the weather but failed to get the severe thunderstorm warning issued by the National Weather Service at 8:39 pm. By the time the decision was made to cancel the performance, the stage was already compromised and collapsing. There was no formal protocol in place for

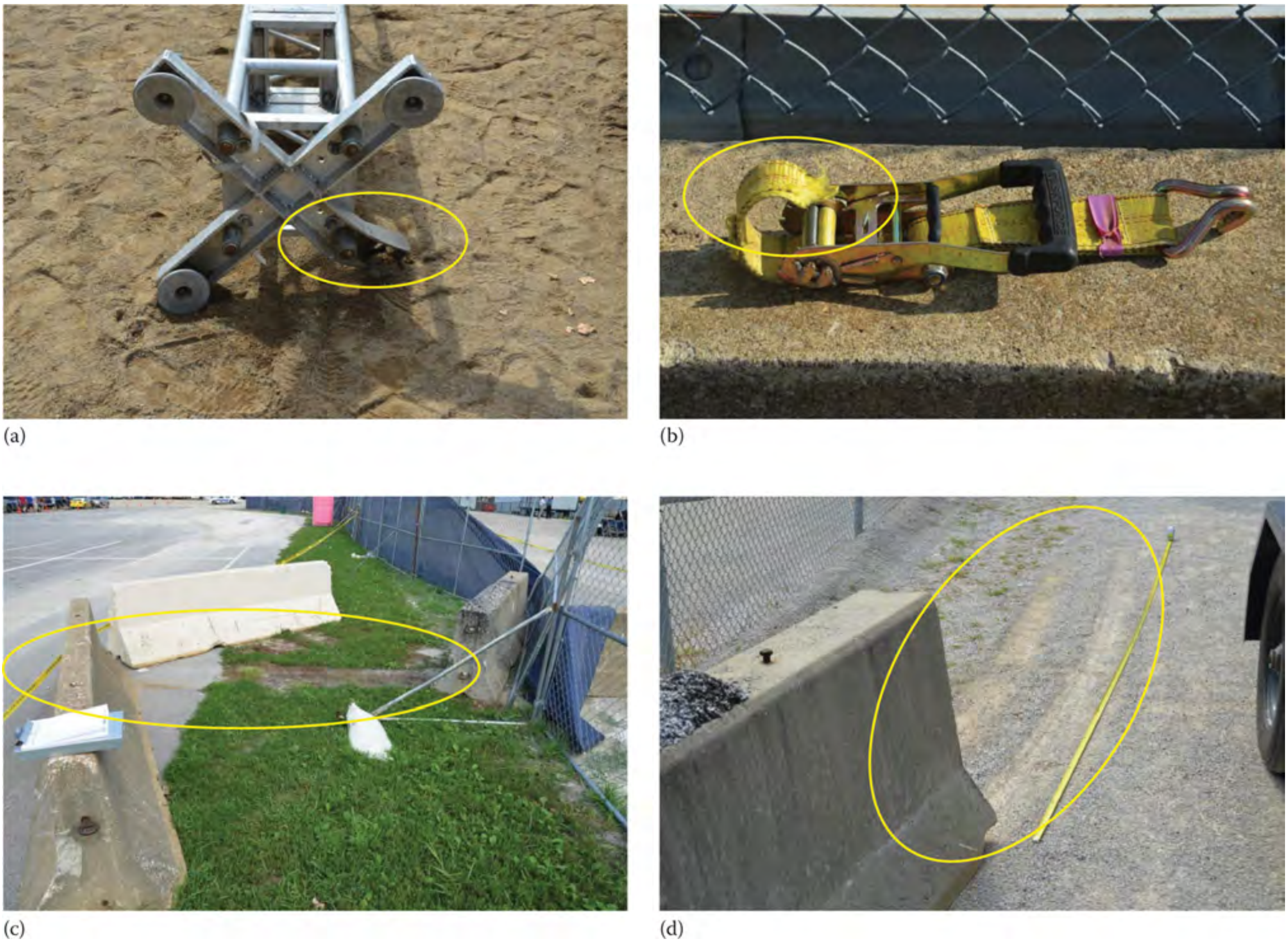


Figure 9.7 Evidence from Hoosier Grandstand collapse: (a) one bent metal leg of a tower column, (b) a ratchet strap tear and (c, d) evidence that the concrete barrier braces for the guy wires slid out of position. Photos courtesy of Gary Chambers, Wolf Technical Services, Inc., Indianapolis, IN.

decision-making in case of emergency. The murky chain of command only contributed to the tragedy that may have been averted given supports up to code and protocol for weather emergencies. In the end, the Indiana Occupational Health and Safety Administration issued fines up to $80,000 citing incompetence in building and inspecting a safe temporary structure and failure to have a proper procedure in place in case of weather emergencies.

Accident Reconstruction

Vehicular Collisions and Physics

Physics is the study of how matter and energy interact in nature. When one automobile unintentionally comes in contact with another vehicle or with any other object, their matter and energy interact, unfortunately with a less than positive outcome. Accident investigation is the application of the principles of physics and engineering to vehicular collisions in order to recreate or explain how the incident might have transpired (Figure 9.8).

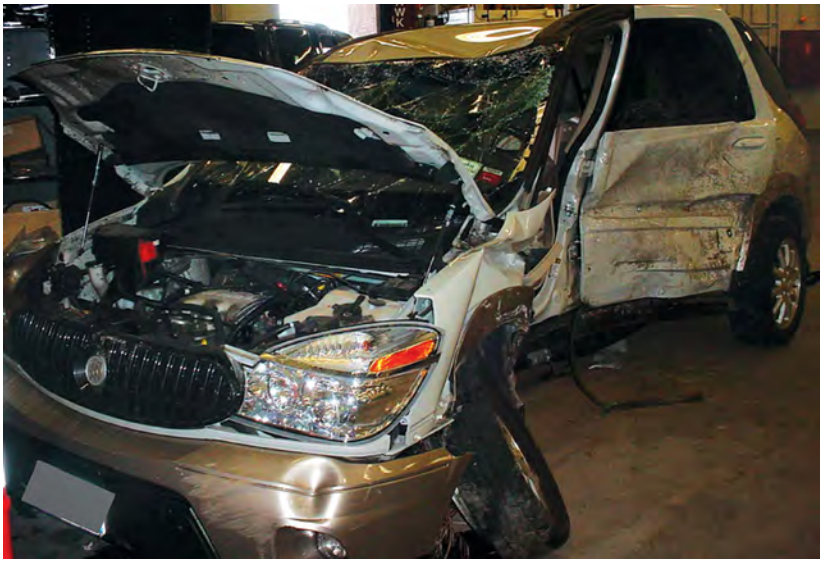


Figure 9.8 Vehicle involved in a fatal crash. Photo courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, MI.

Clues at the accident site direct the investigation. Experienced accident investigators look for evidence at the scene that might give insight as to why the collision occurred. Classical physics principles such as Isaac Newton's laws of motion and the laws of conservation of linear momentum and mechanical energy apply whenever two objects in nature collide. The laws studied in the classroom play out in real life during an accident investigation when such things as speed of the vehicle, stopping distance, forces of impact and path of the vehicles prior to and during the accident must be determined. Not only must the condition of the vehicle and occupants be analyzed, but consideration of the road conditions and environment prior to the incident is important and needs to be assessed. It is also important to establish the circumstances inside the vehicle prior to the accident such as the location of the occupants, whether they were using seatbelts or in car seats and possibly what they were doing in the car prior the accident. These questions and many more must be addressed in the physical reconstruction of the incident.

Education and Training

According to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in 2013 over 32,000 individuals in the United States died in motor vehicle crashes. Many, many more US citizens were injured, an astounding 2.3 million. Given the frequency of car crashes and the types of violations involved, most accident investigations are done by local police agencies.

Due to the complexity of investigating an automobile accident, specialized training is necessary for the law enforcement officer in charge of collision reconstruction. Accident investigation institutes conduct courses for police officers to learn how to apply physics and mathematics in a practical way. Many of these courses involve up to 10 weeks of intense classroom and laboratory experience. Various types of collisions are recreated and investigated in the laboratory, giving students experience in using specialized data collection equipment and mathematical equations that are essential tools of the trade.

Investigative Procedures

There are two types of individuals who have the expertise to investigate a motor vehicle accident, the law enforcement officer trained in collision reconstruction and the forensic engineer who specializes in automobile crashes. A forensic engineer would be involved if hired by an insurance company to determine liability or by an attorney for an injured party in cases of financial responsibility. Both parties will use similar techniques and data analysis methodologies in their investigation. However, it is the law enforcement examiner who responds at the outset and the forensic engineer who joins the investigation days, weeks, or even months after the incident. Therefore, the procedures discussed here will follow the protocol of a law enforcement accident reconstructionist, rather than the engineer, since it the reconstructionist who takes all the data at the actual scene of the crash.

At the Scene

When an accident occurs, someone dials 911 and law enforcement responds. Usually, that first responder is a trooper or patrol officer, and it is their job to secure the scene, administer aid, call for backup and make it safe for other vehicles and pedestrians. When the accident investigator arrives, the first task is to talk with that first responder to ascertain what was found upon arrival. Perhaps, some pertinent details have been determined by that officer and the investigation can proceed efficiently. The accident investigator walks the path of the collision to get a visual of what has occurred.

From that visual, the investigator determines what evidence might be sensitive and should be attended to first. Sensitive evidence is evidence that could be lost due to weather conditions or manipulation of the mangled vehicles. Extensive photography and videography is performed. After photography of the undisturbed scene is complete, the measurement process begins. This includes measuring *skid marks*, tire marks and position of vehicles or anything else that was involved in the collision. A detailed drawing of the scene must be completed for the report and placement of every piece of evidence in the scene is important. The combination of good measurements and excellent photography make this task easier. In order to take accurate measurements, the vehicles should remain at the scene as long as possible before being driven or towed away. Depending on the severity of the crash, documenting the scene could take a long time. This is why roads are closed or partially closed during an accident and traffic gets snarled. Accuracy takes time.

The types of evidence explored on the road surface are skid marks, yaw marks and any scratches or gouges in the road. When a vehicle skids to a stop, it can be determined how fast the car was going when it began the skid. In order to complete this calculation, test skids are done at the scene using police vehicles if it is safe to do so. It is important to run the test skids at the site of the crash under similar road conditions. The braking is done as close to the actual skid marks as possible and in the same direction of motion. The data collected will then determine the minimum speed of the driver prior to hitting the brakes. If road conditions are such that it is not safe to run skid tests, a drag sled (1/3 of a tire filled with cement) is pulled across the road surface near and in the direction of the skid (see Figure 9.9). This will aid in the establishing the frictional properties between the tire and the road, a quantity called the drag factor in accident investigation.

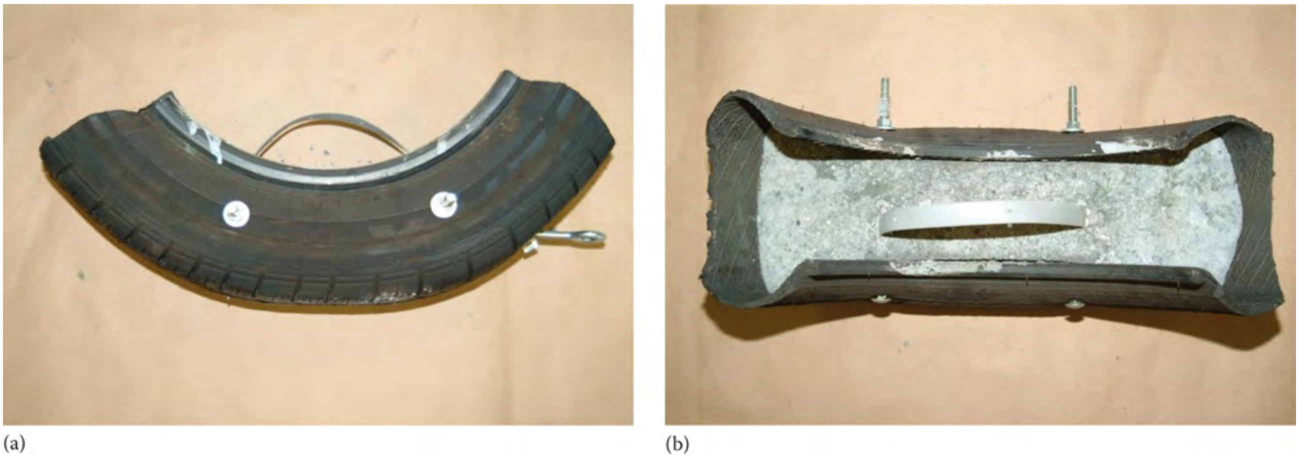


Figure 9.9 Police drag sled (a: side view and b: top view) used at the accident site to help determine the frictional properties of the highway surface. Photo courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, MI.

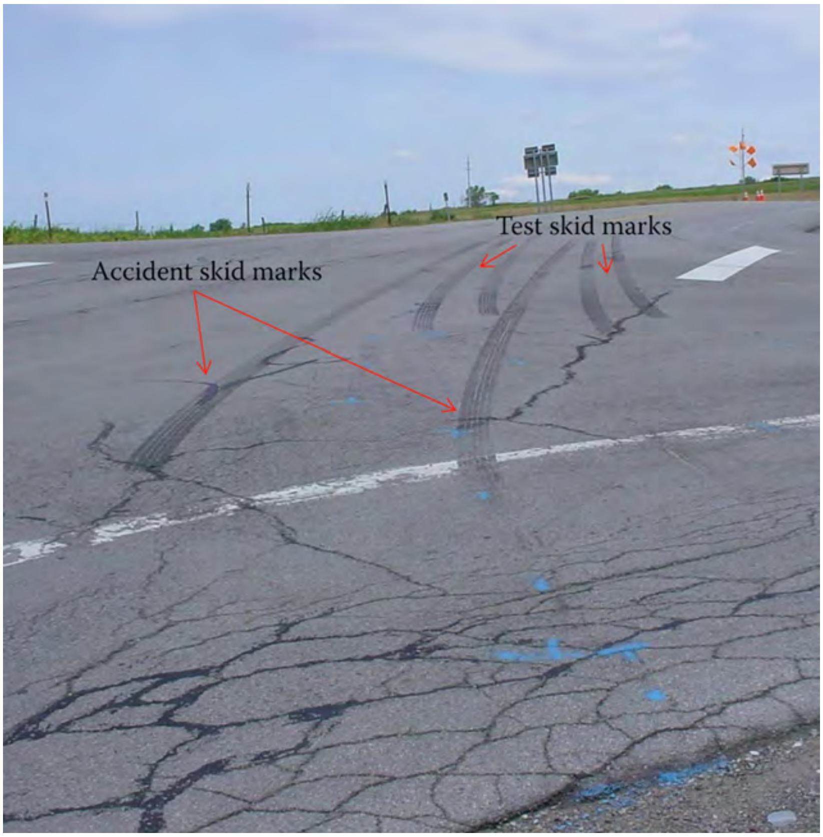


Figure 9.10 Skid mark analysis at an accident site. The longer skid marks are from the vehicle involved in the crash. The shorter sets of skid marks are from two test skids done by the state police at the crash site. Photo courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, MI.

Once the drag factor and the length of the skid marks are determined, the investigator then uses a specific mathematical formula derived from a series of physics equations to calculate the speed. Figure 9.10 shows accident vehicle skid marks (longer skids) and two sets of test skids at a crash site.

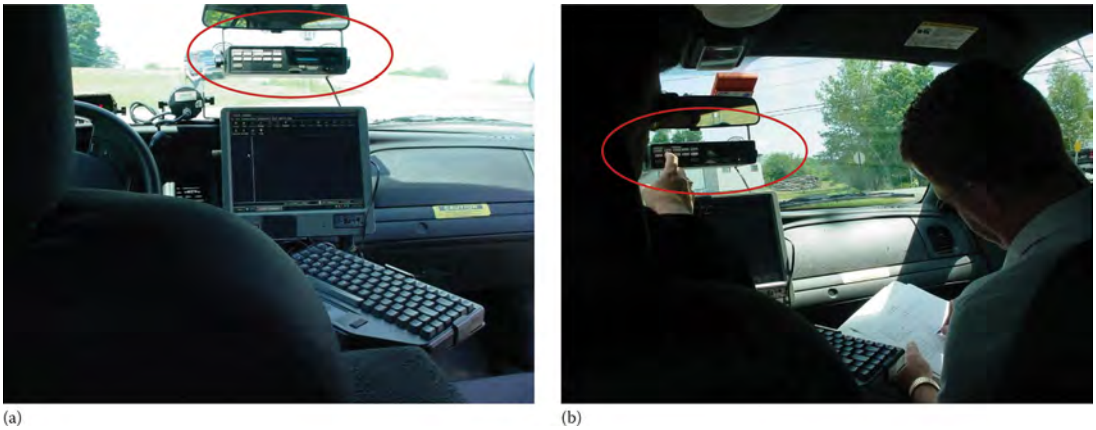


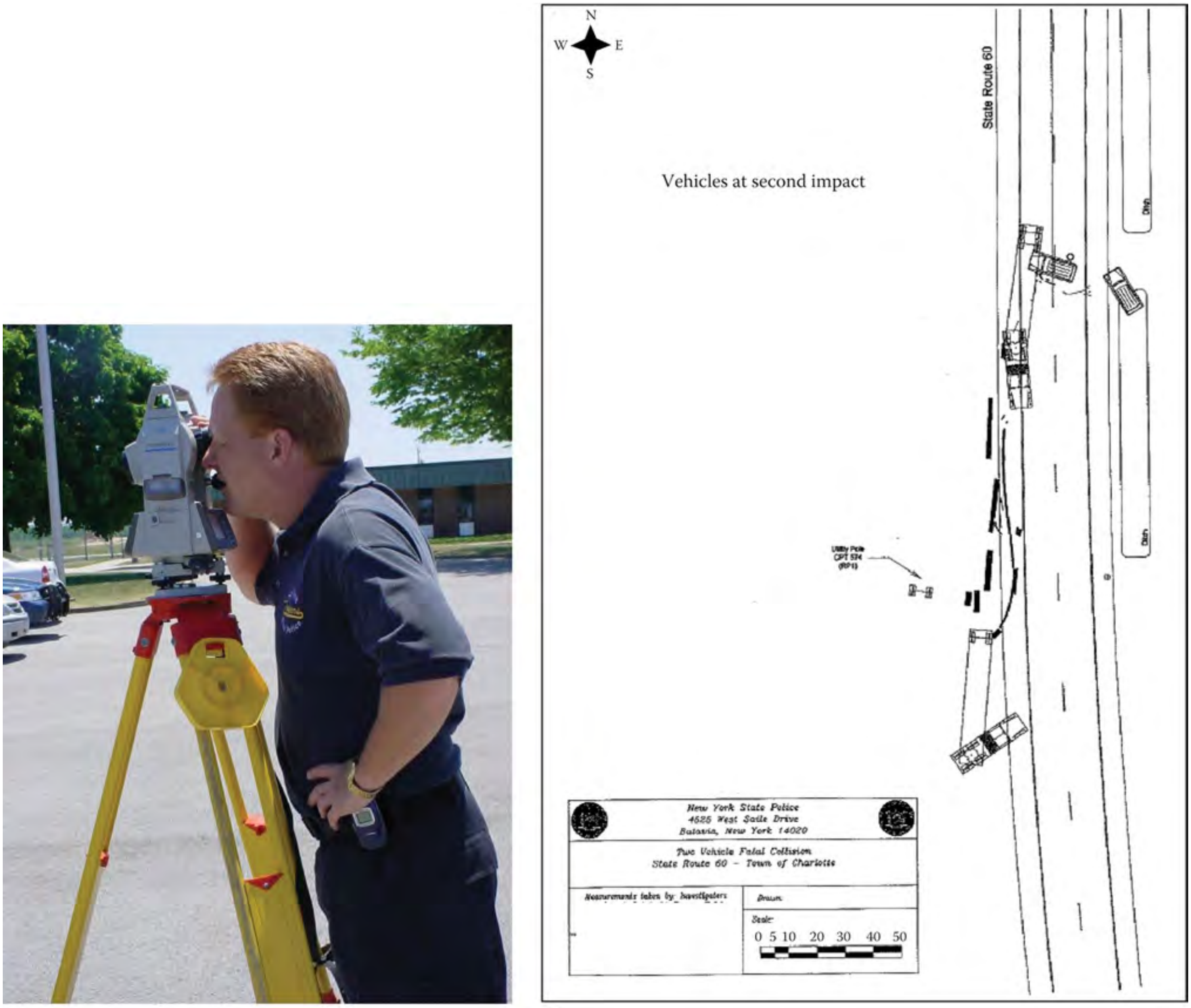
Figure 9.11 (a) Vericom VC3000 in police car. (b) VC3000 in use during test skid. Photo courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, MI.

There are essential tools used by law enforcement to take pertinent data at the scene that than can be analyzed later in the office. The most modern device is called the Vericom VC4000 Brake Test Computer, mounted in the test skid vehicle. This device measures the acceleration of the vehicle while it is moving and braking. The braking data produced are crucial for the investigator doing skid mark analysis. The VC4000 details the speed of the test run, the skidding distance, the total time the car was skidding and data about the drag factor (a ratio that indicates the frictional properties between the tires and the road) (Figure 9.11).

Another useful tool is the Sokkia Electronic Total Work Station (ETWS). This device looks similar to a surveying tripod that you may see out on the roadways. This tool is used by the accident investigator to get a precise location of any physical evidence at the crash location as well as the location of all involved parties and vehicles. It also records various characteristics of the roadway, from slope of the road to lane markings and width. Once all the data is retrieved from the scene, the investigator takes the information back to the station and downloads the data directly into a drawing program that produces a scale drawing of the crash site. This eliminates having to use tape measures and collect data by hand, an extremely time-consuming task. The total work station is a far more accurate way to take data and a real-time saver in the investigation (Figure 9.12).

Post-scene Analysis

In addition to completing the scale drawing of the crash site, the accident reconstructionist has additional detail work post-scene investigation. Interviews of parties involved as well as witnesses are analyzed. Evidence processed will either corroborate or clash with these statements. To verify the actual speeds at the site, skid mark data are inputted into formulas to determine speeds of the vehicles. *Yaw marks* are sometimes present at the accident scene. Yaw marks are special types of tire marks that are produced when a vehicle makes a sharp turn without braking, almost to the point of rolling the vehicle. The tire marks are made as the wheels are still turning, but the vehicle is moving laterally, trying to slide to the outside of the circle. Under normal driving conditions, the rear tires will track inside the front tires during turns. For example, during a left-hand turn, the rear


N
W
E
S
State Route 60
Vehicles at second impact
Ditch
Utility Pole
Ditch
New York State Police
4525 West Saile Drive
Batavia, New York 14020
Two Vehicle Fatal Collision
State Route 60 – Town of Charlotte
Measurements taken by Investigators
Drawn
Scale
0 5 10 20 30 40 50

(a) (b)

Figure 9.12 (a) The Sokkia Electronic Total Work Station. (b) Accident scale drawing. Photo courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, MI.

tires will appear to the left or inside the front tires. However, if a vehicle enters a turn too quickly or an operator over corrects, the rear tires will travel outside the front tires. It is during this time a vehicle is said to be in a *critical speed yaw*. This is evidenced by striations in the tire marks that are perpendicular to the direction of travel. In contrast, a regular skid mark has striations parallel to the direction of travel. If the vehicle continues to rotate, it is no longer said to be in a yaw, but now is a side skid. The tire marks deposited during a side skid must be calculated differently.

Figure 9.13 shows yaw marks made by a pickup truck traveling at approximately 100 mph on a winding road and losing control, sliding in one direction to one side of the road and then correcting and swerving to the opposite side of the road. The truck ended up flipping and hitting a tree. The driver and passenger did not survive.

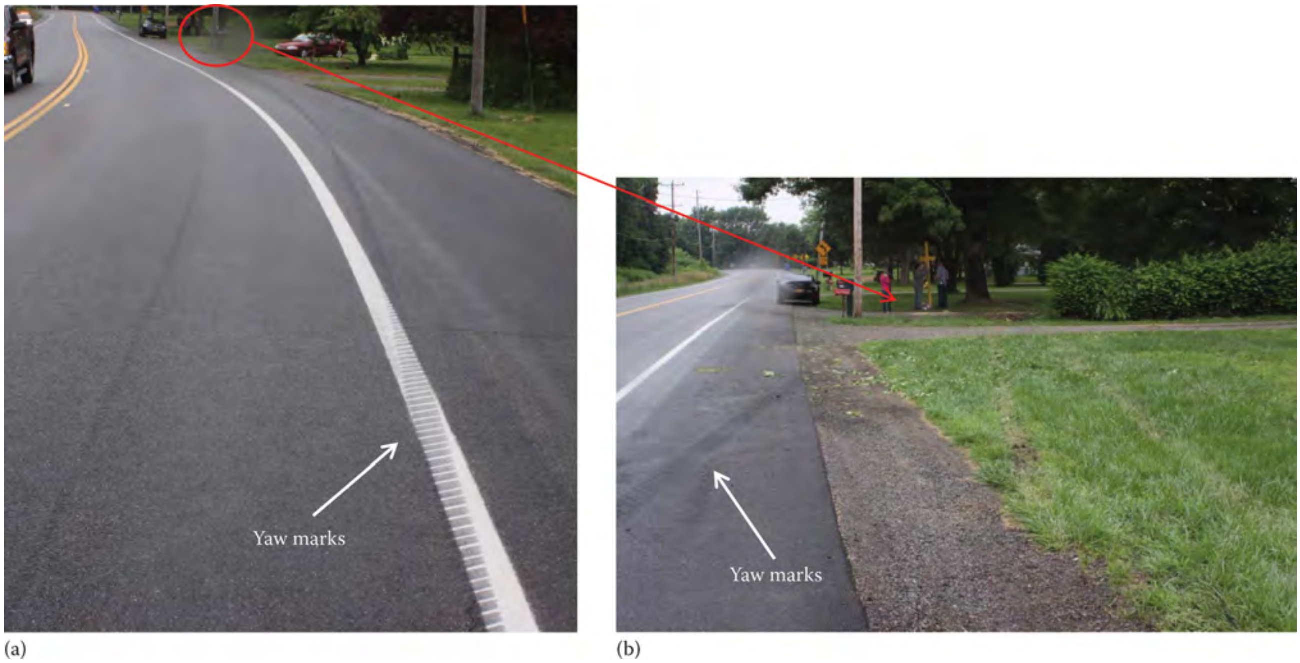


Figure 9.13 (a) Shows the truck yaw marks as the vehicle begins to slide off the road, failing to negotiate the curve. (b) Shows the yaw marks continuing off the road prior to impact into a tree. Photo courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett.

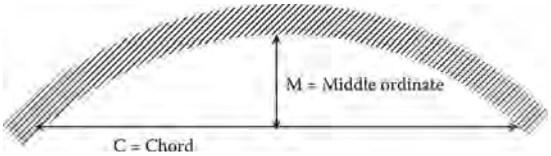


Figure 9.14 Measuring a yaw skid mark.

To determine the speed of the truck during the yaw maneuver, the accident investigator measures a chord line of the circle and then finds the length of the middle ordinate of the chord. This data is then inputted into a few formulas, which will calculate the absolute speed during the yaw (Figure 9.14).

Other aspects of the accident are explored. The make, model and year of the automobiles involved in the accident are researched looking for possible safety issues or recalls, and whether or not the owner serviced those recalls.

Towed vehicles are examined at the police garage for further evidence. There are a myriad of pieces to the accident puzzle, but a few of the things that are examined more closely in the garage are the restraint and safety systems (seatbelt, shoulder harness, air bags), the braking system of the vehicle and the headlights and taillights of the car. Evidence pertinent to not wearing a seatbelt are extensive damage to the dashboard and steering wheel of the vehicle as well as a seatbelt/shoulder harness with no burn mark or puckering that would show stress on the webbing of the straps. Figure 9.15 shows the front section of a small car that hit a pickup truck broadside. The occupant was not using the seatbelt/shoulder harness restraint mechanism and did not survive. The entire front interior of the car is pushed forward by the occupant's continuing forward motion after the vehicle itself had stopped.

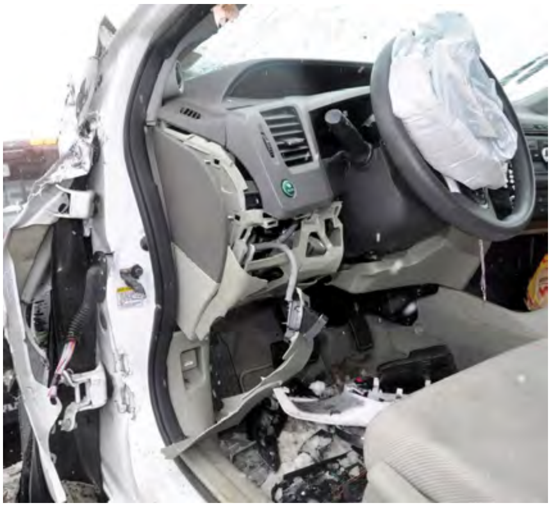
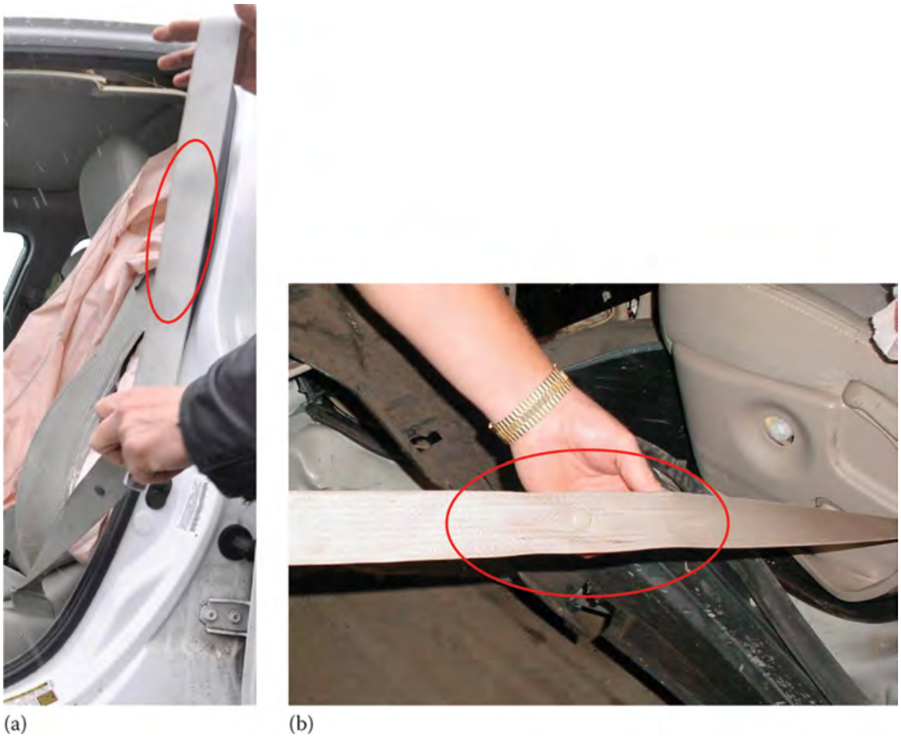


Figure 9.15 This photo shows damage to the dashboard and steering wheel of an automobile caused by an unrestrained driver. Photo courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett.



(a) (b)

Figure 9.16 (a) The shoulder harness has no discoloration due to stress or any puckering of the webbing material, indicating the driver was not wearing the restraint. The shoulder harness in (b) has discoloration of the material due to stress caused by restraining the driver.

The shoulder harness pictured in Figure 9.16a is from the same automobile. There are no indications of puckering or stress; therefore, the investigator concluded that the victim was not wearing a seatbelt. Figure 9.16b illustrates how a shoulder harness would look in a crash in which the driver was using the seatbelt mechanism. The signs of stress are indicated in the photo.

Modern vehicles are equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, a supplemental restraint device that rapidly takes up the excess slack in a safety belt if the vehicle is involved in a crash. Within the device, a small pyrotechnic fires and quickly spools the loose webbing to firmly hold occupants in place. Once fired, the seatbelt is locked in place. Once this happens, the seatbelt will not retract or extend. Evidence a seatbelt was being worn during a crash is shown by the belt laying loosely on the seat or the webbing cut by first responders. Evidence a seatbelt was not being worn during a crash is shown by the belt being locked tightly in the "B" pillar or in the seat anchor. For examples of post-crash seatbelt positions, see Figure 9.17.

When the wheels of the towed crash vehicles are dismantled, investigators can ascertain the conditions of the braking mechanisms. Mechanical failure can often contribute to or exacerbate a motor vehicle collision. If mechanical failure is found to be the fault of the owner due to lack of proper maintenance and driving an unsafe vehicle, possible criminal charges due to such negligence could be filed. Figures 9.18 and 9.19 show defective braking systems in vehicles that were involved in accidents. In Photo 9.18, the car's rear disc brakes had a defective brake rotor; the outer friction surface of the rotor is missing. As a result, the overall effectiveness of braking is reduced by approximately 20% for this particular vehicle. The percentage is determined by the amount of vehicle weight on each axle. In this case, the rear axle was responsible for 40% of the total vehicle weight; 20% for each brake. This has been present for some time based on the amount of brake dust and rust present on the rim. Interestingly, the vehicle passed a safety inspection about one and a half months prior to the crash. Either the brake failed very quickly or the inspection was shoddy.

Figure 9.19 illustrates defective rear drum brakes on an automobile that was involved in an accident. When the rear drum of one of the wheels was removed, the investigator discovered that the brake shoe surface was covered with brake fluid and debris. Throughout the entire braking mechanism, there was a heavy amount of brake fluid loss. Inspection of the other rear wheel of the same vehicle yielded less damage, but that brake also had a minor leak on one end and the

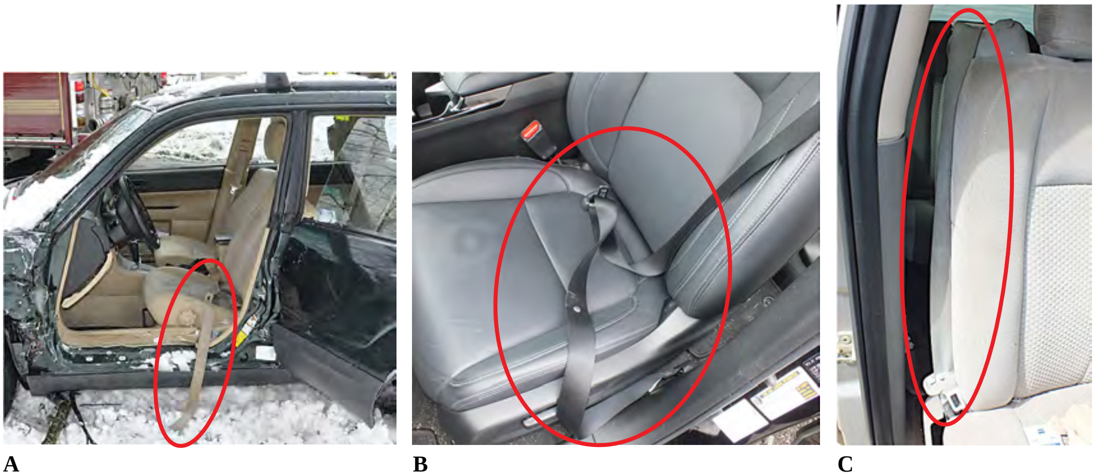


Figure 9.17 Photos A & B show evidence of seatbelt in use at time of crash. In A, the seatbelt had to be cut to remove the driver and in B, the seatbelt is loose and locked into position post crash. Photo C shows an unused seatbelt tight and locked into place post crash. Photos courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett.

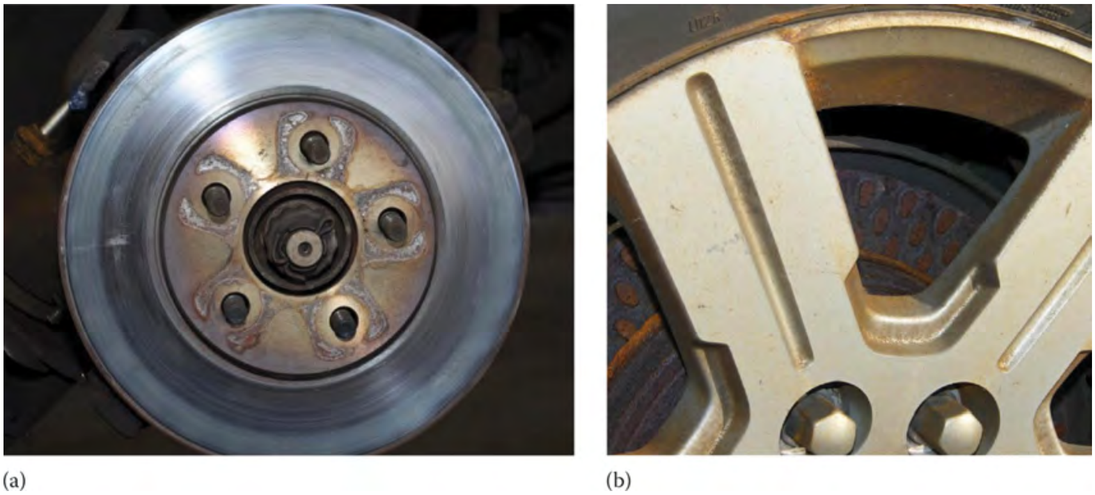


Figure 9.18 The picture (a) shows a disc brake rotor that is in good condition. The friction surface is intact and without rust and wear. The picture (b) is from an accident vehicle with defective rear disc brakes. The outer friction surface of the rotor is missing. Photo courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett.

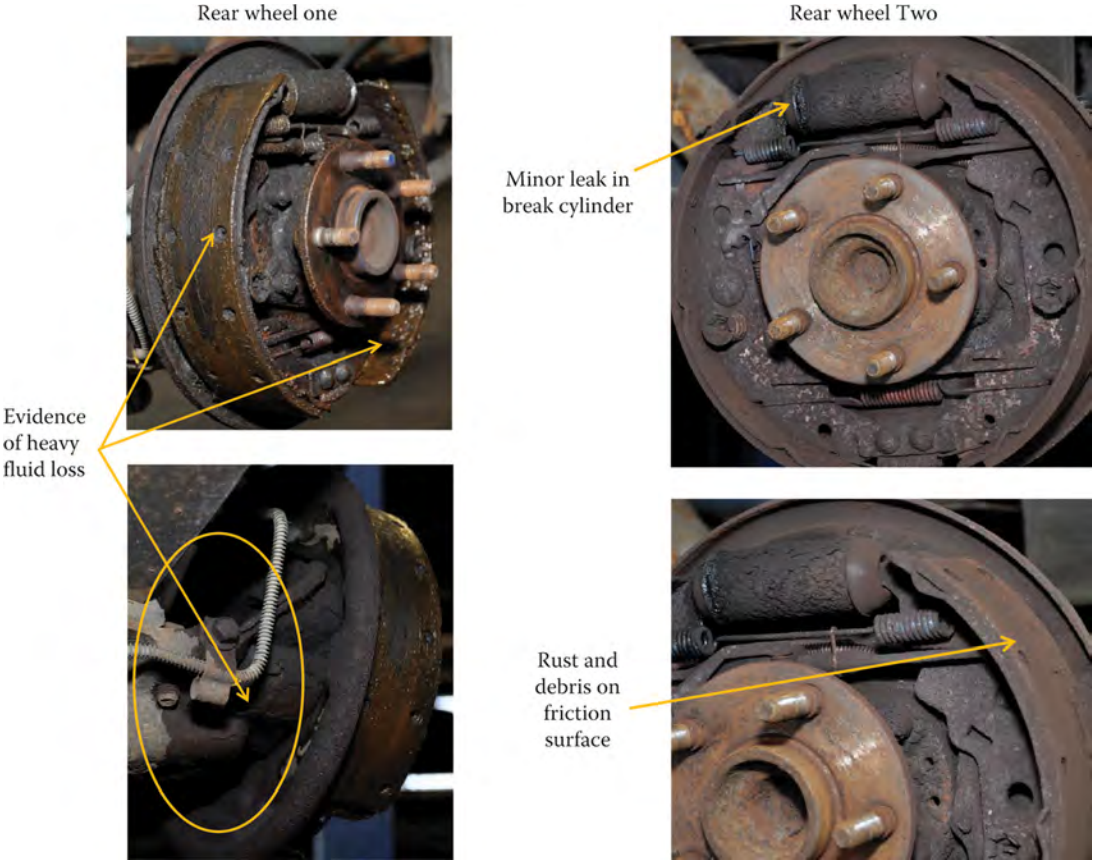

Rear wheel one
Rear wheel Two
Minor leak in break cylinder
Evidence of heavy fluid loss
Rust and debris on friction surface

Figure 9.19 These are photos of a car involved in an accident with defective rear drum brakes. The pictures on the left show extensive damage due to excessive loss of brake fluid and buildup of debris from the braking mechanism. The other wheel had less damage, but also was defective. Photo courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett.

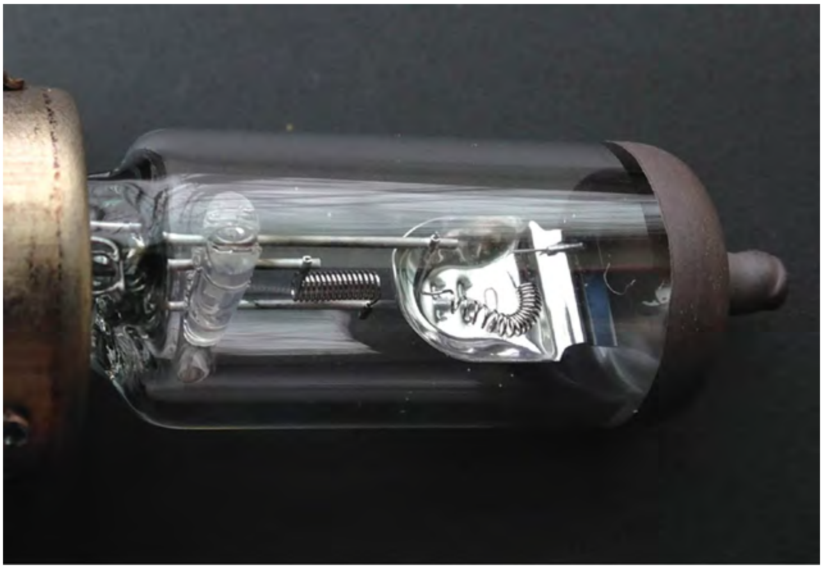


Figure 9.20 Dual filament bulb with the filament on the right showing hot shock and the filament on the left unaffected. This tells the investigator that the right filament was on at the time of the crash. Photo courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, MI.

friction surface was covered with rust and debris. This was deemed an underperforming brake as well due to the severe fluid loss on the other side of the axle. Damage to the braking system had been present for some time based on the amount of brake fluid covering every component, especially the friction surface of the drum and the friction surface of the brake shoes.

Working headlights, taillights, brake lights and turn signals are essential for safe operation of a vehicle. If the lights are not in working order or the driver does not use them, an accident can result. There are times in an investigation when it is important to determine whether the driver was using proper lighting when an accident occurred. What might be called in question is whether or not turn signals were used, and/or did the driver use high or low beam headlights at the time of the crash. An investigator can tell if the lights are on in a car or truck by closely examining the filament of the lightbulb. If the light was in use at the time of the collision, the filament will stretch and deform as a result of the rapid change in motion while the metal filament is hot. This is called *hot shock*. If the light is not on during a collision, the filament will be unchanged, showing the normal spring like coiling of the metal. A dual filament bulb of a headlight (high beam, low beam) is shown in Figure 9.20. One of the filaments exhibits hot shock and the other is unaffected. This gives evidence that the low beam headlight was in operation at the time of the crash and the high beam was not.

Additional Post-scene Analysis

The Mysterious "Black Box"

The term "black box" is simply another name for an airbag control module (ACM) in passenger cars and light trucks. Unlike an aircraft black box, which continuously records flight control systems and even sound, an airbag module is far less sophisticated and has a much shorter recording loop. An event data recorder (EDR) is located within an airbag module and records data from multiple sensors,

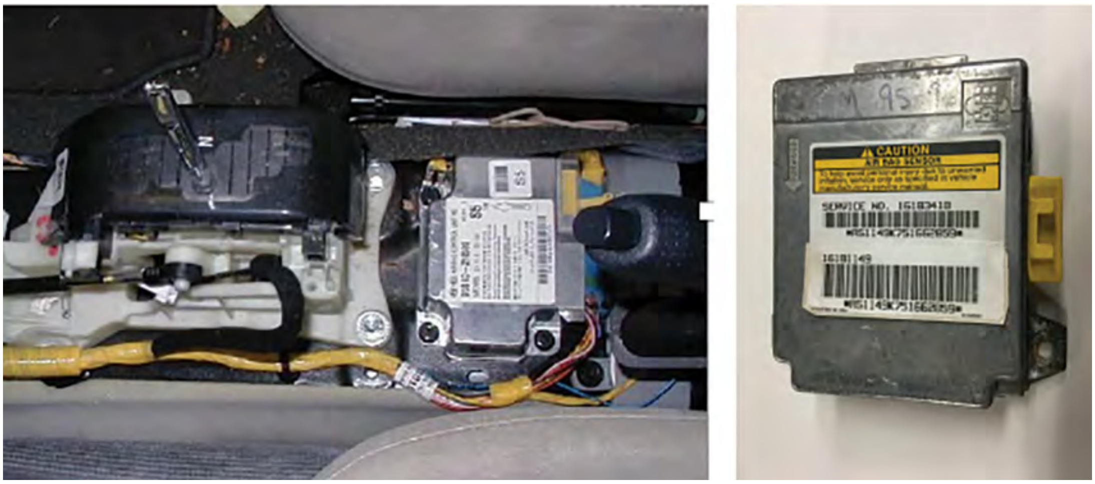


Figure 9.21 The event data recorder (EDR) shown on left in the console of a vehicle and on the right after removal from an automobile. Photos courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett.

internally and throughout the vehicle. Figure 9.21 shows a typical EDR inside and out of a vehicle. In the event of a collision, the EDR captures a specified amount of pre-crash data, which can be extremely valuable to an investigation.

The primary function of the ACM is to monitor and deploy the supplemental restraint system in motor vehicles. The secondary function is to provide collision related data if the module is equipped with an EDR. During the infancy of supplemental restraints (airbags and seatbelt pretensioners), data recorders were used by manufacturers to evaluate the effectiveness of their vehicle safety systems. Chevrolet and Ford were at the forefront of a movement to make this data available to law enforcement and private consultants.

Most EDRs operate on a continuous loop, which constantly overwrites itself as the vehicle is being driven. During a collision, the ACM senses a sudden change in vehicle speed and essentially “wakes up.” The EDR the captures a specified amount of pre-crash data and stores it internally. In lieu of a crash or other significant event, the EDR is not capturing or storing any vehicle data relative to operation.

Generally speaking, an EDR is capable of capturing two types of events: deployment level and non-deployment level events. A deployment level event occurs when the ACM determines that a crash is severe and that supplemental restraints are required to protect the vehicle occupants. Once captured by the EDR, these events are permanent and will not be overwritten. A non-deployment level event occurs when the ACM determines a crash is not serious and seatbelts will suffice. Supplemental restraints are not deployed. Once captured by the EDR, these events are not permanent and can be overwritten.

Stored events are recovered utilizing Bosch Crash Data Retrieval (CDR) hardware and software. The CDR equipment can either be connected to the vehicle’s diagnostic port or directly to the airbag module. The recovered data can then be imaged or copied (not downloaded) for further analysis. The data stored within the module remains and is unaltered.

As more manufactures began to make their data available, the NHTSA sponsored a working group tasked with studying EDRs. Following years of study and evaluation, NHTSA released a formal Notice of Proposed Rulemaking. The notice declared NHTSA’s intent to standardize EDRs.

In August 2006, NHTSA released its final ruling (49 CFR Part 563). The ruling consisted of a timeline for manufacturer compliance and the mandatory number of data points that must be reported. Since there was already an overwhelming trend for voluntary EDR installation, the ruling did not require manufacturers to install EDRs in vehicles produced for North America. Based on its analysis, NHTSA estimated that by 2010, over 85% of vehicles would already have EDRs installed in them. The mandate did, however, provide a minimum standard for the type of data that EDRs would be required to record. A total of 15 types of pre-crash data must be recorded for a minimum of 5 seconds, in half-second increments. The required crash data included:

- Change in speed (delta-V), longitudinal
- Maximum delta-V, longitudinal
- Time, maximum delta-V
- Vehicle speed
- Engine throttle, % full (accelerator pedal)
- Service brakes, on/off
- Ignition cycle, crash
- Ignition cycle, download
- Seatbelt status, driver
- Frontal airbag warning lamp
- Frontal airbag deployment time, driver (1st stage, in case of multi-stage airbags)
- Frontal airbag deployment time, right front passenger (1st stage, in case of multi-stage airbags)
- Multi-event, number of events (1 or 2). Crashes…..
- Time from event 1 to event 2
- Complete file recorded (yes or no)

In addition to the required data above, NHTSA also set standards for 30 other types of data if EDRs were voluntarily configured to record them. For example, if a manufacturer configured an EDR to record engine RPMs or ABS (anti-lock brake system) activity, then the EDR would have to record 5 seconds of those pre-crash data in half-second increments.

In addition to the requirement that all data be able to survive a 30 MPH barrier crash and be measured with defined precision, NHTSA also required that all manufacturers make their EDR data publicly available. As of October 2009, only General Motors, Ford and Daimler Chrysler had released all EDR data to be publicly read. Presently, Bosch Crash Data Retrieval (CDR) hardware and software can interface with and access nearly all vehicle EDR data, with the exception of Kia and Hyundai. Those particular manufacturers utilize separate systems, which comply with NHTSA requirements.

NHTSA has since updated its ruling (49 CFR Part 563 Update), which gave vehicle manufacturers until September 1, 2014 to be in compliance with the original ruling. Presently, all vehicles containing an EDR and manufactured for North America after September 2014, are following the current NHTSA standards.

Many law enforcement agencies (typically smaller departments) do not have the training and equipment required to image airbag modules. They rely on larger departments to assist, as necessary. Further, many departments have protocols and guidelines regarding the severity of accidents and when airbag modules will be imaged. Due to the severity of certain crashes, limited resources and time, many vehicles are not imaged by law enforcement.

EDR data provides an unbiased look at vehicle operation in the moments prior to a crash. The data can be utilized as part of a situationally complete reconstruction. It should not be used to replace a thorough investigation by an accident reconstructionist. All recovered data must be analyzed along with other physical evidence to truly understand how and why a crash occurred. EDR data is quickly becoming an extremely valuable piece of an overall investigation by an experienced reconstructionist.

Figure 9.22 shows actual data recovered from a vehicle's event data recorder. You can see that for the last 5 seconds before the collision, the car was traveling at an excessive speed and at full throttle. This Mazda was involved in a road race on the Long Island Expressway. The EDR data confirms this.

Other new technologies that give an accident reconstructionist a picture of what was happening at the time of a collision are global positioning system (GPS) and cell phones. GPS gives a picture of the general path of the vehicle and cell phone inspection can alert the investigator of any texting or manipulation of the phone while operating the motor vehicle leading to distracted driving.

Other aspects of an investigation might be related to intoxication. In 2013, greater than 10,000 individuals were killed in alcohol impaired motor vehicle accidents. Of the total number of motor vehicle traffic fatalities in the United States, alcohol-related driving accounted for approximately 31%. Driving under the influence leading to death or serious injury can lead to criminal charges against a driver. Some states have expanded the DUI laws to include driving under the influence of drugs, leading to impaired ability while operating a vehicle. Determination of DUI is usually done at the scene with various field tests of sobriety done by the trained police officer. Blood tests usually confirm whether or not the individual was driving over the legal limit of alcohol in their system. Chapter 20 discusses driving under the influence in more detail.

Road and weather conditions can be major factors in motor vehicle accidents. Drivers need to react with caution when the weather turns detrimental to driving. Slowing down and keeping distance between other vehicles are always suggested

Time Stamp (sec)	**Speed, Vehicle Indicated (MPH [km/h])**	**Engine Throttle, % full**	**Service Brake (On, Off)**
–5.0	104 [168]	92	Off
–4.5	105 [169]	95	Off
–4.0	105 [169]	97	Off
–3.5	105 [169]	100	Off
–3.0	105 [169]	100	Off
–2.5	105 [169]	100	Off
–2.0	106 [170]	100	Off
–1.5	106 [170]	100	Off
–1.0	105 [169]	100	Off
–0.5	105 [169]	100	Off
–0.0	105 [169]	100	Off

Figure 9.22 Data retrieved from a car driving on an expressway five seconds before a crash. It was determined by the 100% throttle and excessive speed (~105 mph) along with other crash scene evidence, that the driver was involved in a road race. Courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett.

Figure 9.23 Multivehicle chain reaction incident on Interstate 94 in Michigan.

by state police who patrol the highways. Sometimes, a combination of weather and road conditions can precipitate a chain reaction multiple vehicle pileup, as evidenced by the 193 vehicle calamity on Interstate 94 near Kalamazoo, Michigan, in January 2015. Miraculously, there was only one fatality. Trucks caught fire including one semi-truck loaded with fireworks that erupted at the scene (see Figure 9.23).

Something for You to Do

How long does it take a human to react if they are aware of a possible collision? How long does it take to react to something seen by an individual? There is much to be processed when an event happens. First, the body physiologically must process seeing the event, and then the brain alerts the body to make the proper response. This takes time. A very simple experiment can be done to ascertain the approximate reaction time of an individual to a very simple event. You will need a partner, a 30 cm (12 in.) ruler and a calculator. Have your partner hold the ruler vertically at the 30 cm end. Place your thumb and index finger on either side of the ruler on the opposite end, at the 1 cm mark. Your partner should drop the ruler without warning and you catch it with your fingers, noting the *centimeter* distance on the ruler. Subtract 1 from this distance (you started at 1) and record the dropping distance (y). Repeat four more times and find the average dropping distance from the five trials. Convert the distance in centimeters to meters by dividing by 100. Using your dropping distance (y) in *meters* and the derived physics formula in the following, calculate t or your *reaction time* to seeing and catching the falling object.

$$\text{Use ``}g\text{'' } (\text{acceleration due to gravity}) = 9.8\ \text{m}/\text{s}^2 \quad t = \sqrt{\frac{2(y)}{g}}$$

Summary

Forensic engineering is a broad area of forensic investigation. It can be subdivided into two more specific areas, structural forensic engineering and accident reconstruction. The common thread in both areas is that they both extensively employ physics principles and mathematics in analyzing an event to ascertain causality. Both the forensic engineer and the accident reconstructionist need specialized training to determine how the incident occurred in addition to how it could have been prevented. Liability and criminal negligence determination are common to both areas.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. A person who examines structural evidence from an accident looking for defects in design or construction would be called a(n)
   a. Accident reconstructionist
   b. Scientist
   c. Engineer
   d. Forensic engineer
2. Secondary defects in products are those that
   a. Occur during design
   b. Occur during construction
   c. Occur after use
   d. Occur during manufacturing
3. Primary defects in products are due to
   a. Wear and tear of normal use
   b. Poor design or manufacture
   c. Misuse of the product by the consumer
   d. Poor construction only
4. The primary difference between a scientist and an engineer is
   a. The scientist makes the design and the engineer builds it
   b. The scientist explains the laws nature and the engineer applies the laws of nature
   c. The scientist does experiments and the engineer checks them for accuracy
   d. The scientist designs models of nature and the engineer tests those models
5. Which of the following investigations would not normally be done by a forensic engineer?
   a. Multicar collision
   b. Collapse of the roof of a grocery store
   c. Explosion on a manufacturing line
   d. Roadway bridge failure
6. Which of the following investigations would be done by an accident reconstructionist?
   a. Multicar collision
   b. Collapse of the roof of a grocery store
   c. Explosion on a manufacturing line
   d. Roadway bridge failure

7. By analyzing the skid marks in a skid to stop accident, the investigator can determine the
   a. Defects in braking system
   b. Weight of the vehicle
   c. Speed at the beginning of the skid
   d. Average speed during the skid
8. During a yaw, the driver is not using
   a. The gas pedal
   b. The brakes
   c. The steering wheel
   d. The seatbelt
9. Seatbelt negligence (not wearing one) in an accident is evidenced by
   a. Absence of burn marks, puckering or stress on the seatbelt
   b. Absence of line marks on the seatbelt
   c. The spring mechanism no longer works
   d. The seatbelt not extended, it is in the resting position
10. Hot shock affects the
   a. Brake rotors in the rear wheels
   b. Radiator of the car engine
   c. Filament of lightbulbs in use
   d. Filament of lightbulbs not in use

True or False

11. On average, the forensic engineer has 5–10 years of engineering field experience.
12. Liability is an issue in building collapse, but never in motor vehicle accidents.
13. The Tacoma Narrows Bridge collapse was brought on by winds that caused it to resonate.
14. Vehicular accidents can be caused by negligence in maintenance.
15. Black box data retrieval systems were mandated for all vehicles in the year 2010.
16. Over 50,000 fatal accidents per year in the United States are caused by alcohol-impaired drivers.
17. Global positioning system is of no use in accident investigations.
18. The space shuttle *Challenger* accident was due design flaws in the O-ring mechanism.
19. The Hyatt Regency Walkway's original design was flawed from the start.
20. Most vehicle accidents are investigated by specially trained forensic engineers.

Short Answer Questions

21. Briefly describe the difference between the duties of a scientist and those of an engineer.
22. Detail the basic protocol for the accident reconstructionist at the scene.

23. Under what circumstances would a forensic engineer be asked to investigate a motor vehicle accident?
24. What types of physical laws of nature apply to forensic engineering (including accident investigations)? Give examples for each.
25. Describe how are normal skid marks different from yaw marks? Include a sketch of each type.

Match Each Definition with the Term

26. A person who constructs a viable explanation to a phenomena
27. A person who designs devices used for the betterment of society
28. A number that gives an indication of the roughness of a surface
29. The side slipping of a tire as it makes a tight turn without braking
30. The study of matter and energy in the universe

a. Drag factor
b. Engineer
c. Physics
d. Scientist
e. Yaw

Further Reading

Rivers, R. W. (2004). *Basic Physics, Notes for Traffic Crash and Investigators and Reconstructionists*. Charles C Thomas, Publisher LTD, Springfield, IL.

Van Kirk, D. J. (2001). *Vehicular Accident Investigation and Reconstruction*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

On the Web

Hyatt Regency Hotel NIST Report: https://www.nist.gov/publications/investigation-kansas-city-hyatt-regency-walkways-collapse-nbs-bss-143

Indiana State Fair Stage Collapse Report: https://www.wittobriens.com/resources/stage-structure-collapses-at-indiana-state-fair .

National Academy of Forensic Engineers: http://www.nafe.org/.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration: http://www.nhtsa.gov/.

NHTSA Regulations on EDRs: https://www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/fmvss/EDRFRIA.pdf

Q & A about EDRs from NHTSA: https://www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/fmvss/EDR_QAs_11Aug2006.pdf

Space Shuttle Challenger Accident—Rogers Commission Report: http://science.ksc.nasa.gov/shuttle/missions/51-l/docs/rogers-commission/table-of-contents.html.

Space Shuttle Challenger Report Appendix by Richard P. Feynman: http://www.ralentz.com/old/space/feynman-report.html.

Tacoma Narrows Bridge Collapse Video: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j-zczJXSxnw.

Case Study

Case Study: How an Event Retrieval Device (ERD) Can Aid an Accident Investigation

The investigation involved two vehicle collisions resulting in personal injury to the operators of both vehicles. Despite the fact that the collision occurred in the morning, there were no witnesses reported.

Vehicle 1 – 2008 Pontiac G6

- 45-year-old female stated that she was driving to work
- Proceeding through a green traffic light, with the right-of-way
- Stated she operating at or near the posted speed limit
- Stated she never saw the other vehicle prior to collision

Vehicle 2 – 2008 Chevrolet Cobalt

- 84-year-old female never made a statement prior to her death
- Unknown speed or traffic light status prior to collision
- Determined from family members that she was going to turn left, which was her usual route to church

Vehicle 1 Table: Airbag Module Download Pre-Crash Data

Parameter	−5 sec	−4 sec	−3 sec	−2 sec	−1 sec
Vehicle Speed (MPH)	34	34	35	36	37
Engine Speed (RPM)	1472	1600	1536	1600	1600
Percent Throttle	27	27	30	31	31
Brake Switch Circuit State	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Accelerator Pedal Position (percent)	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Antilock Braking System Active (if Equipped)	No	No	No	No	No

The imaging of the ACMs for both vehicles revealed the operator of Vehicle 1 was being truthful regarding the collision. She was driving below the posted speed limit and there was no pre-impact braking. Further, her foot never moved from the accelerator pedal providing corroboration that she never saw the other vehicle prior to impact.

Vehicle 2 Table: Airbag Module Download Pre-Crash Data

Parameter	-5 sec	-4 sec	-3 sec	-2 sec	-1 sec
Vehicle Speed (MPH)	44	44	45	45	50
Engine Speed (RPM)	1536	1856	2880	3250	4480
Percent Throttle	28	32	59	100	100
Brake Switch Circuit State	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Accelerator Pedal Position (percent)	6	13	67	100	100
Antilock Braking System Active (if Equipped)	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Lateral Acceleration (feet/s^2 (If Equipped)	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid

The imaging also revealed the operator of Vehicle 2 appeared to be driving normally 4 seconds prior to impact. However, 3 seconds prior to impact her driving habits changed. The accelerator pedal was pushed to the floor and the vehicle exceeded the posted speed limit. Considering the operator's age (84 years old), it is more likely that she suffered a medical condition rather than driving recklessly.

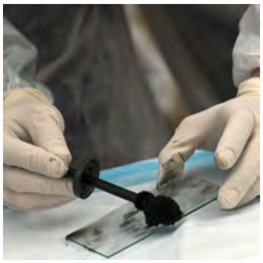
Conclusion

In this case, imaging the airbag modules helped to answer previously unknown questions regarding causation and brought closure to family members of the deceased. It was determined post collision that indeed the driver of vehicle 2 had a seizure while driving, causing the sudden increase in acceleration through the intersection, culminating with vehicle 1 crashing into her.

(Case Study courtesy of Christopher A. Puckett)

PART III

Patterns and Impressions



Contract
Power of attor
LAST WILL AND TESTA

10

Fingerprints and Other Impressions

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define dactyloscopy and ridgeology
2. To be able to describe the main events in the history of fingerprint science
3. To be able to name and describe the underlying principles that govern fingerprint examination
4. To be able to recognize the different types of fingerprint patterns
5. To be able to describe the three levels of data derived from fingerprint examination

6. To be able to name and describe the common methods for physical and chemical detection of fingerprints
7. To be able to describe cyanoacrylate fuming and the use of lasers in fingerprint development
8. To be able to describe how IAFIS works
9. To be able to describe some of the latest digital methods of fingerprint comparison and identification

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction: A Note on Pattern Evidence*
- *Quest for a Reliable Method of Personal Identification*
- *Origin of Fingerprints*
- *Anatomy of Fingerprints*
  - *Fingerprint Patterns*
  - *Arches*
  - *Loops*
  - *Whorls*
- *Detection and Visualization of Fingerprints*
  - *Chemical Methods of Fingerprint Visualization*
  - *Cyanoacrylate (Super Glue®) Fuming*
  - *Fluorescence of Fingerprints*
- *Comparison of Fingerprints*
  - *Classification of Sets of Fingerprints*
  - *Primary Classification*
- *Comparison of Single Fingerprints*
- *Automated Fingerprint Identification Systems (AFIS and IAFIS)*
- *Common Questions about Fingerprints*
- *Other Impressions: Footwear and Tire Treads*
  - *Footwear Impressions*
  - *Individual or Class Evidence*
  - *How Footwear Impressions are Formed*
  - *How Footwear Impressions are Preserved*
  - *Tire Tread Impressions*
  - *Development of Tire Treads*
  - *Identification Markings on Tire Sidewalls*
  - *Evidential Value of Tire Impressions*
  - *Capturing Tire Impressions*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Match Each Definition with the Term*
- *References*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Anthropometry: A method of measurement of human body characteristics used to show variation or to differentiate between two individuals.

Arch: One of the three general types of fingerprint patterns that has no deltas.

Casting: Preservation of a three-dimensional impression by molding with dental stone.

Chemical fingerprinting: A method of enhancing latent fingerprints by reacting chemicals with the fingerprint residue.

Dactyloscopy: The science of friction ridge comparison.

Dermal papillae: The layer of cells in the skin between the dermis and epidermis.

Dermis: The innermost portion of the skin, which contains blood vessels, nerves, hair follicles and sweat glands.

Epidermis: The outermost portion of the skin, which contains five translucent layers of skin and no blood vessels.

Fingerprint dusting: A method of enhancing latent fingerprints by applying powders to the print residues, making them visible.

Fluorescence: The emission of electromagnetic radiation (usually light) from an atom that has absorbed energy from another source, causing electrons to shift energy levels in the atom.

Friction ridges: Raised portions of the epidermis that contain pores and allow skin to have gripping properties.

IAFIS: Integrated Automated Fingerprint Identification System (IAFIS) is the National fingerprint database maintained by the FBI.

Impression: The remnant shape of one object after contacting another that is movable.

Latent fingerprint: A fingerprint that is not visible to the unaided eye.

Loop: One of the three general types of fingerprint patterns. A loop has one delta.

Minutiae: Minutiae are the various patterns formed by friction ridges as part of the fingerprint.

Patent fingerprint: A visible fingerprint deposited via a substrate such as blood, grease or paint.

Plastic fingerprint: A visible fingerprint impression deposited by contact with a soft material.

Sublimation: A change of phase in which a solid material absorbs heat and transforms directly into a gas without going through a liquid phase.

Whorl: One of the three general types of fingerprint patterns. A whorl has two deltas.

Acronyms

AFIS	Automated Fingerprint Identification System
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
IAFIS	Integrated Automated Fingerprint Identification System

NCIC	National Crime Information Center
NIST	National Institute for Standards and Technology
UV	Ultraviolet

Introduction: A Note on Pattern Evidence

This chapter is about fingerprints and impression evidence. The latter covers footwear impressions and tire tread impressions. These types of evidence as well as handwriting, firearms toolmarks and hair analysis, which are covered in subsequent chapters in this book, are examples of *pattern evidence*. The analysis and interpretation of these types of evidence rely on patterns of markings that appear on the surface of an object. In the case of fingerprints, hairs and handwriting, there is apparently some genetic basis for their characteristics. In the case of firearms and toolmarks, the markings are applied to the evidence from random, microscopic imperfections in the tool that is used to manufacture a weapon or a wire cutter or other source of this type of evidence. In the case of footwear and tire treads, the evidence is the random pattern of wear and tear that shoes and tires undergo with use. Because of the high degree of variation in fingerprints (as well as palm and footprints), handwriting, footwear, tire treads and toolmarks (of which firearm evidence is a subset), it has long been felt that these types of evidence have the potential to be individualized to a particular source. In the United States and other countries, courts have, for decades, accepted scientific testimony that a fingerprint or shoeprint or tire tread or a sample of handwriting or a bullet can be traced back to one particular source. The Forensic Science Committee of the National Academy of Sciences emphasized that these conclusions have not been scientifically verified to a degree that would assure scientific validity. Since the report came out in 2009, there have been many new research studies that attempt to validate these conclusions. The status of these evidence types at this point is that they are still being admitted into court as individual evidence, pending the outcome of the research. The reader should, therefore, keep this in mind when evaluating the fingerprint and impression evidence that is discussed in this chapter as well as handwriting, hairs and firearms and toolmark evidence that is presented elsewhere in this book. More information about the NAS report is given in Chapters 1 and 3.

One of the major goals of the criminal and civil investigation process is to be able to identify people, especially victims and suspects, but also the owners of various objects and the authors of relevant documents. One of the best-known and accepted methods of personal identification is by matching fingerprints and other friction ridges. *Friction ridges* are the raised portions of the outside layer of skin that form rows that curve and loop across the finger. The pattern these ridges make varies from one person to another and from finger to finger on a single individual. The science of comparison of friction ridge structures such as fingerprints is called *dactyloscopy*. Dactyloscopy employs the science of ridge analysis to analyze and compare fingerprints. Although the use of fingerprints for personal identification has been around for thousands of years, it is still evolving. Scientists are actively researching more objective methods of comparing fingerprints and new ways of visualizing them. To some extent, the principles discussed in this chapter also apply to other areas of the body that contain friction ridges. These include the palms of the hands, the soles of the feet and even lip prints. However, these prints are much less commonly encountered than fingerprints and will not be discussed further in this chapter.

Quest for a Reliable Method of Personal Identification

There is anecdotal evidence that Chinese people used fingerprints as a form of signature for legal documents more than three thousand years ago. It is not known whether this was done for the purpose of identifying the author of the document and there is no surviving evidence that any basic principles were developed that guided people in identifying fingerprints or comparing them.

The first organized use of friction ridges for identification occurred in the late 1870s when William Herschel, a British official posted in India, started requiring that any contracts involving indigenous people contain imprints of their entire hands. Again there is no evidence that he had developed any systematic way of linking these handprints to a particular person.

The first article that discussed the use of fingerprints for identification purposes was published in *Nature* in 1880 by Henry Fauld. He was a missionary in Japan working in a hospital when he discovered that there were unique patterns to human fingerprints. He tried to chemically alter his own fingerprints but the original pattern grew back. He demonstrated that fingerprint impressions could be taken by dipping the fingers in ink and suggested that they could eventually be collected from crime scenes. He even used fingerprints to help the Tokyo police in a burglary investigation. Fauld was interested in doing more research and eventually appealed for funds to the famous anthropologist, Charles Darwin. Darwin passed on the appeal to his nephew, Sir Francis Galton. Galton did not fund Fauld, but did take credit for Fauld's discoveries.

During this same time period, in 1883, a French police expert, Alphonse Bertillion, devised the first systematic method of personal identification. His system relied on a carefully constructed and detailed description of a person. This was called the portrait parlé and was accompanied by full-length photographs and precise measurements of the body called *anthropometry* (an-thro-póm-e-tree). Bertillionage, as the complete system was called, was based on the unproven premise that, after the age of about 18, the human skeleton stops growing. In addition, it was thought that all skeletons were different and this was reflected in the uniqueness of the body measurements that he prescribed. Bertillionage was considered a reliable method of personal identification into the beginning of the twentieth century. However, in 1903 the Will West affair signaled the demise of Bertillionage. Will West was sentenced to Leavenworth Prison in Kansas after being convicted of a crime. At that time, the prison system routinely collected portraits parlé on its prisoners to keep track of them. When West was being processed at the prison, officials found that there already was a William West serving time in Leavenworth. His body measurements were virtually the same as the incoming prisoner and in fact the two men looked like twins. Their fingerprints were very different, however. This case showed that Bertillionage could not be relied upon as a means of personal identification, and it quickly fell out of favor and was replaced by fingerprints.

Meanwhile, Sir Francis Galton published a book titled *Finger Prints*. This book can be found online at www.galton.org. One of the major contributions of this book was that it proposed that all fingerprint patterns could be put into one of three categories: loops, arches and whorls. Galton also asserted that all fingerprints were unique and that they did not change throughout life.

Once Galton suggested that fingerprints fell into certain patterns, the next step was the development of a classification system. The goal of such a system was to put a set of fingerprints from one person into one of a small number of groups. This would make searching through many sets of fingerprints easier. If a person were fingerprinted and the police wanted to know if that person was already in a database, the classification of fingerprint sets would make that feasible. As it turned out, two independent classification systems were developed at about the same time. Juan Vucetich, an Argentine police officer, became interested in Galton's work and developed the first classification system. It has been continuously refined and is still widely used today in South and Central America. In England, Sir Edward Henry developed a somewhat different classification system. It too has survived and, although it has been modified, is used today in the United States and much of Europe.

The original Henry system used five classifications to put a set of 10 fingerprints into one of thousands of classes. This worked well until the number of sets of fingerprints in each class became so large that it ceased to be practical as a searching tool. In recent years, the FBI has added additional classifications to increase the number of classes. The classifications developed by Henry used certain characteristics of each fingerprint. These included designating which fingers had loops, arches and whorls and how many ridges were in a particular pattern. The Henry classification system is discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

Origin of Fingerprints

The purpose of fingerprints as well as the friction ridges on the palms and soles of the feet is to provide a textured surface for gripping and holding on to objects. Fingerprints arise from the skin, particularly the *dermal papillae*, the layer of cells between the *epidermis* (the outermost skin layer) and the *dermis* (the inner layer of the skin). These layers can be seen in Figure 10.1. Fingerprint ridges begin forming when the fetus is in the womb at about the 8th week of gestation and are fully formed by the 17th week. From that point on, barring artificial means of alteration, fingerprints do not change throughout life except to grow larger as the body grows.

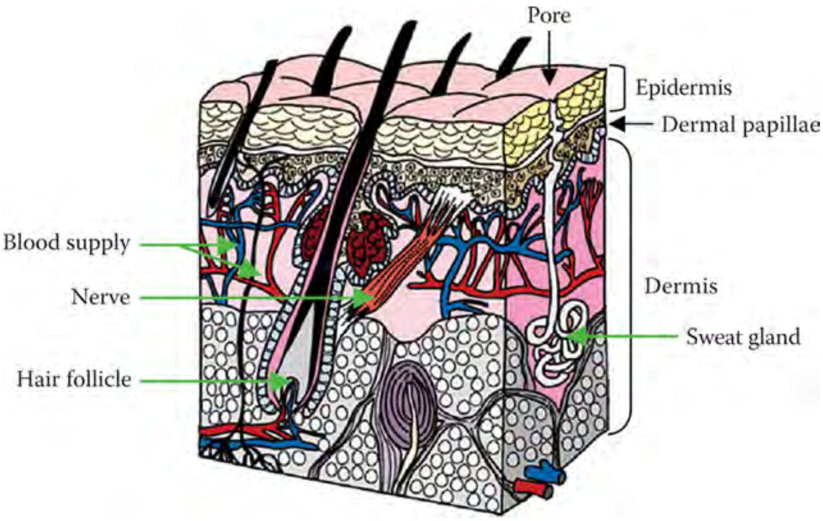
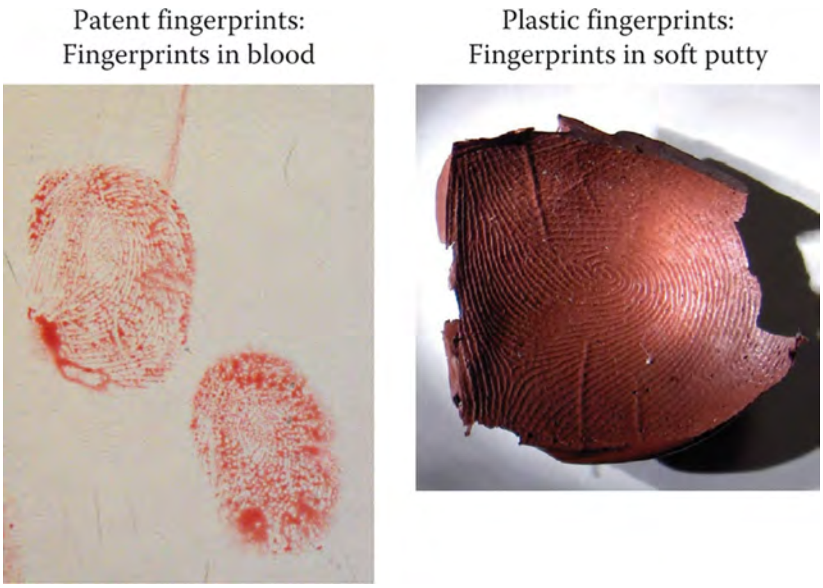


Figure 10.1 Cross section of layers of skin. Courtesy of Max Houck.



Patent fingerprints: Fingerprints in blood

Plastic fingerprints: Fingerprints in soft putty

Figure 10.2 Examples of patent and plastic fingerprints.

As the friction ridges develop, perspiration glands are formed. These terminate in rows of sweat pores that form on the fingerprint ridges. As perspiration is discharged from the sweat glands, it exits through the pores onto the surface of the ridges. Perspiration residue along with sweat, skin cells, proteins, fats and other materials is deposited when a finger touches a surface. Since these materials are normally invisible, this image is called a *latent fingerprint*. A fingerprint that is deposited in paint or blood on a surface and is readily visible is called a *patent print*. A fingerprint that is formed in a soft material such as putty is called a *plastic print*. Figure 10.2 shows examples of patent and plastic prints.

Anatomy of Fingerprints

For the purposes of dactyloscopy, a fingerprint consists of the friction ridge skin of the last joint on each finger taken from cuticle to cuticle. Although other joints of the fingers as well as palms and foot soles may have unique ridge patterns, these have not been studied rigorously. Each fingerprint consists of a set of ridges of various shapes and sizes. The major types are

Bifurcations: Ridges that split into two ridges
Ending ridge: A simple straight ridge
Dot: Tiny round ridges
Short ridge: A small, isolated segment of ridge
Enclosure: A ridge that forks and forms a complete circle and then becomes a single ridge again
Trifurcation: A ridge that splits into three ridges

Figure 10.3 shows some of the major ridge characteristics.

Taken together, the ridge characteristics of a fingerprint are called *minutiae*. The types and locations of specific minutiae impart the uniqueness that is the

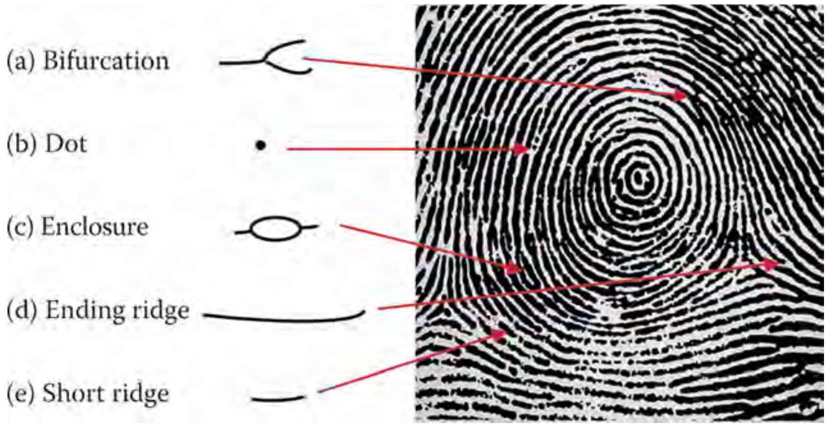


Figure 10.3 Examples of ridge characteristics or minutiae.

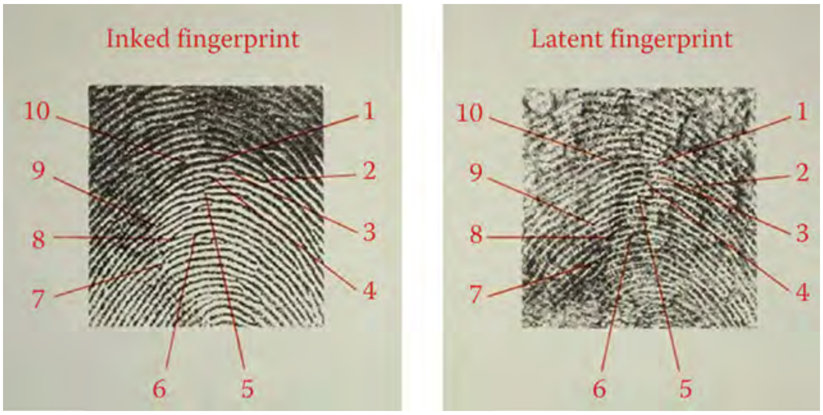


Figure 10.4 Comparison of an unknown latent fingerprint with an inked print taken from a suspect. The lines and numbers show some of the corresponding ridges in each print. Courtesy of David Zauner, Indianapolis–Marion County Forensic Services Agency, Indianapolis, IN.

basis for comparison of fingerprints. Figure 10.4 shows a point-by-point comparison between a fingerprint lifted from a crime scene and one taken from a set of inked prints of the suspect.

Fingerprint Patterns

The friction ridges in each finger form a pattern. There are three major pattern types. These are the *loop*, the *arch* and the *whorl*. Arches, loops and whorls are categorized based on the presence or absence of deltas. Friction ridges that curve and change direction form a triangular intersection called the delta. An arch has no deltas, a loop has one and a whorl has two. Figure 10.5 shows two deltas and the center of the curve, called the core.

The three major pattern types are further subdivided into a total of eight patterns. Every fingerprint forms one of the eight patterns. Arches are divided into plain and tented arches. Radial and ulnar loops characterize the loop category. The whorls have four patterns: plain whorls, central pocket loop whorls, double loop whorls and accidental whorls.

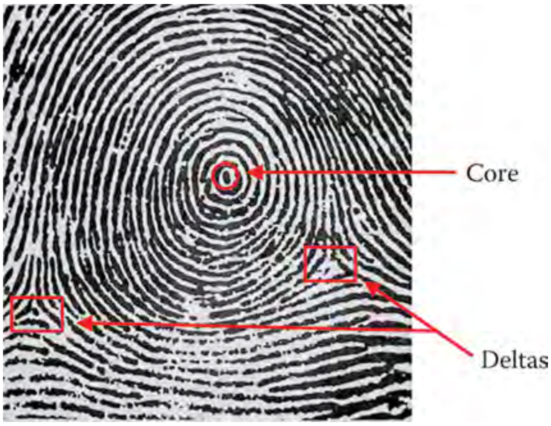


Figure 10.5 Fingerprint deltas and core. Courtesy of David Zauner, Indianapolis–Marion County Forensic Services Agency, Indianapolis, IN.

Arches

The two types of arches, plain and tented, can be seen in Figure 10.6 along with the other six patterns. These patterns differ in the severity of the slope of the arch. The tented arch has ridges with a nearly vertical slope, whereas plain arches have more gently sloping ridges. Arches comprise about 5% of fingerprints.

Loops

Figure 10.6 also shows examples of the two types of loop prints—loop patterns, radial loops and ulnar loops. To prevent ambiguity and increase specificity, the direction that the loop opens refers to the major bones of the forearm—the radius and the ulna (see Figure 10.7). The radius is on the thumb side of the forearm and

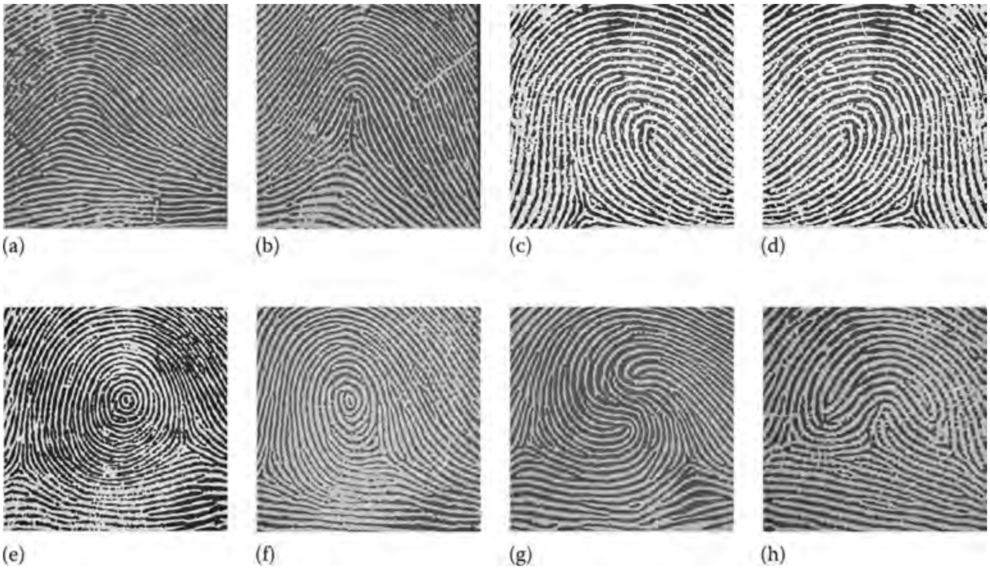


Figure 10.6 The eight fingerprint patterns: (a) plain arch, (b) tented arch, (c) radial loop—left hand, (d) ulnar loop—left hand, (e) plain whorl, (f) central pocket loop whorl, (g) double loop whorl and (h) accidental whorl. Courtesy of David Zauner, Indianapolis–Marion County Forensic Services Agency, Indianapolis, IN.

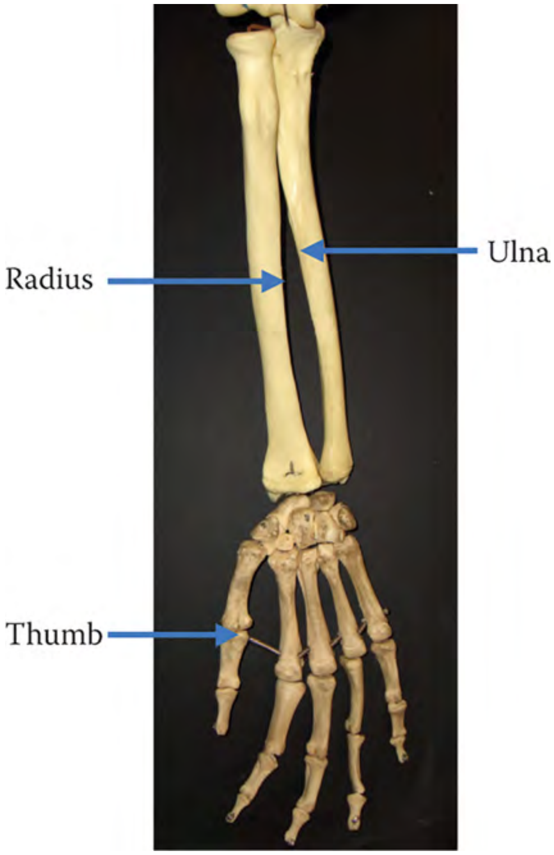
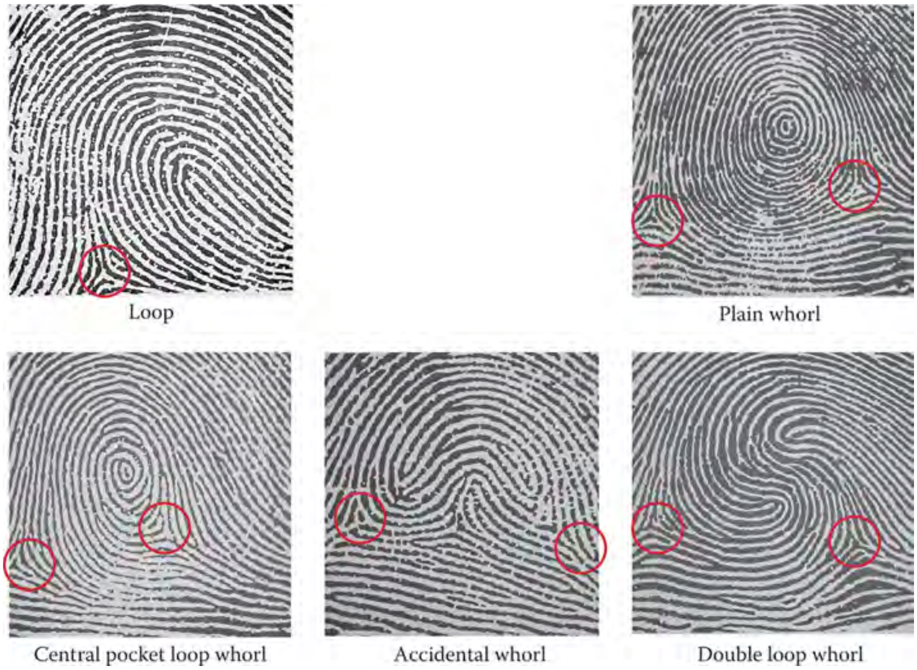


Figure 10.7 The bones of the human arm.

the ulna is on the little finger side. If a loop on a finger opens in the direction of the thumb, it is a radial loop. If it opens toward the little finger, it is ulnar. This means that a radial loop on a finger on the left hand will open in the opposite direction of a radial loop on a finger of the right hand. The curvatures of the friction ridges that constitute a loop produce the triangularly shaped delta where the ridges change direction. Loop patterns have only one delta (see Figure 10.8) and make up nearly two-thirds of all fingerprints.

Whorls

Whorl patterns make up the other 30% of fingerprints. There are four types of whorl patterns: plain, double loop, central pocket loop and accidental. Examples of these four patterns are shown in the second row of fingerprints in Figure 10.6. The plain whorl has many circular ridges and looks somewhat like a pond after a pebble has been dropped in it. A central pocket loop looks somewhat like a loop print with a small whorl in the middle. A double loop contains two overlapping loops that open in opposite directions. An accidental whorl is the catchall for patterns that do not fit any of the others or that are made up of two types of the other patterns (except for a plain arch). Characteristic of all whorls is that they have two deltas as part of the pattern, as illustrated in Figure 10.8.


Loop

Plain whorl

Central pocket loop whorl

Accidental whorl

Double loop whorl

Figure 10.8 The location of the delta on fingerprint loops and whorls. The circles note the locations of the deltas formed by friction ridges that run parallel and then diverge and flow in separate directions, leaving a triangle-shaped pattern. Loops can be identified by having one delta, whereas whorls characteristically have two deltas. Courtesy of David Zauner, Indianapolis–Marion County Forensic Services Agency, Indianapolis, IN.

Detection and Visualization of Fingerprints

Fingerprints can be deposited on a wide variety of surfaces at a crime scene. That is why fingerprint technicians spend so much time searching a scene to recover them. Even criminals who wear gloves at a crime scene may leave fingerprints. Gloves may slip off or be taken off for one reason or another. It may even be possible for a glove to leave an image of its outer surface on an object.

Patent and *plastic fingerprints* are generally easy to discover as they have been either left in paint or some other medium or they have been impressed into a material such as putty. Thus, the major challenge for the fingerprint technician lies in discovering and visualizing latent prints. The science of visualization has been changing rapidly in recent years with many new chemical and physical methods being continually being developed and revised.

Locating and visualizing fingerprints may be done in one step or two. For example, a recent development in locating fingerprints takes advantage of the ability of fingerprint residues to reflect ultraviolet light in a manner that is different from the surrounding surface. The Reflected Ultraviolet Imaging System consists of a “gun” that aims UV light at a nonabsorbent surface such as glass or painted wood. UV light strikes the surface and then is reflected back to the receiver. The fingerprint image is then enhanced and converted to a visible image. This method is used only for locating prints. They will still have to be visualized using another method. Other methods such as *fingerprint dusting* using powders and cyanoacrylate (Super Glue®) fuming using chemicals are often used to locate and visualize latent prints in one step.

The method used to detect a latent fingerprint depends on the type of surface. Smooth, nonporous surfaces can be easily dusted with fingerprint powders or cyanoacrylate fumed. There are a large number of commercially available fingerprint powders that come in a wide variety of colors. These are applied with camel's hair or nylon brushes that have very soft bristles. A colored powder is chosen such that its color contrasts with the color of the surface being dusted. For surfaces that have fine texture such as some plastics and hides, magnetic powders are often used with magnetic brushes. The brush is moved across the surface of the object without touching it. This allows the powder to cling to the surface of the fingerprint residues without getting into the cracks in the surface.

Chemical Methods of Fingerprint Visualization

Table 10.1 lists common surfaces on which fingerprints may be successfully visualized and the type of reagents and conditions that are used for visualization.

There are a large number of chemical methods used to visualize fingerprints on various surfaces. Developing new chemical methods is one of the most active areas of fingerprint research. These methods of *chemical fingerprinting* are based on reactions between latent fingerprint residues and certain chemical compounds. The oldest chemical method is iodine fuming. Iodine is a solid at room temperature. When heated, it *sublimes* (from the root word *sublimation*); it becomes a vapor without first becoming a liquid. When iodine fumes are exposed to fingerprint residues, specifically the lipids or fats in the residue, they react to form a reddish-brown image of the fingerprint. This image is only temporary due to the fact that the iodine will continually sublime and evaporate as a gas into the air. Therefore, the visualized prints must be photographed soon after exposure to iodine. Sometimes treatment with a starch solution will fix the iodine to the fingerprint to preserve it, but in any case a photograph should be made as soon as the iodine makes the print visible. Caution must be taken with iodine fuming as the iodine gas is extremely toxic. Exhaust fume hoods are used for iodine processing.

Another older method for developing fingerprints is silver nitrate. Silver ions in solution react with chloride ions present in the sweat residue from a fingerprint and form silver chloride as shown in Equation 10.1:

$$\mathrm{Ag^+ + Cl^- \rightarrow AgCl} \tag{10.1}$$

TABLE 10.1
Various Chemical Fingerprint Detection Reagents and the Type of Surface on Which They Can be Used

Method	Surfaces	Precautions
Ninhydrin	Porous surfaces such as paper	Avoid contact with powder Avoid heat or sparks
Physical developer	Porous objects	Numerous safety precautions
Iodine	Large surfaces like entire walls	Only visible for a few hours
Super glue fuming	Almost any surface	Fumes are irritating but not toxic
DFO	Paper	None

Silver chloride is a white, insoluble powder. It is unstable in the presence of light, which will reduce the silver ion to silver metal as shown in Equation 10.2:

$$2\text{AgCl} + \text{light} \rightarrow 2\text{Ag} + \text{Cl}_2 \qquad (10.2)$$

Silver metal is a grayish solid. Because silver nitrate originally had to be applied as an aqueous solution, it was not used where water could damage the surface. This limited its use as a fingerprint developer. A vast improvement to silver nitrate is physical developer. This is a silver-based product that contains a reducing agent. It can be used on similar surfaces to those used with silver nitrate, but can also be used on surfaces that had been wet at one time.

Perhaps the most popular chemical method of fingerprint visualization is ninhydrin. Ninhydrin is an excellent reagent for developing fingerprint images on porous surfaces such as paper. It reacts with amino acids present in the fingerprint to form a colored compound known as Ruhemann's purple. Ninhydrin is sprayed directly onto a surface. At room temperature, it may take a couple of hours for prints to appear and weak prints may take more than one day. Heating the surface to about 100°C will hasten the reaction. Figure 10.9 shows a fingerprint that was developed by ninhydrin.

Cyanoacrylate (Super Glue®) Fuming

In 1982, some Japanese scientists were experimenting with a cyanoacrylate ester that they had used to make a new type of glue. They heated some of the glue in a hood and when they came back later they found that glassware in the hood had visible fingerprints. Furthermore, these whitish prints were very stable and virtually impossible to remove. The scientists determined that the cyanoacrylate fumes had condensed preferentially on the fingerprint ridges—and Super Glue fuming was born.

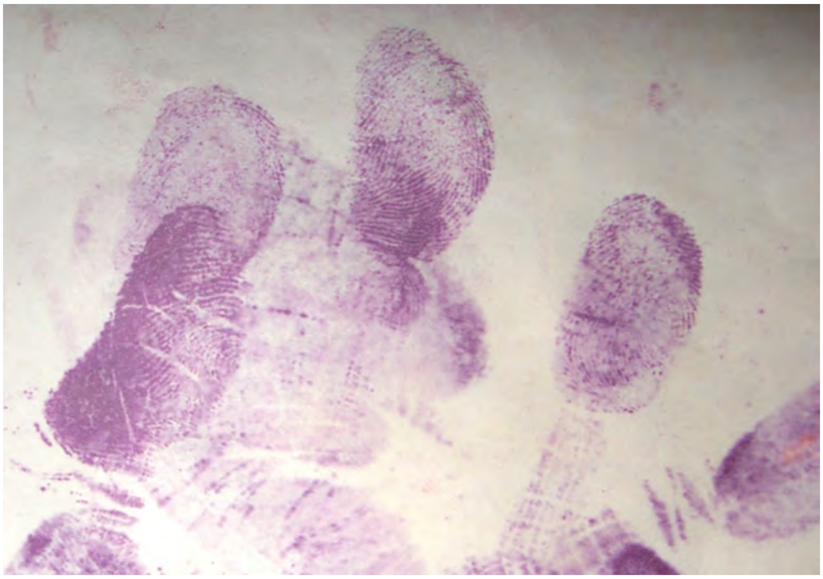


Figure 10.9 These fingerprints on paper were developed using ninhydrin.

Cyanoacrylate reacts with the trace amino acids, proteins and fatty acids from fingerprint residue. When the liquid is gently heated in a humid environment, the gaseous form of cyanoacrylate will bond with the residues to form a white precipitate on the friction ridges of the print. The addition of moisture speeds up the process, so most Super Glue chambers have a water source present in the chamber.

Today many forensic science laboratories use tanks where Super Glue fuming can be done on many different types of objects. There are also small portable wands that can be used to fume small areas. Some kits have been developed that can fume the entire inside of an automobile. The prints visualized by cyanoacrylate are rock-hard and nearly impossible to remove. This is actually a great advantage over other chemical methods of fingerprint development because the fumed prints can be treated with powders or other chemicals to increase the contrast between the print and the surface on which it is found. If the secondary treatment does not work, it can be wiped away and another method can then be tried.

Fluorescence of Fingerprints

Around the time that cyanoacrylate fuming was being developed, it was discovered that fingerprint residues contain several substances that will fluoresce when exposed to certain wavelengths of light. *Fluorescence* is the emission of electromagnetic radiation (usually light) from an atom that has absorbed energy from another source, causing electrons to shift energy levels in the atom. This shifting from one electron level to another and back again involves first energy absorption by an electron, then energy emission, at a different wavelength, as it returns to its original state. The energy emitted can be detected as various colors of light in fluoresced fingerprints.

One problem with fluorescence is that the concentrations of fingerprint residues are sometimes low and thus, very strong light sources are needed to provide enough energy to induce fluorescence. The first attempts to observe native fluorescence from fingerprints employed an argon ion laser. Some components of fingerprints fluoresce when exposed to this greenish light. However, lasers cannot cause fluorescence in many fingerprints because the fluorescing materials are too sparse.

After cyanoacrylate fuming was developed, forensic scientists took advantage of the near indestructibility of the fumed prints. The images could be treated with liquid fluorescent dyes such as Rhodamine 6G. The dye is applied to the Super Glued image and then the excess is washed off. Green argon laser light is aimed at the print. The dye absorbs the light and then fluoresces, emitting yellow light. Figure 10.10 shows a fingerprint on the butt of a rifle. The rifle is fumed with Super Glue and then Rhodamine 6G added. A laser is aimed at the print and a picture is taken of the fluoresced print using a special filter on the camera that blocks out the laser light.

Since laser fingerprint development was pioneered by the argon laser and Rhodamine 6G, lasers have been replaced by alternate light sources. These are powerful lamps that use filters to shine one wavelength of light on a fingerprint. Rhodamine 6G remains the laser dye of choice in examining fluoresced prints. This has now become one of the most popular methods of fingerprint development in forensic science laboratories today.

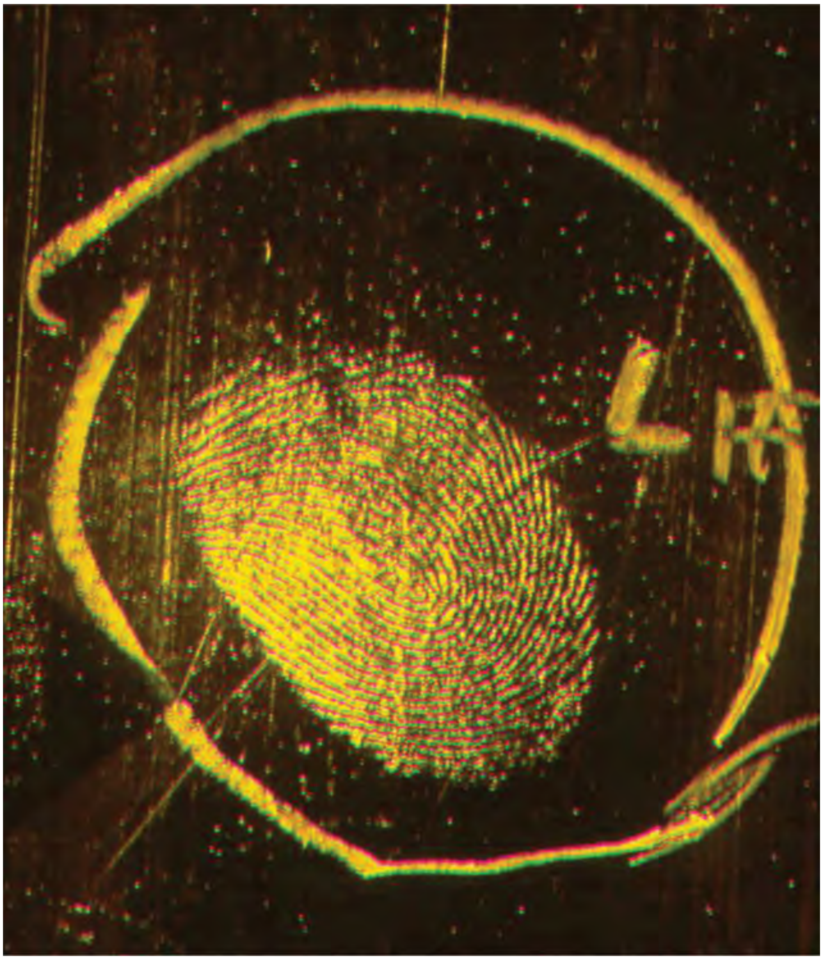
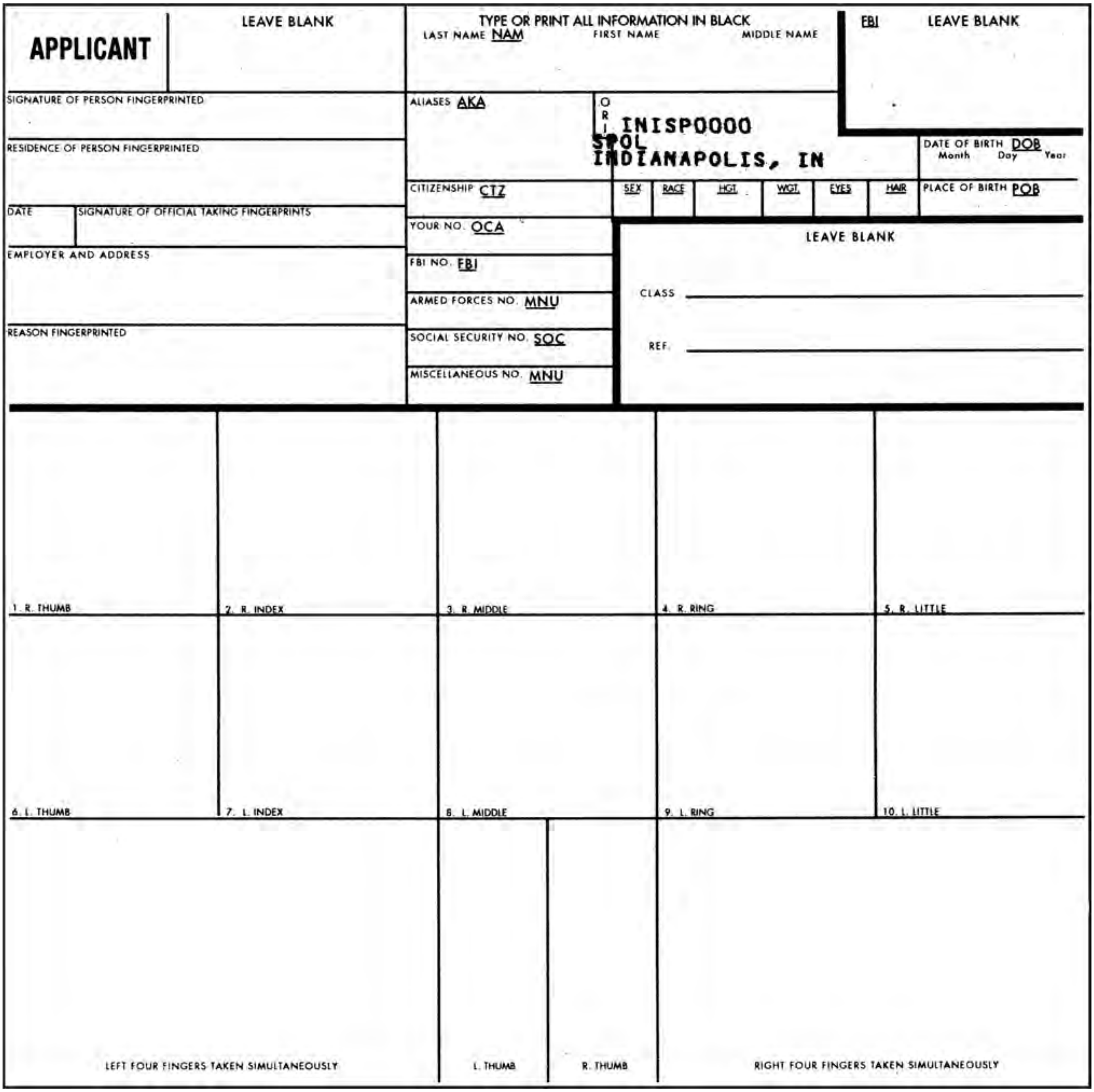


Figure 10.10 This print is on the butt of a rifle. It was first treated with Super Glue and then Rhodamine 6G, a dye. An argon laser was used to visualize the print. The dye caused the print to fluoresce with a yellow color.

Comparison of Fingerprints

The purpose of developing or visualizing latent fingerprints is to be able to compare them to fingerprint images taken from an individual who is a suspect in a criminal investigation. Known fingerprints are collected from a subject on a 10-print card. This card is used universally to gather known fingerprints. A 10-print card is shown in Figure 10.11. It has space for information about the subject. There is a block for the rolled print of each finger. To collect the print, each finger is rolled in printer's ink from cuticle to cuticle and then rolled out into the proper box on the card. The 10 blocks start with the right thumb and proceed to the right little finger in the top row and then the left thumb through the left little finger on the bottom row. Below these 10 blocks are spaces for tap prints. The four fingers of each hand are tapped in the printer's ink and then tapped into the proper block on the card. Tap prints are also made of each thumb.

Beginning in the 1990s, many law enforcement agencies began replacing the inked 10-print card with computer images of fingerprints. The digital method



APPLICANT

LEAVE BLANK

TYPE OR PRINT ALL INFORMATION IN BLACK

LAST NAME NAM FIRST NAME MIDDLE NAME

FBI LEAVE BLANK

SIGNATURE OF PERSON FINGERPRINTED

ALIASES AKA

ORI INISP0000
ISPOL
INDIANAPOLIS, IN

RESIDENCE OF PERSON FINGERPRINTED

DATE OF BIRTH DOB Month Day Year

CITIZENSHIP CTZ

SEX RACE HGT WGT EYES HAIR

PLACE OF BIRTH POB

DATE

SIGNATURE OF OFFICIAL TAKING FINGERPRINTS

YOUR NO. OCA

LEAVE BLANK

EMPLOYER AND ADDRESS

FBI NO. FBI

ARMED FORCES NO. MNU

CLASS

REF.

REASON FINGERPRINTED

SOCIAL SECURITY NO. SOC

MISCELLANEOUS NO. MNU

1. R. THUMB
2. R. INDEX
3. R. MIDDLE
4. R. RING
5. R. LITTLE
6. L. THUMB
7. L. INDEX
8. L. MIDDLE
9. L. RING
10. L. LITTLE

LEFT FOUR FINGERS TAKEN SIMULTANEOUSLY

L. THUMB

R. THUMB

RIGHT FOUR FINGERS TAKEN SIMULTANEOUSLY

Figure 10.11 A 10-print fingerprint card. Courtesy of the Indiana State Police, Indianapolis, IN.

called Live Scan compiles images of the friction ridges in a manner similar to the inking procedure, except that the fingerprints are "rolled" onto a scanning bed linked to a computer and a digital 10-print card is instantly compiled and downloaded to a fingerprint database. Obvious advantages of this modern method for storing fingerprint records are the virtually instantaneous recording of the fingerprints into the database and the absence of smudging and damaging of fingerprints rolled in printer's ink (see Figure 10.12).

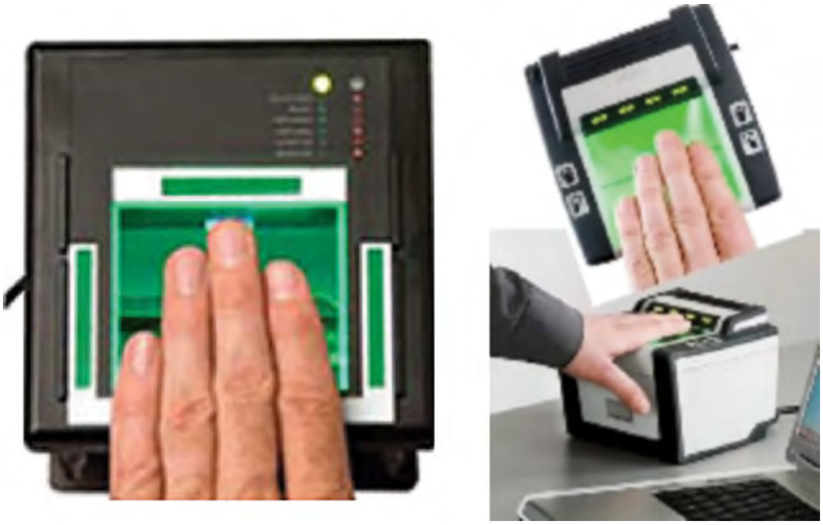


Figure 10.12 Digital Fingerprinting using Live Scan fingerprint scanner.

Classification of Sets of Fingerprints

There are two types of fingerprint comparisons. The first is used when the goal is to identify a particular person from his or her fingerprints. In this case, a complete set of inked fingerprints is taken and sent to a database such as the one at the FBI, which maintains many millions of sets of prints. It would be impossible to manually compare the submitted set of prints to so many sets in the database. The way this is handled is by using a classification system. The one adopted and developed by the FBI is widely used by fingerprint laboratories in the United States today. It is based on the original Henry system. The Henry system used several methods of classifying prints (Table 10.2). Each one was based on a different set of characteristics. Letter and number symbols were used to describe the type of each classification and the end result looked like a fraction containing a series of numbers and letters in the numerator and denominator. A description of the complete system is beyond the scope of this book, but the primary classification will be described to illustrate how the Henry system (and the FBI system) operates.

TABLE 10.2
Henry Classification System Using Whorls

	Right Hand					Left Hand				
Finger	Thumb	Index Finger	Middle Finger	Ring Finger	Little Finger	Thumb	Index Finger	Middle Finger	Ring Finger	Little Finger
Digit number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Henry value	16	16	8	8	4	4	2	2	1	1

Primary Classification

Take another look at the 10-print fingerprint card in Figure 10.11. Each of the 10 boxes at the top is assigned a number. The boxes across the top containing the right-hand fingerprints are given the numbers 1 through 5 and the ones below containing the left-hand prints are numbered 6 through 10. Each finger is examined and its type (arch, loop or whorl) is determined. For the purpose of this classification, any print that is a plain whorl, double loop, central pocket loop or accidental is considered to be a whorl. In the primary classification, only whorls are counted. Each box that has a whorl print gets a value. If there is a whorl in boxes 1 or 2, the value is 16; in 3 or 4, the value is 8; in 5 or 6, the value is 4; in 7 or 8, the value is 2; in 9 or 10, the value is 1 (see Table 10.2).

To get the primary classification, the values of all of the even-numbered boxes containing whorls are added together and then 1 is added to the total. This is the numerator of the fraction. The values of the odd-numbered fingers containing whorls are added together and then 1 is added to the total. This is the denominator of the classification. Note the following formula:

Henry Classification Formula

$$\frac{\text{Even Digits Henry Value} + 1}{\text{Odd Digits Henry Value} + 1}\ \textbf{OR}\ \frac{\text{R Index} + \text{R Ring} + \text{L Thumb} + \text{L Middle} + \text{L Little} + 1}{\text{R Thumb} + \text{R Middle} + \text{R Little} + \text{L Index} + \text{L Ring} + 1}$$

Example Problem:

Right thumb = radial loop
Right index = radial loop
Right middle = plain whorl
Right ring = tented arch
Right little = double loop
Left thumb = plain whorl
Left index = ulnar loop
Left middle = accidental
Left ring = ulnar loop
Left little = plain whorl

Whorl prints are on finger numbers 3, 5, 6, 8, 10. The even-numbered fingers containing whorls receive the following values:

$$6 = 4$$

$$8 = 2$$

$$10 = 1$$

The numerator of the fraction would be: 4 + 2 + 1 + 1 = 8

The odd-number fingers containing whorls get the following values:

$$3 = 8$$

$$5 = 4$$

The denominator of the fraction would be 8 + 4 + 1 = 13

$$\textbf{OR}\ \frac{0+0+4+2+1+1=8}{0+8+4+0+0+1=13}$$

The primary classification would then be

$$\frac{8}{13}$$

Careful examination of the Henry primary classification scheme shows that there are 1024 possible fractions. A 1 is added to both the numerator and denominator so that the computers that store and classify sets of prints do not have to deal with 0. Approximately 25% of all sets of fingerprints have a classification of 1 over 1; that is, they have no whorls.

The other classifications within the FBI system also create hundreds or thousands of classes of prints. Using all of the classifications, there are many thousands of classes. When a set of 10 prints is classified and the database is searched, there may be a few hundred sets that match that classification. It is a lot easier for a fingerprint technician to scan these relatively few sets of prints to see if there is a match.

Comparison of Single Fingerprints

Unfortunately, few crime scenes contain complete sets of fingerprints. More likely there are one or two and they may be partial prints; that is, part of the pattern is missing. Partial prints can be matched to a known print if enough ridges are present.

When the fingerprint examiner determines that there are sufficient points (friction ridge details) present in the unknown scene print and a known print, then a decision of identification of the unknown is made. Until a few years ago, many states and many countries had standards that set forth the number of points that a fingerprint examiner must find in a known and unknown print in order to declare that identification had been made. In some places, the minimum number of points was 10, while in others it was 12 or 16, etc. When there are many standards for the same identification, there is no standard. In 1990, the membership of the International Association for Identification, an umbrella group for experts including fingerprint examiners, declared that henceforth there would be no standard minimum number of points for identification. Instead, each examiner would determine how many points would be necessary.

There are three levels of friction ridge details:

Level 1 details include the general features and pattern (e.g., ulnar loop) of the fingerprint. These cannot be used for individualization but can be used to exclude a print from comparison.

Level 2 details include particular ridges such as endings or bifurcations. These minutiae (characteristics) enable individualization of an unknown print. What is important here is not that the known and unknown prints contain the same number of each type of ridge, but that each detail is in

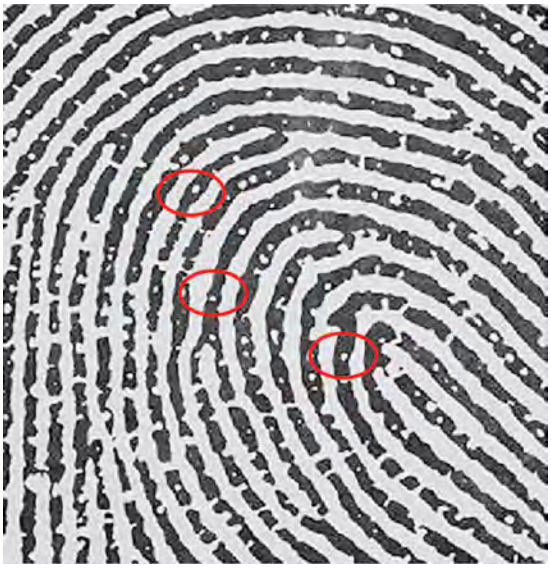


Figure 10.13 An inked fingerprint that shows the pores on the friction ridges. The pores appear as the white uninked circles on the fingerprint.

the same position relative to other ridges in each print. In that sense, it is like comparing two samples of handwriting. The individual characteristics lie not in the fact that the known and unknown contain the same number of *a* and *e* letters, but that the specific shapes and sizes of each letter are the same in each exhibit. Recall that Figure 10.4 shows how a known and an unknown fingerprint are compared using levels 1 and 2 minutiae. This is the most familiar way of displaying fingerprint identifications in a court.

Level 3 details require a low-power microscope to uncover. These are the minute imperfections in a print such as cuts, scars, edge shapes, ridge contours and even sweat gland pores. These minutiae are so unique that their presence in the known and unknown print virtually insures individuality. It should be noted, however, that the presence of many of these features depends on how good the image of the print is. Some methods of fingerprint visualization show level 3 details better than others, and this must be taken into account when comparing prints. In Figure 10.13, sweat pores can be seen as tiny white holes in the ridges of the print.

Automated Fingerprint Identification Systems (AFIS and IAFIS)

The development of high-powered, easy-to-use and readily available computers has had a profound effect on forensic science. One of the most dramatic advances facilitated by computers is the automated search process for fingerprints. Prior to the development of computerized searching systems, it was impossible for law enforcement agencies to search vast data sets of 10-print fingerprint cards. In the beginning, law enforcement agencies proceeded very slowly in using computers for this task. This was because computers with enough memory capacity to hold large databases of fingerprints were available only at great expense. In addition, the technology for faithfully capturing fingerprint images was rudimentary. When AFIS systems first came out, single fingerprints from crime scenes had to be enlarged and then the major ridges traced so they would be of high enough quality for the computers to scan them for searching.

A standard format for storing fingerprint data was developed by the FBI with the help of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) and the National Crime Information Center (NCIC). Unfortunately, the companies that developed the hardware and software for conducting the searches did not use standard protocols and it was difficult to share data among users of different systems. In 1999, the FBI implemented a new automated system called the *Integrated Automated Fingerprint Identification System (IAFIS)*. This is an entirely digital system that compares a person's set of 10 fingerprints against a database of millions of sets of prints in a matter of a few minutes. In addition, it can search the database for a single, latent print developed from a crime scene.

All scanned fingerprints can now be digitally enhanced to improve clarity. The problem of incompatibility among different searching systems is being solved by the development of a new generation of workstations that are able to input fingerprints from all the systems commercially available today. When these workstations are fully developed, law enforcement agents can search local, state and national databases simultaneously.

AFIS systems operate by anchoring the position of a fingerprint and searching the database using two types of ridges: bifurcations and ridge endings. The database is queried to find prints with the same number of these ridges in the same relative positions. The most likely candidates can be displayed for direct comparison. Unlike what is seen in the media, AFIS rarely matches a suspect fingerprint to one individual. The computer system generates a list of possible matches for the fingerprint examiner to analyze and determine a probable match. The human element is still an integral part of fingerprint identification.

As mentioned in the introduction to this chapter, fingerprint evidence has been called into question by recent reports (NAS Report) due to the lack of a scientific basis for what has been called a "match". Fingerprint examiners look for similarities in the probable matches given by AFIS based on the characteristics of the fingerprints. When comparing crime scene evidence to exemplars from AFIS the examiner can say that the two fingerprints have characteristics that are *consistent* with each other. There are no fingerprint match probability statistics developed to this date to declare the two a *match*, which a jury may interpret as identical. An example of misinterpretation of a fingerprint can be found in one of the case studies at the end of this chapter.

Common Questions about Fingerprints

1. Can you sand off your fingerprints?
   Yes, it is possible, but it will leave scars on your hands that will be permanent and unique, creating more individuality to your fingerprints. This would ultimately make your fingerprints *easier* to identify.
2. Can you surgically alter your fingerprints by cutting them off all the down to the dermal papillae?
   Yes, it is possible, but no documented successful cases have been noted.

3. Can you graft someone else's surgically removed fingerprints onto yours?
   Yes, it is possible, but again no documented successful cases in a criminal arena have been noted. A plastic impression of someone else's fingerprint can be made and then that piece of plastic can be laid over your fingerprint. This has been depicted on TV and the movies, and it does work. One of the episodes of the *Mythbusters* TV program shows the casting and testing of fingerprints, with a positive outcome.
4. Can fingerprints wear down with use or age?
   Yes. Alkaline substances such as lime can wear down fingerprints. Construction workers who work mainly with cement or concrete have been shown to have almost invisible ridge patterns after years of work, owing to the presence of lime and other alkaline materials.

Other Impressions: Footwear and Tire Treads

When one object makes physical contact with another, it may leave some of its physical characteristics on the recipient in the form of an *impression*. If the recipient object is soft or pliable such as putty, mud, concrete or soft dirt, the impression will be three-dimensional. If the recipient material is hard and the donor object has some material such as dirt, dust, blood or ink on its surface, the impression will be left on the surface of the recipient and will be two-dimensional.

There are many examples of impression evidence. Fingerprints are the most familiar example. Oils and other materials on the surfaces of the fingers are deposited on surfaces as two-dimensional impressions. These are discussed in detail in this chapter. Firing pin impressions are made by guns on the backs of cartridges. These are discussed in Chapter 12. Automobile tires and footwear can leave tread or sole impressions in dirt. These types of impressions are the subject of this section.

Footwear Impressions

Many types of shoes have soles with distinctive tread patterns whereas others are smooth. Footwear evidence can be extremely valuable in associating perpetrators of crimes with the crime scenes. There may be footwear impressions at and near the entry points to a crime scene, at the scene and at and near the exits. In fact, there are many footwear impressions at and around crime scenes that are never discovered or collected. It is reasonable to conclude that there are more potential footwear impressions at crime scenes than there are fingerprint impressions.

There are a number of reasons why footwear evidence is overlooked in crime scene investigations. The impressions are generally on the ground, which may be uneven or not conducive to holding impressions. They may be invisible or nearly so. They may have been tramped on by paramedics or other personnel before they can be preserved. Many crime scene investigators lack the necessary training to discover, preserve and process footwear impressions. Police, detectives, judges and juries often misunderstand or undervalue footwear evidence. They are often surprised to find that a footwear impression can be associated to the exact shoe from which it arose. This, in turn, discourages police investigators from collecting this potentially important evidence.

Some people believe that footwear impressions are very fragile and do not last very long. In fact, many impressions can last permanently. Those that cannot can be permanently recorded by a combination of photography and casting. There is no way to know, however, how much time has passed since an impression was made. Inferences may be made from circumstances surrounding the incident, but the impression itself contains no time markers. Impressions made in sand or snow may start to deteriorate very soon after being formed, and the rate of deterioration is dependent on many environmental factors.

Individual or Class Evidence

As with other impression evidence, the conclusion that can be reached from a comparison of known and unknown footwear evidence depends on the number of unique details in the impression. When shoes are brand new, impressions of their soles will be pretty much the same as the impressions of all other shoes of the same type and size. Wear over time produces random markings and imperfections that begin to alter the impression, making it more unique as time passes (see Figure 10.14). Eventually, there will be enough unique details present in an impression to permit a competent examiner to conclude that the impression arose from one particular shoe (or other type of footwear). There are no definitive standards that dictate how many points of identification must be present or the type and quality of the points. It is a matter of the experience and comfort level of the particular examiner that determines whether a conclusion of individuality will be made.

More than 1.5 billion shoes are sold annually in the United States. Given the large variety of types and sizes of shoes available, any one type and size of shoe will be worn by a very small fraction of people at any one time. The very fact that a footwear impression is the same type and size as a shoe worn by the suspect will eliminate a large portion of the population from consideration, irrespective of any

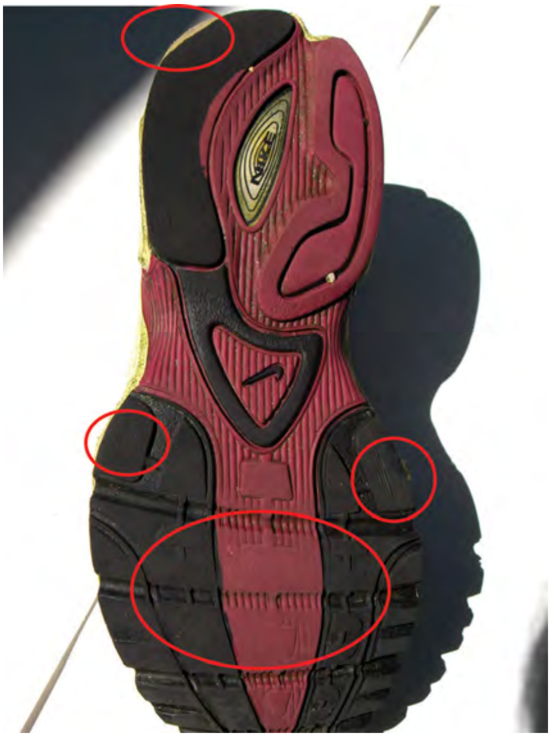


Figure 10.14 The bottom of this athletic shoe shows wear patterns that are unique to this shoe. The wear patterns, imbedded materials and imperfections make this shoe individual evidence.

unique wear patterns in the impression. The presence of some wear marks and manufacturing imperfections will add discrimination to the comparison even if they fall short of permitting individualization. This is an important concept that should not be ignored by investigators.

Aside from the probable wearer of the shoe, other information can be determined from a footwear comparison. It can indicate the type and make of shoe and the approximate or exact size. From the number and types of impressions, the number of perpetrators as well as their entry and exit paths from the crime scene may be determined.

How Footwear Impressions Are Formed

Footwear impressions can occur in one of two ways. One impression could be three-dimensional (having length, width and depth) and another could be two-dimensional, showing only length and width. If the surface is soft enough to hold the impression, the shoe can deform the surface, leaving a permanent or temporary impression. Traces of material may be transferred from the shoe to the surface (positive impression) or from the surface to the shoe (negative impression). The transfer of material to and from the shoe can be aided by the buildup of static electricity that takes place when a shoe makes contact with the ground. Positive impressions are much more common than negative impressions because the latter requires that the shoe be clean and that is not a very common condition. Positive and negative impressions are most often two-dimensional. Figure 10.15 shows a two-dimensional footwear impression, and Figure 10.16 shows a three-dimensional impression that was made in soil.

How Footwear Impressions Are Preserved

All footwear impressions must be photographed at the scene. Today digital photography is widely used for this purpose. In all cases, a ruler or other measuring tool must be inserted in the photograph if it is to be used in court. A reference object

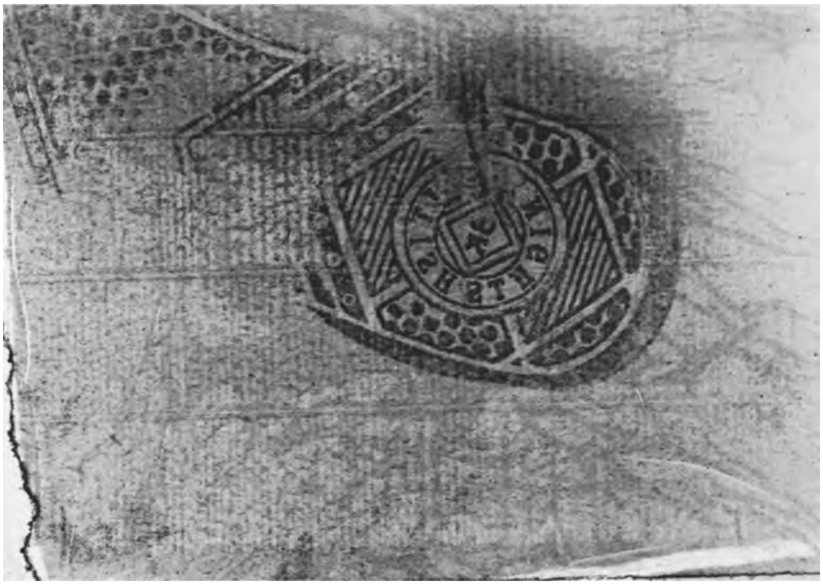


Figure 10.15 A two-dimensional inked footwear impression. Reprinted from Bodziac, W.T., *Footwear Impression Evidence*, 2nd edn., Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, FL, 1996.

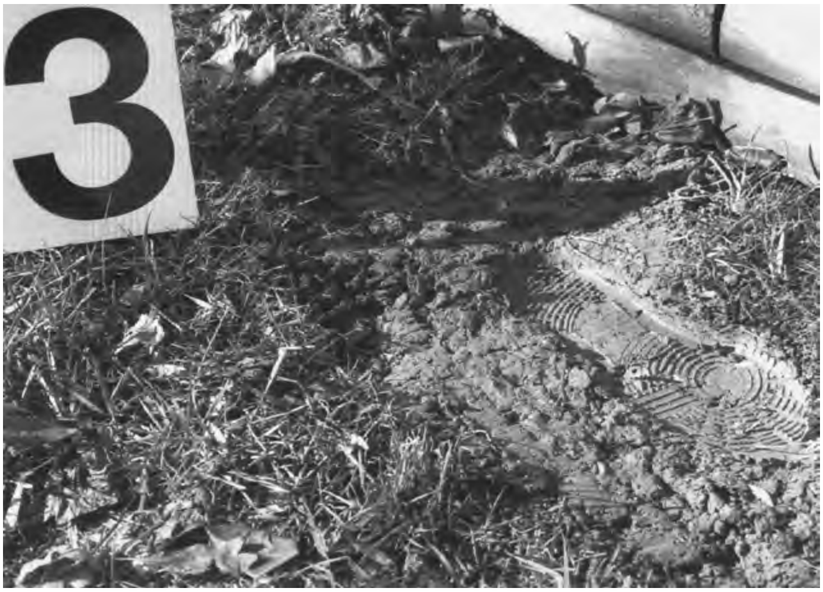


Figure 10.16 A three-dimensional footwear impression made in soil. Reprinted from Bodziac, W.T., *Footwear Impression Evidence*, 2nd edn., Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, FL, 1996.

such as a coin is not acceptable. In the case of two-dimensional impressions, the photograph will be used for comparison with the known footwear so it must be of the highest quality. The camera should be mounted on a tripod for the best results.

Three-dimensional footwear impressions can be preserved by *casting*. Casting is a process by which a three-dimensional impression is filled with a material that hardens and captures an image of the impression. Unlike a photograph, a casting captures virtually every important characteristic of the impression including surface texture, unevenness of the depth and even microscopic details that differentiate one footwear impression from another. Castings do not have the perceptual or focus or lighting problems that sometimes accompany photography, and they form a positive image so that raised ridges on the cast are the same as the raised ridges of the footwear and a direct comparison can be made.

Over the years, many casting materials have been used. Some of the most popular were various types of plaster including Plaster of Paris. None of these were really suitable for footwear casts because they were too soft. Attempts to remove debris such as soil from the cast resulted in the loss of significant detail from the cast. Today the universal product for making footwear casts is dental stone. This is a gypsum cement adapted for use by the dental industry to make high-quality teeth impressions. It is harder than plaster and captures detail to a much greater extent. Figure 10.17 shows a cast of a footwear impression made in soil. The upper half of the cast is made with Plaster of Paris, and the lower half is made with dental stone. The upper arrow points to the dividing line between the two materials. The lower arrow points to minutiae in the impression and it can be seen that the level of detail is greater in the detail stone.

Tire Tread Impressions

A tire tread is the part of an automobile tire that makes contact with the road. Today's tire treads have complicated designs in them that serve several functions. In some ways, tire treads are similar to footwear soles. They both serve to increase

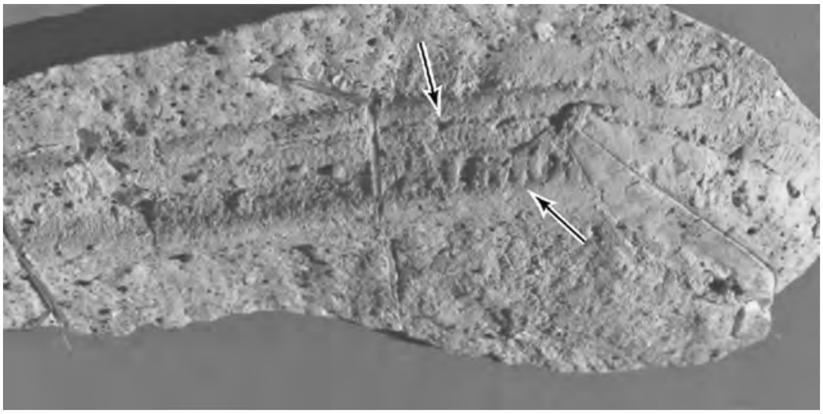


Figure 10.17 A plaster cast of a footwear impression using dental stone (lower half) and plaster (upper half) casting methods. The upper arrow points to the line of separation between the two materials. The lower arrow shows the greater detail due to using dental stone in the lower half. Reprinted from Bodziac, W.T., *Footwear Impression Evidence*, 2nd edn., Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, FL, 1996.

friction at the point of contact, and this helps to minimize slippage. These functions are more important in tires than shoes because tires travel at much higher speeds in all sorts of weather on a variety of surfaces. They also must be able to start and stop rapidly while maintaining control. Tires also support more weight than footwear so they must be made of durable materials. Like footwear, tires are mass produced and brand new ones bear few, if any, unique characteristics. With time and use, however, tire treads pick up increasing numbers of details that set them apart from all other tires. In such cases, a tire tread can be individualized to a particular tire.

Development of Tire Treads

The first air-filled (pneumatic) tire was developed by John Dunlop in 1888. His tires, manufactured by Dunlop Tires, were bald—they had no tread. At first, this was not a problem because there were no roads and cars traveled very slowly, so the need for traction was not pronounced. By the beginning of the twentieth century, roads were developed and the need for friction-producing surfaces on tires became evident. In 1907, Harvey Firestone designed the first traction design for tire treads. The tread pattern was not scientifically designed. It consisted of the words “Firestone and nonskid” carved into the tread. Every time a Firestone tire left a tread print, it advertised the company. Today, computers are used to help design tire treads that not only provide gripping power, but also channel away water to prevent hydroplaning. Some tread elements also reduce road noise.

Identification Markings on Tire Sidewalls

Take a look at the tires on your car. The sidewalls have several groups of numbers that have been stamped into the tire. A tire sidewall is shown in Figure 10.18.

Some of the markings indicate the make and model of the tire. Others are not so easy to interpret. Consider the following set of numbers and letters on a tire sidewall:

LT225 / 65 R 14

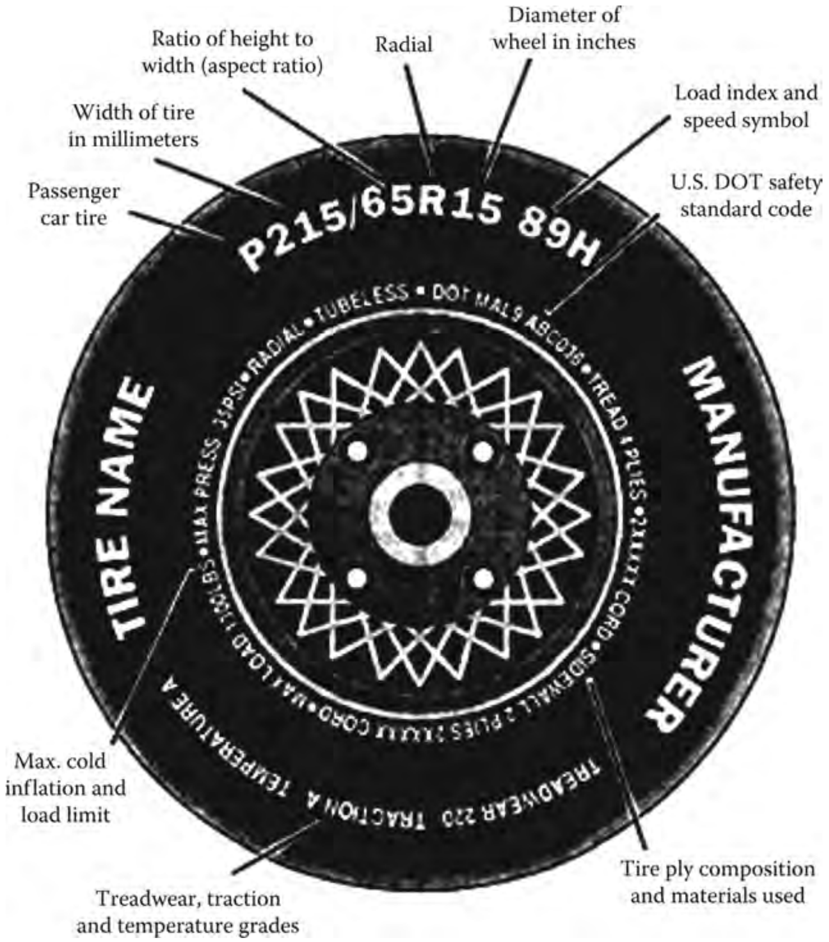

Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
Radial
Diameter of wheel in inches
Load index and speed symbol
Width of tire in millimeters
U.S. DOT safety standard code
Passenger car tire
P215/65R15 89H
TIRE NAME
MANUFACTURER
Max. cold inflation and load limit
Treadwear, traction and temperature grades
Tire ply composition and materials used

Figure 10.18 A tire sidewall. Tire Guides, Inc., Boca Raton, FL, www.tireguides.com.

The "LT" indicates that the tire is made for a light truck such as a pickup truck or some SUVs. If the vehicle were a passenger car, the first letter would be a "P." The "225" is the cross section of the tire measured in millimeters. The cross section is measured from sidewall to sidewall. A tire can be mounted on several different wheel rims and this would affect the measured cross section. The designated cross section is obtained when the tire is mounted on the wheel rim for which it was made. The "65" is called the aspect ratio and is measured from where the tire is sealed to the rim (the bead) to the top of the tread. The aspect ratio is actually the percentage of the height to the width. In this case, the height is 65% of the width and should measure 146 mm. The final R designates the type of tire. The most common type is radial although there are also diagonal bias (D) and belted (B). The last number is the diameter of the wheel rim for which the tire was developed in inches.

Evidential Value of Tire Impressions

Even though an estimated two-thirds of major crimes in the United States involve automobiles, it is unfortunate that many crime scene investigators overlook this potentially important evidence. In some cases, the only way a vehicle may be identified is from tire impressions left at the scene. A properly prepared record (photograph or casting) of a tire impression can be associated with the exact tire that made it and can thus be individual evidence.

Capturing Tire Impressions

Tire impressions are similar to footwear impressions in some respects. They may both be two-dimensional or three-dimensional and two-dimensional impressions may be positive or negative, depending on how they are produced. However, tire impressions are usually much larger than footwear impressions, making them more difficult to collect and match to the tire. As is the case with all types of impressions, tire tread impressions should be photographed at the scene whether or not a casting will be made. In the case of three-dimensional tire impressions, castings must be made at the scene because the object containing the impression cannot be taken to the laboratory for casting or further analysis. Figure 10.19 shows a plaster cast of a tire tread impression.

With footwear impressions, dental stone casts of three-dimensional impressions are nearly always superior to photographs for comparison with known shoes. This is not always the case with tire tread impressions. Sometimes there are difficulties with making a good cast and the investigator is better served by photographs. For example, making a cast on a steep incline can be difficult because the casting material may flow downhill. The upper part of the cast may be too thin and will fall apart when the cast is lifted. In other cases, the tire impression may be several feet long resulting in very heavy and bulky casts. In such situations, a series of overlapping photographs may be a better way to record the impression. Finally, all three-dimensional casts of tires make negative impressions. It is never good practice to compare a negative impression with a positive tread surface or photograph. Instead, the tire is photographed and the negative of the picture is used for the comparison.

As with footwear impressions, dental stone is the preferred casting material for most surfaces. For tire impressions in snow, casting wax is used. In all cases,

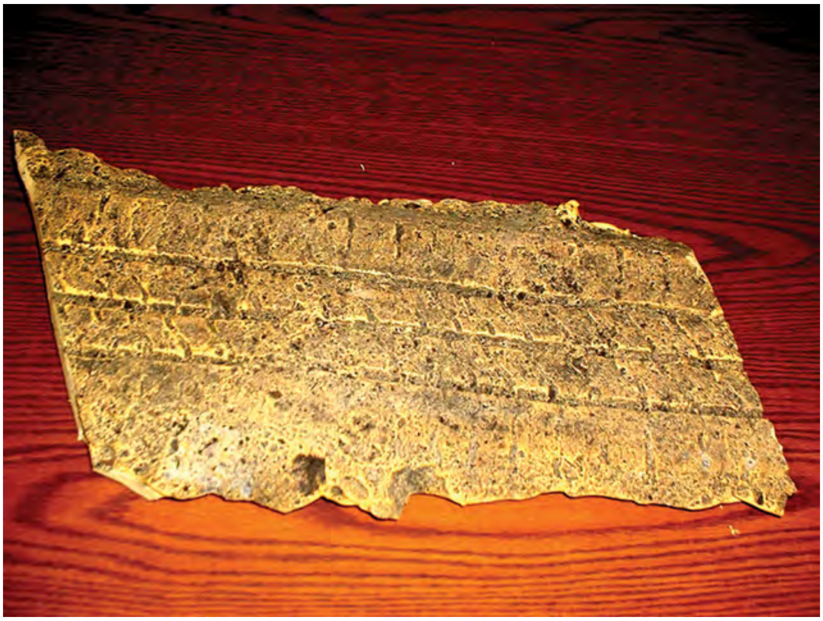


Figure 10.19 A plaster cast of a part of a tire impression.

as with footwear, a suitable measuring instrument must be included in photographs of casts or impressions.

In addition to tread patterns and wear details, tire tread impressions can be used to derive other information about the tire and vehicle. For example, the Michigan State Police Forensic Science Division maintains a database containing measurements of wheelbase and stance. The wheelbase of a vehicle is the distance from the center of the front wheel hub to the center of the real wheel hub. The stance is the distance from the centerline of the right tire to the centerline of the left tire. Combining the wheelbase and stance data with the tread pattern of the tires (if original equipment), the make and model of a car or truck may be determined.

Summary

Fingerprints are among the oldest methods of personal identification. There is anecdotal evidence that the Chinese used fingerprints to help identify people thousands of years ago. Only within the past 150 years has fingerprint science been used with some degree of reliability for personal identification. Fingerprints are created during gestation and, once formed, do not change throughout life, except in size. It is believed that all fingerprints are unique, and this is the underlying principle that allows fingerprints to be used for identification of a person.

All fingerprints form patterns. There are eight patterns in all. The major types are loops, arches and whorls. Within these types are subtypes. There are radial and ulnar loops, tented and plain arches, plain whorls, central pocket loops, accidentals and double loop whorls. These patterns are made up of fingerprint ridges. There are several types of ridge characteristics including dots, ridge endings, bifurcations, trifurcations and enclosures. For comparison purposes, there are three levels of data. Level 1 includes the overall pattern of the print and general ridge characteristics. Level 2 includes the arrangements of various ridge types relative to each other. Level 3 includes the details of the ridge characteristics including edges and sweat pores.

When a finger touches an object, it leaves an image of the ridge characteristics. The image is made up of sweat, skin cells, proteins, fats and other materials. A *latent fingerprint* is one that must be visualized or developed using chemical or physical methods. Patent prints are those that are already visible because they have been made in fresh blood, paint, etc. Plastic prints are impressions made in a pliant material such as putty. One of the major breakthroughs in fingerprint visualization technology is Super Glue (cyanoacrylate) fuming, which forms a hard image of a fingerprint. This image can be treated with a fluorescent dye and then a strong light source can cause the dye to fluoresce, thus clarifying the image further.

There are several methods for classifying sets of 10 fingerprints. The method used in the United States and Europe was developed by Sir Edward Henry, and today bears his name. It actually has five different classifications, each of which focuses on a different set of fingerprint characteristics. Together the system creates thousands of classes in which a set of prints can be placed. This makes searching for the right set out of millions fairly easy.

The development of computers and electronic imaging has made automated searching of fingerprint databases possible. These AFIS systems are being standardized so that local, state and federal law enforcement agents can search the same databases and share information.

Footwear and tire impressions can be two- or three-dimensional. Impression evidence can be individualized to one particular object if there are sufficient unique characteristics present. These characteristics arise from the random wearing of the shoeprint or tire tread.

Preserving impressions is very important because they often cannot be transported intact to the forensic science lab. Proper, high-resolution photography is commonly done, with digital photography becoming more popular. A suitable measuring instrument must be in the picture to facilitate scale determination. The measuring instrument must be a ruler or other device that actually measures distance. Dental stone has become the casting material of choice for many impressions because of its ease of use and high definition.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following types of ridges are "counted" in the primary Henry classification of a set of prints?
   a. Loops
   b. Arches
   c. Whorls
   d. All of these
2. The police official who developed a fingerprint classification system still used in Central and South America is
   a. Henry Fauld
   b. Will West
   c. Juan Vucetich
   d. Juan Valdez
3. A radial loop
   a. Always opens toward the left
   b. Is a type of whorl pattern
   c. Comprises 50% of all fingerprints
   d. Opens toward the thumb side of the hand
4. IAFIS is
   a. The International Association that sets standards for fingerprint analysis
   b. A type of automated searching system for fingerprints
   c. An abbreviation for a type of chemical that is used to cause fingerprints to fluoresce
   d. A federal agency that sets standards for forensic evidence analysis
5. Level 3 fingerprint data include
   a. The positions of sweat pores along fingerprint ridges
   b. The general pattern type of a fingerprint
   c. Only bifurcations and ridge endings
   d. Only ridges that can be seen with Super Glue fuming
6. Ruhemann's purple is
   a. Formed from the reaction of cyanoacrylate with fingerprint residues

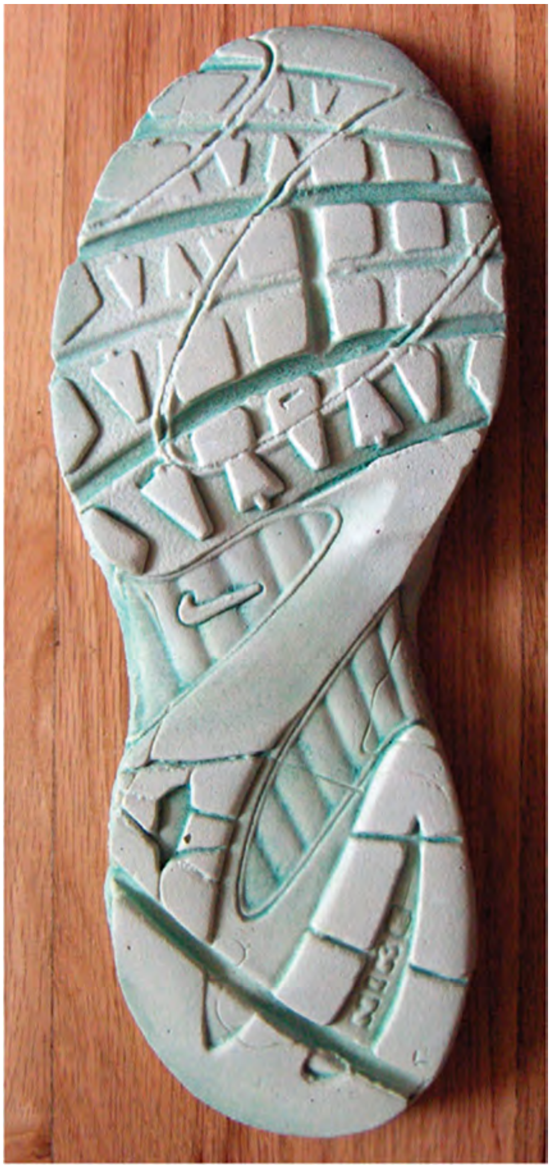
   b. Formed from the reaction of ninhydrin with fingerprint residues
   c. Formed from the reaction of silver nitrate and fingerprint residues
   d. The color that Rhodamine 6G emits when an argon laser is shined on it
7. Which of the following is *not* a type of whorl pattern:
   a. Tented arch
   b. Double loop
   c. Accidental
   d. Central pocket loop
8. If the primary Henry classification of a set of fingerprints is 1/1, which two fingers have whorls?
   a. Left index/right middle
   b. Left and right thumbs
   c. Left and right little fingers
   d. No fingers have whorls
9. If the primary Henry classification of a set of fingerprints is 17/1, which finger has a whorl?
   a. Right thumb
   b. Right index
   c. Right middle
   d. Left thumb
10. Alphonse Bertillion was famous for
    a. Recognizing that fingerprints were individual
    b. Discovering Super Glue fuming
    c. Developing a system of body measurements to identify people
    d. Discovering ninhydrin
11. When AFIS searches its database of fingerprints, it searches for which types of patterns:
    a. Arches and loops
    b. Ridge endings and enclosures
    c. Whorls and loops
    d. Ridge endings and bifurcations
12. Iodine fumes adhere to what type of fingerprint residue:
    a. Water
    b. Amino acids
    c. Lipids and fats
    d. Salts
13. Ninhydrin reacts with what type of fingerprint residue:
    a. Water
    b. Amino acids
    c. Lipids and fats
    d. Salts
14. Three-dimensional footwear evidence can be preserved by
    a. Fuming
    b. Dusting
    c. Casting
    d. Photography
15. Tire impressions are important because
    a. They show direction
    b. They can be matched to a specific tire
    c. They match the type of vehicle
    d. They are permanent

True or False

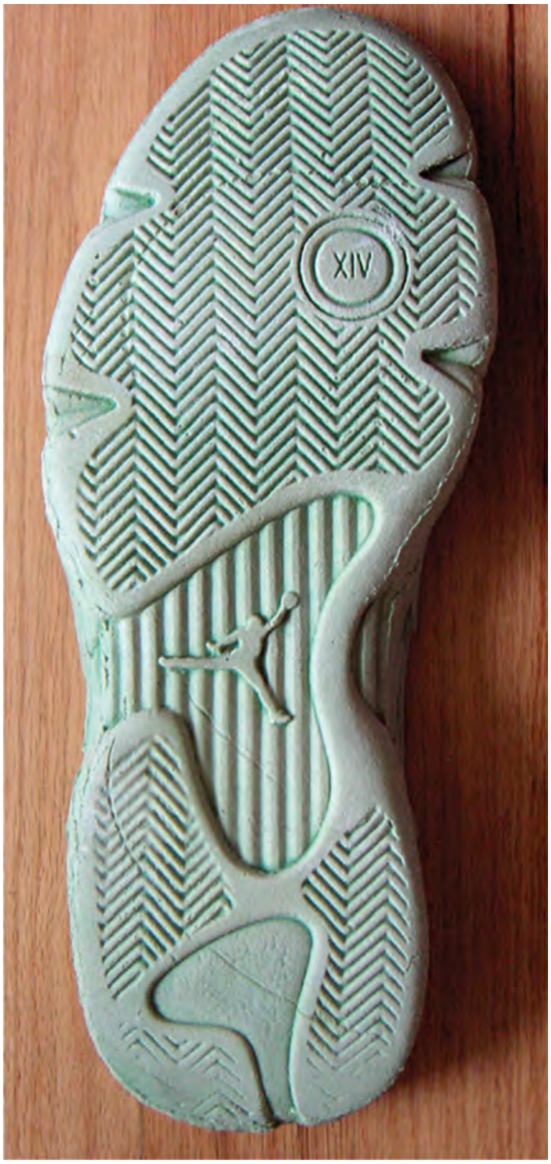
16. An arch has two deltas.
17. Attempts to alter existing fingerprints make them easier to identify.
18. Footwear impressions in soil leave a three dimensional image.
19. Tire treads impressions are considered as class evidence, not individual.
20. The pores on friction ridges exude sweat that leaves residue on a surface.

Short Answer Questions

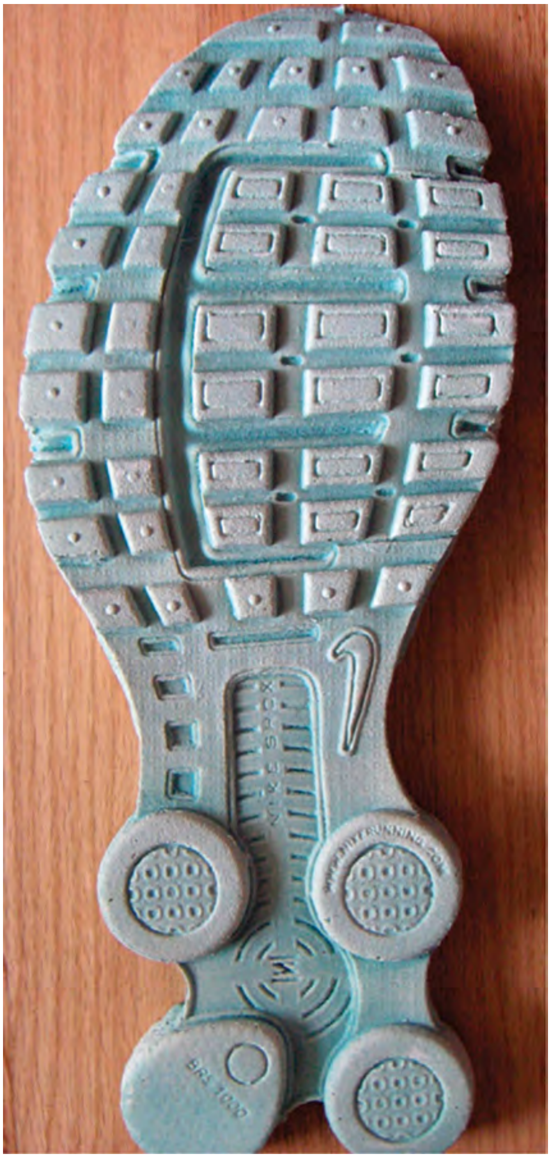
21. Look carefully at the footwear impression casts A–C. Match the inked shoeprints (P1–P6) to the footwear casts. Identify individual points of match on the impression and the print.



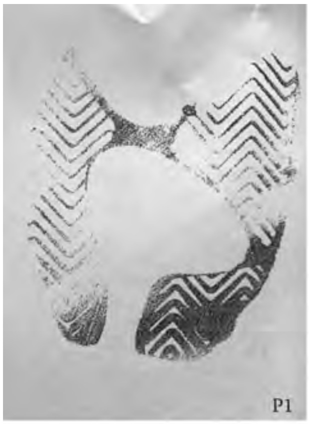
Footwear cast A

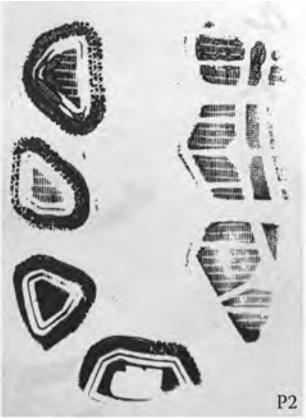


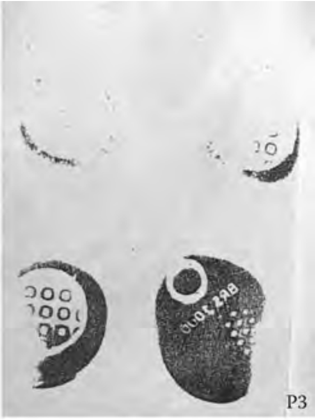
Footwear cast B

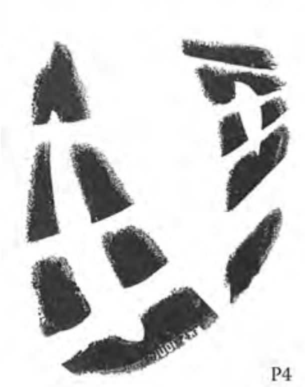


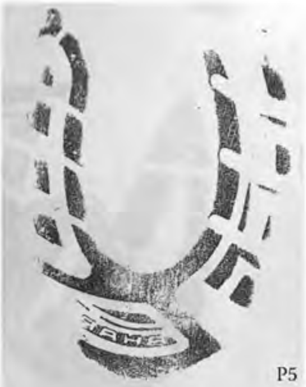
Footwear cast C

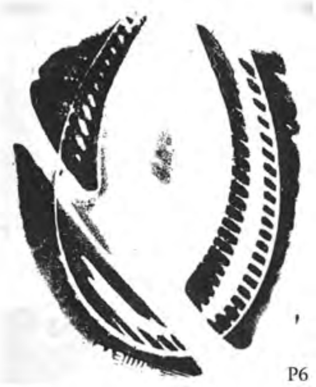

P1


P2

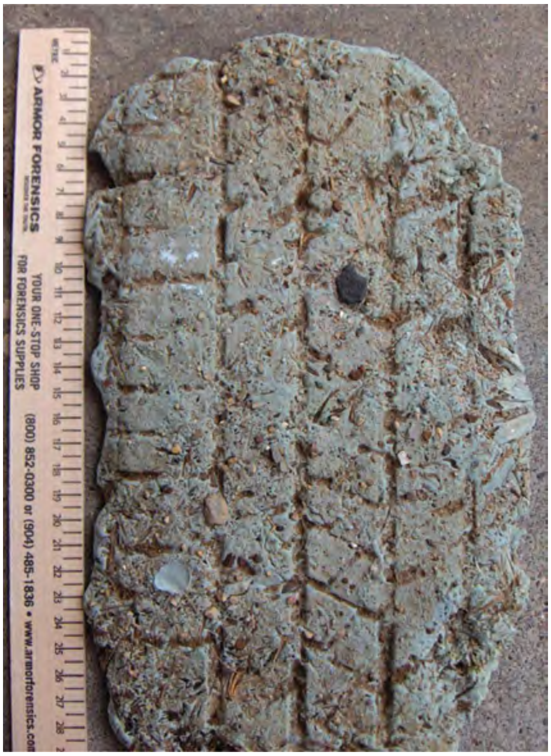

P3


P4

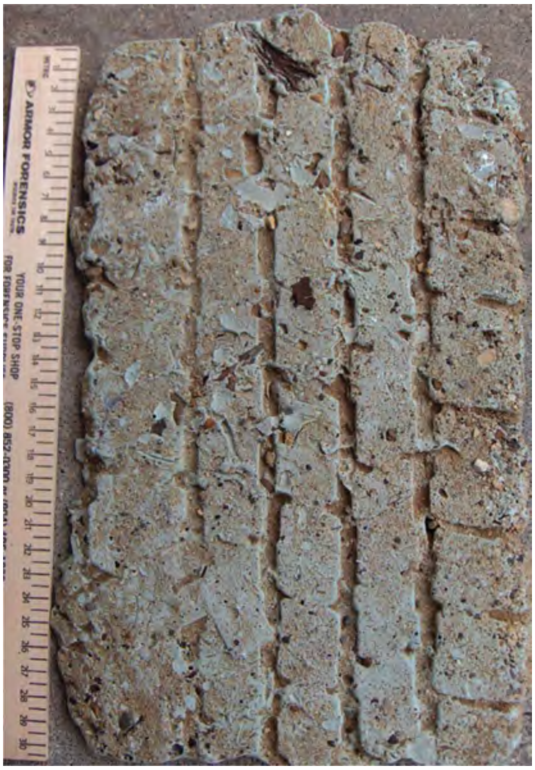

P5


P6

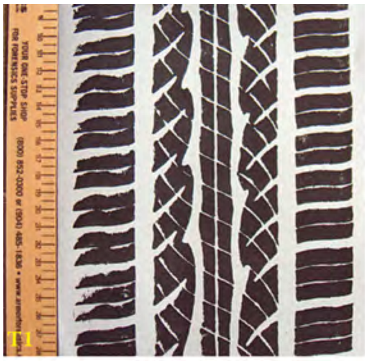
22 Look carefully at the tire impression casts A and B. Match the inked tire tread prints to the tire casts (T1–T6). Identify individual points of match on the impression and the inked tread.

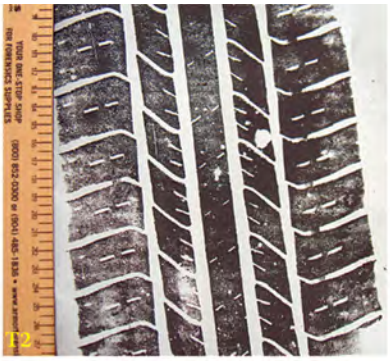

ARMOR FORENSICS
YOUR ONE-STOP SHOP FOR FORENSICS SUPPLIES
(800) 852-0300 or (904) 485-1836 • www.armorforensics.com

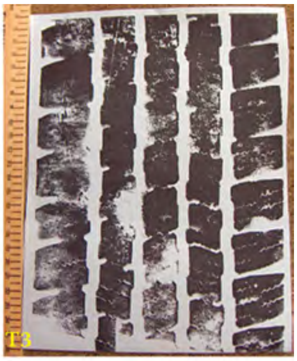
Tire impression cast A

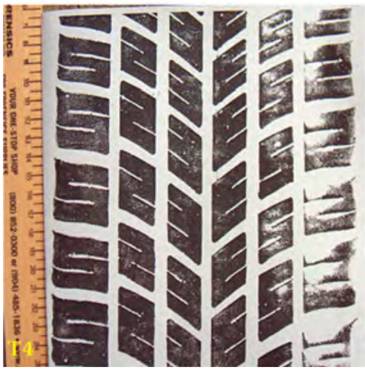

ARMOR FORENSICS
YOUR ONE-STOP SHOP

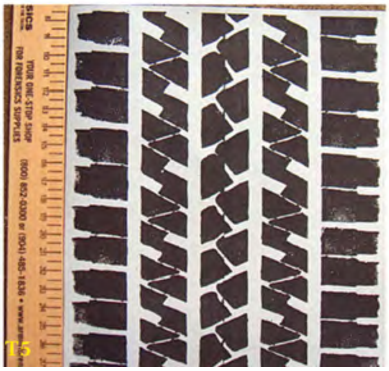
Tire impression cast B

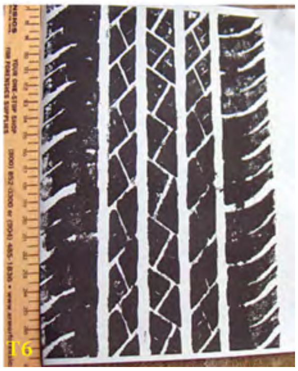




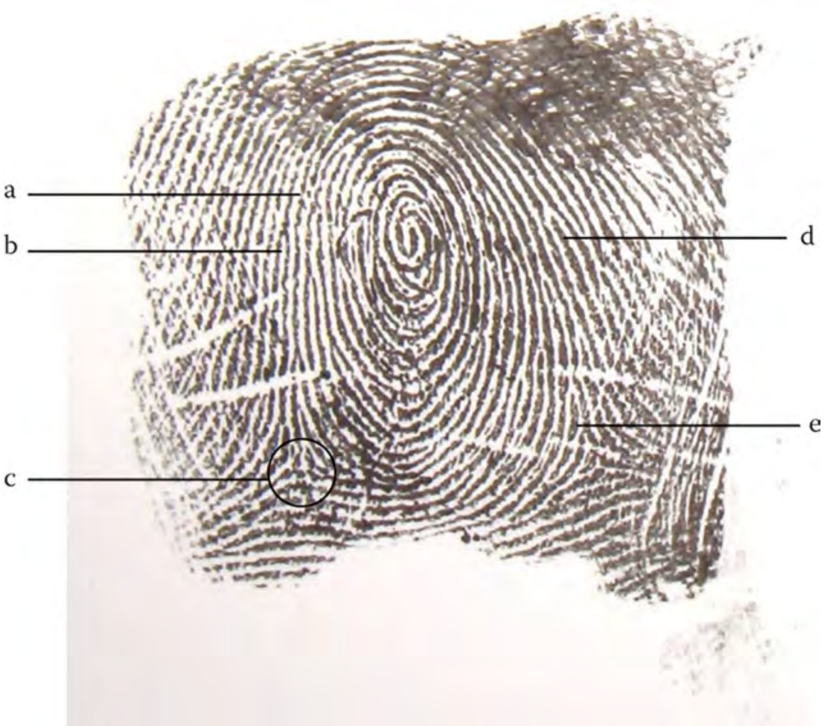








23 Look carefully at the inked fingerprint. Which of the eight types of fingerprints does it represent?



24 For the fingerprint shown in Question 23, identify the parts labeled a through e.

25 Construct a flow chart showing the development of the human classification system from the first attempts to differentiate individuals to modern day methods.

Match Each Definition with the Term

26. Arch
27. Loop
28. Whorl
29. Plastic fingerprint
30. Patent fingerprint
31. Latent fingerprint
32. Rhodamine 6G
33. Cyanoacrylate
34. Silver nitrate
35. Sublimation

a. One type of fingerprint that has two deltas
b. A fingerprint invisible to the naked eye
c. The active ingredient in Super Glue that reacts with fingerprint residue forming a white precipitate
d. A visible fingerprint left behind due to residue on the finger such as blood, grease or paint
e. One type of fingerprint that has no deltas
f. Change of phase from a solid directly to a gas
g. One of the oldest chemical methods of fingerprint visualization
h. One type of fingerprint that has one delta
i. A liquid fluorescent dye used to enhance fingerprints
j. A visible fingerprint impression in a soft solid

References

Lee, H. C. and R. E. Gaensslen (eds.). (2001). *Advances in Fingerprint Technology*, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
Cowger, J. E. (1992). *Friction Ridge Skin. CRC Press*, Boca Raton, FL.

On the Web

https://www.crime-scene-investigator.net/csi-articles.html#8
https://www.policeone.com/police-products/investigation/afis/articles/all-about-integrated-automated-fingerprint-identification-system-iafis-MwpjTQqSG5ecmgib/
https://www.forensicmag.com/3375-Search/?search=fingerprints
www.galton.org.
http://galton.org/fingerprints/books/henry/henry-classification.pdf.
www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2005/03/050322135157.htm.
www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2008/09/080915210509.htm.
www.youtube.com/watch?v=9_6WyZXTaBo.
https://scholarlycommons.law.northwestern.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=7201&context=jclc
https://www.nist.gov/publications/latent-print-examination-and-human-factors-improving-practice-through-systems-approach
https://www.nist.gov/topics/organization-scientific-area-committees-forensic-science/footwear-tire-subcommittee
https://www.nist.gov/publications/new-metric-latent-fingerprint-image-preprocessing

Case Studies

Case Study One—Madrid Train Bombing

An Example of Mistaken Fingerprint Identification and Confirmational Bias

In 2004, a train station in Madrid, Spain, was bombed. Many people were killed. The Madrid Police immediately considered this to be an act of terrorism and began to seek out possible suspects. As part of the investigation, they recovered a partial fingerprint from the station and submitted a photograph of the print to the U.S. FBI and asked the bureau to conduct a search of its Automated Fingerprint Identification System (AFIS) to see whether any known terrorists came up on the database (see the chapter on fingerprints for more information on AFIS). An AFIS search normally returns the top 10 or so hits in its database; the closest matches to the submitted fingerprint. A search of the AFIS system yielded one Brandon Mayfield as the fourth best match. Mr. Mayfield was an attorney in the Portland, Oregon, area who had recently converted to Islam and whose wife was Egyptian born. These facts along with the similarities of Mayfield's prints to the print recovered in the bombing led to his being a person of interest in the investigation. An FBI examiner conducted an examination of his prints against the lifted print. No other known fingerprints of any other suspect were examined during this time. The FBI examiner concluded that the print lifted from the scene in Madrid matched one of Mr. Mayfield's prints, and he was subsequently arrested for the bombing. He protested his innocence and hired an attorney to help him. Wanting to protect against an error, the FBI had another examiner compare the prints in question. He was given the case file *including the report of the first examiner*. He supported the conclusion of the first examiner. Then, the file and prints were given to a third FBI examiner. The file included the reports of the first two examiners. The third examiner confirmed the conclusions of the first two.

Mr. Mayfield's attorney then retained the services of an independent expert fingerprint examiner to reexamine the print evidence. He was given access to all of the FBI files on the fingerprint examinations including the conclusions of the three Bureau examiners. Not surprisingly, he confirmed the conclusions of those examiners that Mayfield left the print at the Madrid bombing.

While these examinations were taking place in the United States, the Madrid and Spanish Police were continuing their investigation of the bombing. They were very skeptical of Mayfield's involvement and ultimately arrested a known terrorist suspect for the crime. His fingerprint was a spot-on match for the print lifted from the scene. When informed of this development, the FBI sent a fingerprint team to Madrid to examine the fingerprint evidence. They concurred with the conclusions reached by the Spanish Police. Mayfield was released from custody. He was ultimately successful in a wrongful arrest lawsuit filed against the FBI, collecting millions of dollars in damages. Figure 10.20 shows the partial fingerprint lifted from the scene by the Madrid Police as well as the fingerprints from Mayfield and the suspect that the Madrid Police had arrested, which were used for comparison.

This case is an example of *confirmational bias*. This arises from cases where one investigator or examiner confirms the conclusions of another, and it can be

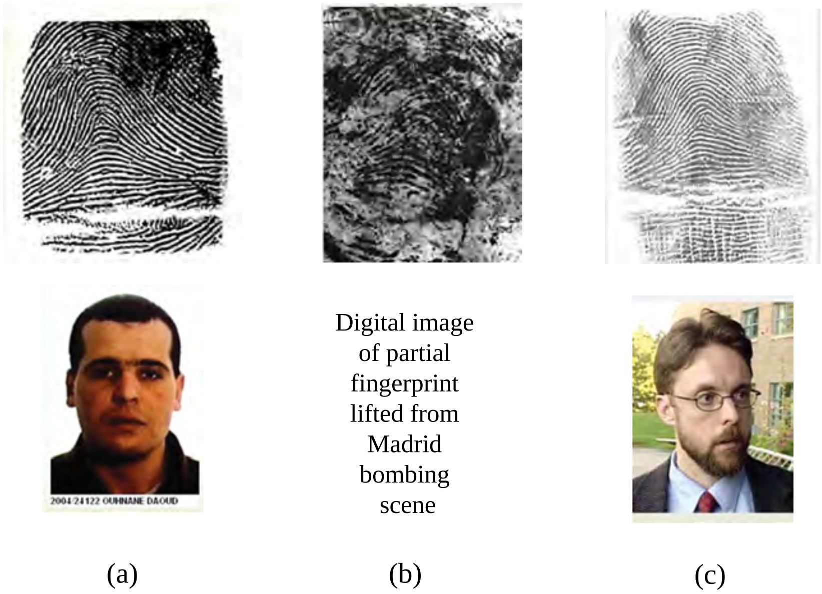

2004-24122 OUHNANE DAOUD
Digital image of partial fingerprint lifted from Madrid bombing scene
(a)
(b)
(c)

Figure 10.20 Fingerprint comparison for Madrid train bombing. (a) Ouhnane Daoud, (b) crime scene and (c) Brandon Mayfield.

shown that part of the reason for the confirmation was the second examiner's knowledge of the conclusions reached by the first examiner. Confirmational bias is just one type of bias that has been shown to have sometimes severe repercussions in forensic analysis and many other types of scientific examinations.*Additional information: https://oig.justice.gov/special/s0601/exec.pdf*

Case Study Two: Fingerprint Helps Solve a Cold Case

Grace Hayden, 79, lived alone in her San Diego, California home. She was found dead on her bedroom floor on May 20, 1987. She had been raped and suffocated. The case was investigated and went unsolved.

Thirty-one years later a detective for the San Diego County District Attorney's Office, Tony Johnson, was reviewing Grace Hayden's cold case and found a fingerprint that had been lifted from Hayden's stove. At the time of the investigation the fingerprint could not be identified. Johnson submitted the fingerprint to AFIS and got a hit to a fingerprint from a 2015 arrest of Kevin Thomas Ford. Ford, 62, had been arrested for communicating threats, a misdemeanor. The fingerprint gave Johnson a link to a possible suspect. A swab from the victim was also in the case files. A DNA test was run on the swab it came up a positive match to Ford.

Kevin Thomas Ford was arrested in North Carolina in 2018, more than 30 years after the death of Grace Hayden. Ford's connection to Hayden was that, in 1987, he worked as a driver for a company that would transport elderly or handicapped patients to and from medical appointments. Hayden was partially blind and had limited mobility. Just two days prior to her death, Ford had driven Grace to an appointment.

Figure 10.21 Kevin Thomas Ford at the time of his arrest in 2018 for the1987 rape and murder of Grace Hayden.

Interesting enough, a second DNA contribution was found on Hayden, but the identity of that person is still unknown. Ford claimed he had had consensual sex with Hayden and that someone else must have raped her after he left her home. That, however, was refuted in court.

Ford admitted in court that he was under the influence of cocaine when he went to Hayden's home that May. He needed money to pay his drug supplier and felt the need for sexual gratification due to the drug. Hayden's autopsy showed that, in addition to the rape, she had been suffocated with tremendous pressure on her face and there were defensive wounds that indicated she had struggled with her attacker.

In 2019, a jury found Kevin Thomas Ford guilty of the rape and murder of Grace Hayden. He was sentenced to life in prison without parole. Ford's wife said that he told her once that he might get arrested someday because he had done something wrong in the past and that he "didn't know how good their evidence was". The prosecutor in the case told the jury, "well, now he knows, as do you". *Additional information: https://timesofsandiego.com/crime/2019/12/13/man-sentenced-to-life-without-parole-in-san-diego-womans-1987-rape-and-murder/*

11

Questioned Documents

Contract
Power of attorney
LAST WILL AND TESTAMENT

Learning Objectives

To be able to define a questioned document

1. To be able to describe the training that a questioned document examiner must undergo
2. To be able to describe how handwriting is developed over time
3. To be able to describe the methods for analyzing and comparing handwriting
4. To be able to describe the proper methods for collection of handwriting exemplars
5. To be able to describe methods for uncovering erasures and other obliterations
6. To be able to describe ESDA and how it is used in questioned document analysis

7. To be able to describe the methods used for analysis and comparison of inks and papers
8. To be able to describe the methods of analysis of copier toners
9. To be able to describe how forgeries and tracings are detected

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is a Questioned Document?*
- *Questioned Document Examiner*
- *Handwriting Analysis*
  - *How Handwriting Develops*
  - *Handwriting Comparisons*
  - *Requested Exemplars*
  - *Nonrequested Exemplars*
  - *Characteristics Used for Comparison of Handwriting*
  - *Fraud and Forgery*
- *Erasures, Obliterations and Alterations*
  - *Erasures*
  - *Obliterations*
  - *Indented Writing*
  - *Additions*
- *Typewriters, Photocopiers and Digital Devices*
  - *Typewriters*
  - *Photocopiers*
  - *Digital Devices*
- *Paper Examination*
- *Ink Examinations*
- *Physical Matches on Torn Paper*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Match Each Term with its Definition*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Best evidence rule: Rule that governs the admissibility of document evidence. Generally, only the original document is admissible.

Exemplar: A sample of handwriting whose source is known. Used for comparison with questioned document.

Graphology (graphoanalysis): Determination of personality or certain personality characteristics by examination of someone's handwriting.

Nonrequested exemplar: Already-existing documents that are part of the suspect's everyday correspondence.

Palmer: A method of teaching hand printing and writing by copying letters (see Zaner-Bloser).

Pattern evidence: Consists of markings that are believed to be individual to each person.

Questioned document: Any written or printed communication between individuals whose source or authenticity is in doubt.

Requested exemplar: Samples of handwriting that the author is asked to provide.

Zaner-Bloser: A method of teaching hand printing and writing by copying letters. Related to Palmer method.

Acronyms

ABFDE	American Board of Forensic Document Examiners
ASQDE	American Society of Questioned Document Examiners
ESDA	Electrostatic detection apparatus

Introduction

This chapter is all about questioned documents. This is a broad term that encompasses many types of evidence. Most people think of questioned document examinations as having to do with comparing handwriting samples, and many forensic cases still involve handwriting analysis, but this is rapidly changing as many documents are now being created by digital means. As we shall see, questioned document analysis involves so much more than just handwriting: charred and indented writing, paper and ink analysis, forgeries, watermarks, etc. Handwritten documents are a type of *pattern evidence* that consists of markings that are believed to be individual to each person. Like other types of pattern evidence such as fingerprints and firearms, questioned document examiners are largely trained by classical apprenticeship methods, where the trainee spends 2–3 years learning from a professional document examiner, mostly one on one.

Of all of the disciplines of forensic science, questioned document analysis is one that is most commonly involved in civil cases. Many questioned document examiners spend as much time on civil cases as they do on crimes. Some of these civil cases are very famous and have helped give questioned document analysis much (but not always favorable) publicity. An interesting example of handwriting examination in a famous civil case involving the will of Howard Hughes can be found at the end of the chapter in the Case Studies section.

In this chapter, both handwriting and digital media will be considered as sources of questioned documents. Although there are still typewriters being used to create documents, their use has dropped drastically and they will not be covered in detail in this chapter.

What Is a Questioned Document?

A *questioned document* is any written or printed communication whose source or authenticity is in doubt. The document does not have to be written on paper. Questioned documents have been written on the sides of houses, on mirrors and on tables. They can be written in ink, blood, paint or even lipstick. Questioned documents include forged passports, wills, currency, draft cards and driver's licenses. Anytime there is commerce between people that involves a document, there is the potential for fraud, forgery, alteration, counterfeiting or theft. Questioned document examiners must know a great deal about writing, printing, typewriting, inks, papers and methods of altering or obliterating writing. Documents are unique in that they are subject to the *best evidence rule*. This means that the original document must be examined and admitted into court. With few exceptions, copies of documents are not permitted for identification and court purposes. This rule has even been extended to movies before they were made digitally.

Questioned Document Examiner

Document Examiners compare unknown handwriting, typewriting and other documentary evidence with known standards in an attempt to establish the origin or authenticity of the unknown materials. They also attempt to restore obliterated or damaged writings and analyze paper and inks. This field has, over time, become more dependent upon chemical methods for the analysis of writing instruments and inks and obliterated or altered writing. The educational trend among examiners is to require a college degree. There are few college level and continuing education courses on questioned document examination. The path to the profession is generally through an apprenticeship. This is similar to the way that people become fingerprint examiners or firearms examiners. In questioned document examination, the apprenticeship lasts 2–4 years. The training program consists of literature readings and research, lectures, examinations and practical problems. There are also mock trials toward the end of the training period. When a document examiner has completed the apprenticeship, (s)he becomes a *journeyman examiner*. Then there is a voluntary certification process through the American Board of Forensic Document Examiners (ABFDE), http://www.abfde.org/. This certification is a tremendous advantage to the questioned document examiner because it adds greatly to one's qualifications as an expert, especially in court. The professional organization of questioned document examiners is the American Society of Questioned Document Examiners, ASQDE, http://www.asqde.org/. A bachelor's degree in a natural science or a related field is highly desirable as is ABFDE certification.

Sometimes, questioned document examination is confused with *graphology (graphoanalysis)*. Graphologists claim to be able to discern certain personality characteristics by examination of someone's handwriting. For example, around the time that President Nixon was impeached, at least one graphologist published an article analyzing Nixon's handwriting and purporting to show that his handwriting indicated that he was dishonest. There is no scientific basis for linking personality traits to handwriting characteristics. Unfortunately, some judges have confused graphology with questioned document analysis and have permitted graphologists to testify in court concerning matters of questioned document identification and authenticity. Graphologists are not permitted to become certified by the ABFDE. Some attorneys, facing the selection of a jury for a trial, will enlist the help of graphologists to aid in uncovering hidden biases in potential jurors that could help or hinder the attorney's case.

Handwriting Analysis

Handwriting and hand printing evidence is the most common and most challenging of all of the examinations that document examiners are called upon to perform. Even though computer printing is replacing handwriting in many applications, there are still many types of documents that are handwritten or which contain handwritten signatures that must be compared. Handwriting comparisons have been admissible in U.S. courts for more than 100 years. The basis for handwriting comparisons and conclusions is that a person's handwriting contains a number of unique, reproducible characteristics that can be individualized to that person. There are no standards for the amount of handwriting sample that must be present in order to make a comparison or the number of unique features that must be found in the known and unknown specimens. There is also no hard and fast definition of what constitutes a unique feature. Little has been reported in the scientific literature that would conclusively establish the basis for individualization of handwriting. In recent years, these issues have been brought up in courts during challenges to the identification of a writer from their handwriting. Increasingly, judges have ruled that there is not a sufficient scientific basis for the individuality of handwriting. The National Academy of Sciences Forensic Science Committee also questioned the validity of handwriting comparisons as it did for other types of pattern evidence, based upon the lack of scientific validation of the techniques used. The Scientific Working Group for Questioned Documents (SWGDOC) has been working on standards for document examination (http://swgdoc.org). They have a number of standards for various areas of questioned document examination on their website.

Attempts are being made to develop digital methods to process handwriting in the effort to minimize the subjectivity of handwriting analysis. Recent computer programs being scrutinized are CEDAR-FOX and Hybrid Deep Learning architecture (HDL). This is an area of research that continues to evolve.

How Handwriting Develops

The methods used in schools to teach people to print and then write have changed little over the past century or more. Most schools use a variation of either the Palmer method or the Zaner-Bloser method of teaching handwriting. Each method uses a set of printing and writing fonts. Figure 11.1 shows a sample of some Palmer fonts. The capital and lower case letters are written out on a large, lined piece of paper mounted atop the blackboard in front of the room and each student spends many hours copying the letters and eventually making words. The students are initially evaluated by the teacher on the degree to which they are able to exactly copy the letters and words. A more recent system of handwriting called cursive is

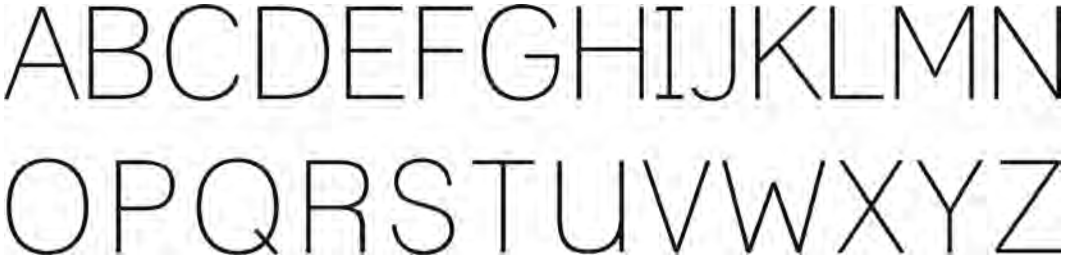


Figure 11.1 Palmer fonts. These letter shapes are commonly used to teach young children to print.

a sort of bridge between printing and writing. This is sometimes used after printing is taught or on its own. In recent years, the trend is to teach only cursive and some states are opting to stop teaching beyond print altogether. Once the student has achieved a measure of penmanship and dexterity so that someone else can read their hand printing or writing, the lessons shift toward what is being written rather than how it looks. At this point, students pay less attention to the appearance of their handwriting and the writing process becomes internalized and "automatic". Each person brings embellishments to their writing to make it their own. It becomes such a habit that people do not even think about how their writing looks. They are generally not concerned about the characteristics that make up their handwriting. Ironically, this makes it more difficult for someone to deliberately disguise their handwriting because they are not aware of its nuances and traits. As we will see later, this can be exploited when collecting known specimens of someone's handwriting.

Even though handwriting becomes internalized with time, it is not static and unchanging like fingerprints. Handwriting changes as a person ages. This may be due to a matter of personal preference or to changes in dexterity brought on by advancing age or to infirmity or disease. Handwriting can also change, although less markedly, as the purpose of the writing changes. Depending upon the circumstances, a person's signature may be very neat or practically illegible. A long, languid love letter will have different handwriting characteristics (it is usually readable) than notes scribbled during a physics lecture. In spite of these circumstantial changes, a person's handwriting maintains its essential unique features regardless of the circumstances surrounding the writing. Other factors can also affect handwriting on a short- or long-term basis. One of the most profound influences is health. Diseases can cause temporary or permanent weakness of muscles that control writing. Sometimes, changes happen gradually over time and sometimes they may be quite abrupt such as the case of a hand injury or arthritis. Tremors caused by advancing age or diseases such as Parkinson's disease may cause major changes in handwriting. Alcohol and drugs may cause temporary changes to writing. If the subject suffers from chronic alcoholism or drug abuse, these changes may become permanent.

Handwriting Comparisons

Handwriting comparisons depend upon two major factors; the presence of sufficient unique characteristics in the questioned specimen of writing and the proper collection of *exemplars*, which are the specimens of writing from the suspected author. Handwriting has a natural variation and some of the characteristics of a person's handwriting depend upon the writing instrument, paper, physical condition and mental condition of the author at the time the document was written. Thus, the general rule of handwriting exemplars is that the exemplars should be as similar in all controllable aspects as the unknown. If the unknown is printed rather than cursive, the known must be printed. If the writing instrument used in the questioned document is pencil then the exemplars must also be collected in pencil. Because handwriting changes with time, known and unknown specimens must be of approximately the same age.

Exemplars can be *requested* or *nonrequested*. Requested exemplars are samples of handwriting that the author is asked to provide. These samples are taken under conditions that are established by the document examiner. They are usually the preferred method of getting known handwriting specimens because of the high degree of control that the examiner has over their collection. Nonrequested exemplars are already-existing documents that are part of the suspect's everyday correspondence. These are collected instead of requested specimens when the suspect is uncooperative, unavailable, incapacitated or deceased. They may also be collected along with requested samples for additional comparison purposes when it is suspected that the suspect may be purposefully altering his handwriting. There are rules and guidelines for the collection of requested and nonrequested writings. They are given as follows.

Requested Exemplars

Requested exemplars are sought by an investigator or may be ordered by a court. There is no question of authenticity in these circumstances so admissibility in court is usually not an issue. When exemplars are requested, the circumstances of the session are arranged so that the conditions are as similar to those of the unknown sample as possible. These include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Unless it is known for certain that the questioned document was made when the writer was in an uncomfortable position, the subject should be made as comfortable as possible. The chair, table and lighting should be optimal.
- The same type and color of writing instrument should be used. This means that, if the questioned document were written with a blue gel pen, for example, so should the exemplar.
- The paper should be the same type (lined or unlined) for both exemplar and unknown.
- The exemplar should always be taken by dictation. The subject is usually not shown the questioned document and is not allowed to copy it. Dictation reduces opportunities to alter handwriting. Remember that the act of handwriting is subconscious. Altering one's handwriting on purpose takes conscious effort. If a passage is dictated, the subject must listen to the words and write them down. This makes it harder to concentrate on disguising the handwriting.
- Sufficient exemplars should be taken. Requesting long passages of handwriting will ensure that a representative sample is being gathered. It also helps to uncover attempts to disguise handwriting. As the length of the passage increases, it becomes increasingly difficult to maintain deliberately altered writing. Eventually, most people will lapse back into their habitual ways of writing.
- Although document examiners recommend that the subject should not see the actual questioned document, it is often helpful to dictate some phrases and sentences from the document. This is especially important where there are misspellings or mistakes in grammar in the questioned document. The subject may repeat these same mistakes in the exemplar.

- Exemplars should be taken in context. If the questioned document is a check, then the subject should be asked to fill out a number of checks (10–20) for various amounts. If the questioned document is a signature on a document, then the subject should be asked to write his or her signature many times on documents similar to the questioned document.

There are inherent disadvantages to requested writings. Foremost is that it calls attention to the fact that the subject's handwriting is at issue and the subject may then be tempted to alter their handwriting. This may also cause the subject to be apprehensive or nervous. These conditions may cause unintended alterations in handwriting. There are also times when it is pretty obvious that the suspect is attempting to disguise handwriting. In order to minimize this activity, there are a number of strategies that can be used. These include taking frequent breaks and even taking the requested writings over several days, challenging the suspect on the abnormal appearance of his handwriting and using other requested and nonrequested specimens.

Nonrequested Exemplars

Nonrequested writing consists of documents written by the subject for purposes other than the questioned document case. They may be written in the normal course of business or correspondence or documents such as diaries. They are likely to represent the writer's true handwriting. The writer did not write the document with the idea that it may be used as an exemplar or that it was to be part of a criminal or civil action. No emphasis or attention is directed at the writing. Even though nonrequested writings represent the writer's true penmanship, there are also disadvantages to this type of exemplar. First, unless these writings clearly identify the author, it may be difficult to have them introduced as evidence in court. Also, the nonrequested writing will likely not bear any resemblance to the questioned document and may not contain a sufficient number of letter combinations, words or phrases from the questioned document, making comparison more difficult. It is also important that the exemplar and the questioned document be about the same age. Many questioned document examiners prefer that the exemplars consist of a combination of requested and nonrequested samples.

Characteristics Used for Comparison of Handwriting

Handwriting comparisons can be complex and difficult depending upon the characteristics of the unknown specimen and the circumstances surrounding the case. Nonetheless, there are a few basic rules that guide examiners in their analyses. They should be kept in mind at all times:

- No two people have identical handwriting.
- There is a natural variation in a person's writing and that he or she will not write the same letter or number exactly the same way twice. This is one reason why large samples of writings are needed for the examiner to learn the individual's range of variation in his or her writing.
- There is no one single writing characteristic that is so unique by itself, that it will individualize handwriting.
- There is no set number of characteristics that must be present for an examiner to identify the author of a questioned document. As with any type of

evidence comparison: There must be sufficient number of similarities between the known and unknown and no unexplainable differences.

- As with other types of pattern evidence, the scientific validity of handwriting comparisons to establish authorship was discussed by the NAS Forensic Science Committee and the validation and standardization is now part of the work of the Organization of Scientific Area Committees under NIST.

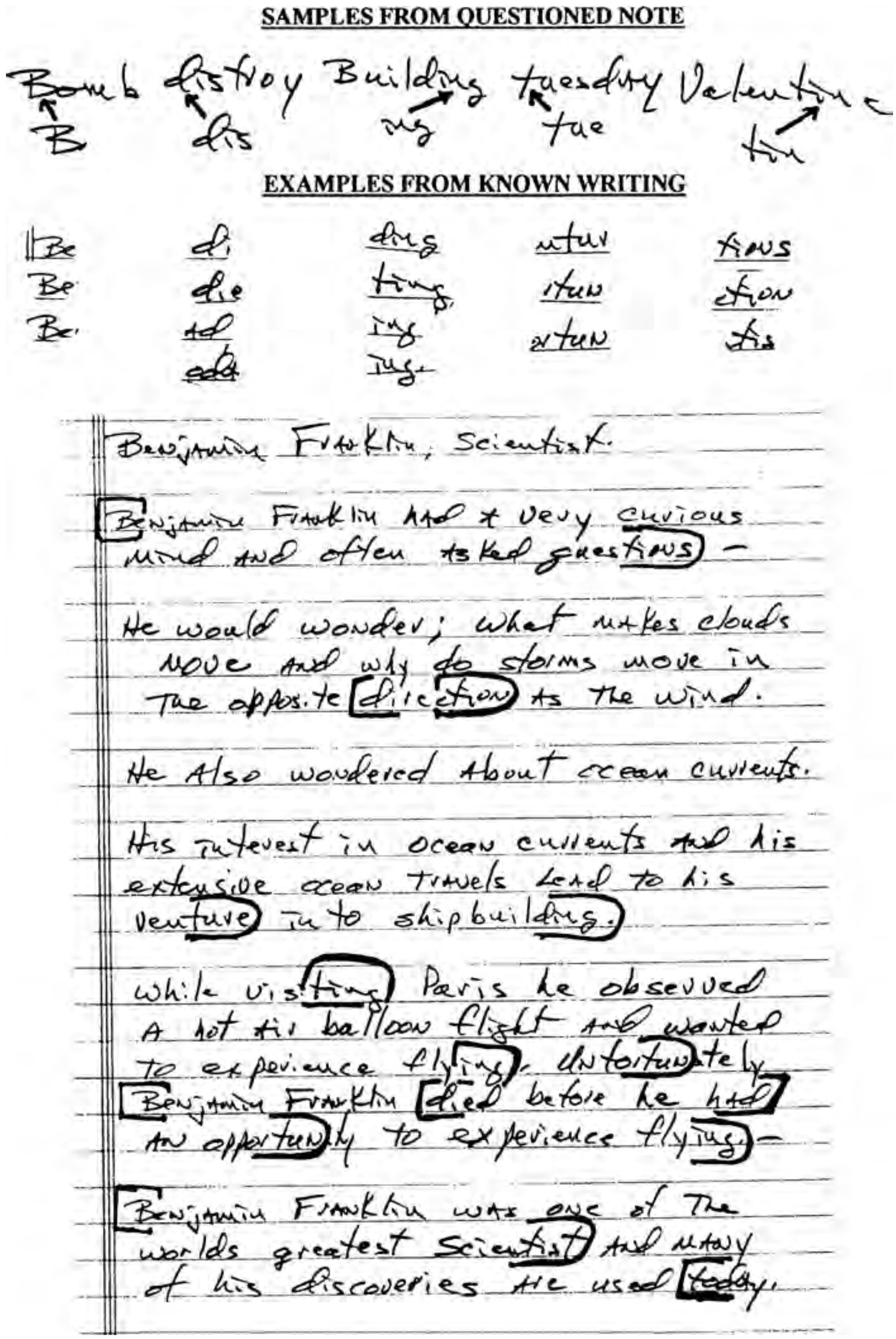
As with many types of evidence, handwriting contains class characteristics and those that can potentially be used in individualization. Document examiners must make sure that their conclusions about the authenticity or authorship of a questioned document are based on individual characteristics. For example, the *slant* of writing is generally a class characteristic, whereas *unusual flourishes* at the end of words or *ornate capital letters* are individual characteristics. When a questioned document examiner focuses on particular letters or letter combinations, he will generally create a chart that shows several instances of these letters in the known and unknown writing samples to demonstrate the natural variation in the writer's style and the similarity of the characteristic in both documents to the jury at a trial. This type of exhibit is shown in Figure 11.2.

Signatures can be especially problematic for a questioned document examiner. The questioned document may consist entirely of one signature. For example, a fraudulent check may have only the payee, the amount and the signature on it. Although all of this writing can be used for identification, the key is the signature. The characteristics of one's signature are very sensitive to context and the exemplars must be taken under conditions that approximate those under which the questioned document was made. Figure 11.3 shows how signatures are compared in a questioned document analysis. For example, if the questioned document is a check, then the requested exemplars would normally consist of a series of blank checks that the suspect would fill out to various payees for various amounts.

Fraud and Forgery

There are numerous cases where a forger attempts to mimic or forge another person's handwriting. Forgers will obtain authentic samples of handwriting from an author and then practice writing in the same style until they are proficient. Very often, this will occur with signatures. Unless the forger is an expert, attempts at forgery can usually be uncovered by careful examination of the writing by a questioned document examiner. Of course, when a document such as a check is forged, the merchant who takes the check does not have authentic samples of the real author's handwriting and even if he did, he would most probably not be able to tell that the check was a forgery. Some of the signs of forgery include differences in line quality (e.g., thickness, smoothness), connecting strokes, pen lifts, starts and stops and retouching. Figure 11.4 shows an analysis of a fraudulent document.

Sometimes, a document forger will resort to *tracing* a sample of someone else's handwriting. This may be accomplished in any of several ways. For example, the forger may put a piece of tracing paper over the document and trace the writing using a sharp object. This will be used as a template for the forged writing. Sometimes, a new document will be placed over the original and the writing directly traced onto the new document.



SAMPLES FROM QUESTIONED NOTE

Bomb distroy Building tuesday Valentine

B dis ing tue tin

EXAMPLES FROM KNOWN WRITING

Be di ding ntur tions

Be die ting itun ction

Be ad ing ntun tis

ada Ing

Benjamin Franklin, Scientist.

Benjamin Franklin had a very curious mind and often asked questions –

He would wonder; what makes clouds move and why do storms move in the opposite direction as the wind.

He Also wondered About ocean currents.

His interest in ocean currents and his extensive ocean travels lead to his venture into shipbuilding.

while visiting Paris he observed A hot air balloon flight and wanted to experience flying. Unfortunately Benjamin Franklin died before he had an opportunity to experience flying –

Benjamin Franklin was one of The worlds greatest Scientist and many of his discoveries Are used today.

Figure 11.2 A court document prepared by a questioned document examiner showing the comparison of handwriting characteristics from the questioned document and a known sample of the subject's handwriting. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.

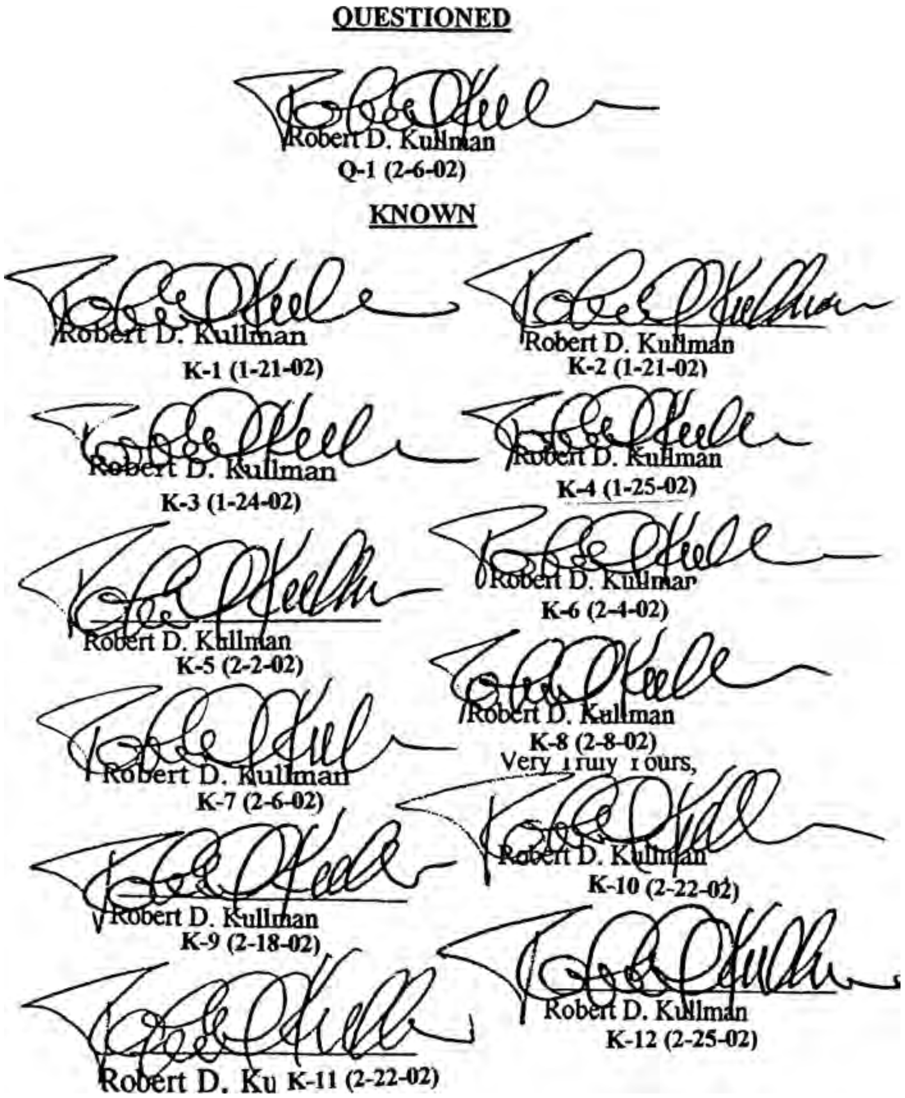
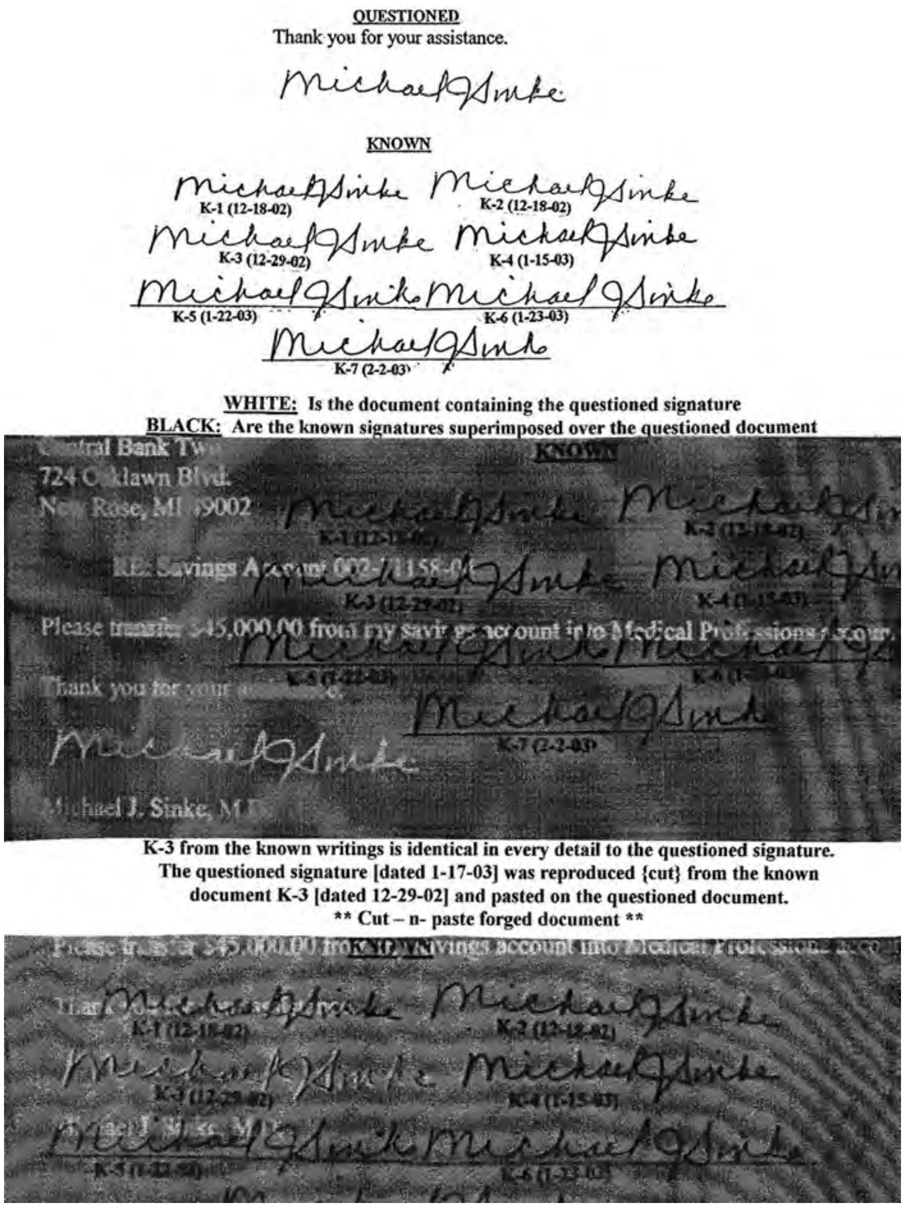

QUESTIONED
Robert D. Kullman
Q-1 (2-6-02)
KNOWN
Robert D. Kullman
K-1 (1-21-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-2 (1-21-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-3 (1-24-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-4 (1-25-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-5 (2-2-02)
Robert D. Kullmar
K-6 (2-4-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-7 (2-6-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-8 (2-8-02)
Very Truly Yours,
Robert D. Kullman
K-9 (2-18-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-10 (2-22-02)
Robert D. Ku K-11 (2-22-02)
Robert D. Kullman
K-12 (2-25-02)

Figure 11.3 Comparison of a questioned signature with known signatures. Note that several specimens of the known signature are taken to allow for natural variation in the signature. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.

Something for You to Do—Try Your Hand at Forgery

Take a document with your signature and then place a thin piece of paper over it and trace your signature on the top sheet. Then compare the signatures. When you trace handwriting like this, you invariably do it slowly so that you can capture as many of the handwriting characteristics as possible. Unless you have an extremely steady hand, the line quality of the tracing will be uneven and will look like it has been drawn. These characteristics are very common and questioned document examiners usually have little problem in detecting tracings.

The third and least elegant type of forgery occurs when the forger forgoes any pretense of copying or tracing someone else's handwriting. Instead, he will use his own handwriting, usually disguised, to write the document. Since the merchant



QUESTIONED

Thank you for your assistance.

Michael J Sinke

KNOWN

K-1 (12-18-02) K-2 (12-18-02)

K-3 (12-29-02) K-4 (1-15-03)

K-5 (1-22-03) K-6 (1-23-03)

K-7 (2-2-03)

WHITE: Is the document containing the questioned signature

BLACK: Are the known signatures superimposed over the questioned document

K-3 from the known writings is identical in every detail to the questioned signature. The questioned signature [dated 1-17-03] was reproduced {cut} from the known document K-3 [dated 12-29-02] and pasted on the questioned document.

** Cut – n- paste forged document **

Figure 11.4 This shows how a forged signature can be cut and pasted onto a document, in this case, a letter to a bank. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.

receiver of the document will not have ready access to the authentic handwriting of the victim of the forgery, he will not be able to tell that this is a forgery until after the document has been passed.

Erasures, Obliterations and Alterations

A large number of questioned document cases involve alteration of a document. There are several types of alterations. These include erasures, obliterations, additions and charring. In addition, a questioned document may be written on the top sheet of a pad of paper and then that sheet is removed and is unavailable to the document examiner. In these cases, it may be possible to determine what was written by visualizing the indented writing that appears on the sheets below the top sheet (see the section on "Indented Writing" below).

Erasures

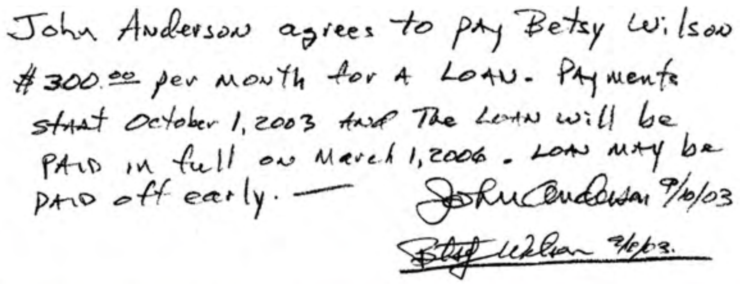
Erasure involves actually removing writing from a document through mechanical or chemical means. Mechanical erasures are accomplished by rubbing an abrasive material over the writing. If this is done thoroughly, it will be impossible to determine what writing was erased. It is not difficult, however, to determine that an erasure has occurred. Mechanical erasures invariably disturb some of the fibers in the paper and this can be seen with a stereomicroscope. Figure 11.5a shows a mechanical erasure, and Figure 11.5b shows the confirmation of the erasure using ESDA.

Chemical erasers are usually some type of bleaching agent that destroys the dyes in the ink so they are no longer visible. The paper will often be discolored or bleached where the chemical has been applied. Sometimes, the erased area will show up as a different color from the rest of the paper when exposed to infrared or ultraviolet light. Figure 11.6 shows a chemical erasure.

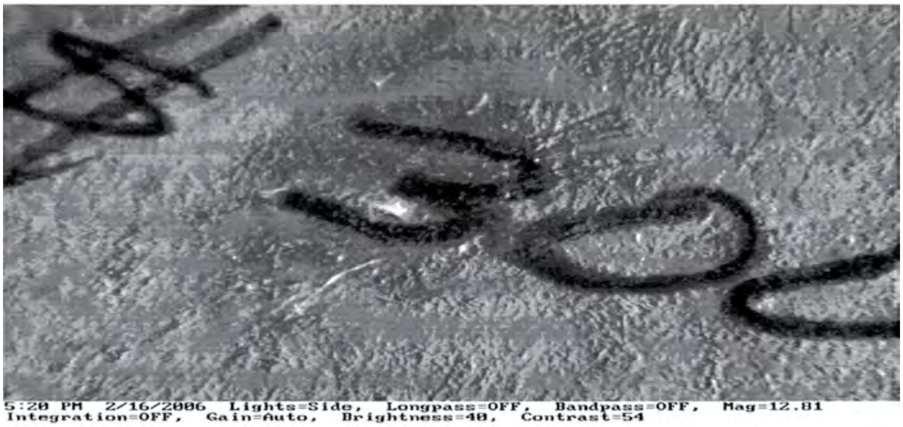
Obliterations

Besides erasure, there are other ways to render handwriting unreadable. It can be crossed out with another writing instrument or completely written over by another writing instrument such as a marking pen. In two cases examined by one of the authors of this book, a questioned document examiner brought some pages of computer printed contracts that had parts obliterated by a black marker. In both cases, his clients wanted to be able to see what was under the obliteration. In one of the cases, the writing was visualized by immersing the document in methyl alcohol. This dissolved enough of the marker to show the writing underneath. The marker on the other document case was resistant to solvents. Instead, some mineral oil was added to wet the document and then a strong light was shined through the marker. The obliterated printing could be seen (backward) on the back side of the document. This was held up to a mirror and photographed. In some cases, writing that has been crossed out with another writing instrument can be successfully recovered using infrared or ultraviolet light. If the ink used to cross out the document is transparent to the light, one can "see" through it to the writing below. This is shown in Figure 11.7, which is a draft card with the signature altered. The altered signature is transparent in the infrared light so that the real signature can be seen.

Another type of obliteration occurs when an attempt is made to destroy a document by burning. This can be done purposefully or accidentally as in cases of a house fire where documents are damaged. If the document is not completely burned up, it may be charred. This blackens the paper making it difficult to see the writing. Fortunately, some inks and pencil leads will burn more slowly than paper and the writing may be preserved and viewed under a strong or oblique light. Some charred writing is shown in Figure 11.8.

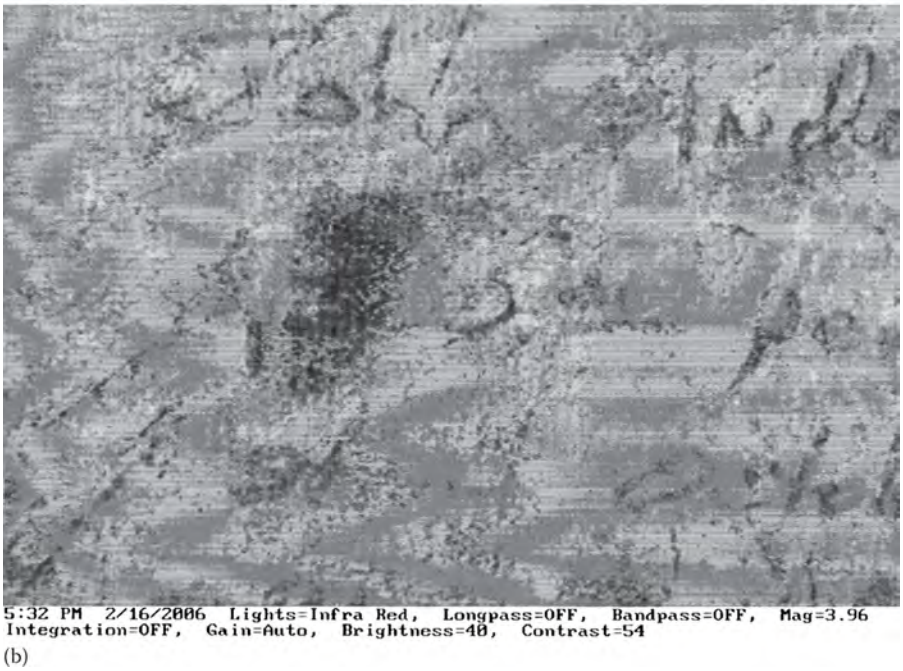


John Anderson agrees to pay Betsy Wilson
#300.00 per month for A LOAN. Payments
start October 1, 2003 and The LOAN will be
PAID in full on March 1, 2006. LOAN MAY be
PAID off early. — John Anderson 9/10/03
Betsy Wilson 9/10/03.



```
5:20 PM  2/16/2006  Lights=Side,  Longpass=OFF,  Bandpass=OFF,  Mag=12.81
Integration=OFF,  Gain=Auto,  Brightness=40,  Contrast=54
```

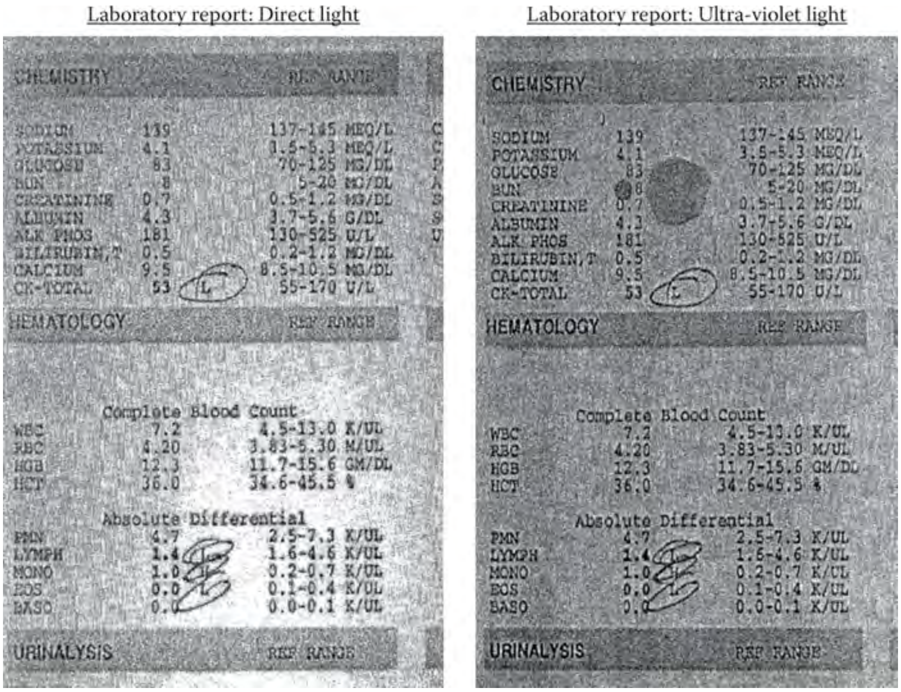
(a)



```
5:32 PM  2/16/2006  Lights=Infra Red,  Longpass=OFF,  Bandpass=OFF,  Mag=3.96
Integration=OFF,  Gain=Auto,  Brightness=40,  Contrast=54
```

(b)

Figure 11.5 (a) The top part of the figure is a questioned document concerning the payment of $300 per month on a loan. A close-up of the $300 indicates that the area where the "3" is has been altered by erasure. This is confirmed using an electrostatic detection apparatus (ESDA) shown in (b) that clearly shows the area where the "3" is has been erased. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.



Laboratory report: Direct light

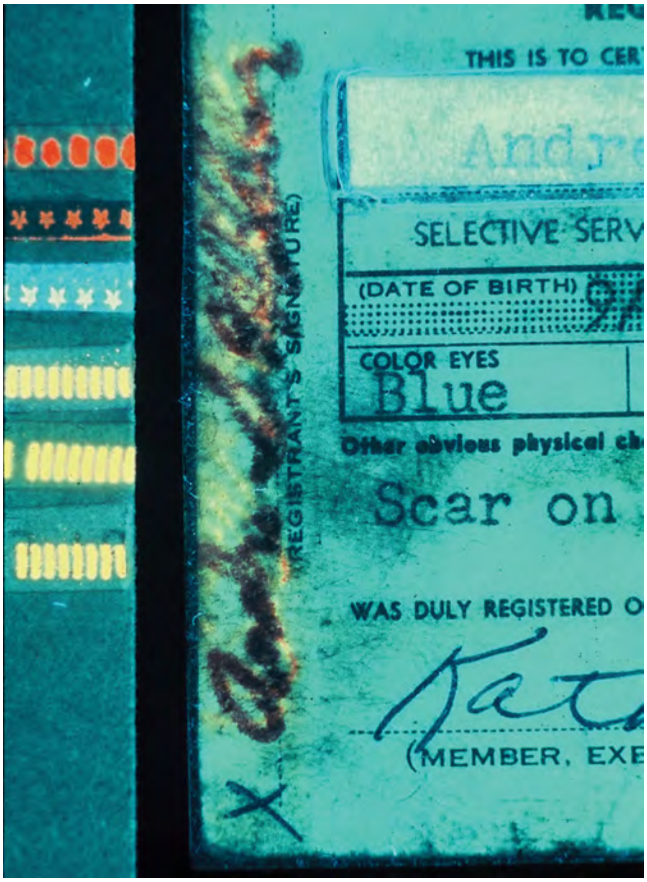
Laboratory report: Ultra-violet light

CHEMISTRY			REF RANGE
SODIUM	139		137-145 MEQ/L
POTASSIUM	4.1		3.5-5.3 MEQ/L
GLUCOSE	83		70-125 MG/DL
BUN	8		5-20 MG/DL
CREATININE	0.7		0.5-1.2 MG/DL
ALBUMIN	4.3		3.7-5.6 G/DL
ALK PHOS	181		130-525 U/L
BILIRUBIN,T	0.5		0.2-1.2 MG/DL
CALCIUM	9.5		8.5-10.5 MG/DL
CK-TOTAL	53	L	55-170 U/L

HEMATOLOGY			REF RANGE
	Complete Blood Count		
WBC	7.2		4.5-13.0 K/UL
RBC	4.20		3.83-5.30 M/UL
HGB	12.3		11.7-15.6 GM/DL
HCT	36.0		34.6-45.5 %
	Absolute Differential		
PMN	4.7		2.5-7.3 K/UL
LYMPH	1.4	L	1.6-4.6 K/UL
MONO	1.0	H	0.2-0.7 K/UL
EOS	0.0	L	0.1-0.4 K/UL
BASO	0.0		0.0-0.1 K/UL

URINALYSIS REF RANGE

Figure 11.6 This is an altered medical laboratory report. On the right side of the report, shown under ultraviolet light, there are two chemical erasure spots. The small one was a “3” and the larger one was a “H” with a circle around it. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.



THIS IS TO CER

Andr

SELECTIVE SERV

(DATE OF BIRTH) 9

COLOR EYES
Blue

Other obvious physical ch

Scar on

WAS DULY REGISTERED O

(MEMBER, EXE

(REGISTRANT'S SIGNATURE)

Figure 11.7 The altered signature in this draft card can be seen using ultraviolet light.

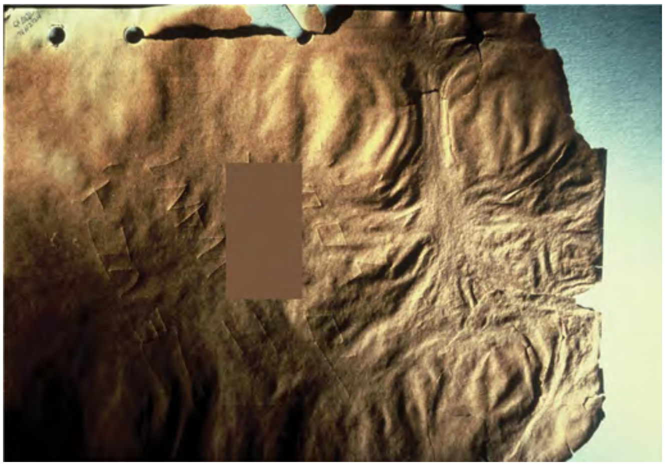


Figure 11.8 The lettering on this document can be clearly seen even though an attempt was made to burn the paper.

Indented Writing

Indented writing occurs when someone writes a document on the top sheet of a pad of paper. If the pressure of the writing instrument on the paper is great enough, an image of the writing can be seen in the sheets underneath the top page. Sometimes, TV shows or movies depict the restoration of indented writing by having someone lightly rub the indented writing with the side of a pencil lead. Not only does this not work, but it also destroys the evidence so that tests that do work cannot be used. One way that sometimes works is to shine a desk lamp on the indented writing at an oblique angle. Then the writing can be photographed. Oblique lighting is shown in Figure 11.9.

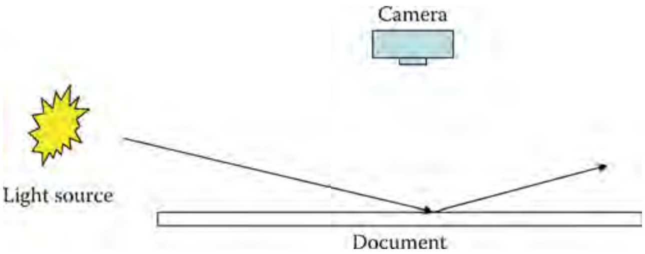


Figure 11.9 This shows how oblique lighting can be used to examine indented writing in a document.

Something for You to Do—Amaze Your Friends!

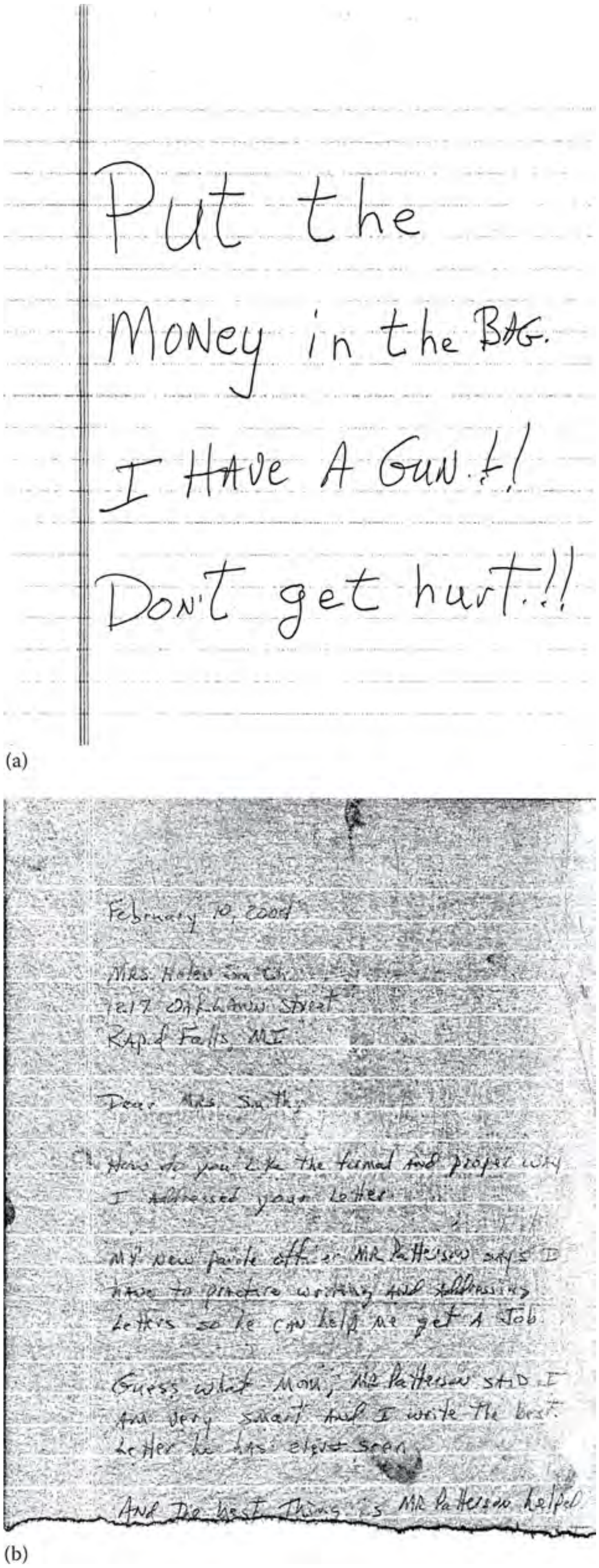
Get a pad of notebook paper (lined or unlined). Have someone else (it's not fair to do it yourself) write a message in pen or pencil on the top page. Do not tell them the purpose of doing this. Tell them to tear off the top page and hide it from you. Take a goose neck lamp or desk lamp if you have one or a large flashlight and hold it at a steep, oblique angle to the next sheet on the pad as shown in Figure 11.9. You should be able to read the indented writing on this page. It may help to turn out all of the lights in the room except for the one you are shining on the paper. You can then tell the writer what the message said. If the pen or pencil pressure was hard enough, you may be able to read the writing on the third page in the pad. Do not use heavy weight stationary or computer paper for this as the indentation may be too slight to read.

A great improvement in the detection of indented writing is the *electrostatic detection apparatus* (ESDA). This instrument is capable of recovering indented writing several pages under the original. ESDA takes advantage of the fact that a document that is charged with static electricity will build up greater charge within the furrows of the indentations in the paper, even microscopic ones. In practice, the document is laid on a flat platen on the ESDA. It is covered with a clear plastic sheet to protect it. The plastic is made to adhere tightly to the document by a vacuum applied from below. Next, a wand charged with high-voltage electricity is passed over the plastic sheet, imparting a high static charge to the plastic sheet and the document. Then a fine mist of toner, similar to copier toner, is applied to the charged plastic sheet. Particles of the toner are attracted to the sheet in general, but more so to the furrows of the indented writing. Thus, the toner forms an image of the indented writing. This can be photographed or a sticky sheet of plastic laid on top of the toner to capture it permanently. Figure 11.10a shows a note given to a bank teller during a robbery. Figure 11.10b shows indented writing recovered by ESDA from the sheet underneath the extortion letter.

ESDA also has other uses besides reading indented writing. Sometimes, a questioned document examiner may be confronted with a document that has two overlapping strokes usually made by two different writing instruments. The question here is which stroke was made first. One of the authors of this book has been asked to examine several such cases in connection with student cheating on exams. In a typical case, students would be called upon to do problems in a space provided underneath the question on an exam. If the student left the answer space blank, then the grader was instructed to put a red ink slash through the empty space. The exam would be returned to the student who would then fill in an answer in that space and then question the instructor about why their answer was not acceptable. The cheating can be uncovered by determining if that handwritten answer was written over top of the red ink slash. In a few cases, this could be determined by strong, oblique lighting and a stereomicroscope. In all cases, ESDA can give an unequivocal answer and is the method of choice for such over-writings.

Additions

Sometimes, a person may wish to fraudulently alter the writing on a document by adding something later. For example, numbers may be added to a check to change the amount. Even if the writer uses the same color pen as the original document,



(a)

Put the
Money in the BAG.
I HAve A Gun!!
Don't get hurt!!

(b)

February 10, 2004

MRS. Helen Smith
1217 OAkLAWN Street
RApid Falls, MI

Dear MRS. Smith,

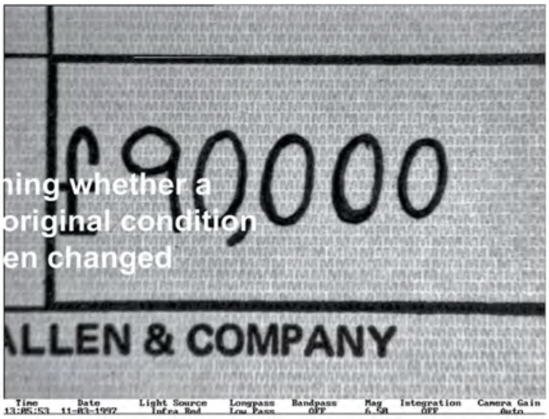
How do you Like the formal And proper way I Addressed your Letter.

MY New parole officer MR Patterson says I have to practice writing And Addressing Letters so he can help me get A Job

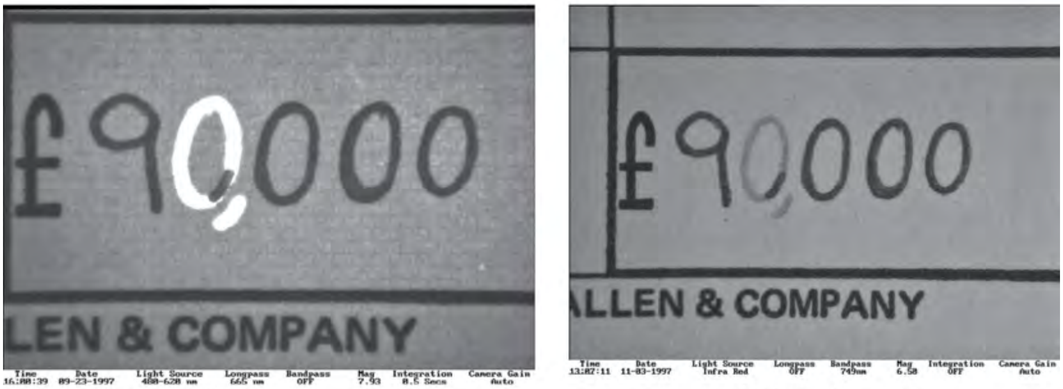
Guess what Mom, MR Patterson SAID I Am very smart And I write The best Letter he has ever seen.

And The best Thing is MR Patterson helped

Figure 11.10 (a) A much better way to examine indented writing is by ESDA. This note was given to a bank teller during a robbery. (b) This is what was recovered on the paper that the note was written on. This writing was made on the sheet above this one in the pad and the writing was indented into the page containing the robbery note. An ESDA machine. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.



Normal view



IR fluorescence

IR absorption

Figure 11.11 Added writing. You can clearly see with infrared illumination and fluorescence, the extra zero. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.

forgeries like this can often be detected. Many times the amount of writing that is added is too small to determine if the author of the addition is different than the author of the original document; however, the chemical characteristics of the ink in the pen may be different. One pen may appear to be a different color when the document is exposed to ultraviolet or infrared light. Of course, most forgers will not know this in advance. An example of this can be seen in Figure 11.11 that shows the addition of a number to a monetary figure.

Typewriters, Photocopiers and Digital Devices

Today, many documents that would have been handwritten are now printed. Much correspondence that would have been mailed is now emailed and a high percentage of that is never printed. The typewriter has been largely replaced by the computer printer. Copy machines are still widely used but some computer printers can make copies of documents. Before the advent of computers, most printed documents were made by typewriter. Mechanical printing machines (typewriters, computer printers and copiers) produce printed (or sometimes cursive) letters. Questioned documents made by these machines must be analyzed by different means than handwriting. Unless the machine is malfunctioning in some way or is aging, its printing will look very much like printing from other machines of the same type

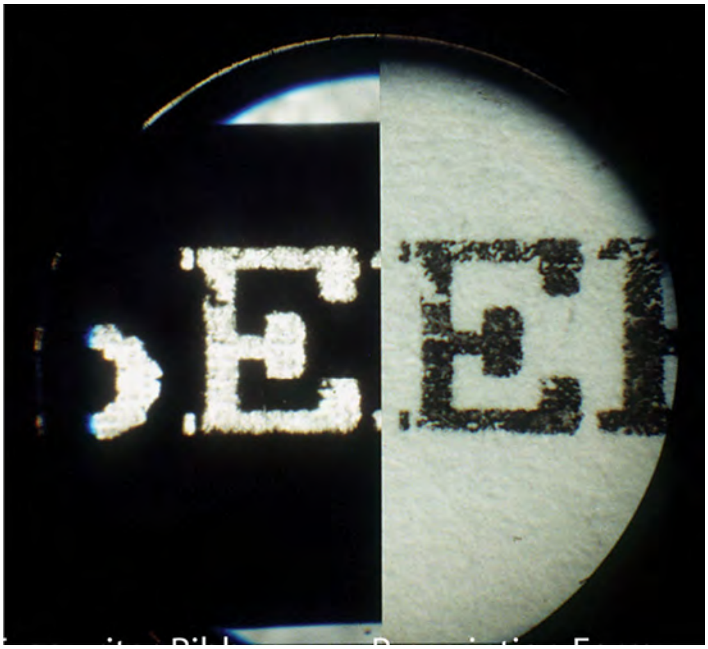


Figure 11.12 Characteristics of typewriter type. The flaws in the "E" from this typewriter can be clearly seen and are common to the document and the typewriter ribbon. Courtesy of Robert Kullman, Speckin Labs, Okemos, MI.

and the printed material cannot be individualized to a particular machine. It is only when the machine develops unique quirks or characteristics that it becomes possible to associate a document with a particular printer or copier or typewriter.

Typewriters

Typewriters work by having raised letters or numbers strike a piece of carbon film which then leaves an impression of the figure on the paper. Originally, each key on the keyboard was attached to a single figure. Then, typewriters were improved when IBM developed the Selectric® typewriter, which had a small ball with all of the letters, numbers and symbols on its surface. When a key is pressed, the ball rotates so that the proper figure is in line with the carbon ribbon. In theory, it should be difficult to individualize a document to a particular typewriter because of mass production of the same make and model. In practice, typewriters sometimes develop individual characteristics over time. Figures may bend or chip or get filled in so that they develop unique characteristics on the page. This is less common with the ball type of instrument than with individual keys. In order to make determinations about the association of a questioned, typewritten document with a typewriter, the typewriter itself should be submitted as evidence. Figure 11.12 shows a magnified section of a typewriter ribbon with the letter "E" and a prescription form containing the same letter. Imperfections in the letter can be used to associate the prescription form to a particular typewriter.

Photocopiers

Photocopiers are routinely used today to make high-quality copies of documents. In fact, some color copiers make such faithful copies that fraudulent documents are often made by making copies. Every year agents from the U.S. Department of the Treasury seize counterfeit money that was made using a high quality color copier and paper similar to that used to print real money. Most photocopiers work on a similar principle to ESDA. A cylindrical drum is coated with a light-sensitive material. The drum is charged with static electricity. Because the surface is light sensitive, the static charge dissipates when exposed to light. An image of the document is captured by a camera device and then transferred to the surface of the drum. Wherever the document has printing, it will be dark and the static charge will remain on the drum. Where there is no printing on the document, it will be light and the static charge in those regions will dissipate. A *toner*, made of finely divided carbon particles is then applied to the surface of the drum. The toner is attracted and held in those regions where there is a static charge. The rest of the toner falls away. The paper is then passed over the drum. The toner is transferred to the paper and then heat is applied to fuse the toner to the paper. Under normal circumstances, it is not possible to individualize a document to a particular printer. There may be circumstances where individual markings are deposited on paper when copies are made. For example, the device that feeds the paper into the machine leaves *grabber marks* on the paper. These may yield information about the make and perhaps the model of the copier. As the copier is used, toner may build up in areas of the cylinder or in some cases, there may be toner gaps. These can then leave unique markings on each copy made by that machine. Once the machine is cleaned, these will usually go away. There may also develop mechanical defects in the cylinder or camera that cause permanent unique markings to be deposited on copies.

Digital Devices

Computer printers come in a variety of types. The first ones were of the *dot-matrix* type that deposited letters on paper in a similar fashion to typewriters except much faster. Today, computer printers are chiefly of two types: *laser printers* and *ink jet printers*. Laser printers work very much like photocopiers. They use similar toners and lasers to help with the deposition and fusing processes. They are very fast printers. Ink jet printers literally spray ink on the paper in the form of letters, numbers and symbols. The solvent in the ink evaporates rapidly, leaving the dyes behind. Modern technology has resulted in the development of very reliable printers that seldom have defects and thus, do not exhibit individual characteristics very often.

If a signature has been copied on a printer the differences can be seen when magnifying the writing. A printer will make the image using a series of dots using the ink in the cartridges. Printers use three colors; magenta, cyan and yellow, along with black to form color images. Figure 11.13 shows an original writing sample on paper using an ink pen and a copy made in a printer of the same writing. When magnified, the irregular outlines on the copy due to the dot printing and lack of pen streaks are visible.

Many business establishments and medical offices now use biometric signature pads to record your signature digitally. There are two types of digital signatures; the electronic signature and the digital signature. The later has higher standards for security and compliance, employs a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) and is utilized by larger corporations.

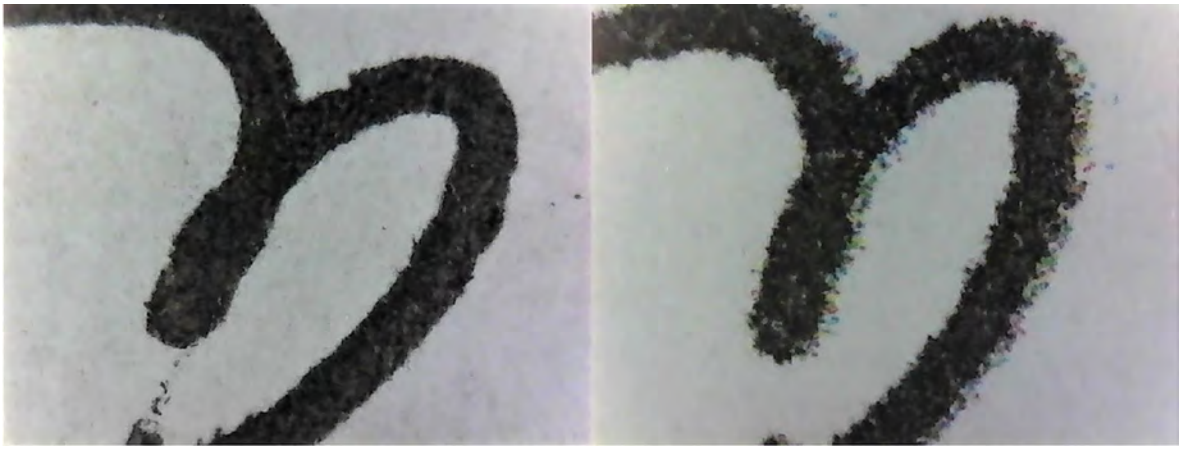


Figure 11.13 On the left is the original signature using a black in pen. On the right is an inkjet photocopy of the same signature. Notice the pixelated colored dots in the copied signature along with the lack of extended ink streaks from the original.

Paper Examination

There are some questioned document cases where the issue is whether a multipage document has had pages added to it after the original document was written. A will or contract falls into this category. If the document is handwritten, then there may be differences in the characteristics of the writing or writing instrument. If the document is printed, there may not be any obvious differences in the printing but there may be differences in the paper. Even though papers may all look the same, there are chemical and physical differences between them. Some papers contain fillers that help improve color and appearance. Some papers are coated to facilitate printing. Sizing agents are added to help keep ink from penetrating into the paper. Chemical tests can be performed on paper to identify these additives, but they are mostly destructive and therefore cannot be done on questioned documents.

Nondestructive physical examinations may also be done on paper. Even though different papers may be nominally 8.5 × 11 in., there may be slight, but consistent differences from paper to paper that careful measurements can reveal. Likewise, the thickness of papers may be slightly different, although these differences are in the thousandths of inches and measurements must be made with a special paper micrometer.

Ink Examinations

Ink examinations may be used to help identify the writing instrument or even to help determine how old a document or part of a document is. Identification of the writing instrument may be accomplished by analysis of the dyes in the ink. The United States Secret Service maintains a library of more than 9500 ink samples that can be compared to a sample from a questioned document.

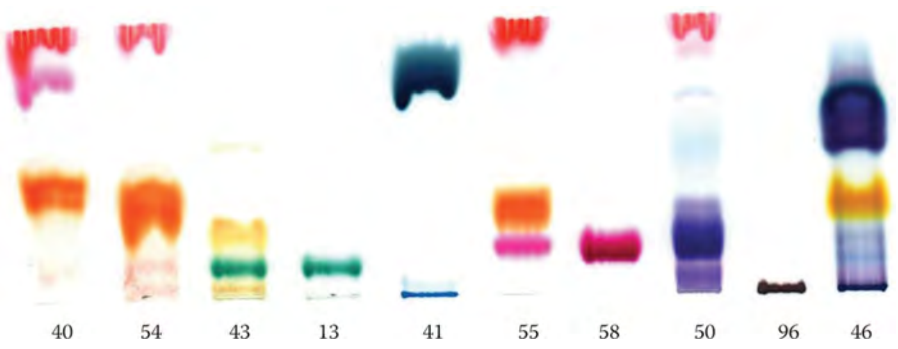


Figure 11.14 This TLC plate shows 10 pens. All off the dyes in the pens are different and the pens can be easily distinguished.

The questioned document examiner must not deface the document when taking ink samples. There are tools available that can punch out a hole in a document that is smaller in diameter than the width of a pen stroke. This way samples can be taken of the ink in a document without ruining the writing or unduly defacing the document. One of the more popular methods for analyzing ink samples is thin layer chromatography. Ink plugs from the questioned document can be compared against those from the writing instrument in question. A thin layer chromatogram of ink samples is shown in Figure 11.14.

Document dating using the characteristics of ink writing is becoming more common as methods of analysis have improved. There are basically two types of cases where this comes into play. The first involves a series of dated writings made on the same document at different times. An example of this is patient's medical chart where the doctor makes entries each time the patient is examined. In medical malpractice cases, the issue of when a particular entry was made in the record can be important evidence. The entry may have a date on it and the examiner would want to know if this entry was made after the one before it in the record and before the one after it. In other cases, the age of the entire document may be at issue. This may be a matter of determining whether the dyes used in the writing ink existed at the time that the document was purported to have been written. For example, the dye *crystal violet* was introduced into blue ballpoint pens in about 1956. If a document was written with this dye and purports to be written in 1940, this is clearly fraud. The United States Secret Service ink database contains starting and ending dates of manufacture for all of the inks in its library.

Recently, new methods have been developed for determining the age of an ink sample by tracking the degradation of certain dyes as the ink ages. One method for doing this is *laser desorption mass spectrometry* (LDMS). In this technique, a laser is used to drive molecules of ink off the surface of a document. The molecules are ionized and separated in a mass spectrometer. As the dye ages due to light and oxygen, it degrades into smaller molecules. This process can be roughly correlated with time. One common example of this is the LDMS of rhodamine B in ballpoint pens. The structure of this dye is shown in Figure 11.15. Note that there are four ethyl ($–CH_2–CH_3$) groups on this molecule. As it ages, the dye successively loses these groups and they are replaced by hydrogen atoms (–H). The mass spectrum loses 28 mass units each time a methyl group is lost. Figure 11.16 shows the mass spectrum of this dye. The mass spectrum shows how this dye degrades.

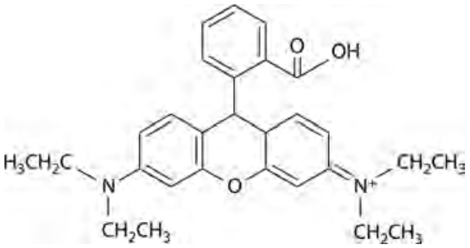


Figure 11.15 The structure of rhodamine B, a common dye in pens.

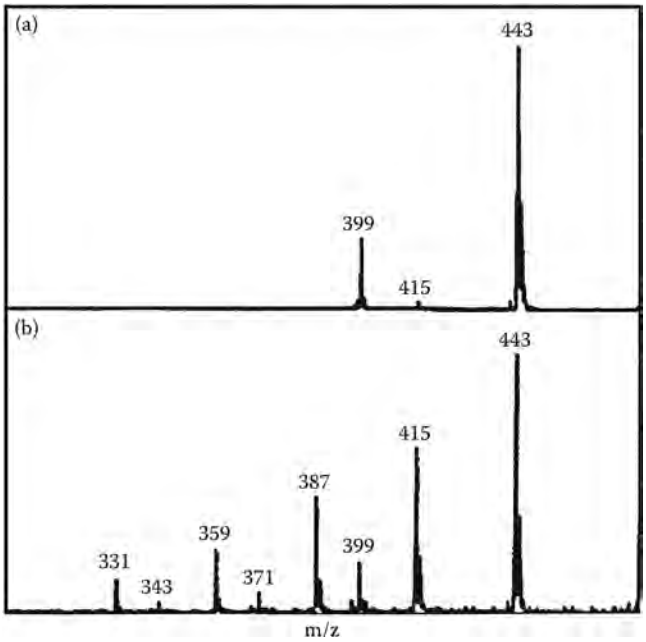


Figure 11.16 Mass spectra of partially aged rhodamine B: (a) a relatively new sample of ink and (b) a sample that has aged for many months or years. Each of the major, lower weight peaks represents the replacement of successive ethyl groups (MW = 29) with a hydrogen (AW = 1). Courtesy of John Allison.

Physical Matches on Torn Paper

In a questioned document analysis, torn paper is evidence in a surprising number of cases. For example, a piece of paper may be torn in half and a document may be written on one of the halves. A piece of paper may be torn out of a spiral notebook, leaving jagged edges on the torn paper and on the remnants that are often left enmeshed within the metal spirals. Papers such as rolls of stamps may contain perforations that have irregular edges where the stamps have been torn off. One such case occurred many years ago when someone sent a series of threatening letters to a U.S. Senator, who saved the letters and envelopes and turned them over to the FBI. The stamps on the letters were collected. When a suspect was identified, a search warrant was executed for his home and a roll of stamps was seized. The perforations on the stamp at the end of the roll and on the stamps on the letters were all compared and it was determined that the stamps on the

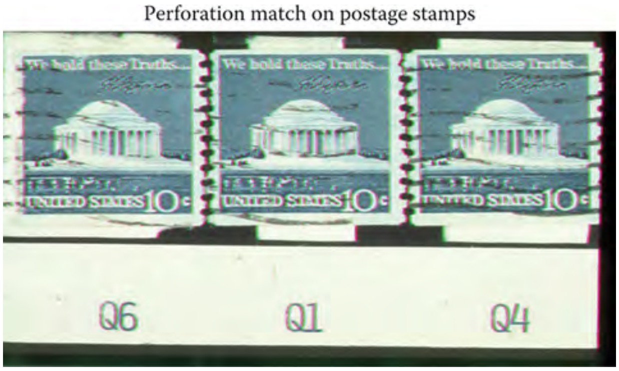


Figure 11.17 Physical match with stamps. The way that the torn perforations in the stamps line up can be seen clearly. This is a very old case as can be seen by the postage (10 cents) on the stamps!

letters came off of that roll of stamps. Figure 11.17 shows some of the physical matches made on the stamps. You can see that this is a very old case as the stamps cost only 10 cents!

Summary

A questioned document can be almost any object that contains handwritten or printed characters whose source or authenticity is in doubt. Questioned document examiners are specially trained professionals who undergo a 2–3 year apprenticeship to learn how to examine documents. The identification of handwriting is the single most common and important activity of a questioned document examiner. The key to being able to successfully compare handwriting is to have sufficient, high-quality known samples (exemplars). These can be requested from the subject or be nonrequested samples taken from the subject's correspondence.

Handwriting is learned at an early age and quickly becomes an internalized, subconscious activity. At this point, people develop their own, unique style of handwriting. If a sufficient number of these characteristics are present in a questioned document and exemplar, then the document examiner may conclude that the handwriting was written by the subject.

In addition to the comparison of handwritings, document examiners compare type writings, photocopier copies and computer printed documents. They also examine erasures and obliterations as well as indented writings. Besides writing and printing, questioned document examiners are called upon to compare samples of paper and ink.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is not a good practice in taking requested handwriting exemplars?
   a. Collect a lot of writing samples
   b. Have the subject copy the questioned document

   c. Use the same type of writing implement and paper as the questioned document
   d. Dictate the requested exemplar
2. Which of the following is not an example of a questioned document?
   a. A forged passport
   b. A stolen traveler's check
   c. A copy of a 10 dollar bill made in a photocopier
   d. A threatening message written in spray paint on the side of someone's house
   e. All of the above are examples of a questioned document
3. Which of the following is not true of a questioned document examiner?
   a. They can learn their craft solely by getting a college degree in questioned document examination
   b. They usually perform a 2–3 year apprenticeship with a practicing questioned document examiner
   c. There is an opportunity for a questioned document examiner to achieve certification after training
   d. Questioned document examiners do not have to have a college degree to become certified.
4. Which of the following is not an acceptable method for revealing indented writing?
   a. Oblique lighting
   b. Intense lighting
   c. Rubbing with a pencil lead
   d. ESDA
5. Which of the following method is used for the comparison of ink samples?
   a. Gas chromatography
   b. Thin-layer chromatography
   c. Infrared spectrophotometry
   d. Fluorescence spectroscopy
6. In the Mormon will case, discussed at the end of the chapter in the Case Studies section, one of the characteristics of the will that indicated that it was not Howard Hughes writing was
   a. Written in a forced, halting manner
   b. Written in pencil
   c. Entirely handwritten
   d. Not signed
7. Which of the following is not true of handwriting?
   a. It changes throughout life
   b. It is not affected by drugs or alcohol
   c. It is a subconscious behavior
   d. It can change with the context of the writing
8. Which of the following practices of collecting exemplars will help to minimize the chance of the writer deliberately altering his writing?
   a. Have the subject stand up while writing
   b. Always use lined paper to make sure that the subject writes in straight lines
   c. Dictate long passages
   d. Show the subject the questioned document
9. ESDA is used mainly for
   a. Identifying ink

   b. Determining that a document is a photocopy
   c. Determining the age of a handwritten document
   d. Reading indented writing
10. Which of the following is most likely to develop individual characteristics when it is used a lot?
   a. Typewriting
   b. Photocopying
   c. Dot-matrix printing
   d. Laser-jet printing

True or False

11. Over writing can always be detected by oblique lighting.
12. Identification of the writing on a charred document depends upon the observation that ink and lead burn slower than paper.
13. The age of a document can be estimated by determining the degree of chemical degradation of the ink used to write it.
14. It is not possible to determine if writing has been mechanically erased.
15. Specialized lighting such as infrared or ultraviolet can be used to uncover attempts to alter a document by addition of extra numbers or letters.
16. A nonrequest exemplar is one that already exists at the time of the questioned document case.

Short Answer Questions

17. Explain the difference between request and nonrequest exemplars. When would one want to use nonrequest exemplars?
18. What is indented writing? How is it analyzed?
19. Under what conditions, if any, can a document made by a typewriter be individualized to a particular machine?

Match Each Term with Its Definition

20. ESDA	a. Method of teaching printing
21. Chemical erasure	b. A type of angular lighting
22. Palmer method	c. A method for uncovering indented writing
23. Oblique lighting	d. A device that prints documents using mechanically struck keys
24. Grabber marks	e. Obliterates writing by bleaching ink
25. Typewriter	f. Made on paper by copier

Further Reading

Brunelle, R. L. (2002). Questioned document examination, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 1, 2nd edn., R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Hilton, O. (1982). *Scientific Examination of Questioned Documents*, 2nd ed. Elsevier, New York.

Osborne, A. S. (1929). *Questioned Documents*, 2nd edn. Boyd Printing Company, Albany, NY.

On the Web

A great site for viewing classic typewriters: https://site.xavier.edu/polt/typewriters/typers.html

Newspaper account of how the CIA used questioned documents in a case linking Iraq to uranium ore: https://www.washingtonpost.com/archive/politics/2003/03/22/cia-questioned-documents-linking-iraq-uranium-ore/70fc89b9-5d16-4cc0-8b63-d2504009758d/

Use of stereomicroscopy and specialized lighting to detect overwriting: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qSF4ENiQeek.

Website of the American Society of Questioned Document Examiners: http://www.asqde.org/.

Forensic Document Examination Subcommittee: https://www.nist.gov/topics/organization-scientific-area-committees-forensic-science/forensic-document-examination

FBI Questioned Documents Cases: https://www.nist.gov/topics/organization-scientific-area-committees-forensic-science/forensic-document-examination

CEDAR-FOX computer programing: https://www.ncjrs.gov/pdffiles1/nij/grants/231951.pdf

HDL computer programing: https://arxiv.org/pdf/1812.02621.pdf

Case Studies

Questioned Documents Case: The Will of Howard Hughes

On April 5, 1976, the reclusive billionaire industrialist Howard Hughes died on a plane that was bringing him back from Acapulco, Mexico, to Houston. He had been in a coma when he was put on the plane. At the time he died, Hughes was estimated to control a financial empire worth nearly $3 billion. In today's dollars, that would easily be twice as much. His empire included casinos, real estate and a helicopter company. He had no wife, no children, no siblings and no living parents. The last few years of his life, Hughes was a recluse and was rarely seen in public and for that matter, rarely seen even by his closest aides. Questions were raised about who would inherit his vast estate and where the estate would be probated. He had interests in Texas, California and Nevada. Each of these states would receive inheritance taxes worth millions when the estate was probated.

There was a great deal of speculation in the media about the possible existence of a will, but none surfaced right away. Then on April 27, officials of the Mormon Church in Salt Lake City, Utah, discovered what was purported to be a will of Howard Hughes. The will was *holographic* (entirely handwritten) and three pages long. The papers had been left in an office of the Church. Besides the will, there were two envelopes and a note requesting that the will be delivered to the Clerk of Clark County (Las Vegas), Nevada. The note was in the same handwriting as the will. Two other handwritten items were included, but they appeared to be written in a different handwriting.

A questioned document examiner made a preliminary determination that the will was authentic, and the will was filed in Clark County. A battle then ensued, resulting in a 6-month trial over the authenticity of the will. This challenge to authenticity was triggered by a provision in the will that part of the estate, more than $150 M, was to go to Melvin Dummars. Dummars indicates that he met Howard Hughes in the Southwestern desert during a trip to Los Angeles. Hughes had been injured in a motorcycle accident when Dummars came across him on the highway. He picked up Hughes and dropped him off at a casino in Las Vegas. The bequest in Hughes will was a reward for Dummars' kind behavior.

During the trial, Dummars' story changed a number of times and several questioned document examiners from the United States and Europe pored over the will. Ultimately, the jury found that the will was forged by Dummars. One of the most prominent of the examiners, John J. Harris, was sure from the start of his examination that the will was probably a fraud. After his work, he had no doubt. He gave a number of reasons for the surety of his conclusions. These included that there was ample writing in the will and known samples of Hughes writing to make comparisons, that the writing in the will was forced and labored (unlike Hughes normal flowing writing style) and that the writing in the will lacked natural variation that is usually found in long passages of writing.

In 1980, a movie was made about the claim of Dummars to the fortune of Howard Hughes. The movie was titled *Melvin and Howard* and got good marks from reviewers. Melvin Dummars died on December 9, 2018, at the age of 74.

For more information: https://law.jrank.org/pages/11317/Will-Howard-Hughes-Mormon-Will.html

---

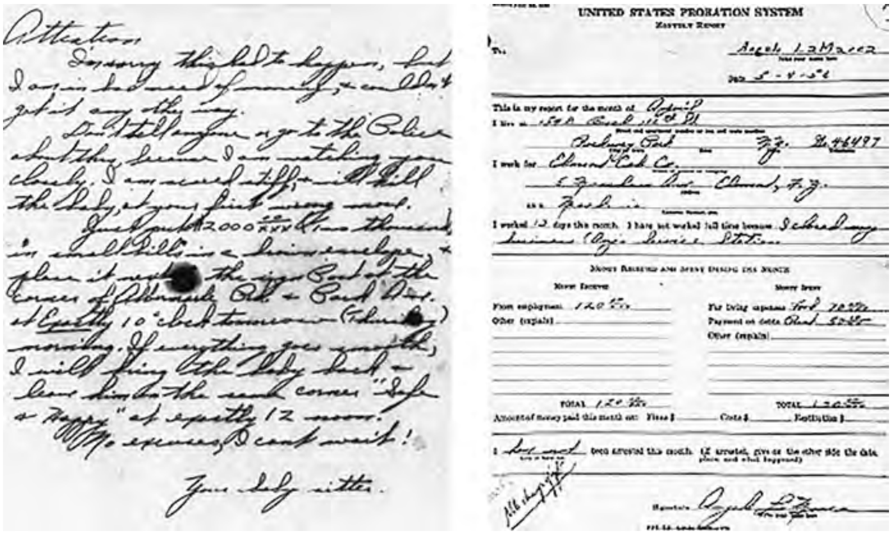
Handwriting Analysis Case: The Weinberger Baby Kidnapping

On July 4, 1956, Betty Weinberger bundled her one-month-old baby son, Peter, in a light blanket and put him in a baby carriage on the family's front porch in Westbury, New York. She stepped back inside the home for a few moments and when she returned, her baby was gone and in his place a handwritten note asking for money for his safe return.

The kidnapper apologized in the note, saying he was desperate for money and requested $2000 in small bills to be delivered to a drop off point the next day. He also warned not to contact the police or the media threatening the life of the child as retribution. Betty Weinberger did not heed the warning and called police, desperate to find her baby boy. The father of Peter, Morris Weinberger, contacted the local media and asked the newspaper publishers to hold off on the story until the baby boy was returned safely. All but one paper followed his request. The New York Daily News ran the story immediately.

The following day, at the drop off point, it was a media circus with reporters at the meeting spot. Police dropped off a package which contained a fake ransom at the site, but no one came to claim it.

Days went by with no news about the baby. Finally, on July 10, the Weinbergers received two separate phone calls from the kidnapper, during which he gave instructions on where and when to drop off the money. Police went to both sites and each time no one was there. However, at the second site



Attention,

I'm sorry this had to happen, but
I'm in bad need of money, & couldn't
get it any other way.

Don't tell anyone or go to the Police
about this because I am watching you
closely. I am scared stiff, & will kill
the baby at your first wrong move.

Just put $2000 two thousand
in small bills in a brown envelope, &
place it next to the sign post at the
corner of Albemarle Rd. & Park Dr.
at Exactly 10 o'clock tomorrow (Thursday)
morning. If everything goes smoothly,
I will bring the baby back &
leave him at the same corner "Safe
& Happy" at exactly 12 noon.

No excuses, I can't wait!

Your baby sitter.

UNITED STATES PROBATION SYSTEM

MONTHLY REPORT

Angelo LaMarca

Date 5-4-56

This is my report for the month of April

I worked 12 days this month.

MONEY RECEIVED AND SPENT DURING THE MONTH

From employment 120

Other (explain)

TOTAL 120

TOTAL 120

Amount of money paid this month on: Fines $ Costs $ Restitution $

I have not been arrested this month. (If arrested, give on the other side the date, place and what happened)

Signature Angelo LaMarca

Figure 11.18 On the left is the first ransom note written by the Weinberger baby kidnapper; on the right is the exemplar handwriting of Angelo LaMarca. (www.fbi.gov)

a small blue bag was located and in it authorities found another note. Experts compared it to the first note and agreed that the notes were written by the same individual.

At the time of this case, the FBI could only be involved if a minimum of seven days had passed after the abduction. On July 11, the FBI stepped in to assist the local police in finding Peter Weinberger and his kidnapper. Handwriting analysts poured through exemplar samples from various federal, state and municipal files, looking for writings similar to the two ransom notes.

Finally, on August 22, 1956, writing of similar nature was found in a probation file for a man named, Angelo LaMarca, who had been arrested for bootlegging (see Figure 11.18). LaMarca was a dispatcher for a local taxi cab agency. He was arrested and questioned about the case. When presented with the handwriting evidence, Angelo LaMarca confessed to the kidnapping. He said he was at the first drop off site and was spooked by the media and drove away. He then dropped the baby off near a highway exit next to a bush. Police searched the area LaMarca had described and found Peter Weinberger's decomposed remains. The abandoned baby boy had died due to exposure.

Angelo LaMarca's trial was quick. He was found guilty of kidnapping and murder on December 14, 1956 and sentenced to death. He spent almost 2 years in Sing Sing prison before his death by electrocution on August 7, 1958

It is interesting to note that after this case, the wait time for the FBI to become involved in kidnapping cases was changed to 24 hours, a marked change from the previously required 7 days.

For more information: https://www.fbi.gov/history/famous-cases/weinberger-kidnapping

Other Questioned Documents Cases to Research

The Hitler Diaries: https://www.independent.co.uk/news/uk/home-news/hitler-diaries-anniversary-sunday-times-extracts-hoax-fake-news-germany-a8337286.html

The Jon Benet Ramsey Case: http://www.experthandwritinganalysis.com/2013/07/19/unmasking-the-ramsey-ransom-note/

12

Firearms and Toolmarks

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define toolmark analysis and toolmarks
2. To be able to define firearms analysis
3. To be able to define rifling and how it arises in weapons
4. To be able to list the various types of weapons
5. To be able to define and give examples of stria
6. To be able to describe the various types of markings left on bullets and cartridges by weapons

7. To be able to describe how bullets and cartridges are matched to particular weapons
8. To be able to describe the various types of propellants and primers used in weapons
9. To be able to describe how distance-of-firing determinations are made with weapons
10. To be able to describe other types of toolmarks
11. To be able to describe how serial number restorations are accomplished and the principle behind them.

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Firearms Identification*
  - *Types of Firearms*
  - *Rifling*
  - *Size of Ammunition and Barrels*
- *Anatomy of a Live Round (Cartridge)*
  - *Propellants*
  - *Primers*
- *Examination of Firearms Evidence*
  - *Crime Scene Processing*
  - *Preliminary Examination*
  - *Bullet and Cartridge Case Comparison*
    - *Bullets*
    - *Cartridge Cases*
- *Digital Imaging Systems for Ammunition*
- *Distance-of-Fire Determinations*
  - *Gunshots*
  - *Shotgun Shots*
- *Toolmarks*
  - *Serial Number Restoration*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
- *References*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Ballistics: The study of projectiles in motion.

Caliber: The bore diameter of a rifled gun barrel.

DRUGFIRE: A database of fired cartridge cases developed by the FBI in 2002.

Firearms identification: A category of toolmark identification in which the examiner matches fired bullets, cartridge cases, or other ammunition components to a specific firearm.

Gauge: A way of measuring the bore diameter of a shotgun based on the number of solid spheres of a diameter equal to the inside diameter of the barrel that could be made from a pound of lead.

Groove: The curved track machined into the barrel of a firearm that causes the bullet to spin upon exit from the barrel.

GSR: An acronym for gunshot residue, which is the burned and unburned gunpowder that exits the firearm after the bullet.

IBIS: An acronym for Integrated Ballistics Identification System, a database developed by the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives to compare markings on fired bullets.

Land: The part of a gun barrel that is untouched by the machining process that cuts the grooves into the barrel.

NIBIN: An acronym for National Integrated Ballistic Information Network, a database that combined the FBI's DRUGFIRE database of cartridge casings and the ATF's IBIS database of fired bullets.

Rifling: The cutting of curved grooves in a firearm barrel during the manufacturing process. Rifled barrels impart spin on fired bullets that increases stability and accuracy in flight.

Stippling: Small, dry, reddish orange abrasions on skin or small, black specks on objects caused by unburned powder and small metal fragments from a discharged firearm.

Toolmark: A scratch or other microscopic marking left by the action of a tool on an object when the two come into contact.

Twist: A term used in bullet identification that refers to the direction of the grooves impressed into the fired bullet by the lands in the gun barrel.

Acronyms

ATF	Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives
GSR	Gunshot residue
IBIS	Integrated Ballistics Identification System
NIBIN	National Integrated Ballistic Information Network

Introduction

This chapter is about toolmarks. A *toolmark* is a scratch or other microscopic marking left by the action of a tool on an object. Toolmarks are created when a metal tool comes in contact with another hard surface. Examples of toolmarks include the microscopic impressions left by the blade of a wire cutter on the end of a cut wire and the scrapings of the edge of a screwdriver left on a door jamb during an attempted break-in. A major part of the science of *firearms identification* also involves the analysis of toolmarks. In many guns, a tool is used to ream out the barrel. These toolmarks are then transferred to the surface of any bullet fired through the barrel. Other markings are left on cartridge cases as a bullet is fired. Tools that made the parts of the weapon that come into contact with the cartridge originally made these markings. Each time the object comes in contact with the tool, the microscopic markings on the tool surface change and becomes more unique. It may develop more scratches, nicks, or other wear patterns. These individual characteristics are then transferred to the subsequent metal object the tool contacts.

The reader should keep in mind the conclusions of the Forensic Science Committee of the National Academy of Sciences in its 2009 report. The Committee cautioned that the underlying principle of individuality ascribed to such evidence types as firearms and toolmarks, as well as fingerprints, handwriting, shoeprints, and tire treads, has not been scientifically validated. Since the report came out, new research is being done to establish this validity. More information on the NAS report can be found in Chapters 1 and 3.

Much research has been done in the area of firearms identification since thee 2009 report. The National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) has been working on developing computer algorithms to aid in comparison matching bullets and cartridge cases. NIBIN, the National Integrated Ballistics Information Network, is now uploading three-dimensional images of firing pin impressions and breech face marks. There continues to be improvements to the identification of bullets and cartridge cases as well as other pattern evidence.

Firearms Identification

There are about 200 million privately owned registered firearms in the United States. In 2019, the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (ATF) logged close to 13,000 *reported* thefts of firearms, most of them pistols. Many thefts go unreported for a number of reasons. Trafficking of illegal firearms and the commission of crimes using firearms remain two of the most serious problems in American society today. In 2002, the ATF reported that over 80,000 weapons were sold illegally in the United States and nearly 2,000 people were charged with selling guns illegally. A survey in 2004 by the Bureau of Justice Statistics of federal and state prisoners who used a gun in the commission of their crime declared that about half of them had procured the firearm illegally. As the population ages in the United States, the number of crimes has stabilized or been reduced and this is reflected in the stability in recent years in the number of offenses in which a firearm was used. It is currently about 470,000 per year.

The science of firearms identification covers a number of related disciplines. Most people are aware that bullets and cartridges can be traced back to a particular weapon under certain circumstances and this is a major part of the firearms examiner's job. Examiners also determine whether a particular firearm can be fired. This comes into play when a firearm has been deliberately disabled or modified or when a gun is fished out of a creek or lake. Firearms examiners may also be called upon to estimate the distance from which a bullet or shotgun pellet(s) was fired. *Serial number restorations* on firearms and other objects are often the jobs of a firearms examiner. Some firearms examiners also analyze gunshot residue (GSR) from hands or other objects to determine whether that person recently fired a weapon. In many crime labs, the trace evidence section of the lab carries out this activity. In recent years, most forensic science laboratories have ceased to perform GSR analysis because of difficulties in interpreting a positive result.

Ballistics is often used as a synonym for firearms examination. This is a misnomer because *ballistics* is defined as the study of projectiles in motion. These projectiles can range from bullets to baseballs to rocket ships. Firearms examiners are interested in ballistics as part of their knowledge because they must understand the characteristics of bullets and shot gun pellets as they are fired by a weapon and reach their target. But a firearm examiner additionally studies the toolmarks left behind on fired ammunition to match a weapon to a crime. Firearms examiners also work with forensic pathologists in the area of *wound ballistics*, the study of patterns of injury caused by firearm projectiles.

Types of Firearms

There are a bewildering variety of firearms on the market today and precise definitions are often elusive. Firearms examiners generally characterize weapons into one of five categories:

1. *Pistols*: These are also sometimes called *handguns* because they were originally designed to be operated with one hand. Pistols are in turn divided into two subcategories:
    a. *Revolvers*: These are pistols that contain revolving cylinders with chambers that hold individual *live rounds* (bullets plus cartridge cases). As the weapon is cocked, the next chamber comes into line with the *firing pin* and barrel. After the bullet is fired, the cartridge case remains in the cylinder and must be manually removed.
    b. *Self-loading*: These pistols are usually loaded with a *magazine* that contains a number of bullets. The magazine is loaded into the grip of the gun and the bullets are fed into the firing chamber by a spring load. The cartridge casings are extracted and ejected from the chamber automatically after firing.
2. *Rifles*: Rifles are similar to pistols but are made to be operated with two hands. There are a large number of different types that range from single shot to automatic rifles.
3. *Machine guns*: These are fully automatic weapons that obtain their ammunition from magazines or belts. These weapons produce heavy recoil when fired and cannot be safely fired by holding with two hands. They must have a fixed mounting. The AK 47 is an example of a machine gun.
4. *Submachine guns*: These weapons are like machine guns but are meant to be hand held.
5. *Shotguns*: Shotguns differ from the other four types of weapons in that they do not fire bullets. Instead, they fire a range of ammunition, such as shotgun shells or single slugs. Shotgun shell ammunition, such as buckshot and birdshot, consists of plastic cartridges which contain small, usually round, pellets. Because shotguns do not fire bullets, they are not rifled.

Rifling

When a quarterback throws a football to a receiver, he lets the ball fall from his fingertips as he throws. This imparts a spin to the ball along its long axis. This spinning motion imparts angular momentum to the ball, which keeps the ball on its intended trajectory. The consequences of the failure to impart spin to a projectile are put to good advantage by a knuckleball pitcher in baseball. The pitcher throws the ball purposefully without spin using his knuckles to grip the ball. Without the spin, the ball is subject to air resistance and will travel toward the batter with an unpredictable trajectory. This makes the ball much harder to hit because the batter does not know where the ball is going. Neither does the catcher who often will be unable to catch a knuckleball.

When someone fires a weapon at a target, he would like to ensure that the bullet has the best chance to hit where it is aimed. This means that the bullet must be made to spin on its long axis as it emerges from the barrel of the weapon. This is accomplished by manufacturing the barrel of the weapon so that rifling is incorporated. The rifling process bores the inside of a gun barrel from one end to the other, producing a series of *lands* and *grooves*. When the barrel is manufactured, a tool such as a rifling button or gang broach is used to dig grooves into the inner surface of the barrel. Figure 12.1 is a diagram of the barrel of a weapon showing the lands and grooves. Figure 12.2 shows one of the metal tools used by a gun manufacturer to make the grooves in a gun barrel.

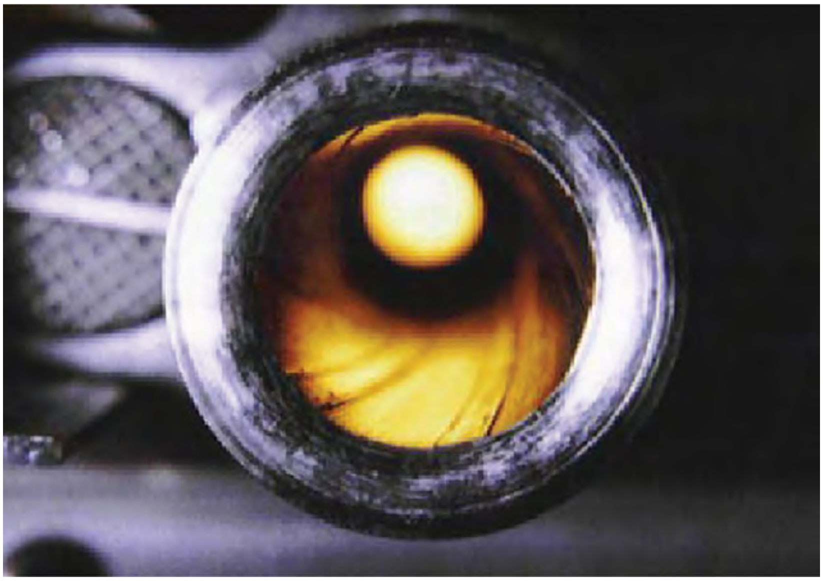


Figure 12.1 Lands and grooves in a rifled barrel. This view looks through the barrel toward the trigger. Note the spiral shapes of the lands and grooves. Courtesy of David Brundage, Indiana Forensic Services Agency, Marion, IN.

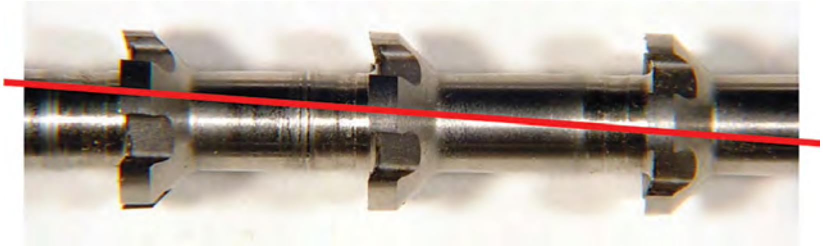


Figure 12.2 Rifling broach for gun barrel. Note the downward path to the notches that carve the grooves in the barrel. This imparts the twist in the bullet. Photo courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

The grooves are dug in a spiral fashion. Each groove spirals as it travels through the barrel. Between each groove is a raised area called a land. *Rifling* is similar to a series of hills and valleys. The valleys are grooves in the earth and between each valley is a hill (land). There may be an odd or even number of lands and grooves. The numbers range from two to nine of each.

The *number* of lands and grooves, the *direction* of their *twist* through the barrel and the *angle* of twist are all class characteristics that can give valuable information to the firearms examiner about the manufacturer and model of the weapon. The twist of the lands and grooves is noted as a right twist (clockwise) or left twist (counterclockwise). Figure 12.3 shows some of these class characteristics. Note that the *groove* in the barrel makes a *groove impression (raised area)* in the bullet and a *land* in the barrel makes a *land impression (indentation) or land-engraved area* in the bullet. Also note that the number and letter in the bullet drawing represent the number of lands or grooves and the direction of twist. For example, 4R means four lands or grooves with a right twist.

The broach or button that makes the lands and grooves is a tool. Its cutting surfaces contain microscopic imperfections made by the tools used to manufacture them. These microscopic markings are transferred to the surfaces of the lands and grooves during the manufacture of the barrel. When the bullet is fired, it will pick up not only the lands and grooves but the microscopic imperfections. These usually appear as tiny striations or stria in the lands and grooves and are shown in Figures 12.4 and 12.5, which is a comparison of the stria in two bullets under a comparison microscope. Striations impart individuality (individual characteristics) to the bullet and aid in the identification of a match between a test-fired bullet and one taken from the crime scene.

If the proper size ammunition is used in a rifled weapon, the bullet expands due to the heat of the gunpowder being ignited. The bullet expands into the grooves and follows them like tracks as it exits the barrel. Because the grooves

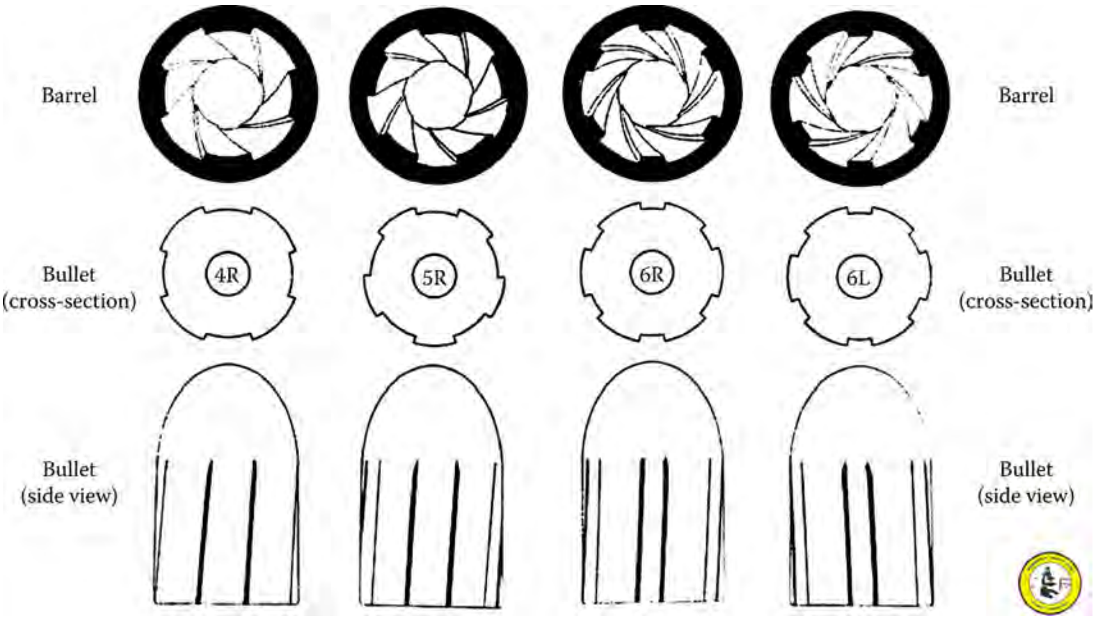


Figure 12.3 Some class characteristics of firearms. The barrel imparts lands and grooves to the sides of the bullets. The number of lands and grooves as well as the angle and direction of twist are class characteristics. Courtesy of David Brundage, Indiana Forensic Services Agency, Marion, IN.

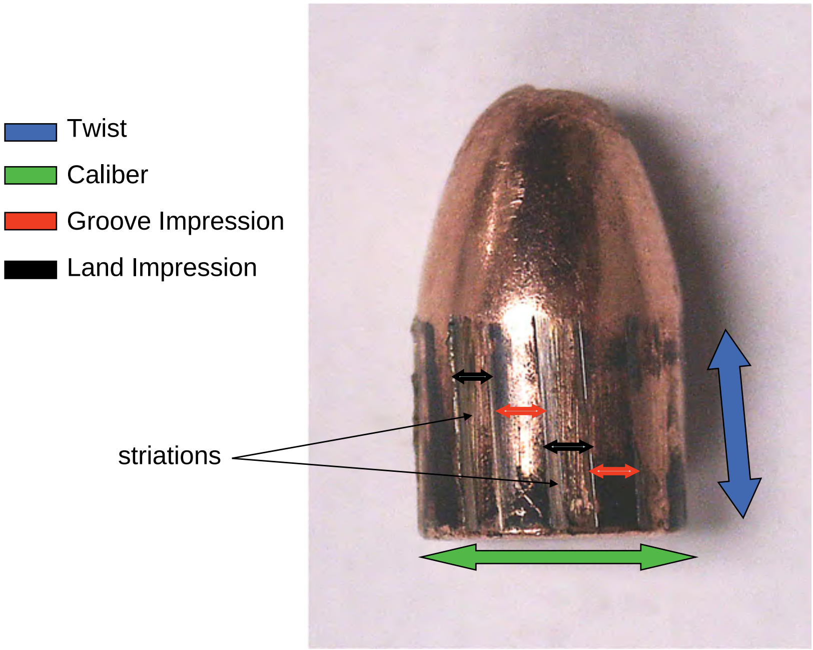

Twist
Caliber
Groove Impression
Land Impression
striations

Figure 12.4 Class and individual characteristics of a fired bullet. Courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

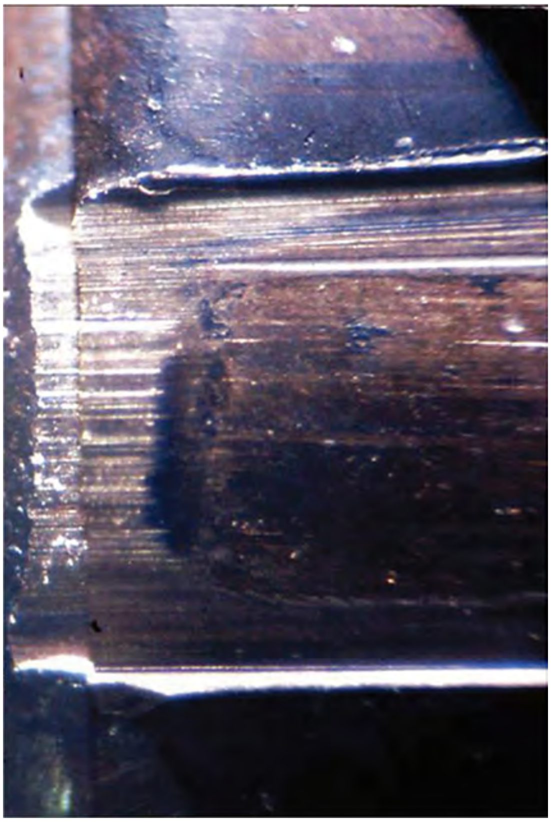


Figure 12.5 A photomicrograph showing comparison of bullet stria. The vertical line near the left side of the picture is the dividing line between the two bullets. Courtesy of David Brundage, Indiana Forensic Services Agency, Marion, IN.

TABLE 12.1
Common Calibers of Guns with the Bore Diameters in Inches and in Millimeters

Gun Barrel Caliber	English System Measurement (in.)	Metric System Measurement (mm)
22 caliber	0.22	5.56
25 caliber	0.25	6.35
30 caliber	0.30	7.62
32 caliber	0.32	7.65
38 caliber	0.38	9.00
9 mm caliber	0.38	9.00
40 caliber	0.40	10.0
45 caliber	0.45	11.25

spiral through the barrel, the bullet spins as it leaves the barrel. Each land in the barrel will make a land impression in the side of the bullet. Each groove in the barrel will become a groove impression in the bullet. Thus, the number of land and groove impressions, the angle, and direction of twist can all be determined by examining the fired bullet. The lands and grooves of the bullet contain the striations that are present in the barrel's lands and grooves.

Size of Ammunition and Barrels

The size of rifled firearms is described by their *caliber* or bore diameter. To find the bore diameter of a rifled barrel, the distance from opposing lands is measured. If there is an odd number of lands and they do not oppose each other, the bore diameter is the diameter of a circle that touches the tops of the lands. Caliber is no longer used to describe the size of a barrel. It is now used to describe the size of a particular cartridge case or the base of a fired bullet. In the United States, this is the diameter of the base of the cartridge case or bullet measured in hundreds or thousandths of inches (millimeters in Europe). Table 12.1 shows typical gun calibers in both metric and English system measurements.

Because shotguns do not use bullets, the size of the barrel and the ammunition are measured differently. Many shotgun barrels are constricted by the maker to produce a choke. This narrows the barrel so that the pellets are kept in a tight grouping as they leave the barrel. As they travel toward the target, the pellets will naturally tend to spread out in a cone pattern. The choke reduces the diameter of the cone at any given distance so that the pellets will form a smaller pattern at the target. The diameter of the shotgun barrel is called its *gauge*. The gauge is a measure of the number of pellets weighing 1 lb that would have the same diameter as the barrel if they were grouped in a circular pattern. For example, 12 lead pellets that together weigh 1 lb would have the same diameter as a 12-gauge shotgun. Figure 12.6 shows a typical shotgun cartridge with lead pellets.

Anatomy of a Live Round (Cartridge)

Figure 12.7 is a diagram of a live round or cartridge. A cartridge is made up of a bullet that fits into the top of a cartridge case. It is held in place by a series of small grooves that circle the bullet near the base. These are called cannelures. Bullets come in three types:

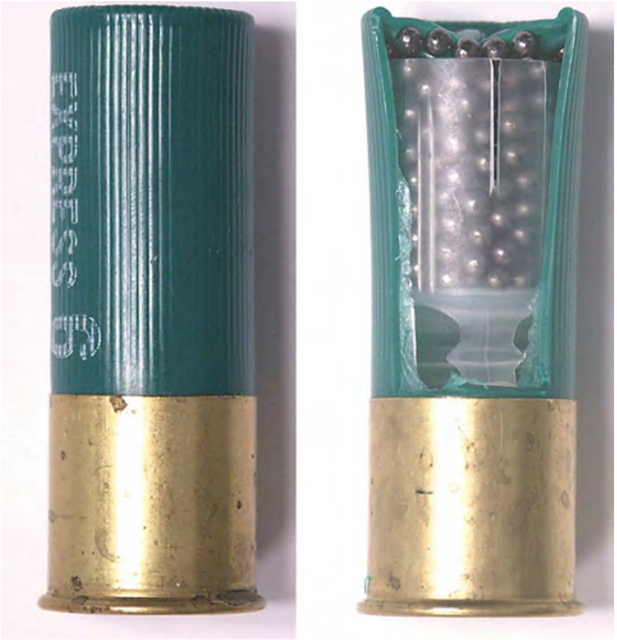
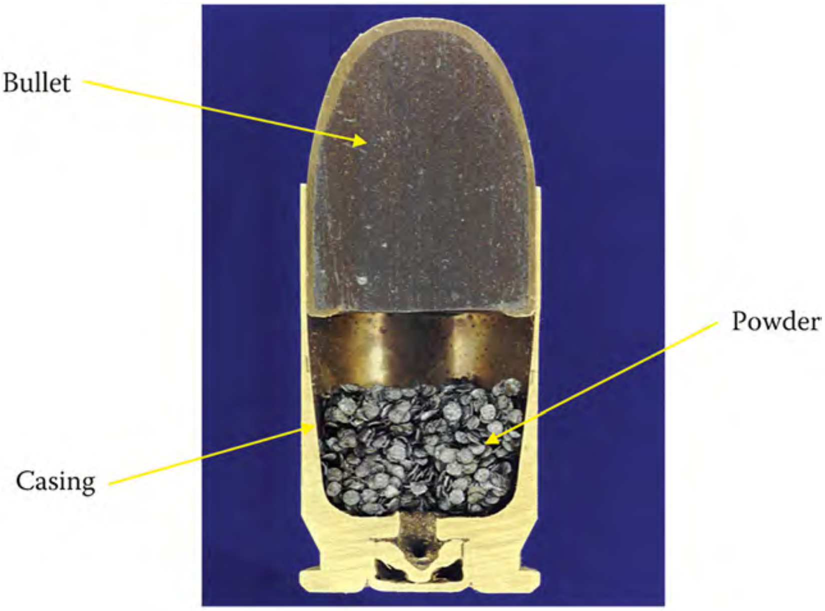


Figure 12.6 Shotgun ammunition. Courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.



Sectioned pistol cartridge

Figure 12.7 A diagram of a live round, also called a cartridge. Courtesy of David Brundage, Indiana Forensic Services Agency, Marion, IN.

1. *Lead* (*or lead alloy*): Originally, all bullets were made of nearly pure lead. When the technology of propellants improved to increase velocity, bullets became hotter and the soft lead had a tendency to foul the inside of the barrel, so antimony is usually added as an alloy to harden the lead.
2. *Fully jacketed bullets*: These bullets have a layer of copper, brass, or steel that completely girdles the base. This hardens the bullet but reduces its

expansion upon firing. Jacketed bullets will also usually not pick up as much detail in the lands and grooves as lead bullets.

3. *Half-jacketed bullets*: These bullets have a jacket around only half the bullet. Usually this is the base of the bullet. The nose is exposed.

Figure 12.8 shows some common types of bullets for comparison.

There are many variations of the types of bullets, including hollow points, Teflon-coated (armor piercing) and exploding bullets. Cartridge cases are made of brass, nickel-plated brass or aluminum. They come in a variety of shapes to accommodate different types of firearms. Like bullets, cartridge cases may have cannelures impressed into their surfaces. These keep the bullet from being pushed too far down into the casing. Figure 12.9 shows the three types of cartridge cases.

The heads of some cartridge cases contain markings stamped into the surface. These can reveal the manufacturer and/or the caliber. Other markings on cartridge cases can be imparted by extractors and ejectors in the case of self-loading pistols as well as firing pin impressions and breech face markings. Some of these markings on a cartridge case are shown in Figure 12.10a and b.

Propellants

The oldest recorded propellant is black powder, invented by the Chinese around the tenth century. It was used for signals and fireworks. Black powder is a physical mixture of finely divided particles of charcoal (C), sulfur (S) and saltpeter (KNO_3 or potassium nitrate). Formulations vary, but saltpeter is always the major component. Saltpeter furnishes the oxygen while the charcoal and sulfur are the fuels that react with the oxygen (see Chapter 23 for a discussion of how explosives work). Even though black powder has been entirely replaced as a commercial propellant by smokeless powders, it is still used by battle re-enactors and fans of old weapons.

Smokeless powder was developed in the late nineteenth century to replace black powder as a propellant in weapons. Black powder produces a great amount of smoke that could easily reveal the position of the shooter. Smokeless powder emits much less smoke. Smokeless powders come in two varieties: single base and double base. Single-base smokeless powder consists of cotton lint or wood pulp that has been titrated by a nitric acid/sulfuric acid mixture. The nitrate ions combine with the hydroxyl groups on the cellulose. This is a chemical mixture of the oxygen and fuel that produces a potent propellant. Double-base smokeless powders consist of about 70% ± 10% cellulose nitrate, and about 30% ± 10% nitroglycerine. These make for more energetic propellants per unit weight, in part because the nitroglycerine lowers the amount of water present in the mixture from about 2% to less than 1%. Water adversely affects the power of the propellant by acting as a heat sink. It is important to note that smokeless powders do not explode inside a cartridge; but instead, they combust. Since the combustion occurs in a closed space, it can have the force of an explosion.

Primers

In 1807, a Scottish clergyman named James Forsythe discovered the shock-sensitive explosive called mercury fulminate [$Hg(ONC_2)$]. This type of explosive detonates if it is struck or shocked. A spark will also set it off. By 1850, cartridges were being manufactured that contained mercury fulminate inside the head of

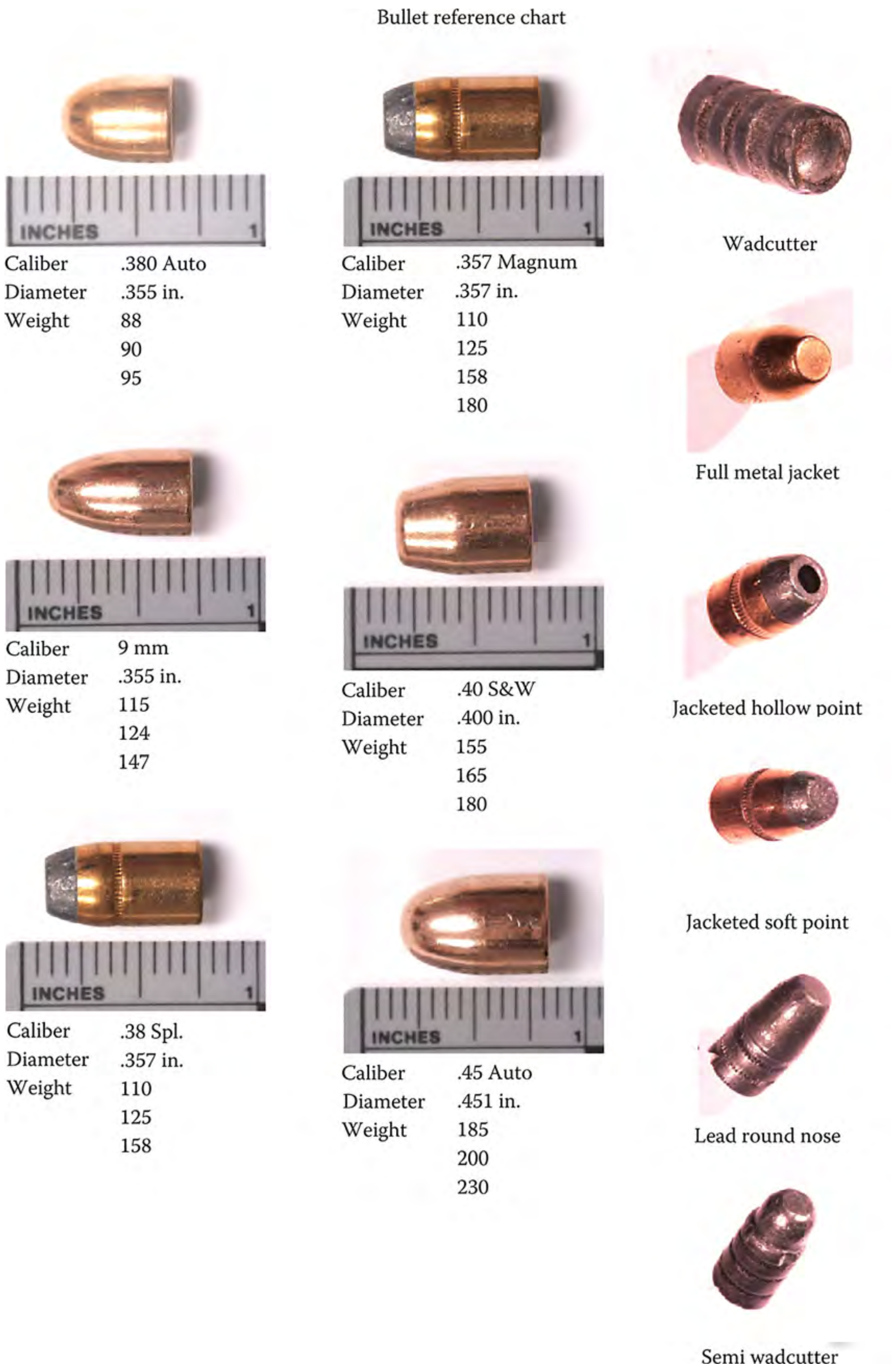

Bullet reference chart
INCHES 1
Caliber .380 Auto
Diameter .355 in.
Weight 88
90
95
INCHES 1
Caliber .357 Magnum
Diameter .357 in.
Weight 110
125
158
180
Wadcutter
Full metal jacket
INCHES 1
Caliber 9 mm
Diameter .355 in.
Weight 115
124
147
INCHES 1
Caliber .40 S&W
Diameter .400 in.
Weight 155
165
180
Jacketed hollow point
INCHES 1
Caliber .38 Spl.
Diameter .357 in.
Weight 110
125
158
Jacketed soft point
INCHES 1
Caliber .45 Auto
Diameter .451 in.
Weight 185
200
230
Lead round nose
Semi wadcutter

Figure 12.8 Common types of bullets for comparison. Courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

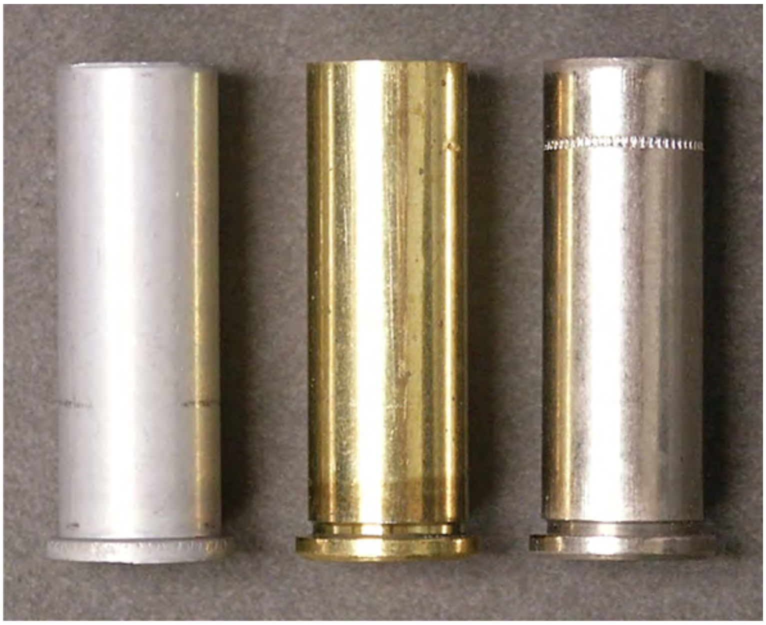


Figure 12.9 Types of cartridge case materials: (L–R) aluminum, brass, and nickel-plated brass. Photo courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

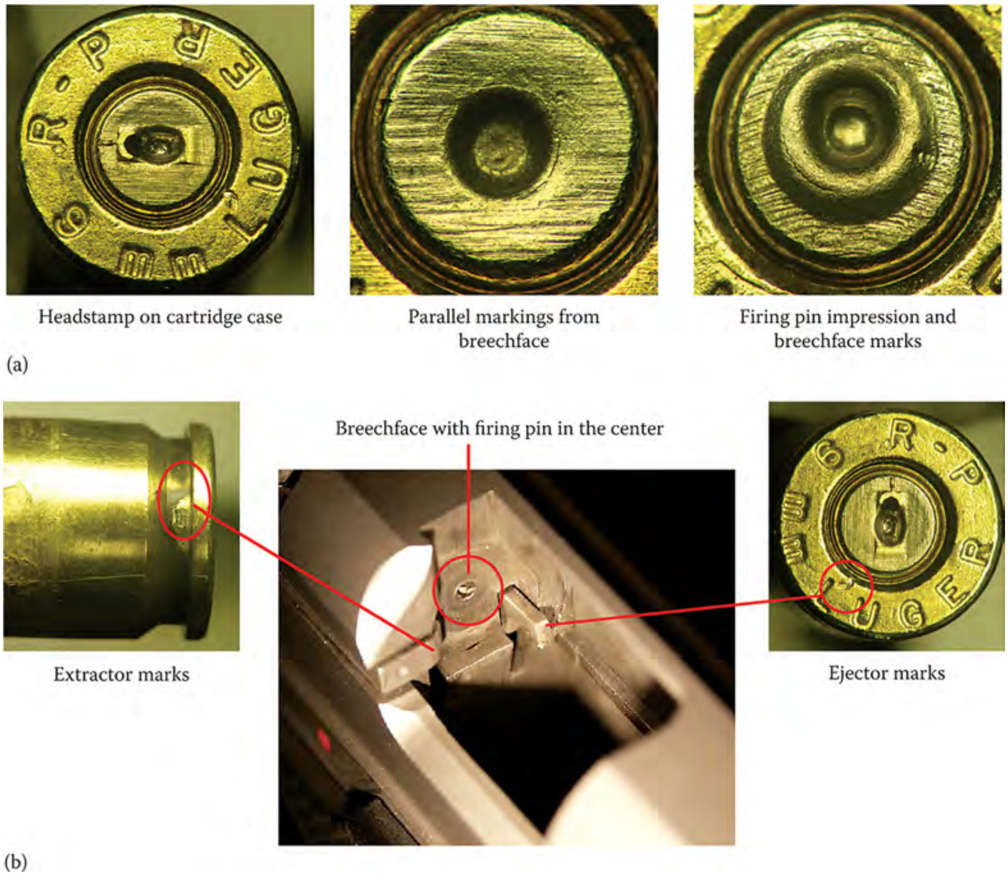

Headstamp on cartridge case
Parallel markings from breechface
Firing pin impression and breechface marks
(a)
Breechface with firing pin in the center
Extractor marks
Ejector marks
(b)

Figure 12.10 Diagrams showing some of the markings made on cartridges by firing a weapon. (a) Three cartridge case markings after a gun is fired. (b) Chamber of a gun showing the breech face, firing pin, extractor and ejector, as well as where the marks can be found on the cartridge. Photo courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

the cartridge as the primer. At the beginning, the primer was inserted inside the rim of the cartridge. A small pin protruded from the back of the rim. When this pin was struck by the hammer, it struck the primer and detonated it. The detonation caused the powder inside the cartridge to ignite. By 1850, this system was replaced by a simpler one in which the primer was inserted into a tiny cup inside the center of the cartridge head. This portion of the cartridge is commonly referred to as the primer cup (Figure 12.11).

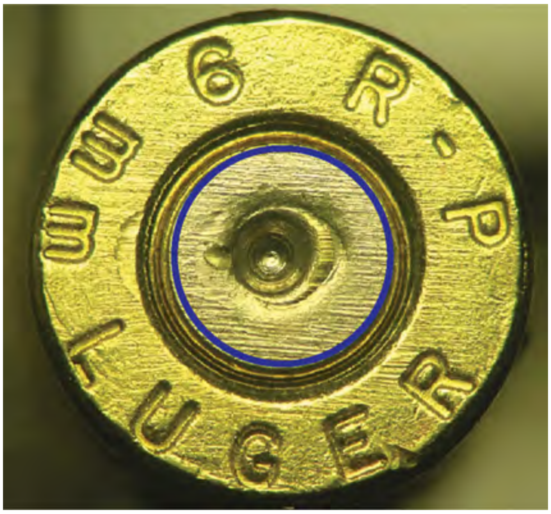


Figure 12.11 The nickel center of this cartridge case is the primer cup (shown circled). The firing pin strikes this part of the cartridge in the gun chamber to initiate the explosion. Photo courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

The firing pin was mounted on the end of the hammer. When it struck the primer cup, it compressed the primer and detonated it. The flame produced by the detonation escaped through a hole in the cup and ignited the propellant. Over time, the composition of primers has changed, first by potassium chlorate ($KClO_3$) and today, by a mixture of lead styphnate, antimony sulfide, barium nitrate and tetracene. When a gun is fired, not all of the gunpowder is burned completely and that powder exits the barrel as smoke and soot. The material that leaves the gun with the bullet is called gunshot residue. When GSR is analyzed from the hands of a shooter, the examiner looks for particles of antimony, lead and barium from the primer.

Examination of Firearms Evidence

Crime Scene Processing

As with all crime scenes, those that contain firearms evidence must be clearly documented and photographed. Because bullets and cartridge casings are small, they must be identified in photographs with labels or markers of some type. Often, bullets or shotgun pellets may be found in walls or ceilings. The preferred collection method in such cases is to remove the section of the wall or ceiling and send it to the lab where the bullet or pellets can be safely removed. If this is not possible, rubberized tools must be used to remove the bullets.

Bullets and cartridge casings must never be marked for identification anywhere on their surfaces where there might be forensically significant markings. Many crime scene investigators do not mark them at all but put them in small vials or boxes and then mark the containers. Likewise, weapons should never be marked in places were there might be evidence. Sometimes, tags can be used. Guns should never be handled by inserting a pencil or anything else in the barrel. This could change the markings in the barrel and render test firings useless. Figure 12.12 shows one way that a weapon can be packaged for shipment to the laboratory.

In many cases, firearms are coated with a thin layer of lubricating oil. This makes them unsuitable surfaces for retaining fingerprint images. Nonetheless, weapons should always be packaged in such a way that fingerprints could be collected if present.

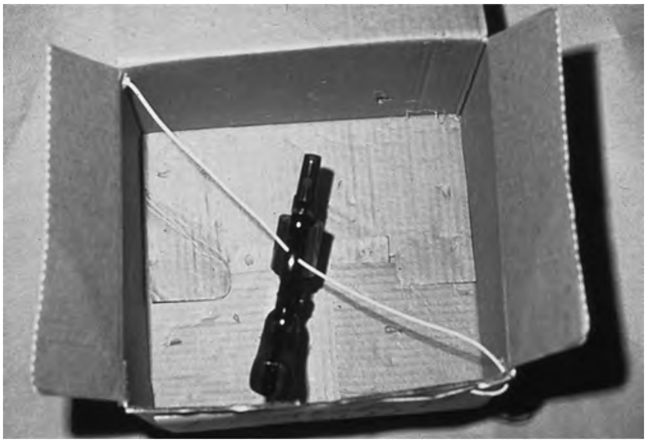


Figure 12.12 A proper method for packaging a weapon for shipment to the crime lab. The gun is suspended in the box by the trigger guard.

Preliminary Examination

Firearms examiners should always keep in mind that weapons may be sources of significant trace evidence and the examination of the weapon may have to be put off until trace evidence is processed. As previously mentioned, fingerprints are unlikely but not impossible to recover. Blood, fibers or paint flecks may be on the weapon. Bits of tissue from a close-in or contact shot may be present on the weapon or inside the barrel. If the weapon were in the owner’s pocket, it may have picked up trace evidence such as lint, fibers, dirt, etc.

Once recovered, as much information as possible should be gathered from the weapon in hopes of identifying the owner or user. The serial number is especially important. Criminals also know this and in many cases they will grind down or file off the serial number. As we see at the end of this chapter, there are methods for restoring obliterated serial numbers.

Bullet and Cartridge Case Comparison

Bullets

At the heart of bullet and cartridge case identification is the need to correctly collect known samples for comparison. For bullets, this means test firing the weapon into a trap. The same type of ammunition must be used as the questioned type. All test firings must be done into the same type of trap. Cotton or other cloth wadding has been used as a trap, but it may cause abrasions on the bullet from the cloth or may partially obliterate markings from the barrel. A better solution is a large water tank. These tanks are made of stainless steel and are long, narrow, and deep. The weapon is usually fired through a short pipe into the water. The bottom of the tank is in the shape of a cone in the middle so that all fired bullets will fall into the cone where a small basket is used to retrieve them.

Once the bullets are recovered, their *class* characteristics should first be determined. These include caliber, the number of lands and grooves, and their angles and directions of twist. If these all match the crime scene bullets, the examiner can proceed with the comparison of *individual* characteristics. This is always done with a comparison microscope as described in Chapter 6. If matching striations are found in a pair of land or groove impressions, the bullets should be rotated together to the next land or groove. If the bullets were fired from the same weapon, stria from all of the intact lands and grooves should match.

Firearms examiners are moving from the previous comparisons between the two-dimensional images of the questioned bullet and exemplar test fired bullet into a three-dimensional computer-based comparison using computer algorithms developed by NIST scientists. Using computer generated algorithms that divide the bullet into segments for comparison this new technology allows examiners to mathematically evaluate the reliability of the match. This segment matching is called congruent matching profile segments or CMPS and as of this date is still being developed and tested. CMPS shows promise to move bullet comparisons beyond being totally subjective work to greater validity in court by using computers and statistical methods.

Just because two bullets were fired from the same weapon does not mean that the striations will always match. For example, rust may build up inside the barrel of a weapon and the stria in a bullet may be due mainly to rust. As bullets are fired through such a gun, rust particles are removed and the striations change. Even if rust is not a problem, repeated firings of a weapon will cause changes in the stria pattern, especially with metal-jacketed bullets. Imperfections in the surface of the jacket can impart stria to the barrel of the gun and remove some that are already there. After 50 firings or so, the stria of the 50th bullet may not match the first. Some weapons have interchangeable barrels. This will clearly cause problems if the barrel has been changed between the time the crime scene bullet was fired and the time that the weapon was test-fired.

Cartridge Cases

Cartridges cases can yield the same types of information as bullets. The examiner will attempt to determine the type of weapon used. If a suspect weapon is present, it can be determined whether the cartridge case was fired by that weapon. There are a number of markings on cartridge cases that help make these associations. Striations are present in firing pin impressions, extractor and ejector markings (except in revolvers), breech face markings, and sometimes chamber markings.

Cartridge cases are now being analyzed using high definition three-dimensional computer technology or HD 3D. The cartridge cases are being scanned using a special gel and different types of lighting to input greater definition to a digital scanning microscope. An example of a 3D scanner is shown in Figure 12.13.

Figure 12.14 shows the comparison of firing pin impressions using 2D and 3D methods of evaluation. The pin on the end of the hammer strikes the head of the cartridge case, detonating the primer. There are a few striations on the surface of the firing pin that are then transferred to the casing.

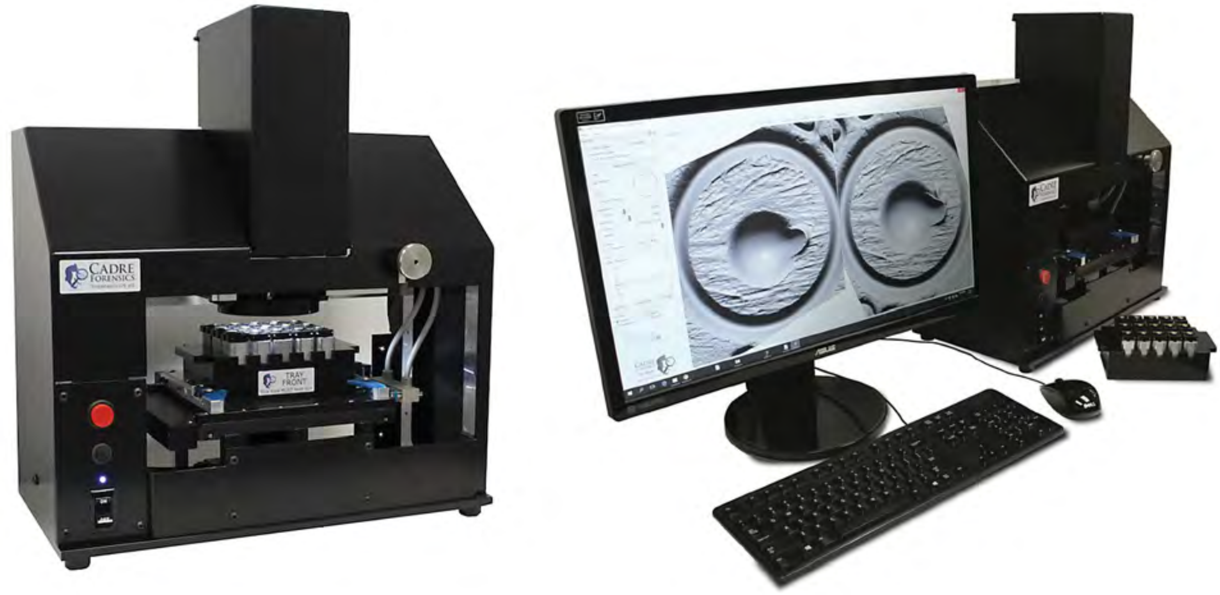


Figure 12.13 TopMatch-GS 3D Scanner: example of photometric stereo technology. www.cadreforensics.com

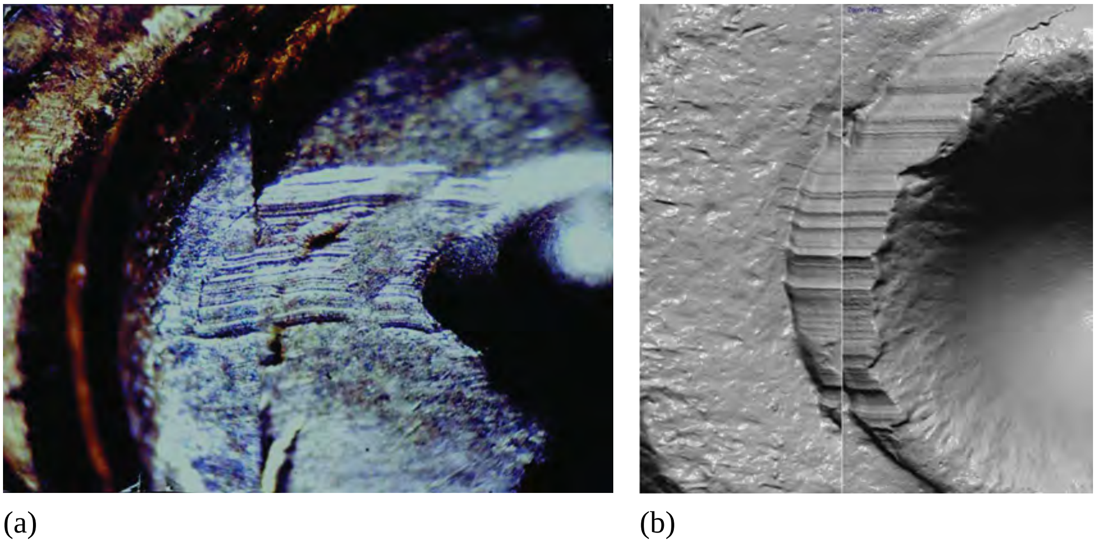

(a) (b)

Figure 12.14 Photo (a) is a 2D comparison microscope photograph matching stria created by a firing pin impressed on two cartridge cases. The line dividing the two cartridges is just to the left of center of the picture. Photo (b) is a 3D comparison image of stria created by a firing pin impression using new scanning technology. The thin white line divides the two cartridges.

When a bullet is fired, the cartridge case recoils in the chamber toward the back of the gun. A block of metal, called the breech, stops the cartridge case from hitting the shooter. This block contains striations that are transferred to the surface of the head of the casing. A comparison of breech face markings on two cartridge casings is shown in Figure 12.15.

After the bullet is fired from the cartridge, the casing must be removed so that another round can be loaded into the gun. The metal extractor grabs the cartridge so that it can be expelled from the chamber by the metal ejector. Extractor marks can be found on the lip of the cartridge case and extractor marks on the head stamp. Examples of both markings are shown in Figure 12.10b.

Striations on the sides of the cartridge case called chamber marks aid in identification. Chamber marks are produced by the expansion of gases and heat when the cartridge is fired. The casing is pressed tightly against the gun chamber and marks are impressed as it expands and moves. Figure 12.16 shows chamber marks on a cartridge case and the portion of the gun barrel that made the marks.

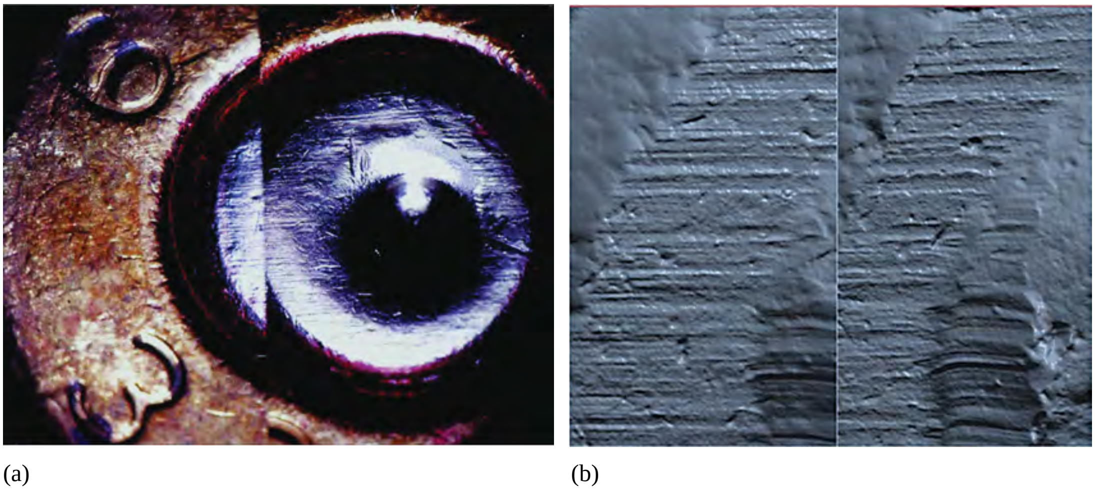

(a) (b)

Figure 12.15 Breech face stria on the head of a cartridge case comparison photographs. The two cartridges in each photo were fired from the same weapon. Photo (a) is a 2D comparison and photo (b) is a comparison using 3D computer technology.

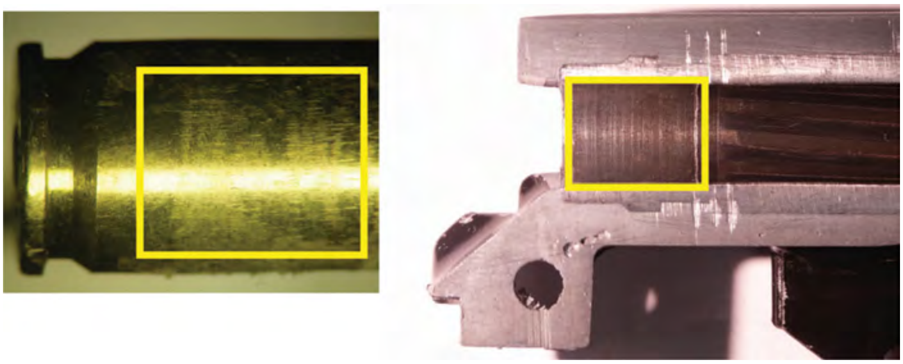


Figure 12.16 Chamber marks on a fired cartridge case and the gun barrel chamber. These fine striations can aid in identification. Photo courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

Digital Imaging Systems for Ammunition

In 1993, the FBI began the *DRUGFIRE* system. This system is a database of firing pin and primer impressions on spent cartridge cases recovered from crime scenes. A computer network was set up so that firearms examiners could search the database for impressions. The examiner determined whether a crime scene cartridge casing or one test-fired from a seized weapon matched any of the impressions in the database. If a match was found, then arrangements were made to procure the actual cartridge casing so that a physical, microscopic comparison could be completed.

At the same time that the FBI was developing DRUGFIRE, ATF developed the Integrated Ballistics Identification System (IBIS) to capture and rapidly compare bullet stria. Unfortunately, IBIS and DRUGFIRE were not compatible. In order to be able to search both databases, an examiner had to have two different computer workstations. As a result, in 1997, the FBI and ATF established the National Integrated Ballistic Information Network (NIBIN) that permits searching of bullets or cartridge cases using the same computer system. NIBIN is over 20 years old and is undergoing changes to its database based on the new 3D imaging techniques. The database now has 3D computer images of firing pin impressions, breech face marks and ejector marks for cartridge cases. In 2015, ATF uploaded 205,000 images into NIBIN. Four years later, in 2019, the number of images added was almost doubled to 400,000. Because the database is so robust, improvements in accuracy and time to obtain a lead have greatly improved.

The development of the bullet and cartridge case databases led to the concept of ballistic fingerprinting. Under this program, each new weapon is test fired at the factory and the cartridge case is recovered. Breech face marks and firing pin impressions are stored in a computer database. If cartridge cases are recovered at a crime scene and no weapon is found, the breech face markings and firing pin impressions can be compared to those in the database. Although this may seem like an effective program, it has been fraught with problems. First, it is expensive to implement. Second, it is often hard to substantiate a paper trail of a gun purchase. False identification documents may be used. Sales may be made illegally. Weapons can be stolen from original owners. Finally, if many rounds are fired between the time the gun is manufactured and the time it is used in a crime, firing pin impressions and breech face markings, like bullet stria, may change enough so that they can no longer be matched to a test-fired sample. Presently, only two states require ballistic fingerprinting of handguns sold.

Distance-of-Fire Determinations

Gunshots

When a bullet is fired from a gun, hot gases containing residue from the primer and smokeless powder will be expelled from the barrel and will travel for short distances in a roughly conical pattern. This residue is composed of soot from the burned powder and *stippling*, which is unburned gunpowder and barrel residue.

Depending on the distance from the weapon to the target, some of this residue may be deposited on the target. The size of the GSR pattern can be used to determine the approximate distance between the weapon and the target when the bullet was fired. There are a number of limitations to this test that must be kept in mind when distance-of-firing measurements are made.

GSRs do not travel far before being dispersed. It is rare to find GSR on a target that is more than 18 in. from the weapon. If no residues are found on the target, the range is called a distance shot. If GSRs are found on the target, the range is called a close range shot. In a contact shot, the muzzle of the barrel is in direct contact with the target and no GSR will be found on the target. If the target is a human head, GSR may be injected into the soft tissues of the head and will be found inside the wound.

A distance shot produces a bullet hole that is roughly round. The edges of the hole may be burned or singed due to friction from the bullet as it passes through the target. This contusion ring may be partially or totally obscured by a ring of dirt made up of lubricant, dirt and dust and metal shavings. The size, shape and other characteristics of the bullet hole do not change with distance so these characteristics cannot be used to estimate the distance of firing.

GSR will be deposited in a close range shot. The residue consists of large and small particles of burned or unburned propellant and some primer particles. The largest are easily seen as discrete particles and are called stippling or tattooing. The smaller particles appear as soot.

Distance-of-firing determinations are done by test firing the same weapon and ammunition at various distances and then comparing the size of the stippling and soot pattern on the target. Not even another weapon of the same exact type will reproduce gunshot patterns and serious errors can occur in interpretation if the exact same weapon is not used. Figure 12.17 shows the various characteristics of a bullet hole in a target.

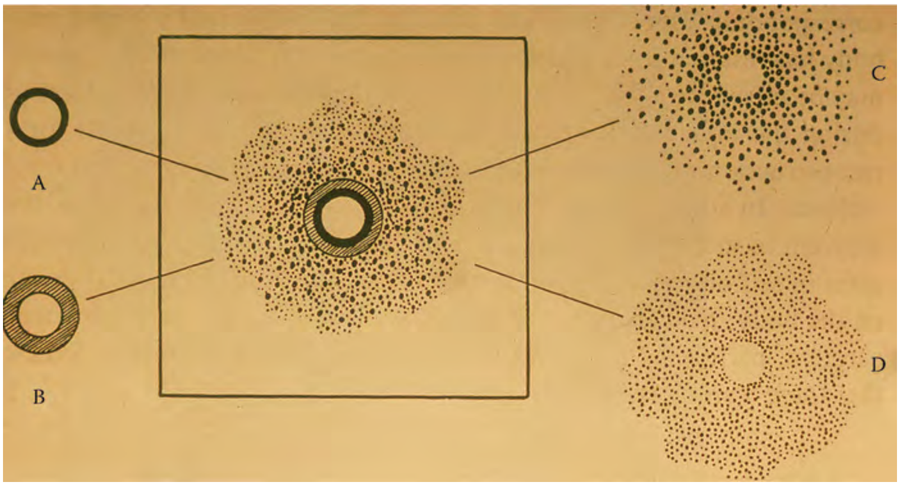


Figure 12.17 The anatomy of a bullet hole in a target: (A) A contusion ring caused by friction. (B) A ring of dirt that is deposited on the target by the bullet. (C) Stippling, or unburned and partially burned particles of gunshot residue. (D) Soot from the gunpowder.

Shotgun Shots

As a shot leaves the barrel of the shotgun, it tends to spread in a conical pattern. When the shot strikes the target, the pellets form a roughly circular pattern. The size of the pattern increases as the distance of firing increases. Although this sounds straightforward, a number of problems can arise in determining the distance of firing.

Humans are usually the targets of shotgun firings. The human body is a relatively small target and unless the target is fairly close to the firing, some of the pellets will miss the body altogether. This means that it may be difficult or impossible to establish an accurate pellet pattern.

If there is an intermediate target such as a window screen, the pattern on the final target may be distorted because the leading pellets will be slowed by the intermediate target and may be hit from behind by the trailing pellets, thus causing scattering. This is not predictable and not reproducible.

As with gunshot distance-of-firing determinations, test firings of shotguns must be done with the same weapon and ammunition in order to make proper interpretations

Normally, distance-of-firing determinations of shotgun patterns are performed by comparing the size of the pattern of the known and unknown shots.

Toolmarks

At the beginning of this chapter, a toolmark was defined as a scratch or other microscopic marking left by the action of a tool on an object. The discussion of firearms analysis showed that the markings left on bullets and cartridges from a fired weapon are all the results of toolmarks. The analysis of toolmarks takes advantage of the observation that no two toolmarks, even those left by the same type of tool, are identical. This implies that, in general, toolmarks should be individualizable. This is borne out in part by the observation that even consecutively manufactured guns whose parts are machined by the same tool will be distinguishable by their toolmarks. There has been almost no research, however, into the toolmark characteristics left by brand new tools, such as wire cutters, that were consecutively manufactured. Thus, care must be taken when extending the observations about bullets to all tools. The criterion of a match of known and unknown toolmarks: *that there be a sufficient number of similarities and no unexplainable differences* must be applied cautiously since there have not been sufficient studies to determine a *standard* number of similarities in toolmark identification.

Virtually any tool can leave markings and these markings may be used to help determine the source of the evidence. Take, for example, the evidence shown in Figure 12.18. This case involved a breaking and entering into a remote country house. The perpetrator cut the telephone lines with a wire cutter so the occupants could not call for help. When he was arrested, the wire cutters were still in his possession with his fingerprints all over the handles. Test cuts were made on a metal sheet to get the entire cutting blade surface. The photo shows how the some of the toolmarks in the cut wires match the test cuts in the metal sheet. These matches are shown as photomicrographs taken with a comparison microscope.

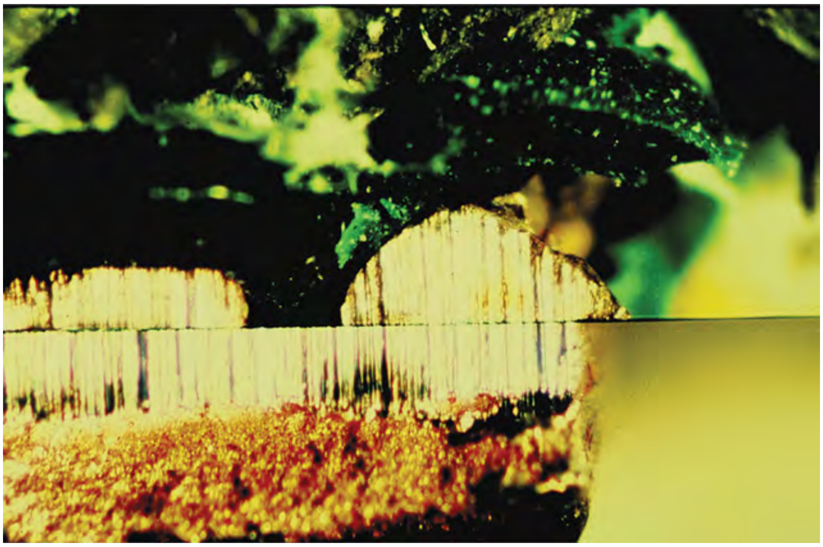


Figure 12.18 A match and nonmatch. A comparison of two cut wires with a piece of sheet metal, all cut by the same wire cutter. The two wires are in the top photo and the piece of sheet metal is in the bottom photo. Note that the striations on the *right* wire line up perfectly with the striations on the sheet metal, whereas the striations on the *left* wire do not match. This is because the wire on the left was cut by a *different* part of the wire cutter.

Figure 12.19 shows a fairly common toolmark examination. Here, a screwdriver was used to attempt to pry open a door. The blade left markings on the doorjamb. Test scrapings were made into sheet metal. Once again, the stria in the knowns and unknowns can be seen to match.

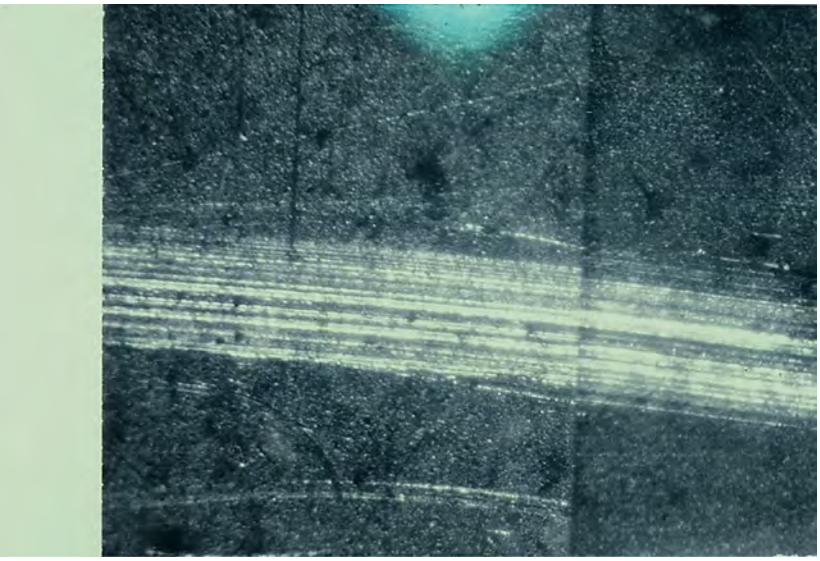


Figure 12.19 Stria made by a screwdriver on a piece of metal. Two scrapings were made by the same tool. The striations are virtually the same with each scraping.

Figure 12.20 shows a comparison microscope photo of a tip of a screwdriver on the left scraping across a surface. The photo on the right shows a scrape by the same screwdriver tip along a similar surface. Notice how the abrasion lines match left to right.

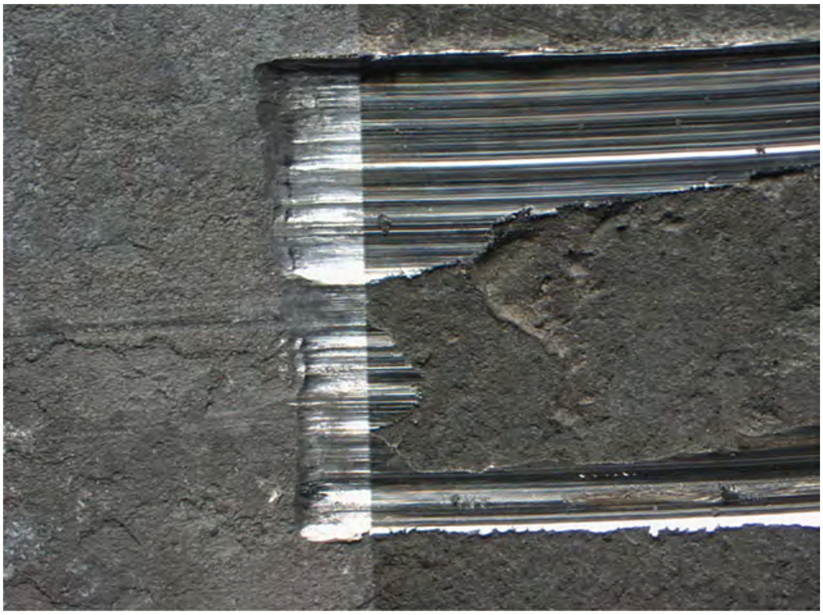


Figure 12.20 Toolmark comparison. This is a comparison microscope photo of toolmarks made by the same metal tool. Notice how the individual striations line up left to right. Photo courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

Serial Number Restoration

One of the more interesting toolmarks is a serial number that is stamped into an object, usually metal. When the machine stamps the serial number into the metal, the area below the stamped letter becomes strained. The metal bonds are weakened. Often, a thief will attempt to remove the serial number from a stolen object such as a gun by filing or grinding off the serial numbers. He will usually stop when the number disappears, that is, when he has filed off the metal that surrounds the stamped serial number until the whole surface is level. What he does not realize is that the strained metal below the serial numbers is a sort of "memory" of the numbers. If a solution that dissolves the metal is swabbed on the filed surface, the area where the serial number was will dissolve much faster and the number will reappear, at least temporarily. The swabbing process must be done with camera at the ready to record the serial numbers as they appear. Once they disappear again, they will be gone forever. Figure 12.21 is a series of diagrams of a serial number stamped into a metal surface. The first figure shows the top view of the letter 1 stamped into a piece of metal. Figure (a) shows this as viewed from the side as a cutaway. The shaded area is where the number is stamped into the metal. In (b), the surface has been ground down until it is level and the serial number disappears. In (c), the dissolving solution has been applied and the area beneath the serial number dissolves much faster than the surrounding metal and the number reappears.

Figure 12.22 shows the restoration of an actual serial number obliteration. In (a), the sanding process to smooth the surface for chemical treatment is illustrated. In (b), the serial number begins to appear when chemicals are added to the prepped surface and in (c) the number is visible and photographed.

There are a number of recipes for solutions suitable for recovering serial numbers. These solutions are specific for different types of metals. Most serial numbers are applied to an iron or steel surface. One of the more popular solutions

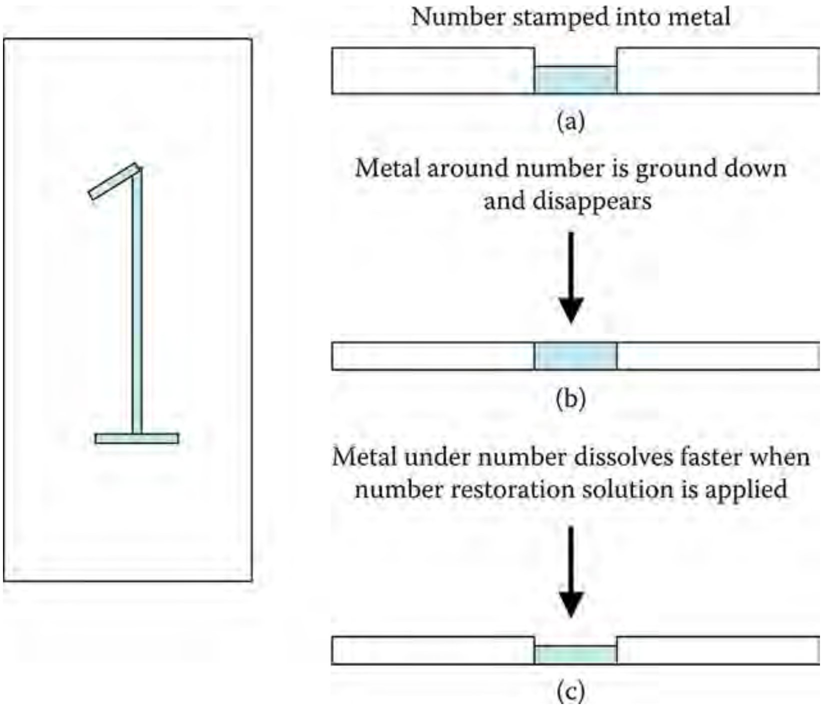

Number stamped into metal
(a)
Metal around number is ground down and disappears
(b)
Metal under number dissolves faster when number restoration solution is applied
(c)

Figure 12.21 A diagram showing how a serial number that is stamped into metal can be restored: (a) The indentation of the number 1 in a piece of metal. (b) The metal around the number being scraped off using a grinder. Although the number is no longer visible, the metal is deformed where the number was stamped. (c) The diagram shows how the metal under the number dissolves more rapidly than the surrounding metal. The number reappears for a short time and can be read.

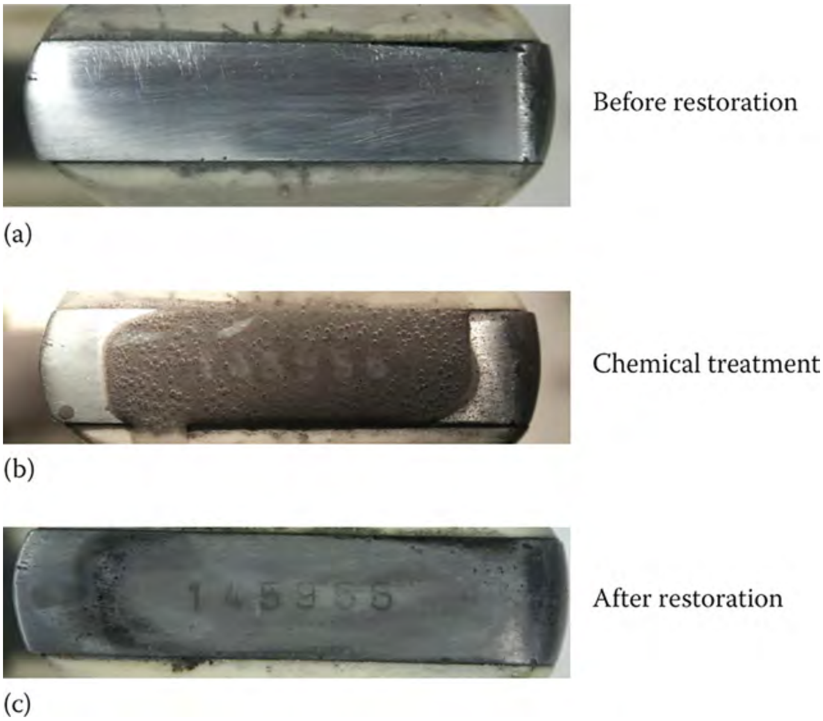

Before restoration
(a)
Chemical treatment
(b)
After restoration
(c)

Figure 12.22 Serial number restoration: The surface that contains the obliterated serial numbers is (a) first sanded smooth, (b) then treated with chemicals and (c) then wiped clean to reveal the numbers. Recovered serial numbers are then photographed before they fade from view. Photos courtesy of www.precisionforensictesting.com.

consists of 100 mL each of concentrated hydrochloric acid and water and 90 g of cupric chloride ($CuCl_2$). This solution acts as a reducing agent that dissolves iron and deposits copper.

Summary

Toolmarks are scratches made by tools that are used to fabricate objects such as guns and wire cutters. The tools leave microscopic markings on the surface of the object. These markings are unique to each tool and can be used to individualize the object. Firearms analysis is a major area of toolmarks. Tools are used to put the grooves and lands in rifled barrels that make bullets spin as they leave the barrel. The tools that dig the grooves leave microscopic markings called stria or striations on the inside of the barrel. These are transferred to the surface of the bullet as it passes through the barrel. Other parts of the weapon, also manufactured by tools, leave markings on cartridge cases. These include extractor and ejector markings and chamber marks as well as breech face and firing pin impressions. All of these are potentially individual markings. The number of land impressions and groove impressions in a bullet as well as the angle and direction of twist are class characteristics. The striations within a land impression in a bullet are individual characteristics. There is no set number of individual characteristics that must be present in order to declare that a bullet or cartridge casing was fired from a particular weapon.

Shotguns fire pellets rather than bullets and the barrels of these guns are not rifled. The pellets cannot be traced back to the individual weapon, but markings on the cartridge such as firing pin and breech face impressions can individualize the cartridge.

Distance-of-firing determinations can be estimated if the same weapon and ammunition are available. For bullets, the distance of firing is determined by the pattern left by propellant and primer that follows the bullet out of the barrel. The stippling and soot are only deposited on the target for a short distance. Beyond that, there is no reliable way of making distance of firing determinations. With shotguns, the diameter of the pellet pattern on the target can be used to determine the distance-of-firing if the same weapon and ammunition are used.

Other tools such as screwdrivers and wire cutters also leave striations on the surface of objects. These markings may also be traceable back to the particular tool.

Serial number restoration is related to toolmark analysis except the goal is to identify the serial number that was ground off the metal surface of an object such as a gun. The metal bonds beneath the stamped serial number are weakened. When a dissolving or etching solution is used, this weakened metal dissolves faster than the surrounding metal and the serial number will be temporarily visualized.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Rifling of a barrel refers to
   a. The grooves made in the barrel
   b. The stria in the barrel
   c. The lands and grooves in the barrel

   d. The firing pin impression
2. Which markings will not be found on a cartridge casing fired from a revolver?
   a. Lands
   b. Extractor markings
   c. Firing pin impressions
   d. Breech face markings
3. Which of the following is a class characteristic of a fired bullet or cartridge casing?
   a. Number of land impressions and groove impressions
   b. Ejector markings
   c. Breech face markings
   d. Bullet striations
4. Which of the following is true of distance-of-firing determinations of shotguns?
   a. Distance of firing cannot be determined with shotguns
   b. When a human being is the target, distance-of-firing determinations are easy because all of the pellets usually hit the target
   c. Intermediate targets have no effect on distance-of-firing determinations
   d. The same weapon and ammunition must be used to determine the distance of firing
5. Which of the following is true about the stria in a barrel of a gun?
   a. They are present in all weapons
   b. They are class characteristics
   c. They never change as the weapon is fired repeatedly
   d. They are initially made by the tool that makes the barrel
6. The major propellant used in firearms today is
   a. Smokeless powder
   b. Sodium azide
   c. Black powder
   d. Mercury fulminate
7. Which of the following is not a rifled weapon?
   a. Pistol
   b. Shotgun
   c. Machine gun
   d. Submachine gun
8. Today, “caliber” is defined in the United States as
   a. The diameter of the base of the cartridge in thousandths of inches
   b. The distance from the top of opposite lands in the barrel
   c. The distance from the bottom of opposite grooves in the barrel
   d. The length of the bullet in inches
9. Which of the following is true about serial number restoration?
   a. Serial numbers can be restored on any surface
   b. The metal below a stamped serial number is more dense than the surrounding metal, making it slower to dissolve in an etching solution
   c. The metal below a stamped serial number is strained, making it faster to dissolve in an etching solution than the surrounding metal
   d. Once restored, serial numbers remain visible permanently
10. In the Sacco–Vanzetti case discussed at the end of the chapter (Case Studies section), the jury based its guilty finding mainly on
   a. The matching striations on the bullets to Sacco’s gun as determined by a firearms examiner
   b. The fact that the type of ammunition used in the killings was very rare and only the defendants had any of it

   - c. The fact that all of the firearms examiners for the defense and prosecution agreed that the bullets taken from the dead guard matched Sacco's weapon
   - d. Sacco's admission of guilt on the stand in his trial

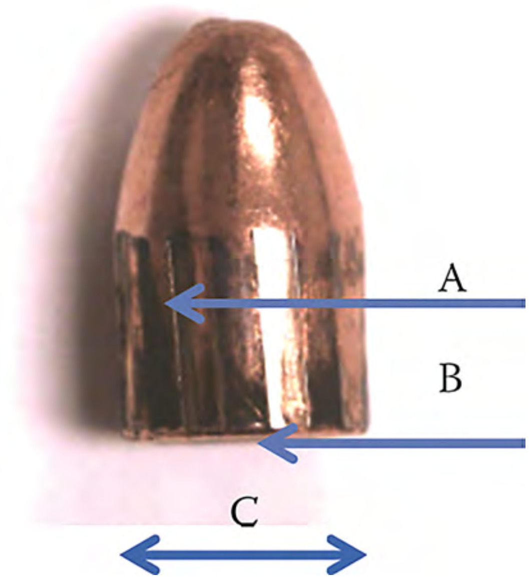
11. Determining the path of a bullet is considered to be part of the study of
    - a. Trajectories
    - b. Firearms identification
    - c. Ballistics
    - d. Toolmark identification
12. Which of the following weapons does *not* have rifling in the barrel?
    - a. Revolver
    - b. Shotgun
    - c. Pistol
    - d. Handgun

True or False

13. When a manufacturer rifles a barrel of a gun, it uses a broach tool to cut grooves into the metal barrel.
14. Once a toolmark has been impressed upon a surface, the tool making the mark never changes.
15. If a perpetrator sands down a serial number to the point where it is no longer visible, it is beyond the point of restoration.
16. Chamber marks on cartridge cases are considered individual characteristics.
17. Stippling on a surface is caused by metal shavings exiting a gun barrel.
18. Chemicals dissolve the unstamped area of a metal more rapidly than the stamped area, causing obliterated serial numbers to appear.
19. Extractor marks, breech face marks, striations and serial numbers are all examples of toolmarks.

Short Answer Questions

20. Bullet diagram. Name the labeled parts. Is the twist left or right?



21. When a bullet is found at a crime scene imbedded into a material, the crime scene technician should use rubberized tools to extract the bullet. What is the reasoning behind this?
22. A weapon is recovered from a crime scene. What types of evidence might the firearms examiner retrieve from the weapon and in what order, if any, should the evidence be processed?
23. List the class characteristics of a fired bullet. How can a fired bullet become individualized to a weapon?
24. Describe an instance when a fired bullet would *not* match the weapon from which it was fired?
25. If ballistic fingerprinting can create a database of manufactured weapons, why do more states not enlist such a program?

Match Each Term with Its Definition

26. The powder that leaves the barrel of the gun
27. A metal block that holds a cartridge case in place
28. A metal device that grips a cartridge after firing
29. A metal device that ousts the cartridge after firing
30. A pressure activated explosive mixture in a gun

a. Breech
b. Ejector
c. Extractor
d. Gunshot residue
e. Primer

References

Davis, J. E. (1958). *An Introduction to Toolmarks, Firearms, and the Striagraph*. Charles C Thomas, Springfield, IL.

Heard, B. J. (1997). *Handbook of Firearms and Ballistics*. Wiley & Sons, Chichester, U.K.

Rowe, W. F. (1988). *Firearms identification, in Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 2, R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

On the Web

A very thorough firearms tutorial: http://library.med.utah.edu/WebPath/TUTORIAL/GUNS/GUNINTRO.html.

National Integrated Ballistic Information Network (NIBIN): https://atg.sd.gov/LawEnforcement/Forensics/firearmstoolmarks.aspx.

Stippling: https://www.archivesofpathology.org/doi/full/10.1043/1543-2165%282006%29130%5B1283%3APPOGW%5D2.0.CO%3B2

A firearms tutorial site: www.firearmsid.com.

NIBIN website: https://www.atf.gov/firearms/national-integrated-ballistic-information-network-nibin

NIST Cartridge Case Statistical Matching Research: https://www.nist.gov/news-events/news/2018/02/how-good-match-it-putting-statistics-forensic-firearms-identification

10D imaging: https://cjisweb.s3.amazonaws.com/s3fs-public/publications/Forensic%20Optical%20Topography%20-%20A%20Landscape%20Study.pdf

Case Studies

Historical Case Study: Sacco and Vanzetti

On Friday, April 15, 1920, in South Braintree, Massachusetts, two men robbed two security guards who were delivering payroll money to the Slater and Morrill Shoe Factory. During the robbery, both guards were fatally wounded by gunshots from the robbers. The robbers then drove off in a black car with the payroll boxes containing $16,000. Later, police recovered the stolen getaway car and recovered six cartridges from the crime scene. These were later traced back to three ammunition manufacturers: Remington, Peters, and Winchester. Because the same car was implicated in an earlier robbery, the investigation focused on a known thug named Mike Boda. However, he had already fled to Italy by the time the payroll robbery took place. Police then arrested two of Boda's known associates, Italian laborers Nicola Sacco and Bartolomeo Vanzetti. At the time of their arrest, both were carrying guns and Sacco's was the same caliber, .32 Colt automatic, as the murder weapon. Sacco was also carrying ammunition made by the same three manufacturers.

Sacco and Vanzetti were tried for the payroll robbery and the murder of one of the security guards. Four bullets had been recovered from the dead guards and experts for the prosecution and defense were retained to determine whether Sacco's .32 Colt pistol was the murder weapon. Not surprisingly, the prosecution experts, though somewhat in disagreement, testified on the whole that Sacco's gun was the murder weapon. The defense experts testified that it was not. It is noteworthy that none of the experts based their opinions on any scientific analysis. None had any formal training in firearms examinations. Ultimately, the jury found Sacco and Vanzetti guilty. They based their opinion in large part on the fact that the bullets that killed the guard were so old and

Figure 12.23 Bartolomeo Vanzetti and Nicola Sacco handcuffed in 1923.

SAVE SACCO & VANZETTI
PROTEST DEMONSTRATION AGAINST DEATH SENTENCE
TRAFALGAR SQUARE, SUNDAY NEXT AT 3 PM
COME IN YOUR THOUSANDS
SAVE
SHEPHERDS BUSH
WELLS ROAD
BANK LUDGATE CR STRAND CHARING +
VICTORIA STATION SLOANE SQ KINGS RD
WALHAM GREEN HAMMERSMITH BDY

Figure 12.24 Protests over the guilty verdict and death sentence for Sacco and Vanzetti.

outdated that no one could locate any others except in the possession of Sacco. During the trial, the jurors were furnished with magnifying glasses so that they could view the markings on the bullets.

There was an immediate cry to have the verdict overturned and to set a new trial. The defense hired Albert Hamilton who stated that the murder weapon was definitely not Sacco's, but Hamilton had no real experience or expertise from which to draw these conclusions. Hamilton was a controversial character who had a reputation as someone who would testify to anything he was paid for: a hired gun. The prosecution's expert, Charles Van Amburgh, re-examined the bullet evidence and stuck to his opinion that Sacco's gun fired the fatal bullets. At a hearing to determine whether a retrial was needed, Hamilton brought another gun into court that was the same make and model as Sacco's and tried to exchange the barrels of the two weapons! He was caught by the judge who subsequently denied the motion for a retrial. In 1927, a committee of expert firearms examiners examined the bullet and cartridge evidence and concurred with the prosecution. Even the defense's new expert agreed. Sacco and Vanzetti were executed for the murder. The evidence was re-examined in 1961 and again in 1983 and both supported the conclusions of the 1927 panel. In 1977, however, the governor of Massachusetts issued a proclamation that Sacco and Vanzetti were innocent! The case remains controversial today.

For more information: Sacco & Vanzetti: www.youtube.com/watch?v=C3SuTTcj2u8.

More Recent Case Study: The Rape and Murder of Robin Bishop

Robin Bishop, at age 23, was an aspiring young actress who lived in Las Vegas, Nevada. Robin had a friend who lived in Los Angeles, California, and she was encouraging Robin to move to LA to pursue her career in acting. With the aim of talking to her friend further about the move to Los Angeles, Robin decided to drive there for a short visit. After visiting for a few days, she left LA to return home to Las Vegas. On the way, she stopped in Barstow, California to grab a bite to eat and call her mother on the phone to tell her about the trip. This was at around 8:00 pm on January 11, 1982. It was the last time her mother would ever speak with her daughter. Robin Bishop was found raped and murdered near a road just outside Barstow close to her abandoned vehicle. She had a gunshot wound to the back of her head. None of her belongings had been taken. The keys were still in her car. Her owner's registration and driver's license were at the top of her open purse. It looked like she had been stopped by the police or someone who was impersonating a police officer.

George Gwaltney, a 41 year old police officer for the Barstow Post of the California Highway Patrol, called in a sighting of an abandoned vehicle to the dispatcher. Minutes later, at approximately 9:23, he radioed again reporting finding a dead female along the side of the road near the car and said "It looks like a suicide".

First responders were perplexed. There was no reason for the car to be stopped at this remote section of the road, the car was is good working order, the keys were still in the ignition, and the victim's purse was still open on the front seat with no valuables missing. The victim had been shot in the back of the head, which would make Officer Gwaltney's suspicion of suicide impossible. Plus, Ms. Bishop had bruises on her wrists which the officers recognized as handcuff marks. Investigators were confused by the unusual number of Gwaltney's footprints at the scene for the interaction he described.

Robin Bishop's autopsy revealed that she indeed had had sex within 24 hours of her death and she died from a gunshot wound to the head. Bruises on her wrists matched police issue handcuffs. The fatal bullet was found lodged in her jaw. It was a Smith and Wesson .357 bullet, the same caliber, but not the same type as the C.H.P issued Remington .357.

The Barstow Highway Patrol requested officers to turn in their service revolvers for testing against the autopsy bullet. All were compliant with the exception of Gwaltney. When authorities came to his residence to retrieve his work pistol, he instead gave him his personal gun. He was asked to retrieve his service revolver, but when he went back to get it, he claimed it was missing and someone must have stolen it. Later, after getting a search warrant, his service Smith and Wesson .357 Model 19 revolver was found in his truck. It was missing a few parts: the grip, the cylinder and the barrel. Only the frame remained and there were toolmarks on the gun where the parts had been pried off. The toolmarks matched a pipe vise and wrenches found in his garage.

The evidence was mounting against Gwaltney. There were semen stains found in the backseat of his patrol car. However, since this was 1982 and DNA analysis was in its infancy, a DNA profile was not an option. Investigators did, however run blood typing tests and Gwaltney's blood type was found in the semen in the backseat of his car and on the jeans worn by Robin.

Another California Highway Patrol officer, Roger Kaufman, reported that he drove by the area of the crime scene at the time of the murder and saw a C.H.P. patrol car off on an access road with an officer standing outside the vehicle. He shined his flashlight in standard greeting to acknowledge the officer, but he could not recognize which officer it was.

Gwaltney was arrested and charged with rape and first-degree murder. There were two trials and, in both instances, Gwaltney and his lawyers claimed some of the evidence was circumstantial and some was planted. In both trials, the jury ended up deadlocked and both were declared mistrials. However, he was not acquitted of the charges.

The FBI got involved in the case and decided to try Gwaltney in federal court, claiming Robin Bishop's civil rights had been violated. In digging deeper into the case, they found a photograph of a case from Gwaltney's patrol car. In it was a box of Smith and Wesson .357 ammunition along with the Remington .357 ammo which was police issue. Gwaltney had sworn under oath in his previous trials that he did not have that type of ammunition in his possession. Investigators also found the same Smith and Wesson ammunition in his home. A chemical test was done comparing the amount of lead in the bullet that killed Robin to the amount of lead in the bullets found in the Gwaltney home. There were 27 bullets from the home that matched. This proved that the bullets were from the same batch. FBI toolmark examiners found that one of the teeth was missing in the wrench that was found in the garage. It was shown to be a positive match to the toolmarks found on the gun frame recovered from the truck.

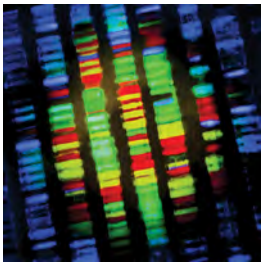
There was other evidence that pointed to Gwaltney. In testimony during the two previous state trials, Officer Gwaltney said he had been in town during the night in question and taken a young boy, a friend of his, home to his parents after he saw him walking alone in the dark. This was part of Gwaltney's "alibi". The timeline presented in the state trial was a half hour off; the boy's mother said Gwaltney dropped her son off a half hour earlier than the time presented at trial. Gwaltney did have ample time to commit the crime. Lastly, Gwaltney had a unique property in his semen. He had recently had a vasectomy reversal. Sometimes after this procedure, the body will react to the influx of semen and produce anti-sperm antibody to combat this foreign body. It is a rare condition, but Gwaltney had it. The semen samples on Robin's jeans and in the back seat of the patrol car showed the presence of anti-sperm antibodies. Combining the presence of these antibodies with the blood type match, the FBI came up with only 0.006% of the population would have this combination of traits. The chances that another man raped and murdered Robin Bishop were 1 in 60 million.

On June 21, 1984, George Gwaltney was found guilty in federal court of violating Robin Bishop's civil rights and sentenced to the maximum penalty of 90 years in prison. Gwaltney died in prison at the age of 56 on November 27. 1997.

For more information: http://suzukisthoughts.blogspot.com/2019/10/bad-cop-george-gwaltney-and-problem.html

PART IV

Forensic Biology



13

Forensic Pathology

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define pathology and forensic pathology and explain the differences
2. To be able to describe the coroner and medical examiner systems and describe their differences and similarities
3. To be able to define and distinguish between the cause of death and the manner of death
4. To be able to define and describe the medicolegal autopsy and explain when a coroner or medical examiner must perform an autopsy
5. To be able to describe the patterns of injury and characteristics of mechanical, electrical, thermal and chemical types of death
6. To be able to define the postmortem interval and explain how short- and long-term PMIs are estimated

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *How to Become a Forensic Pathologist*
- *Investigation of Death: Coroners and Medical Examiners*
- *Death Investigation Process*
  - *Death Certificate*
  - *Cause of Death*
  - *Manner of Death*
  - *Medicolegal Autopsy*
  - *Autopsy Process*
    - *External Examination*
    - *Internal Examination*
  - *Patterns of Injury and Classification of Violent Deaths*
    - *Deaths due to Mechanical Causes*
    - *Deaths due to Chemical Causes*
    - *Deaths due to Electrical Causes*
    - *Deaths due to Burns or Extreme Cold*
- *Postmortem Interval: Time of Death*
  - *Early Postmortem Interval*
    - *Algor Mortis*
    - *Rigor Mortis*
    - *Livor Mortis*
  - *Other Methods of Estimating PMI*
  - *Late PMI*
- *Exhumations*
- *Teamwork Approach*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Algor mortis: Cooling of the body after death.

Anatomic pathology: Study of the structural and morphological changes to the body as the result of a disease state.

Autopsy: Internal and external investigation of a body to determine cause and manner of death.

Autopsy: Internal and external medical investigation of a body to determine cause and manner of death.

Cause of death: Trauma or injury or the disease (or combination of both) that resulted in cessation of life.

Clinical pathology: Analysis of various materials removed from the body including blood, saliva, spinal fluid, urine, etc., for the purpose of determining the presence of drugs and/or poisons and their role in illness or death.

Coroner: Elected official whose function is to determine the cause and manner of death in cases that are statutorily mandated.

Crowner: Chief tax collector in medieval England. Functions included determining cause and manner of death.

Embalming: Addition of a preservative chemical to the body shortly after death.

Exhumation: Removal of a body after burial.

Hyperthermia: Extreme heat.

Hypothermia: Extreme cold.

Livor mortis: Tendency of the blood to pool at the lowest part of the body under the influence of gravity after death.

Manner of death: Set of circumstances that existed at the time the death was caused. There are only four manners of death: *homicide*, natural causes, accidental or suicide.

Mechanism of death: The actual physical, physiological or chemical event that brings on cessation of life.

Medical examiner: Appointed official whose function is to determine the cause and manner of death in cases that are statutorily mandated. Must be a physician.

Medicolegal autopsy: Part of postmortem investigation of the body. Same as autopsy.

Pathology: The medical specialty concerned with the determination of the causes and manners of disease and death.

Postmortem interval (PMI): Time since death.

Rief of the shire: Local official appointed by the Crowner to help with the determination of cause and manner of death.

Rigor mortis: Stiffening of the joints within hours after death.

Stippling: Particles of burned and unburned gunshot residue that are deposited on the surface of the target of a gunshot.

Acronyms

PMI	Postmortem interval

Introduction

Forensic pathology is one of the most important of the forensic applications of biology. Although *pathology* is a medical specialty that involves both the living and the dead, *forensic pathology* is involved only with the dead. Pathology originally involved the study of the structural and morphological changes to the body as the result of a disease state. Today, this is called *anatomic pathology*. In modern times, pathology has been expanded to include the study of disease by analytical laboratory methods. This includes the analysis of various materials removed from the body including blood, saliva, spinal fluid, urine, etc., for the purpose of determining the presence of drugs and/or poisons and their role in illness or death. Today, this branch is called *clinical pathology*. The difference is the purpose for which the pathology is being carried out. Most clinical pathology today is done by forensic toxicologists who work with forensic pathologists in helping determine the cause and manner of death in postmortem cases. Forensic toxicology is discussed in detail in Chapter 20. Both anatomic and clinical pathology are used in the practice of forensic pathology. Forensic pathology is the determination of the cause and manner of death in cases of suspicious or unexplained death. In this chapter, we will study the role of the forensic pathologist in the investigation of death and will learn a bit about how the cause and manner of death can be determined and who has the responsibility for making these determinations.

How to Become a Forensic Pathologist

After high school, it takes approximately 14 years to become a fully trained, board certified forensic pathologist. First, one must obtain a college degree (at least 4 years) and apply to medical school, since pathology is a medical specialty and practitioners must first obtain a medical degree. Medical school generally takes four more years after obtaining a college degree. After completing medical school, many physicians desire to become specialists in a specific type of medicine such as pediatrics, internal medicine or pathology. This requires a residency in a specialty. This generally takes 3–4 additional years after medical school. After a 4 -year residency in pathology, the physician can become board certified as a pathologist. However, to obtain certification in forensic pathology, the pathologist must spend an additional year or two in a residency and can then apply for certification from the American Board of Forensic Pathology.

Currently there is a shortage of board-certified forensic pathologists in the United States. This is not a new problem. In 2016, the National Commission on Forensic Science's Medicolegal Death Investigation Subcommittee made a series of recommendations/requests to the U.S. Attorney General in order to address the critical shortage of forensic pathologists. The committee's goals were to increase the number of medical students choosing to train in forensic pathology, retain those students in a program and increase the quality of board-certified pathologists. Presently the United States has approximately 500 board-certified forensic pathologists and the demand is for double that amount. Due to a current opioid crisis as well as an increase in other traumatic deaths, there is an increasing demand for autopsies. Exacerbating the problem, many forensic pathologists now working in the profession are aging toward retirement, with no young professionals ready to fill their positions. In the 2019 National Resident Match Program, less than 2% chose a pathology program and only 0.06% went on to successfully complete a forensic pathology program.

The major duties of a forensic pathologist are

- To determine the apparent cause of death
- To determine (estimate) the *postmortem interval (PMI)* or *time of death*
- To ascertain the manner of death
- To determine the identity of the deceased

Investigation of Death: Coroners and Medical Examiners

Every country and, in the United States, each state, has a system in place to investigate deaths. This system includes one or more officials who are in charge of the death investigation process and one or more pathologists who assist in the investigation by conducting a *medicolegal autopsy* or *post-mortem investigation* of the body. Today, in the United States and some other countries, there are two systems of death investigation; the *Coroner* and the *Medical Examiner*. Before explaining these, a bit of history is necessary.

The first system for the investigation of death in the Western world was developed around 1000 BC in England. Officials called *Crowners* were named by the King to collect taxes from around the country. At some point, landholders would die and a decision had to be made as to the disposition of his land holdings. This was a very important function to the King because much of his wealth derived from goods and taxes that were given by the landholders as a condition of continuing in possession of the land. Thus, if a landholder committed suicide, his land and wealth would be forfeited to the Crown because by the act of taking his own life he had in a way, deprived the King of a taxpayer. By the same token, someone who killed a landholder would likewise be removing a taxpayer from the roles and would forfeit his land as part of his punishment. The process of determining how and why someone died fell to the Crowner because of the goods and taxes implications of the death. In a far flung empire, this was a complicated system and the Crowner would enlist help by appointing local officials in each county (shire), the *Rief of the Shire* (or Shire Rief) to help with death investigations. The Shire Rief would investigate the crime, often by enlisting the help of local upstanding citizens who would view the body and the evidence from witnesses and help reach a conclusion as to the cause and manner of death. There were no physicians, let alone pathologists at the time who could provide expertise to this process. That would not happen until much later.

When the American Colonies were founded, citizens imported much of the English legal system including the system of death investigation. The Crowner became the *Coroner* who is responsible for the determination of cause and manner of death. Most states had a coroner for each county and in some cases, for major cities. The Shire Rief became, of course, the Sheriff whose job became one of law enforcement and jail management rather than having a specific role in the investigation of death. As time passed, it became evident that there are some problems with the coroner system. First, for the most part, coroners did not have to be pathologists or even physicians. They did not have to have any medical training whatsoever. Some coroners were, and are today, funeral home directors. This means that the coroner could steer business to his own funeral home after completing examination of a body. This has led to some abuse of the system. As medical education developed in the United States and pathology became a recognized medical specialty, coroners began to enlist their help in investigating deaths. In recognition of these problems, a *Medical Examiner* system was developed. Under this system, the official who is responsible for the determination of the cause and manner of death must be a physician (although usually not a pathologist) and is appointed by the government of the county or state. If the medical examiner is not a pathologist, he or she will enlist the aid of one or more of them to help with death investigations. Massachusetts was the first state to have a medical examiner, in 1877.

Today, about half of the states use the medical examiner system and the other half use a form of the coroner system. Some have mixed systems with both medical examiners and coroners.

The NAS Forensic Science Committee devoted a separate recommendation to the medico-legal death investigation system is the United States. Recognizing the problems described above with the coroner system and addressing the shortage of forensically trained pathologists, the Committee recommended that the coroner system be abolished and replaced by a medical examiner. In addition, the Committee recommended that incentives be given to medical students to learn and practice forensic pathology. Since coroner or medical examiner systems are under the control of each state and sometimes each county, the Committee recognized that the federal government had no supervisory role to play and could only provide monetary incentives to adopt a medical examiner system in a given jurisdiction.

Death Investigation Process

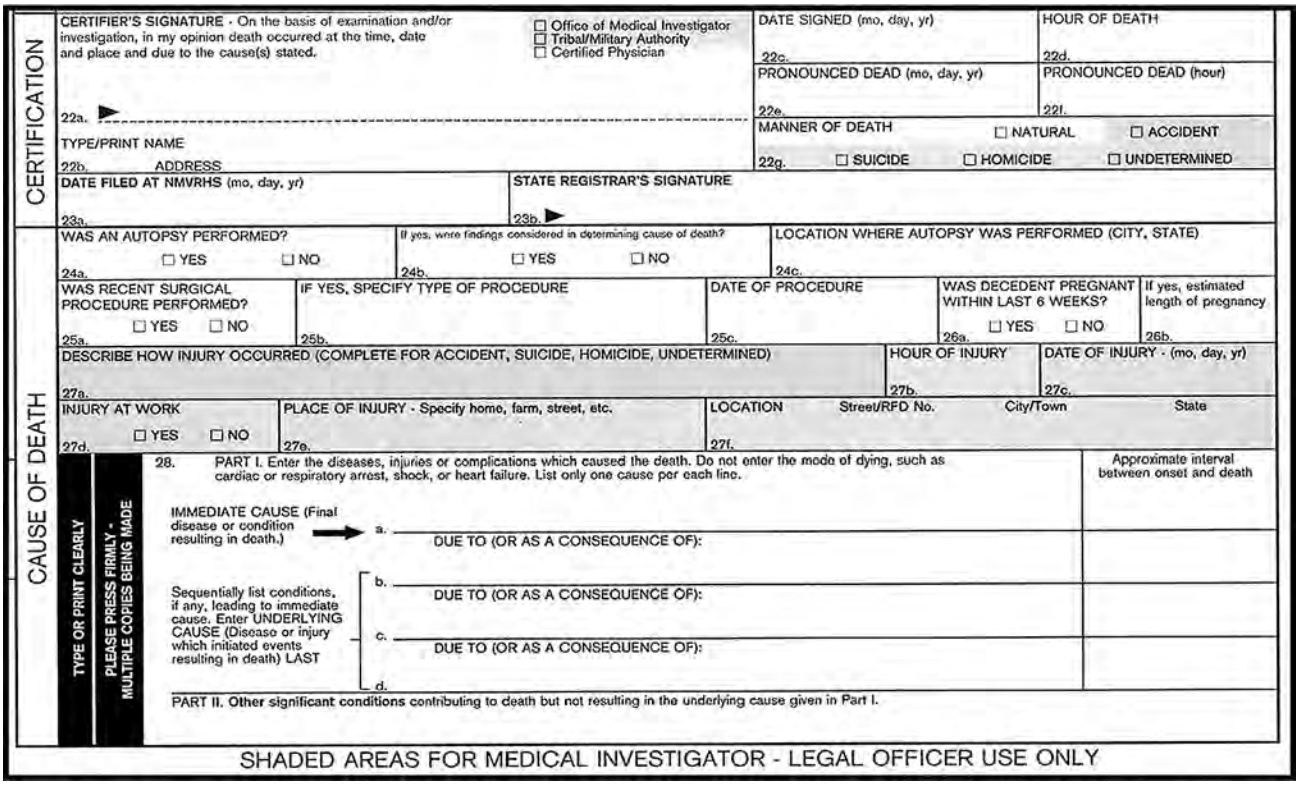
Once a body is found under suspicious or unexplained circumstances, a medical examiner or coroner (or deputy) is called to the death scene. At that time, the official determines that the person is, in fact, dead and makes some preliminary observations about the cause and manner of death by noting the position of the body and the surroundings of the death, as well as obvious wounds or trauma. In addition, data is collected that can be used to estimate the *post-mortem interval* (PMI) or *time since death*. This is often a critical piece of information in solving a homicide. When the pathologist is finished with this examination, the body is often turned over to a special death investigation scene team, which is specially trained to examine a body so as to be able to spot, document and collect important trace and other evidence before moving the body to the morgue. Improper handling of a body at a death scene can cause the loss or compromise of critical evidence of the cause and manner of death. Only after this careful search for evidence and documentation of the scene is the body removed.

Death Certificate

Every state requires that a *death certificate* be executed for every death that occurs within each jurisdiction. State law provides for what the death certificate must contain and who may fill it out and sign it. The law also describes those situations where a death must be investigated by the coroner or medical examiner and signed by him or her. Although these laws vary somewhat, they require that suspicious or unexplained deaths and those of people who have not recently been under the care of a physician must be investigated by the medical examiner or coroner. Typically, this will involve about one-third of all deaths. These deaths will usually, but not always, involve a medicolegal autopsy as part of the death investigation process. The two critical pieces of information on the death certificate are the cause and manner of death. Figure 13.1 shows a portion of a typical death certificate.

Cause of Death

There are many causes of death. The trauma or injury or the disease (or combination of both) that resulted in cessation of life is the *cause of death*. Normally,



CERTIFICATION

CERTIFIER'S SIGNATURE - On the basis of examination and/or investigation, in my opinion death occurred at the time, date and place and due to the cause(s) stated.

☐ Office of Medical Investigator
☐ Tribal/Military Authority
☐ Certified Physician

22a. ▶

TYPE/PRINT NAME
22b. ADDRESS

DATE SIGNED (mo, day, yr)
22c.

HOUR OF DEATH
22d.

PRONOUNCED DEAD (mo, day, yr)
22e.

PRONOUNCED DEAD (hour)
22f.

MANNER OF DEATH ☐ NATURAL ☐ ACCIDENT
22g. ☐ SUICIDE ☐ HOMICIDE ☐ UNDETERMINED

DATE FILED AT NMVRHS (mo, day, yr)
23a.

STATE REGISTRAR'S SIGNATURE
23b. ▶

CAUSE OF DEATH

WAS AN AUTOPSY PERFORMED? ☐ YES ☐ NO
24a.

If yes, were findings considered in determining cause of death? ☐ YES ☐ NO
24b.

LOCATION WHERE AUTOPSY WAS PERFORMED (CITY, STATE)
24c.

WAS RECENT SURGICAL PROCEDURE PERFORMED? ☐ YES ☐ NO
25a.

IF YES, SPECIFY TYPE OF PROCEDURE
25b.

DATE OF PROCEDURE
25c.

WAS DECEDENT PREGNANT WITHIN LAST 6 WEEKS? ☐ YES ☐ NO
26a.

If yes, estimated length of pregnancy
26b.

DESCRIBE HOW INJURY OCCURRED (COMPLETE FOR ACCIDENT, SUICIDE, HOMICIDE, UNDETERMINED)
27a.

HOUR OF INJURY
27b.

DATE OF INJURY - (mo, day, yr)
27c.

INJURY AT WORK ☐ YES ☐ NO
27d.

PLACE OF INJURY - Specify home, farm, street, etc.
27e.

LOCATION Street/RFD No. City/Town State
27f.

TYPE OR PRINT CLEARLY

PLEASE PRESS FIRMLY - MULTIPLE COPIES BEING MADE

28. PART I. Enter the diseases, injuries or complications which caused the death. Do not enter the mode of dying, such as cardiac or respiratory arrest, shock, or heart failure. List only one cause per each line.

Approximate interval between onset and death

IMMEDIATE CAUSE (Final disease or condition resulting in death.) ➡ a.
DUE TO (OR AS A CONSEQUENCE OF):

Sequentially list conditions, if any, leading to immediate cause. Enter UNDERLYING CAUSE (Disease or injury which initiated events resulting in death) LAST

b.
DUE TO (OR AS A CONSEQUENCE OF):
c.
DUE TO (OR AS A CONSEQUENCE OF):
d.

PART II. Other significant conditions contributing to death but not resulting in the underlying cause given in Part I.

SHADED AREAS FOR MEDICAL INVESTIGATOR - LEGAL OFFICER USE ONLY

Figure 13.1 A portion of a death certificate showing the possible manners of death. The medical examiner or coroner must choose one of these for each death. Note that the area under "cause of death" permits several entries.

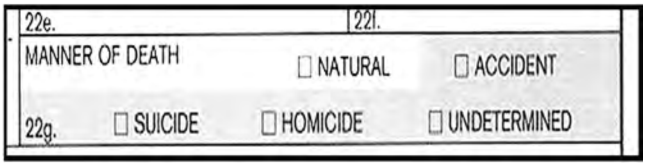
a pathologist will determine the *primary or immediate cause of death* and, if present, *secondary or contributing cause(s) of death*. For example, consider the case of a man who is driving his car on a highway. He suddenly has a stroke, which causes the loss of sight in his eyes and loss of motor control of his arms and legs. He loses control of his car and crashes into a tree. The impact forces the steering column into his chest, causing fatal trauma to his heart. The primary cause of death is the injuries sustained in the crash. The stroke would be a contributing cause of death. If the man had high blood pressure, it may have contributed to causing the stroke and could be viewed as a contributing cause of death. In other cases, the injury or disease itself causes death quickly and there are no other secondary causes. An especially lethal snakebite would be an example of this.

Some pathologists also speak of the *mechanism of death*. This is the actual physical, physiological or chemical event that brings on cessation of life. Here, the pathologist must carefully examine the organ or system that failed due to the application of the cause of death and describe exactly what changes occurred that were incompatible with life.

Occasionally, determination of the cause of death can be tricky. For example, suppose that someone suffered a nonlethal gunshot wound when he was being robbed at gun point. The bullet became lodged in an inoperable location in the man's head, but does not cause him to die or even be ill. Years later, he gets into a fight with another man in a barroom brawl. The other man hits him in the head with a chair, but not hard enough to kill him. The blow dislodges the bullet from its location and its movement causes trauma to the brain that causes uncontrollable bleeding that causes death. What was the actual cause of death? It can be difficult to determine years after the first contributing factor.

Manner of Death

The *manner of death* is the set of circumstances that existed at the time the death was caused. There are only four manners of death and thus, all deaths must be attributed to one of them. These are *homicide*, *natural causes*, *accidental* or *suicide*. There is a space on the death certificate that requires the coroner or medical examiner to list the manner of death (see Figure 13.2). In some states, the official must put one of the four, even if he or she has to make an educated guess. In most states, however, the official can put "undetermined" if there is not enough information to reach a definite conclusion about the manner of death.



22e.
22f.
MANNER OF DEATH ☐ NATURAL ☐ ACCIDENT
22g. ☐ SUICIDE ☐ HOMICIDE ☐ UNDETERMINED

Figure 13.2 A close up of the manner of death portion of a death certificate. This certificate permits a conclusion of "undetermined". In some states, this is not permitted.

In many cases, the manner of death is evident. If someone dies after a massive heart attack in his home, the manner of death will be listed as *natural causes*. If a person is driving a car while talking on a cell phone and accidentally drops the phone and then loses control of the car while trying to retrieve the phone, and then has a fatal crash, the manner of death will be *accidental*. About 30 years ago, there was a poisoning case in Michigan where a housekeeper, angry at not getting a raise in salary, set out to kill her employer by putting ant syrup (a combination of honey and arsenic used to attract and poison ants) in her coffee. Instead, the employer's visiting sister drank the coffee by mistake and died. The manner of death was a *homicide* even though the housekeeper did not mean to kill the sister.

Medicolegal Autopsy

One of the most critical parts of the investigation of death is the autopsy. In medicolegal cases, it is hard to imagine how one could accurately determine the cause and manner of death without probing the exterior and interior of the body. The term *autopsy* means to "see with one's own eyes". This does not seem like an appropriate term to describe the examination of a dead body. The term *necropsy* or "looking at the dead" is a better descriptor. Many religions throughout the world forbid or limit autopsies. Certain mid-eastern religions forbid them. The religions of Judaism, Christianity and Islam put limitations on when autopsies can be performed. Under English Common Law, the kin of the deceased must give their permission for an autopsy to be done. This has carried over to the United States and is the policy in most states today. The exceptions occur when the law states that the medical examiner or coroner must perform an autopsy. The number of autopsies that are performed in this country has declined greatly since World War II. Today, hospital autopsies are performed in less than 5% of deaths. There are several reasons for this. First, autopsies can be expensive and the cost must be borne by the hospital. Second, a hospital autopsy is usually only done with the consent of the family and there may be personal or increasingly, religious reasons for the family objecting. This trend is unfortunate because autopsies present a great learning opportunity for pathologists. Many of the most important advances in medicine have occurred as the result of knowledge gained by autopsies. As shown in Figure 13.3, medicolegal autopsies make up about one-third of all autopsies.

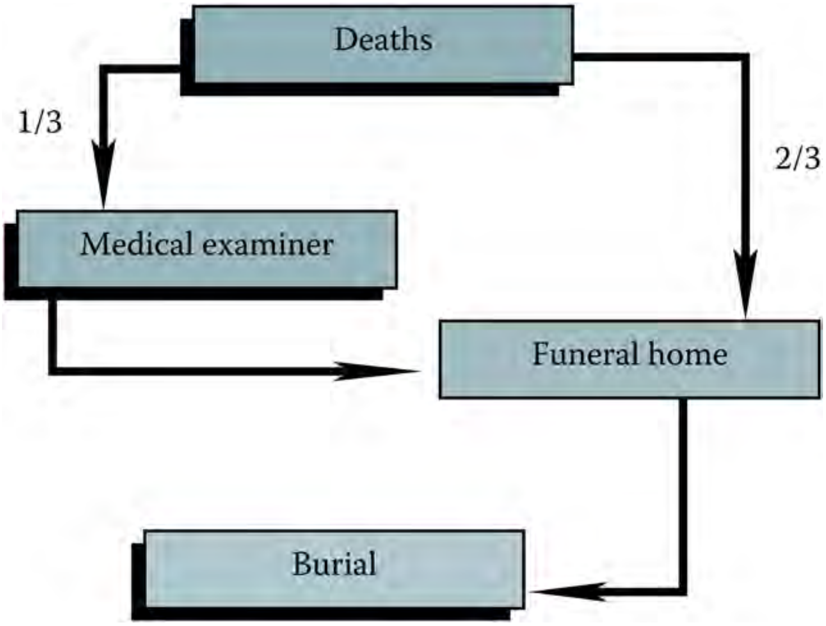


Figure 13.3 This chart shows the distribution of deaths and the fraction that are sent to a medical examiner or coroner for autopsy. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

A new tool in medicolegal autopsies is the use of CT (computed tomography) scans as part of the external examination of the body. CT scans, a more detailed form of X-ray, use computer images show 3D detail of the internal body systems. In some cases, a CT scan can take the place of an autopsy if the cause of death can be determined by the scan. In other instances, scanning is a valuable precursor to the internal examination, allowing the pathologist to focus attention to parts of the body showing internal trauma and ignore parts that are scanned normal. For example, if a CT scan of a car accident victim shows internal damage to the thoracic and abdominal region but the cranial scan was normal, then the head of the victim would not need to be autopsied. This can save time for the forensic pathologist, especially with a large case load.

There are other advantages to using CT scanning in autopsies. Court presentation of body trauma via a CT scan is more acceptable in court. Judges do not allow grossly unpleasant autopsy photos to be shown in court over concern that it would prejudice a jury against the defendant. Additionally, scanning is a noninvasive way to possibly determine cause of death for those individuals whose religious or cultural beliefs (Muslim, Buddhist, Orthodox Jewish, Native American) forbid autopsy or hold the belief that the body must to be interned in 24 hours post mortem.

Autopsy Process

Any type of autopsy, medicolegal or a routine examination performed in a hospital proceeds in a logical manner from the outside in. In many cases, the pathologist will dictate her findings during the autopsy. These will later be reduced to written notes. Sometimes, sketches will be made of wounds or injuries but photography is more commonly used. One of the most important characteristics of a medicolegal autopsy is that it involves not only an examination of the body to determine the cause and manner of death but also requires a search of the body for physical evidence that can yield clues to the identity of the deceased if it is not known, or perhaps the identity of the perpetrator in the case of a homicide. Pathologists who are not trained in forensic pathology often overlook or compromise significant physical evidence. Types of evidence that are often overlooked by nonforensically trained pathologists include trace evidence such as hairs and fibers, dirt and skin under nails, gunshot residues and other small wounds that might have forensic significance. Also, forensic pathologists are specially trained to recognize patterns of injury and associate them with particular causes.

External Examination

The external examination of the body can be very important. It can yield clues about the cause and manner of death, provide identifying markings such as tattoos or unusual clothing and can, of course, provide trace evidence that can help associate the deceased with the crime scene and/or perpetrator. A detailed examination of the entire body is made. The body is extensively photographed clothed and unclothed. Wounds and trauma are noted such as entry and exit gunshot wounds or defensive wounds.

Internal Examination

After the external examination is made and properly documented, standard incisions are made in the torso and the internal examinations are done. Body fluid samples including blood, urine and other fluids are usually removed and sent to a forensic toxicologist for examination to determine if there are drugs or poisons in the body that could have caused or contributed to death. All of the major organs are removed, weighed and measured. They will also be examined to determine if there are characteristic wounds or injuries that can give clues as to the cause and manner of death. Wounds or injuries that appeared on the outside of the body and travel inside are traced. These would include gunshot wounds and knife wounds. If there are bullets or shotgun pellets still in the body, they will be located and removed. The body may be X-rayed so that this can be compared to ante mortem X-rays in case the identity of the deceased is an issue.

Patterns of Injury and Classification of Violent Deaths

The major purpose of the autopsy is to determine the cause and manner of death, especially in the case of violent death. The most important evidence of the deceased is the pattern of injury that is evidenced by certain types of violent deaths. Forensic pathologists are trained to recognize these patterns and relate them to the cause of death. A pathologist who is not forensically trained may not spot the patterns or may misinterpret them. Patterns of injury in violent deaths can be put into one of four classes; *mechanical, thermal, electrical or chemical*. Some types of death may overlap two or more of the classes. For example, *asphyxiation* (oxygen deprivation to the brain that causes death) can be mechanical, chemical or electrical in nature.

Deaths due to Mechanical Causes

The most common mechanical types of violent death are gunshot and stabbing. Other types include motor vehicle incidents and falls. *Sharp force injuries* include knives and other implements. The type of wound produced by a sharp implement is called in *incised wound*. It has relatively sharp edges. A *blunt force injury*, on the other hand, causes *lacerations*. These have rougher edges than incisions. Figure 13.4a is a drawing of an incision and Figure 13.4b is a laceration. Forensic

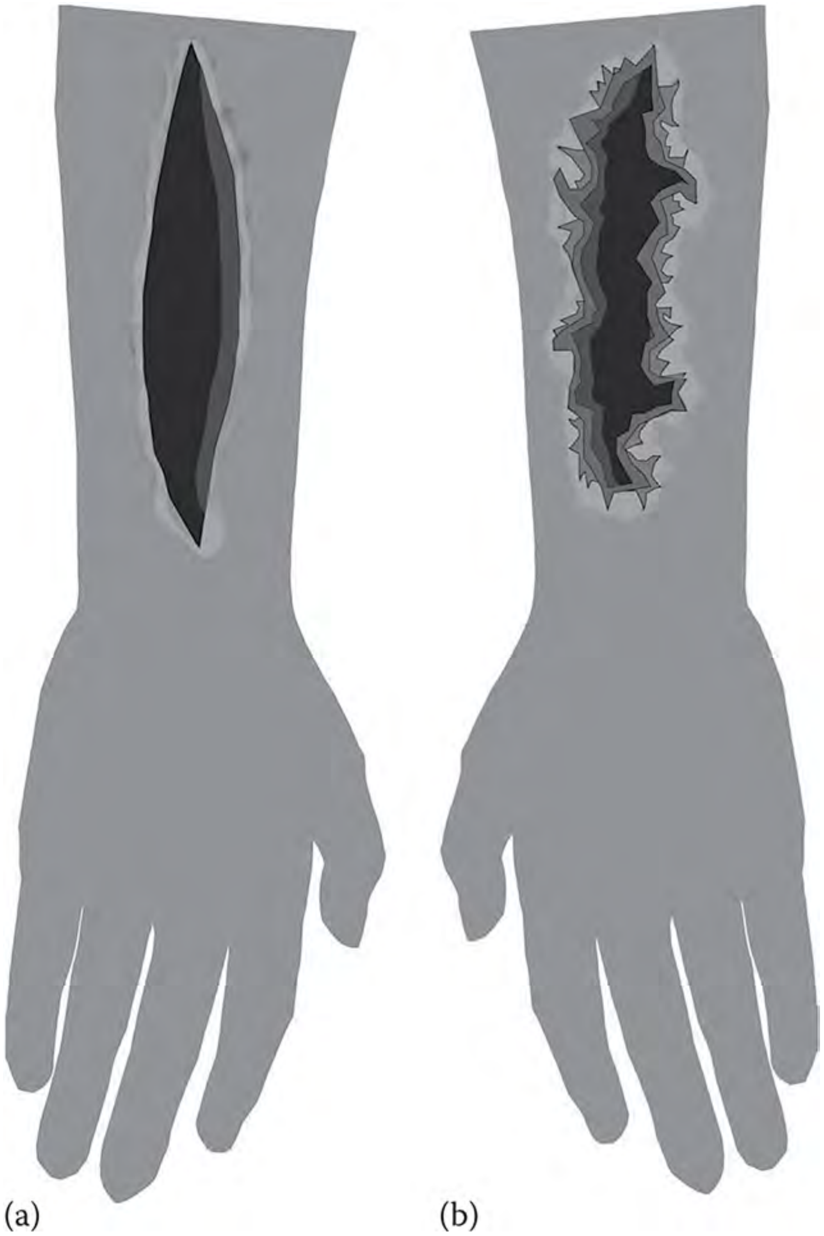


Figure 13.4 (a) An incision and (b) a laceration. Note the ragged edges on a laceration. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

pathologists can examine a wound and generally tell the type of weapon used. If a knife has serrations in it, these can show up in the margins of the wound. If the knife strikes bone, the serrations can be detected on the surface of the bone. It is generally not possible to determine the exact size of the weapon that causes a laceration or incision. In order for a sharp implement to cause death, it must damage a major artery or the heart or brain or spinal cord. Blunt force injuries can cause death by a variety of means.

Firearm injuries are a type of blunt force injury. Different injury patterns arise from bullet wounds than shotgun pellet wounds. High-speed bullets from hunting and military rifles cause more damage to a body than do lower speed bullets from hand guns. Some gunshots penetrate the body but do not exit. They become lodged in bone or an organ. Gunshots that enter and exit the body are called *perforating wounds*.

In the case of gunshot wounds, pathologists often attempt to determine how far away from the victim the gun was when it was shot. Gunshots can be divided into three types: contact, intermediate and distant. In a *contact shot*, the gun is pressed up against the body and discharged. The entry wound will show blackening and swelling. The swelling is due to the injection of hot, escaping gases from the barrel of the gun (see Chapter 12 for a discussion of firearms) under the skin. This swelling often causes lacerations in the skin. Figure 13.5 is a drawing of a contact shot.

In an *intermediate shot*, particles of unburned and partially burned propellant (usually smokeless powder) lodge in the skin. This effect is called *stippling*. The diameter of the ring of stippling around the wound is proportional to the distance of firing. For most weapons, stippling appears only when the gun is discharged within a few feet of the target. Beyond that distance, the stippling either does not reach the target or falls off when it hits. These are called *distance shots*. Figure 13.6 shows stippling on a target.

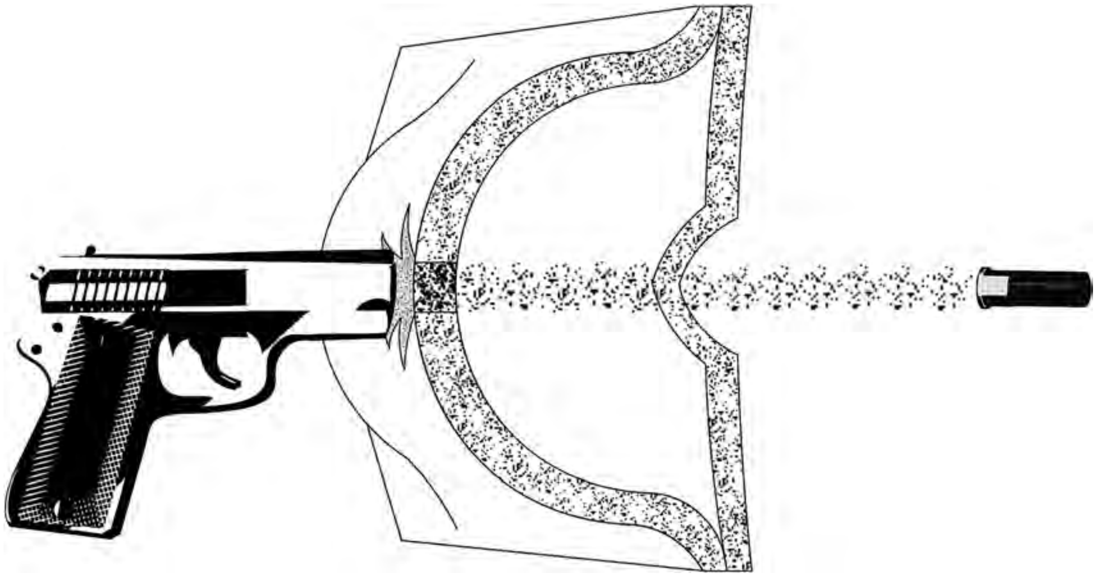


Figure 13.5 Diagram of a contact shot. Hot escaping gases from the muzzle of the gun are injected into and underneath the skin, causing it to bulge out. If there is any stippling it is confined to a narrow circular area. There will usually be burns at the point of contact with the skin. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

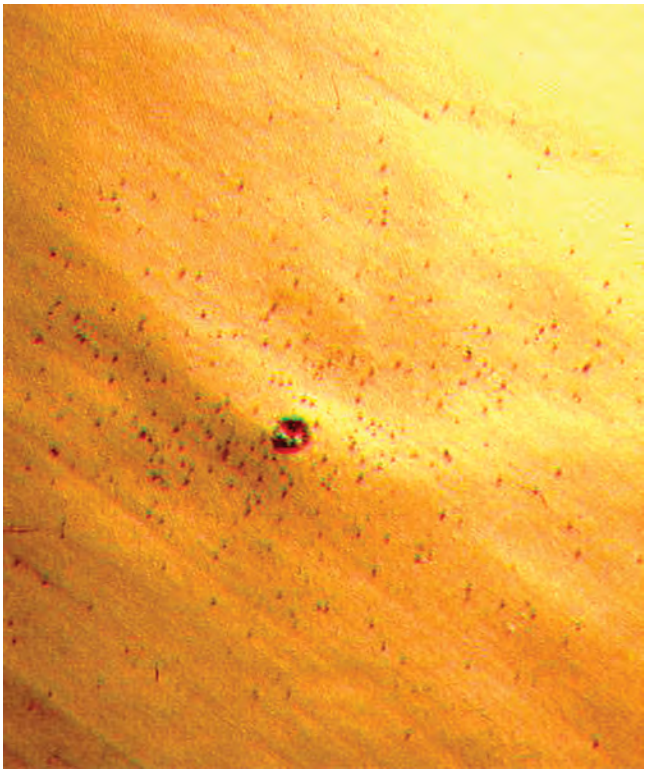


Figure 13.6 Stippling around a bullet hole in cloth. This consists of partially burned and unburned particles of gunshot residue They can be enhanced by chemical treatment.

Deaths due to Chemical Causes

The fate of drugs and alcohol in the body is discussed in detail in Chapter 20. Drugs and alcohol are contributory factors in death far more often than they are the cause of death. This is because it generally takes a good deal of a drug to cause a fatal overdose and many people will pass out before they can ingest a fatal dose. Also, certain drugs and alcohol cause detrimental changes in motor coordination and functions that can lead to death if the victim takes part in activities that require these functions. Drunk or drugged driving is an example of a situation where death may occur because the driver is intoxicated and loses control of the car and dies.

Drugs that cause death are most commonly depressants. A high overdose of alcohol, for example, can cause the person to lapse into a coma and respiration will slow so much that the victim ceases to breathe and dies. The cause of death is lack of oxygen owing to the slow breathing rate. In many cases, a person who has taken a large quantity of alcohol over time will start to vomit. This will bring up the alcohol in the stomach and it no more will be absorbed. If the overdose occurs rapidly, the vomiting reflex may be depressed and the person will not vomit and death will ensue.

The amount of a drug or alcohol that can cause death depends in part on the person’s history of taking the drug. With most drugs, a tolerance builds up that allows the person to tolerate increased levels before death ensues. As discussed in Chapter 20, synergism is also a factor in the role of drugs in causing death. Alcohol and barbiturates are both depressants. They do not work in exactly the same way but they do magnify each other’s effects so that a person can die from a combination even though the dose of either one by itself would not be lethal. Entertainers such as Janice Joplin and Jimi Hendrix died from an accidental overdose of alcohol and barbiturates. Besides the barbiturates, opiates and diazepam (e.g., Valium) overdoses cause death by the same mechanism. There have been no known death overdoses of marijuana. Cocaine has been reported to cause overdose deaths but by a different mechanism than for depressants. Cocaine is a stimulant. At very high doses, it causes seizures and uncontrolled heart beating, both of which can cause death.

Carbon monoxide (CO) is a product of incomplete combustion of hydrocarbon fuels such as natural gas and gasoline. (Complete combustion results in the formation of carbon dioxide). CO is a colorless, odorless, tasteless gas. When ingested, it attaches to *hemoglobin* in the blood. Hemoglobin is the substance in blood that carries molecules of oxygen to each cell in the body. Carbon monoxide ties up the hemoglobin, forming *carboxyhemoglobin* so there is less of it for oxygen to attach to. As a result, the victim dies of asphyxiation. Carboxyhemoglobin is bright red and victims of CO poisoning have a characteristic red coloration. Blood levels of CO as low as 20% can kill. Levels as high as 90% are common among people trapped in fires.

Hydrogen Cyanide (HCN) can also cause death. It is highly poisonous and has the characteristic odor of almonds. It acts by interfering with oxygen delivery to the brain, causing asphyxiation. It has been used as an instrument of carrying out executions of felons sentenced to death in the *gas chamber*. In such cases, potassium cyanide tablets or powder is mixed with a strong acid. This forms HCN, which the prisoner then inhales, causing death. Swallowing potassium cyanide has the same effect because it is converted to HCN by stomach acid.

Deaths due to Electrical Causes

Electrical deaths can occur in any of several ways depending upon the type and magnitude of the electrical current that the victim is exposed to. Alternating current of moderate voltage (less than about 1000 V) causes the heart to quiver uncontrollably. This is called *ventricular fibrillation* and can cause death within just a few minutes. The person may not even be burned by the electrical energy at these levels. At higher levels of voltage, the heart stops beating because the electrical current disrupts the nervous impulses that keep the heart in rhythm. Also, voltages of this magnitude can cause severe burns in seconds and destruction of cellular material in the body.

Deaths due to Burns or Extreme Cold

Extreme heat is called *hyperthermia*. Extreme cold is called *hypothermia*. In order for the body to function normally, it must maintain a temperature very close to 37°C (99°F). Significant deviations from this temperature for even a few minutes can cause injury and can lead to death. Because of this, a person who dies from hyperthermia or hypothermia may not show outward signs of the cause of death unless there are visible burns or signs of frostbite on the body. The determination of the cause of death is often made by noting the environment where the body was found. Alcohol can be especially dangerous when a person is exposed to low temperatures. Alcohol dilates (expands) blood vessels that can increase heat loss and, as a person's intoxication level increases, sensitivity to heat and cold decreases so that the person may not perceive the presence of dangerous temperature levels.

Postmortem Interval: Time of Death

Determination of the PMI is very important in death investigation. It can help establish or refute the alibi of a suspect. It can be a key piece of evidence in determining the manner of death. Unfortunately, the PMI cannot be determined exactly because the modern methods of determination do not result in sufficiently accurate data. In addition, the environment surrounding a corpse can greatly affect changes in the body that are used to determine PMI. For example, if someone dies and the body is left outside in cold weather, the rate of body cooling slows markedly. Because of this uncertainty, pathologists always express the PMI as a range of hours or even days, reflecting the uncertainty of measurement of the relevant factors. The investigation of the PMI begins at the death scene. The temperature and physical environment is noted. The amount of clothing or other covering of the deceased is also important. The attending pathologist will usually take the core temperature of the deceased to develop a preliminary estimation of *algor mortis*, the tendency of a body to cool after death. Preliminary observations of the pooling of blood at the lowest part of the body caused by gravity (*livor mortis*) are also made. The degree of stiffening of the body (*rigor mortis*) is also estimated. All of these factors help the pathologist estimate an early PMI, up to 48 h. If the deceased has been dead for several days, or weeks, or sometimes longer, then the above factors are no longer present and other methods must be used to estimate the PMI. These include the degree of decomposition of the body and the activities of insects on the body. The latter is covered in Chapter 15.

Early Postmortem Interval

Rigor, livor and algor mortis all take place during the first 48 h after death has occurred. There are well-established guidelines of the time intervals for each of these actions. These must be tempered, however, by the temperature and environment where the deceased died. High or low temperatures and/or humidity can affect the rates at which these activities take place as will the degree of protection (clothing, indoors v. outdoors, land or water) of the body.

Algor Mortis

A good rule of thumb for the cooling of a body after death is that, under moderate conditions of temperature, an adult clothed appropriately for that temperature will cool 1°C each hour after death. It will thus take the better part of a day for a body to cool from its normal temperature of 37°C to a room temperature of 20°C (70°F). The ambient temperature can have a great effect upon this assumption. If the body is found in the desert in the summer where the temperature can be over 40°C, the body may actually warm up after death! If the temperature is very cold, the body will cool faster than 1°C per hour. There are numerous diseases that cause a fever so that the body temperature is higher than 37°C at death and this will affect PMI determinations. Generally speaking, pathologists will only use algor mortis as a method of estimating PMI if the death took place within 12 h of being discovered.

Rigor Mortis

When a person dies, his or her joints and muscles are relaxed. After 2–5 h, the muscles begin to contract causing stiffening of the joints. The process is complete between 12 and 24 h after death. Then, over the next 2 or 3 days, the rigor mortis disappears. These times are subject to the same variations that affect algor mortis. Rigor mortis is accelerated by heat and by strenuous physical activity shortly before death.

Livor Mortis

When a person dies, blood stops circulating. When this occurs, the blood tends to pool at the lowest part of the body under the influence of gravity. If, for example, the deceased is lying on his back at death, the blood will pool toward the floor. This area of the body will become pinkish to purple. The upper parts of the body will become pale. The surface that is in contact with the body may leave an impression on the skin as livor proceeds. This may indicate if a body has been moved since livor mortis began. The livor mortis pattern may be disrupted where the body is resting on a floor or other surface because the pressure exerted by the body's weight prevents blood pooling in that area. Livor mortis onset is fairly rapid, appearing as soon as 30 min after death. After a few hours, the livor mortis becomes fixed; the blood pressure has ruptured the vessels and the blood starts to permeate the surrounding tissues. Once this happens, the area where livor mortis has taken place changes from reddish to greenish and then to brown. Sometimes, livor mortis can be confused with bruises or contusions, especially after several hours have elapsed. Figure 13.7 is a drawing of how livor mortis looks.

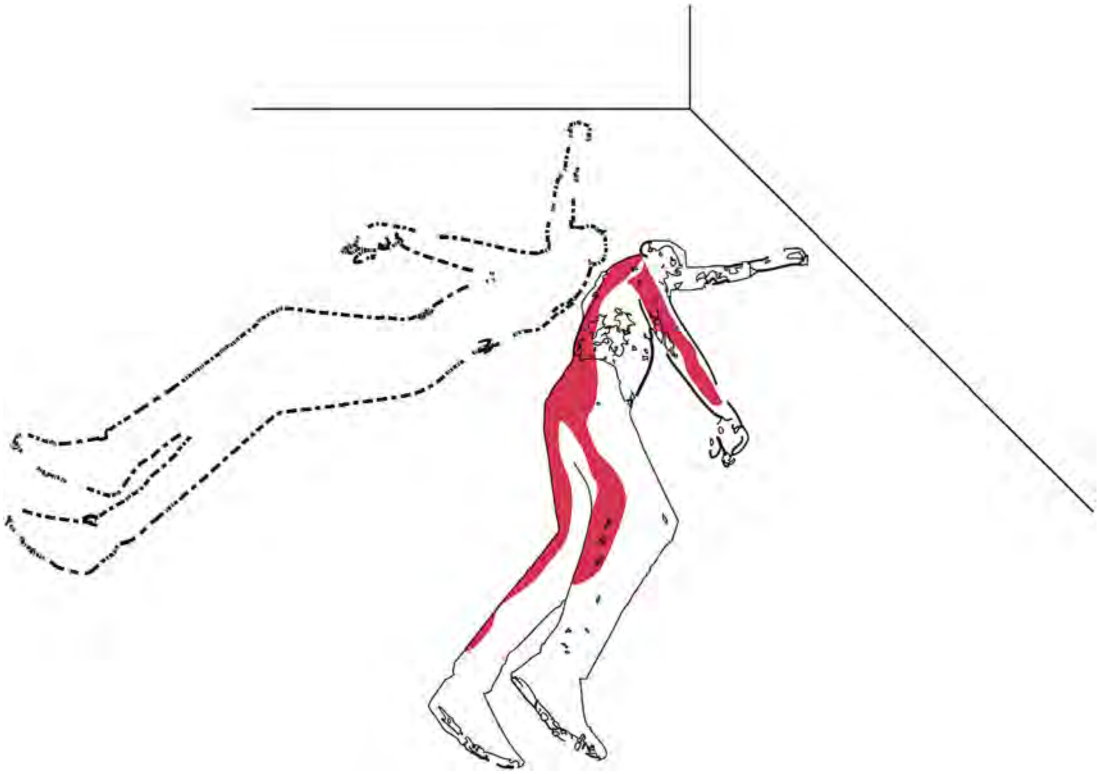


Figure 13.7 Diagram showing ***livor mortis***. In this drawing, the body is found on its right side in the area where the outline is drawn. The body is turned over to show how the blood collects on the parts that are in contact with the floor. The dark area is the ***livor mortis***. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

Other Methods of Estimating PMI

Some chemical levels may be related to the PMI. These include potassium levels in eye fluids and certain chemicals in the brain. The appearance of a film over the eye is also related to PMI. Cardiac pH, ultrasound tests in muscles, electrical activity of skeletal muscles and the appearance of wounds are all methods that have been evaluated as contributors to the estimate of PMI. Examination of stomach contents has been a standard part of an autopsy for many years because the presence of chemicals or undigested drugs can be important evidence in determining the cause and manner of death. Stomach contents may also be used to help estimate PMI. It takes about 2–4 h for the stomach to digest a meal. If there is evidence of food in the stomach at death, then a presumption is that the person must have died no more than 2–4 h earlier. Stomach emptying may only be used as a corroborative test however, because there is great variation in the time of digestion owing to the condition of the deceased at the time of death. Some digestion also takes place after death and during putrefaction.

Late PMI

After 1 or 2 days have passed, other activities take place on and in the body that can help in establishing the PMI. For example, decomposition of a corpse begins soon after death and putrefaction may be evident within 2 or 3 days. The body becomes discolored with the skin turning greenish near the abdomen and hips. The action of anaerobic bacteria from outside the body and the intestinal tract begin to cause decomposition. This results in the production of copious quantities of gas that cause the body to bloat. If a person has drowned and sunk to the bottom of the water, the gas formation can actually cause the body to rise and float. The decomposition of the body depends upon the availability of oxygen. If the body is submerged in water or is buried, the decomposition process takes place much slower. High temperatures accelerate decomposition. When a body is discovered several days or weeks after death, the action of insects on and in the body can provide valuable information about the PMI. This subject is discussed in detail in Chapter 15.

Exhumations

Throughout history, human beings have developed a myriad of ways of dealing with death and especially the body after death. In some cultures, there have been attempts to preserve bodies for as long as possible. Mummification is an example of this and it is very effective at long-term preservation of bodies. One of the most common burial traditions in the United States is *embalming* of the dead before burial in a vault or casket. Embalming is a chemical treatment process whereby a chemical such as formaldehyde is added to preserve the body tissues and retard decomposition so that the body will be in a presentable condition for viewing prior to the funeral. Unlike mummification, embalming is a temporary preservation process whose effects wear off in a matter of months. From a forensic death investigation viewpoint, embalming presents serious problems that arise if and when a body must be removed from the vault or casket after burial because of questions concerning cause or manner of death. If there is a drug or poison in the body at the time of death, embalming will usually dilute it, replace it in the body or react chemically with it to alter or destroy it. It is sometimes possible to detect the presence of certain drugs or poisons even if they have been exposed to embalming agents.

Teamwork Approach

Death investigation can be very complex and usually requires the talents and skills of a number of individuals to be successfully concluded. The Medical Examiner's Office or Chief Coroner's Office is often the epicenter for these investigations. Sometimes the local crime laboratory is located within the ME's Office or the Coroner's Office. These laboratories may have a forensic anthropologist, entomologist or odontologist on staff or under a consulting arrangement to assist with death investigations. If CT scanning is done by the office, then another partner in death investigation would be the radiologist who interprets the scan. This arrangement is common in large metropolitan areas or in jurisdictions that span a large geographical area. We will discuss the role of forensic anthropology and odontology in more detail in Chapter 14, and forensic entomology in Chapter 15.

Summary

Pathology is the medical subspecialty that studies the changes that a body undergoes as the result of injury or disease. There are two major branches to pathology; anatomic and clinical. Anatomic pathology involves the study of the body and its organ and tissue systems, whereas clinical pathology involves the analysis of blood and body fluids for drugs and poisons and their role in the cause of death. Forensic pathology involves both anatomic and clinical pathology in the determination of the cause and manner of death in cases of suspicious or unexplained death.

Each state has a system for the practice of forensic pathology. Approximately half of the states use the medical examiner system whereby the administrator is an appointed physician, although not necessarily a pathologist. The other states use the coroner system, whereby the administrator is elected on a county wide or statewide basis. In most states, the coroner does not have to be a physician. Each state has laws that determine the types of cases that must go to the medical examiner or coroner. They generally fall under the categories of unexplained or violent deaths or those where the deceased was under the care of a physician.

The medicolegal postmortem examination or autopsy involves a careful exterior and interior examination of the body for injuries, wounds or disease, as well as any trace or other evidence that might link the death to a perpetrator. The autopsy should be done by a forensically trained pathologist. The pathologist must determine the cause and manner of death as well as an estimate of the PMI or time since death. The PMI can be estimated in a number of ways including core temperature, livor mortis or rigor mortis, and other changes to the body. Longer term PMI can be estimated by observing decomposition or insect activity on the body.

The manner of death can be by accident, suicide, homicide or natural causes. The cause of death refers to the actual incident or condition that is incompatible with sustaining life. There are certain patterns of injury that are usually present in various types of death.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is *not* a manner of death?
   a. Accidental
   b. Homicide
   c. Heart attack
   d. Suicide
   e. Natural causes
2. The original function of the coroner in medieval England was
   a. Surgeon
   b. Tax collector
   c. Legal advisor to the King
   d. Pathologist
   e. Town crier
3. Today, the medical examiner
   a. Must be a physician
   b. Determines cause and manner of death
   c. Signs the death certificate
   d. Is appointed
   e. All of the above
4. If a body has been discovered several days after death, the PMI may be determined by
   a. Insect activity
   b. Bloating
   c. Livor mortis
   d. Rigor mortis
   e. None of the above
5. Settling of the blood to the lower parts of the body after death is called
   a. Rigor mortis
   b. Algor mortis
   c. Livor mortis
   d. Bloating
   e. None of the above
6. Analysis of blood and body fluids to determine if drugs or poisons contributed to the death is part of
   a. Anatomic pathology
   b. Clinical pathology
   c. Systemic pathology
   d. Coroner's responsibility
   e. None of the above

7. Which of the following is not a duty of a pathologist who attends a crime scene when a body is discovered?
   a. Make sure that the person is dead
   b. Collect data concerning the PMI
   c. Supervise the search for trace evidence around the body
   d. Begin the autopsy
   e. Authorize transport of the body to the morgue
8. When someone has been poisoned by carbon monoxide, the main pattern of injury is
   a. Red coloration of the skin
   b. Blue coloration around the eyes
   c. Hemorrhaging in the eyes
   d. Bleeding around the mouth
   e. Accelerated rigor mortis
9. When someone has been killed by a contact shot, the area around the wound shows
   a. Lots of stippling
   b. A large entry wound
   c. Blackening and swelling
   d. Little if any bleeding
   e. A wound the size of the caliber of the bullet
10. Which of the following circumstances surrounding a death would be least likely to be investigated by the medical examiner or coroner
   a. A death in a two car auto crash
   b. A heart attack in an elderly woman while at home
   c. A body hidden under some brush in the woods
   d. A boy killed while deer hunting
   e. A death in a hospital during major surgery

True or False

11. All accidental deaths are investigated by the coroner or medical examiner
12. The only difference between a coroner and a medical examiner is that the coroner is elected
13. Autopsies consist of both external and internal examinations of the body
14. Death by a gunshot through the heart is an example of a manner of death
15. It takes at least 12 years of education beyond high school to become board certified as a pathologist

Match Each Term with Its Definition

16. Livor mortis	a. Stiffening of the joints after death
17. Rigor mortis	b. Autopsy
18. Algor mortis	c. Cooling of the body after death
19. PMI	d. Time since death
20. Examination of the body after death	e. Pooling of blood into lower body parts after death

Short Answer Questions

21. What is the difference between the cause of death and the manner of death?
22. Briefly explain the history of the coroner system.
23. What are some of the ways that a pathologist can estimate the PMI? What are their advantages and disadvantages?
24. Briefly describe how a forensic pathologist is educated and trained.
25. Under what conditions would a medical examiner or coroner be required to receive a body for autopsy?

Further Reading

DiMaio, J. M. and M. D. DiMaio. (1989). *Forensic Pathology*. Elsevier, Boston, MA.

Fisher, R. S. and C. S. Petty. (1977). *A Handbook of Forensic Pathology for Non-Forensic Pathologists*. National Institute of Law Enforcement and Criminal Justice, US Department of Justice, Washington, DC.

Spitz, W. (ed.). (1993). *Medicolegal Investigation of Death*. Charles C Thomas, Springfield, IL.

On the Web

Forensic pathology on the famous Shroud of Turin : http://www.shroudofturin4journalists.com.

Frequently asked questions about forensic pathology careers: http://web2.airmail.net/uthman/forensic_career.html.

What is it like being a forensic pathologist: https://www.ama-assn.org/residents-students/specialty-profiles/what-it-s-specialize-forensic-pathology-shadowing-dr-melinek

Home page of the National Association of Medical Examiners: http://thename.org/.

CT scanning in medicolegal autopsies: https://nij.ojp.gov/topics/articles/using-advanced-imaging-technologies-enhance-autopsy-practices

Case Study

Case Study: How did this young toddler die?

A young New Hampshire toddler was found unresponsive in his home and 911 was called. When first responders arrived, the victim presented as a healthy looking three-year-old boy, who had not been ill, and now he was deceased. The body was carefully wrapped up in the body bag to preserve any evidence and taken to the morgue. Dr. Thomas Andrew, the chief medical examiner, was in charge of the autopsy.

The external examination of the toddler showed no outward signs of abuse, no bruising or ligature marks that would indicate strangulation. X-rays were done of the entire body to check for broken bones or partially healed broken bones of the arms, legs and ribs which would indicate abuse to a child. There were none. At this juncture, the boy looked like a perfectly healthy toddler. However, this did not mean that internally he did not sustain life threatening injuries. Very young children are very pliable; their ribs can be stretched without sustaining a break like adult ribs. Their skin has a different texture, too, and its elasticity can hide forceful actions to the young body.

The cause of death would have to be determined by the internal examination. When Dr. Andrew opened up the body and examined the thoracic and abdominal organs, the heart, lungs, liver and stomach all were normal in size and appearance. Nothing seemed to be diseased or damaged.

The next step was the cranial autopsy; examination of the skull, scalp and brain. Upon reflection of the scalp of the child, Dr. Andrew noticed a small contusion in the soft tissue just underneath the skin. The contusion was in a position that would not be indicative of an accidental fall by the boy; it was too high on the head. There were no other suspicious marks in the rest of the cranial autopsy.

Digging deeper, the doctor took tissue samples of the boy's organs for microscopic examination. This part of the autopsy revealed suspicious particles in the cells of the lungs. Dr. Andrew identified the foreign particles as iron pigments. There are medical conditions that can cause iron pigments in the lungs; congestive heart failure, Goodpasture syndrome (a rare autoimmune disease affecting the lung and kidneys) and hemosiderosis (excessive iron deposits in lung and kidneys). But, the heart, blood vessels, kidneys and other organs were all normal; there were no signs of excessive iron anywhere but in his lungs. The only other explanation for the presence of iron in the lung cells was due to "repetitive asphyxia", where compression of the chest causes small blood vessels to break.

The medical examiner and lead investigator in the case questioned the child's caretaker who took care of the boy while the parents were at work. The caretaker told them that whenever the three-year-old became very agitated and cried, the caretaker would squeeze his chest until he stopped crying, sometimes until the boy passed out. The last encounter that the caretaker had with the boy the asphyxiation was long enough to cause him to stop breathing.

The caretaker was charged with homicide. A plea deal was made in the case.

On a follow-up note, the cause of the head contusion was never determined. However, this suspicious discovery was important, as it precipitated the further investigation by Dr. Andrew into the microscopic examination of the internal tissues, and ultimately to the cause of the young child's death.

For further information: https://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/919052

14

Anthropology and Odontology

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define anthropology and forensic anthropology and give examples of each
2. To be able to describe the functions of the forensic anthropologist
3. To be able to describe the development and structure of bones
4. To be able to describe the various components of the biological profile
5. To be able to describe how bones are individualized
6. To be able to describe the various anthropological tests that can be done on skulls to help identify them

7. To be able to define forensic odontology and describe the functions of the forensic odontologist

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Forensic Taphonomy*
- *Human Skeleton*
  - *Bone Structure*
  - *Identification of Skeletal Remains*
  - *Is the Specimen Bone?*
  - *Is the Specimen Human Bone?*
  - *Significance of Age*
  - *Biological Profile*
  - *Determination of Age*
  - *Using Dentition to Determine Age*
  - *Using Bone Development to Determine Age*
  - *Using Pubic and Rib Bones to Determine Age*
  - *Pubic Symphysis*
  - *Changes in the Ends of the Ribs*
  - *Determination of Gender*
  - *Determination of Race*
  - *Determination of Stature*
- *Individualization of Human Bone*
  - *Bone Trauma and Individual Features*
  - *Analysis of Skulls*
- *Collection of Bones*
- *Forensic Odontology*
  - *Structure and Development of Teeth*
  - *Identification of Dental Remains*
  - *Bite Marks*
  - *Forensic Odontology in Abuse Cases*
- *Summary*
- *Try It Yourself: Pelvic Bones and Age*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *Problem-solvingTrue or False*
  - *For Each Trait Given, Match it with the Biological Information It Will Determine From This List: (A—age, G—gender, R—race, S—stature)*
- *Further Reading*
- *Helpful Websites*
- *Forensic Taphonomy*
- *Body Farm links*
- *Forensic Odontology*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Antemortem: Term is used to describe an occurrence prior to death.

Anthropology: Study of the human race, including lifestyle, culture and physical traits, throughout time.

Deciduous teeth: The first set of teeth, commonly called the "baby teeth".

Diaphysis: A term that is used to identify the mid-section of a bone, or the shaft of the bone.

Epiphyseal line: Line toward the ends of the long bones marks the location of the childhood epiphyseal plate and is found between the diaphysis and the epiphysis in adult bones.

Epiphyseal plate: Found in the metaphysis, this part of a long bone is a hyaline cartilage plate in children who are growing, but matures into bone in adults and is replaced by the epiphyseal line.

Epiphysis: A term that is used to identify the rounded ends of a long bone.

Forensic anthropology: A specialty area within physical anthropology that uses characteristics of bone structure (osteology) to determine the identity of human remains and present findings in a court of law.

Forensic odontology: Forensic odontology uses human dentition for forensic purposes, such as determining identity of human remains, approximating the age of a person, analyzing bite marks and examining dental structure of a person suspected to be the victim of abuse.

Forensic Taphonomy: The study of the changes in human remains perimortem (at death) and postmortem (after death) with a focus on environmental factors; biological and geological.

Greater sciatic notch: Located on the posterior portion pelvic bone between the ilium and the ischium, this notch is an important trait used by forensic anthropologists in the determination of the gender of the decedent.

Metaphysis: The part of a long bone that lies between the diaphysis and epiphysis and is the growth area of the bone that produces an increase in stature in children.

Odontology: The scientific study of human dentition.

Osteology: The scientific study of bones.

Permanent teeth: These teeth are the second set of human teeth that replace the deciduous teeth.

Physical anthropology: The study of the biological traits and evolution of those traits in humans throughout time.

Postmortem interval (PMI): A term used to describe the amount of time since death occurred.

Pubic symphysis: The right and left pubic bones of the pelvis come together at this cartilaginous joint called the pubic symphysis.

Acronyms

PMI	Postmortem interval

Introduction

Anthropology is the study of the human race and encompasses the cultural study of humans as well as the biological study of humans. The latter is usually called *physical anthropology*, although the term *bioanthropology* is more accurate. *Forensic anthropology* is a specialty within physical anthropology. It involves applications of *osteology* and *skeletal identification* to matters involving the law and the public. Osteology is the study of bone. Forensic anthropologists work with skeletal remains and try to determine the identity of the deceased. They often work with forensic pathologists and forensic odontologists (dentists) to help determine the cause and manner of death and the *postmortem interval (PMI)* or length of time since death.

The underlying principle of skeletal identification is that the human skeleton is unique in some ways. Most bones have unique characteristics that arise from genetics, growth, use, injury or trauma. A forensic anthropologist identifies these characteristics in skeletal remains and compares them to *antemortem* (before death) evidence. If enough of these unique characteristics exist in an unknown skeleton and a suspected person, then an identification can be made and possibly a determination of the cause and manner of death.

Forensic anthropologists not only identify skeletal remains but are the principal investigators that collect the remains once they are discovered. This process is akin to an archeological dig, where artifacts (often skeletal remains) are discovered. The proper collection of skeletal remains is crucial to a successful identification and must always be done under the watchful eye of an experienced forensic anthropologist.

In recent years, the role of the forensic anthropologist has extended beyond the identification of skeletal remains. In mass disasters such as the destruction of the World Trade Center or plane crashes, forensic anthropologists are routinely called upon to help recover bodies. Some forensic anthropologists are experts in constructing facial features over a skull in the hope that someone will be able to identify the person. In other cases, forensic anthropologists can superimpose a face on a skull using a computer or digital camera in order to determine whether a skull belonged to a particular person. Forensic anthropologists help with facial and body recognition of people in crowds and even analyze characteristics such as *gait* (the visual characteristics of walking or running) as a means of identification.

Forensic Taphonomy

Forensic Taphonomy is the study of what happens to the human body at the time of and after death. Human remains can be found in a number of different contexts and the forensic investigation of death must consider the environment surrounding the discovery of the remains along with the physical condition of the remains. The two most likely go hand in hand.

Reconstruction of the circumstance of death and the succession of post mortem changes to human remains necessitates considering the effects of animals, plants, soil and water on the condition and distribution of the skeletal remains. If a body is discovered in a home, the decay effects will be much different from a body discovered in a wooded area, even if the post mortem intervals are similar.

In the outdoor scene, investigators must consider gnawing, transport and digestion of parts of the body by animal predators. Geologic factors such as weathering, burial, transport by water movement, bleaching and others can alter the bones of the deceased. Even gravity can be a factor in changing the position of the body post mortem. Plant growth and decomposition also can influence how skeletal remains are presented at the scene, along with meteorological factors like freezing and thawing. The effect of insects on human remains will be discussed in Chapter 15.

There is also the possibility of human interaction with the body post mortem; burial, transportation, dismemberment, freezing prior to disposal, etc. Discerning human disruption of remains versus natural environmental effects is important when reconstructing what could have occurred in a suspicious death investigation.

Human Skeleton

The central focus of the work of forensic anthropologists is the human skeleton. Before describing how the skeleton is used in this work, it is important to understand some features of the skeletal system. A photograph of a human skeleton is shown in Figure 14.1, identifying some of the major bones of the human body.

The basic unit of the skeleton is the bone. There are 206 bones in the normal human skeleton. Bones are living functioning entities and the skeleton is considered to be an organ system. Bones grow and change over time, altering and repairing themselves as needed. The interior of many larger bones contains *marrow*, which, among other things, is responsible for the production of red blood cells. Bones have a number of functions in the body. First, they provide support for the other organs and tissues. Muscles attach at bones and their contractions make motion possible. Bones also serve a protective function for some of the more delicate soft tissues. The rib cage protects the heart and lungs. The skull protects the brain from shock. Bones are also the center for growth. Growth of bones begins at birth and continues until early adulthood.

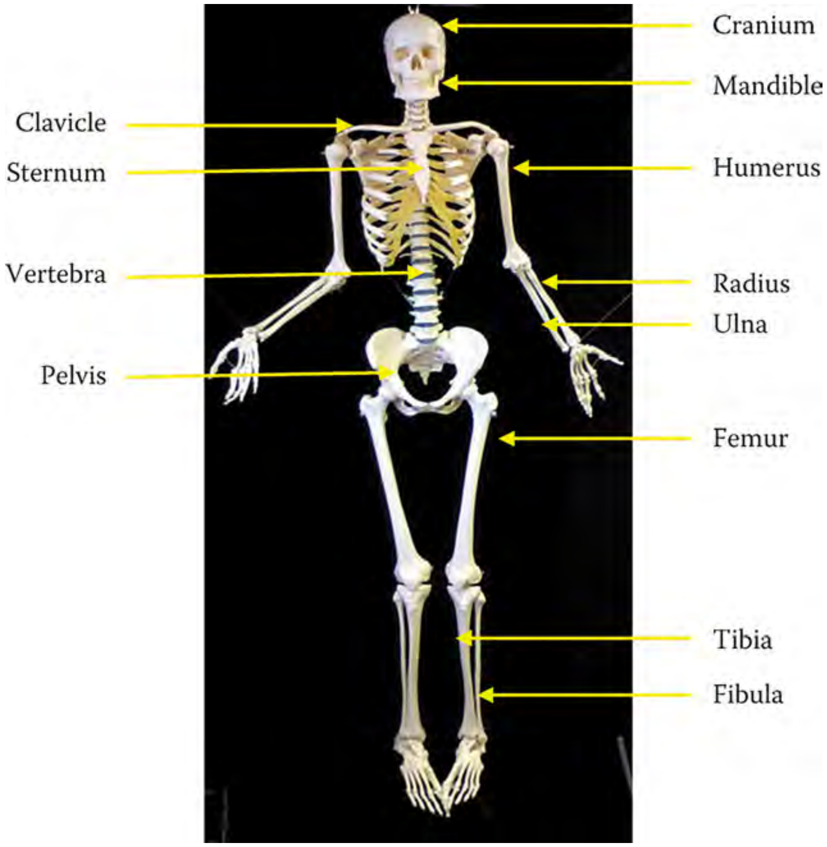


Figure 14.1 Anterior view of the human skeleton. Courtesy of Norman Sauer.

Bone Structure

Bone is a complex material with several layers. Figure 14.2 shows the structure of bone. The outermost layer is called *compact bone*. It is hard and smooth. In long bones, there is an internal layer called *trabecular bone*, which is light and spongy. It adds strength to bone without adding much weight. The bone marrow is contained in long bones in the center in a *medullary cavity*.

In many forensic anthropology cases, there are only fragments of bone present and the macrostructure described earlier may not be present in sufficient quantity or quality to identify the bone. It may be necessary to identify the material as bone using its microstructure. A thin cross section of a bone sample is prepared and would look similar to Figure 14.3. There are special growth units in bone called *osteons*. They are deposited in layers and eventually form chambers. The chambers have canals where blood vessels travel to reach each cell in the bone. This network of canals is called the *Haversian System*. The individual cells in the bone are called *osteocytes* and make up most of the compact bone. Osteocytes are

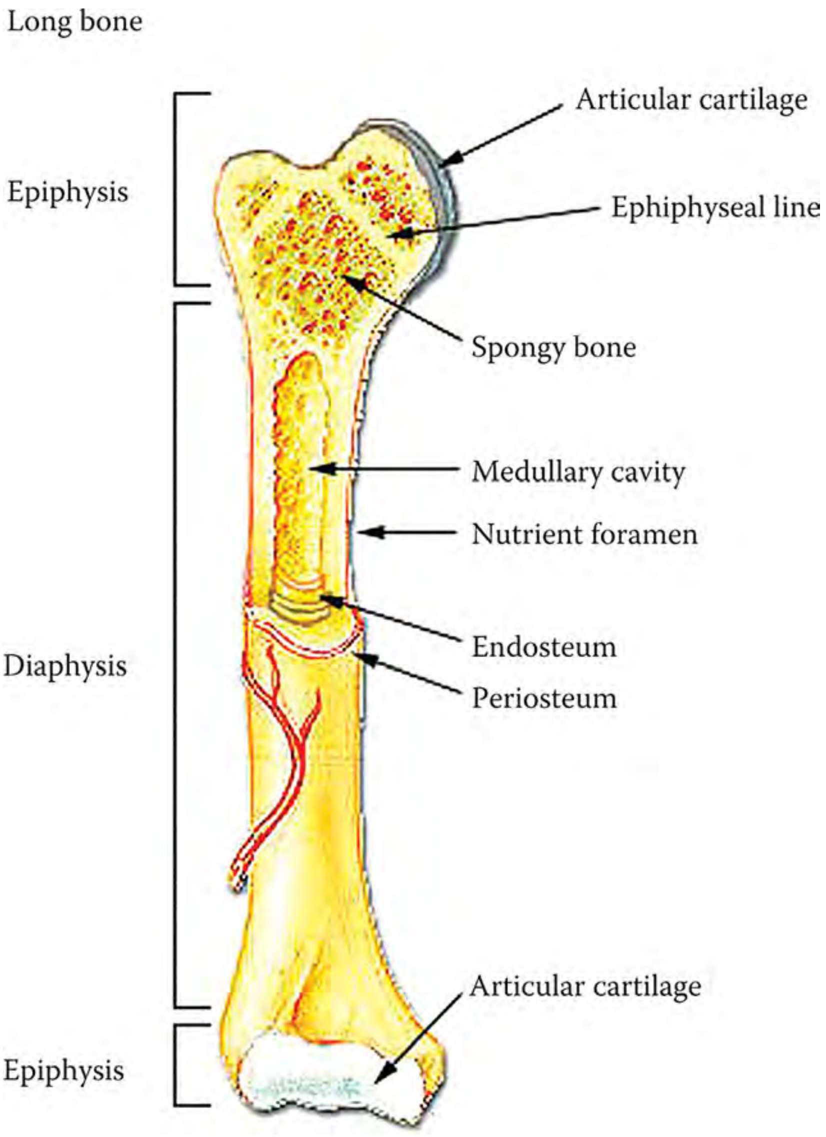

Long bone
Epiphysis
Articular cartilage
Ephiphyseal line
Spongy bone
Medullary cavity
Nutrient foramen
Diaphysis
Endosteum
Periosteum
Articular cartilage
Epiphysis

Figure 14.2 Structure of bone. From newworldencyclopedia.org.

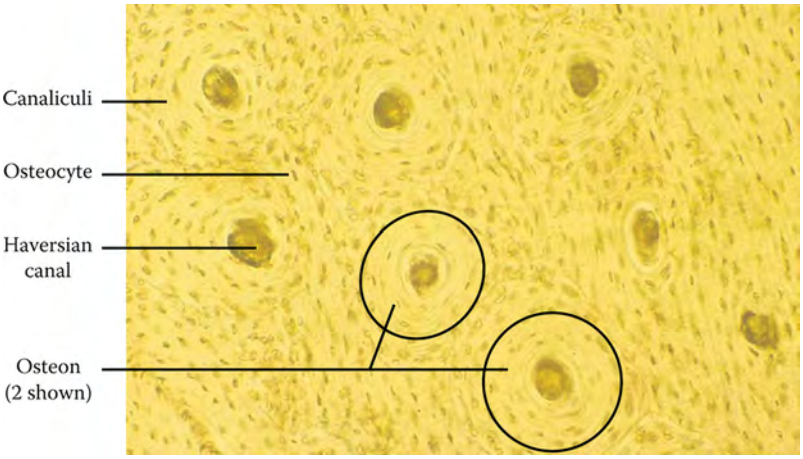


Figure 14.3 The Haversian system in long bones. Courtesy of Norman Sauer.

connected by a microscopic canal system called the *canaliculi*. Even if bone is burned, it can usually be identified by the presence of Haversian canals.

Identification of Skeletal Remains

On a leisurely stroll through the woods in early spring enjoying the sunshine and budding spring flora, someone stumbles on some miscellaneous bones. They look human. Authorities are called, the scene is documented, bone specimens collected and the investigation begins (Figure 14.4).

The ultimate goal of the identification of skeletal remains is to determine the identity of the bones. Whose are they? This process requires that there be some individual features of the bones that aid in identification. Individual features include antemortem (before death) injuries or trauma to the bone and any unusual shapes or features in the bone. Absolute identification is often not possible and, in such cases, the forensic anthropologist will resort to class or general feature

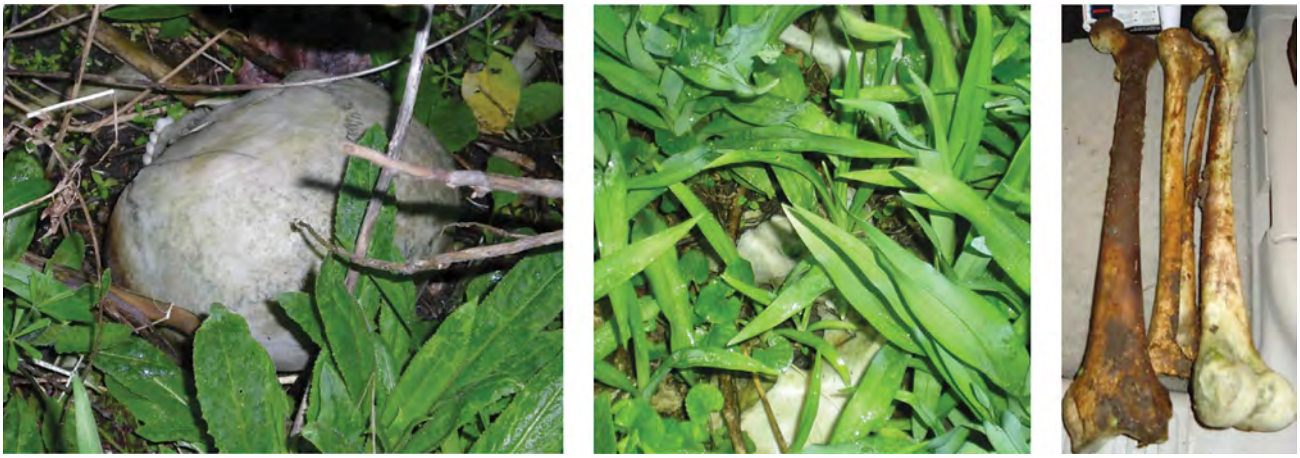


Figure 14.4 Human skeletal remains found in a wooded setting. The skull (photo one) and parts of the pelvis (photo two) are shown undisturbed. The last photo shows some of the long bones collected. Photo courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC.

identification to determine age, gender, race, stature, cause of death and other factors. In doing this, the forensic anthropologist will develop a *biological profile* of the remains.

Before the biological profile and individual characteristics are determined, three questions must be answered regarding the submitted specimen:

1. Is the material bone?
2. If so, is it human?
3. Does the age of the bone make it useful for forensic purposes?

Is the Specimen Bone?

In cases where there are whole bones or large pieces of bone present, identification is usually straightforward. In those cases where there are only fragments of bone or it has been burned or bleached or otherwise damaged, then microscopic analysis must be used. In these cases, the presence of Haversian canals is proof that the material is bone.

Is the Specimen Human Bone?

Depending upon the size and condition of the bone, the species may be determined macroscopically by comparing its features to those of various animal species. This sometimes presents a challenge because some pig and sheep bones and some bear paws can appear very similar to human bones. Sometimes there will be tissue and/or hairs clinging to the bone and these can be observed and analyzed to determine their species. If the bones are too small or too damaged to be examined macroscopically, then microscopic analysis can be undertaken. In such cases, the exact species may not be determined but human bone may be ruled out. A type of bone not found in humans, but present in many animals is called *plexiform*. In plexiform bone, the Haversian canals are arranged in geometric patterns and packed tightly together with little or no bone between them. In human bone, the Haversian canals are even spaced and there is bone between them. Even so, it is not always possible to make a definitive determination that tiny fragments of bone are human in origin.

Significance of Age

Other than radiocarbon dating (measuring the remnants of the isotope carbon-14), there are no reliable methods for dating skeletal remains. There may be other clues as to the age of skeletal remains making an estimation of age possible. There are practical, criminal justice considerations about the age of bone. If the skeletal remains are determined to be more than 50 years old, then its value forensically is limited. Suppose someone was murdered and the body buried and then discovered 50 years later. The chances are that the murderer is also dead or at least so elderly that prosecution would be useless.

Biological Profile

After it has been determined that the bone is human and of fairly recent origin, the process of identification begins. First, class characteristics are established as part of a biological profile. Then, if possible, individual characteristics are determined that could lead to absolute identification. The class characteristics will enable the anthropologist to put the skeletal remains in a subgroup such as males or as part of a particular race. Other factors such as stature, socio-economic status and time since death may also be determined. Because there is variation in skeletal characteristics among individuals within the same subgroup, it is sometimes necessary to consult databases or collections of skeletons that belong to a particular subgroup so that the range of variation within a subgroup can be known. The more common *class characteristics* that are determined as part of a biological profile are *age*, *gender*, *race* and *stature*.

Determination of Age

Although bones change throughout life in response to activity or inactivity, aging, disease and injury, there are definite intervals during which bones are actively growing. Once they have reached maturity, the bones will not grow except for repairs and reactions to aging. Thus, the mechanisms by which the age at death is estimated are different for people who die while their bones are still growing (subadults) compared with those whose bones have stopped growing (adults).

Using Dentition to Determine Age

One of the most reliable ways of determining the age of a subadult is by assessing the formation of teeth and their eruption through the gums. In most cases, temporary teeth (deciduous teeth) are formed and then permanent teeth form and erupt in a fairly predictable time period. There are many available charts that list the timetables for the formation of temporary and permanent teeth for various populations. Males and females have significant differences in the rates at which certain teeth mature and the charts reflect these differences.

Using Bone Development to Determine Age

Bones also have definite phases of growth that are age dependent. When the long bones start to grow, they consist of the shaft or *diaphysis* and the end(s) or *epiphysis*. As the individual develops, these two fuse together at the growth area, called the *metaphysis*. Within the metaphysis is the *epiphyseal plate* or growth plate, which

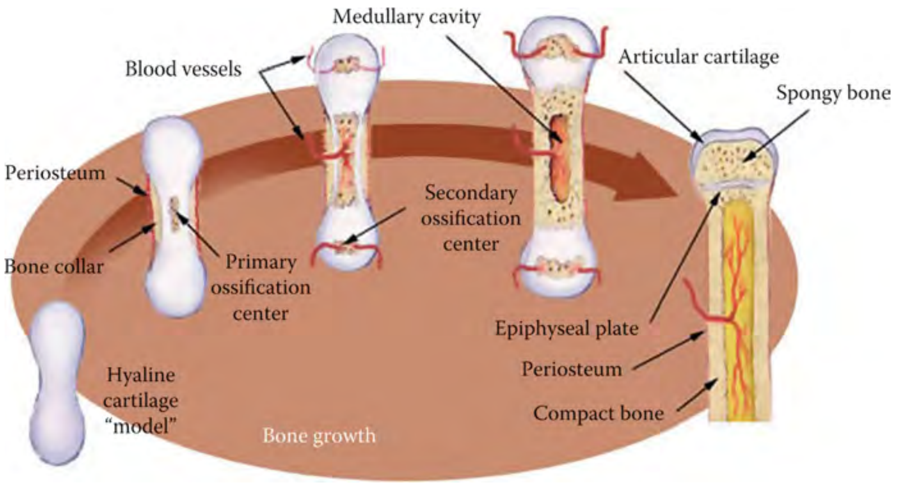


Figure 14.5 Bone growth. National Cancer Institute.

lengthens as the immature bones grow. When the union is complete, growth ceases, and what remains is a thin line where the growth area was located called the *epiphyseal line*. The union is not an event; it takes place over years. Figure 14.5 shows the three stages of union of the diaphysis and the epiphysis. In general, union of individual bones takes place earlier for females than males. For example, the clavicle in the shoulder has an epiphysis that fuses in women between the ages of 17 and 21 but in males the union takes place between the ages of 18 and 22.

Using Pubic and Rib Bones to Determine Age

After a person has reached adulthood, bones have stopped growing (approximately 25–30 years). Changes to the bones are more subtle, and there are fewer places on the skeleton where changes can be directly related to age. The main areas in the body where age determinations are made in adults are the *pubic bones* and *rib bones*. Many researchers have spent years of careful measurement to refine the data that can be derived from changes in these bones and improve the accuracy of age at death determinations.

Pubic Symphysis

In adults, there are several ways of determining age at death. One of the most common methods is the macroscopic observation of the condition of the *pubic symphysis*. The left and right hip (pelvic) bones join at the *pelvis*. Where these join, there is a symphysis or space that has a small amount of cartilage. When the cartilage is removed and the bones are separated, the shape and surface texture on the medial (inner) surfaces can be examined. These portions of the pelvic bone change in a predictable way as a person ages. The surface is rough and billowed in younger adults, but by age 35 the surface becomes increasingly smoother and develops a rim. After age 35, the symphysis steadily degenerates and the surface begins to erode.

Figure 14.6 shows a female human pubis. Figure 14.7 shows a male pubis. The space in the middle of the bone photo is where the pubic symphysis would be

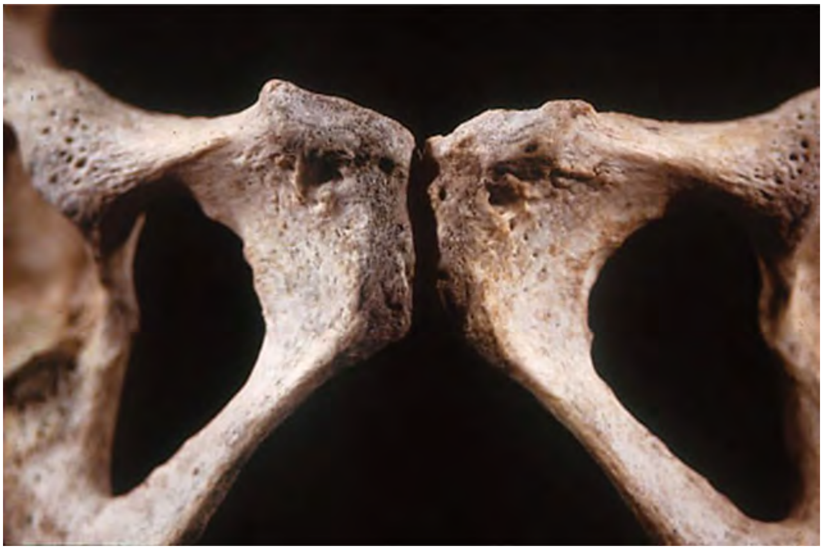


Figure 14.6 Female pubis. Courtesy of Norman Sauer.

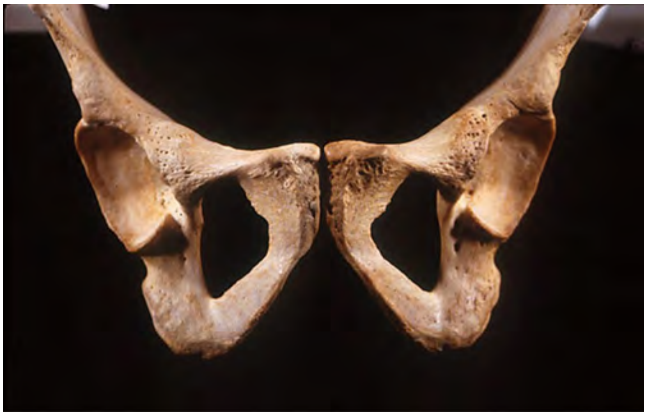


Figure 14.7 Male pubis. Courtesy of Norman Sauer.

located and the inside edge of the exposed area in the middle is what is examined to help determine approximate age.

Although male and female pubic symphyses undergo similar changes with age, the age ranges are different for each phase of change.

Changes in the Ends of the Ribs

In addition to the pubic symphysis, the ends of the ribs that meet in the front of the body (the *sternal ends*) also change as a person gets older. The rib ends change in several ways. These include the shape of the surface and the amount of pitting, the type and quality of bone and the presence of projections from the bone. Figure 14.8 shows the sternal rib area of an older adult.

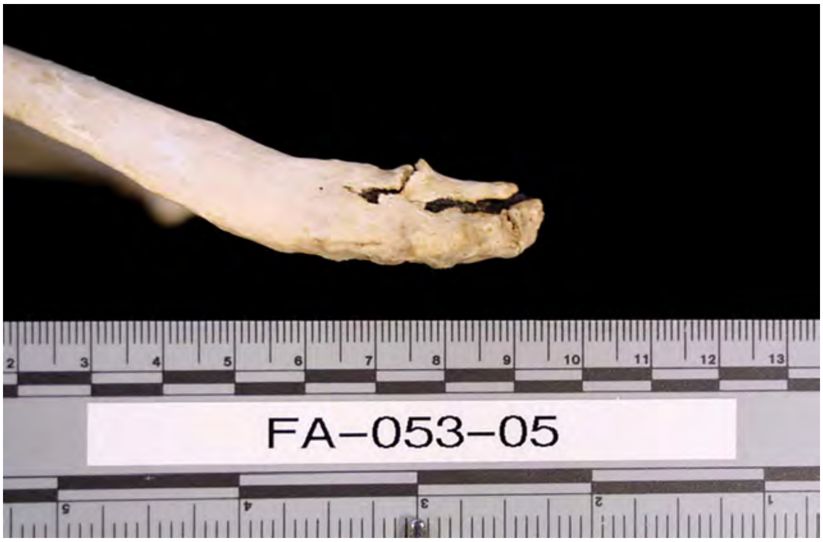


Figure 14.8 Sternal rib in older person. Courtesy of Norman Sauer.

Determination of Gender

In general, human males are larger than females, but this is more obvious when the person is alive. Skeletal remains show more subtle differences in size. In many cases there is little difference between the male and female skeletal size, so anthropologists focus on structural difference in certain regions of the skeleton to determine gender. It must be noted, however, that the regions used to determine gender develop throughout childhood and into puberty. Therefore, it may be hazardous to try and determine the sex of a skeleton that is younger than about 18. Most commonly the skull and the pelvis are the areas that are most diagnostic of gender.

The pelvis is the most obvious place to determine gender. This is largely due to the pelvis having different functions in males and females. In females, the pelvic region must support a fetus throughout development and delivery. The male pelvis is generally larger than the female while the female pelvis is broader. The most obvious locations on the pelvis where gender differences can be seen are the *greater sciatic notch* and the area below the pubic symphysis that forms the *subpubic angle*. Figures 14.6 and 14.7 show the location of the subpubic angle on a male and female pelvis with Figure 14.9 showing the angle in more detail. Generally, the angle is less than 90° in males.

The greater sciatic notch is located in the posterior end of the pelvis, one on either side of the coccyx or tail bone (see Figure 14.10). In females, the notch is quite broad with an angle greater than 60°, whereas in males, the angle is much smaller. This is a very reliable test for determining the gender of skeletal remains.

In the absence of pubic bones, there are features of the skull that are good indicators of sex. A number of bones in the skull have traits that differ between males and females. These include the prominence of *brow ridges*, the shape of the *mastoid process of the temporal bone*, the absence or presence of the *external occipital protuberance* and the shape of the forehead. Figure 14.11 shows a male skull

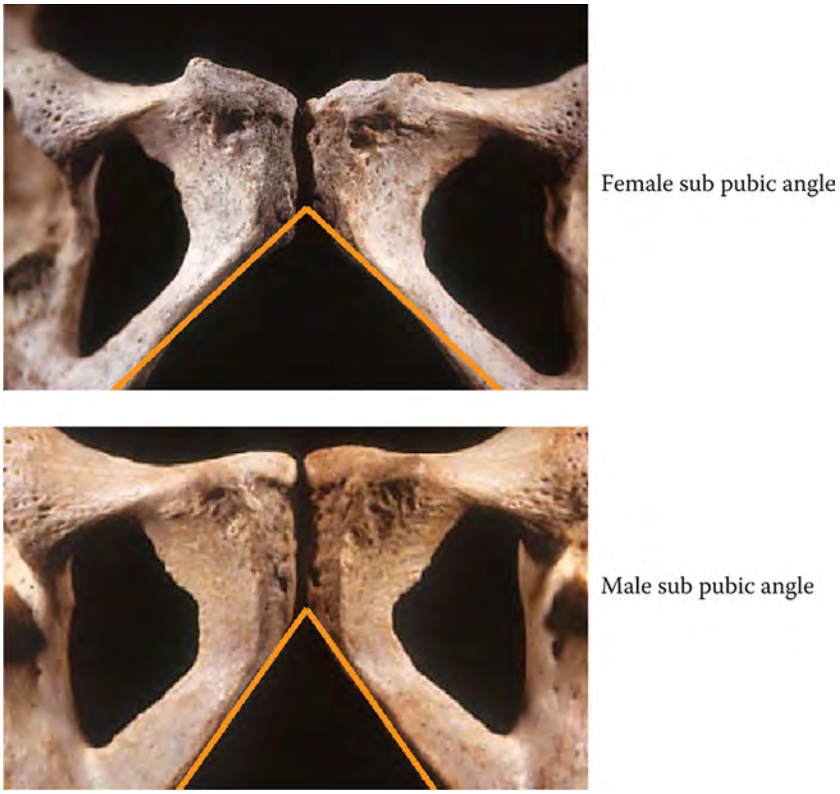


Figure 14.9 The subpubic angle is much greater for females (top photo) than in males (bottom photo). Original photo courtesy of Norman Sauer.

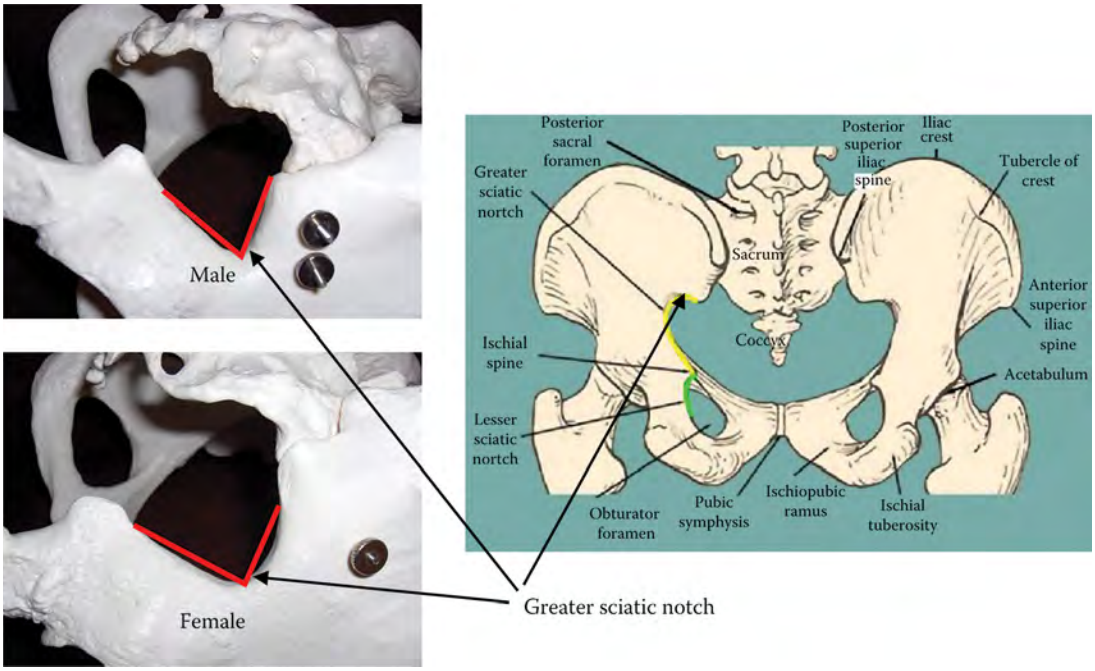

Male
Female
Posterior sacral foramen
Posterior superior iliac spine
Iliac crest
Greater sciatic nortch
Tubercle of crest
Sacrum
Anterior superior iliac spine
Ischial spine
Coccyx
Acetabulum
Lesser sciatic nortch
Obturator foramen
Pubic symphysis
Ischiopubic ramus
Ischial tuberosity
Greater sciatic notch

Figure 14.10 The greater sciatic notch is larger in females, generally greater than approximately 60°. The top photo shows the notch in a male pelvis whereas the bottom photo illustrates the notch in a female pelvis.

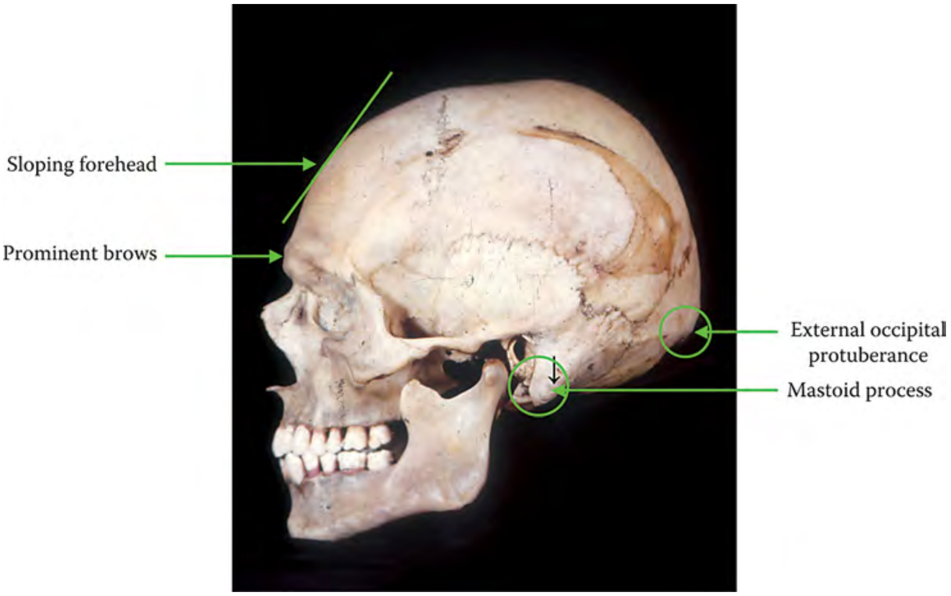

Sloping forehead
Prominent brows
External occipital protuberance
Mastoid process

Figure 14.11 Some of the skull traits that help determine the sex of the remains. Photo courtesy of Norman Sauer.

with a large mastoid process, prominent brow ridges, an external occipital protuberance and a gently sloping forehead; all generally male characteristics.

Determination of Race

The determination of a person's race or ancestry can be difficult. The skeleton does not contain many obvious characteristics that define racial characteristics. Certainly today there are no pure ethnic or racial groups, and there may never have been any. There are also a number of different ways of defining ancestry. A typical scheme is used by the United States Department of Commerce in its census that is done every 10 years. The categories used are Caucasian, Blacks, Asians, Native Americans, Hispanics and others.

The most reliable means of determining race in the skeleton are centered on the skull and can be based on either gross morphological examination or by mathematical analysis of various morphological features. There are a number of skull characteristics that are racially distinct. For example, eye orbits vary from round to triangular or rectangular. Other variations occur in the nasal apertures, the palate and the mouth region.

The femur in the leg also exhibits racial characteristics, specifically the curvature of the diaphysis that varies from straight in Black people to curved in persons with Caucasian ancestry.

Determination of Stature

Attempts at stature determination have been made since the beginning of the twentieth century. Today the most practical method for determining stature uses measurements of long bones. Sometimes, a large fragment of a long bone may be used. The long bones are the humerus, radius, and ulna of the arm and the femur, tibia, and fibula of the leg. There is a linear relationship between the lengths of these bones and the overall stature of the individual. When estimating stature, the more long bones available to be measured, the better the height determination. Table 14.1 shows the mathematical formulas used to estimate stature for males and females of various ethnic groups. The stature is measured in centimeters.

To use the table one must know the gender and ethnic origin of the bone. An example calculation follows.

Suppose a femur of length 54 cm has been recovered from an excavation of skeletal remains. The biological profile indicates that the skeleton is a male and is most likely Caucasian. The proper formula from the table is

$$2.32 * \text{Femur} + 65.53 \pm 3.94$$

Inserting “54 cm” for the femur length into the formula gives the result of 194.75–186.87 cm or 76.67–73.57 in. (remember: 2.54 cm = 1 in.). This translates to a height range of 6 ft 4 in. to 6 ft 1 in. tall.

Individualization of Human Bone

The elements of the biological profile described earlier are all class characteristics of bone. It would be useful to be able to individualize bones or a skull to a particular individual. In the case of bones, this can only be done by comparing unique features of the bone with one from a known source. Typically, this would involve taking postmortem and antemortem X-rays of the bone. In the case of a skull, superimposition of the face on the skull using computer or camera-based techniques can lead to a more positive identification.

TABLE 14.1
Stature for Males and Females, Various Ethnic Groups

Race/Sex	Formula (cm)	Standard Deviation
Caucasian male	2.89 * humerus + 78.10	±4.57
	3.79 * radius + 79.42	±4.66
	3.76 * ulna + 75.55	±4.72
	2.32 * femur + 65.53	±3.94
	2.42 * tibia + 81.93	±4.00
	2.60 * fibula + 75.50	±3.86
Caucasian female	3.36 * humerus + 57.97	±4.45
	4.74 * radius + 54.93	±4.24
	4.27 * ulna + 57.76	±4.30
	2.47 * femur + 54.10	±3.72
	2.90 * tibia + 61.53	±3.66
	2.93 * fibula + 59.61	±3.57
African male	2.88 * humerus + 75.48	±4.23
	3.32 * radius + 85.43	±4.57
	3.20 * ulna + 80.77	±4.74
	2.10 * femur + 72.22	±3.91
	2.19 * tibia + 85.36	±3.96
	2.34 * fibula + 80.07	±4.02
African female	3.08 * humerus + 64.47	±4.25
	3.67 * radius + 71.79	±4.59
	3.31 * ulna + 75.38	±4.83
	2.28 * femur + 59.76	±3.41
	2.45 * tibia + 72.65	±3.70
	2.49 * fibula + 70.90	±3.80
Asian male	2.68 * humerus + 83.19	±4.16
	3.54 * radius + 82.00	±4.60
	3.48 * ulna + 77.45	±4.66
	2.15 * femur + 72.57	±3.80
	2.39 * tibia + 81.45	±3.27
	2.40 * fibula + 80.56	±3.24

Source: Burns, K.R., *Forensic Anthropology Training Manual*, 2nd edn., Pearson-Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2007.

Bone Trauma and Individual Features

Most people receive some injuries to bones during life. If a bone is broken, then it will show signs of the break as it heals. These signs will usually remain throughout life and will show up in X-rays. A postmortem X-ray can be compared with the antemortem X-ray, and this may provide positive evidence of the identity of the person.

Even if a bone is not injured during life, there are many instances where a bone exhibits enough variation among individuals that X-rays of these bones can be used for identification. There are several bones in the skull including the frontal sinuses and places where arteries and veins enter and leave the skull that can be individualized. In cases where these bones are to be used for identification, comparisons are made between postmortem and antemortem X-rays and also with X-rays of the same bones of other individuals of the same sex and race to ensure that the features are in fact unique.

Analysis of Skulls

If all or most of a skull is recovered, there are at least two ways that identifications may be made. The most reliable method is *photographic superimposition*. This involves the comparison of the skull with a photograph of the suspected owner. One of the newer methods of accomplishing the comparison is to use video cameras to capture the image of the skull and of the actual photo and then superimpose the two. Videography has the advantage of permitting manipulations of the images including fading and using various sizes and angles. Computers can also be used to superimpose images and analyze them to determine if they came from the same individual. Figure 14.12 shows a drawing of superimposition of a face on a skull.

When a skull is recovered and no identification made, investigators can use a sculpture technique to recreate a face. A three-dimensional reconstruction of the soft tissues of a face is built up onto the skull. Compilations of tissue thicknesses for various parts of the face have been compiled for various races of males and females. A proper reconstruction requires that the race and sex of the skull be known.

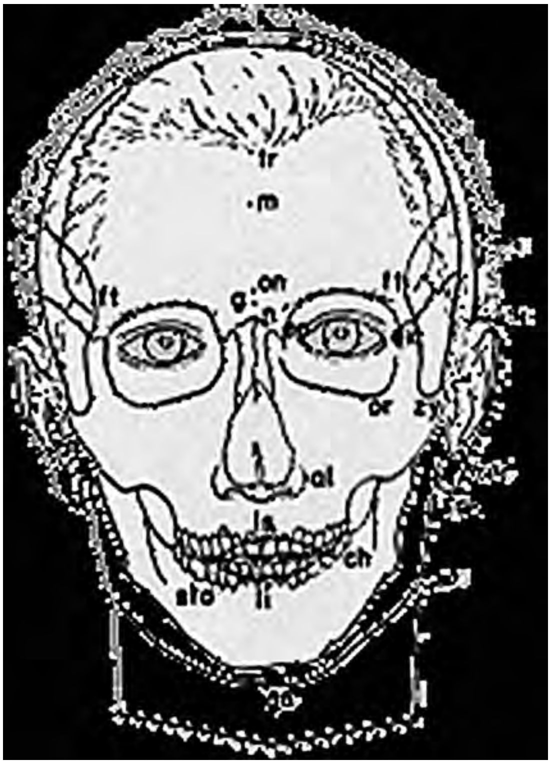


Figure 14.12 Drawing of superimposition of a face on a skull.

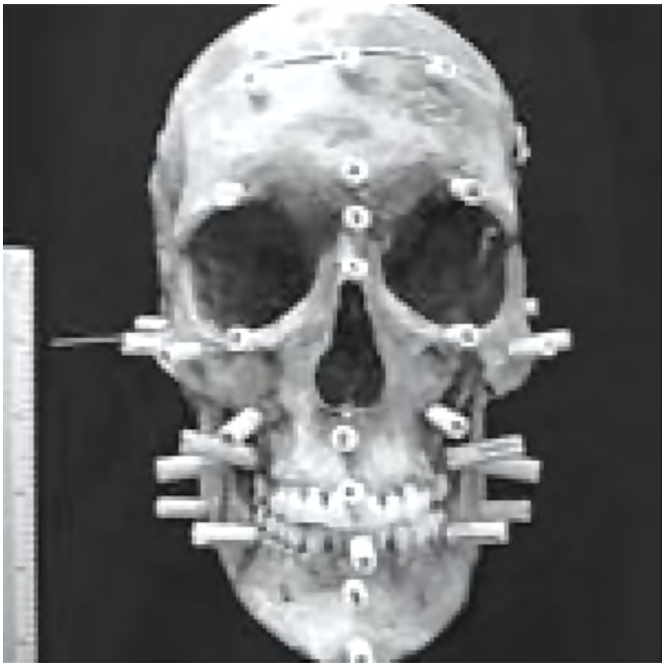


Figure 14.13 Facial reconstruction using a recovered skull. The pegs determine the depth of the tissue. Clay will then be added to the peg depth creating the final facial image.

Using the measurement tables, the anthropologist uses pegs and clay to build up the face (see Figure 14.13).

Some guesswork is involved in choosing lips, the nose, eyebrows, etc. Prosthetic eyes and wigs are also used. This method is not used for identification of a particular individual. Sometimes facial reconstructions are prepared and photographed. The picture is distributed to the news media and broadcast in the hopes that the family of a missing person will recognize it.

Collection of Bones

Most physical evidence at crime scenes is discovered and collected by crime scene technicians or investigators. On the other hand, skeletal remains are seldom discovered this way. Most often bones are happened upon by hikers, hunters or other people who are in a wooded or remote area, often near a lake or stream. Because such scenes are unbounded and unsecured when discovered, it is especially important for law enforcement agents to seal off and protect these scenes. The search for and collection of skeletal evidence in outdoor scenes must be left to professional anthropologists who are trained in recognition and collection of material above ground and buried. If the remains retain decomposing flesh, the search may be aided by the presence of flies or other arthropods (see Chapter 15) or by specially trained dogs (see Chapter 7). In some cases where bodies may be buried in shallow graves, military planes with ground-penetrating radar may be used to help locate the remains.

Something Extra: An Australian "Body Farm"

In Western Australia, the Departments of Anthropology and Entomology of the University of Western Australia maintain a sort of Body Farm. Unlike the United States Body Farm in Tennessee, Australian researchers are prohibited from using human cadavers for the study of decomposition and insect activity. Instead, they use very large pigs (up to 300 lb). The decomposition of pigs proceeds in a similar manner to humans. The pigs are euthanized and then placed in various locations in a remote plot of ground near the University. Some are dressed in clothes, some are covered by brush or branches and some are buried in shallow graves. The pigs spend about 40 days in this field and are visited daily by researchers. The Australian Air Force also uses the Body Farm to train their pilots in the use of ground penetrating radar. The pilots perform regular flyovers to see if they can find the buried pigs with their radar.

Collection of bone evidence from an outdoor crime scene is somewhat like an archaeological dig. The perimeters of the scene are located and marked. Depending upon its size, the scene may be divided into quadrants to organize the search. The entire scene is carefully photographed before any search takes place. Each piece of bone is carefully marked with a flag or other marker and documented. After the surface bones have been collected, then excavation will be employed to discover buried bones.

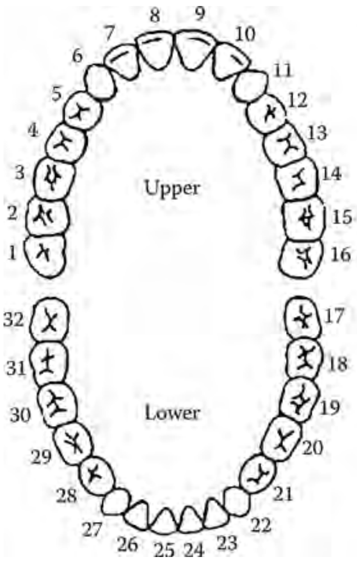
Forensic Odontology

Forensic odontology (dentistry) is a part of forensic medicine. It deals with the examination of dental evidence including teeth, mouth and jaws, and the presentation of expert evidence in a court of law. There are a number of aspects of forensic odontology. They include

- Identification of human remains in crimes and mass disasters
- Estimation of the age of a person living or dead
- Analysis of bite marks found on victims of an attack and in objects such as foods or other substances including wood and leather
- Examination of the dentition and face of a person suspected to be the victim of abuse

Structure and Development of Teeth

Teeth are unique in the human anatomy for a number of reasons. First, the outer part of a tooth is made of a substance called *enamel*. This is the hardest substance that is produced by the human body. Because of this, it can leave impressions in a wide variety of materials from wood to flesh. These impressions can, under certain conditions, provide a means of identification. When a person dies and is interred, the teeth are among the longest surviving structures and may provide a means of identification long after all of the soft tissues have decayed away. Teeth also interact directly with a person's environment and thus their condition may reflect elements of that individual's lifestyle and experiences.


8
9
7
10
6
11
5
12
4
13
3
14
2
15
1
16
Upper
32
17
31
18
30
19
Lower
29
20
28
21
27
22
26
25
24
23

	Tooth	Age erupts (years)
8,9	Central incisor	7.35
7,10	Lateral incisor	8.45
6,11	Canine (cuspid)	11.35
5,12	1st Premolar (bicuspid)	10.20
4,13	2nd Premolar (bicuspid)	11.05
3,14	1st Molar	6.30
2,15	2nd Molar	12.25
1,16	3rd Molar	Varies 17–21
17,32	3rd Molar	Varies 17–21
18,31	2nd Molar	11.90
19,30	1st Molar	6.05
20,29	2nd Premolar (bicuspid)	11.20
21,28	1st Premolar (bicuspid)	10.50
22,27	Canine (cuspid)	10.35
23,26	Lateral incisor	7.50
24,25	Central incisor	6.40

Figure 14.14 A dentist's chart showing the tooth numbering system with a chart of the tooth names and average age that the tooth is visible.

Dentists describe teeth using a numbering system. This is shown in Figure 14.14. Each time an individual visits a dentist a chart will be kept of the condition and treatment of each tooth by number. When a skull is recovered from a crime scene or disaster scene, this chart can be extremely helpful in identifying the dental remains. Each tooth is made up of three parts: the *crown, the body* and *the root*. The anatomy of a tooth is shown in Figure 14.15.

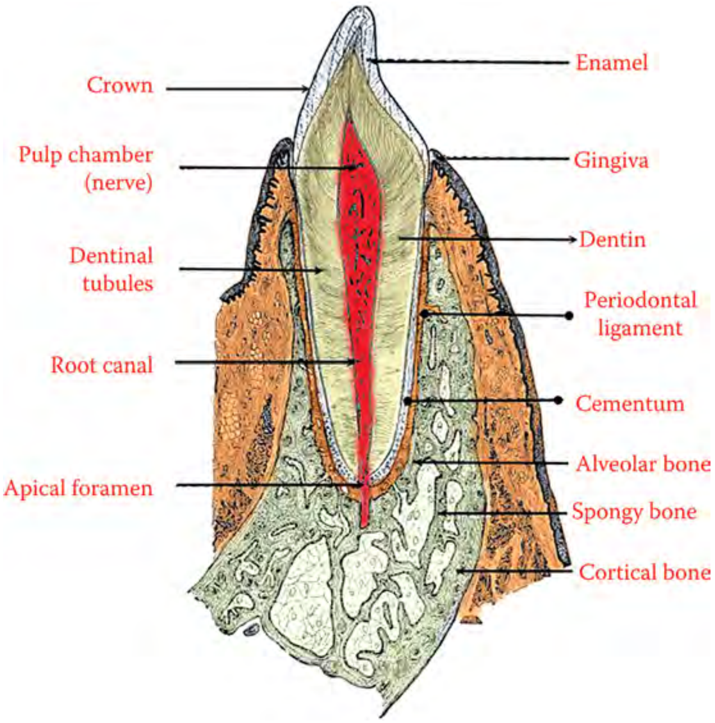

Crown
Pulp chamber (nerve)
Dentinal tubules
Root canal
Apical foramen
Enamel
Gingiva
Dentin
Periodontal ligament
Cementum
Alveolar bone
Spongy bone
Cortical bone

Figure 14.15 The anatomy of a tooth. Courtesy of Martin S. Spiller, D.M.D., www.doctorspiller.com.

Teeth are also oriented by their sides. The chewing surface of the tooth is the *occlusal* surface.

Humans develop two sets of teeth as they grow. The first set is the “baby” teeth. Dentists refer to this set as the *deciduous* teeth. They are gradually replaced by the *permanent* teeth. Different teeth develop at different rates. Dentists can estimate the age of a person by the development of various teeth. For example, the first *deciduous* incisor tooth erupts through the gums at about 9 months of age. The first *permanent* tooth is a molar that erupts at about 6 years. The third molar or “wisdom” tooth erupts between 17 and 21 years. The wisdom teeth often erupt irregularly and have to be removed by the dentist.

Identification of Dental Remains

Although there is usually sufficient evidence to identify a dead body, sometimes dentition is the only way of achieving a positive identification. Cases aided by dental record checks include burning, drowning, fire or explosion and decomposition. All mouths and dentition are different, and a trained forensic odontologist may be able to provide enough information for a positive identification. This is normally done by charting the teeth of the deceased and comparing this with dental records of persons who may have been involved in the incident. If a suspected person is identified, then comparison of postmortem and antemortem dental X-rays can be used to confirm the identity. Even if a person has no teeth, there may be enough identifying information from the analysis of dentures and the structure of the jaw and skull as revealed by X-rays.

Bite Marks

There have been a number of cases in recent years where a bite mark impression made on a person’s body by an attacker has been compared with a cast of the suspect’s teeth. This is a controversial area of analysis at this point and insufficient research has been done to settle the issue of whether bite mark analysis constitutes individual evidence. In regard to pattern evidence like bite marks which has not been scientifically validated, the National Academy of Science (NAS) in their 2009 report said, “The simple reality is that the interpretation of forensic evidence is not always based on scientific studies to determine its validity. This is a serious problem”. Individuals have been convicted of serious crimes and incarcerated due to bite mark evidence and witness testimony alone. Some of these cases are now being overturned by reexamining the case and using DNA evidence which was not available during previous trials. In today’s courtrooms, bite mark evidence has not been substantiated as viable evidence and in fact, the state of Texas has declared a moratorium on bite mark evidence in its courts. In a 2016 report by the President’s Council of Advisors on Science and Technology the committee declared, “that bite mark analysis does not meet the scientific standards for foundational validity, and is far from meeting such standards. To the contrary, available scientific evidence strongly suggests that examiners cannot consistently agree on whether an injury is a human bite mark and cannot identify the source of a bite mark with reasonable accuracy”.

Forensic Odontology in Abuse Cases

Each year, many thousands of children and adults are physically abused by parents, spouses and others. In the case of child abuse, it may be necessary to remove the child from the home pending an investigation. In order for local social service agencies or law enforcement agents to remove a child, there must be evidence that the child is being or has been abused. In many cases, a child or adult victim is brought to the emergency room of a hospital for treatment. If an emergency room physician suspects that the victim has been abused as evidenced by facial injuries, she may ask for an opinion of a forensic odontologist. If he is able to determine that the injuries were sustained as a result of blunt force such as a fist, this may provide enough evidence to investigate the case as abuse.

Summary

Forensic anthropology is a part of physical anthropology. This, in turn, is a part of anthropology, the study of the human race. Forensic anthropologists work with skeletal remains to help determine the cause and manner of death and the postmortem interval in cases of suspicious death. They also help search death scenes to recover skeletal evidence. This can be similar to an archaeological dig.

The task of the forensic anthropologist is to determine the identity of unknown skeletal remains. This often involves determining the biological profile of the skeleton. Before determining the biological profile, the anthropologist must determine if the remains are human bone and of an age that makes it useful for forensic purposes. The biological profile consists of determining the age at death of the bones, the gender, the race and the stature. After the biological profile is determined, attempts may be made to individualize the bone. This can involve comparison of post- and antemortem X-rays to uncover bone trauma or unusual features. The analysis of skulls can also be important. Photographic superimposition of a face on a skull can aid in identification. It is also possible to build a face on a skull to determine if it resembles a missing person.

Forensic odontology (dentistry) is an important area and is often performed along with anthropology. Forensic odontologists help with the identification of human remains, estimate age, analyze bite marks and help determine if abuse has taken place.

Try It Yourself: Pelvic Bones and Age

The drawing shows the pelvic bones of an adult and a child. How are they different? Why are they different?

On the adult pelvis show the points of fusion of the ilium, ischium and pubis bones. Are there epiphyseal lines present? If so, show with a colored line where they are located.

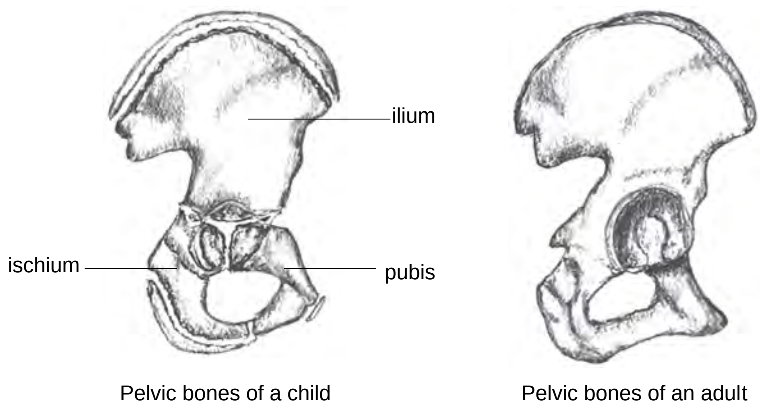


Figure 14.16 Pelvic Bone Comparison. Courtesy of Wards Natural Science, LLC, Rochester, New York.

Test Yourself

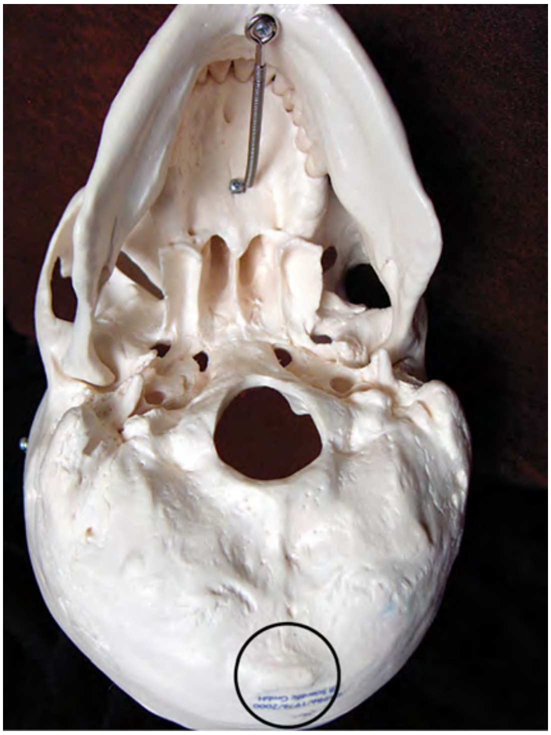
Short Answer Questions

1. Define forensic anthropology. How does it differ from osteology?
2. What are some of the techniques that are used in the proper recovery of skeletal remains? How is this like archeology?
3. How do forensic anthropologists help determine the postmortem interval?
4. What is the significance of the pubic symphysis in the determination of age of skeletal remains?
5. Explain how the length of long bones such as the femur can be used to estimate the stature of a person?
6. What is the biological profile? What are its components?
7. What is photographic superimposition? How is it used in skeletal identification?
8. How does knowledge of the development of teeth help determine the age of a person?
9. How are bite marks used in the identification of a person? Why is this type of analysis controversial?
10. A bone is found in a wooded area that resembles a human adult's femur by maturity of the bone, but it is unclear whether it could be human or animal. A quick measurement of the length reveals that it is 19.5 cm long. What is your conclusion?

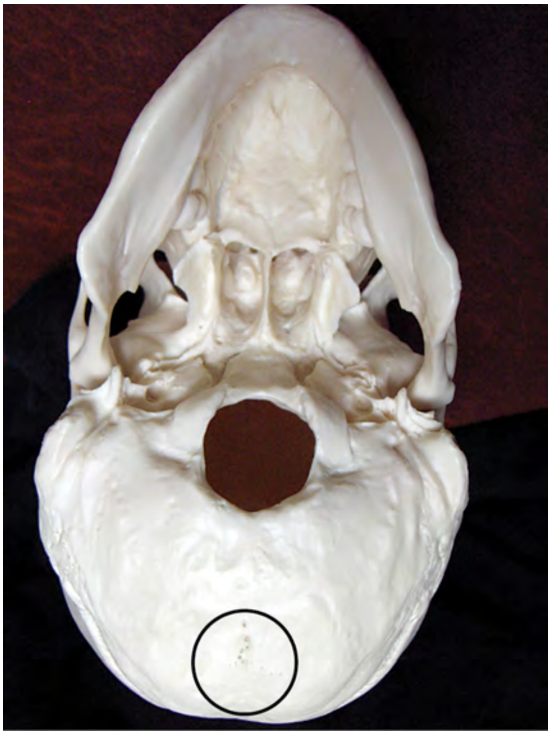
Multiple Choice Questions

11. The following bones are helpful in determining the gender of human skeletal remains:
    a. Femur, pelvis
    b. Humerus, skull
    c. Pelvis, skull
    d. Pelvis, tibia

12. The determination of age of skeletal remains is aided by
    a. Analysis of the dentition
    b. Measuring the curvature of the femur
    c. Measuring the nasal cavity
    d. Measuring the angle of the greater sciatic notch
13. The determination of the gender of skeletal remains is aided by
    a. Analysis of the dentition
    b. Measuring the curvature of the femur
    c. Measuring the nasal cavity
    d. Measuring the angle of the greater sciatic notch
14. The determination of the possible racial ancestry of the skeletal remains is aided by
    a. Looking for the presence of deciduous teeth
    b. Measuring the curvature of the femur
    c. Observing the presence of epiphyseal lines on the femur
    d. Measuring the angle of the greater sciatic notch
15. If the subpubic angle of a pelvis is less than 90°, then the remains indicate that the person may have been
    a. Caucasian
    b. Asian
    c. Male
    d. Female
16. If a human lower jaw bone has been recovered from a wooded area and shows evidence of permanent teeth with the absence of second molars, second premolars and third molars, then the approximate age of the decedent can be best estimated to be under
    a. 5 years old
    b. 8 years old
    c. 21 years old
    d. 11 years old
17. Which portion of a long bone contains the growth plate or epiphyseal plate?
    a. Epiphysis
    b. Metaphysis
    c. Diaphysis
18. The cells that make up bone are called
    a. Osteocytes
    b. Osteons
    c. Canaliculi
    d. Haversians
19. A human skull has a subtle brow ridge, the mastoid process is small, the forehead is rounded, not slanting, and the external occipital protuberance is absent. These traits indicate that the skull is *most* likely
    a. Male
    b. Female
20. What is the circled area of the base of the human skull called?
    a. Subpubic arch
    b. Sciatic notch
    c. External occipital protuberance
    d. Mastoid process



Base of male skull



Base of female skull

Problem-solving

21. Measure your height in feet and inches. Determine the length range of each of your long bones using Table 14.1 for your gender and race.

True or False

22. The development of the teeth has no bearing on the age of a person past 10 years old.
23. The biological profile includes the age, gender, race and occupation of an individual.
24. In order to determine height from the femur, you must measure the width of the bone.
25. Forensic anthropology is the study of bones and their characteristics.

For Each Trait Given, Match it with the Biological Information It Will Determine From This List: (A—age, G—gender, R—race, S—stature)

26. Epiphyseal lines
27. Length of humerus
28. Shape of eye orbit
29. Greater occipital protuberance
30. Greater sciatic notch

Further Reading

Burns, K. R. (2007). *Forensic Anthropology Training Manual*, 2nd edn. Pearson-Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Sauer, N. (1984). Manner of death, in *Human Identification: Case Studies in Forensic Anthropology*, T. Rathbun and J. Buikstra (eds.). Charles C Thomas Publishers, Springfield, IL, pp. 176–184.

Ubelaker, D. (2000). *Human Skeletal Remains*. *Taraxacum*, Washington, DC.

Ubelaker, D. H. and H. Scammell. (1992). *Bones: A Forensic Detective's Casebook*. Edward Burlingame Books, New York.

White, T. D. (2000). *Human Osteology*. Academic Press, London, U.K.

Helpful Websites

Forensic Taphonomy

https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6474560/

https://edisciplinas.usp.br/pluginfile.php/4263611/mod_resource/content/0/cap%205%20Haglung%20e%20sorg.pdf

Forensic Anthropology

http://whyfiles.org/192forensic_anthro/.

https://naturalhistory.si.edu/education/teaching-resources/social-studies/forensic-anthropology

https://www.pbs.org/opb/historydetectives/technique/forensic-anthropology/

https://fac.utk.edu/what-is-forensic-anthropology-2/

https://www.smithsonianmag.com/arts-culture/solving-a-17th-century-crime-50842762/

https://naturalhistory.si.edu/education/teaching-resources/written-bone/forensic-case-files

https://www.murdoch.edu.au/School-of-Veterinary-and-Life-Sciences/_document/Forensic/The-Body-in-the-Bag-How-Forensic-Anthropology-Solved-a-Murder.pdf

Body Farm links

https://www.forbes.com/sites/kristinakillgrove/2015/06/10/these-six-body-farms-help-forensic-anthropologists-learn-to-solve-crimes/#50beaf3d489f

https://news.utk.edu/2018/09/13/body-farm-helps-solve-30-year-old-case-of-missing-indiana-woman/

https://www.theatlantic.com/technology/archive/2010/12/down-on-the-body-farm-inside-the-dirty-world-of-forensic-science/67241/

https://www.fbi.gov/news/stories/body-farm-20th-anniversary-032019

Forensic Odontology

http://www.3dmouth.org/6/6_1.cfm.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tooth_development.

Facial Reconstruction

http://www.forensicartist.com/reconstruction.html.

http://www.karenttaylor.com/.

Tennessee Body Farm: University of Tennessee Forensic Anthropology Center: http://web.utk.edu/~fac/.

Case Studies

Case Study—Bite Marks as Crucial Evidence: Ted Bundy

Probably the most famous case where a bite mark was positively associated with an attacker involved the convicted serial killer, Theodore Bundy. Bundy was a serial killer suspected of killing more than forty young women during his spree that started in Washington state and spread to other states in the west. He was briefly captured and jailed in Colorado but escaped and traveled to Florida where he continued his murderous rampage. In the space of a few weeks, he attacked at least five women in the Tallahassee area. Among the victims was Lisa Levy who, along with her roommate, Martha Bowman, was murdered on January 15, 1978. Bundy wiped the area clean of fingerprints and took the murder weapon (a wooden club). Some traces of blood, a few smudged fingerprints and some sperm samples were recovered from the crime scene but could not be conclusively matched to Bundy. Officers at the crime scene inspected Levy's body and found two bite marks on her body: one on her breast and a more distinct one on her left buttock. The one on her buttock was photographed at the scene. A ruler was put into the photograph for measuring purposes. By the time Bundy went on trial, the actual tissue samples containing the bite mark had been lost. After obtaining a warrant to get a bite mark impression from Bundy, Dr. Richard Souviron, a Florida dentist took detailed photographs of Bundy's dentition. At Bundy's trial, Dr. Souviron showed the jury the photographs of Bundy's teeth and the bite mark from Levy's body. His testimony was bolstered by Dr. Lowell Levine, a forensic dentist from New York affiliated with the New York City Medical Examiner's Office. On the basis of the bite mark testimony and that of a witness, Bundy was convicted of Lisa

Levy's murder and sentenced to die in the electric chair.

Even though bite mark evidence was a key aspect of the Bundy trial, the testimony of the witness was crucial. In this case, DNA evidence was not available and prosecutors had to rely on other forms of evidence in presenting their case. Prior to his execution in 1989 Bundy confessed to at least 30 murders, although authorities suspect there were more.

Additional Information: https://www.biography.com/crime-figure/ted-bundy

Case Study: Forensic Art Aids in Solving Murders of Three Women

In Austin, Texas, on October 29, 1998, relatives of 54-year-old Olivia Estrada received an anonymous phone call warning them to check on her. When they did, the doors were locked, and Olivia did not answer. Police were called and they found water-soaked carpet with a faint staining of what looked like blood, as if someone had tried to clean up the carpet. Olivia's car was at the home and when they checked it, they found evidence of a struggle and blood in the car. They also found a ring belonging to Olivia with blood on it near the car. But Olivia's body was nowhere to be found.

Olivia's daughter told authorities that her mother had been dating a man named Martin Gonzales. Martin was a native of Mexico and had come to the United States to work as a laborer. The daughter also told police that she had called her mother recently and Martin had answered the phone and in conversation told the daughter that he wanted to marry her mother. When the daughter told her mother this she was surprised. She was not interested in marrying Martin at all and told her daughter that theirs was a casual relationship.

Martin Gonzales was questioned by Austin police about his relationship with Olivia. He said he was with her that night, but there was another man there, Manual Barbosa, and Martin had left the home early, leaving Olivia with Manual. Turns out Manual Barbosa could not have been at the home that night; he was actually in prison! When searching Martin Gonzales, a key to Olivia's house was found in his pocket.

Background checks on Gonzales revealed he had served time in Mexican prison for murder. Once out of prison, he moved to Texas and met eventually Maria Flores, who was his girlfriend for a period of time. Just 5 months prior to Olivia's disappearance, Gonzales had reported Maria missing.

Austin police were not getting any leads to finding Olivia Estrada, so they decided to check the Missing Persons Clearinghouse, a database that tracks missing persons and unidentified bodies. They got an interesting hit for their area. Three years earlier skeletal remains had been found one block from where Martin Gonzales had been living. The skull had sustained blunt force trauma and many of the teeth were missing, but by using the skeletal traits anthropologists could determine it was a female, approximately 35 years old, possibly of Asian or Native American decent. But that was all they could determine at the time. They decided to send the skull to Texas forensic artist Karen T. Taylor for reconstruction of the face in order to try to find the girl's identity. Because the condition of the skull was so fragile due to the trauma, Taylor could not make a clay sculpture of the face. Instead she used a technique called 2D reconstruction using drawing. Taylor added the depth markers to the skull based on a 35-year-old female of Hispanic descent. She then photographed the marked skull,

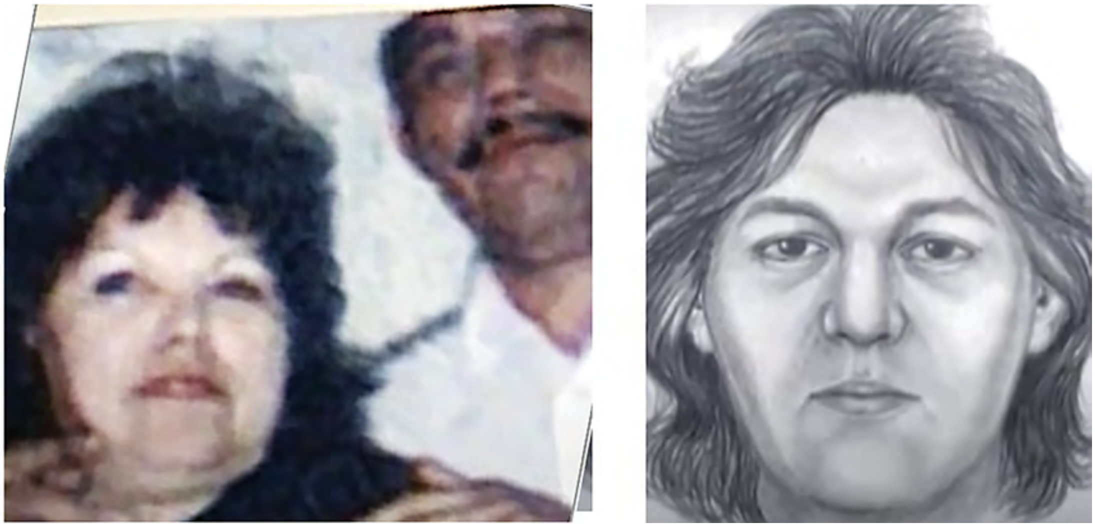


Figure 14.17 On the left, a photograph of Sylvia Garcia Gonzales with her husband Martin Gonzales found in Martin Gonzales's home. On the right, forensic artist Karen T. Taylor's 2D reconstruction of the facial features of an unidentified skull found one block from Martin's home.

overlaid the photograph with special drawing paper and filled in the facial features with a pencil sketch. The finished silhouette was run in the Austin newspaper. A family in Mexico contacted Austin police and said the sketch looked very much like their mother, 48-year-old Sylvia Garcia, who was married to Martin Gonzales! The family had not heard from their mother in a few years.

Martin and Sylvia had come to Texas from Mexico together. Sylvia was unhappy and filed for divorce just before she had disappeared. Martin Gonzales denied having a wife. Austin police searched Martin's home and found a photograph of Martin with Sylvia.

Further proof that the recovered skull belonged to Sylvia came from letters she had sent to her children in Mexico three years prior. Miraculously they had saved the letters. DNA was extracted from the licked flap of the letter's envelope. Tooth pulp containing DNA was extracted from the few remaining teeth in the skull. The two DNA samples matched. Gonzales was arrested and charged with the murder of his wife, Sylvia Garcia Gonzales.

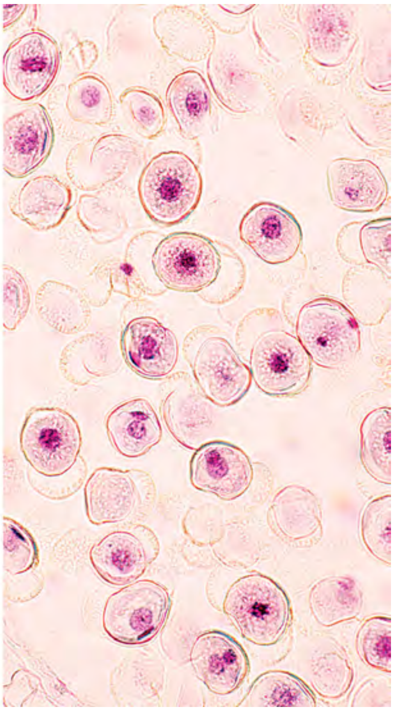
Meanwhile, a farmer plowing his fields found human remains. The skull of the remains sustained blunt force trauma and a gunshot wound to the head. Dental records matched the skull to a female, Olivia Estrada. Less than one mile away from the location of Olivia's body another set of female remains was discovered, with blunt force trauma to the skull. The body was identified as Maria Flores, the lady that Martin had dated and reported missing.

In September of 2000, Martin Gonzales was found guilty of three counts of first-degree murder. He is serving a life sentence.

For more information: https://murderpedia.org/male.E/e/escamilla-martin.htm

15

Forensic Palynology and Entomology



Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define palynology and forensic palynology.
2. To illustrate how pollen and spores can be used to track location(s) of forensic evidence.
3. To understand the role of pollen and spores as part of the evidence pool in a criminal case.
4. To be able to define entomology and forensic entomology and give examples
5. To be able to describe the contributions that forensic entomology can make in solving death cases
6. To be able to describe the ways that forensic entomology can help determine the postmortem interval
7. To be able to list and describe the various types of arthropods that invade a body after death

8. To be able to describe the contributions of forensic entomology to the determination of the presence of drugs and poisons in a body
9. To be able to describe the five stages of decomposition of a body after death

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Forensic Palynology: Pollen and Spores as Evidence*
- *Becoming a Forensic Palynologist or Forensic Entomologist*
- *Forensic Entomology—Finding the PMI: The Life Cycle of the Blowfly*
- *Decomposition of a Body after Death*
    - *Stages of Decomposition*
- *Factors that Affect PMI*
    - *Physical Factors*
    - *Chemical Factors*
    - *Climate*
    - *Animals*
- *Entomological Investigation and Evidence Collection*
    - *At the Death Scene*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
    - *Multiple Choice Questions*
    - *True or False*
    - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
    - *Short Answer Questions*
- *References*
- *On the Web*
- *Forensic Palynology*
- *Using Pollen to Track Drugs*
- *Forensic Entomology*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Entomology: Generalized study of insects and related arthropods (crustaceans, spiders, etc.)

Forensic entomology: The application of entomology to civil and criminal incidents

Forensic Palynology: The application of the study of pollen and spores to civil and criminal incidents

Instar: Developmental stages of the larva of a fly

Medicolegal forensic entomology: This type of forensic entomology is used in the investigation of death, abuse and neglect cases

Necrophage: Insects that feed on the tissue of the corpse

Omnivore: Arthropods that feed not only on the body but on other insects that have been attracted to the corpse. Omnivores include mainly wasps and beetles

Palynology: The study of pollen and spores; their biology and their archaeological and geological effects.

Postmortem interval (PMI): Time since death. In the context of forensic entomology, it is the time interval between when the body is first exposed to insects and when it is discovered

Urban forensic entomology: The analysis of the presence of arthropods in homes, businesses, gardens and farms

Acronyms

ABFE	American Board of Forensic Entomology
ARPE	American Registry of Professional Entomologists
PMI	Postmortem interval

Introduction

Forensic palynology is a relatively new area of interest in criminal investigations. Pollen and spores are microscopic, thus the deposit of them on people or materials is largely undetectable with the unaided eye. Their outer coating is very resilient making them survivors of various climatic conditions. Traits such as these make the presence pollen and spore evidence another utensil in the reconstruction toolbox.

The earliest record of the use of entomology in a criminal investigation is described in a book published in China in the thirteenth century. The book, called *Hsi Yuan Lu*, (which can be translated as *The Washing Away of Wrongs*) contains a description of a murder investigation in a rice paddy. The incident involved a homicide committed by one of the workers. The investigator lined up the workers and told them to lay their sickles on the ground. One of the implements contained very faint traces of blood. Although this could not have been identified as blood scientifically at that time, it almost immediately attracted flies. Since the only implement that could have caused the murder was a sickle, and the murderer had to be one of the workers, the flies "identified" the guilty worker's sickle as having blood on it. The perpetrator of the crime was, in effect, caught red-handed and he confessed. This incident is a textbook example of the use of insects in solving crimes and is the subject of this chapter. We will see that forensic entomology not only is a useful science in crime investigation but can also be helpful in civil incidents in rural areas and cities alike.

Entomology is the generalized study of insects and related arthropods (crustaceans, spiders, etc.). *Forensic entomology* is the application of entomology to civil and criminal incidents. The most important and noteworthy applications of forensic entomology involve its use in criminal cases, but it has very important applications in the civil area. For example, *urban forensic entomology* involves the analysis of the presence of arthropods in homes, businesses, gardens and farms. There have been a number of cases where the indiscriminate use of pesticides has killed many arthropods. The location and quantity of these dead animals provide strong evidence that the pesticides were used improperly or without proper cautions being taken against their spread. There are also cases where insects invade food and other consumer products such as soft drinks, salad dressings and even candy. These situations often lead to litigation because of improper storage of food materials. Forensic entomologists are often called into such cases to provide testimony about how and why these insects were able to invade food storage containers and facilities.

Medicolegal forensic entomology is the most visible and common application of entomology. This type of forensic entomology is used in the investigation of death, abuse and neglect cases. Although most noteworthy for its contribution to estimation of the postmortem interval (PMI) or time since death, there are many other types of information that can be gleaned from the study of arthropods at crime scenes. These include the climatic and temperature conditions at death, the location of a body and determination of whether the body had been moved shortly after death, how the body was stored, the location of antemortem (before death) injuries, whether the body had been buried or submerged in water and sometimes the presence of drugs and poisons in the body. Suspects have been linked to a scene by the presence of arthropods. The extent of abuse or neglect of infants and elderly persons can be established by insect activity. Considering all of these situations, the role of the forensic entomologist in a crime investigation can be a major one. His or her principle role is to collect and identify arthropod specimens and then interpret these findings in relation to environmental variables. Arguably the most important contribution of medicolegal forensic entomology to crime investigation is in the estimation of the PMI in cases where a body is discovered days after death. The contribution of forensic entomology in late PMI determination is discussed in detail in Chapter 13. The basis for estimation of the PMI by forensic entomologists is that many different types of insects will invade a corpse at predictable intervals after death, some very soon after the body has deposited. These arthropods have predictable developmental stages and parts of the body that they will inhabit. Forensic entomologists examine the insects on and in a body when it is discovered. From the types of insects present, their developmental stages and the degree of activity on the body, they can sometimes make remarkably accurate and precise determinations of the PMI, even days after death. Insect behavior may also yield information about how or even if, a crime occurred.

With all of these valuable uses of entomology, it is interesting to note that this type of evidence is badly underused in homicide investigations. Insects are often ignored as evidence and are treated as a gross nuisance by investigators at crime scenes and by pathology personnel at autopsies. There are several reasons for this. Crime scene technicians who collect evidence are seldom trained to recognize the significance of the presence of arthropods on a body. They do not realize the importance of this evidence and are not trained in the proper methods of collection of insects. Investigators are told that this evidence is unreliable and that entomologists can only give an estimate of the PMI, not an exact determination. In fact there are no methods that can give an exact PMI at any time after death. Finally, there are only a few dozen forensically trained entomologists in the whole United States. If untrained entomologists are called in to crime scenes, mistakes are often made and the value of the evidence is diminished or lost, further contributing to the lack of regard for this science.

Forensic Palynology: Pollen and Spores as Evidence

Pollen grains contain the male reproductive part (or gamete) of a seed plant. In order to achieve fertilization, pollen must be transported by various means to the pistil, or female reproductive part of a flower. Depending on the species of plant, the movement of pollen is achieved in different ways. Sometimes pollen is carried by insects, birds or bats as they hunt for flower nectar. Wind pollination occurs in primarily in the conifer plants or cone producing evergreens. These plants can produce large amounts of pollen in order to increase the chances of fertilization. Another method of pollination is using water currents. Lastly, some plants are self-pollinating and do not use environmental mechanisms to move their pollen.

If your car is parked outside in the springtime, you may have noticed a thin layer of yellow or green dust on your car (Figure 15.1).

This fine dust is actually mounds of thousands of individual microscopic pollen grains. Pollen grains can range in size from 5 micrometers to 200 micrometers in size (that would be 0.000005 -0.000200 meters). Figure 15.2 shows the basic structures of a typical pollen grain which contains vacuoles, a tube nucleus and a generative cell that will produce two male gametes to fertilize the plant. The environment-resistant outer covering of the pollen grain, the exine, can be of various shapes and have protrusions. Individual pollen grains vary in outside structure and morphology depending on the species that produced them (see Figure 15.3 for some examples of pollen grains as seen under the scanning electron microscope (SEM)).

Spores are produced by certain plants, algae (protists) and fungi as a means of reproduction. Examples of spore producing organisms are shown in Figure 15.4. Mosses and ferns are seedless plants which release spores to the air from the

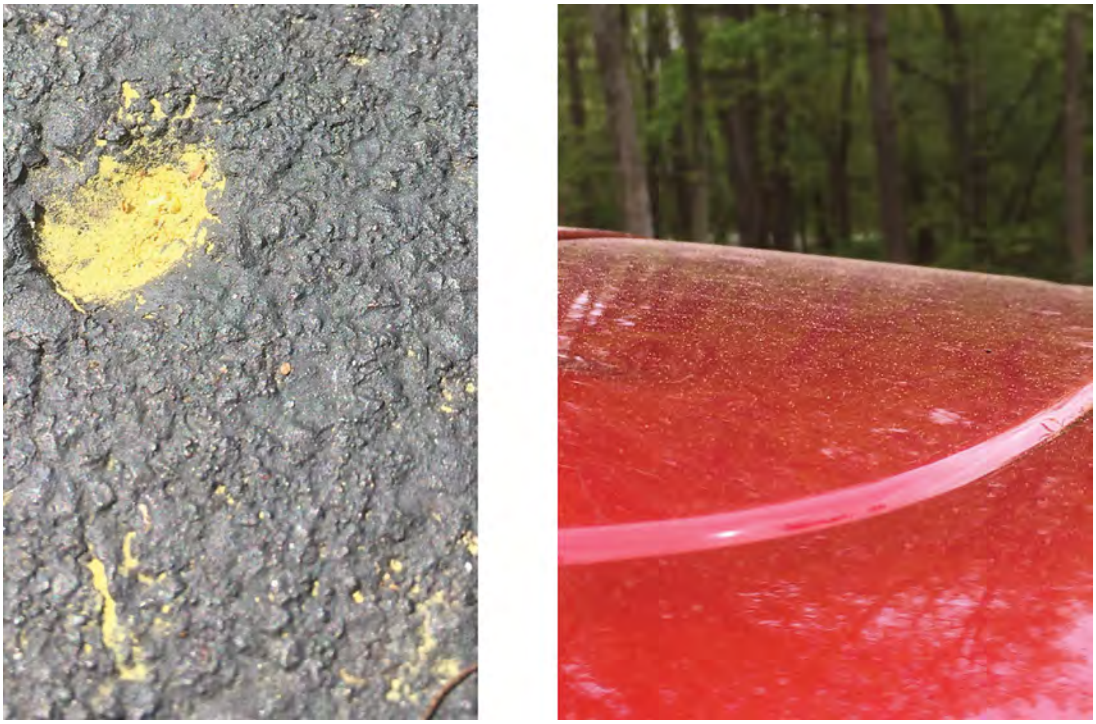


Figure 15.1 Pine pollen deposited on a driveway and on the hood of the car resembles yellow dust. Pollen grains are microscopic, so to be visible, this represents thousands of grains of pollen. Courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC.

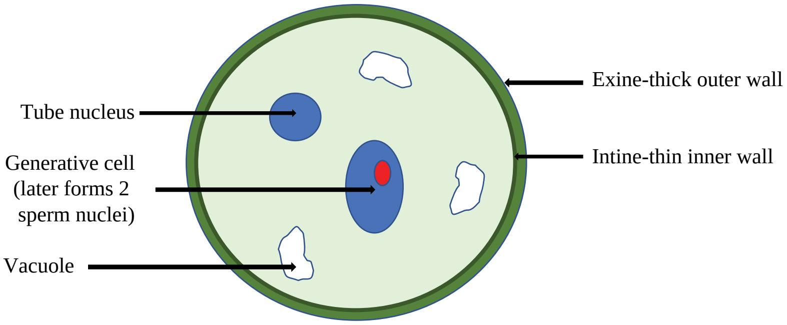


Figure 15.2 Basic structures of a grain of pollen. Courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC.

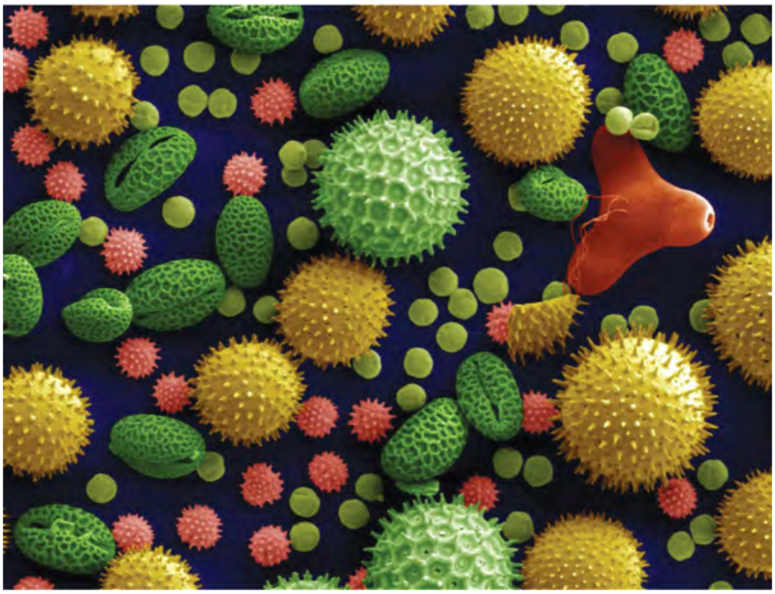


Figure 15.3 A scanning electron microscope image of a wide variety of pollen grains magnified 500 times. Note the rough outside structure of the exine wall and how size and shape differentiate the various species of pollen. Photo courtesy of Dartmouth Electron Microscope Facility, Dartmouth College.

underside of their leaves. Mushrooms release spores underneath their caps, therefore limiting the diverse spreading of their spores, which is why you usually see mushrooms growing close to one another. Hunters of the prized morel mushrooms are especially delighted to find morels in the same location year after year as long as spores are shaken off during harvesting. Pilobus fungi, sometimes called “puff balls”, eject their spores in a cloud when compressed, allowing the wind to transport their spores (see Figure 15.5). Dispersal of spores occurs primarily due to wind and water; however, some edible fungi can have their spores distributed by animals. The spores of these fungi can pass through the animal’s digestive system and be released back to the environment via their excrement.

Pollen and spores found in evidence can be thought of as the “fingerprint” for a geographic location. Because they are resilient and microscopic they can be found

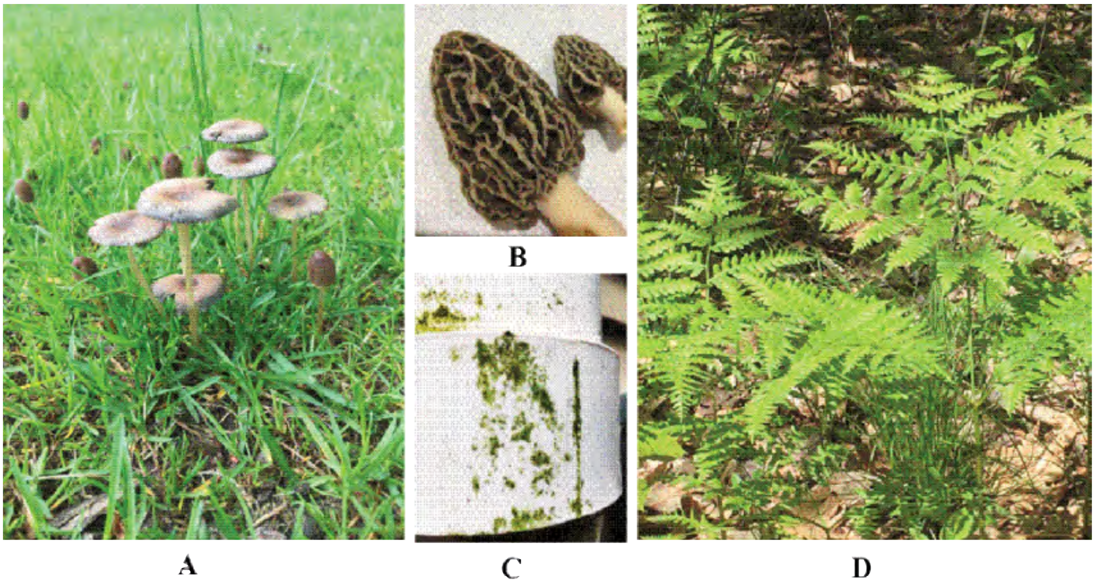


Figure 15.4 Examples of spore producing organisms. Picture A shows field mushrooms, Picture B shows morel mushrooms, Picture C shows algae growing on PVC pipe and Picture D shows ferns. Photos courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC.

on a wide array of materials that might be considered as evidence. Examples of places to look for traces of pollen or spores are:

- Dirt, soil, dust or mud on shoes
- Clothing, outerwear, hats, gloves, shoes and hair of suspects
- Blankets, rugs, carpets, towels or any other material used to wrap a body
- For deceased victim at autopsy: nails, clothing, skin, hair, nasal passages, lungs, digestive system
- Automotive: carpet, air filter, seats, radiator, exhaust, tires and wheel wells
- Paper envelopes, money, packaging materials
- Drugs: plant material and powdered or packaged drugs

If investigators want to check for the presence of pollen and/or spores on persons or collected evidence, they must elicit the help of a forensic palynologist. The palynologist should visit the crime scene to collect reference samples and conduct a vegetative survey. Collection of pollen evidence does not have to be done by the forensic palynologist, but careful attention to sterile protocol should be employed by the crime scene investigators. Careful collection and storage of pollen evidence is imperative, since many types of pollen are abundant in the environment. The piece of evidence could be easily contaminated by pollen brought in by investigators if care is not taken. Proper collection and processing protocols are imperative for the evidence to be admitted in court. Evidence should be collected using a fresh pair of sterile gloves and instruments that are sterile and come from a sealed container. Collected samples should be placed in a sterile, airtight container and then sealed immediately. The crime scene samples and reference samples are then processed and analyzed by the forensic palynologist. Sometimes this involves cleaning and sifting a sample such as dirt or mud to remove all but the pollen or spores. Using a scanning electron microscope, the samples are identified and

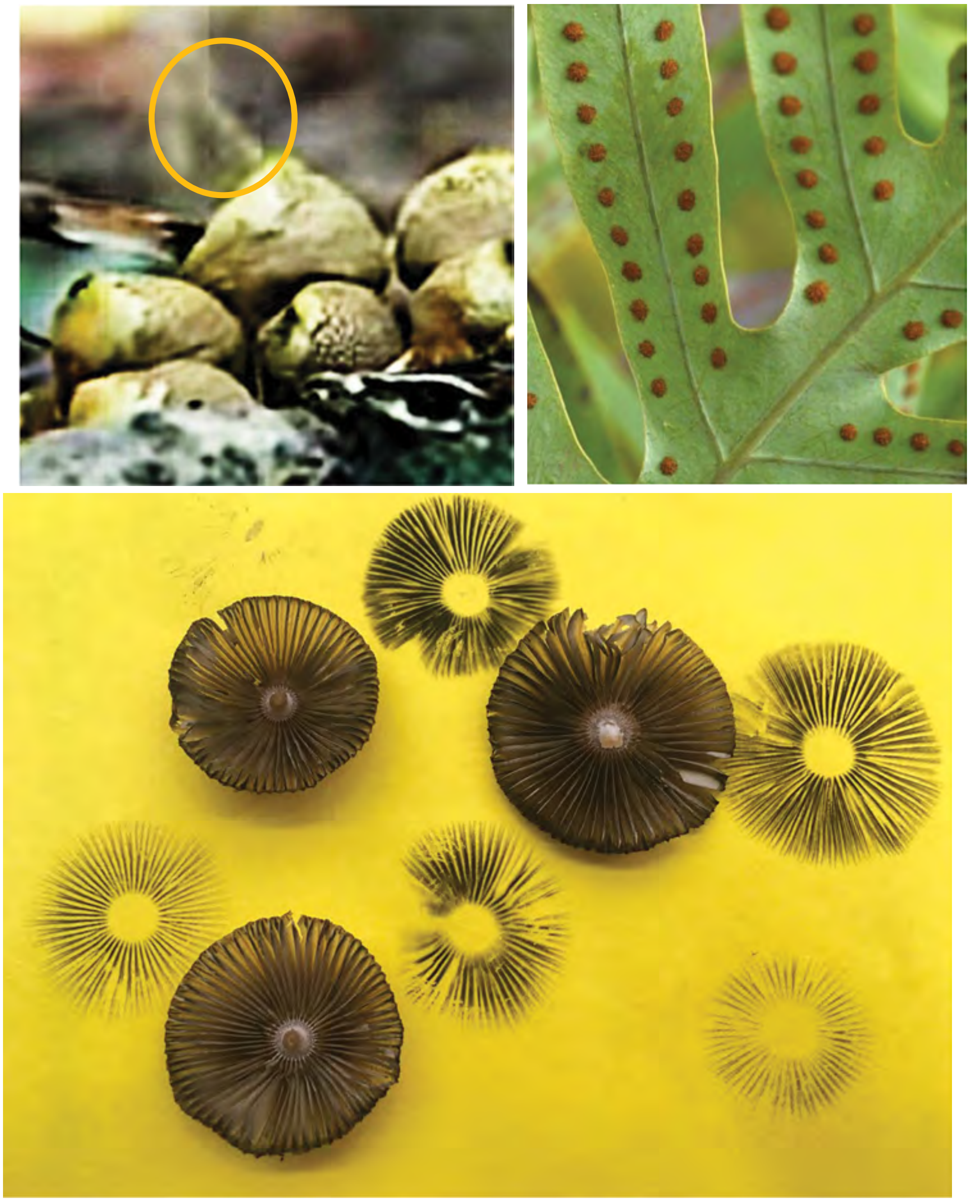


Figure 15.5 Reproductive spores. Top left is a pilobus fungi with erupting spores, top right are spores underneath a fern leaf and the bottom photo shows five spore prints from the underside of field mushrooms.

compared. If the evidence is relevant to the case, then the forensic palynologist will be required to present findings in court.

What is the value of pollen and spore evidence? How does it fit into crime scene reconstruction? By analyzing this type of evidence investigators can establish links between individuals, locations and/or objects. For example, if the shoes of a suspect and the blanket covering a victim exhibit the same type of spring pollen as found in the suspect's car trunk, then a linkage between these persons and objects is implied. If the pollen is not native to the location in which the body, car and suspect were discovered, that would suggest the crime could have occurred elsewhere and the investigation area needs to be expanded. In drug trafficking, pollen and spore analysis can help trace the movement of the drug from manufacture to the street. If a drug originally comes from a foreign country there is a possibility the drug or the packaging material could contain pollen or spores native to that region of the world. When the drug enters the United States and is distributed, pollen could be picked up from this new location before it is moved to a third location. In this way, it is possible to trace the movement (and number of movements) of evidence and thereby narrow geographic areas of interest.

By itself pollen and spore evidence will not determine the guilt of an individual. However, as part of the pool of evidence it can be very helpful when reconstructing location and movements during a criminal act. The application of palynology in crime investigation is relatively new in the United States. Other countries have used it over the past five decades. The first recorded case occurred in Austria, in which a palynologist analyzed mud from the boots of a murder suspect, finding four types of pollen. Using the pollen information, the palynologist could pinpoint a narrow area in Vienna where all types were found. This prompted the accused man to confess to the murder, even though a body was never recovered.

Researchers are developing a new way to identify pollen using DNA analysis. Studies are being done to develop a genetic bar code for pollen sequences that could make identification easier, less subjective and faster.

Becoming a Forensic Palynologist or Forensic Entomologist

Because forensic palynology is a relatively new and specialized field, there are very few of these experts in the United States. The career path to become a palynologist involves a bachelors, masters and PhD in the area of botany or environmental science, with a specialty in palynology. Currently, there is no certified training in forensics for the palynologist.

To become certified as a Diplomate in the American Board of Forensic Entomology (ABFE/ http://research.missouri.edu/entomology/), one must first obtain a PhD in entomology. There are a number of universities nationwide that offer this degree. Some universities also offer bachelor's or master's degrees in forensic entomology. There is a formal organization of professional entomologists who are Board Certified. This is the American Registry of Professional Entomologists (ARPE).

Forensic Entomology—Finding the PMI: The Life Cycle of the Blowfly

As was discussed earlier, the key evidence presented by arthropods in determining the PMI is the determination of what types are present in and around a body and what stages of life are exhibited. Many species of arthropod invade a body, and they normally arrive at predictable intervals in particular order. Of course, all of this is highly dependent upon the environmental conditions surrounding the corpse. Like most life activities, cold conditions slow down insect activity. If a body is heavily clothed or partially or totally buried, it will take insects longer to reach the body. Many insects are inactive at night so, if a body is left at an outdoor sight at night, there may be no activity until dawn. It generally takes insects longer to get to a body that is indoors or under water. Even with all of these environmental variables, there are a remarkable number of constants and consistencies about insect behavior at the site of a dead body. It is also important to note that, with respect to forensic entomology, the PMI is not the same as the time since death, but is the time interval since the body was put into an environment where interaction with insects is possible. For example, if someone is killed and the body is put into the trunk of a car, which is then driven for 8 h to a location where the body is dumped, insect activity can only begin at that time and determination of the PMI will not reflect the time that the body spent in the car.

In many situations the common blowfly is the first insect to reach a dead body. Flies are able to find and invade a corpse long before the police or crime scene unit arrives. They can squeeze into the tightest of spaces to get to a body. In cases where bodies are buried in the rubble of a fire or explosion, it is sometimes possible to "follow the flies" to the bodies in the rubble. This method was used to help locate bodies in the rubble of the Murrah building in the Oklahoma City bombing. Once female flies find the body, they will immediately lay eggs and the life cycle of the fly begins as described in the following text.

Egg laying begins in naturally moist areas of the body such as the mouth, eyes, nose and around open wounds. Generally, egg laying takes place only in daylight so if a death occurs at night, egg laying will be delayed. One female blowfly can lay hundreds of eggs in a short period. Another common carrion fly, the flesh fly, deposits live larvae in the same areas as blowfly eggs. Figure 15.6 is a picture of a blowfly. Figure 15.7 is a picture of an adult flesh fly.

Fly larvae go through three developmental stages called "instars." During each instar, the maggot increases in size dramatically. By the time a maggot reaches the third instar, most of the flesh of the body has been consumed. Under moderate dry conditions the first instar of the blowfly forms from the egg about 8 h after the egg is oviposited. The second instar forms around 20 h later and the third about 20 h after that. After about 5 days, the larva stops feeding and rests. After a few more days the larva becomes a pupa. The adult fly emerges about 3 weeks after the eggs are laid. Figure 15.8 shows blowfly maggots and Figure 15.9 shows pupae of a number of species of flies.

Using the time intervals given earlier, an entomologist can begin to develop clues that will help determine the PMI. Again, it must be stressed that the time

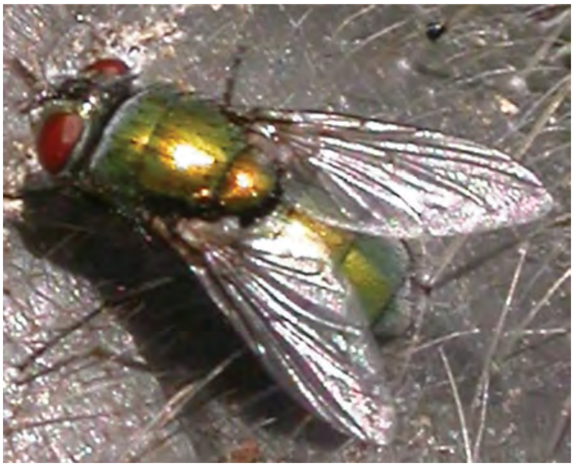


Figure 15.6 An adult blowfly. Courtesy of Dr. Richard Merritt.

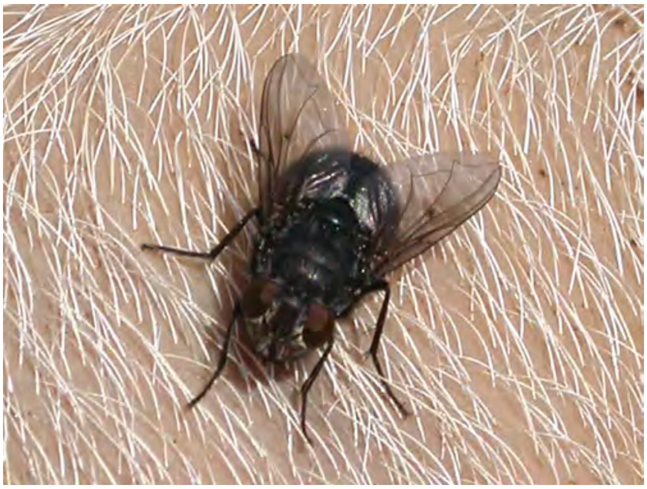


Figure 15.7 An adult flesh fly. Courtesy of Dr. Richard Merritt.

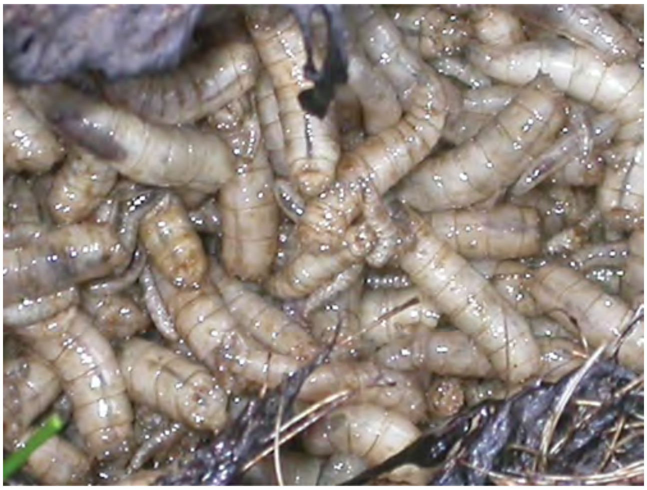


Figure 15.8 Blowfly maggots. Courtesy of Dr. Richard Merritt.

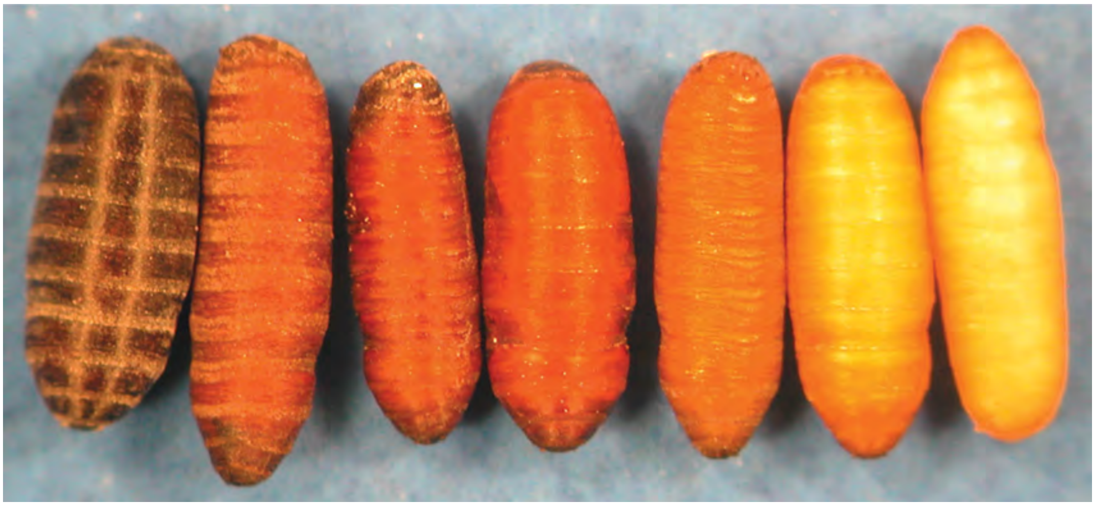


Figure 15.9 Pupae of several species of flies. Courtesy of Dr. Richard Merritt.

intervals of some of the stages given earlier depend somewhat upon the environmental conditions present. There are also other artifactual situations that can affect the entomologist's estimation of the PMI. One forensic entomologist (Richard Merritt, private communication) tells of a case where an entomologist encountered unusually large maggots in a body. His conclusion was that the maggots had been feeding at the body for some time, and his determination of the PMI was based on this long interval. However, other measurements of insect activity were at odds with the PMI determination based on the data from the maggots. Forensic toxicology of the remains of the body showed that the victim had ingested cocaine shortly before death. Some of this was transferred to the maggots as they fed on the body tissues. The stimulant effect of the cocaine caused the maggots to eat much more rapidly than normal, accelerating their growth greatly and leading to the incorrect data. This raises two interesting points: First, if possible, the entomologist must not rely on only one piece of life cycle or insect data in reaching conclusions about PMI. Corroborating evidence should always be obtained where possible. Second, if there is insufficient tissue remaining on a dead body for drug screening, maggots can be collected and tested for the presence of drugs. Another important point about making observations from insect activity is that the act of eating and digesting tissues by insects releases a great deal of energy. Temperatures around a body that is being consumed by insects can reach nearly 150°F at times. This, in turn, accelerates decomposition of the body and insect activity.

The life cycle of the fly described earlier is only one example of the use of arthropod life cycles to estimate PMI. Other types of insects invade bodies and lay eggs on a predictable schedule. Still others will attack and eat the eggs and larvae of other insects, also on a predictable schedule. This way, entomologists usually have several data points from which to draw conclusions concerning the PMI.

Decomposition of a Body after Death

When a person dies, decomposition of the tissues and organs begins to take place almost immediately although outward evidence may not be seen for hours depending upon the temperature and moisture conditions. Much of this decomposition is carried out by bacteria inside and outside the body but when they are available arthropods can speed up this process remarkably. Catts and Goff (1992) describe four roles that arthropods play in decomposition of bodies:

1. *Necrophages*: These are insects that actually feed on the tissue of the corpse. Many of them are flies. Entomologists study the life cycles of these insects on the body to help determine PMI.
2. *Omnivores*: Some arthropods feed not only on the body but on other insects that have been attracted to the corpse. Omnivores include mainly wasps and beetles. It is interesting to note that if omnivores are present in large quantities, they may deplete the population of necrophages thus retarding decomposition.
3. *Predators and Parasites*: Some categories of arthropods including some flies and mites, act as parasites on other insects and some may start out as necrophages and then end up becoming predators of other insects at a later stage.

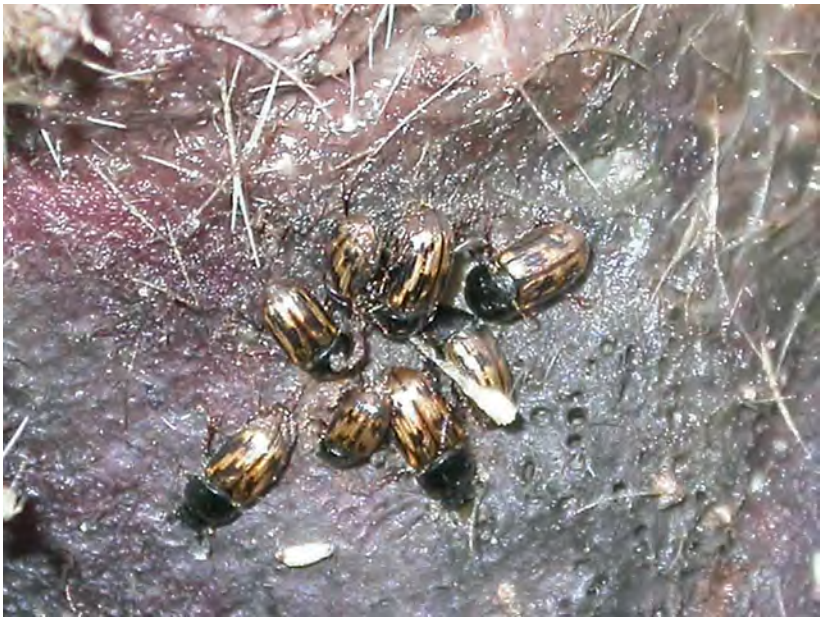


Figure 15.10 Carrion beetles. Courtesy of Dr. Richard Merritt.

4. *Incidentals*: These are arthropods including some spiders, centipedes, mites and others that use the corpse as part of their normal habitat. They move into the corpse and make it their home, at least for a time.

Figure 15.10 shows a picture of carrion beetles.

Stages of Decomposition

There is great variability in the time it takes for a body to decompose. The major determinate is temperature. Warm temperatures will accelerate the decomposition process and cold weather will depress it. A level of decomposition that might take 18–24 h in cool weather can take only a few hours in tropical weather. Another factor is the amount of protection that the body has. Clothing slows down decomposition as does burial or immersion in water. A forensic entomologist who uses the life cycles of various arthropods to help determine the postmortem interval must take these variables into consideration.

Even with this great variability, there are common patterns to the decomposition process. There are several distinct stages to decomposition, and they will occur in the same order each time. The environment of the body will determine the duration of each stage and the local arthropod population will also have some effect. Forensic entomologists generally identify five stages of decomposition. Figure 15.11 shows examples of each stage, using a stillborn baby pig as a model. The first three comprise one phase where the arthropods feed on the body and their life cycle proceeds increasing the biomass greatly. Maggots are the major arthropods in this phase. Under moderate environmental conditions, this phase takes about 10 days. The three stages in this phase are listed as follows along

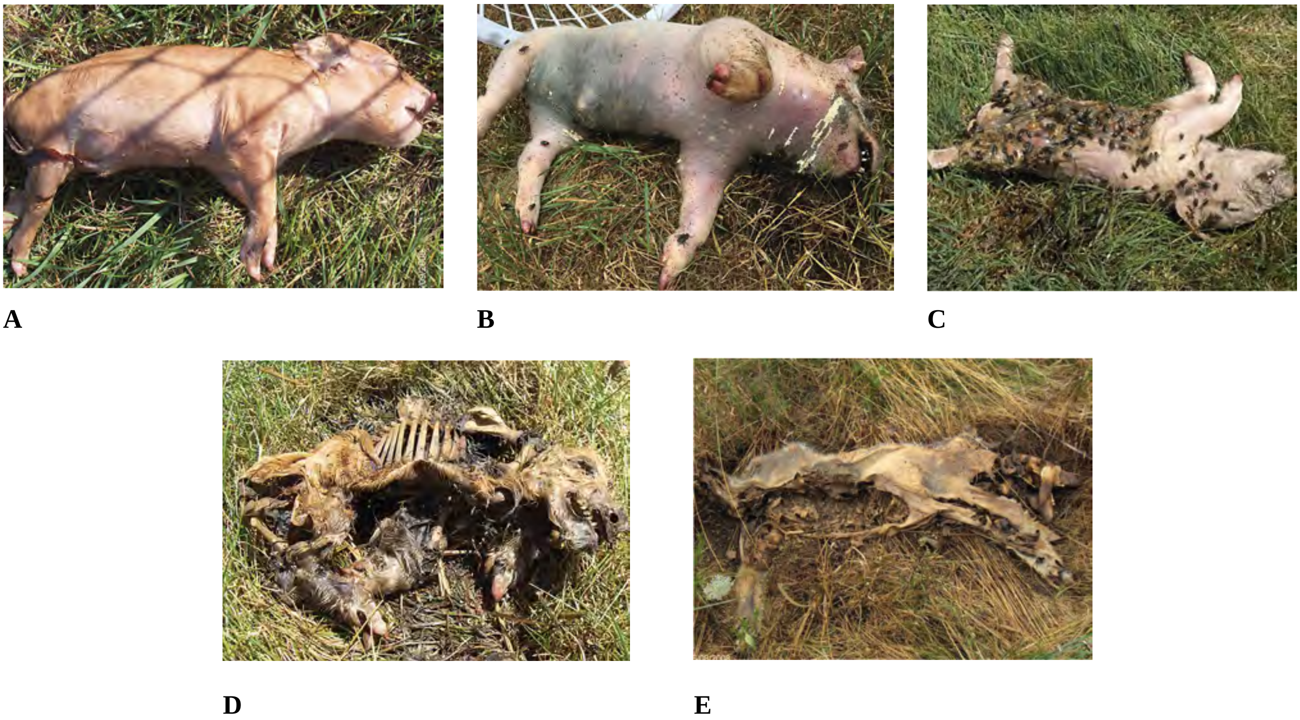


Figure 15.11 Modeling stages of decomposition using stillborn pigs. Photo A shows Fresh Stage, Photo B shows Bloated Stage, Photo C shows Active Decay Stage, Photo D shows Post-decay Stage and Photo E shows Dry Stage. Photos courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC.

with their average durations, some of the insects that are commonly found on the carcass and traits of decomposition during each stage:

- *Fresh* (1–2 days):
  - Adult blowflies, flesh flies, yellow jackets
  - No outward signs of decay, internally intestinal bacteria digesting soft tissue
- *Bloated* (2–6 days):
  - Blowflies and other flies, some beetles, yellow jackets
  - Body fills with bacterial gases and looks inflated, coloring may be marbled
- *Active Decay* (5–11 days):
  - Some flies and beetles, cockroaches
  - Eruption of skin releasing gases and fluids, increased insect activity due to more body openings

When this phase is complete, the maggots leave the body and the decomposition fluids have mostly seeped away. At this point, there has been a drastic decrease in biomass at the scene. The second phase of decomposition has two stages and takes on the order of 2 weeks or more. The stages are as follows:

- *Post-decay* (10–24 days):
  - Some beetles, fruit flies, gnats, some flies
  - Activity slows as less tissue present, skeletal bones exposed, area around body discolored

- *Dry stage* (24+ days):
    - Some beetles, ants and flies
    - Largely just skeletal remains with some cartilage and dried skin

Factors That Affect PMI

Within this chapter we have briefly mentioned some of the factors that can affect the determination of the PMI. This section organizes these factors, and they are discussed in a bit more detail.

Physical Factors

A body buried in a vault or casket will be much more resistant to attack by insects than one that is dumped into a hole, which is then filled with dirt. Even burying a body in soil will affect the rate of attack by arthropods. The temperature a few feet underground will generally be more constant than on the surface. It will be dark that inhibits egg laying by insects. It may be difficult for many insects including flies to reach the body. There is also generally less air if the body is tightly compacted by soil. Anaerobic bacteria are much more active in deep soil, and this may affect decomposition of the body. There is also generally more moisture in soil a few feet below ground. If a body is submerged in water, especially if it is trapped in a car or other container, decomposition due to insects is very different than on land. The temperature is usually more constant, there may be less light depending upon how deep the body is and the variety and types of arthropods available to feed on the body will be very different than on land. All of these factors make determination of the PMI more difficult for the forensic entomologist.

Chemical Factors

In Chapter 13, the role of embalming on the determination of the presence of drugs or poisons in a body was discussed when a body was exhumed. Embalming chemicals also affect insect attack on dead bodies. These agents are generally poisonous to most arthropods, so their activity will be greatly retarded by the presence of embalming fluids. As the body decomposes, the embalming agents may leak out or evaporate and some insect activity can then take place, but it is retarded. If a body is placed or buried on land where insecticides are used to control pests that attack crops, these poisons will also affect arthropods that feed on bodies. Again, the usual effect is to greatly retard insect activity and reproduction, thus making the normal entomological data suspect. It was also previously mentioned that drugs which are present in a body at death may be consumed by arthropods. The drugs will, in turn, affect these animals. Stimulants, such as cocaine will accelerate insect activity whereas depressants can retard activity. There has been little attention paid to the effects of hallucinogens such as LSD or marijuana on insect activity.

Climate

It was previously mentioned that high temperatures accelerate virtually all biological activity. Likewise, cold weather will have the opposite effect, so it is not surprising that temperatures will affect the rate of activity and reproduction of insects that have invaded a body. In addition, high winds may cover or uncover a body with debris and make it harder for flying insects to find and land on a body. Heavy rains can wash insects off of a body, and if the body becomes partially submerged, it can dramatically affect insect activity.

Animals

Arthropods are not the only animals that take an interest in corpses. Larger animals such as rodents, dogs, cats and scavengers will attack and feed on bodies. They may also carry off parts of a body such as arms and legs to another location where they may feed or bury them. If the activity of these larger animals is significant enough, there may be little left at the scene for insects to be much of a factor. Such situations make death scene investigation and PMI determination much more difficult than would otherwise be the case. Even if a person dies indoors and there are family pets trapped in the house with the victim, they will eventually attack the body, especially if hunger becomes a problem.

Entomological Investigation and Evidence Collection

Although some arthropods are collected at crime scenes by technicians, the majority of this type of investigation is being carried out by forensic entomologists who have the training and knowledge to properly collect evidence, make ecological observations and properly interpret the data.

At the Death Scene

The function of the forensic entomologist at the death scene is to catalogue and collect arthropod evidence from the body and surrounding area. Insects may be coming and going from the body at any time, so it is important to collect specimens around the body as well as on and under it. The entomologist must also make careful observations about the temperature and condition of the body at the time of recovery and must determine to the extent possible, what the ecological conditions have been since the corpse was discovered. One important contribution that arthropods can make to the determination of cause of death is that they may pinpoint the sight of trauma. Flies will deposit their eggs in openings in the body and especially those where blood is present such as a gunshot or knife wound. It should be noted, however, that insect activity on a body can also cause artifacts. For example, insects can enlarge or distort a knife or bullet wound. They can also cause what appear to be blood spatters but are actually transfer of blood by the insects or larvae to another surface.

Summary

Forensic palynology is a relatively new area of forensic investigation that uses the presence of pollen or spores on suspects, victims or evidence to assist in a criminal investigation. Because the botany of our world can vary due to climate, pollen producing plants, algae and fungi thrive in specific locations. Palynology can determine the travel history of a piece of evidence and the time of year it was deposited, as well as the geographic location. Recently, DNA analysis of pollen has been used to assist with identifying the species.

Forensic entomology is the part of entomology that involves how insects invade a body after death. Various types of arthropods such as flies, ants, beetles, wasps, yellow jackets, etc. will invade a body and sometimes lay their eggs or hatch their larvae. Different species of insects will invade at different intervals after death. This insect succession helps forensic entomologists determine the time since death. Entomologists must also understand the life cycles of various insects and recognize which form is present on a body as an aid to determining the PMI. The most common insects to reach a body after death are blowflies and bottle flies. They have definite life stages that occur at reliable intervals after a body dies although environmental conditions can greatly affect the timing of these stages.

A body will decay over time in fairly well-defined stages, and these stages are accompanied by arthropod activity of various types. There are five identifiable stages of decay. In addition to determining the PMI, forensic entomologists can help in determining where wounds occurred, if a body has been moved since death, the presence of drugs or poisons in the body and other types of information.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The major contribution of forensic entomology to death investigation is
    a. Determination of the cause of death
    b. Determination of the PMI
    c. Determination of the manner of death
    d. Determination of the presence of drugs in the victim
2. The first insects to reach a body in the outdoors are generally
    a. Spiders
    b. Carrion beetles
    c. Blowflies
    d. Centipedes
3. Forensic palynology can be used to
    a. determine the cause of death
    b. determine the presence of drugs or poisons in the body
    c. show exact location of a crime
    d. follow the trail of drugs from manufacture to seller
4. Insect evidence is often neglected by crime scene investigators because
    a. They are disturbing to many people
    b. The evidence is unreliable and entomologists can only estimate the PMI from insect evidence
    c. Insects only attack a body that has been deposited outdoors
    d. Entomology is useless if the body has been buried
    e. The PMI cannot be estimated in very cold weather

5. The proper order of the fly’s life cycle is
   a. Egg, maggot, pupa
   b. Egg, pupa, maggot
   c. Instars one, two, three, egg, pupa
   d. Egg, instar three, maggot, pupa
6. Pollen and spores can be transported by
   a. omnivore, herbivore and predator
   b. water, wind, animals
   c. wind and water only
   d. wind, rain and gravity
7. Which of the following is the correct order of decomposition stages of a body?
   a. Fresh, bloated, dry, active decay
   b. Bloated, dry, active decay, fresh
   c. Fresh, dry, active decay, bloated
   d. Fresh, bloated, active decay, dry
8. Which of the following is *not* a factor that affects decomposition of a body and insect activity?
   a. Cold
   b. Wind
   c. Rain
   d. Embalming fluid
   e. All the above are factors

True or False

9. The only application of forensic entomology is determination of the PMI.
10. Urban entomology involves the analysis of the presence of arthropods in homes and businesses.
11. Forensic anthropology can be used to link a suspect to a crime scene.
12. The life cycle of a fly will slow down in very cold weather.
13. The blowfly is usually the first insect that will discover a dead body.
14. Insect evidence is often treated as a nuisance by investigators and pathologists.
15. If temperatures are moderate, a forensic entomologist can determine a PMI to within 1 h of death.
16. Fly larvae go through four instars before becoming an adult.
17. Some arthropods such as spiders will actually move into a corpse for a time and make it their home.

Match Each Term with Its Definition

18. Instar	a. Fly larva
19. Omnivore insect	b. Chemical that retards insect activity
20. Insecticide	c. Eats other insects as well as flesh
21. Bloated stage	d. Developmental stage of a fly
22. Maggot	e. A stage of decomposition

Short Answer Questions

23. What contributions can forensic entomology make in the investigation of death?
24. How do forensic entomologists determine the postmortem interval? What time frames are involved?
25. How does insect behavior help pinpoint the locations of wounds on a body?

References

Byrd, J. H. and J. L. Castner (eds.). (2001). *Forensic Entomology: The Utility of Arthropods in Legal Investigations*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Catts, E. P. and M. L. Goff. (1992). Forensic entomology in criminal investigations. *Annual Review of Entomology* 37:253–272 (Annual Reviews, Palo Alto, CA).

Goff, M. L. (2001). *A Fly for the Prosecution: How Insect Evidence Helps Solve Crimes*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA.

On the Web

Forensic Palynology

General background on forensic palynology: https://books.google.com/books?hl=en&lr=&id=hj13MqJaf_0C&oi=fnd&pg=PA217&dq=forensic+pollen+analysis&ots=jB-p7zelKN&sig=8pPoEZLQm_nOJJGD6Cn8kIreRmY#v=onepage&q=forensic%20pollen%20analysis&f=false

Using Pollen to Track Drugs

https://qz.com/1635897/the-us-is-using-pollen-to-track-illegal-drugs-like-fentanyl/

https://mag.wcoomd.org/magazine/wco-news-80/the-power-of-pollen-how-cbp-is-at-the-forefront-of-using-pollen-as-a-new-forensic-tool/

Forensic Entomology

Excellent introductory site for forensic entomology: http://www.forensicentomology.com/.

Homepage of the American Board of Forensic Entomology: https://forensicentomologist.org/

Stages of decomposition of a pig: https://australianmuseum.net.au/learn/science/stages-of-decomposition/

Comprehensive site on forensic decomposition: https://australianmuseum.net.au/about/history/exhibitions/death-the-last-taboo/decomposition-forensic-evidence/

Video of pig decomposition: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eUA0l1DWz9E&has_verified=1

Case Studies

Case Study: Forensic Palynology

A woman walking her dog on Deer Island in Boston Harbor, Massachusetts on June 25, 2015 made a grim discovery. Her dog alerted on trash bag found along the beach. Inside the bag was the badly decomposed body of a small toddler, dressed in black and white polka dot leggings and wrapped in a zebra print blanket. The girl was estimated to be less than 5 years old.

An autopsy was performed on the unidentified girl, who was now dubbed, "Baby Jane Doe". The medical examiner concluded she was approximately 2 years old at the time of her death. It appeared that the child may have been murdered, but the cause of death was not certain. Dr. Henry Nields, the chief medical examiner, stated that the cause of death could be "asphyxial death, which means losing oxygen through something like strangulation, or 'commotio cordis,' a disruption of heart rhythm through a blow that can lead to a heart attack". He found bruising on her body. A forensic artist did a portrait of what he thought the girl might have looked like. It was distributed to the press and put on posters throughout the area.

The National Center for Missing and Exploited Children (NCMEC) database turned up no missing young girls in the area. For months the child remained Baby Doe. Boston police contacted the NCMEC and asked if pollen analysis could be done on the blanket and leggings found on Baby Doe's body. Forensic palynologist, Dr. Andrew Laurence, who worked as head palynologist of the U.S. Customs and Border Protection, was asked to examine the articles for pollen residue. He found tree pollen from pine, birch, oak and spruce, all which were common in the northeastern United States. However, he did find two more unusual types of cedar pollen. One of the grains could only be found locally in the Arbor Arboretum of Harvard University in Boston. This finding helped the Center and the Boston police to focus their search in the greater Boston area only.

Finally, in September, the police got a tip from a neighbor about a little girl whom they had not seen for months. Normally they could hear the girl talking and crying through their apartment walls, but recently there had been no evidence of the toddler at the home. Boston police checked the home and discovered the girl was not there. They questioned and ultimately arrested the mother, Rachelle Bond, and her live-in boyfriend, Michael McCarthy, for the murder and abandonment of the girl, whose real name was Bella Bond.

Rachelle Bond stated that her boyfriend had murdered Bella by punching her in the abdomen. Michael McCarthy was charged with murder. Rachael was offered a plea deal to testify against Michael in court. She was charged with accessory after the fact of murder. The trial ended with Michael McCarthy being found guilty of second-degree murder and he was sentenced to 15 years in prison. Rachelle Bond pleaded guilty to accessory and larceny (for cashing state benefit checks for Bella). For her testimony she was credited with time served and was sentenced to two years of probation.

For more information: https://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-3240091/Official-Girl-dead-Boston-Harbor-shore-identified.html

Case Study: Forensic Entomology

It was September 30, 2013, Julie Niemeyer's birthday. Her parents, Clifford and Joyce Snow, residents of Lowell, Indiana, always called on her birthday. Niemeyer had married and moved to Missouri, but kept in regular contact with her parents, calling them at least once a month and visiting them in Indiana a few times each year. This year she did not get a birthday call from Clifford and Joyce. The last time she had talked to the Snows was mid-September. On October 1st she called her parents' home and spoke to her younger brother Thomas ("TJ") Snow, age 38, who was living at the home with his parents. Snow told his sister that their parents were out walking the dogs. She asked him to tell them to call her when they returned from their walk. They never did.

Clifford Snow, age 68, was a retired high school teacher, and he and his wife Joyce, age 66, were highly thought of in their community. On the same day that TJ Snow had told his sister his parents were walking the dogs, he told a friend of the Snow's that Clifford and Joyce were in Germany for a couple of weeks on a trip. He also told them that the septic had backed up in the basement and he was working on fixing it, so it would be best to stay away from the house until he finished the repairs and cleaning. The friend noticed that TJ was driving his father's truck which was unusual. Another friend got a different story as to the Snow's whereabouts. TJ told them that his father had died of a heart attack and Joyce, his mother, was in Missouri to be with his sister Julie. Another acquaintance was told that his father had died in his sleep.

On October 5th, Snow got into a high-speed chase with local police in his father's truck. He got away after he abandoned the truck in a cornfield. Authorities found a cordless phone, shoes, pillowcase and a drill in the back of the truck.

A cousin of Julie Niemeyer contacted her on October 18, with distress for Clifford as she had heard that he had died. She had tried to contact Joyce but her efforts were fruitless. Niemeyer again called her parents and got no response from them or her brother, so she contacted the Sheriff's Office and requested a welfare check on her parents.

When officers got to the residence they noted that it seemed unkept on the outside as if the owners had not been there for a while. The pole barn on the property had lights and a radio on. No one answered the door at the residence or the pole barn. Police entered the residence and immediately noticed the smell of decomposition and animal feces. The dogs were put into their kennels so that a search of the home could be completed. The family room walls were halfway painted. No one was downstairs. In the upstairs bathroom they found a female victim in advanced decomposition. She was wrapped in carpet and the shower curtain had been pulled down and draped over the body. Cat litter had been sprinkled over the carpet and shower curtain. Bloodstains were on the floor. They found Clifford in the garage, also partially decomposed. He was rolled up in carpet and a tarp. The pole barn was searched and inside they found pants and bloody disposable gloves, along with drug paraphernalia. TJ Snow was nowhere on the property. Police began to search for him.

The next day, October 19, Snow was located in Minnesota, driving his father's other vehicle, a Chevrolet HHR. TJ again ran from police in another high-speed chase, but this time he did not get away. When questioned, he said he was “Jack the Ripper” and his dad had given him permission to borrow the car for a while. Inside the vehicle were methamphetamine pipes, his parents’ credit cards, carbon copies of checks, a hotel key, Clifford’s driver license and social security card, and some pawn shop receipts. TJ Snow had a history of drug problems and at the time of his arrest he was spending lots of money on meth and crack cocaine. He was arrested and charged with the murder of his parents.

At the trial, Julie Niemeyer said she had gone into the home after police released it and she immediately noted that all of her parent’s electronic equipment was gone as well as their stash of cash and foreign currency. A blood spatter expert testified that he found spatter consistent with blunt force trauma on the family room walls and surroundings. He surmised that both parents were sitting in their family room chairs when they were attacked and then fell to the floor. Although an attempt was made to cover up the stains with paint, the evidence of blood spatter could still be detected. Home surveillance video recorded Snow entering the home on September 30 carrying cans of paint.

Autopsy revealed that Clifford Snow had 26 blows to the head with a blunt object and his neck had ligature marks suggesting strangulation with a cable wire. There were six small holes, the size of drill holes, in his head. Joyce Snow suffered 16 blows to the head and strangulation, with the cord still around her neck. She had two round drill holes in her head.

One of the prosecution’s key experts was Dr. Neal Haskell, forensic entomologist. Dr. Haskell analyzed the insect specimens on both bodies in order to determine the approximate time of death. Based on the types of insects, the oldest specimens and the temperature of the home, Haskell determined that the date of colonization of the insects on Clifford and Joyce Snow was between September 18 and September 22. The end of September, beginning of October was when TJ Snow began writing checks to himself using his parent’s checkbook. The pawn receipts for electronic equipment found in his possession were dated, September 27 and October 15. Snow’s fingerprint was found on one of the receipts. The timelines were falling into place, thanks to the use of forensic entomology.

Although a murder weapon was never recovered, on November 6, 2017, a jury convicted Thomas J. Snow of the brutal murder of his parents, Clifford and Joyce Snow. He was sentenced to 130 years in prison. He appealed this decision in 2019, but the courts upheld the jury’s conviction.

For more information: https://www.nwitimes.com/news/local/crime-and-courts/testimony-on-insects-removed-from-crime-scene-provides-prosecutions-timeline-in-snow-trial/article_b5741479-daf1-546f-8a5b-8fff4583e339.html

16

Serology

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define and describe the components of blood
2. To be able to describe preliminary tests for blood
3. To be able to describe confirmatory tests for blood
4. To be able to define semen and describe its components
5. To be able to describe the preliminary and confirmatory tests for semen
6. To be able to describe the common tests for vaginal secretions
7. To be able to describe the common tests for saliva
8. To be able to describe the role of bloodstain pattern analysis in crime scene reconstruction
9. To be able to describe the physical properties of blood and how they contribute to the various types of bloodstains
10. To be able to describe the various types of bloodstains

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Blood*
- *Analysis of Blood*
  - *Preliminary Considerations*
  - *Locating Blood on Objects*
    - *Luminol*
    - *Fluorescein*
- *Confirmatory Tests for Blood*
- *Species Determination*
  - *Genetic Markers in Blood*
    - *Red Blood Cell Antigens*
    - *Blood Enzyme Markers*
- *Other Biological Fluids and Stains*
  - *Seminal Fluid*
    - *Preliminary Tests for Semen*
    - *Confirmatory Tests for Semen*
      - *Identification of Sperm*
      - *Prostate-Specific Antigen*
      - *Vaginal Secretions*
      - *Saliva*
- *Bloodstain Pattern Analysis*
  - *Physical Properties of Blood*
  - *Geometry of Bloodstains*
  - *Bloodstain Patterns*
- *Summary*
- *Trigonometry Calculation for Locating a Bloodstain*
- *Try It Yourself: The Genetics of Blood Typing*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*

  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
  - *More Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *Useful Websites*
- *Agglutination & Blood Typing*
- *Blood Testing*
- *BPA*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Agglutination: The coming together or clumping of antigen bearing red blood cells and the antibodies specific to that antigen.

Altered bloodstains: Shed blood that has been changed physically or physiologically.

Antibody: Antibodies are found in the blood serum and are specific to a blood type. They serve as protection from noncompatible blood types.

Antigen: Antigens in blood are inherited substances on the erythrocyte (red blood cell) that are responsible for eliciting a blood group reaction to specific antibodies.

Blood: A solution of various materials important for sustaining life.

Bloodstain pattern analysis (BPA): An area of forensic science that interprets the patterns seen in deposited blood and relates them to the actions that could have caused the pattern.

Confirmatory test: A test that used to identify the *specific* fluid or material present.

Erythrocytes: A component of the solid part of the blood responsible for carrying oxygen and removing carbon dioxide from the cells, commonly called red blood cells.

Forensic serology: The examination and identification of body fluids as they relate to a crime scene.

Leucocytes: A component of the solid part of the blood responsible for fighting infection, commonly called white blood cells.

Passive bloodstains: Blood that is shed and travels under the influence of gravity only.

Plasma: The liquid portion of the blood, which has, in suspension, blood cells and platelets along with water, glucose, proteins and other chemical compounds.

Spatter bloodstains: Blood that moves due to a force in addition to gravity which exhibits directionality and specific distribution patterns.

Screening (presumptive) test: A test that establishes the *possibility* that a specific type of fluid or substance is present in the sample.

Serology: The examination and identification of body fluids.

Thromobocytes: A component of the solid part of the blood that assists in the clotting process. They are commonly called platelets.

Viscous: A term used to describe a liquid that has a resistance to flow.

Acronyms

BPA	Bloodstain pattern analysis
CSC	Criminal sexual conduct
DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid
PIC	Picroindigocarmine (dye)
PSA	Prostate-specific antigen
SAP	Seminal acid phosphatase

Introduction

One of the first blood spatter cases in the United States took place in Utah. The case involved the admissibility of blood spatter evidence. A man was seen entering the home of his girlfriend and then, a few minutes later, exited carrying the girl in his arms. He put her in the back seat of his car and drove off. A neighbor witnessed this and called the police, who located his car and stopped him. He claimed that he had found the girl lying on the floor and picked her up to take her to the hospital. The police were suspicious and arrested him. The girl died as the result of stab wounds. As part of the investigation, the accused's blood-stained clothes were sent to the crime laboratory for analysis. The serologist examined his shirt and pants and determined that the blood stains were the result of blood spurting out under pressure from a source in front of him which then landed on his clothing. At his trial for murder, the defendant sought to exclude the blood spatter evidence on the grounds that its underlying basis had not been proven. The court rejected the argument and admitted the blood spatter evidence. The defendant was convicted. He appealed to the Utah Supreme Court, which upheld the admissibility of the evidence.

In recent times, DNA testing has received a great deal of attention. The pulse of this attention has been quickened by media publicity. The public has learned of DNA's ability to identify someone from traces of biological material left at crime scenes and of cases where wrongly imprisoned people have been set free by postconviction DNA typing. Many people, including some law enforcement personnel, believe that the only test necessary for blood analysis is DNA typing. The public is unaware of how blood was analyzed in a crime lab before DNA typing and what tests are still necessary to fully characterize blood and other body fluids. Many of these tests are still used in modern crime labs. These older techniques are still valuable in cases where DNA typing cannot be done or is of limited use for one reason or another. In those cases where DNA typing has caused the reversal of a conviction, it means that pre-DNA serological testing was done at the time of the crime. In most cases, this testing was done properly and proper interpretations were made concerning the likelihood that the evidence came from the suspect or victim. The problem is that the serological evidence is not as powerful as DNA evidence and cannot *individualize* blood to a particular person. If a case is reopened because of DNA typing, testimony may be required concerning the serological analysis that was done before the original trial. Thus, a good working knowledge of forensic serology can be very important to a forensic biologist.

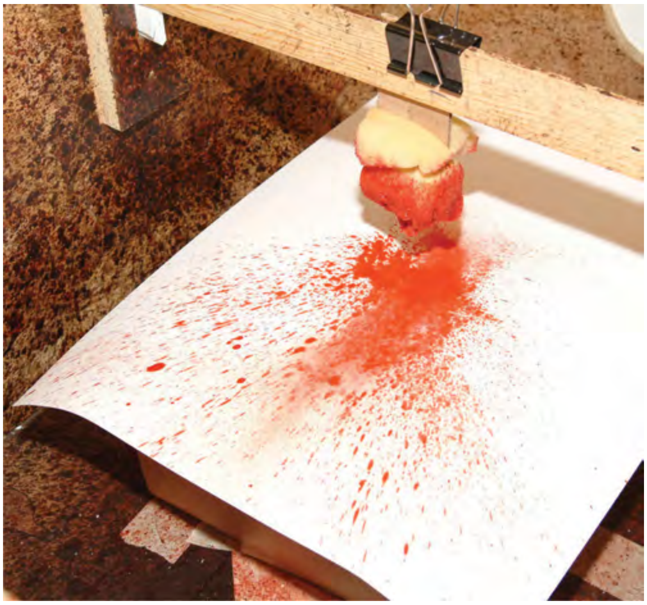


Figure 16.1 Bloodstains produced by a bullet traveling through a blood-soaked sponge. Photo courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

This chapter has three parts: the analysis of blood, the identification of other biological fluids and stains and the analysis of bloodstain patterns. All of these areas of inquiry make up the science of *forensic serology*. Serology is defined as the examination of body fluids. These include blood, saliva, seminal fluid, vaginal secretions, urine, feces and even tissues and organs. The majority of serological evidence consists of blood and the body fluids that are generated by sexual assault cases: semen, saliva and vaginal secretions. Bloodstain pattern analysis is an emerging forensic science that has become quite popular in the past 30 years or so. Figure 16.1 shows an example of an impact pattern bloodstain due to gunshot.

Blood

Before discussing the analysis of blood, it is important to understand the basics of blood. Blood is a solution of various materials in water. It is also a suspension whereby insoluble materials are carried through the body by the water. The liquid portion of blood is called *plasma*. It comprises about 55% of the total volume of blood. The substances dissolved in the plasma include proteins, carbohydrates, fats, salts, minerals and antibodies. In addition, plasma contains materials that are responsible for blood clotting.

The suspended materials in blood make up the other 45% and include red blood cells, white blood cells and platelets. Red blood cells (*erythrocytes*) are formed in bone marrow and are primarily responsible for transporting oxygen to cells and carrying away carbon dioxide as waste. They have no nucleus, so therefore they do not possess nuclear DNA. White blood cells (*leukocytes*) are normally formed in the lymph nodes and are primarily involved in the body's immune system. Leukocytes do have a nucleus and can therefore contain nuclear DNA. Platelets (*thrombocytes*) are a major part of the blood clotting process. Figure 16.2 is an electron micrograph of these three blood components.

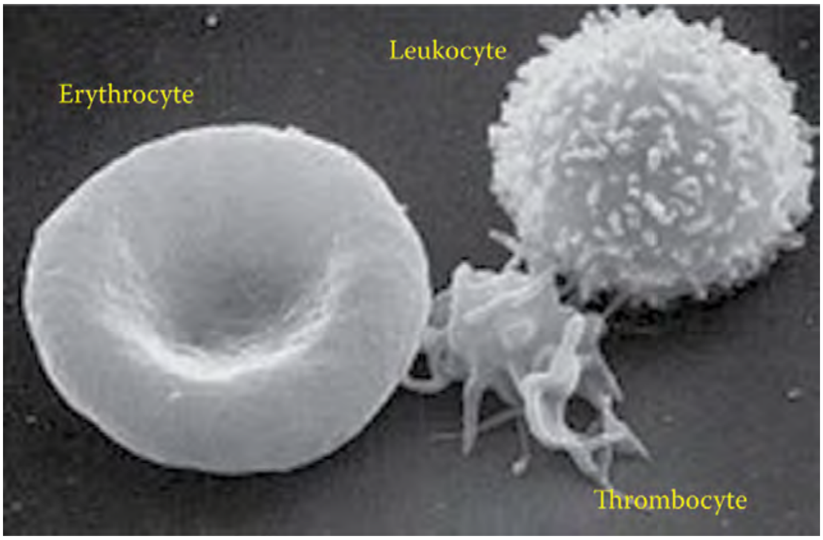


Figure 16.2 These are single examples of the solid parts of the blood as seen under an electron microscope. The red blood cell (erythrocyte) is on the left, the white blood cell (leukocyte) is on the right and the platelet (thrombocyte) is in the middle. As a group, these solid materials constitute 45% of human blood. Produced by Electron Microscopy Facility at the National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland.

Analysis of Blood

The purpose of analyzing blood at a crime scene is to determine its source. The blood may be on the floor, wall or an object at the scene. It may be on clothing worn by the victim or the suspect of the crime. It may be wet or dry. Blood may be partially degraded or putrefied. Depending upon the conditions of the scene, there may be a very small amount of blood present, limiting the types of analysis that can be done or, in some cases, may not permit any analysis. Blood is a perishable biological material and failure to properly collect and preserve it may result in spoilage, inability to analyze it or inadmissibility of the analytical results in court.

Preliminary Considerations

Most people think that a bloodstain is easy to spot. Nothing else could look like wet or dried blood. Many believe that visual identification should be enough. The fact is, however, that scientific and legal requirements make a positive identification of the blood through scientific means a necessity. Good laboratory practice requires that properly validated protocols be employed for the positive identification of blood. Varying the protocol is permissible as long as there are sound reasons for doing so. The protocols for the chemical analysis of blood follow the same protocols as any other types of evidence and have at least the following elements:

1. Careful preliminary physical examination of the item to spot potential evidence
2. Careful recording of the evidence (photos and videotaping) and its exact location

3. Preliminary or *screening tests* that permit a *presumption* of the presence of certain types of evidence
4. Sensitive and specific *confirmatory tests* of the chemical identity of the evidence

In the case of serological evidence, additional tests are done after there has been confirmation that the evidence is or contains blood or another body fluid. These include the determination of the species of the blood and analysis of the markers in the blood that serve to limit the number of people from whom the blood could have arisen. Today that test is usually DNA typing.

Locating Blood on Objects

The fact that a stain is dark red or blackish brown may mean that it is blood. Sometimes, these stains are very small or are on dark surfaces that mask their presence. In some cases, blood has been washed off the surface. There are some tests that are used to help locate bloodstains. These also serve as preliminary tests for blood. Two major testing solutions used for this purpose are *luminol* and *fluorescein*. Both of these tests use luminescence to locate faint or small bloodstains on objects at a crime scene.

Luminol

Luminol is a very sensitive reagent that undergoes oxidation by hydrogen peroxide in alkaline solution in the presence of the *heme* part of *hemoglobin*, a molecule in red blood cells that carries oxygen to and carbon dioxide from cells. The structure of heme is shown in Figure 16.3.

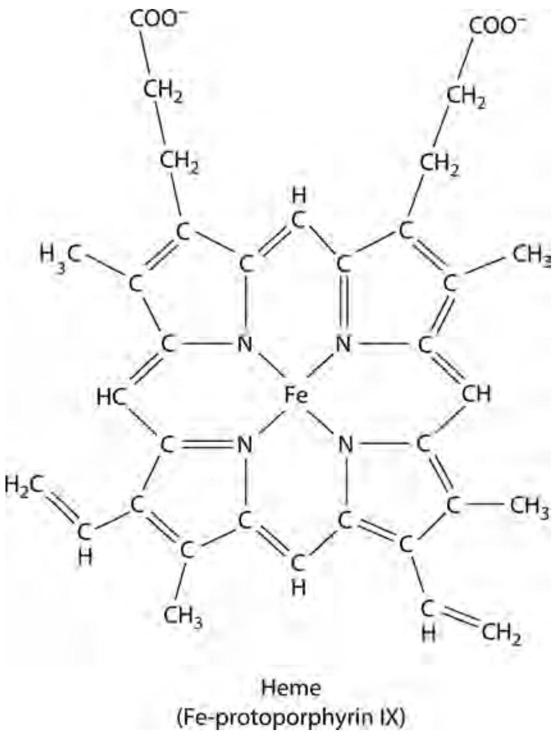


Figure 16.3 The structure of heme.

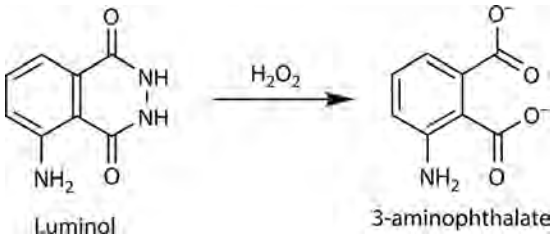


Figure 16.4 The luminol reaction.

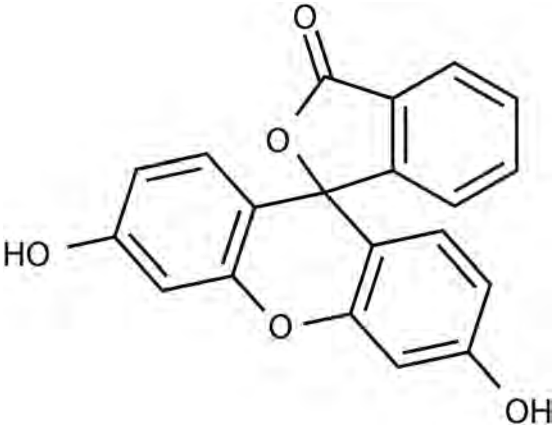


Figure 16.5 The structure of fluorescein.

The reaction of luminol with hydrogen peroxide is shown in Figure 16.4. It is catalyzed by heme but heme does not take part in the reaction. The product of the reaction, 3-aminophthalate, undergoes *chemiluminescence*. When the product is formed, it emits light on its own. No additional light is needed. At a crime scene, the area is darkened and the luminol reagent is applied. The appearance of a bright blue to yellow-green color is indicative of the possible presence of blood. The color should appear immediately and last for at least 30 seconds before another application of reagent is needed.

Some research has been done to answer the question of whether luminol can contaminate a blood sample and render it unusable for further analysis. For the most part, luminol does not affect blood, at least as far as DNA testing goes. In any case, luminol, like other reagents, should only be used when necessary to avoid possible contamination of the blood sample.

Fluorescein

Fluorescein, like luminol, emits light when exposed to an oxidant and heme. Unlike luminol, however, fluorescein undergoes fluorescence rather than chemiluminescence. It is applied to a suspected bloodstain along with hydrogen peroxide. A strong, short wave light is then used to induce fluorescence. The structure of fluorescein is shown in Figure 16.5.

Commercial fluorescein preparations contain a thickening agent that allows it to be used on vertical surfaces. Luminol solutions do not. Research has shown that fluorescein does not interfere with DNA typing. The luminous effect of both reagents is shown in Figure 16.6.

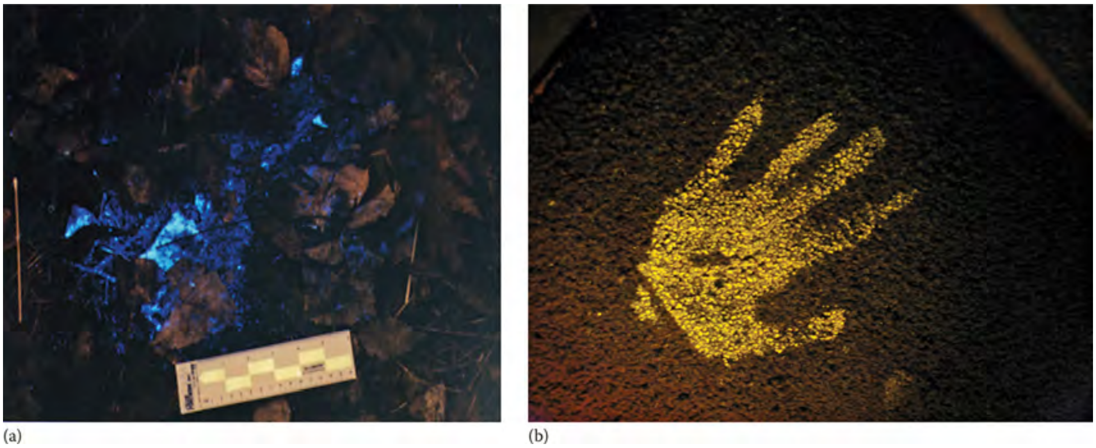

(a) (b)

Figure 16.6 Chemical enhancement of blood to visualize the bloodstain: (a) shows the addition of luminal to show the presence of blood and (b) shows the addition of fluorescein showing a blood-stained handprint.

Confirmatory Tests for Blood

Luminol and fluorescein are very useful for locating blood on large surfaces but they are not specific for blood. Other substances including certain vegetable extracts can give false positive tests for blood. At times it may be useful or necessary to confirm the presence for blood. The two most popular chemical tests for the confirmation of blood are the *Teichmann* and *Takayama* tests. Both are *microcrystal* tests. A crystallizing reagent is added to suspected blood. The presence of characteristic shaped crystals formed by the reaction of the reagent and heme is confirmatory for blood. Figure 16.7 shows the results of the two microcrystal tests—a photomicrograph of Teichmann crystals and a photomicrograph of Takayama crystals.

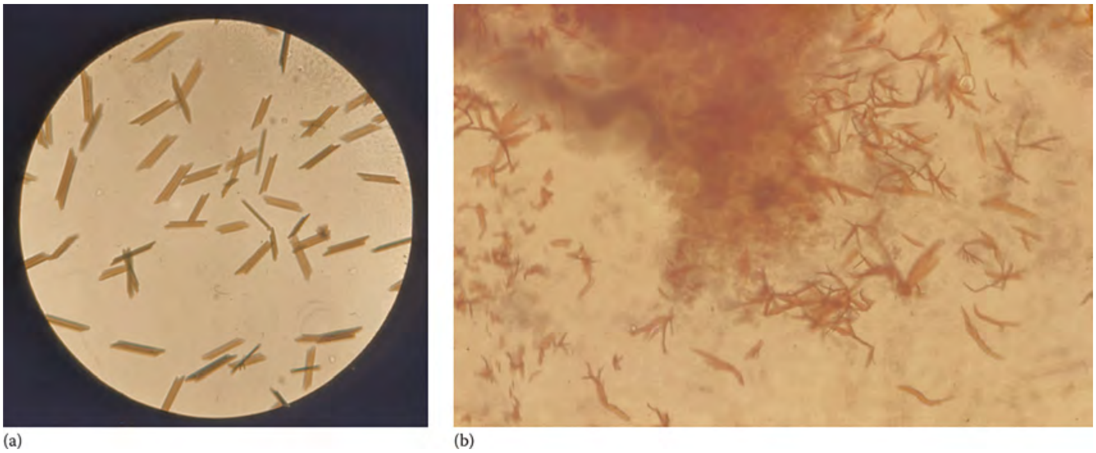

(a) (b)

Figure 16.7 (a) shows Teichmann crystals obtained from the reaction with blood, while (b) shows Takayama crystals obtained from the reaction with blood. Reprinted courtesy of Nordby, J.J. and James, S.H., *Forensic Science, An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2003.

Species Determination

After determining that a stain is blood, the next step is to determine if it is human or not, what type of animal that it comes from. Most of the common tests that determine the species of origin of blood are of the *immunoprecipitation* type. A test animal, usually a rabbit, is injected with human blood serum that contains proteins called *antigens*, which define the blood as being human. The rabbit's immune system will determine that this is foreign (not rabbit) material and will produce a substance known as an *antibody*. The function of an antibody is to attack the foreign materials so they cannot harm the host. The rabbit blood is now an *antiserum* for human antigens and can be used to test for their presence. Some of the rabbit antiserum is added to a suspected sample of human blood, either in a test tube (*precipitin ring test*) in solution or in a gel (*Ouchterlony double diffusion test*). If the blood is human, then there will be a reaction between the antihuman antibodies in the rabbit antiserum and the human antigens in the blood. The reaction will be seen as a *precipitate*. In the precipitin ring test, a ring is seen where the antiserum and blood meet (see Figure 16.8).

In the Ouchterlony test, the antigens and antibodies diffuse through the gel toward each other. They form a precipitate where they meet. This is shown via a diagram in Figure 16.9a. If the bloodstain is not human, no precipitation will take place. In the Figure 16.9a, there is precipitate formation in front of stains 2, 3 and 5, but not in front of stains 1 and 4. Therefore, it can be deduced that the human blood is only in samples 2, 3 and 5.

Figure 16.9b shows an actual Ouchterlony precipitate test, with positive test results shown in 3 of the four samples. The only negative result is the sample in the lower-left-hand portion on the plate in the photo.

In the field there are portable tests for blood that investigators can perform. The presumptive or screening test to determine if the reddish brown substance found at the scene is blood is called the Kastle–Meyer test. This test can be packaged for field use or done in the lab. The major compounds used in the test are phenolphthalein, a color indicator, and hydrogen peroxide, which reacts by combining with the *heme* in hemoglobin. If blood is present in the sample, the reaction produces a vivid fuchsia or pink color. This, however, only indicates that the stain contains hemoglobin, and hemoglobin is present in both human and animal blood (see the cotton swab on the left in Figure 16.10, showing a positive presumptive test for blood).

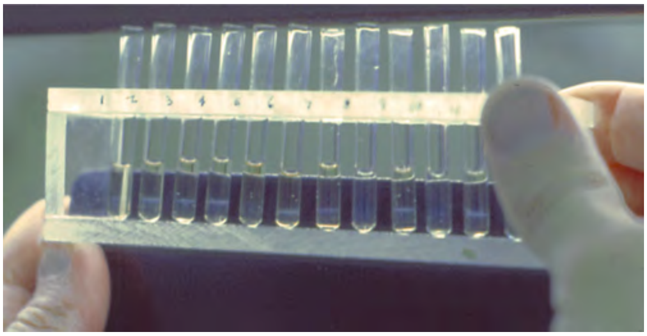


Figure 16.8 The precipitin ring reaction. Note the whitish ring in many of the culture tubes indicating a positive reaction. Reprinted courtesy of Nordby, J.J. and James, S.H., *Forensic Science, An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2003.

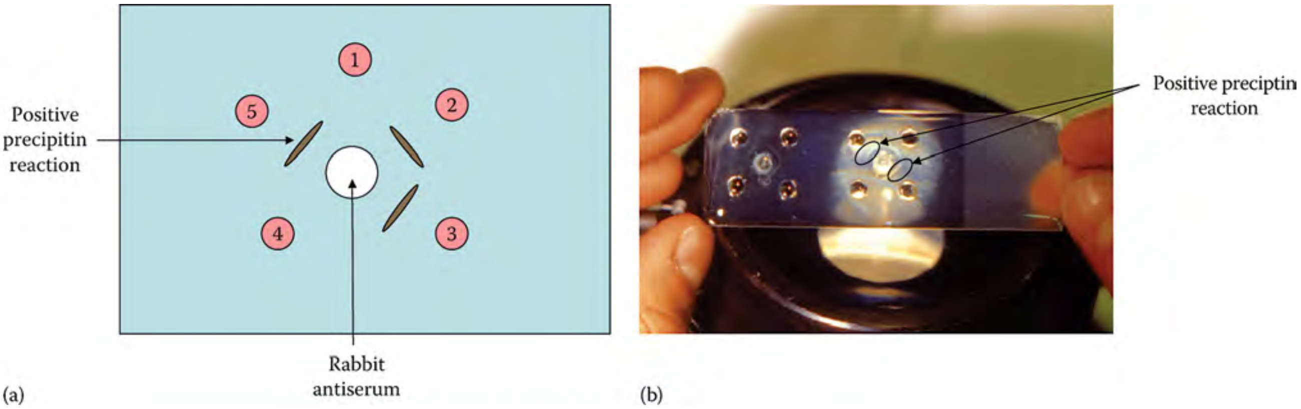
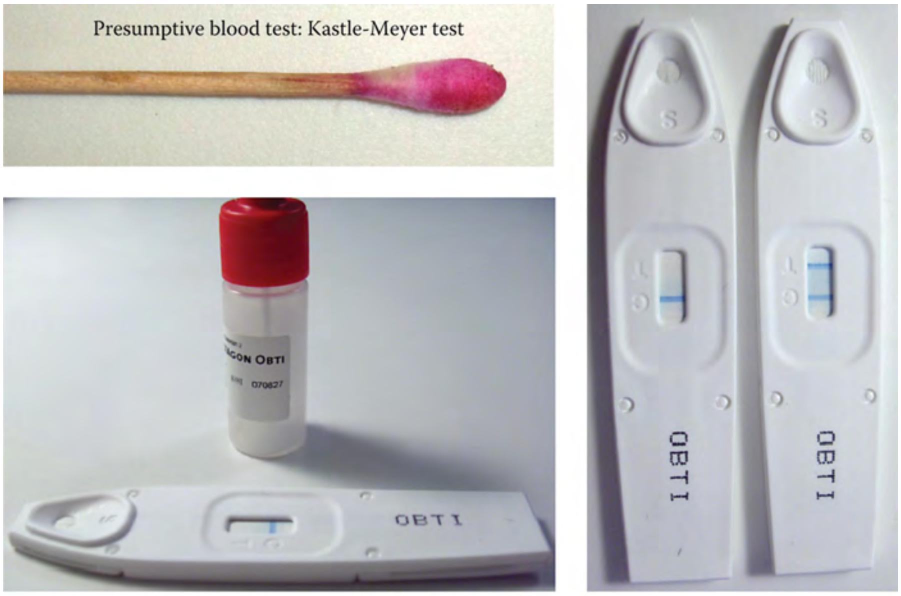


Figure 16.9 (a) shows how the Ouchterlony test works and (b) is an actual Ouchterlony test. Note the whitish streaks in all but the lower left corner around the center well. Reprinted courtesy of Nordby, J.J. and James, S.H., *Forensic Science, An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2003.



Confirmatory blood test: Hexagon OBTI test

Figure 16.10 Presumptive and confirmatory blood tests that can be done in the field. Top photo is a positive result for blood with the Kastle–Meyer test. The other photos show the Hexagon OBTI test. A positive result for human blood is the strip with two blue lines: the top line is positive for human, and the bottom is the positive control for the test. The left strip is a negative result, and the right is positive. Photo courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

The confirmatory test for human blood done in the field is the called the Hexagon OBTI test. This testing device looks similar to that used in a home pregnancy test and works in a similar manner, with blue lines as indicators of positive results. In the absorbent strip are blue particles and monoclonal antihuman Hb antibodies. When the sample blood mixed with the OBTI reagent (in the bottle) and dropped into the well on the end, the solution migrates up the strip to the position that contains the antihuman antibodies and forms a thin blue line, indicating a positive result for human blood. The second blue line is a control and must register as a blue line in every test or the strip is deemed defective and the test invalid. Figure 16.10 shows the Hexagon OBTI kit components and a positive human test result (blue line at "T") alongside a negative for human blood test (notice the "C" or control is positive, indicating a valid test).

Genetic Markers in Blood

Red Blood Cell Antigens

Not all human blood is the same. Red blood cells contain various genetically inherited antigens that comprise a number of blood groups. There are many different types of blood groups, but only a few have been used to characterize blood forensically. The antigens in a blood group are all formed at a single locus in a single gene and are formed independently of other genes. The most familiar of the blood groups is the *ABO group*. There are four subgroups or types of blood in the ABO system: A, B, AB and O. Figure 16.11 is a model of the four blood types showing the antigens on the red blood cells and the antibodies in the serum for each type.

Each is characterized by the presence of certain antigens on the surface of the red blood cells and by the presence of certain antibodies in the serum. Table 16.1 shows the properties of each of the subgroups of the ABO group and information on donating and receiving blood according to blood type.

When antibodies and antigens of the same type (e.g., anti-A and A) come together, *agglutination* takes place. This is a process where the antigens and antibodies attach together. The antigens are on the red blood cell surfaces and the antibodies come from a foreign serum or other source. To the naked eye or under a microscope, it appears as if the red blood cells have become stuck together. This is shown in the slide in Figure 16.12.

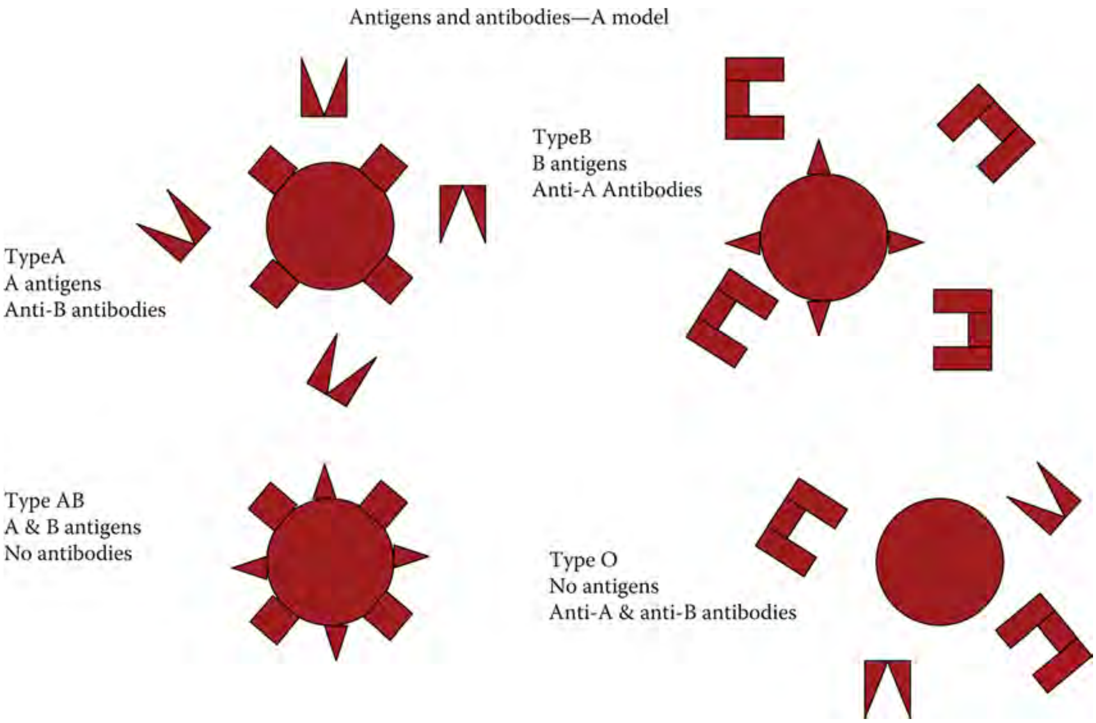


Figure 16.11 A model of the four ABO blood types showing the erythrocytes, antigens and antibodies. Courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

TABLE 16.1
Properties of Blood Types of the ABO Group

Type	Antigens	Antibody	Can Give Blood To	Can Receive Blood From	Population Percentage
A	A	Anti-B	A, AB	O, A	42
B	B	Anti-A	B, AB	O, B	12
AB	A, B	None	AB	A, B, AB, O	3
O	None	Anti-A and Anti B	A, B, AB, O	O	43

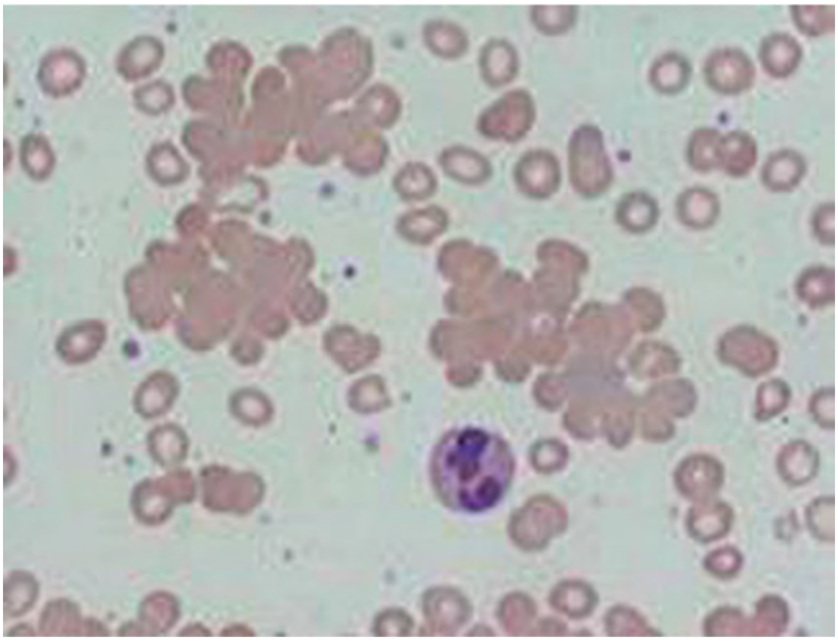


Figure 16.12 Agglutination of red blood cells.

Note from Table 16.1 that a person's blood does not contain antibodies that are the same type as the antigens on the red blood cells. Before blood systems and agglutination were discovered, many blood transfusions caused injury and death because the transfused blood contained antibodies that attacked the host's antigens, causing massive agglutination. Karl Landsteiner won the Nobel Prize for his discovery of the different types of blood in the ABO system.

Human blood can be typed in the ABO system by adding a serum containing antibodies of known type. For example, if anti-A antibodies are added to a blood sample and agglutination occurs but it does not occur when anti-B antibodies are added, the blood must be type A. Table 16.2 shows agglutination and blood typing for all four blood types.

Another blood group system inherited genetically is the *Rh factor*, which is also expressed as an antigen on the red blood cell. A human will either be Rh positive (Rh^+) or Rh negative (Rh^-), depending on whether they possess the antigen or not. The Rh factor is usually written along with the blood type, for example, A^+ or A^-, the former has a gene for the Rh factor and the latter does not have the Rh gene.

TABLE 16.2
Agglutination Reaction of Blood Typing Sera

Anti-A Serum	Anti-B Serum	Blood Type
Agglutination	No agglutination	A
No agglutination	Agglutination	B
Agglutination	Agglutination	AB
No agglutination	No agglutination	O

There are other blood group systems in human blood that have different antigens and antibodies associated with them. Examples of these are *Lewis and MN* blood systems.

Blood Enzyme Markers

As seen in Table 16.1, the ABO blood type is not very discriminating. Even the rarest blood type still includes 3% of the human population. Therefore, blood type is considered to be *class* evidence, and blood typing of crime scene evidence is used to exclude suspects. During the 1970s and early 1980s, scientists searched for tests that included fewer people in a given classification. One of the important constraints on markers was that they had to survive the drying process. In many, if not most, of the cases where blood was found, it was dried. Most of the blood antigen systems except for ABO could not be used when the blood dried because the antigens were destroyed. One viable solution was so-called *polymorphic enzymes*. These are enzymes found in human blood. They have the property of polymorphism; they exist in several forms. Each person has one of the forms of each enzyme. Databases were built that determined the population frequency of each form of each enzyme. If several enzymes are analyzed, then the odds of a person having a particular set of enzyme forms would be quite rare. Many of these enzymes also survive the drying process and are thus forensically useful where dried stains are found as evidence. This type of analysis is seldom being used any more, having been replaced by DNA typing that is much more specific.

Other Biological Fluids and Stains

A number of other biological fluids besides blood occur as evidence in crimes. Three of the most important are *seminal fluid*, *vaginal secretions* and *saliva*. All may be prominent evidence in *criminal sexual conduct* (CSC) crimes. Saliva may be found on or in evidence in many other types of crimes. These can be very important types of evidence in cases where the perpetrator is a stranger to the victim. In most cases, there are no witnesses to CSC crimes. It may be crucial to be able to associate physical evidence with the suspect. In some cases, locating biological evidence may be important so that it can be DNA typed. In other cases, confirmation of the type of evidence may be necessary to establish that CSC has taken place.

Seminal Fluid

Seminal fluid or semen is a mixture of cells, sperm and a variety of organic and inorganic materials. It is a gelatinous material produced in males by the seminal vesicles, prostate and Cowper's glands. In a normal male, about 5 mL of semen is ejaculated and contains about 100 million sperm. Some males have low sperm counts (*oligospermic*) or may have no sperm in their semen (*aspermic*). Sperm consist of a head that contains the DNA from the male and a flagellated tail that helps it move.

Preliminary Tests for Semen

Seminal fluid contains large concentrations of an enzyme known as *seminal acid phosphatase* (SAP). There are other forms of acid phosphatase in some body fluids and the presence of SAP is considered to be *presumptive*. Over the years, the SAP test has emerged as the only acceptable presumptive test for seminal fluid throughout the world. The *Brentamine Fast Blue B* reagent is the major test for seminal fluid. An intense purple color that appears within 2 min is considered to be positive for SAP. The reagent is carcinogenic and must be handled with care.

Confirmatory Tests for Semen

Identification of Sperm

The only unambiguous test for seminal fluid is the identification of sperm cells. In most cases, the sperm analyzed in a crime lab are no longer motile and a stain is used to identify the sperm in the presence of other cellular material in the stain. A pair of dyes, *picroindigocarmine* (PIC) and *Nuclear Fast Red*, collectively called Christmas tree stain, have been developed for the specific purpose of visualizing sperm cells (see Figure 16.13).

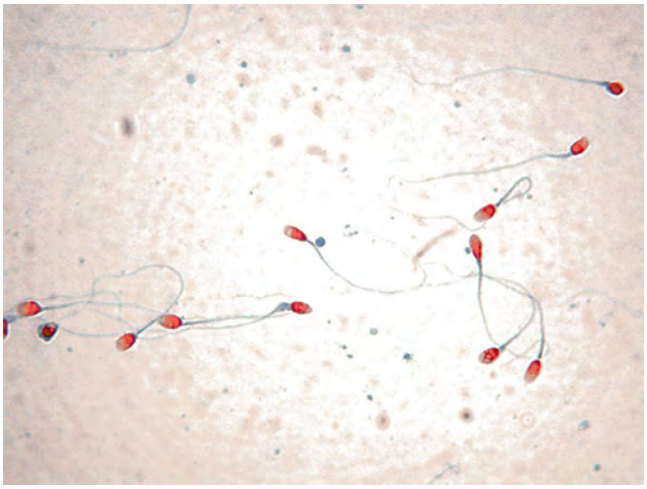


Figure 16.13 Sperm stained with Christmas tree stain. Reprinted courtesy of Nordby, J.J. and James, S.H., *Forensic Science, An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2003.

Prostate-Specific Antigen

As mentioned previously, some males are oligospermic or aspermic and sperm may not be present in a suspected semen stain. In 1978, George Sensabaugh demonstrated that seminal fluid may be confirmed if the stain reacts positively for the presence of seminal acid phosphatase and if *prostate-specific antigen* (PSA or p30) is identified. P30 is secreted into semen by the prostate gland and is found mainly in semen. P30 may be found in some other body fluids, but the concentrations are below the limits of detection of the test. A special antibody-antigen test kit for PSA was developed in 1999 and is used in crime labs today.

Vaginal Secretions

The analysis of vaginal secretions can be important when a foreign object has been inserted into the vagina. The major test for vaginal secretions is to identify *glycogenated epithelial cells*. These cell types are formed during menstruation and their quantity depends on what stage of the menstrual cycle the female is in, with ovulation producing the highest concentrations of glycogenated cells. The test consists of staining the glycogen using *periodic acid–Schiff reagent* (PAS). It stains glycogen a bright magenta color. It is not a specific test since glycogenated epithelial cells may be found in other parts of males and females, although in lower concentrations.

Saliva

Saliva is produced in the mouth for the preliminary digestion of food. More than one liter of saliva is produced each day in normal humans. It consists of water, proteins, enzymes and salts. There are no specific tests for saliva. The generally accepted test for saliva is the *alpha-amylase* test. Alpha-amylase is an enzyme that is used to help break down starches in foods. Although it is found in many other body fluids, its concentration in saliva is many times higher than in any other fluid. The *starchiodide* test is commonly used to identify alpha-amylase.

Bloodstain Pattern Analysis

Bloodstain pattern analysis (*BPA*) is a growing field of crime scene analysis and forensic technology. It has become an important tool in helping the forensic investigator determine what happened in a violent incident where blood has been shed. It can be used to provide evidence against a suspect or to exonerate an accused person. It can also be an invaluable tool in crime scene reconstruction.

Physical Properties of Blood

In order to understand how blood spatter patterns are formed and how to interpret their characteristics, it is necessary to know something about the physical properties of blood. Although the majority of blood is water, blood does not act like water when it is dripped or projected. Blood has a fairly high surface tension that tends to cause a decrease in its surface area and makes it difficult to penetrate. This means that blood droplets tend to adhere to an external surface. Blood will only separate and spatter when there are sufficient external forces to overcome surface tension. When a droplet of blood separates from a larger quantity and falls

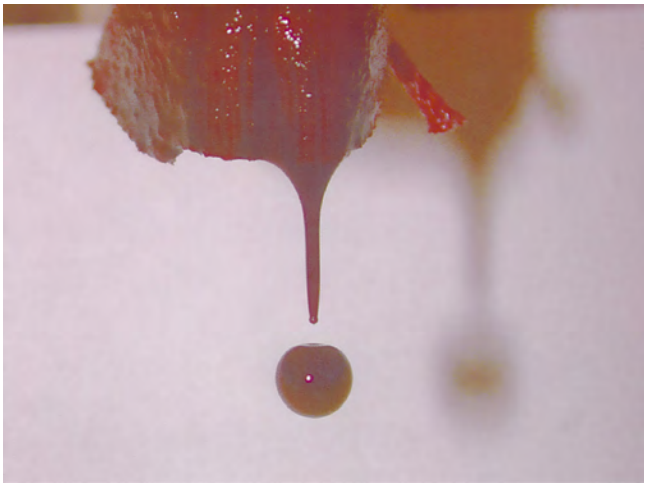


Figure 16.14 A blood droplet dripping from blood-soaked cloth. Note the spherical shape. Reprinted courtesy of Nordby, J.J. and James, S.H., *Forensic Science, An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2003.

toward the earth, it will form a *spherical drop*, not a teardrop as is commonly depicted. Figure 16.14 shows the shape of a blood droplet as it falls from a blood soaked article. A blood drop in flight will oscillate from this oval or elliptical shape to a circular shape and back again until it contacts a surface and collapses.

The size of the spherical blood droplet will depend upon the size of the surface from which it falls. A larger surface will produce a larger blood droplet. Blood is also very *viscous*. This means that it will flow more slowly than water. It has also been shown that the longer the distance that a blood droplet falls, the larger the diameter of the stain on the floor or other surface, although there is a physical limit to the size that a falling droplet will achieve. Blood falling under the influence of gravity will accelerate like any other falling object under the influence of gravity. At some point, the force of gravity will equal the frictional force of the air on the droplet. When this happens, the falling blood drop will no longer accelerate, but reach a stable velocity, called *terminal velocity*. The terminal velocity of blood is dependent on the volume of the drop, but generally the average terminal velocity is approximately 25 ft/s for a blood drop of 0.05 mL volume. At heights greater than the height where terminal velocity is reached, the diameter of the blood drop will not increase. Studies have shown that the averaged sized blood drop will reach terminal velocity at a height of approximately 7 feet.

When water falls to the floor, it tends to *spatter* or break up into smaller droplets. This is due to surface tension and viscosity. In contrast to water, blood droplets will not break up into smaller droplets if they hit a hard, smooth surface such as tile. Blood molecules have cohesive properties that hold the blood molecules together and increase the surface tension in the blood. If the surface is rough like concrete, then the jagged edges will break up the surface tension of the blood and cause it to spatter, creating *satellite spatter* and *spines*. Figure 16.15 shows blood dropped at right angles or 90° onto various surfaces from a height of 36 inches. The circled projections in the first photograph designate the *spines* (projections of blood that extend beyond the parent drop of blood) and *satellite spatter* (small droplets that leave the parent blood drop and land near it).

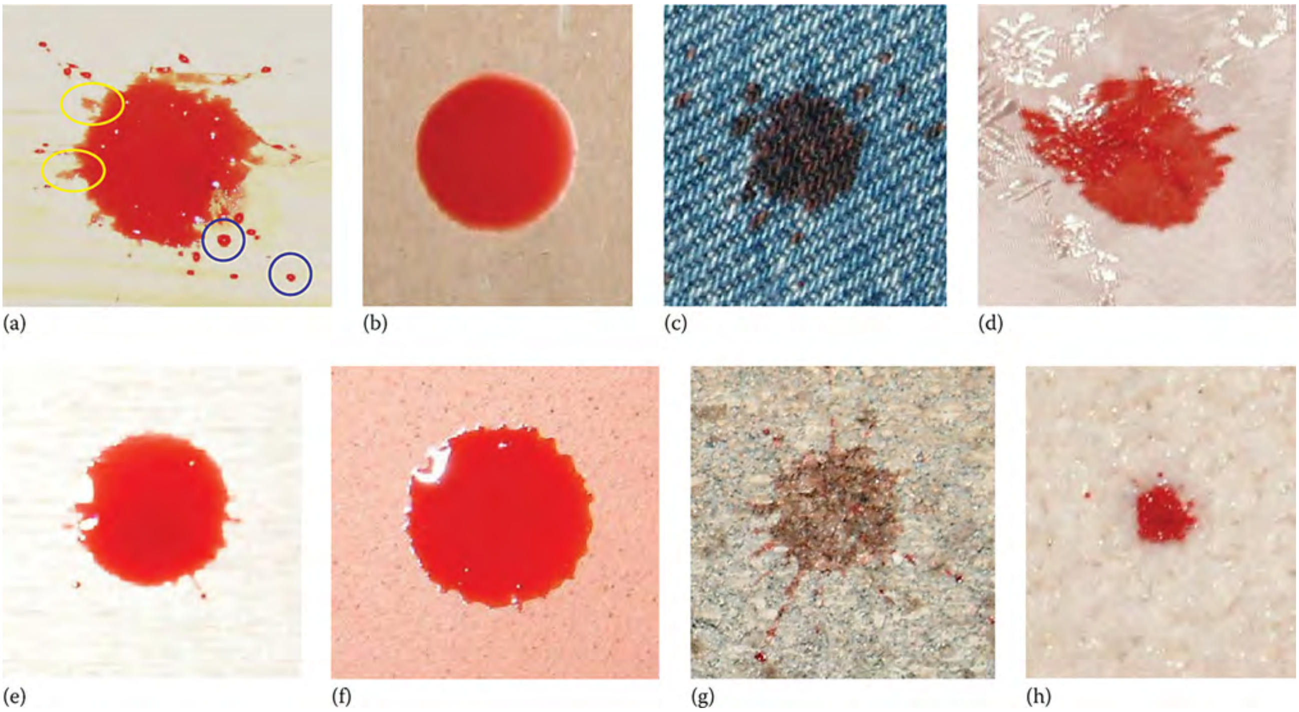


Figure 16.15 These photos show one blood drop released from a height of 36 in. onto various target surfaces at 90°. Notice the difference in size and shape and the absence or presence of ***spines*** and ***satellite spatter***. The yellow ovals in photo a designate spines and the blue circles show satellite spatter. The target surfaces are as follows: (a) raw wood, (b) smooth plastic, (c) cotton jean, (d) polyester, (e) painted wood, (f) tile, (g) cement and (h) carpet. Photos courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

Geometry of Bloodstains

When blood is thrown or cast onto a surface at an angle, the leading edge of the droplets will be elongated relative to the back or trailing edge. The shape of the droplet can be used to determine the direction from which it came as well as the approximate angle relative to the surface it strikes. If there are a number of bloodstains, the *area of convergence* can be determined by drawing lines from the leading edge of the stains through the long axis. These lines will come together in a general area which is the approximate area where the blood originated. This can be seen in Figure 16.16.

The angle of impact can be determined by measuring the length and width of the stain in millimeters as shown in Figure 16.17, being careful only to measure the *original* shape of the stain and not the projections (spines and tails). The arcsin (inverse sin or $\sin^{-1}$) of the ratio of the width (W) to the length (L) is equal to the angle of impact (see Equation 16.1).

$$\Theta = \arcsin \frac{\text{Width}\,(\text{mm})}{\text{Length}\,(\text{mm})} \tag{16.1}$$

where Θ is the angle of impact.

For example, if the width of a bloodstain is 1.3 mm and the length is 2 mm, then

$$\Theta = (\arcsin)\frac{1.3\,\text{mm}}{2.0\,\text{mm}} = (\arcsin)0.65 = 40.54°$$

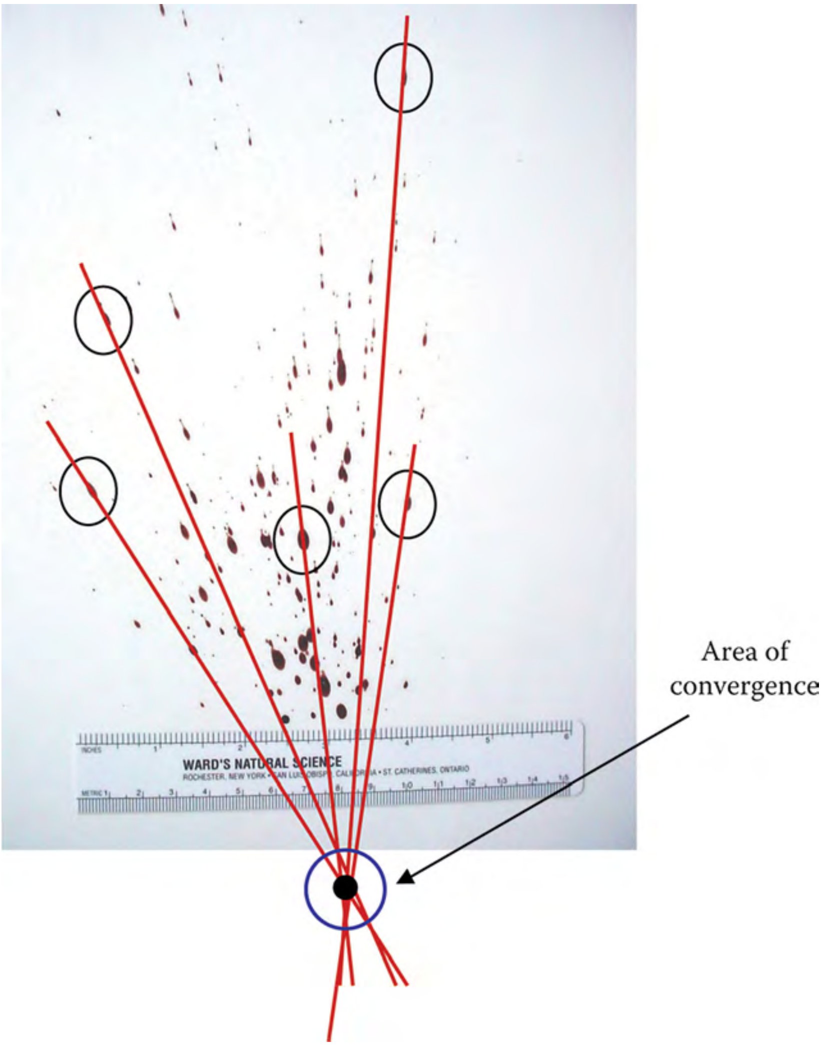


Figure 16.16 Diagram showing how the area of convergence of an impact blood spatter pattern is determined. Courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

Therefore, the angle of impact would be about 41°.

The shape of the angled bloodstains gives the investigator a general idea of the point of origin. The "tail" of the stain and any spines visible are clues to the original direction of the blood. Figure 16.18 shows blood dripped multiple times at 10° angle increments. Notice how the elliptical nature of the stain increases with the angle of impact to the surface.

Figure 16.19 shows actual bloodstains being analyzed. Step one is to measure the bloodstain length and width, and then use the formula to determine impact angle. Lines are drawn lightly through the stain to determine the area of convergence on the target surface (or strings can be used in place of pencil lines to preserve the stains). Lastly, strings are projected based on the measured impact angles out into space to determine the area of convergence or origin of the blood. Another method that can be used in place of the last stringing step is to use another trigonometry formula to mathematically calculate the distance from the target surface (see graphic in Appendix A).

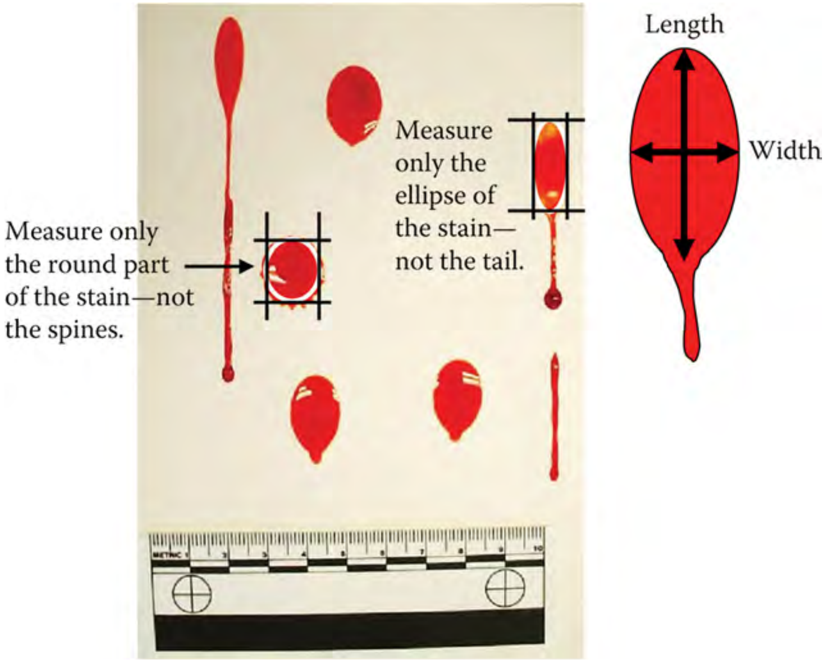

Measure only the round part of the stain—not the spines.
Measure only the ellipse of the stain—not the tail.
Length
Width

Figure 16.17 Measuring width and length of bloodstains to determine impact angle. Courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

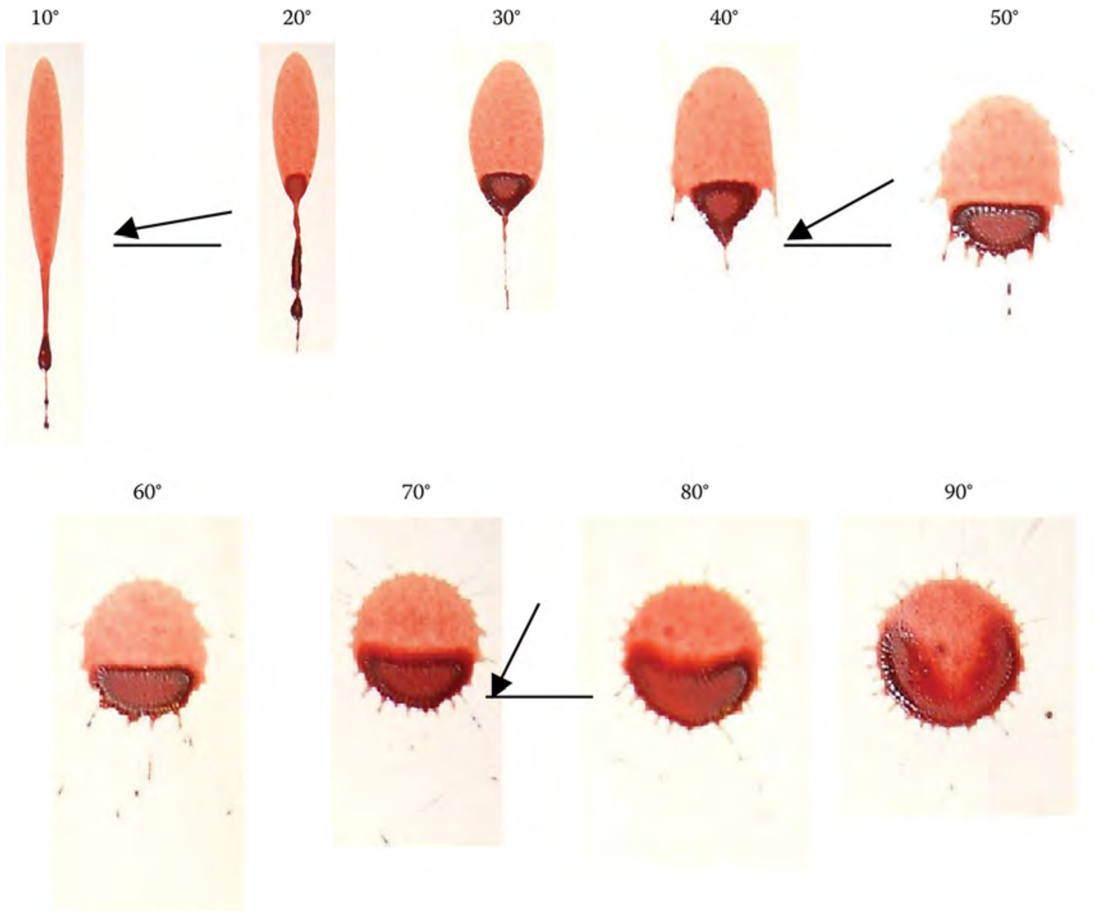

10°
20°
30°
40°
50°
60°
70°
80°
90°

Figure 16.18 Blood drops at various angles of impact. Photos courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC.

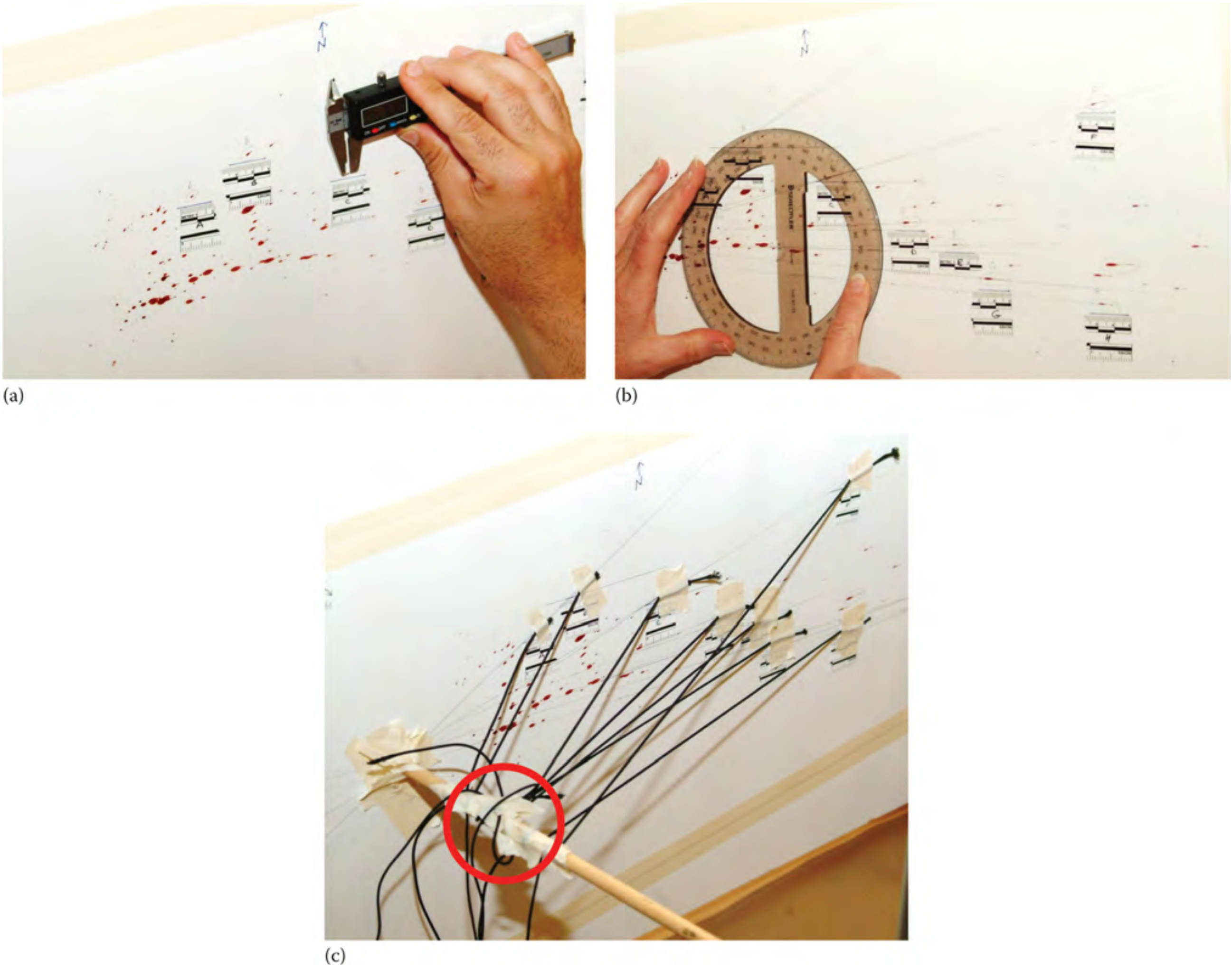

(a)
(b)
(c)

Figure 16.19 Locating an area of convergence in space using impact angles of a bloodstain: (a) measuring length and width of small bloodstains, (b) drawing the area of convergence on the contact surface and (c) "stringing" the angles of impact into three-dimensional space to locate the origin of the blood. The red circle shows the area of convergence in that third dimension. Photos courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

Bloodstain Patterns

There are many types of bloodstain patterns. Bloodstains can be divided into three basic categories: *passive*, *spatter* and *altered*. *Passive* stains are created due to the force of gravity acting on the blood. Examples of passive bloodstains are *vertical* blood drops (blood dripping at 90° to the surface), *transfer* stains (blood on an object that contacts another object and leaves a bloody pattern—swipes, footprints, etc.), *large volume* bloodstains (blood exiting in mass from a person or object) and *flow* (large pool of blow moving down a wall or incline). Examples of passive bloodstains can be seen in Figures 16.20 and 16.21.

Spatter stains involve a force in addition to gravity, and bloodstains in this category show directionality and distribution to the blood. Included in this group of bloodstains are *impact spatter due to blunt force* that are the result of a bloodied object or person receiving a blow. This stain must first have blood on its surface to create this type of pattern. In most cases, the first blow will not produce an impact stain. Subsequent blows will result in impact spatter. Impact stains due to blunt

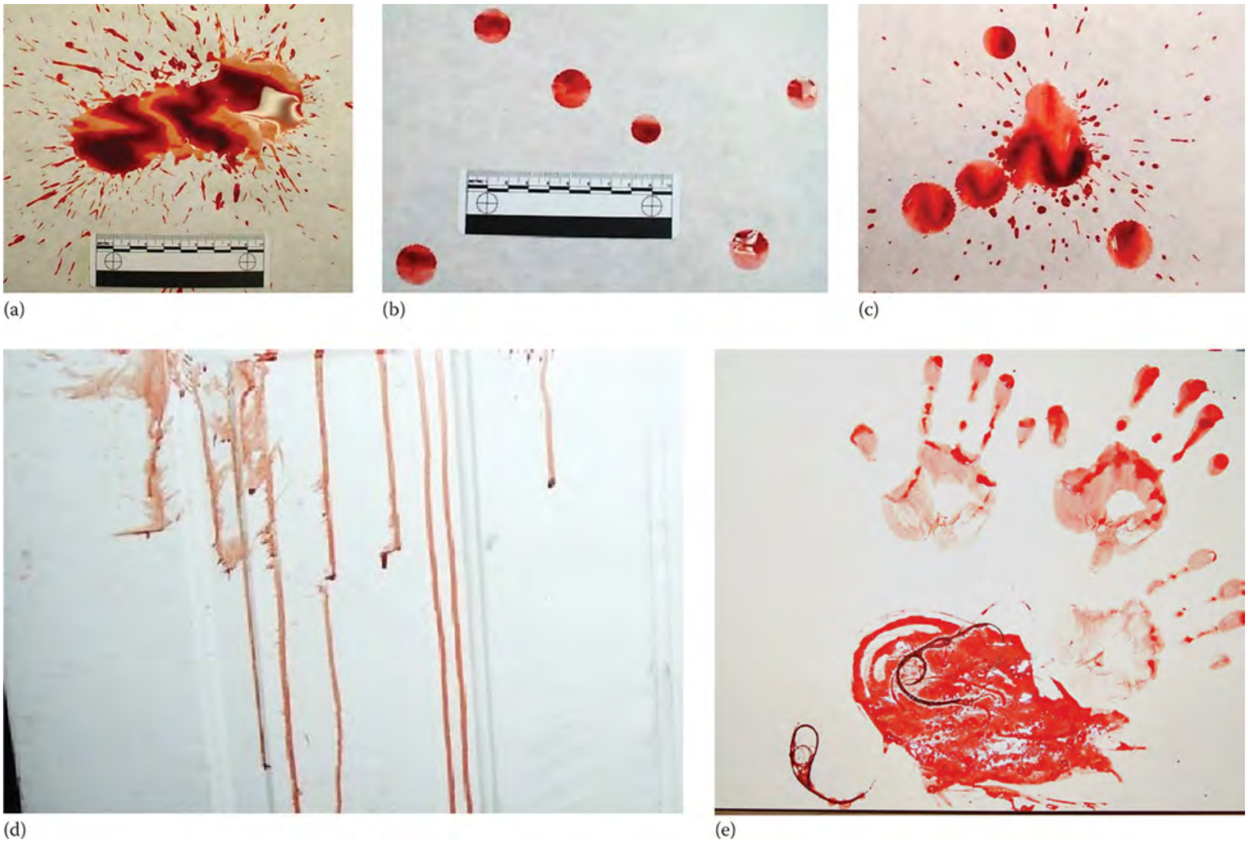


Figure 16.20 Passive bloodstain patterns: (a) large volume, (b) vertical drips, (c) multiple vertical drips, (d) flow and (e) transfer.

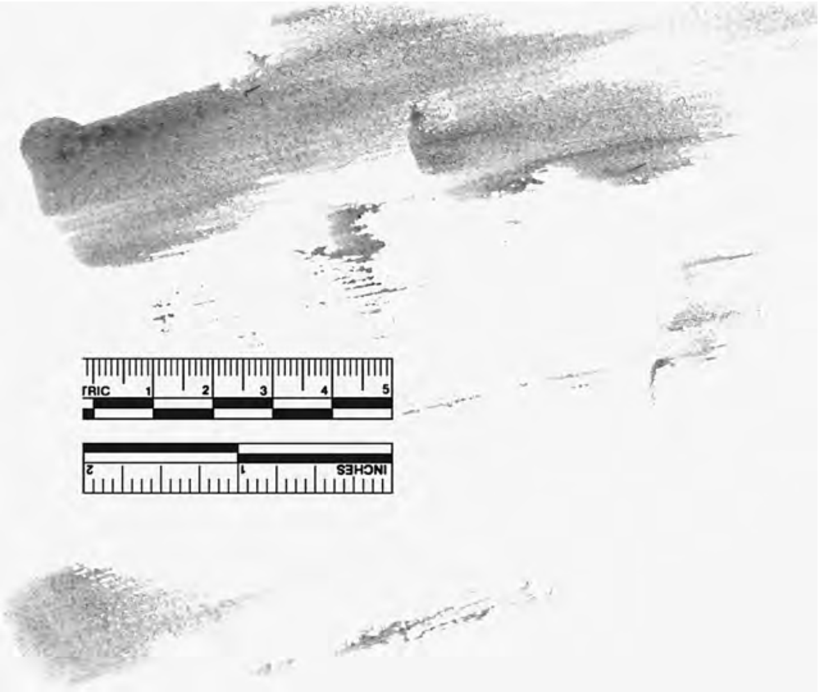


Figure 16.21 A swiped bloodstain pattern in which a bloodied object contacted the surface and deposited blood in a sweeping motion. Reprinted courtesy of Bevel, T. and Gardner, R.M., *Bloodstain Pattern Analysis: With an Introduction to Crime Scene Reconstruction*, 2 edn., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

force range in length from 1 to 4 mm in size and are usually the stains are "strung" by law enforcement. *Impact stains due to gunshot* are smaller in size, usually less than 1 mm in length, and have a misty appearance. Spattered stains also include those *projected* away from the body. One of these patterns is called a *cast-off*, which is a pattern produced from a bloodied object such as a knife, baseball bat or hand. These stains form a linear pattern, often on the ceiling. Figure 16.22a shows examples of spatter stains.

Other spatter-type blood stains are *arterial spurts* and *expirated* blood. Arterial spurts easily recognized by an arc pattern that is due to the rise and fall of blood pressure and indicates that a major artery (carotid, femoral) has been compromised in the victim. This is shown in Figure 16.22b. Expiratory blood is ejected

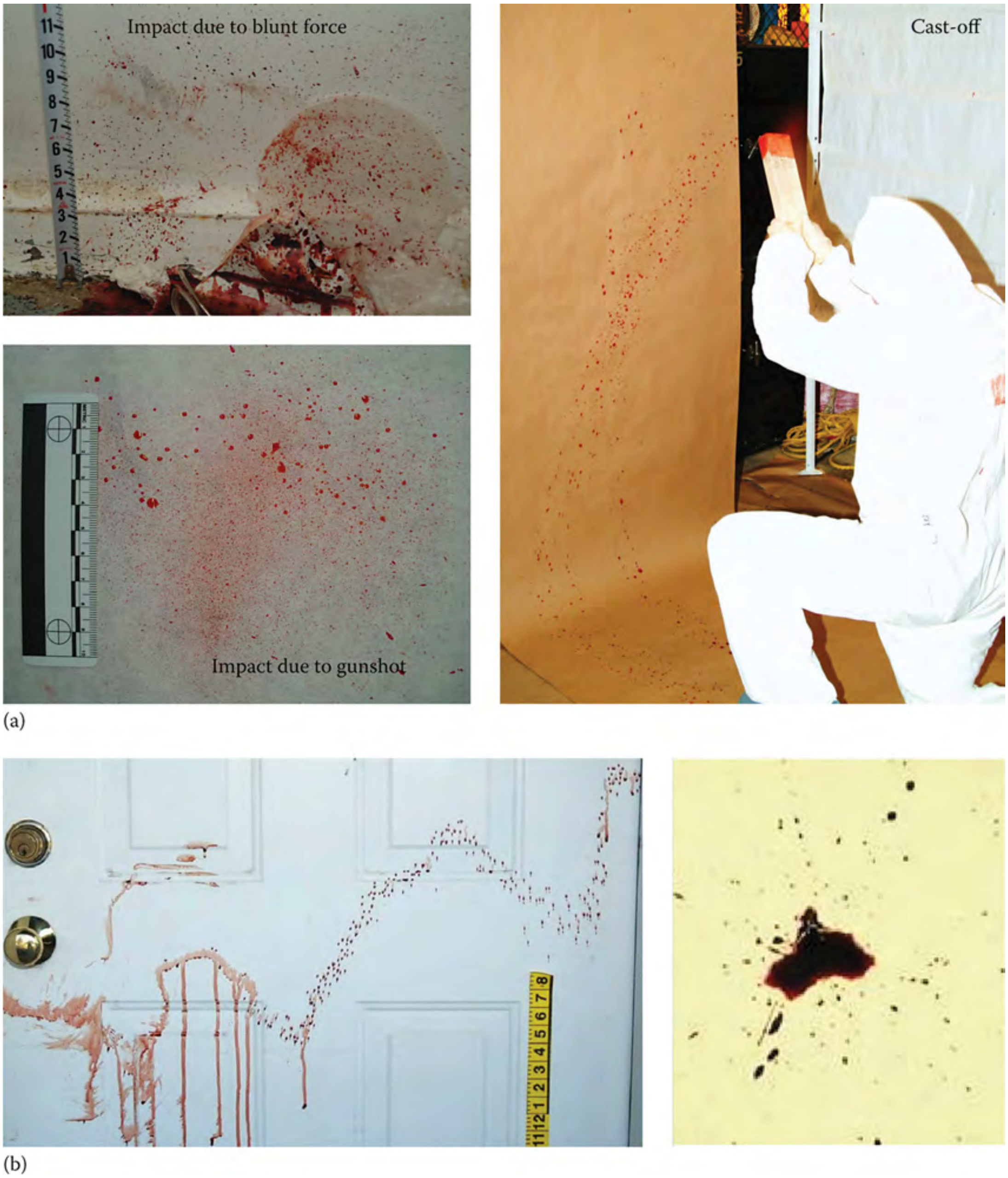


Figure 16.22 (a) Various spatter bloodstains and (b) arterial (left) and expirated (right) bloodstains. Photos courtesy Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC, Portage, Michigan.

with force from the mouth or the nose. Individuals with injuries to the face or chest will commonly cough or sneeze blood, a natural reaction to fluid in the breathing passages. The pattern from expiratory blood looks similar to impact spatter, but sometimes air bubbles can be seen in the blood drops.

Bloodstains that have been physically or physiologically changed are placed in the *altered* category (examples shown in Figure 16.23). Physiologically altered stains arise when insects interact with the blood, when blood clots or when water or other foreign materials mix with the existing blood. Physically altered blood examples are *voids* (blood should be present, but it is not) and *wipes* (blood was present, but a person or object moved through it and changed its appearance). A wipe can be distinguished from *swipe* (passive stain) by noting the evidence that the blood was deposited prior to the motion through the blood, such as the dried outside boundaries of the stain (see Figure 16.23).

The three bloodstain categories and types of patterns in each category are summarized in Table 16.3.

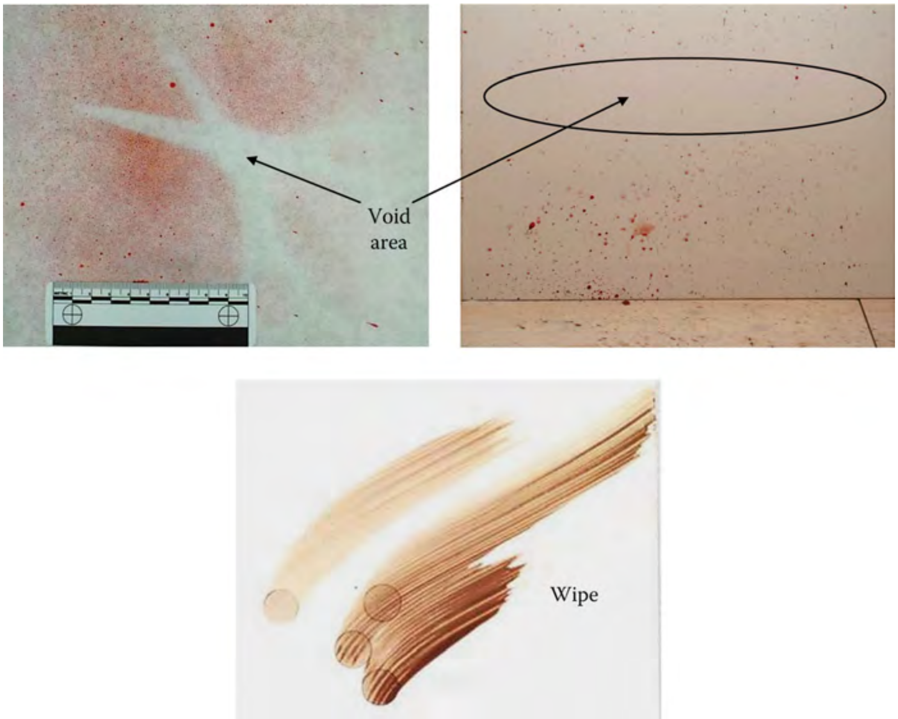


Figure 16.23 Altered bloodstains.

TABLE 16.3
Bloodstain Patterns and their Classification

Passive	Spatter	Altered
Vertical drips	Impact spatter blunt force	Insect activity
Prints (shoe, hand, hair, etc.)	Impact spatter gunshot	Addition of foreign material
Large volume	Cast-off	Void
Flow	Arterial	Wipe
Swipe	Expirated	

Summary

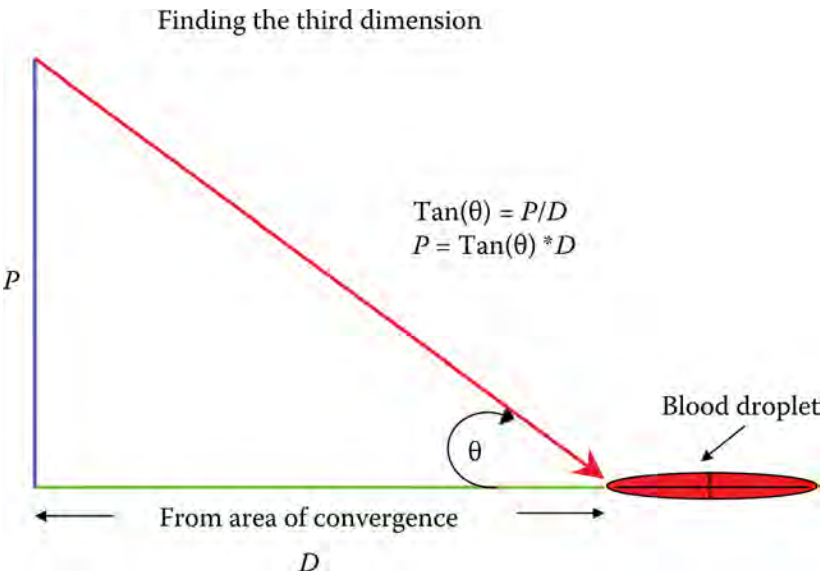
Blood is a suspension of solid, mostly cellular material in a fluid that consists of water with many dissolved materials in it. It is often necessary to determine if a reddish stain found at a crime scene is blood. There are several preliminary and confirmatory tests for the presence of blood. Most of these tests involve the heme molecule as a catalyst in a chemical reaction or series of reactions. After a stain is identified as blood, it is necessary to determine if it is human. This is done using immunological tests. Rabbit antiserum is used to determine if human blood is present by demonstrating that the human antibodies in the rabbit's blood will agglutinate red blood cells in the blood. Field testing can be done on suspected stains to determine if they are blood or not. The Kastle–Meyer test and Hexagon OBTI are tests that can be packaged for field testing.

Other body fluids such as saliva, vaginal swabs or secretions and semen must also be identified at crime scenes. There are also screening and confirmatory tests for these substances.

Before DNA typing, there was blood typing. Blood contains proteins such as antigens as well as certain enzymes that are polymorphic; they exist in more than one form. These substances can be used to subdivide a human population according to which forms of these materials are present. Groups of associated antigens (proteins on the surface of red blood cells) provide one means of differentiating blood samples. These antigens form blood groups such as ABO or Rh. In addition to blood groups, there are enzymes associated with red blood cells and white blood cells that are also polymorphic. Electrophoresis is used to separate and identify these enzymes in a blood sample. Several blood groups and enzymes used to be typed in a typical blood case. Even though these substances are all independent of each other, the cumulative population frequencies were not as discriminating as DNA typing. In addition, many of these substances do not survive the drying process and cannot be typed on dried stains.

The physical properties of blood give rise to blood spatter patterns that occur by several mechanisms. It is possible to determine the angle and direction of a blood spatter by measuring the size and shape of the spatter. It is also possible to determine the point of origin of a series of related blood spatters using triangulation. Different types of blood spatter mechanisms give rise to characteristic blood spatter patterns. Three general categories of bloodstain patterns are passive, spatter and altered. Bloodstains found at crime scenes can be classified into one of these groups.

Appendix A: Trigonometry Calculation for Locating a Bloodstain Origin



Try It Yourself: The Genetics of Blood Typing

A child's blood type is inherited from the parents. One allele (code for blood type on the chromosome) comes from the mother and one allele comes from the father. The possible combinations of alleles (genotype) and resulting blood type (phenotype) are listed later. The allele for type O is recessive and the alleles for A and B are codominant.

Blood Type A	Blood Type B	Blood Type AB	Blood Type O
A, A	B, B	A, B	O, O
A, O	B, O	B, A	

Using a Punnet Square allows one to see the possible prodigy of a genetic cross (parents). The GENOTYPE of each parent is entered into the top and side of the square. The combinations of alleles give the GENOTYPE of the offspring. For example,

Parent Genotype	A	O
A	A, A	A, O
B	A, B	B, O

The PHENOTYPE (what trait is expressed) of the parents are blood types A and AB. The PHENOTYPE of the offspring are blood types: A, AB and B. The chances are approximately 50% that their children will be type A, 25% will be type B and 25% will be type AB.

Your turn:

1. Complete the following crosses of parents using the Punnet Square method.
2. Predict the genotype and phenotype of the offspring.
3. What are the percent chances for each type?

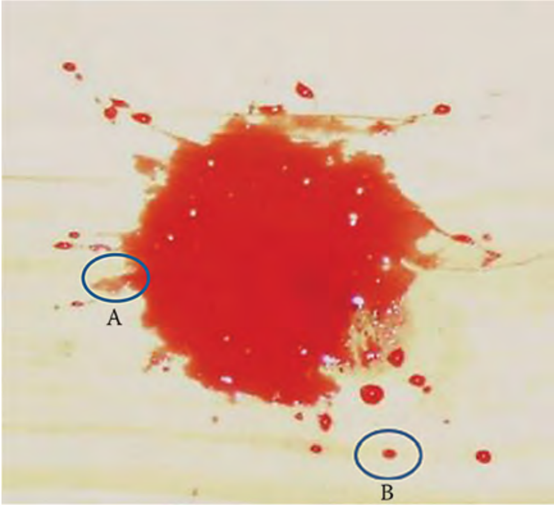
Group 1: Dad is AB, Mom is AB
Group 2: Dad is OO, Mom is AB
Group 3: Dad is AA, Mom is BO
Group 4: Dad is BO, Mom is AO

Extension: The Rh factor can also be added to the crosses. Rh^+ is dominant and Rh^- is recessive.

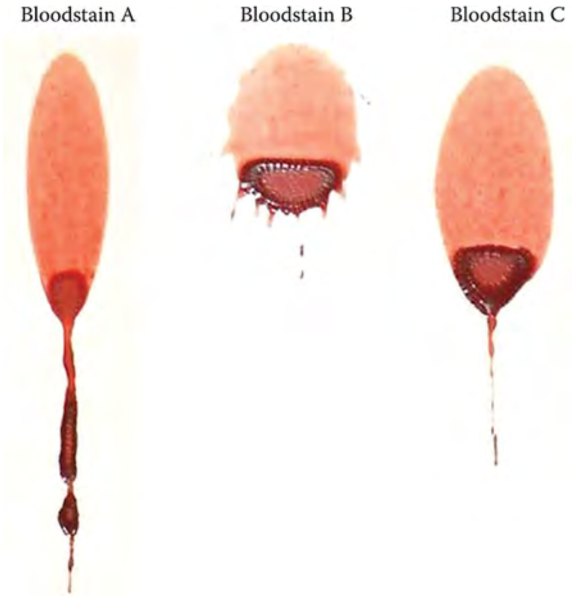
Test Yourself

Short Answer Questions

1. What are the two major components of blood?
2. What parts of blood are important forensically for typing?
3. Name two preliminary and two confirmatory tests for blood?
4. What is the most common test for identifying saliva?
5. What is the only test that is absolutely confirmatory for semen?
6. Describe briefly how a blood sample is determined to be human?
7. What are the two major mechanisms that give rise to blood spatter patterns?
8. Give an example of a type of spatter bloodstain.
9. Give an example of a type of altered bloodstain.
10. Give an example of a type of passive bloodstain.
11. What is a “cast off” blood spatter?
12. What is the difference between a “wipe” bloodstain pattern and a “swipe” pattern?
13. What are the parts labeled A and B in the following blood drop?



14. Describe how the parts in question #13 can be produced?
15. The following photo shows blood dropped at various angles. For each bloodstain, find the impact angle using the formula from the chapter. Show your work.



Multiple Choice Questions

16. The person responsible for ABO blood typing was.
    a. Landsteiner
    b. Mendel
    c. MacDonell
    d. Takayama
17. A person with O blood can give to.
    a. Another O
    b. A person with B
    c. An A
    d. Any blood type
18. A person with O blood can receive from
    a. Another O
    b. A person with B
    c. An A
    d. An AB
19. Type B blood contains Type ___ antibodies.
    a. AB
    b. A
    c. B
    d. None
20. One parent is type AB; the other is type O. A possible genotype for an offspring is
    a. AB
    b. OO
    c. AO
    d. all of these
21. Which is the most common blood type?
    a. AB
    b. O
    c. A
    d. B

22. Which is the least common blood type?
    a. AB
    b. O
    c. A
    d. B

True or False

23. The major components of the blood are plasma and suspended solid materials.
24. The platelets in the blood are responsible for determining blood type.
25. The Teichmann and Takayama tests are used to determine if the red stain is blood or not.
26. The most common test for identifying saliva is the Kastle–Meyer test.
27. PSA is the only test that is absolutely confirmatory for semen.

Match Each Term with Its Definition

28. Liquid portion of the blood
29. Part of the solid portion of the blood that oxygenates the cells of the body
30. Part of the solid portion of the blood that fights infection
31. Substance found on the outside surface of a red blood cell
32. Substance found in the plasma of the blood that reacts with an antigen
33. Clumping in the blood as a result of mixing two incompatible blood types

a. Agglutination
b. Antibodies
c. Antigen
d. Plasma
e. Red blood cells
f. White blood cells

More Short Answer Questions

34. For phenotype A blood, what are the genotype possibilities?
35. What is genotype for a homozygous B person?
35. Draw and complete a Punnet Square that crosses Type O blood with type AB blood. Give percentages for the blood types.
37. Anti-A serum, anti-B serum and anti-Rh serum are added to a blood sample. There is agglutination in the anti-B and in the anti-Rh. What is the complete blood type?
38. Anti-A serum, anti-B serum and Anti-Rh serum are added to a blood sample. There is no agglutination in the anti-A and the anti-B, but there is agglutination in the anti-Rh. What is the complete blood type?
39. A mother has type O^- blood and the father is heterozygous B^-. What are all the possible blood types of the offspring?
40. Determine the possible blood genotypes for the parents of an O^- child.

Further Reading

Bevel, T. and R. M. Gardner. (2001). *Gardner. Bloodstain Pattern Analysis: With an Introduction to Crime Scene Reconstruction*, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

James, S. H. and W. G. Eckert. (1999). *Interpretation of Bloodstain Evidence at Crime Scenes*, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Nordby, J. J. and S. H. James. (2002). *Forensic Science, An Introduction to Scientific and Investigative Techniques*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Shaler, R. C. (2002). Modern forensic biology, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 1, 2nd edn., R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Useful Websites

Agglutination & blood typing

https://educationalgames.nobelprize.org/educational/medicine/landsteiner/readmore.html

Blood Testing

https://www.thoughtco.com/kastle-meyer-test-to-detect-blood-60782.
https://the-gist.org/2011/03/seeing-red-–-presumptive-tests-for-blood/
https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Microbiology/Book%3A_Microbiology_(OpenStax)/20%3A_Laboratory_Analysis_of_the_Immune_Response/20.2%3A_Detecting_Antigen-Antibody_Complexes_in_vitro

BPA

http://www.crimescene-forensics.com/index.html.
https://shop.nfstc.org/blood-spatter-pattern-resources/
https://www.pbs.org/wgbh/nova/article/forensics-bloodstain-pattern-analysis/
https://www.pbs.org/wgbh/nova/video/forensics-on-trial/
https://cosmosmagazine.com/mathematics/solving-crime-with-blood-and-maths/
http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/nova/sheppard/

Case Study

Case Study: Blood Spatter Evidence in Murder Trial

Mya Lyons body was found in a Chicago alley on July 14, 2008. She was 9 years old. Her father, Richard Lyons found his daughter lifeless in an alley near his home. Rather than calling 911, he picked up the child, put her in his van and drove to the hospital emergency room. She was pronounced dead after arriving at the hospital. Mya had sustained blunt force injuries to her head and had numerous stab wounds in her abdomen and neck. Her eyes showed petechiae hemorrhaging, evidence of possible strangulation.

Chicago police investigation team found inconsistencies in Richard Lyons story. He had claimed that he saw a man walking a dog in the alley and the dog had probably attacked her and the man stabbed her. When examining the alley where Mya's body was found there was a lack of blood evidence given that her stab wounds were extensive.

When Lyons van was searched, investigators found blood spatter evidence on the back of numerous van seats, in the air vents and it was noted that the dashboard had been wiped clean with hydrogen peroxide. Police also found blood spatter on shoes that Lyons wore on the night of Mya's death.

Prosecutors summarize that on the night of July 14, Mya was out later than her curfew and her father beat and strangled her until she died. Then, to cover up her murder, he put her in his van and stabbed her to look like an attack. He then drove down the alley and dumped her body in a weedy area near the train tracks.

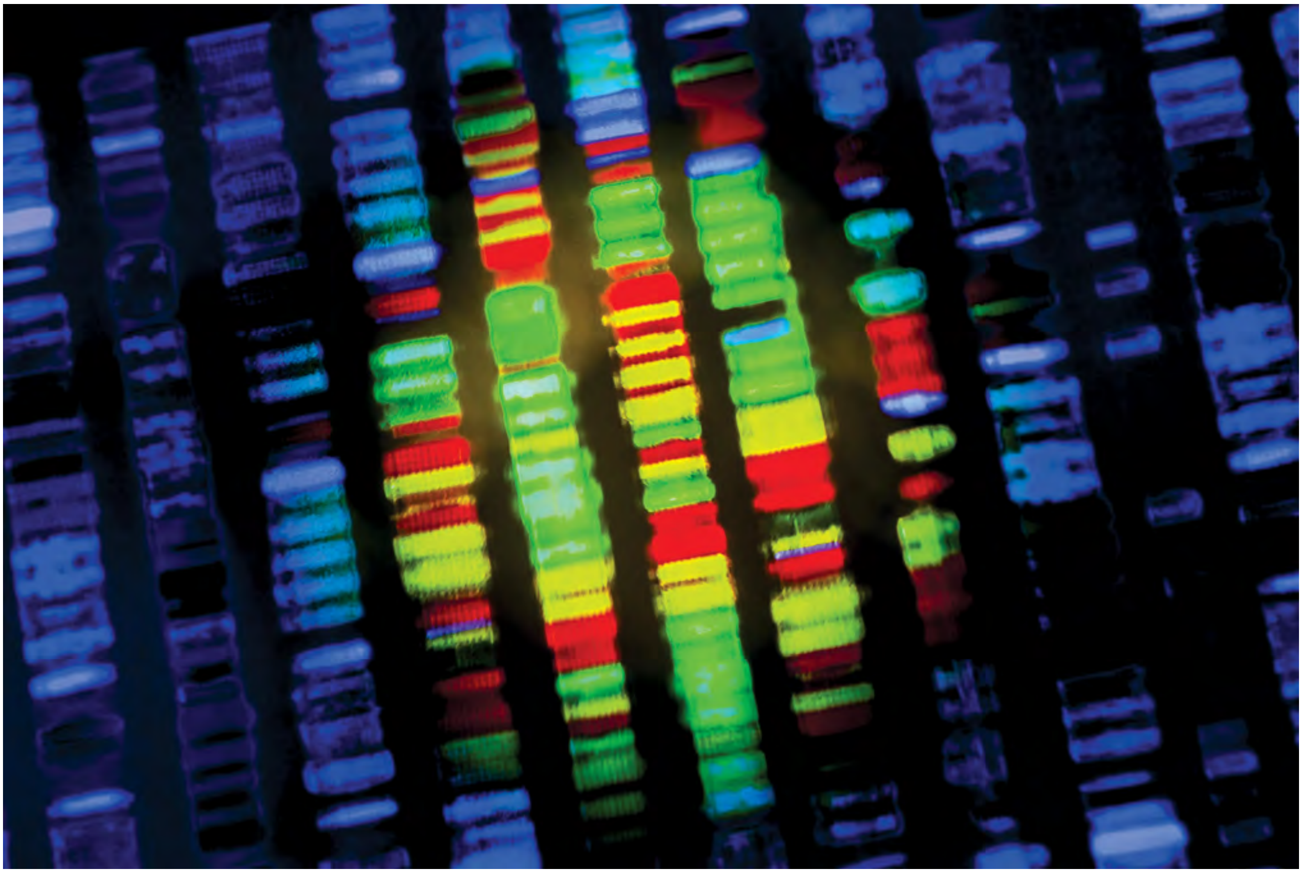
Two years later, Richard Lyons was tried and a jury convicted him of the murder of his daughter, Mya Lyons. He was sentenced to 60 years in prison.

For more information: https://abc7chicago.com/archive/9491769/

Another Case Study: Murder of Marylin Sheppard—http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/nova/sheppard/

17

DNA Typing



Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define DNA and describe its structure
2. To be able to describe the precautions necessary when collecting biological evidence
3. To be able to describe the major historical milestones in DNA typing
4. To be able to describe how polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is carried out and how DNA can be typed by PCR
5. To be able to describe the short tandem repeat (STR) method of PCR DNA analysis

6. To be able to describe how population frequency statistics are used to describe the significance of a DNA match
7. To be able to define mitochondrial DNA and describe how it is typed
8. To be able to explain the development and use of major DNA databases

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is DNA?*
  - *Cellular DNA*
    - *DNA Polymorphisms and Population Genetics*
- *Collection and Preservation of DNA Evidence*
- *History of DNA Typing*
  - *Restriction Fragment Length Polymorphism*
  - *PCR*
    - *DNA Amplification by PCR*
  - *First PCR-Based DNA Typing Methods*
- *Current Method of DNA Typing: STRs*
  - *Determination of Gender*
- *Mitochondrial DNA*
- *CODIS*
  - *CODIS Success Stories*
    - *Solving a Double Murder in the Deep South*
    - *Putting a Rapist on Parole behind Bars for Good*
    - *Cracking a 1968 Murder Case*
      - *Forensic Genetic Genealogy*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match the Columns*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Allele: One of the forms of a gene.

Amelogenin: A piece of DNA found in the X and Y chromosomes that determine gender.

Annealing: Addition of DNA primers in PCR to begin the replication process.

Denaturation: Unzipping double-stranded DNA to single strands under the influence of high temperature.

DNA: A large, polymeric molecule found in virtually every cell in the body.

DNA polymerase: An enzyme used in PCR to add bases one at a time.

DNA primers: Short strands of DNA used to begin the replication process of PCR.

Elimination samples: Samples of DNA from someone who might have handled biological evidence during collection and analysis.

Extension: Addition of individual bases to a single strand of DNA to replicate it in PCR.

Gene: Part of a chromosome consisting of a sequence of base pairs. These sequences ultimately tell the cell what proteins to manufacture that result in expression of characteristics such as eye color, gender and height.

Hypervariable region: A locus of DNA that is highly polymorphic.

Length polymorphism: A type of polymorphism whose forms differ in the length of a repeating segment of DNA.

Mitochondria: Structures present in every cell in the body without exception. They are in the cytoplasm, outside the nucleus. Mitochondria are responsible for energy production in the cell and they contain DNA, which helps in this function.

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR): A method for replicating DNA using temperature and bases under the influence of an enzyme.

Polymorphic: A gene or other part of DNA that exists in more than one form.

Population frequency: How often a particular type of DNA occurs in a given population.

Restriction enzyme: An enzyme that cuts DNA strands at predetermined loci.

Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP): DNA typing that uses long length polymorphs to characterize DNA.

Sequence polymorphism: A type of polymorphism whose forms differ in one or more base pairs.

Short tandem repeats: A method of DNA typing using short length polymorphs.

Substrate control: A piece of a material on which biological evidence has been deposited; a form of negative control.

Y-STR: A short tandem repeat found only on the Y chromosome.

Acronyms

CODIS	Combined DNA Index System
DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid
PCR	Polymerase chain reaction
RFLP	Restriction fragment length polymorphism
STR	Short tandem repeat

Introduction

In March of 2013, Johnny Williams, 38, was released from prison in California after having served 14 years in prison for raping a nine-year-old girl. His conviction was overturned after new evidence discovered by the Northern California Innocence Project (IP) proved he was not guilty of the rape. The evidence was a DNA sample on a shirt that the girl was wearing at the time of the assault.

The IP attorneys arranged for the DNA to be tested. It did not match Williams' DNA type, resulting in the overturning of his conviction and subsequent release from prison.

The assaults took place over two days against the girl as she was going to school. At the time, police investigators did not find any biological evidence on the girl's clothing. She identified Johnny Williams as her attacker because he lived in the neighborhood and the attacker told her that his name was Johnny. At Williams' trial, the prosecutor had only the girl's identification as evidence. Her shirt was never admitted into evidence. The defense admitted the shirt and argued that the lack of biological evidence on it was proof that Williams was innocent. Subsequent further analysis of the shirt by officials of the IP uncovered trace evidence. This was typed for DNA and run through local, state and national databases, but no hit came up. The DNA type was different from that of Williams.

In 1992, attorneys Barry Scheck and Peter Neufeld founded the IP. It is affiliated with the Benjamin N. Cardozo School of Law at Yeshiva University in New York. The IP was set up to provide assistance to persons who had been convicted of a serious crime where postconviction DNA typing could be used to prove claims of innocence. Several types of cases are examined by the IP. These include challenges based on a claim of ineffective counsel, mistakes by crime laboratory scientists or cases where the conviction was based in part on pre-DNA typing blood analysis that falsely associated the accused with the victim or put him at the crime scene. These situations often occurred because blood typing, as it was practiced before DNA typing, could not associate someone to biological evidence with the level of certainty that DNA typing does today. In several cases investigated by the IP, the accused was included in a population of possible owners of biological evidence (e.g., blood, hair, semen) by blood typing procedures and convicted partly because of this. Postconviction DNA typing proved conclusively that the accused and convicted person could not have been the source of the incriminating biological evidence. From 1989 to 2019, 509 prisoners have been exonerated by DNA testing. Of these, many were sentenced to death!

The IP has not only obtained the release of many innocent people but has served to illustrate that wrongful convictions are not isolated, once-in-a-lifetime occurrences in the United States. Because of the high numbers of wrongful convictions discovered by the IP, at least one state has suspended its death penalty until more safeguards are put into place to ensure that all death penalty convictions have been arrived at properly. There are now IPs in practically every state in the United States.

In the previous chapter, on serology, we learned the concept of polymorphism. Some biological evidence such as blood contains substances that occur in several forms distributed throughout the human population. Many of these factors have been extensively studied and population frequencies have been determined for them. This gives forensic scientists hard data on which to base conclusions concerning the degree of association of biological evidence to a victim or suspect. This approach, although helpful in determining whether a person left biological evidence at a crime scene, suffers from three major deficiencies. First, many polymorphic enzymes and antigens do not survive the drying process and cannot be measured in dried blood stains, which are more commonly encountered at crime scenes than fresh blood. Second, even if many of them are measured in a particular person, there is not enough total variation from one person to the next to be able to use these blood groupings to definitively associate a person with biological evidence. Finally, these polymorphic substances are present mainly in blood. If the perpetrator or victim of a crime left other biological materials such as skin, saliva or hair, these substances wouldn't be of any help.

In the early 1980s, a revolution in forensic biology occurred. Scientists demonstrated that certain parts of the DNA structure were different enough to divide human populations into many groups. Using DNA has enhanced the potential for matching a suspect or victim to biological evidence from the crime scene. It has also been shown that DNA measurements can be achieved on almost any type of biological evidence from blood to hair to skin to saliva. DNA can be typed on fresh or old evidence, even on ancient preserved mummies! In this chapter, we will explore the chemical nature of DNA and how it varies from person to person. We will show how DNA can be typed, how databases of DNA types can be constructed and searched and how databasing can help solve old, cold cases.

What Is DNA?

Deoxyribonucleic acid (*DNA*) is a large, polymeric molecule that is found in virtually every cell in the body. Two significant exceptions are red blood cells and nerve cells. Red cells are produced in bone marrow and have no need of DNA for replication, and nerve cells do not generally regenerate. DNA can be found in two regions of a cell: the nucleus and the mitochondria. Mitochondrial DNA has a different structure than nuclear DNA, is inherited differently and will be discussed later in this chapter.

Nuclear DNA is a unique type of molecule. Its shape is called a "double helix" (see Figure 17.1). Consider a very long ladder. This ladder has two poles connected by many rungs. Each rung consists of two complementary pieces that are joined together. Now take the ladder and twist it many times throughout its length until it resembles a spiral staircase. This is the geometry of the DNA molecule. The poles of the DNA molecule (called the backbone) are not significant forensically. They are exactly the same in all people. The rungs are special, however. Each rung is made up of two *bases* or *nucleotides* that are joined together in the middle as well as to the poles, so each rung is made up of a base pair. These base pairs are comprised of two of the following:

Adenine (A)
Thymine (T)
Guanine (G)
Cytosine (C)

Because of the complex chemical structure of the bases, only certain pairs can join together. The rule is that adenine can only bond to thymine and guanine can only bond to cytosine. No base can join with itself. A strand of DNA has millions of base pairs and the rules can never be violated. Figure 17.2 shows a portion of a DNA strand with some representative base pairs.

Notice that base pairs will often repeat themselves. The T-A pair repeating three times in the DNA strand in Figure 17.2 illustrates this. The order of the base pairs seems to be random. In most cases it is not. The repeats are important and the overall order of the base pairs throughout the DNA is very significant. It comprises a genetic code that directs the body to ultimately build proteins that

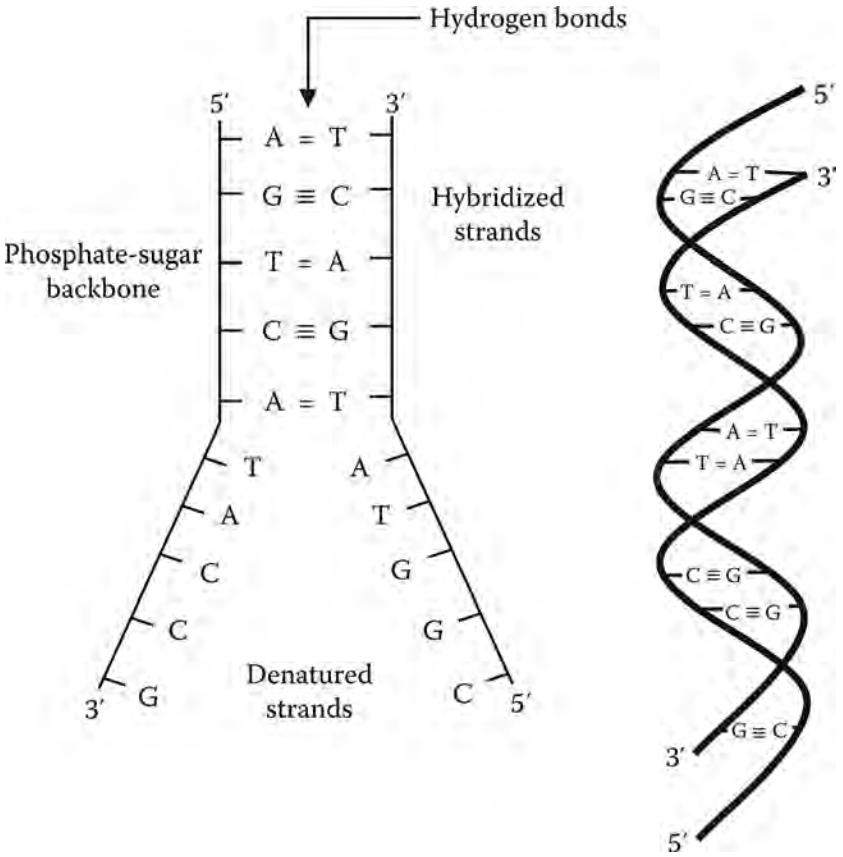

Hydrogen bonds
5′
3′
A = T
G ≡ C
T = A
C ≡ G
A = T
Hybridized strands
Phosphate-sugar backbone
T
A
C
C
G
3′
A
T
G
G
C
5′
Denatured strands
5′
3′
A = T
G ≡ C
T = A
C ≡ G
A = T
T = A
C ≡ G
C ≡ G
G ≡ C
3′
5′

Figure 17.1 Base pairing of DNA strands to form a double-helix structure. The four bases are adenine, thymine, guanine and cytosine. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

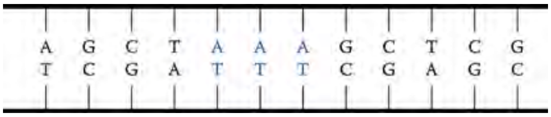

A G C T A A A G C T C G
T C G A T T T C G A G C

Figure 17.2 A base pair sequence. Only “A” can pair with “T” and only “C” can pair with “G”.

are the building blocks for all human organs and tissues. This code literally makes us who and what we are. Since the DNA comes equally from our mother and father, we inherit their characteristics according to certain rules of inheritance or laws of genetics.

Cellular DNA

Nuclear DNA is arranged in structures called “chromosomes”, which are dense packages of DNA. In human beings, there are 22 matched pairs of *autosomes* that are responsible for the genetic makeup of the individual and one pair of sex-determining chromosomes. A male contains one X and one Y sex-determining chromosome and a female contains two X chromosomes. Thus, human cells each contain 23 pairs of chromosomes. Figure 17.3 shows the human genome with the chromosomes.

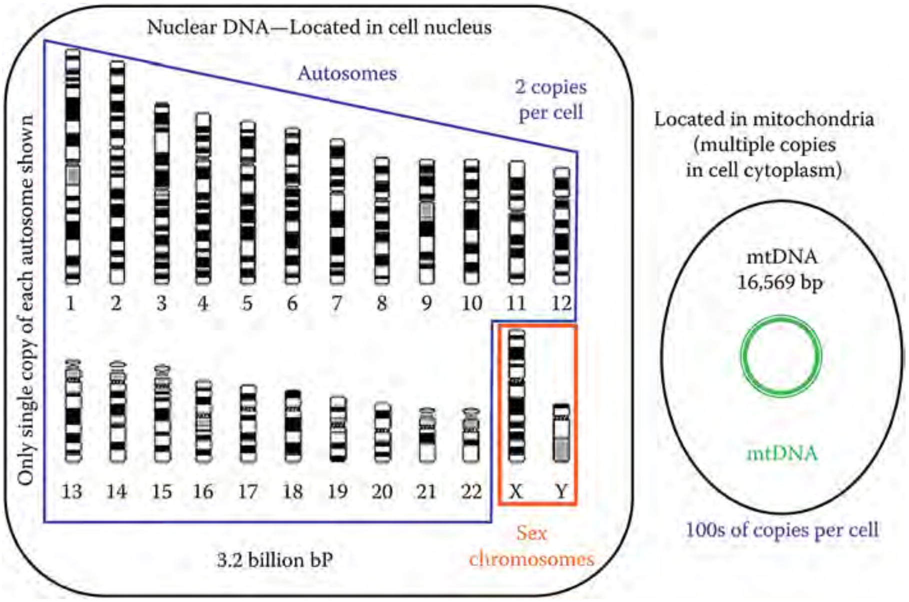

Nuclear DNA—Located in cell nucleus
Autosomes
2 copies per cell
Only single copy of each autosome shown
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 X Y
Sex chromosomes
3.2 billion bP
Located in mitochondria (multiple copies in cell cytoplasm)
mtDNA 16,569 bp
mtDNA
100s of copies per cell

Figure 17.3 The human genome contained in every cell consists of 23 pairs of chromosomes and a small circular genome known as mitochondrial DNA. Chromosomes 1–22 are numbered according to their relative size and occur in single copy pairs within a cell's nucleus with one copy being inherited from one's mother and the other copy coming from one's father. Sex chromosomes are either X, Y for males or X, X for females. Mitochondrial DNA is inherited only from one's mother and is located in the mitochondria with hundreds of copies per cell. Together the nuclear DNA material amounts to over three billion base pairs (bp) while mitochondrial DNA is only about 16,569 bp in length. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

Chromosomes in each cell, except for sperm and egg cells, are in a *diploid* state. They contain a pair of chromosomes. Each parent supplies one member of each of the 23 pairs during conception, where the father's sperm cells supply one member of each pair and the mother supplies the other in the egg cell. It is through the chromosomes that each person inherits their physical, mental and emotional characteristics from both parents. These characteristics are defined within a *genetic code* that is contained within portions of the chromosomes called "genes". A gene is a part of a chromosome consisting of a sequence of base pairs. Genes make up less than 5% of the DNA in humans. The other 95% of DNA between the genes was once thought of as being *junk* DNA, but recently, it has come to light that this DNA may have other functions.

The base pair sequences in the genes ultimately tell the cell what proteins to manufacture that result in expression of characteristics such as eye color, gender and height. The location where a gene (or other sequence of interest) is found on a chromosome is called its "locus". The human *genome* contains more than 100,000 genes. For example, there are genes that determine the color of one's hair. Since different people have different hair colors, there must be some variations within the hair color genes that result in the different hair colors in a population. These variations in characteristics are due to differences in the genetic code caused by differences in the order of the base pair sequences. A gene that exists in more than one form is referred to as "polymorphic". The different forms of genes are called "alleles". Thus, there is an allele for brown hair, red hair, etc. Some hair colors are intermediate between pure colors because a person inherits different alleles from

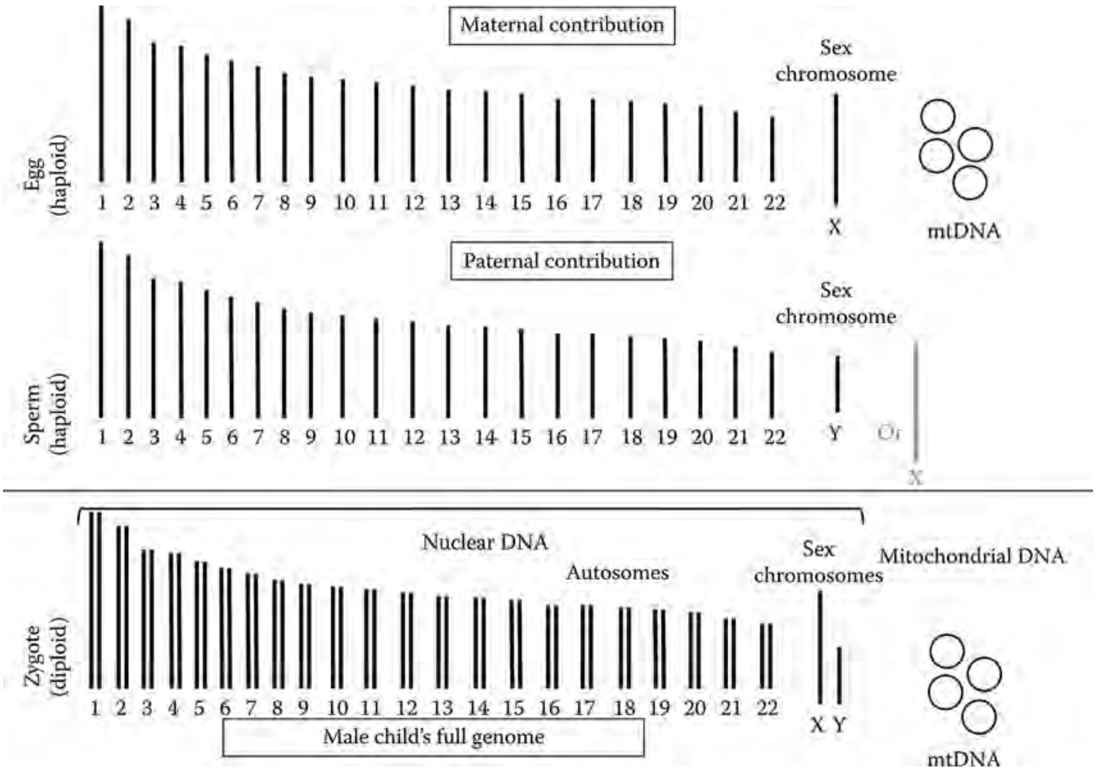

Maternal contribution
Egg (haploid)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22
Sex chromosome
X
mtDNA
Paternal contribution
Sperm (haploid)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22
Sex chromosome
Y
Or
X
Zygote (diploid)
Nuclear DNA
Autosomes
Sex chromosomes
Mitochondrial DNA
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22
X Y
Male child's full genome
mtDNA

Figure 17.4 Human genome and inheritance. The haploid complement of chromosomes from a female's egg combines with the haploid chromosomal complement of a male's sperm to create a fully diploid zygote, which eventually develops into a child whose nongamete cells each contain the same genome. Half of the 22 autosomes come from each parent while mtDNA is only inherited from the mother. The father's contribution of either an X or a Y chromosome determines the child's sex. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

each parent. If an individual inherits the same allele for a particular characteristic from both parents, he or she is said to be *homozygous* with respect to that gene. If he or she receives a different allele from each parent, then he or she is *heterozygous* with respect to that gene. Figure 17.4 shows how both parents contribute one chromosome of each of the 23 pairs to the offspring.

If a person inherits genes from a parent that codes for brown hair and genes from the other parent that code for blond hair, he or she will usually have brown hair. This is because the allele for brown hair is *dominant* and the allele for blond hair is *recessive*.

DNA Polymorphisms and Population Genetics

There are two types of polymorphism in genes. The first is called "sequence polymorphism". This occurs when there is a difference in one or more base pairs within a gene. Examine the base pair sequence in the short strand of DNA shown here. Note the difference in the base pair at the position marked by the arrow. The two sequences are identical except for that single base pair.

C T C G A T T A A G G   C T C G T T T A A G G
: : : : ▲ : : : : : : and : : : : ▲ : : : : : :
G A G C T A A T T C C   G A G C A A A T T C C

The other type of polymorphism is called “length polymorphism”. This occurs in strands of DNA where repeating sequences of base pairs are encountered. Examine the following DNA strands:

```
C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C
: : : : : : : : : : : : : :
G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G

C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C
: : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : :
G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G

C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C – C A T G T A C
: : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : :
G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G – G T A C A T G
```

All three of the strands contain the base pair sequence:

```
C A T G T A C
: : : : : : :
G T A C A T G
```

In the first strand, the sequence repeats twice. In the second strand, the same sequence repeats four times, and in the third strand, six times. Because the repeats occur right next to each other, without any intervening base pairs, they are referred to as “tandem” repeats. Length and sequence polymorphism are very important in distinguishing one person’s DNA from another because certain strands of DNA might differ from one person to the next only by a small sequence or length polymorphism. Modern methods of DNA typing take advantage of length polymorphisms. In these methods a locus is examined to determine if the repeats are the same or different. The frequency of these repeats in the human population can then be estimated. Other loci can then be examined to determine the repeating sequences there and their population frequency. These frequencies are expressed as the probability that this pair of frequencies would occur. The loci that are examined in DNA typing today are all independently derived, and thus the probability that an overall DNA type would occur is the product of the probabilities of occurrence at each individual locus. If DNA from an evidentiary sample has the same alleles at each locus as does the DNA from a suspect, the probability that the DNA belongs to someone else (a chance occurrence) is extremely small. If the DNA sequences at even one locus do not match, then that suspect could not be the source of the DNA. There are vast databases of DNA types at each of the loci that are used in modern DNA typing. These databases can be searched digitally to determine if an individual has the same DNA type as that of evidence derived from a crime.

The product rule can be illustrated by the process of repeated flipping of a coin. There are two possible outcomes from flipping a coin: heads (H) or tails (T). Since they are equally likely of occurring, the probability of getting heads is 1/2 or 0.5. Suppose a coin is flipped twice. What are the odds that it will come up heads both times? There are four possible outcomes from flipping a coin twice: H–H, H–T, T–H and T–T. Each of these possibilities has an equal likelihood of occurring since a coin has no memory of how it lands on each flip. Thus, the probability that it will come up heads both times (H-H) is 1/4 or 0.25. This number can be arrived at using the *product rule*. This rule states that the probability of two or more independent events occurring is the product of the probabilities of each event. Thus, the probability of two coin flips coming up heads is 1/2 × 1/2 = 1/4 because the probability of heads coming up on one flip is 1/2 and on the other flip, 1/2. Likewise, the probability of getting heads three times in a row is 1/8 or 0.125. This is because there are eight possibilities that can occur when a coin is flipped three times: H–H–H, H–H–T, H–T–H, T–T–H, H–T–T, T–H–T, T–H–H and T–T–T. Only one of these possibilities (H–H–H) results in getting heads all three times. The more times a coin is flipped, the less chance that any particular outcome will occur. It is very important that each event be independent of the others or the rule will not apply.

Something for You to Do

Take a deck of 52 cards. How many different cards are there and how many of each card are there in a full deck? What is the probability that a card drawn at random will be an ace? Now what is the probability that the next card you draw will also be an ace? Remember how many cards are left and how many aces are left in the deck if you draw an ace on the first try. Using probabilities, you can calculate the chances of getting dealt any poker or blackjack hand. The proprietors of casinos at gambling establishments determine their payouts on various games of chance by the probabilities of your drawing each kind of hand and the chances that you will beat the house on each type of game. For example, a roulette wheel contains the numbers 1 through 36 plus a 0 and 00. If you bet $1 on any number and the payoff for hitting that number is $36, you will eventually lose your money because the probability of hitting a given number on a spin of the wheel is 38 to 1. If you bet $1 on the number 7 every time, it should come up once on the average of every 38 spins. If it comes up on the 38th spin, you have bet $38 and you finally get back $36 for hitting the number. Over time, you have to lose.

Going back to the coin flip, what are the odds of getting a tail 10 times in a row? It is more than a 1000 to 1. One way to visualize this is that you would have to make more than 1000 tries at flipping a coin 10 times to ensure on the average that one of those tries would give 10 straight heads.

Collection and Preservation of DNA Evidence

It has been said many times that forensic evidence is only as good as the skills of the people who collect it. Some people describe this as “garbage in, garbage out”. This is especially true with biological evidence that can be highly perishable. Even though DNA is an amazingly hearty substance, its degradation can be a problem. Improperly preserved DNA can be rendered useless in a short time. Today, traces of DNA are sufficient to obtain a complete profile. Stamps and envelopes that have been licked with saliva contain enough cells to be DNA typed. Toothbrushes, pillows, the inside of a hat and discarded chewing gum are all potential sources for DNA.

Special care must be taken in collecting biological evidence. It should always be assumed to be infectious; it could be a carrier for diseases such as hepatitis or AIDS. There should be minimal contact with the evidence. Contamination of biological evidence is a real problem, especially since so little DNA is necessary to type. All precautions against contamination must be taken. These include wearing protective clothing that minimizes the loss of hair or dandruff or other biological material from the person collecting the evidence, wearing gloves and changing them every time new evidence is to be collected, using tools such as tweezers to collect evidence and making sure that positive and negative controls are collected as well as *elimination samples*. These are known samples of DNA collected from all personnel at the scene who could possibly have contributed DNA.

Biological evidence must never be packaged in airtight containers because moisture can build up, which promotes the growth of bacteria that can degrade DNA. Paper bags or other *breathable* containers should be used. Wherever possible, if a garment or other material is suspected to contain blood, the whole article should be submitted. If that is not possible, then samples can be removed and sent to the lab. These must always be accompanied by a sample of the article that doesn't contain any biological material. This is called a "substrate control", a type of negative control (see Chapter 3 for a discussion of positive and negative controls and their importance in chemical analysis of evidence). Although most cellular material in humans contains DNA, known samples are usually collected from gently scraping the inside of the cheek. These *buccal samples* contain more than enough DNA for typing and are obtained easily and with a minimum of invasion of the person's body. If blood samples are taken, they should be put in tubes that already contain a preservative such as *ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid*.

History of DNA Typing

The DNA typing community settled on a technique of DNA analysis known as *STRs* in the late 1990s, and this technique is still being used, albeit with refinements. But STRs did not arise from a vacuum. They are the result of many years of research and trial and error into the best ways to incorporate validated DNA typing methods to the unique circumstances of evidence development from humans (or perhaps other animals). Before discussing current methods of DNA typing, it is useful to look at how typing methods developed.

Prior to about 1985, DNA typing had not been adapted for evidentiary purposes. Virtually all work in isolating and characterizing DNA was done for medical purposes.

Prior to DNA, typing blood was analyzed for components that differed among segments of the human population. The first breakthrough occurred in 1900, when Dr. Karl Landsteiner, an Austrian researcher, discovered that there were four different types of blood types that differed by the presence or absence of certain antigens on the surface of red blood cells. This gave rise to the ABO blood typing system, described in the chapter on forensic serology. Later, the MNSs and Rh blood typing systems were discovered. Each of these systems divides or *bins* the human population into various groups by which of the blood types they have in each system. Their use spread all over the world over the next few decades, including use in forensic blood typing. Today, more than 30 different blood typing systems have been recognized. This method of blood typing for forensic purposes was replaced by DNA typing, in part because the blood types are not nearly as discriminating as DNA typing. Some blood types, principally, the ABO antigens, also show up in body fluids such as semen, saliva and sperm. This made it possible to type these body fluids in the same way that blood could be typed.

As the 1900s proceed, polymorphic red and white blood cell enzymes were developed and characterized. These systems turned out to be more discriminating than antigen-based blood types, and, for a time, blood cell enzymes were used both in criminal cases on blood evidence and in paternity cases, where it was necessary to establish if a particular male was the father of a child born out of wedlock.

Restriction Fragment Length Polymorphism

DNA typing (or DNA fingerprinting as it was then known) was first developed by Sir Alec Jeffries, a British geneticist. In 1985, Dr. Jeffries discovered that certain sequences of DNA repeated themselves like pearls in a necklace and, further, that there was variation in the number of these repeats within a human population. He developed a technique to determine the length of the repeating fragments in a sample of blood or any other tissue that contained DNA. He called the repeating sequences “variable number of tandem repeats” (VNTRs), and the technique for analyzing them became known as “restriction fragment length polymorphism” (RFLP). This name described in part the process used to determine the VNTRs. The DNA was separated from other cellular materials and then the double-stranded DNA was denaturized, unzipped into a single-strand DNA. Special enzymes called “restriction enzymes” were created that could seek out and identify the ends of the repeating DNA sequences in the VNTRs wherever they appeared in a cell’s DNA and snip the DNA strands at these ends, thus isolating the VNTRs. Once the restriction enzymes had done their work, the cut DNA strands were subjected to a form of gel electrophoresis that separated the strands by length. Of course, all of the pieces of DNA were separated and were present somewhere on the plate where the electrophoresis was carried out. The VNTRs were then *hybridized*; complementary strands of DNA, called “probes”, were introduced that bound themselves to the VNTRs only. Figure 17.5 shows how hybridization works.

These probes of DNA were originally radioactively labeled so that an image of the gel electrophoresis plate would expose a photographic plate only where the radioactivity occurred, thus visualizing the parts of the plate containing the VNTRs. Later, the probes were labeled with phosphors that glowed when exposed to ultraviolet light. Some of the difficulties with RFLP included the need to have a relatively large amount of material (compared to more modern methods) to get a successful analysis, the need for high-molecular-weight DNA molecules (mainly nondegraded DNA) and long analysis time frames. Figure 17.6 is a summary of the RFLP process.

PCR

At about the same time that Dr. Jeffries was developing his *DNA fingerprinting* methods using RFLP, work was going on in the United States to develop another method of DNA typing. Dr. Kary Mullis had invented a technique for making exact copies of pieces of DNA. This technique could be used to make millions of copies of any desired strand of DNA, large or small in a relatively short time,

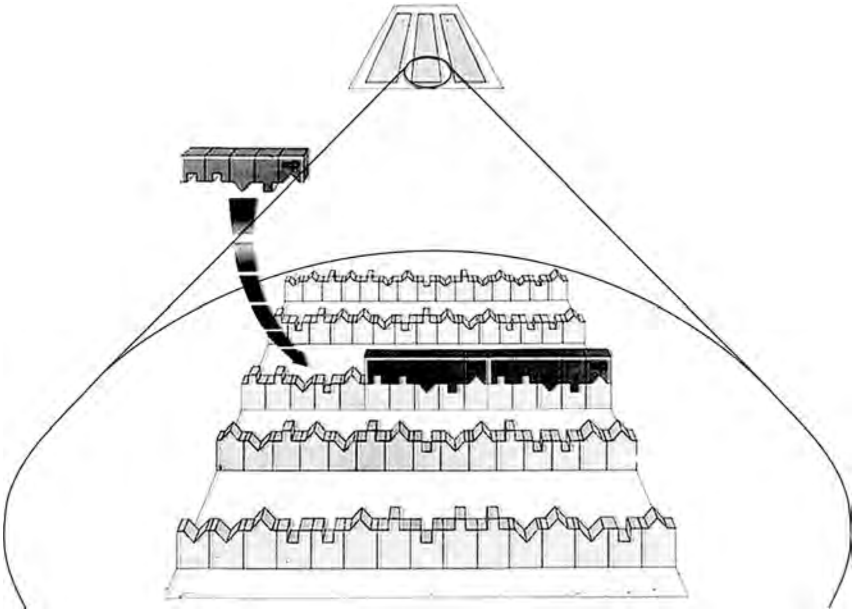


Figure 17.5 Probe hybridization. The black pieces are radioactive or fluorescent probes that are engineered to be complementary to the variable number of tandem repeats (VNTRs). The result is that the VNTRs become radioactively or fluorescently labeled.

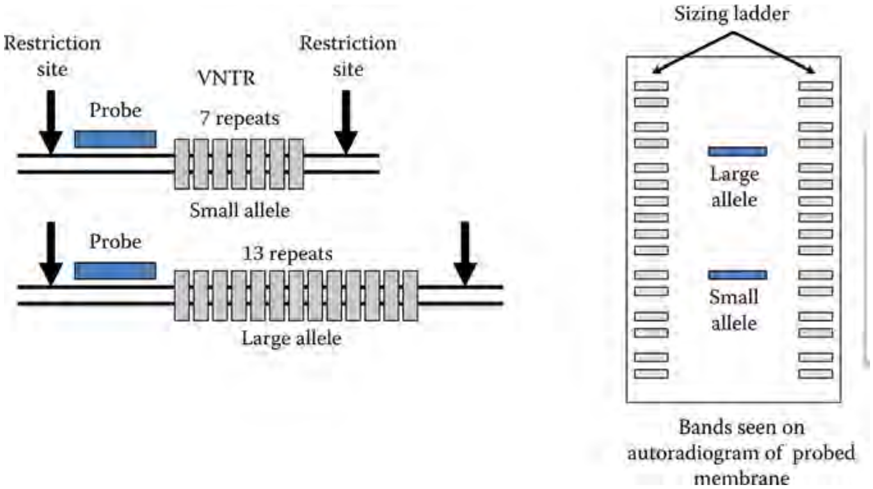

Restriction site
Probe
VNTR
7 repeats
Restriction site
Small allele
Probe
13 repeats
Large allele
Sizing ladder
Large allele
Small allele
Bands seen on autoradiogram of probed membrane

Figure 17.6 Illustration of the key processes with restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis. DNA from an individual, possessing two different size alleles at a single variable number of tandem repeat (VNTR) locus, is digested with a restriction enzyme. Arrows indicate restriction sites around a small and a large VNTR allele that varies in size due to the number of repeat units. The digested DNA is separated in terms of size via gel electrophoresis and transferred to a nylon membrane via Southern blotting. The membrane is washed with a radioactive or chemiluminescent probe that binds at a single probe site on each allele. A sizing ladder is run in adjacent lanes on the gel in order to estimate the VNTR allele sizes. The DNA fragments are placed into bins based on their size and then compared to other samples. The first probe is then removed and another probe is hybridized to the membrane and the process repeated to obtain results from typically four to six probes. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

using extremely small amounts of material. He called this technique "polymerase chain reaction (PCR)". As with most other methods for the manipulation of DNA, PCR was not originally developed for forensic purposes, so it took several years for the forensic community to develop genetic marker systems that could take advantage of the speed and sensitivity of PCR.

DNA Amplification by PCR

DNA is amplified through the action of *DNA polymerase*, an enzyme that is present in all living organisms. As a cell divides, DNA is replicated so the exact same type and amount is present in the new cell. During cell division the DNA first denatures, becoming single stranded. DNA polymerase catalyzes the addition of complimentary base pairs to the DNA, thus forming new double-helix strands. Dr. Mullis developed a *thermal cycler*, an instrument that can be heated to various temperatures under controlled conditions. Figure 17.7 shows a picture of a thermal cycler.

The PCR process takes place in the thermal cycler. The DNA that is to be replicated is mixed with a solvent, the DNA polymerase, as well as short pieces of DNA called "primers", and a supply of the four bases (C, T, A, G) that will be added to the DNA one by one to replicate it. The amplification process takes place in three steps. The process is shown in Figure 17.8.

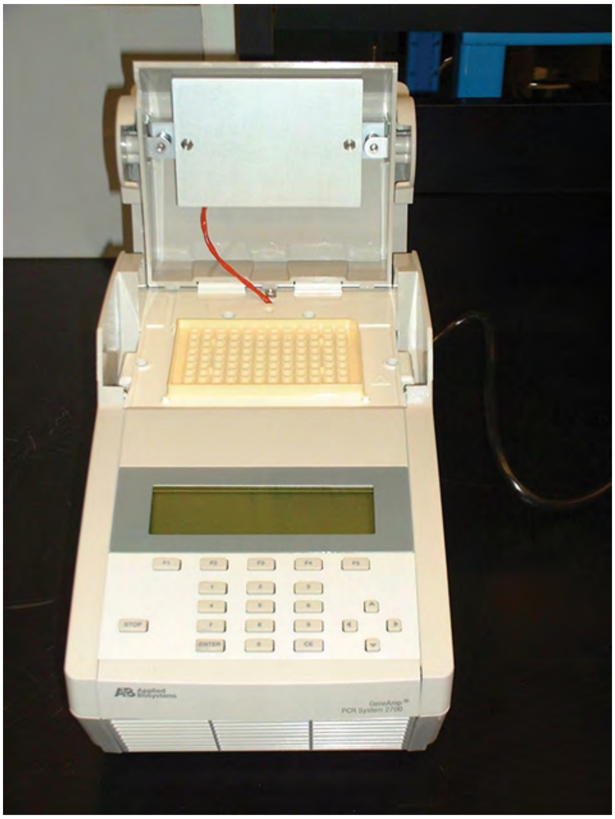


Figure 17.7 A thermocycler. Courtesy of Richard Li.

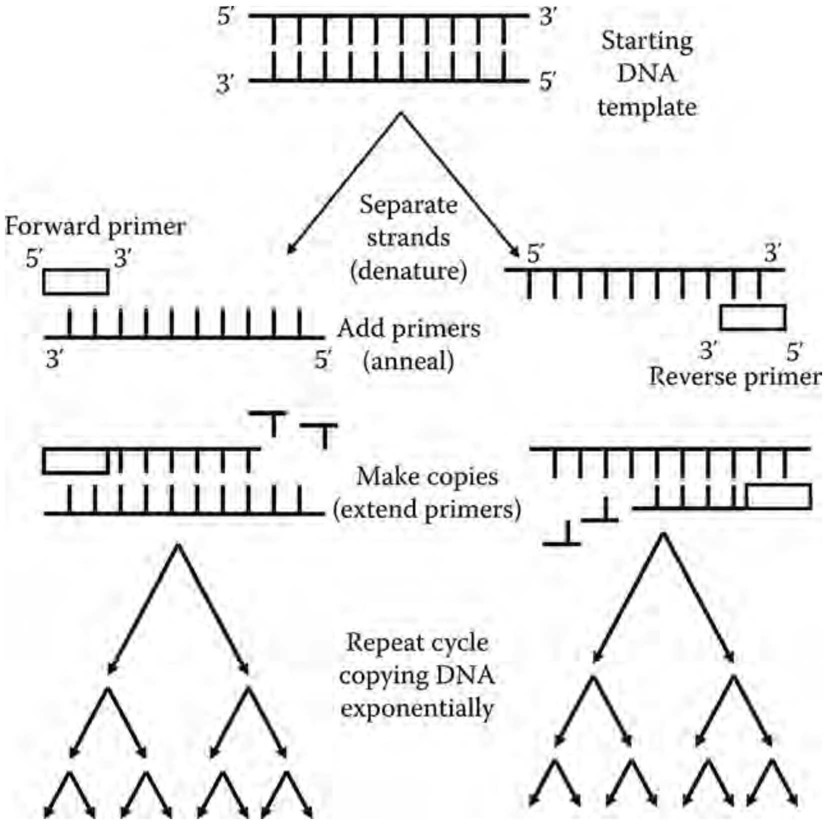

5′
3′
3′
5′
Starting DNA template
Separate strands (denature)
Forward primer
5′
3′
3′
5′
Add primers (anneal)
5′
3′
3′
5′
Reverse primer
Make copies (extend primers)
Repeat cycle copying DNA exponentially

Figure 17.8 7.2 DNA amplification process with the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). In each cycle, the two DNA template strands are first separated (denatured) by heat. The sample is then cooled to an appropriate temperature to bind (anneal) the oligonucleotide primers. Finally, the temperature of the sample is raised to the optimal temperature for the DNA polymerase and it extends the primers to produce a copy of each DNA template strand. For each cycle, the number of DNA molecular fragments (with the sequence between the two PCR primers) doubles. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

1. *Denaturation*: The mixture is heated close to boiling causing the strands of DNA to denature and become single stranded. Each piece of complimentary single-stranded DNA will become the template for the formation of a new strand.
2. *Annealing*: The temperature of the mixture is lowered. The primers then add to one end of each of the single-stranded DNA. These will be the starting points for the formation of new double-stranded DNA.
3. *Extension*: In the presence of DNA polymerase as a catalyst, a base (nucleotide) adds to the first open position next to the primer according to the base that is already on the single strand. This process repeats until the new strand is complete. The same thing is happening to both of the single strands, so when the process is complete, there are now two complete double strands of DNA.

The mixture is now reheated and the two strands denature and the process repeats. The second time the process is completed there are now four strands. Each cycle doubles the previous amount of DNA. In most cases, 25–30 cycles are completed. In theory, if 30 cycles are completed, there should be 2^{30} strands of DNA or about 1 trillion pieces of DNA! Thirty cycles of PCR can be carried out in

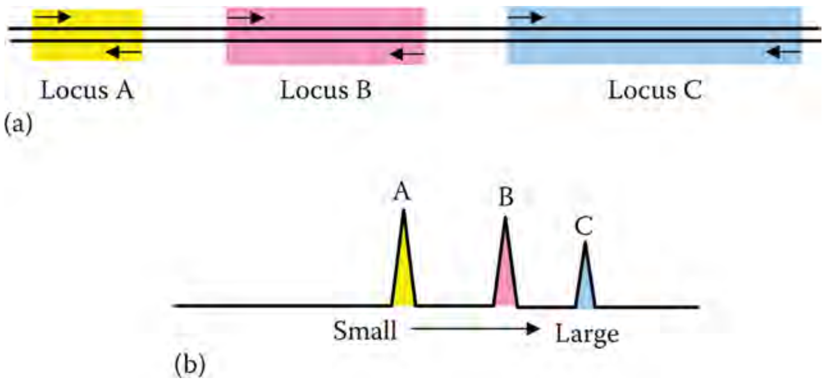


Figure 17.9 Schematic of multiplex polymerase chain reaction (PCR). A multiplex PCR makes use of two or more primer sets within the same reaction mix. Three sets of primers, represented by arrows, are shown here to amplify three different loci on a DNA template (a). The primers were designed so that the PCR products for locus A, locus B and locus C would be different sizes and therefore resolvable with a size-based separation system (b). Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

a matter of a few hours. It is also possible to simultaneously amplify several locations on DNA using PCR. This is shown in Figure 17.9.

First PCR-Based DNA Typing Methods

Over the years since the PCR was developed and adapted to forensic purposes, a number of methods for DNA typing have been developed that can narrow down the possible source of biological evidence.

The first method was used to detect sequence polymorphisms in a gene that expressed a white cell blood enzyme called HLA DQ alpha/DQA1. The first form of this test detected six different alleles of this DNA fragment, resulting in 21 different DNA types at this locus. A later development resulted in the detection of an additional allele and 28 different DNA types.

Later, the developer of the DQ alpha system, the Perkin-Elmer Corporation, developed a more robust PCR-based system called PolyMarker. In this method, the DQ alpha gene was amplified and detected along with five additional DNA fragments. These had only two or three different alleles each, and thus its discrimination power, although improved, still could only narrow down the source of a DNA sample to about one in 10,000.

In order to increase the discrimination power of PCR-based DNA typing, the forensic biology community led by the FBI explored possible length polymorphic loci that could be exploited. Collectively, these were called "amplified fragment length polymorphisms" (AMP-FLPs). The first one that gained widespread acceptance in the early 1990s was called DS180. This consisted of a 16 bp repeating unit. The repeats occurred between 14 and 41 times. The DNA segments were amplified by PCR and then separated on a gel by capillary electrophoresis. Silver staining was used to visualize the bands. The DS180 system suffered from several drawbacks; the analysis was time consuming and required a good deal of user intervention, which precluded the ability to automate the analysis. In addition, it employed a large fragment of DNA that limited its use on degraded samples, and the large size of the fragment precluded simultaneous analysis with other shorter AMP-FLPs.

Current Method of DNA Typing: STRs

At about the same time that these PCR methods were being developed, some scientists began evaluating shorter length polymorphisms. These so-called microsatellites had repeating sequences that were 2–7 bp long, in contrast to DS180 and other *minisatellites*, which had repeats that were generally between 10 and 100 bp. As will be demonstrated in the next section, the use of these *STRs* provided significant advantages over minisatellite methods, and ultimately, STRs became the method of choice worldwide. When STRs were first developed, the DNA fragments were separated and displayed using gel electrophoresis. This is shown in Figure 17.10.

Later, capillary electrophoresis was developed for use with STR analysis. It is modified to group the loci and display them in different colors by using several filters. A schematic of a capillary electrophoresis apparatus is shown in Figure 17.11.

Figure 17.12 shows an electropherogram containing 16 loci including amelogenin (to determine sex). Notice that for most of the loci, there are two peaks indicating that two alleles were present. Remember that this is because we inherit one allele from each parent and they are often different forms.

Table 17.1 lists the known population frequencies for 13 common loci to illustrate how statistics are used in interpreting DNA types. When the population frequency of each allele at each locus is known, the product rule will yield probabilities of an overall frequency in the population that are staggeringly small as can be seen in Table 17.1 for a hypothetical African-American male.

The first column is the locus where the STR is found. The second column (genotype) is the particular alleles that this individual possesses. Note that he is heterozygous at 10 loci and homozygous at D13S317, D8S1179 and FGA. The third column (allele frequencies) contains the allele frequencies for each allele. For example, in CSF1P0, the 10 allele is found in 271 out of every thousand people in

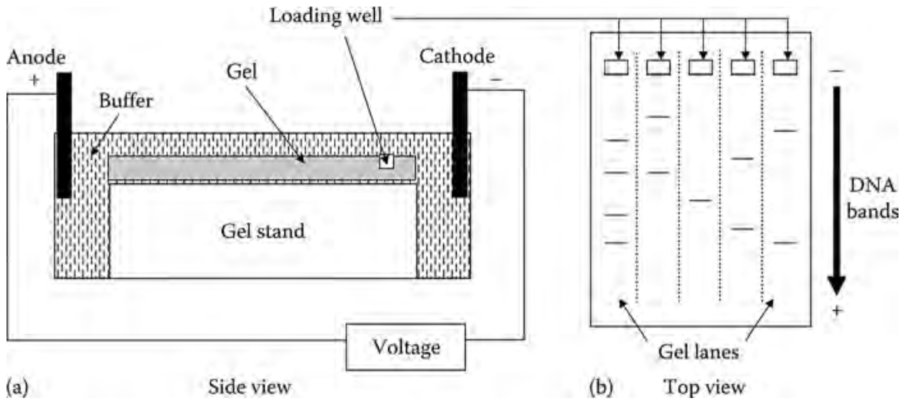


Figure 17.10 Schematic of a gel electrophoresis system. (a) The horizontal gel is submerged in a tank full of electrophoresis buffer. DNA samples are loaded into wells across the top of the gel. These wells are created by a "comb" placed in the gel while it is forming. When the voltage is applied across the two electrodes, the DNA molecules move toward the anode and separate by size. (b) The number of lanes available on a gel is dependent on the number of teeth in the comb used to define the loading wells. At least one lane on each gel is taken up by a relative molecular mass size standard that is used to estimate the sizes of the sample bands in the other lanes. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

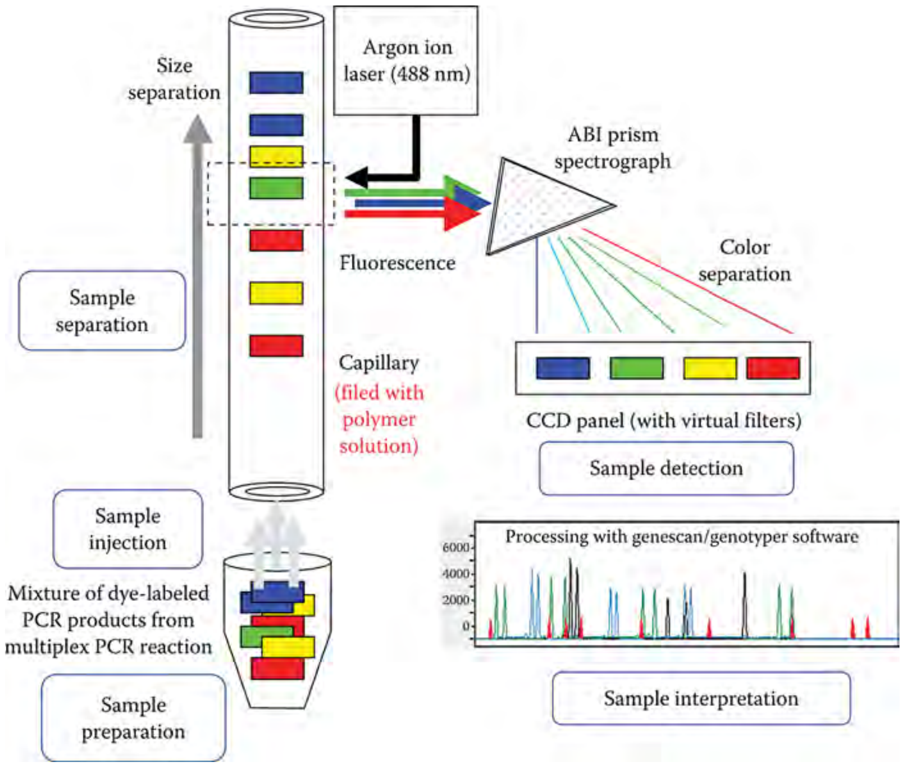

Size
separation
Argon ion
laser (488 nm)
ABI prism
spectrograph
Fluorescence
Color
separation
Sample
separation
Capillary
(filed with
polymer
solution)
CCD panel (with virtual filters)
Sample detection
Sample
injection
Processing with genescan/genotyper software
6000
4000
2000
0
Mixture of dye-labeled
PCR products from
multiplex PCR reaction
Sample
preparation
Sample interpretation

Figure 17.11 Schematic illustration of the separation and detection of STR alleles with an ABI Prism 310 Genetic Analyzer. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

the black population. The fourth column (match statistic) is two times the product of the allele frequencies when the locus is heterozygous and the square of the allele frequency in homozygous cases. To find the random match statistic, all 13 match statistics are multiplied (rule of multiplication). The final number, 7 septillion, is astronomic. As a point of reference, it is estimated that there have been no more than 100 billion (100,000,000,000) people that have ever lived on earth.

How does one interpret this final number? It is sometimes called “the odds of a chance occurrence”. Suppose that the evidence at a crime scene has DNA of the exact type shown in Table 17.1. Further, suppose that a suspect in the case has the exact same DNA type. A very important question for the trier of fact at a trial would be: “What are the chances that the owner of the DNA could be someone else other than the suspect?” If the trier of fact is going to assume that the suspect is the owner of the DNA, it would be very disturbing to find out later that someone else coincidentally had the same DNA. The huge final match statistic, 5.422×10^{-19}, shows that the chance of a coincidental match is extremely remote. The statistic indicates that only 1 out of every 1,837,000,000,000,000,000 people in the black population should have this same DNA type. This doesn’t mean that no two black people have this same DNA type. These population frequencies for each allele are drawn from a sample of the black population, not the entire population. It would never be possible to conclude that no one else has this same DNA type without testing the entire population, a practical impossibility. Thus, the idea of individualizing even DNA evidence is controversial. It is not possible to prove individuality and it shouldn’t be inferred from statistical arguments. One must be very careful about making inferences from so-called rare events, such as a

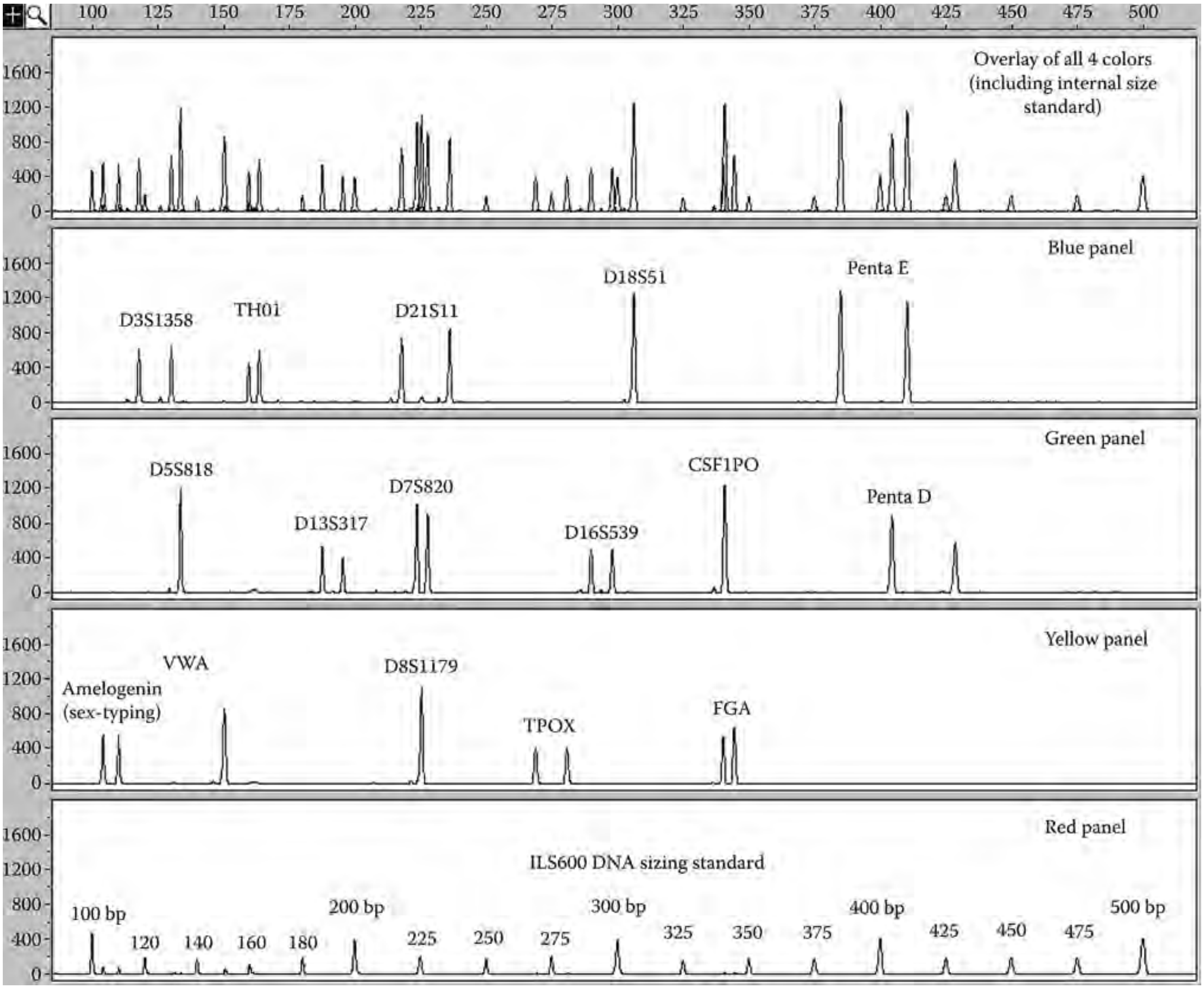


Figure 17.12 PowerPlex 16 result from 1 ng genomic DNA. Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

particular DNA type. Consider birthdays; there are 365 possible birthdays. One would suppose that in a room containing 100 people, the odds of two of them having the same birthday would be small. In fact, it is nearly a 50% chance! Nonetheless, consider that people who become suspects in crimes are there for a reason or usually multiple reasons. There will always be multiple types of evidence that makes that person a suspect. The DNA type is only one of those pieces of evidence. The conclusion that the DNA type in question is very rare and the chances of a coincidental match between evidentiary DNA and a suspect is very small should be sufficient in a criminal trial.

Determination of Gender

In many cases, especially those involving sexual assault, it is important to know if the biological sample belongs to a male or a female. There are two approaches taken in gender determination. The first involves analysis of the locus called "amelogenin". Amelogenin is found in one region of the chromosomes that

TABLE 17.1
Population Statistics for 13 Loci in Hypothetical African-American Male

Locus	Genotype	Allele Frequencies	Match Statistic
CSF1PO	10, 12	0.257; 0.298	0.153
D13S317	11, 11	0.306	0.09036
D16S539	11, 12	0.318; 0.096	0.125
D18S51	14, 18	0.072; 0.123	0.0177
D21S11	27, 37	0.078; 0.002	0.000831
D3S1358	15, 17	0.302; 0.205	0.123
D5S818	8, 12	0.048; 0.353	0.0338
D7S820	8, 10	0.236; 0.331	0.156
D8S1179	12, 12	0.141	0.0199
FGA	22, 22	0.196	0.0384
THO1	6, 9	0.124; 0.151	0.0374
TPOX	10, 11	0.089; 0.219	0.0389
vWA	15, 16	0.236; 0.269	0.127

Source: Courtesy of Orchid Genescreen, East Lansing, MI.
Note: Random Match Statistic: 2.327×10^{-18} or 1 person in 427,800,000,000,000,000 chosen at random from the black population would be expected to match by chance.

determine gender. These are the *X* and *Y* chromosomes. Amelogenin is not an STR but is commonly analyzed along with STRs by capillary electrophoresis. At one region of the amelogenin locus males have six more base pairs than do females. Females always receive an X chromosome from each parent whereas males have one X chromosome and one Y chromosome. Females will thus show only one band for amelogenin whereas males will have two bands, one of which is six base pairs longer than the other. Even if the stain is mixed with a male fraction and a female fraction, it will be possible to determine that both are present using amelogenin.

The other method of gender determination is to analyze the STRs that are present only on the Y chromosome. These are called “Y-STRs”. This type of analysis is also useful in mixed stains, even those that are badly degraded or contain a large female fraction, as would be expected in vaginal swabs in a sexual assault case.

Mitochondrial DNA

Sometimes it is not possible to obtain nuclear DNA for analysis or it may be so degraded that analysis is not possible. This is sometimes the case with skeletal remains. Fortunately there is another kind of DNA present in the body, although it makes up only about 1% of the DNA. This DNA is located in the *mitochondria*. Mitochondria are structures present in every cell in the body without exception. They are in the cytoplasm, outside the nucleus. Mitochondria are responsible for energy production in the cell and they contain DNA that helps in this function. There are thousands of mitochondria in each cell and thus thousands of copies of DNA whereas there are only a few copies of nuclear DNA in each cell.

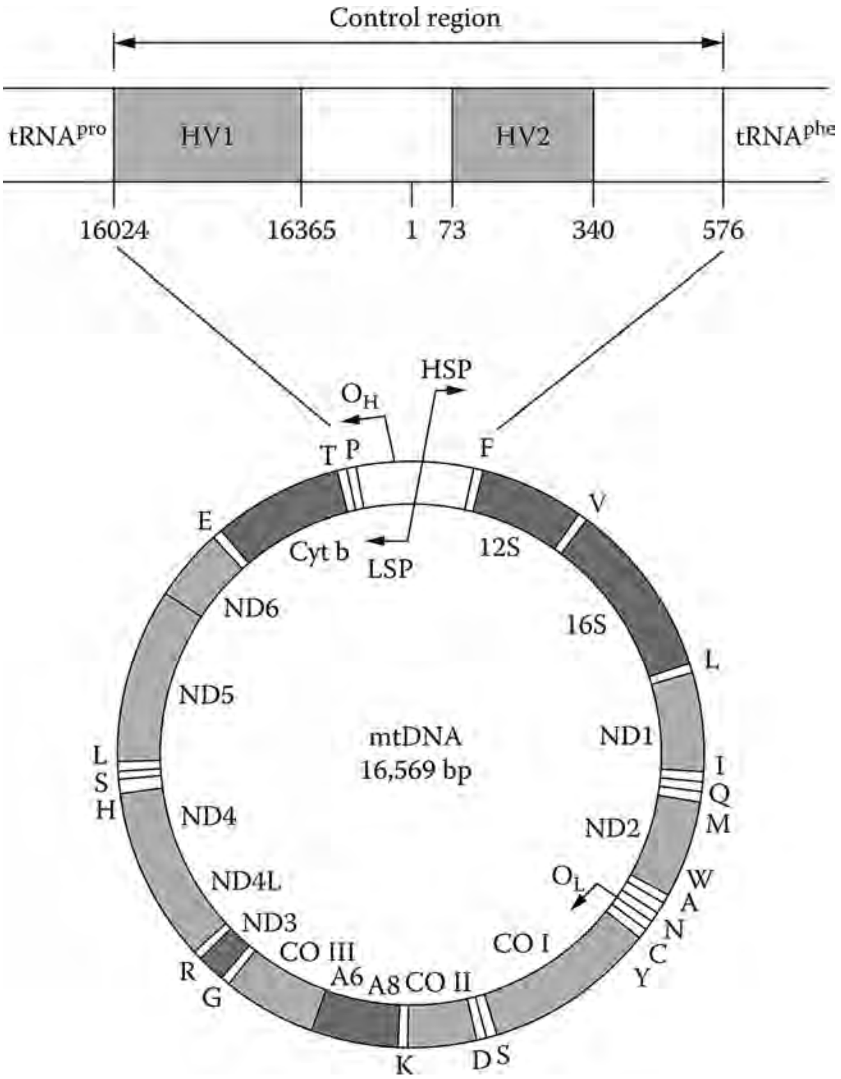

Control region
tRNA^pro
HV1
HV2
tRNA^phe
16024
16365
1
73
340
576
HSP
O_H
T
P
F
V
E
Cyt b
LSP
12S
ND6
16S
L
ND5
mtDNA
16,569 bp
ND1
I
Q
M
L
S
H
ND4
ND2
O_L
W
A
N
C
Y
ND4L
ND3
CO III
CO I
R
G
A6
A8
CO II
K
D
S

Figure 17.13 There are 37 genes in human mitochondrial DNA that direct energy production, but the forensically important part consists of about 1100 base pairs within two regions that do not have a genetic code function. These regions are highly variable (*hypervariable*) and are quite useful in DNA comparisons. The two regions are called "HV1" and "HV2".

Mitochondrial DNA differs from nuclear DNA in important ways. First, it is not arranged in a double helix but instead is circular. This is shown in Figure 17.13. There are 37 genes in human mitochondrial DNA that direct energy production, but the forensically important part consists of about 1100 base pairs within two regions that do not have a genetic code function. These regions are highly variable (*hypervariable*) and are quite useful in DNA comparisons. The two regions are called "HV1" and "HV2".

Mitochondrial DNA is inherited only from the mother. There is no contribution to mitochondrial DNA from the father. This makes mitochondrial DNA typing a useful vehicle for tracing one's parentage back through the maternal line. Every sibling in a family has the same mitochondrial DNA as each other and their mother and maternal grandmother, etc. Although there is a great deal of variability in mitochondrial DNA among unrelated people, there are only two regions that exhibit this variability so that the match probabilities in mitochondrial DNA typing are much lower than with cellular DNA.

CODIS

One of the most important advances in DNA typing has been the development of local, state and national databases that contain DNA types of many people who have been involved in crimes. When DNA from an unknown suspect is found at a crime scene, it can be typed and the type sent to a database that contains thousands of DNA types from people who have been convicted of a felony or, in some cases, arrested for felony crimes. There have been many cases where blind hits have been made even in cases where the perpetrator committed crimes in a different state. The set of DNA databases is called "CODIS" or *Combined DNA Index System*. CODIS began in 1990 and is arranged in three layers. The first is the local level where all of the DNA profiles are first entered. These local databases feed into a statewide database. The 50 state databases then feed into a national CODIS database. This system allows crime laboratories to search a particular case at the appropriate level for that case. This saves time and resources. Every state in the United States participates in the CODIS and each state has passed legislation that mandates which offenders must contribute samples of DNA for inclusion in the database. The only thing that has held back the development of CODIS is a lack of funding to crime laboratories for processing the samples. Active cases are the top priority of every crime lab, and samples that are collected just for entry into CODIS must take a back seat. As a result, there are hundreds of thousands of cases backlogged in crime labs nationwide. It is important to get this data entered into CODIS because law enforcement agencies are now going back to old cases where they have biological evidence but no suspect and are now processing the evidence and entering the data into CODIS for search purposes. There have been hundreds of hits nationwide in these so-called cold cases. There are three levels of CODIS that can be used to search for a hit. They are *local*, *state* and *national*. This is illustrated in Figure 17.14.

In order to make CODIS work, all of the data that is entered for each case must be of the same type. The 13 loci that are described in Table 17.1 are the standard loci for CODIS and each sample must have a DNA type at those 13 loci. According to the FBI, more than 27,000 investigations have been aided in 49 states, in federal labs and in Puerto Rico as of August 2005. An investigation in this context is a case where a match for DNA was produced by CODIS that would not have otherwise occurred (see http://www.fbi.gov/hq/lab/codis/aidedmap.htm).

CODIS Success Stories

The FBI periodically describes CODIS success stories on their website. Three examples are given in the following (see http://www.fbi.gov/success.htm).

Solving a Double Murder in the Deep South

In the summer of 1992, Rita Baldo and her daughter Lisa were murdered in their Florida apartment. Both had gunshot wounds to the head and Lisa had been raped. Investigators found DNA in the saliva of three cigarette butts at the scene

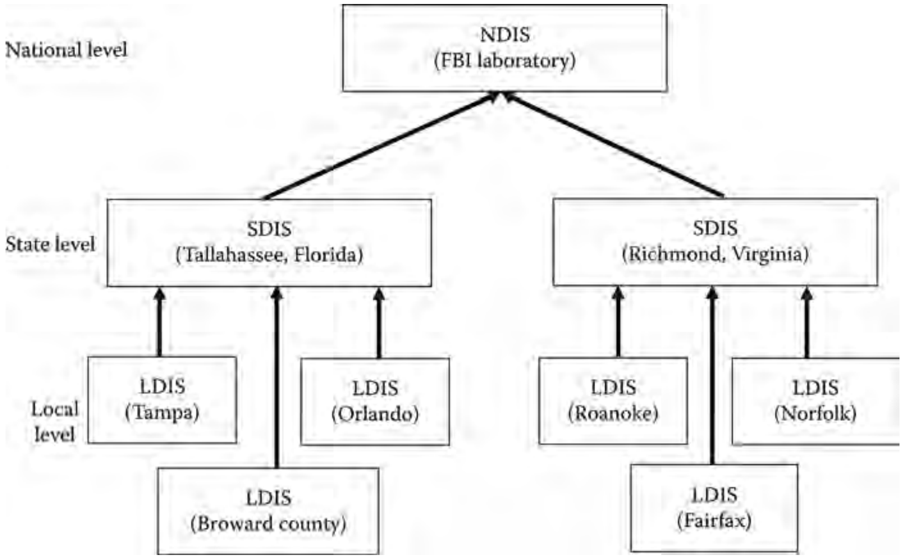


Figure 17.14 Schematic of the three tiers in the Combined DNA Index System (CODIS). DNA profile information begins at the local level, or Local DNA Index System (LDIS), and then can be uploaded to the state level, or State DNA Index System (SDIS), and finally to the national level, or National DNA Index System (NDIS). Each local or state laboratory maintains its portion of CODIS while the FBI Laboratory maintains the national portion (NDIS). Contribution of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2010.

(neither of the women smoked). The DNA profile was compared with those taken from various suspects in the case, but none matched. The profile was uploaded to CODIS in 1998. Three years later, a Wisconsin forensic scientist matched a profile from that state's convicted offenders' database with the DNA from the Florida case. The profile came from convicted felon James A. Frederick, who was serving time in Wisconsin. A later, more sophisticated test of hairs in the apartment also matched Frederick's DNA. Frederick was indicted in May 2003.

Putting a Rapist on Parole behind Bars for Good

In September 2000, Carol Shields was found suffocated and murdered in a friend's apartment in North Kansas City. Her clothes were missing, and the scene had been meticulously cleaned by the killer. Still, investigators managed to find DNA underneath the victim's fingernails. The following June, that DNA was linked to a profile in the National DNA Index System (NDIS) from paroled Arkansas rapist Wayne DuMond, who had not been a suspect in the case. DuMond was arrested, tried and convicted—largely on the strength of the DNA evidence. He was given a life sentence without parole.

Cracking a 1968 Murder Case

In 1968, a 14-year-old girl named Linda Harmon was raped and murdered in San Francisco while babysitting for a neighbor. A semen sample from the autopsy was collected and stored by the San Francisco medical examiner. The case went unsolved, but last year the sample was tested for DNA. It matched that of William Speer, a convicted rapist who had been confined to an Arizona mental hospital. It is believed to be the oldest "cold" case solved by CODIS. Speer was arrested and pled not guilty to Harmon's murder. He was ultimately convicted of murder.

Forensic Genetic Genealogy

In 2007, 23andMe produced a home DNA testing kit for those persons who wished to trace their ancestry. AncestryDNA soon followed and in 2012 launched its genealogy kit for the general public. Besides these two, there are other companies who have ancestry kits; however, the genetic data stays within the kit company. In other words, if you use the 23andMe kit for your ancestry, then you will only be matched with relatives who sign up for the same kit. Many users wished to expand their search for distant relatives, so they gave permission to add their DNA information into a larger, single database called GEDmatch. This database compares your DNA with DNA uploaded from users of other ancestry companies, thus possibly expanding your family tree. It did not take long to realize that GEDmatch could be a useful tool for law enforcement, assisting in locating perpetrators of violent crimes (rape and murder), particularly cold cases, and to help identify unknown human remains.

Genetic genealogy uses single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) to determine common descent. SNPs occur when a single nucleotide changes in a sequence. For example, a sequence like CAT**G**ACT might change into CAT**C**ACT. This SNP at a particular location on the human genomic sequence will then be passed on to future generations, forming a common link. Single nucleotide polymorphisms are common in the human genome, occurring with a frequency of about one in every 300 nucleotides. With each human possessing 3 billion nucleotides, that would result in about 10 million SNPs! Much of the variation between individuals is due to SNPs. To be considered a SNP, at least 1% of the human population must contain a variation in nucleotide at that location. In most cases, the variation is at a location that does not affect the health of the person; however, some SNPs have been linked to diseases and effect of drugs on the body.

In one of the most famous cold cases recently solved, Joseph DeAngelo, dubbed the Golden State Killer, was finally linked to a series of break-ins, rapes and murders during the 1970s and 80s. Police had never located a suspect in those cases and after a while the mayhem stopped. A break occurred in 2018 when a distant cousin of the Golden State Killer was determined using GEDmatch. Once a distant relative of a match is located, police must then use traditional investigative methods to backtrack up the family tree to determine possible suspects.

The first forensic genetic genealogy case to go to trial was the 1987 murder of a young Canadian couple, Jay Cook and Tanya Van Cuylenborg. Van Cuylenborg had been raped and semen was collected. The case never produced a lead and went cold until 2018, when genetic genealogist found a link between the suspect DNA and two second cousins. The genealogist worked up the family tree to great-grandparents and in about two hours identified a possible suspect, William Earl Talbot II. Police used a discarded coffee cup used by Talbot to obtain a DNA sample. The coffee cup DNA turned out to be a match to the semen found on Tanya Van Cuylenborg. Talbot was convicted of 1st degree murder and sentenced to life in prison.

Law enforcement agencies are hopeful that genetic genealogy could help solve over 100,000 cold case violent crimes and possibly aid in identifying 40,000 unidentified human remains. There are, however, ethical issues to be addressed with this new use of genetic information technology. Privacy of individuals is a concern. People are reluctant to share their DNA profiles to a large database when they are not sure who has exclusive access to their private information. As of November 2019, the U.S. Department of Justice issued an interim policy on forensic genetic genealogical DNA analysis and searching (https://www.justice.gov/olp/page/file/1204386/download).

Summary

DNA is the building block of life. It directs all cellular functions. More than 99% of human DNA is identical in all people. Less than 1% makes us different. Parts of this DNA are polymorphic; they exist in more than one form. By typing this DNA, or describing the forms that are present in biological evidence and in suspects or victims, such evidence can be associated with one particular person in some cases.

There are several ways that DNA typing can be done. RFLP was the first type developed. It separated and identified long chains that contain shorter repeating units of DNA that have different numbers of repeats in different people. RFLP requires a relatively large amount of DNA that has not been significantly degraded. PCR was developed to replicate DNA through a heat-controlled process that duplicates single-stranded DNA and makes more double strands. Each cycle doubles the amount of DNA present. Today, DNA is typed using STRs, which combine the advantages of RFLP and PCR. STRs are short strands of DNA with many repeats. They are highly variable in the human population and there are many of them in the human genome. PCR is used to amplify them and capillary electrophoresis is used to separate them by size. Currently, 16 loci are used in STR DNA typing. The same 13 loci are used to compile the CODIS database, which contains DNA from offenders in all 50 states. The database can be searched for possible suspects in crimes where the perpetrator has left DNA but is unidentified.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is NOT a nucleotide used to make up DNA?
   a. Adenine
   b. Guanine
   c. Argenine
   d. Thymine
   e. Cytosine
2. Which of the following is NOT a step in PCR?
   a. Addition of primers to ends of DNA strands
   b. Denaturation
   c. Addition of individual nucleotides
   d. Southern blotting
   e. All the above are steps in PCR
3. Which of the following is true about RFLP?
   a. The repeat strands are very short
   b. It analyzes only mitochondrial DNA
   c. It involves amplifying DNA
   d. Restriction enzymes are used to cut the DNA at the ends of the repeat sites
   e. None of the above are true

4. Which of the following is true of mitochondrial DNA compared to nuclear DNA?
   a. There are many more variable regions in mitochondrial DNA
   b. There are longer repeats in mitochondrial DNA
   c. There are many more copies of mitochondrial DNA in cells
   d. Mitochondrial DNA comes only from the father
5. Which of the following is a method used to determine the gender of a biologic sample?
   a. Mitochondrial typing
   b. RFLP typing
   c. PCR
   d. Amelogenin typing
6. Two strands of DNA having the same repeating base pair sequence but different numbers of repeats of that sequence is an example of:
   a. Length polymorphism
   b. Sequence polymorphism
   c. Hypervariability
   d. Hyperventilation
   e. Number polymorphism
7. Which of the following is not a component of the CODIS system?
   a. Local database
   b. National database
   c. Convicted felon samples
   d. Convicted misdemeanor samples
   e. State database
8. Which of the following best describes a gene?
   a. A physical characteristic
   b. A repeating sequence of base pairs
   c. A part of a chromosome that gives rise to a particular characteristic of a human such as hair color
   d. A sequence polymorphism
   e. None of the above
9. STRs are
   a. Length polymorphisms
   b. Sequence polymorphism
   c. Genes
   d. PCR products
   e. Found only in mitochondria
10. In RFLP DNA typing
    a. DNA is fragmented by restriction genes
    b. Fragments are made up of length polymorphs
    c. The fragments are 4–7 base pairs long
    d. Capillary electrophoresis is used to visualize the fragments

True or False

11. Because random match probabilities for DNA typing by STRs are so low, DNA can be associated reliably with one and only one person in the world.
12. Biological evidence should be stored in breathable containers to prevent degradation.

13. RFLP fragments are more susceptible to degradation than STRs.
14. Mitochondrial DNA is passed from generation to generation by the father only.
15. Mitochondrial DNA has only two regions that are polymorphic.
16. There is only one CODIS database that covers the whole country.
17. There is no DNA in hairs.

Match the Columns

18. PCR	a. Analyzes DNA by fragmentation of long length polymorphs
19. DNA	b. Short gender determining repeat
20. RFLP	c. Clones DNA
21. STR	d. Analyzes DNA at 13 loci
22. Y-STR	e. Deoxyribonucleic acid

Short Answer Questions

23. Briefly describe how the PCR process works.
24. Briefly describe the precautions that must be considered when collecting potential DNA evidence.
25. Briefly describe the differences between STR and RFLP analysis.

Further Reading

Butler, J. M. (2010). *Fundamentals of Forensic DNA Typing*. Academic Press, Burlington, MA.

Inman, K. and Rudin, N. (2002). *An Introduction to Forensic DNA Analysis*, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Li, R. (2008). *Forensic Biology*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

On the Web

A brief history of DNA typing. Good graphics: http://www.cstl.nist.gov/div831/strbase/ppt/intro.pdf.

Human Genome Project site: https://web.ornl.gov/sci/techresources/Human_Genome/index.shtml.

Some good videos that explain DNA fingerprinting:
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DbR9xMXuK7c
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7onjVBsQwQ8
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZxWXCT9wVoI

GEDmatch information:
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ImvB1krj1lM
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5raJePXu0OQ

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wkZ8RERRJy4&feature=youtu.be

https://www.sciencemag.org/news/2018/10/we-will-find-you-dna-search-used-nab-golden-state-killer-can-home-about-60-white

Exonerations website: https://www.law.umich.edu/special/exoneration/Pages/about.aspx

Case Studies

Genetic Genealogy Case Study: Cold Case Solved After 40 Years

A Massachusetts college graduate, 21-year-old Helene Pruszynski, moved to Denver in 1979 to work as a radio station intern at KHOW-AM radio. In January of 1980, when she did not show up after work to her aunt's home where she was staying, the aunt called police. She was found in a field, partially clothed, raped and stabbed nine times in the back. Although semen was left at the scene, DNA testing was not an option as was the CODIS database. With not much evidence left behind, the case went cold.

Years later, Jessi Still would upload her DNA from the 23andME test kit into the broader database, GEDmatch. In the summer of 2019, Stills was told by law enforcement that her DNA was similar to DNA from a cold case murder in Colorado. The genetic genealogist indicated that the person they were looking for would most likely be a distant third cousin. After expanding the DNA testing of her family, they narrowed down their suspect, James Curtis Clanton, currently residing in Florida. Clanton had a criminal history of violent behavior and police assumed that he would not voluntarily submit to a DNA test. They followed him to a local bar and after he left, confiscated his discarded beer mug and got their DNA sample. It was a match to the semen at the Pruszynski crime.

James Clanton, 62, was arrested for the rape and murder of Helene Pruszynski. He was flown from Florida to Colorado to stand trial. In February of 2020 he pleaded guilty to one count of first-degree murder. As of this date he is awaiting sentencing from the court.

For more information: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tRXXRAhx-Pw

Exoneration Case: James Bain Exonerated After 35 Years in Prison

Nineteen-year-old James Bain was convicted of rape and kidnapping of a nine-year-old boy in 1974. The Innocence Project took on his case and he was exonerated by DNA analysis. He left prison at the age of 54, having spent most of his life in a Florida prison. The basis of the conviction was the young boy's identification of Bain from a photo lineup. Semen collected from the boy's underwear could be analyzed for blood type. An FBI examiner testified that the blood type in the semen was type B. Bain's blood type was AB; however, the analyst argued that Bain's A secretor was weak, so his type would show as type B. This was not substantiated. An expert for the defense testified that Bain had a strong A secretor and he would show as a blood type AB.

Although Bain had an alibi for the time of the rape, the jury believed the witness and the FBI testimony and convicted James Bain of the charges. He was sentenced to life in prison. After 35 years in prison he finally was exonerated after DNA testing of the semen collected at the time of the rape showed that Bain could not have committed the rape. He was released on December 17, 2009.

For more information: https://www.businessinsider.com/james-bain-exonerated-after-35-years-in-prison-2013-10

Historical Case Study: The Titanic Baby

John Ydstie talks with Dr. Ryan Parr, an anthropologist at Ontario's Lakehead University, about a 4-year effort to determine the identity of a 13-month-old child who died in the Titanic disaster. The child was buried in Halifax, Nova Scotia. Parr coordinated the work of over 50 scientists, genealogists and Titanic researchers, using DNA to trace the child to living family members.

For more information and the podcast: http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=835398.

18

Hair

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define and describe hair
2. To be able to explain the origin and growth patterns of hair
3. To be able to describe the microscopic structure of human and nonhuman hairs
4. To be able to explain how to differentiate human from nonhuman hair
5. To be able to explain how hairs are compared
6. To be able to explain how known hair samples are collected
7. To be able to explain the role of mitochondrial DNA typing of hair in the analysis of hair from a crime scene

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is Hair?*
- *Hair Growth*
  - *Forcible Removal of Hair*
- *Hair Color*
- *Structure of Human Hair*
- *Human versus Nonhuman Hairs*
- *Hair Treatment and Damage*
- *Comparison of Human Hairs*
- *What Can Be Determined from the Structure of Hair?*
- *DNA Analysis of Hair*
- *Hair as a Source of Drugs*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition.*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *References*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Anagen growth phase: Active growing period of hair.
Catagen growth phase: Transition phase between growth and rest phases.
Cortex: Middle and thickest layer of hair in humans; contains color granules.
Cortical fusi: Small, bubble-like structures in the cortex of hair.
Cuticle: Outermost layer of hair; consists of overlapping scales of keratin.
Epidermis: Outer layer of skin.
Follicle: Structure from which hairs originate and grow.
Keratin: Substance that makes up the cuticle of the hair.
Medulla: Inner layer of hair.
Melanin: Pigment responsible for hair color.
Melanocyte: Cells that produce melanin; the pigment responsible for hair color.
Ovoid bodies: Structures in cortex; their function is unknown.
Telogen growth phase: Rest phase when hair stops growing completely.

Acronyms

DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
THC	Tetrahydrocannabinol

Introduction

On March 20, 1987, an eight-year-old girl was attacked in her home in Billings, Montana, by an intruder who had broken in through a locked window. She was repeatedly raped and then the intruder left after stealing a purse and jacket that were in the girl's room. The victim was examined the same day. Police collected her underwear and the bed sheets upon which the rapes were committed. Several hairs were collected from the bed sheets and semen was identified on her underwear. After a description by the victim, police produced a sketch of the intruder. An officer who had seen the sketch thought it looked like Jimmy Ray Bromgard. Eventually the victim picked him out of a lineup but was unsure if he was the perpetrator. In court, she expressed some doubt of the identity of Bromgard but his assigned counsel didn't object to the identification.

At the trial, the entire case against Bromgard revolved around the hairs found in the bed sheets. The semen on the underwear could not be typed to determine what blood group it belonged to (this was before DNA typing was developed). The forensic expert testified that the head and pubic hairs found on the sheets were indistinguishable from Bromgard's hair samples. He then told the jury that the chances that the crime scene head hairs came from someone else where 100 to 1. He also reached the same conclusion concerning the pubic hairs. He then concluded that the chance that someone else was the owner of the hairs was 10,000 to 1, which is 1/100 × 1/100. The statistics used by the expert were not scientific. There are no credible data that would permit a hair examiner to determine the likelihood that a particular person was the owner of shed hairs. The 100 to 1 statistic had no scientific basis. In addition, had these statistics been valid, the only way that the overall odds of Bromgard being the perpetrator of 10,000 to 1 would be valid is if the head hair and pubic hair statistics were totally independent of each other. Clearly, this cannot be the case if the head and pubic hairs came from the same person. This testimony was extremely damning to Bromgard and yet went virtually unchallenged. He was convicted of rape and spent years in prison. His conviction was finally vacated when the New York Innocence Project had the semen reanalyzed years later against Bromgard's DNA and found no match. The semen could not have been deposited by Bromgard.

In 2007, an expert review panel condemned the forensic hair examiner's testimony as being without scientific foundation, and they concluded that there is no way that statistics can be applied to determine the likelihood that a crime scene hair matched a particular individual.

The same hair examiner who analyzed the hair in the Bromgard case also analyzed hair in many other cases and offered similar scientifically flawed conclusions. There have also been other hair examiners who have reached unsupportable conclusions concerning hair analysis. Some of these cases, like the Bromgard case, have been reversed owing to the work of the Innocence Project. This has called into question the practice and value of hair analysis. This is unfortunate because hair has a number of characteristics that make it valuable as a source of evidence. Hair is very stable. It can be found years after someone is buried in a casket. It is very inert to chemical attack. It contains DNA so it can be used for identification. It is easily lost from a person's body and transferred to another person or an object and thus can help track a person's location and movements. It is also a repository for anything from foods, minerals, drugs and poisons that a person has ingested. The average head hair remains on the head for around 3 months so this repository characteristic can be very useful.

What was wrong with the conclusions reached by the hair examiner in the Bromgard case and in other, similar cases? Hair shares some of the same issues as fingerprints, bullets, shoeprints, etc. It is basically pattern evidence. As we will see, hair consists of a number of layers that can exist in any of a number of configurations. There is no classification system for hair structure, no way to classify it into a finite number of classes. Thus, there is no data that would reveal how rare or common a particular configuration of hair structure is. Because of this, there is no way that a hair examiner can calculate the probability that a hair came from a particular person. This is complicated by the fact that there is a good deal of variation in hair structure within a person's head or other area of the body. Sometimes this variation exceeds that which occurs between two different people. It is very important to be aware of these limitations of hair analysis. There are no circumstances where a hair can be matched to a particular individual by comparing the hairs visually, microscopically and/or chemically. Thus, hair is class evidence. It is possible for a degree of association to be made between hairs from a crime scene and those taken from a suspect or victim. If there are sufficient physical and chemical characteristics common to both, then it is permissible to conclude that the crime scene hairs *could have come from* the suspect or victim. As stated earlier, there are no statistics available to determine the certainty with which the association can be made. It is of course, quite proper to reach a conclusion that crime scene hairs could not have come from a particular person. The National Academy of Sciences Forensic Science Committee reached similar conclusions concerning hair analysis that they did with respect to other pattern evidence. Many times forensic analysts overreach in their conclusions about hair comparisons. The Committee also cited a lack of scientific validation of the conclusions reached in hair analysis.

In recent years, DNA typing has added a great deal of information to the analysis of biological evidence because there are a finite number of DNA types and a DNA classification scheme has been developed that permits conclusions about how rare or common a particular DNA type is. The role of DNA in hair analysis will be discussed later in this chapter.

What Is Hair?

Hair is an outgrowth of the *epidermis*, or outer layer of the skin. It is found only in mammals. Figure 18.1 is a diagram of the cross section of human skin. It shows the layers of the skin and hair *follicles*. Follicles are the structures from which hairs originate and grow. When hair begins to grow, its outer covering is soft. When it reaches the top of the skin, the outer layer begins to harden into *keratin*. Keratin is made of proteins. It is the same material that makes up fingernails and toenails in humans and horns in other animals.

Inside the follicle, where the hair is growing, it is enervated by blood vessels that provide nourishment and which exchange materials between blood and the inside of the hair. Anything that is ingested by the person, such as food, drugs or poisons, will eventually be incorporated into the growing region of the hair. When the hair reaches the surface of the skin and keratinizes, it is essentially dead. It is no longer in contact with blood vessels and doesn't exchange anything with its

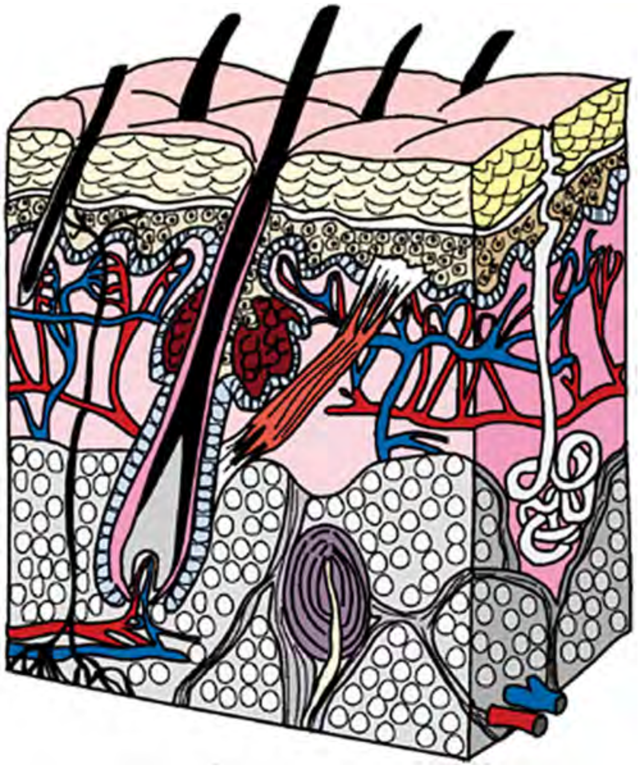


Figure 18.1 Cross section of dermis and epidermis of human skin. Courtesy of Max Houck.

biologic environment. This means that whatever substances were absorbed by the growing part of the hair will remain there. In this regard, the hair is a sort of "file cabinet" that files cannot be removed from. Thus, when hair grows, it is really being "pushed up" by the growing part of the hair in the follicle. It is analogous to the size of a stack of dinner plates growing taller by continuously adding more plates to the bottom of the stack. The plates on the top aren't getting bigger, they are being pushed out and up by the ones being added from below. If a person smokes marijuana, for example, some THC and other substances present in the plant will be absorbed into the growing region of the person's hair. As this section of the hair gets pushed up and out from the follicle, the THC remains in that segment of the hair until the hair is cut or falls out. This is why drug analysis is being performed increasingly on hair. The hair retains some of the drug each time the person uses it. Unlike urine analysis, which provides only a snapshot of the drugs in a person's body, hair analysis provides a history. Head hair grows approximately ½ in. per month. This can be used to estimate the time when a drug or other substance was ingested. The average head hair falls out after about 90 days.

Hair Growth

Most tissues grow in a smooth, regular fashion. Anyone who observes his or her hair growing out after cutting would assume that hair also grows like this, but such is not the case. In fact, there are three distinct stages of hair growth. These are depicted in Figure 18.2.

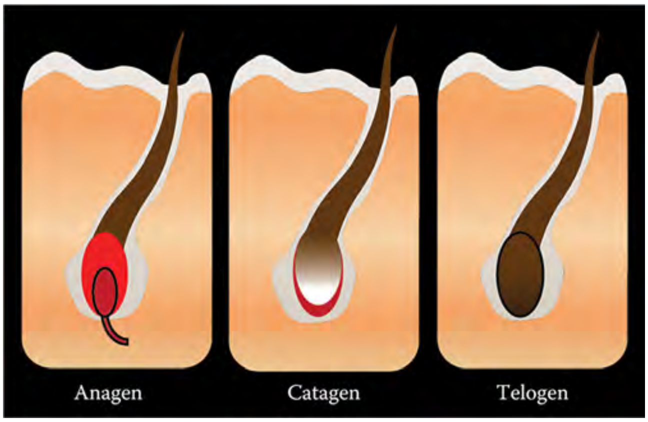


Figure 18.2 Growth stages of hair. They are the anagen, catagen and telogen from left to right. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

The active growing period of hair is called the *anagen* phase. The follicle produces new hair cells that are added to the shaft of the hair, thus pushing the hair up the follicle toward the surface of the skin. This is the most active phase of hair growth. At any given time, the majority of hairs are in the anagen phase.

After the anagen phase is complete, the next phase begins. This is the *catagen* phase. It is a transition between growth and rest. Cell production in the follicle declines and the root of the hair shrinks into a bulb-like shape. Figure 18.3 shows the bulbous root of human hair associated with the catagen phase of growth.

In the *telogen* phase, the hair has stopped growing completely. It will stay this way until the hair is lost by pulling (combing or brushing) or shedding. Hairs lost in one of these ways will contain the root. The loss of the hair triggers the end of

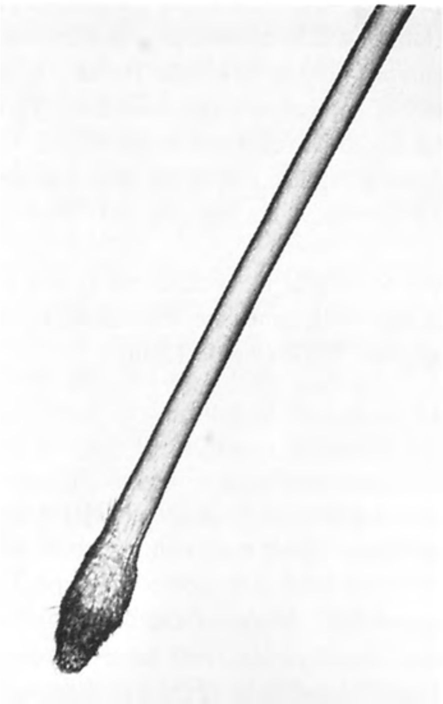


Figure 18.3 A human hair root in the telogen phase. Courtesy of Max Houck.

the telogen phase and the resumption of the anagen phase and a new hair begins to grow. Normally, a person will naturally shed a few dozen hairs per day. This number can increase with frequent and vigorous brushing or combing. It takes about 6 months to completely regrow a scalp hair. Some people believe that cutting or shaving hair can stimulate hair growth. There is no evidence that this happens. Cutting off a hair above the root does not stimulate the resumption of the anagen phase of growth. Hair will continue to grow at its normal rate if shaved or cut and if the hair is in the anagen phase at the time. At any given time, about 85% of human scalp hairs are actively growing.

Forcible Removal of Hair

Remember that humans are constantly shedding hair, especially from the scalp. This is one reason why hairs are found so often at even nonviolent crime scenes. Sometimes hairs are forcibly removed by yanking or tearing or by violent contact and are also left at scenes. It is often important to know whether a hair was shed or removed. Can it be determined if a hair has been forcibly removed? It is not as easy as it sounds. There are obvious cases. Some, but not all, forcibly removed hair will have follicle cells clinging to the hair. Some may actually have blood on the root. This would be especially true if the hair were still growing (anagen phase). If the hair was in the resting phase when pulled, it may not have any of the follicle sheaths on it because bulbous roots of the hair in this phase are not tightly held in the follicle. The amount of cellular material on the root depends on how fast the hair was pulled. If the hair is pulled quickly, the chances of finding cells from the follicle are increased.

Something for You to Do

Get a hairbrush and brush your hair as you normally do. Do not use any extra force. Brush until you have about a dozen hairs on the brush. Remove them and examine them with a magnifying glass or low-power microscope. Concentrate on the root of the hairs. Are the roots all the same shape? How would you describe the shape of the roots? Do you see cellular material clinging to any of the roots? (You may need a higher-power microscope to see this.) The presence of cellular material clinging to the root of a hair may indicate that the hair was forcibly removed as opposed to merely falling out. Now look at the hairs from someone else in your family or a friend. Are their roots the same shape as yours? You can also compare the color of your hairs and compare those to the others. Check out the average length of the hairs and the presence of damage such as split ends. Look for variation between the hairs from your head. Some people have significant differences in structure and appearance in hairs taken from the same head.

Hair Color

Look around you. There seems to be a wide variety of head hair colors, from very light to black. Of course, some of these colors are made from artificial coloring agents that grow out with the hair and fade with time, but naturally colored hair also comes in various shades that are under the control of our genetic inheritance.

As hair grows, special cells called *melanocytes* produce granules of *melanin*. Melanin is the pigment that gives hair its color. There are two types of melanin. One is dark brown and the other is lighter, almost blond. Under the influence of genetic instructions, these two types of melanin are present in various combinations, densities and distributions, giving rise to the natural hair colors in the human population. These granules are dispersed throughout the middle layer of the hair (the cortex). When hair is dyed, the melanin does not take up the dye. Instead, the dye coats the surface of the hair. Various colored human hairs are shown in Figure 18.4.

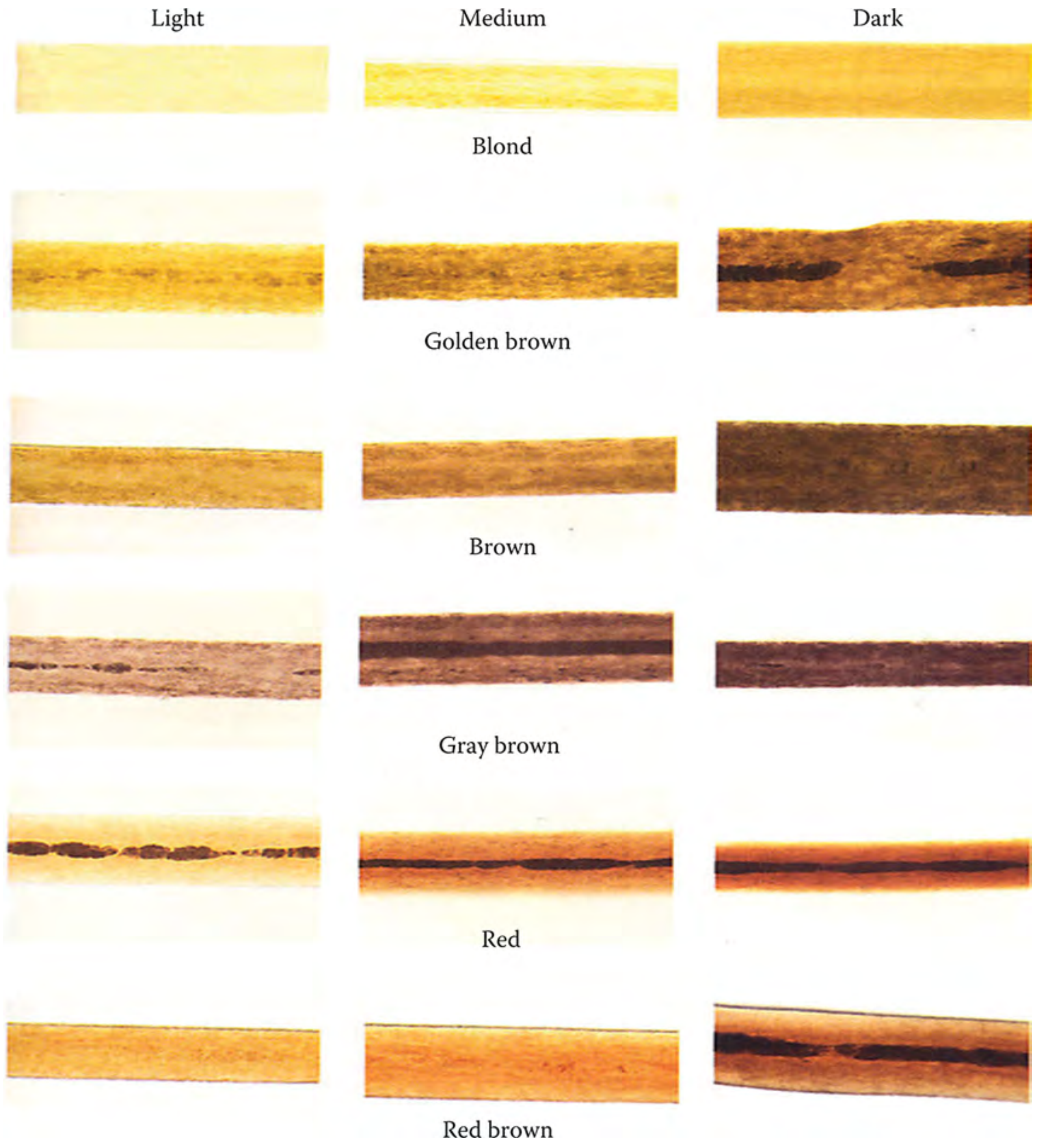


Figure 18.4 Various colors of human head hair. Reprinted from Ogle, R.R. and Fox, M.J., *Atlas of Human Hair: Microscopic Characteristics*, Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, FL, 1996.

Structure of Human Hair

Scalp hairs are more often found at crime scenes than any other type so they will be used to illustrate the structure of human hairs. Hairs from other parts of the body differ in systematic ways from head hair, and a competent hair examiner can distinguish among hairs from various parts of the body.

Look at the human head hair in Figure 18.5. It has three regions. The *root* is at the widest end of the hair and is the part that is attached to the follicle and is the growing area of the hair. The second region is the *shaft*. From the root to the tip, the shaft tapers. The *tip* is the end of the hair away from the root. The hair is narrowest at the tip. This means that one must be careful in describing the diameter of a hair. It depends upon where it is measured.

From the outside, hairs appear to be homogenous throughout, and one cannot tell if the hair is solid like a steel rod or hollow like a garden hose. In fact hair is neither. Its structure is quite complex. A hair's structure can be related to that of a lead pencil. Like a pencil, a hair has three layers, but they differ in relative thickness and structural characteristics from the layers in a pencil. The relative thickness of the layers in human hair differs somewhat depending upon its location on the body. They are also quite different from the layer thickness in animal hairs. A diagram of the three layers of a human hair is shown in Figure 18.6. An actual human head hair is shown in Figure 18.7.

The outermost layer of the hair is the *cuticle*. It is made of keratin, the same material that makes up finger and toenails and is responsible for the stability and inertness of hair. Although keratin is transparent, the structure of the cuticle is such that it is difficult to see through. The hair in Figure 18.7 is mounted in a liquid that makes the cuticle more transparent so that the inner layers of the hair can be seen. The cuticle is not a smooth layer like the painted outer surface of a pencil. Instead, it consists of a series of overlapping scales arranged much like the shingles on a roof. The cuticular scales are very small and hard to see even with

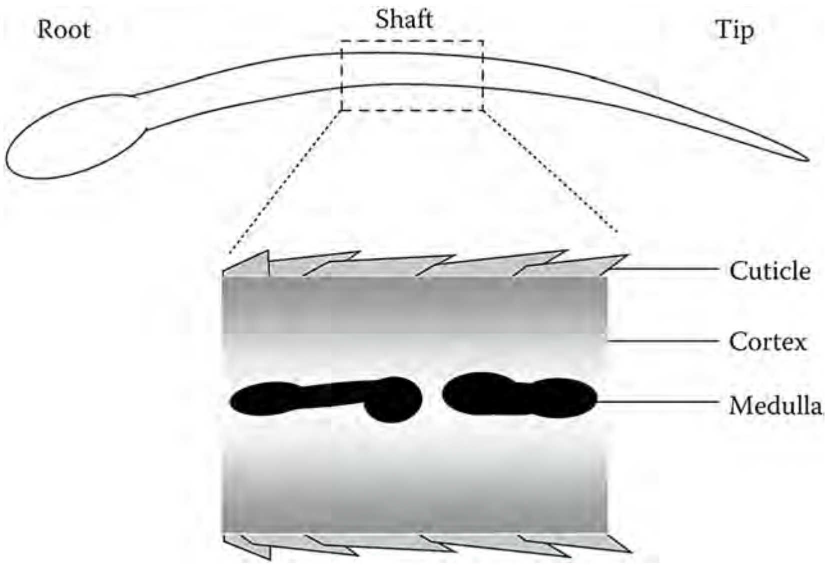


Figure 18.5 A complete human head hair from root to tip. Courtesy of Max Houck.

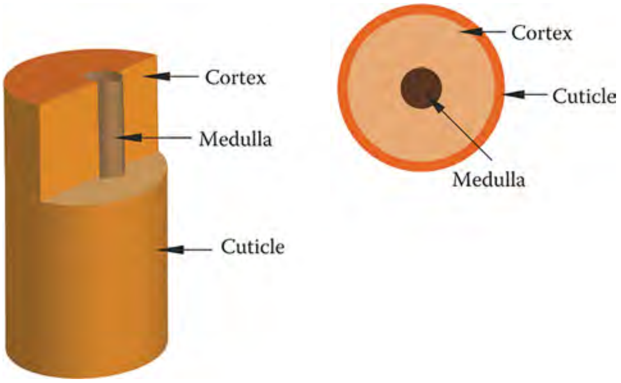


Figure 18.6 The three layers of hair. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

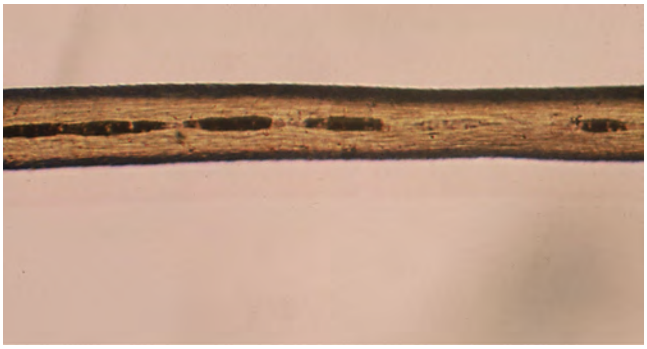


Figure 18.7 A human head hair showing the cortex and the medulla. The hair is mounted in a liquid with the same refractive index as the cuticle, so it cannot be seen.

a microscope. The best way to see the scales of the cuticle is to make a cast of them, sort of like making a cast of a shoe in cement. One way to do this is described in the following text.

Something for You to Do

You can easily make a scale cast of a human hair. You need some clear nail polish, a microscope slide and some hairs. Deposit a thin layer of nail polish on the surface of the slide and lay one or more hairs across the slide. Leave them there until the nail polish dries (about 10 min) and then pull them off. A cast of the scale patterns will be visible in the nail polish. You will need at least a low-power microscope to clearly see the pattern. Try this on some of your own scalp hair and some hair from your friends and family. Do all of the scale casts look similar? In a shingle roof, the shingles are arranged in a neat pattern. Is that the case with human hair cuticular scales? If you can get the hairs from animals such as a cat and/or dog, make scale casts of them. How are the scales arranged compared to human scales?

The middle layer of hair is the *cortex*. In humans, this is the most prominent and thickest layer. The cortex is made up of spindle-shaped cells and is also transparent. Pigment granules are dispersed throughout the cortex. These granules are generally not spaced in an even pattern but instead are often found in clumps. They vary from person to person in size and shape as well as distribution. The cortex also contains *cortical fusi*. These are small bubble-like structures. Their appearance may be related to the transition from anagen to catagen growth phase of hair. *Ovoid bodies*, which look like large pigment granules, may also be present in the cortex. Their function is not known. They do not exhibit a pattern but appear irregularly within the cortex.

The innermost layer of the hair is the *medulla*. It is made up of cells that form a shaft through the middle of the hair. In human head hair, the medulla may be totally absent, or it may be present in a few areas of the hair, or it may be mostly present except for a few gaps. In some cases, the entire shaft may be visible. This gives rise to a classification system for human hair medullae. Figure 18.8 shows a diagram of the four possible states of a human medulla.

Human versus Nonhuman Hairs

Human hairs differ from animal hairs in several important ways. This is due, at least in part, to the function of hair in many animals, which is protective and for camouflaging. In humans, hair has lost its protective function through evolution and is mostly decorative. In many animals, hair has evolved to perform different specialized functions. Many animals possess three different types of hair. The first are called *guard hairs*. These are firm hairs with a protective function. They have distinct features that make them useful for forensic purposes. They are most often used for microscopic comparison. The rest of the animal's coat is filled in with *fur hairs*. These are relatively featureless and do not provide much information about the type of animal. Finally, there are *whiskers*. Whiskers are sensitive to touch and are used by the animal for sensory purposes. Even though animal hairs differ from human, they still mostly contain the same three layers: cuticle, cortex and medulla. There are, however, a number of microscopic characteristics that can be useful in distinguishing human from nonhuman hairs:

- The cuticular scales of human hairs tend to be unorganized and overlap like roof shingles. Other animals have more organized, patterned scales. The cuticle is usually thicker relative to the rest of the hair in other animals. You can observe this when you make scale casts of human and animal hairs as directed earlier.

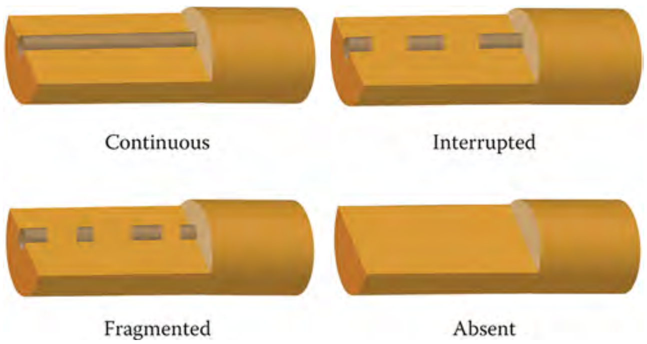
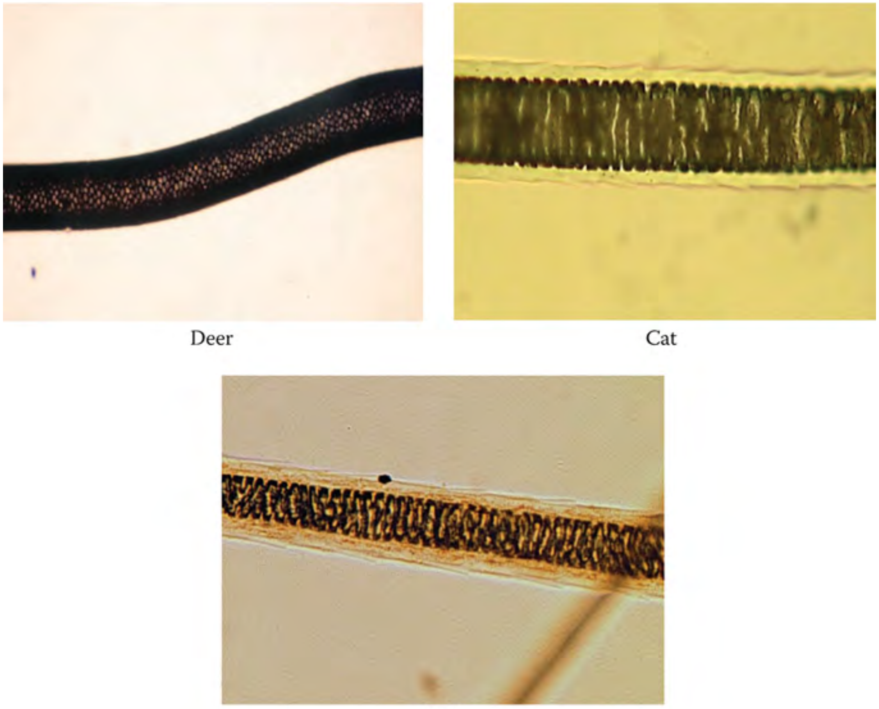


Figure 18.8 Four types of medullae found in human hair. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.



Deer

Cat

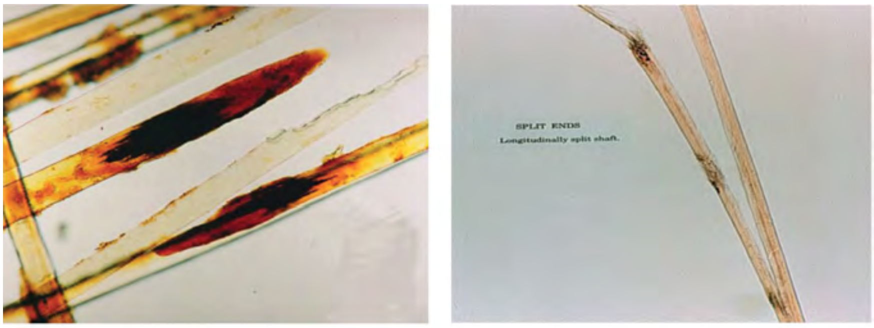
Mink

Figure 18.9 Hairs from a deer, a cat and a mink. Courtesy of Max Houck.

- The medullae of other animal hairs tend to be thicker relative to the rest of the hair. In humans, the medulla is less than one-third of the hair diameter, whereas in other animals, it is more than half. Many animals have thick, continuous medullae. Animals do not have the same classification system for medullae, as do humans. Animal medullae are always continuous. Interrupted, fragmented and absent medullae are present only in humans. Some animals such as cats and mice have *ladder* or *stacked* medullae that resemble a stack of dinner plates or a string of pearls. Members of the deer family have medullae that look like fine latticework. Figure 18.9 shows the interior structure of some animal hairs.

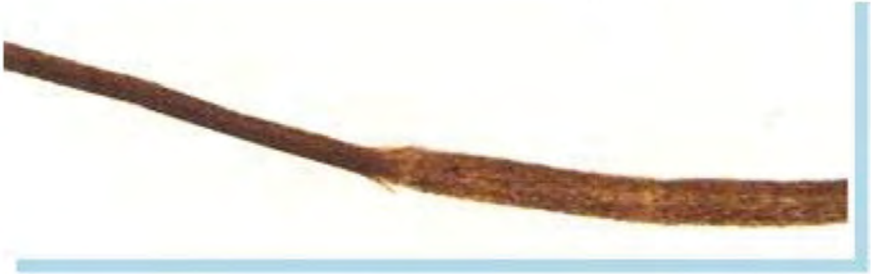
Hair Treatment and Damage

Humans subject their hair to many types of treatments and these can help in the comparison of known and unknown hairs. For example, razor cutting of hairs leaves angled tips whereas scissor cut hair has straight tips. Bleaches oxidize the cortical hair pigment granules, thus removing their color. When hair is dyed, it has a painted appearance, and there is an abrupt color change between the natural color and the dyed color. Hair is also subject to disease and degradation from drying out or chemical treatments. These conditions can have forensic value in hair comparisons because they are relatively unusual and they give the affected hairs a unique appearance. Figure 18.10 shows some hairs that have been damaged by treatment or disease.



Burned hair

Split ends



Crushed hair

Figure 18.10 Various types of damage to human hairs. Courtesy of Max Houck.

Comparison of Human Hairs

Hair evidence is found in a great variety of crimes. Most commonly, it is evidence at scenes of crimes of violence such as criminal sexual assault. In these types of crimes, pubic hairs from the victim and perpetrator will often be found on each other and on the surface where the attack took place as well as surrounding areas. This is especially powerful evidence since it demonstrates the transfer of two types of evidence between perpetrator and victim. This is often accompanied by the transfer of fibers making it even more probative evidence. Hairs are shed naturally and may be found at scenes. During a violent incident, hair may be pulled and found at the scene. In all of these incidents, hair is very good class evidence and can provide information about the identity of the perpetrator and the victim as well as the circumstances of the incident. Hair is easily transferred from one surface to another and may undergo several transfers after being shed. One of the authors of this book once did a study about the mass transfer of textile fibers to clothing at a large forensic science meeting. One of the findings was quite unexpected; a large number of dog and cat hairs from the owners' pets were found on clothing being worn at the meeting.

As with other types of evidence, the collection of known samples is important. In the majority of cases, either head or pubic (or both) hairs are left as evidence at crime scenes. It is important to get a sufficient number of known hairs and they must represent the head or pubic area as a whole. At least two dozen hairs are needed for comparisons. Fifty is better. They must be combed and (gently) pulled to ensure that hairs in all stages of growth are represented. The known sample must contain hairs from areas that have been treated. This includes dyeing, braiding, bleaching and graying. There are natural variations of morphological characteristics of hairs within the same head or other area of the body. There must be enough known samples present so that the hair examiner is aware of the degree of variation. Hairs are mounted on microscope slides and immersed in a suitable liquid that enable the examiner to see through the cuticle into the inner layers of the hair. The cuticle has a refractive index of about 1.50. Suitable Cargille liquids can be used as can glycerin (RI = 1.475). The microscope should be able to provide magnification of 25–200 power. A comparison microscope is ideal so that known and unknown hairs can be viewed together. Scale casts should also be taken of some of the hairs from the crime scene as well as the samples from the suspect and/or victim. Various charts are used by hair examiners to record the data about the known and unknown hair. There is no standard set of data that must be collected. The examiner typically collects data about the hair as a whole including lengths, diameters, coloring, diseases and treatments. In addition, specific information is noted for the root, shaft and tip. Characteristics of the medulla are noted including its diameter, continuity and color. The cortex is examined for the presence and distribution of color granules, ovoid bodies and cortical fusi.

On the basis of the comparison of unknown hairs, there are three possible conclusions that a hair examiner can reach. If there are sufficient common characteristics between the knowns and unknowns and there are no unexplainable significant differences, then the hair examiner can conclude that the unknown hairs *could have originated* from the person who provided the known samples. Note carefully the wording here. The conclusion is *not* that known and unknown hairs definitely came from the same source to the exclusion of all other sources. It merely states that the known could be the source of the unknown hairs. Lacking a proper database of how common different types of hair are, the analyst cannot ascribe a probability to the association of the known and unknown hairs. If the known and unknown samples exhibit significant differences that exceed the range of variation within a set of hairs, then the conclusion would be that the known donor could not have been the source of the unknown hairs. If there are some similarities between the known and unknown but there are also some slight variations, then no conclusion about the association can be given. Figure 18.11 shows a comparison of two hairs that came from the same source.

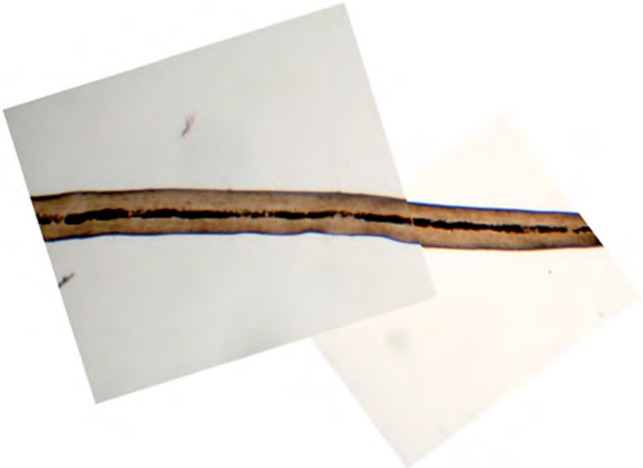


Figure 18.11 Hair comparison. This figure shows a comparison of two human, pubic hairs that came from the same body. Magnification is 250×. Courtesy of Max Houck.

The microscopic analysis of hair has been called into question in court. In 2013, three exonerations using DNA occurred in cases where FBI trained hair experts gave erroneous testimony or made erroneous reports. Consequently, the FBI surveyed cases involving microscopic hair analysis. Findings showed 268 cases linking hair identification to the defendant and of those 268 cases, testimony was shown to be scientifically invalid in 257 (96%) of the cases.

Research into more reliable methods of forensically analyzing hair samples is moving forward. NIST (National Institute of Standards and Technology) scientists are refining techniques that dissolve hair proteins without annihilating them so that the protein molecules from two hairs can be compared and analyzed quantitatively. Researchers are hopeful that this area of study, called proteomics, when fully developed, can be applied in individual hair identification. Additionally, microscopic hair comparison has shifted its focus from identification of suspects to the exclusion of suspects.

What Can Be Determined from the Structure of Hair?

As we have seen, a great deal can be determined from the structural analysis of hair. These include the following:

- *Human or animal*: It is easy to determine if a hair is human or animal, especially head hair. Recall that humans have fragmented or absent medullae in their head hair whereas animals have continuous medullae. The medulla in human hair is generally less than 1/3 of the diameter of the hair whereas in animals, it may be more than half. In humans, the cuticular scales are irregular, whereas in animals, they are arranged in a much more regular fashion.
- *Part of the body*: For human hair, it is usually not difficult to determine what part of the body hairs came from. Most crime scene hairs are either from the head or the pubis. Pubic hairs tend to be shorter, curlier and stiffer and contain more pronounced medullae than head hairs.
- *Color*: Hair that has been colored has more of a painted look than hair with a natural color. The natural color is due to clusters of melanin whereas dyed hair has a coating on the surface. As hair grows, the line of demarcation between the dye and the natural color becomes more pronounced. If hair is bleached, the melanin particles have a washed out appearance.
- *Disease, mistreatment*: Diseased or teased or artificially straightened or curled hair can usually be detected under a microscope.

There are also a number of characteristics that some people believe that hair can reveal. This, however, is generally not true. Some of these are listed as follows:

- *Age*: Age cannot be determined from the examination of hair. The fact that hair is gray doesn't mean that the person is old. The only hair that can be differentiated by age is the very fine hair called *lanugo* that newborns are born with.
- *Gender*: At one time, perhaps 50 years ago, people may have concluded that long hair was female. If hair spray was present, it must be female. One would be tempted to say that only females dyed their hair. None of these are true today, if they ever were. The only reliable determinate for gender in hair is a DNA analysis to see if the "Y" (male) chromosome is present.

- *Race*: There are some racial characteristics of hair that show up if the person has fairly pure racial ancestry. These include different hair diameters, cross-sectional shapes, thickness of cuticle and distribution of pigments. As intermarriages take place, these characteristics tend to become less pronounced.

DNA Analysis of Hair

Except for the root, hair does not contain sufficient nucleated cells to perform genomic DNA analysis, but hair cells do contain mitochondria and mitochondrial DNA typing is now routinely done on hair samples. DNA typing is explained in Chapter 17. Mitochondrial DNA is inherited only through the maternal line. One's father does not contribute mitochondrial DNA. As a result, everyone has the same mitochondrial DNA as his or her mother. Because of this, mitochondrial DNA is not suitable for individualization. In cases where mitochondrial DNA typing narrows down the possible suspects to siblings, the microscopic analysis of the hair may distinguish among the hair of the siblings and perhaps the techniques taken together may provide better association. In other cases, there may be insufficient DNA to perform complete analysis. It is becoming clear that microscopic analysis and mitochondrial DNA analysis are complementary techniques that can both be valuable in the analysis of hair. Since the maturation of mitochondrial DNA analysis, many hair examiners including those of the FBI have developed a protocol for the analysis of hair that employs both structural analysis and mitochondrial DNA analysis. The hairs are first compared microscopically. If there are no unexplained differences and sufficient similarities to provide evidence of an association between the known and unknown hairs, then mitochondrial DNA analysis is done. If the DNA types are the same, then an association is made, but this is not individualization. It just narrows down the population that could have been the source of the hair and strengthens the association.

Hair as a Source of Drugs

Earlier in this chapter, it was noted that, as hair grows, it has a blood supply to nourish it. Anything that is in the blood will be in equilibrium with the growing part of the hair. This means that, if the person were taking a drug such as cocaine, some of it would end up in the hair. Remember also that when the hair stops growing, it ceases to exchange materials with the blood stream and becomes a repository for whatever substances were introduced into it during the growing phase. This has implications for testing someone for illicit drugs. When a person is to be tested for the presence of illicit drugs (controlled substances) as is the case in many workplaces or preemployment drug screens, the conventional sample is usually urine, although blood may also be used. The problems with urine drug screening include the ability to tamper with the sample, flushing the urine with diuretic drugs and the fact that the urine test yields only a snapshot of what drugs are present in the body, but provides no information about how often the person has taken the drug or for how long. Blood analysis also has the limitation of being a snapshot of the drugs that are in the person at the time when the blood was drawn. Hair testing for drugs overcomes all of these problems. The subject cannot tamper with the hair, diuretics have no effect on drugs in hair (in fact, the diuretic will show up in the hair) and the hair provides a kind of memory of drug use. Each time the drug is taken, it will show up in the hair, so for as long as the hair is on the head, it will provide a history of drug use. Drug testing in hair is also less invasive than taking a urine or blood sample—the hair is simply combed out or snipped off. Although drug testing in hair is a bit more expensive than urine testing, the cost has come way down and continues to decrease as more laboratories are doing this type of testing and there is more demand for it.

Summary

Hair is an appendage that grows out of the skin or dermis. It has three growth stages: anagen, catagen and telogen. Hair consists of three layers. The outermost is the cuticle. The middle layer is the cortex. It contains the color granules that define the color of the hair. The inner layer is the medulla, a shaft that runs the length of the hair. The cuticle is made up of overlapping scales like shingles on a roof. Human and nonhuman hairs differ in all three layers. The scales in the cuticle of human hairs tend to be less organized than those of other animals. The medullae in human hairs are generally less continuous than those of animals and may be absent altogether. At least a couple of dozen known hairs are collected for comparison with unknowns because of the large amount of variation in the structure of hairs within a single subject. Hairs are compared by noting the microscopic characteristics of the hair as a whole and of the individual layers. If there are sufficient characteristics in known and unknown hairs that match, the donor of the known hairs could be the source of the unknowns. Hair is virtually always class evidence. Mitochondrial DNA typing can be performed on hairs. It is a complementary technique to microscopic analysis of hairs. Many laboratories now use both structural analysis and mitochondrial DNA analysis in tandem. Hair is also a good source of illicit drugs. There are no problems with tampering with the sample or flushing the drugs, and hair provides a memory of how often the subject took the drugs instead of just a one-time snapshot.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is not a type of medulla found in a human hair?
   a. Fragmented
   b. Continuous
   c. Stacked
   d. Interrupted
   e. Absent
2. Which of the following is not a layer of hair?
   a. Medulla
   b. Root
   c. Cortex
   d. Cuticle
   e. All the above are layers of hair.

3. Which of the following is not found in the cortex?
   a. Color granules
   b. Ovoid bodies
   c. Cortical fusi
   d. Scales
4. In which of the following growth stages of hair does active growing take place?
   a. Catagen
   b. Anagen
   c. Telogen
   d. Antigen
5. If a hair falls out on its own, without any combing or pulling, it is likely in which growth stage?
   a. Catagen
   b. Anagen
   c. Telogen
   d. Antigen
6. A hair with a thick cuticle and regular scales and a continuous medulla is
   a. Animal other than human
   b. Human
   c. Could be either one
   d. Neither human or other animal
7. If a known and unknown hairs have very similar microscopic characteristics and no unexplainable differences, then
   a. The unknown had to have come from the known source.
   b. The unknown could have come from the known source.
   c. The unknown could not have come from the known source.
   d. There is a 95% probability that the unknown came from the known source.
8. Which is true about DNA typing of hair?
   a. Genomic DNA typing can be done on the shaft of the hair.
   b. Only mitochondrial DNA typing is commonly done on human hair.
   c. No DNA typing can be done on human hair.
   d. Only hair in the anagen growing phase can be DNA typed.
9. Which of the following is an advantage of drug testing using hair rather than urine?
   a. It is cheaper.
   b. It gives a short-term drug use history.
   c. It can detect more drugs.
   d. It doesn't require confirmation.
10. Hair is individualizable evidence when
    a. Mitochondrial DNA typing is done.
    b. When the known and unknown both have a continuous medulla.
    c. When all three layers of hair are similar in the known and unknown.
    d. Hair evidence is not individualizable.

True or False

11. True or false: Hair continuously grows all along its shaft.
12. True or false: In the case described at the beginning of the chapter, instead of multiplying the 100:1 odds for the head and pubic hairs, the hair examiner should have added the two together.

13. There are three stages of growth in hair.
14. The average lifetime of head hair on the head is about 3 months.
15. The chances of two individuals having a fragmented medulla in their hair are about 100 to 1.
16. Human head hairs seldom have a continuous medulla.
17. Cuticular scale patterns in human head hairs tend to be very regular.

Match Each Term with Its Definition

18. Catagen stage	a. Middle layer of the hair
19. Continuous medulla	b. Transition stage in hair growth
20. Cortical fusi	c. Small cells located in cortex
21. Melanin	d. Rapid growth stage of hair
22. Cortex	e. Substance that makes up hair pigment
23. Anagen stage	f. Found mainly in animals

Short Answer Questions

24. Describe how hair grows. What are the stages of growth?
25. Describe the major differences in the structure of hair in humans and animals.

References

Bisbing, R. (2002). The forensic identification and association of human hair, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 1, 2nd edn. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Hicks, J. W. (1977). *Microscopy of Hairs: A Practical Guide and Manual*, US Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

Ogle, R. R. and M. J. Fox. (1996). *Atlas of Human Hair: Microscopic Characteristics*. Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, FL.

Robertson, J. (ed.). (1999). *Forensic Examination of Hair*. Taylor & Francis, New York.

On the Web

Good introduction to hair analysis by FBI. https://archives.fbi.gov/archives/about-us/lab/forensic-science-communications/fsc/july2000/deedric1.htm

Hair Analysis by McCrone Associates. https://www.mccrone.com/mm/the-science-of-forensic-hair-comparisons-and-the-admissibility-of-hair-comparison-evidence-frye-and-daubert-considered/

FBI review of hair testimony. https://www.fbi.gov/news/pressrel/press-releases/fbi-testimony-on-microscopic-hair-analysis-contained-errors-in-at-least-90-percent-of-cases-in-ongoing-review

Case Study

Hair Case Study: Conviction Overturned Due to Erroneous Hair Testimony

Timothy Bridges was released from a North Carolina prison and charges dismissed in 2016 after he spent 25 years behind bars for rape and burglary. His conviction in 1991 was based on testimony from an FBI trained state hair expert and from testimony from police informants. Upon recent investigation into his case it was found that the hair testimony was erroneous and the three informants in the case had criminal records in addition to their testimony being solicited by police.

The crime occurred in May of 1989. Modine Wise's home was broken in to and she was beaten and sexually assaulted. Ms. Wise was an elderly woman whose vision was poor, so she could not describe her assailant. At trial, the three informants told the jury they had heard Timothy Bridges confess to the crime. A state hair expert, who had been trained at the FBI, claimed he had a "strong identification" that a hair found at the crime scene belonged to Bridges, based on his microscopic analysis. He even stated that there was only a 0.001% chance that two Caucasians (like Bridges) would have indistinguishable head hair.

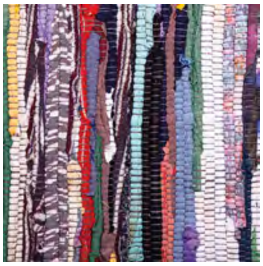
The defense brought testimony from a state fingerprint analyst who indicated that a bloody palm print found at the crime scene was not a match to the defendant and had to have come from another individual.

The jury chose to accept the testimony of the informants and the hair expert, convicting Bridges to life in prison for 1st degree rape, assault with a deadly weapon and burglary. In 2015, with the help of the Innocence Project legal team and a state legal team, Timothy Bridges case was reviewed. A men's jacket found at the scene was tested for DNA. There was semen on the jacket and a cigarette butt in a pocket. The DNA profile excluded Bridges as a contributor. He was released from prison after serving 25 years.

For more information: http://forejustice.org/db/Bridges--Timothy-Scott-.html

PART V

Forensic Chemistry



19

Illicit Drugs

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define a drug and distinguish licit drugs from illicit ones
2. To be able to describe the characteristics of the federal schedules for controlled substances
3. To be able to describe the classification of drugs by major effect
4. To be able to put common illicit drugs in their proper classification
5. To be able to describe how an illicit drug is analyzed in by a forensic chemist

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Illicit Drugs*

- *Control of Illicit Drugs in the United States*
  - *Determination of a Drug Schedule*
    - *State Modifications of Controlled Substance Laws*
  - *Classification of Illicit Drugs*
    - *Stimulants*
  - *Cocaine*
  - *Preparation and Ingestion of Cocaine*
  - *Methamphetamine*
  - *Preparation and Ingestion*
    - *Depressants*
    - *Hallucinogens*
- *Marijuana*
- *Preparation and Ingestion*
  - *Other Hallucinogens*
    - *LSD*
    - *Peyote*
    - *Psilocybin*
    - *Narcotics*
  - *Preparation and Ingestion of Heroin*
- *Analysis of Illicit Drugs*
  - *Requirements for the Analysis of Drugs*
  - *Schemes of Analysis for Drugs*
    - *Screening Tests*
    - *Separation Tests*
    - *Confirmation Tests*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Confirmatory drug test: Test used to conclusively identify a pure drug substance.

Depressant: A drug that has been prescribed to relieve anxiety, nervousness and restlessness.

Drug: A substance that is designed to have specific physical and/or emotional effects on people or, in some cases, animals.

Hallucinogen: Drugs that cause people to see and hear things that aren't there.

Illicit Drug: Illicit drugs, sometimes called *abused drugs* or *controlled substances* in the United States, are of two types. The first consists of licit drugs that are abused or taken for purposes other than those for which they were originally developed. The other type of illicit drug is a substance that has no recognized medical purpose.

Narcotic: Powerful sleep-inducing, central nervous system depressant.

Screening drug test: The most general tests for drugs, also sometimes called spot tests or field tests.

Separation drug test: Test used to separate a drug from a mixture of cutting agents and diluting agents.

Stimulant: Drugs that elevate a person's mood and cause euphoria.

Withdrawal: A syndrome of symptoms that occur in a drug addict when she stops taking the drug.

Acronyms

DEA	Drug Enforcement Administration
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
LSD	Lysergic acid diethylamide. The most powerful hallucinogen
MDMA	Methylenedioxymethamphetamine. A derivative of methamphetamine and a powerful hallucinogen
PCP	Phenylcyclohexylpiperidine. A powerful hallucinogen
SWGDRUG	Scientific working group on the analysis of illicit drugs

Introduction

In April 1976, one of the authors of this book was working as a drug chemist with what was then called the Virginia Bureau of Forensic Sciences. The Arlington County Virginia Police Department received a tip that some people were manufacturing drugs in a subdivision home in the county. The tip came from a neighbor who saw several suspicious looking people carting boxes and drums of what appeared to be chemicals into the house. The police department, in cooperation with U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA), staked out the house to see if further activity was taking place. They ascertained that the inhabitants were probably making phencyclidine (PCP; sometimes called "angel dust"). The police department narcotics agents contacted the Virginia lab and asked for a chemist to help them ascertain how far the PCP preparation had gone. It was proposed that one of the agents along with the chemist (the author of this book) would walk slowly by the house and sniff the air. The idea was that an odor of benzene and/or ethyl ether would indicate that the clandestine drug manufacturers would be in the last step of the synthesis of the PCP. In prosecuting drug manufacturers, it is much easier for the prosecution if the target drug is actually present. This is legally termed "manufacture". If there is no controlled substance present, but there is other evidence that a drug was being prepared, a charge of "attempted manufacture" can be leveled.

As a result of this reconnoiter, the police and DEA raided the house and uncovered a major clandestine PCP lab. The entire floor of the two-car garage was covered with 6 in. of parsley, and the PCP had been dissolved in camp stove fuel and had been poured on the parsley. Had the house not been raided, the fuel would have been allowed to evaporate and the PCP-treated parsley (called "wobble weed" on the street) would have been bagged up and sold for smoking. The narcotics agents estimated the haul to be worth more than $1 M.

The recreational use of illicit drugs is one of the most serious societal problems in the United States. The use of illicit drugs costs many millions of dollars in lost productivity and medical expenses and many more millions in efforts by law enforcement agents to stem the flow of drugs into the country and arrest users and distributors of drugs. Crime laboratories are swamped with illicit drug cases, and American crime labs have a collective backlog of thousands of drug cases. Many drug cases go to court, and forensic drug chemists spend many hours testifying or waiting to, while new cases pile up back in the laboratory. Since the presidency of Ronald Reagan, beginning in 1980, the federal government has been waging a war on drugs. The thrust of the government's activities has been to try and interdict the drugs on their way into the United States. This has yielded generally unimpressive results, and this has not stemmed the flow of drugs into the United States or even slowed it down. This is, in large part, because U.S. borders are relatively open, and drugs come up from Mexico and South and Central America (cocaine, marijuana, MDMA—known as ecstasy, methamphetamine) and from Europe and Asia (heroin). In addition, there are many large and small laboratories that manufacture methamphetamine, MDMA, PCP and lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), and there are many recreational marijuana growers in the United States. The government has also spent money on treatment and drug prevention programs but not nearly as much as has been spent on interdiction. The issue of interdiction vs. prevention has raged in this and other countries for many years. There have been joint task forces involving U.S. personnel that attempt to destroy drug growing and lab operations in the countries of origin. Because illicit drugs can be such a major cash crop, local government cooperation has been mixed also. In this chapter, we will discuss the history of illicit drugs, how they are controlled by federal and state laws, and how they are used and abused.

Illicit Drugs

Most people think of the term "drug" as a substance prescribed to treat a disease or other illness. In fact, a drug is a substance that is designed to have specific physical and/or emotional effects on people or, in some cases, animals. The vast majority of drugs are produced by pharmaceutical companies for a particular disease or disorder. These are called *licit drugs*. Under this definition, ethyl alcohol, which is used in beer, wine and spirits, is not a drug and the laws that control illicit drugs do not include alcohol. It may have some benefits in moderate quantities, but it is not prescribed for that purpose. Alcohol will be covered in Chapter 20. From a legal standpoint, all licit drugs in the United States must have a recognized medical use *as defined by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA)*. If the FDA doesn't recognize a drug as having a legitimate use, it isn't a licit drug.

Illicit drugs, sometimes called *abused drugs* or *controlled substances* in the United States, are of two types. The first consists of licit drugs that are abused or taken for purposes other than those for which they were originally developed. Methamphetamine is a good example of this. For many years, methamphetamine was legitimately marketed as a stimulant, to counter feelings of fatigue or depression and as an appetite suppressant. It even played a role in controlling hyperkinesia, which is a nerve disorder manifested by hyperactivity. Today, however, methamphetamine is hardly used for these purposes. Instead, tablets and capsules that have been diverted from legitimate channels (stolen) and powdered forms made in clandestine laboratories are ingested by people for the purpose of "getting high". It is also possible to use a licit drug for the purpose it was developed, but to use it fraudulently or inappropriately. An example of this would be the use of steroids and other performance-enhancing drugs by Olympic athletes as well as other amateur and professional athletes to give them an unfair competitive advantage.

The other type of illicit drug is a substance that has no approved medical purpose. It could be a synthetic substance, like PCP, or it could be derived from a plant, like cocaine and morphine (which is then made into heroin). In some cases, part of the plant itself is ingested, as in the case of marijuana or opium. These illicit drugs are far and away the most popular throughout the world. Because these drugs do not have any legitimate medical purpose, it is illegal to manufacture, possess, use, grow or sell them. Why is this so? What harm is there in a person smoking marijuana, for example, in his own home, not bothering anyone else. Many people believe that this kind of behavior is a detriment to our society. It is wasteful, perhaps harmful behavior that does not advance society and may cost a good deal of money for treatment of drug disorders such as addiction. Others believe that it is hypocritical and irrational to control and penalize the use of such substances for recreational purposes when an additive substance such as ethyl alcohol is freely available and heavily abused by a large segment of the adult population. This argument has been waged for many years and for now comes down on the side of controlling illicit drugs and keeping alcohol more or less freely available.

Control of Illicit Drugs in the United States

The possession, use and sale of illicit drugs have been the subject of governmental control since the early part of the twentieth century. During this time, the issue of drug control has been affected by research and popular culture, and as a result, the laws and regulations have been somewhat disjointed and uncoordinated. Prior to the beginning of the twentieth century, drugs like marijuana, opium, heroin and cocaine were used in the United States, but there was little in the way of control over their use. In many cases, these drugs were mixed with flavorings and/or alcohol and sold as elixirs from the back of traveling wagons. They were marketed as medicinals that could cure practically every disease. Of course, they had little or no effect and represented fraudulent advertising. In the early twentieth century, the federal government began to exert some control over many of these drugs. In part the government intervention was prompted by public reaction to opium smoking among Chinese immigrants, the rise of cocaine use and increased activity by purveyors of patent medicines. In 1906, the *Pure Food and Drugs Act*, which prohibited interstate commerce in mislabeled or adulterated food or drugs, was passed by Congress and signed into law. Among the substances targeted by the law were marijuana, cocaine, heroin and opium. This act was administered by the Department of Agriculture.

In 1914, Congress passed a major tax and control bill, the Harrison Act, which is properly known as “An act to provide for the registration of, with collectors of internal revenue, and to impose a special tax upon all persons who produce, import, manufacture, compound, deal in, dispense or give away opium or coca leaves, their salts, derivatives or preparations, and for other purposes”. This law was enforced and administered by the Bureau of Internal Revenue in the Treasury Department. It gave the federal government broad control over cocaine and narcotics traffic in the United States. Much of the Harrison Act was aimed at controlling the rise of drug addiction. At first, the attitude of government officials was that it was best to permit addicts continued access to the addicting drugs while trying to remove the supply by putting the dealers out of business. A few years later, in the late 1920s, public sentiment had changed and it was now felt that addiction to drugs could be cured by abstinence: taking the supply of drugs away from the addicts. This meant cracking down on physicians who were supplying addicts with their drugs using prescriptions. Clearly, the emphasis on drug control was changing from viewing addiction as a medical problem to a law enforcement issue.

By 1930, law enforcement of drugs had become even more of a major issue, and Congress passed legislation that formed the Bureau of Narcotics within the Treasury Department. This removed control of drug abuse from the Agriculture Department to Treasury, again because of the tax issue. The Bureau of Narcotics stepped up law enforcement against illicit drugs, particularly opium, heroin, cocaine and marijuana. At this time, anyone who wanted to buy or import or sell any of these drugs had to register and pay a tax. Because marijuana was included, it was labeled a narcotic in all relevant federal laws, a label that stuck until the early 1970s. In 1956, the Narcotic Drug Control Act was passed by the Congress in reaction to testimony that indicated that postwar drug use had exploded and that half of all crime in major cities in the United States was related to illegal drug use. Penalties for use and sales of drugs greatly increased. Stiff jail sentences went to all but first-time offenders and anyone who sold drugs to a minor faced the death penalty. This law also had another important feature. If a new drug came into the marketplace that had a potential for abuse, a recommendation to control it could be made by the FDA to the Secretary of Health, Education and Welfare. Drugs such as amphetamines, barbiturates and LSD were brought under control during this time. Rather than labeling them narcotics, they were referred to in the law as “dangerous drugs”. The Bureau of Narcotics was changed to the Bureau of Narcotics and Dangerous Drugs (BNDD), and they became the chief enforcers of the new laws. In 1970, the Congress passed the Comprehensive Controlled Substances Act of 1970. This law put all controlled substances in the federal realm. This meant that the federal government could prosecute anyone for a drug offense regardless of whether interstate trafficking was involved and irrespective of state laws. *The Comprehensive Controlled Substances Act* resulted in a number of major changes in drug enforcement in the United States:

- Control of drugs became a direct law enforcement activity rather than through registration and taxation.
- Enforcement was moved from the Treasury Department to the Justice Department and the BNDD became the DEA.
- The decision on which drugs should be controlled rests with the Secretary of Health and Human Services, which delegates to the FDA the determination of which drugs should be controlled. In making decisions about whether a drug should be controlled, the FDA evaluates such factors as pharmacological effects, ability to induce psychological dependence or physical addiction and whether there is any legitimate medical use for the substance (as defined and recognized by the FDA).
- Under this law, tobacco and alcohol products are excluded. Controlled drugs are put into five schedules (see Table 19.1 for a summary of the schedules and the drugs that are found in each one). More comprehensive information about the federal schedules can be found on the DEA website at https://www.dea.gov/drug-scheduling.

Today, the federal laws that regulate illicit drugs are in the Federal Code, Title 21—Food and Drugs: Chapter 13—Drug Abuse Prevention and Control. http://www.deadiversion.usdoj.gov/21cfr/cfr/. Under these laws, many of the illicit drugs are termed controlled substances and are put in one of five schedules, or categories. Most of what we define as illicit drugs are in one of these schedules. With a few exceptions, all of the drugs that are in the same schedule have the same penalties for possession or distribution (sale). In some cases, penalties increase as the amount of illicit drug increases. So if someone possesses 50 g (about 2 ounces) of cocaine, they would get a stiffer penalty than someone who possesses only one gram.

Determination of a Drug Schedule

Since the 1970 law put the responsibility of controlling drugs in federal hands, it became the responsibility of the U.S. Congress to determine which drugs fall into the five schedules and which schedule a particular drug will be in. In order to make these decisions, the Congress relies on experts to answer two questions:

1. Does the drug have a legitimate medical use in the United States?
2. What is its potential for abuse?

The first question is pretty easy to answer. Remember that the U.S. FDA decides if a drug has a legitimate medical use, so the Congress looks to that agency for guidance. The second question is a bit more difficult to answer. Several factors go into determining the potential for abuse of a particular drug. Is the drug addictive? Many drugs cause physical changes to take place in the body, and after a time, the person becomes physically dependent on the drug. Dependency is characterized by development over time of a constant craving that can only be satisfied by having the drug. After a while, *tolerance* builds up and it takes more and more of the drug to satisfy the craving. Heroin and a form of cocaine called *crack* are examples of physically addictive drugs. If you become addicted to a drug and then try and stop taking it, you will become sick. This sickness is called *withdrawal* and it can be very dangerous to the addict. Most people eventually recover from withdrawal, but the craving for the drug may last for years. Some illicit drugs don't cause addiction but instead cause psychological dependence. The craving for the drug is there, but there is no withdrawal if the person suddenly stops taking the drug. Drugs that cause either physical or intense psychological dependence are said to have a high potential for abuse. Please see Chapter 20 for a more detailed discussion of the issues of addiction, tolerance and dependence of drugs. Other factors that contribute to the potential for abuse have to do with the availability of the drug. If a drug is relatively cheap and easy to get or manufacture with minimal risk of getting caught, this contributes to its having a high potential for abuse. The way these two factors come into play in putting illicit drugs in particular schedules is summarized in the following text.

As might be expected, drugs that are placed in schedules I and II carry the most severe penalties. Possession or sale of one of these drugs can result in several years in prison and heavy fines. Once an illicit drug is placed in a federal schedule, it generally stays there. Movement in and out of the schedules is very rare and Congress must consider each action separately. Moving a drug to a higher-numbered schedule is especially problematic as it invites charges that congressmen and senators have gone "soft on drugs". This has been especially

TABLE 19.1
Drug Schedules

Schedule I

- The drug or other substance has a high potential for abuse.
- The drug or other substance has no currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States.
- Some Schedule I substances are heroin, LSD, marijuana (cannabis), ecstasy and peyote.

Schedule II

- The drug or other substance has a high potential for abuse.
- The drug or other substance has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States or a currently accepted medical use with severe restrictions.
- Abuse of the drug or other substance may lead to severe psychological or physical dependence.
- Schedule II substances include cocaine, methamphetamine, Vicodin, methadone, Dilaudid, Demerol, OxyContin, fentanyl, Dexedrine, Adderall and Ritalin.

Schedule III

- The drug or other substance has a potential for abuse less than the drugs or other substances in Schedules I and II.
- The drug or other substance has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States.
- Abuse of the drug or other substance may lead to moderate or low physical dependence or high psychological dependence.
- Anabolic steroids, aspirin or Tylenol® containing codeine, ketamine and testosterone are Schedule III substances.

Schedule IV

- The drug or other substance has a low potential for abuse relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule III.
- The drug or other substance has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States.
- Abuse of the drug or other substance may lead to limited physical dependence or psychological dependence relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule III.
- Included in Schedule IV are Darvon, Valium, Xanax, Soma, Darvocet, Ativan, Talwin, Ambien and Tramadol.

Schedule V

- The drug or other substance has a low potential for abuse relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule IV.
- The drug or other substance has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States.
- Abuse of the drug or other substance may lead to limited physical dependence or psychological dependence relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule IV.
- These drugs are generally used for antidiarrheal, antitussive and analgesic use. Cough medicines with <200 mg of codeine, Lomotil, Motofen, Lyrica and Parepectolin are classified in Schedule V.

contentious with marijuana, which has long been in Schedule I. As such, it has no legitimate medical use and a high potential for abuse. This flies in the face of many years of research that indicate that marijuana may play a role in arresting the progress of certain types of glaucoma (a progressive disease of the eyes that leads to blindness) and in mitigating some of the side effects of metabolic drugs that are taken for cancer treatment and which may cause crippling nausea.

State Modifications of Controlled Substance Laws

Part of the Comprehensive Drug Control Act of 1970 provided that federal laws supersede state laws when it comes to controlling drugs. Nonetheless, states are permitted some latitude in fashioning their own drug control laws. For example, there is variation in what schedule a particular drug may be put in. This is common with marijuana. In other cases, some states have more or fewer schedules.

Penalties for possession, manufacture and distribution can also vary from state to state. When states have tried to legalize certain drugs or decriminalize them, however, the federal government has stepped in to prevent it and the courts have sided with the federal government over the states. In just the past few years, there have been two dramatic changes that have pitted states against the federal government in enforcing the laws that control marijuana. First is the trend toward recognition of the medical benefits of marijuana in treatment of glaucoma and in mitigation of the side effects of anticancer drugs. At this writing, 47 states have passed laws that permit people with glaucoma or cancer to obtain marijuana or an extract for treatment. These so-called "medical marijuana" laws have spread quite rapidly. As of 2020, only Idaho, South Dakota and Nebraska continue to prohibit the possession of marijuana under any circumstances. The federal government has chosen to not prosecute such enterprises that are tightly controlled by the states.

The other slow but unmistakable trend is toward legalization of possession of small quantities of marijuana. At this writing, eleven states have passed legislation that legalizes the possession of small quantities of marijuana. Although this activity is in clear violation of the Comprehensive Controlled Substances Act of 1970, the U.S. Department of Justice has decided to permit these states to operate and enforce these laws. It is of course, possible that another federal government administration may have other ideas and may choose to prosecute under federal laws in the future.

Classification of Illicit Drugs

Besides putting drugs in federal schedules, there are other ways to classify them that are more organized and that put similar drugs in the same class. For example, drugs can be classified by their origin. In this system, all illicit drugs would fall into one of three classes:

1. Naturally occurring substances (e.g., marijuana, cocaine, morphine)
2. Derived from a naturally occurring substance (heroin, made from morphine; LSD (synthesized from lysergic acid)
3. Synthetic (methamphetamine, PCP)

The most common method of classifying illicit drugs is by their major effects on a human being. This is the system that will be used in this chapter. Under this scheme, there are five major classes of illicit drugs:

1. Stimulants
2. Depressants
3. Narcotics
4. Hallucinogens
5. Performance-enhancing drugs (e.g., steroids)

Performance-enhancing drug use is not being actively controlled in the same way that drugs in the other four classes are. Although use of these drugs is not limited to professional and amateur athletes, cases of abuse of these drugs by athletes have led to high-profile publicity and actions by sports leagues and the Olympics to ban their use and punish abusers. As such, this topic will not be further covered in this chapter.

Stimulants

Central nervous system stimulants have the effects of elevating a person's mood, temporarily increasing energy levels, relieving some symptoms of depression and stimulating people who are tired or lethargic. Their "street" or slang name is *uppers*. For the most part, stimulants are not physically addictive but there are some exceptions. Many of them have powerful effects and can cause strong, intense psychological dependence. Two of the best examples of illicit stimulants are cocaine and methamphetamine.

Cocaine

The stimulant properties of cocaine have been known for centuries. It is a naturally occurring substance, derived from the *Erythroxylum coca* plant. Note that this is not the same as the *cocoa* plant, from which chocolate is derived. The coca plant grows mainly in only one part of the world: the Amazon slopes of the Andes Mountains in South America. The epicenter of cocaine production in recent times has been Colombia. Figure 19.1 shows coca leaves.

Medically, cocaine is a topical anesthetic. This means that it causes numbness of any area of the body that it comes in direct contact with. It is still used in some medical procedures as an anesthetic but has largely been replaced by other drugs. As a topical anesthetic cocaine is similar to other drugs such as procaine (novocaine), which is used to numb the teeth and gums in dental procedures, and benzocaine, which is used to treat the pain of sunburn. Clearly, people don't abuse cocaine because it numbs their skin. For thousands of years, the indigenous farmers of the mountainous regions of South America have known that they could increase their energy and endurance by chewing on the leaves of the coca plant. Their saliva served to extract some of the cocaine from the leaves, and this gave

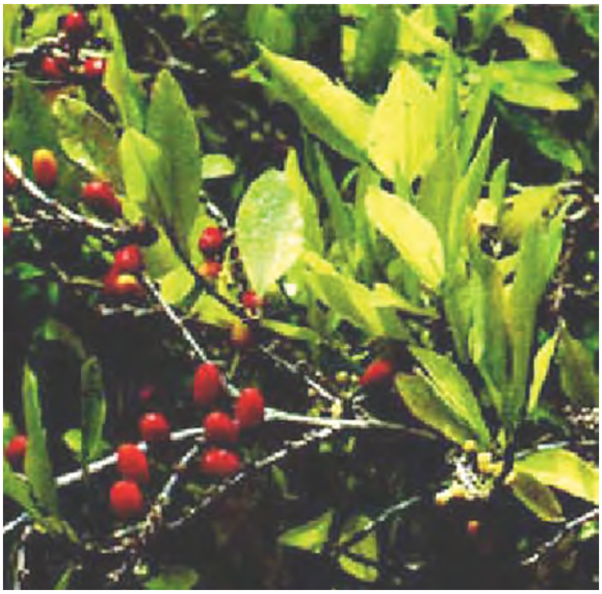


Figure 19.1 Coca leaves. Cocaine can be extracted directly from the leaves by chewing. Bits of seashell will enhance the extraction. Chemical extractions are done on a commercial basis.

them a temporary stimulant high to enable them to do the arduous work of farming the hilly land. Later, many of these people chewed on bits of seashell with the coca leaves. This provided an alkaline environment in the mouth that made the extraction of the cocaine more efficient so the effects of the cocaine were increased and lasted longer. In the latter part of the nineteenth century and the early part of the twentieth century, cocaine became used more and more in the United States as a stimulant. It was used in many elixirs, which are liquids that contain various medicinal and flavoring ingredients that are sold for particular medical purposes. In the early part of the twentieth century, some people sold these concoctions out of the back of wagons and represented them as miracle cures. It is interesting to note that, when the federal government cracked down on elixirs containing cocaine and made the producers remove it, they substituted another, legal stimulant, caffeine. Today, most cola soft drinks have caffeine in them; some used to have cocaine.

Preparation and Ingestion of Cocaine

Since cocaine is a naturally occurring substance, all that is necessary to abuse it is to extract it from coca leaves. The leaves are chopped up and dissolved in hot, alkaline water or an organic solvent. The cocaine is extracted from the leaves. Then another solvent containing hydrochloric acid is added that precipitates the purified cocaine. The powder that is produced is *cocaine hydrochloride*. This is a flaky white powder that is sometimes called *snow* because it is so white and fluffy. It is also called *flake* or *blow*. Cocaine is almost always diluted when sold to users. Typically, it is cut with an inert powder like sugar so that the final product is 20%–50% pure. The most common way of ingesting cocaine flake is by *snorting*. A line of cocaine is laid down on a flat surface such as a mirror. Then, using a tiny spoon or a straw, the cocaine is drawn up into the nose. The first sensation one gets from snorting coke is to get numb in the nose—remember that cocaine is a topical anesthetic. After that, the cocaine "high" will occur within about 30 min and last an hour or so, depending upon how much was snorted and one's experience with the drug. Because the cocaine has to pass through the nasal passages to the blood stream in order to be effective, some of it is blocked or chemically changed and never gets through, thus reducing the potency of the drug. In this form, cocaine is thought to not be addicting.

In the 1980s, a new form of cocaine, called *crack*, became popular. Crack can be made from cocaine flake using household chemicals such as lye and cleaning fluid. Unlike cocaine flake, which is a fluffy powder, crack comes in the form of small rocks that are easily cracked or broken (hence the name). Also, unlike cocaine flake, crack is smoked using a small pipe. In this form, cocaine can be physically addictive because so much more of it gets into the bloodstream through the lungs. For this reason, the federal government and many states attach more severe penalties for the possession of crack than they do for the same amount of flake. In the past couple of years, this practice of differential sentencing for crack and flake is being rethought, especially at the federal level, where it is no longer the standard policy. Interestingly, some people believe that the term "crack" comes from the Gaelic word "craic", which means "have a good time". Figure 19.2a shows cocaine flake and Figure 19.2b shows crack.

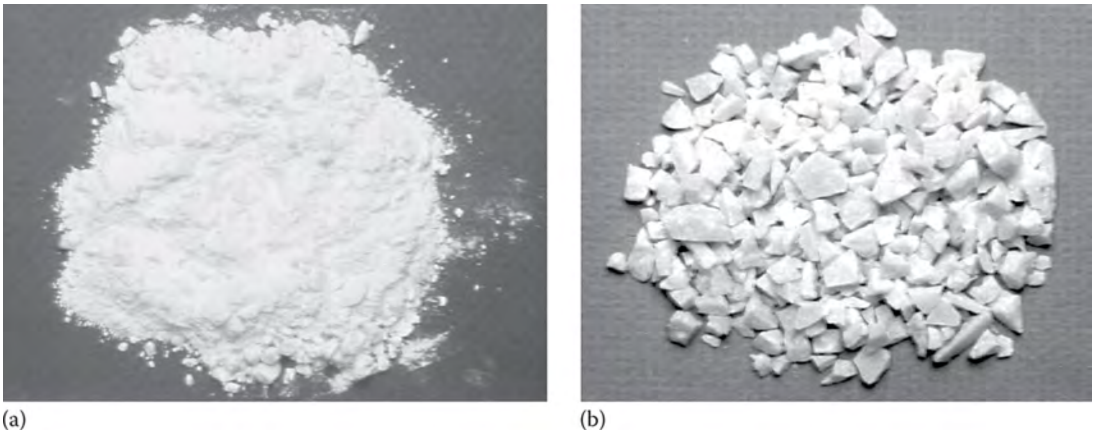

(a) (b)

Figure 19.2 (a) Cocaine flake (hydrochloride) and (b) crack cocaine. Crack is made from cocaine flake by treatment with an alkaline substance such as sodium bicarbonate.

Methamphetamine

Methamphetamine and its cousin, amphetamine, have been popular illicit drugs for more than 40 years. Both drugs have had legitimate medical uses in the United States and continue to do so. They are legally marketed as stimulants to relieve lethargy, drowsiness and depression. Both have also been prescribed for hyperkinesia (a type of overactivity) and both have been used as appetite suppressants. Because they are so frequently abused, they are hardly produced for licit purposes anymore. For many years, methamphetamine and amphetamine were obtained by theft from pharmacies and warehouses, but today, these sources are so tightly controlled that most of the drugs, especially methamphetamine, are produced in (clandestine) labs. In some places in the United States, "meth" labs have become practically an epidemic. Methamphetamine was nicknamed "speed" on the streets because of its powerful stimulant properties, especially when taken pure. High doses of this drug can cause death, and in the 1960s, the warning on the street was that "speed kills".

Preparation and Ingestion

The most popular method of preparation of methamphetamine uses an over-the-counter cold remedy called *pseudoephedrine*. This drug is a very popular decongestant. In some places, people buy huge quantities of cold remedies and extract the pseudoephedrine so they can make methamphetamine. In some states, laws have been passed that require that cold remedies be kept behind a counter and that only small amounts can be sold to a person and that everyone who buys any quantity would have to show identification and sign for the drug. A second major ingredient for this method of preparation of methamphetamine is ammonia. Many farmers use pure, liquid, anhydrous ammonia as an ingredient in fertilizer and they keep large tanks on their property. Reports of thefts of large quantities of ammonia are on the rise all over the country. The other chemical needed for the synthesis is lithium, which can be extracted from some batteries. Methamphetamine production is becoming so popular in some areas of the country that law enforcement agents are at a loss in trying to control it. The passage of state laws that severely restrict the availability of pseudoephedrine have helped a great deal.

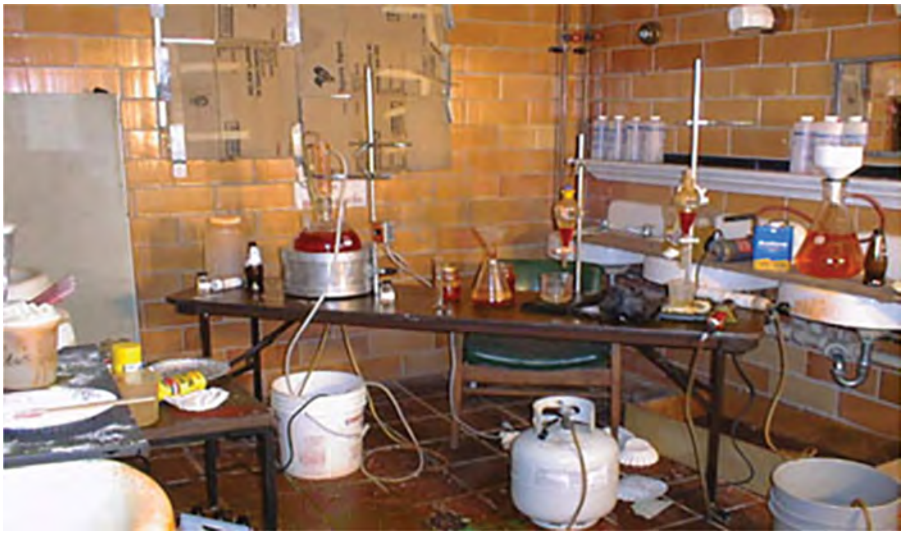


Figure 19.3 A clandestine methamphetamine laboratory. Such a laboratory is very dangerous because of open, toxic chemicals and flammable gases.

Some counties now report that the “mom and pop” meth labs have practically dried up. The methamphetamine is still coming in but increasingly it is being traced to large, well-financed laboratories in Mexico. This used to be the primary source of methamphetamine in the United States before the epidemic of locally made drug. Figure 19.3 shows a clandestine methamphetamine lab.

Depressants

In the 1960s and 1970s, depressants were much more popular illicit drugs than they are today. By far, the most popular depressants were the *barbiturates*. These are a whole family of drugs that have been prescribed to relieve anxiety, nervousness and restlessness. They range from the mild acting, such as phenobarbital, which was, at one time, an ingredient of some allergy medicines, to the very powerful types, such as pentobarbital and thiopentobarbital (sodium pentothal). The former is used to put very sick animals to sleep. Pentothiobarbital, or sodium pentothal, is used as a general anesthetic that puts people to sleep during major surgery. Both have been used as the “lethal injection” for some criminals who are sentenced to die. In recent years in the United States, controversy has arisen over the use of barbiturates in the execution of criminals. There are very few sources for these drugs worldwide and most of the laboratories are outside the United States. Most of them refuse to sell the drug in the United States if it is to be used as part of the “cocktail” of drugs that are employed for executions. This has caused a major shortage of these drugs, forcing states that have the death penalty to search for alternatives.

The barbiturates are highly addictive drugs and are unusual in that, sudden withdrawal, sometimes called “cold turkey withdrawal”, can be fatal. Some people have gotten into vicious cycles with amphetamines and barbiturates where they take increasing doses of both to counteract the effects of the other. Some of the more potent barbiturates can cause death when taken with liquor. Accidental overdoses of alcohol and barbs caused the deaths of some celebrities including possibly Janis Joplin and Jimmy Hendrix. For the most part, barbiturates are not prescribed anymore because of their addictive nature and overdose danger. Other drugs such as Valium have replaced them. When Valium and its near neighbor, Librium, came out as part of the family of benzodiazepines, it was felt that they would be superior to the barbiturates because they would not be addictive and withdrawal would not be a problem. This has turned out to not be the case, although the addiction is not as severe or life threatening as it is with the barbiturates.

Hallucinogens

The most notorious of the illicit drugs are hallucinogens. These drugs cause audio and visual hallucinations, which mean that they cause people to see and hear things that aren't there. Some of the more popular hallucinogens are marijuana, LSD, mescaline and psilocybin.

Marijuana

Marijuana has been called by many colorful names over the hundreds of years that it has been used. These include weed, hop, Mary Jane, toke and many others. Marijuana is classified as a hallucinogen, mainly because it doesn't fit in the other categories. It doesn't cause hallucinations to the degree that the other members of this group including LSD and some mushrooms and some cactus extracts do. The effects are usually more of a mellowing out, but there can be a wide range of effects depending upon the person and how experienced he or she is with the drug. One of the more interesting effects of marijuana that has been widely reported is *the munchies*. Smoking marijuana apparently makes some users ravenously hungry.

Preparation and Ingestion

Marijuana is a plant belonging to the genus *cannabis*. It grows virtually anywhere although warm and sunny conditions are favored. The leaves and flowers of the plant contain a number of naturally occurring substances that cause its psychological effects. The most important member of this group of chemicals has the tongue-twisting name of *tetrahydrocannabinol* or *THC*. The leaves and flowering parts are usually separated from the plant and dried in an oven. Then they are chopped up and rolled into cigarettes and smoked. Marijuana can also be ingested by baking it into a number of foods. Marijuana brownies have been popular for more than 50 years. The higher the THC content, the more potent are the effects. Marijuana cigarettes may range from 1% THC on up. Genetically engineered marijuana with a THC content of nearly 40% has been reported! The stems, roots and seeds do not contain any appreciable quantities of THC. Figure 19.4 shows some marijuana leaves.

A number of preparations of marijuana have been made. Sometimes the pure resin is harvested from the flowering parts of the plant. This thick, sticky liquid has the highest THC content of any part of the plant. It is called hashish oil or just "hash oil". This is smoked in small pipes designed for this purpose. It is also

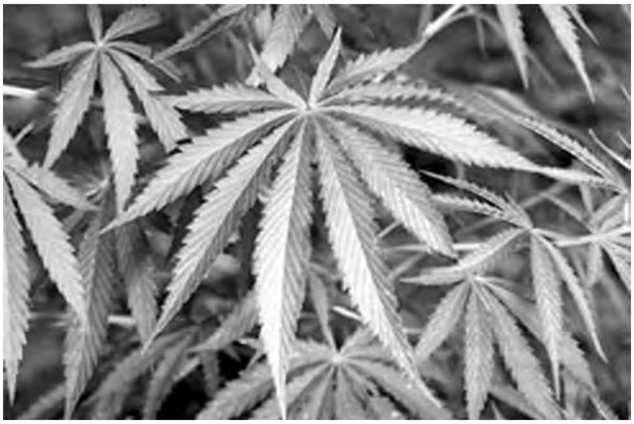


Figure 19.4 Marijuana leaf. These leaves always have an odd number of fronds.

common to take chopped up marijuana and extract it with a solvent. When the solvent is evaporated, a semisolid, cake-like material called hashish is left. This is formed into bricks and sold. To use it, a small piece is broken off and smoked it in a hash pipe or a “bong”. Figure 19.5 shows some of the various forms of marijuana and some devices used for smoking hashish. The large, brown chunks in the dish on the right side of the figure are pieces of hashish. Sometimes marijuana leaves are mixed with or coated with another drug such as PCP. This is called “wobble weed”. PCP is itself, a powerful hallucinogen. When mixed with marijuana and smoked, the effects are similar to very strong, high-quality marijuana. Many times marijuana buyers will pay for high-quality weed but get garden-variety marijuana laced with PCP.

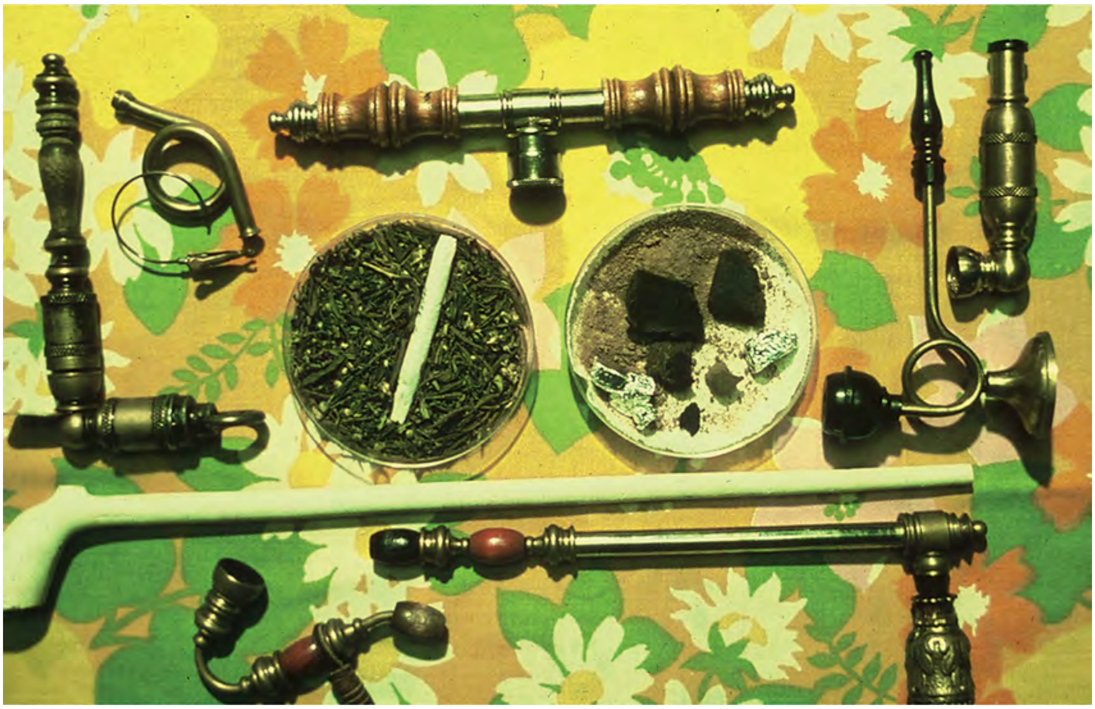


Figure 19.5 Marijuana exhibits. The chunks in the dish on the right are pieces of hashish. The pipes are mostly homemade and are used to smoke the hashish.

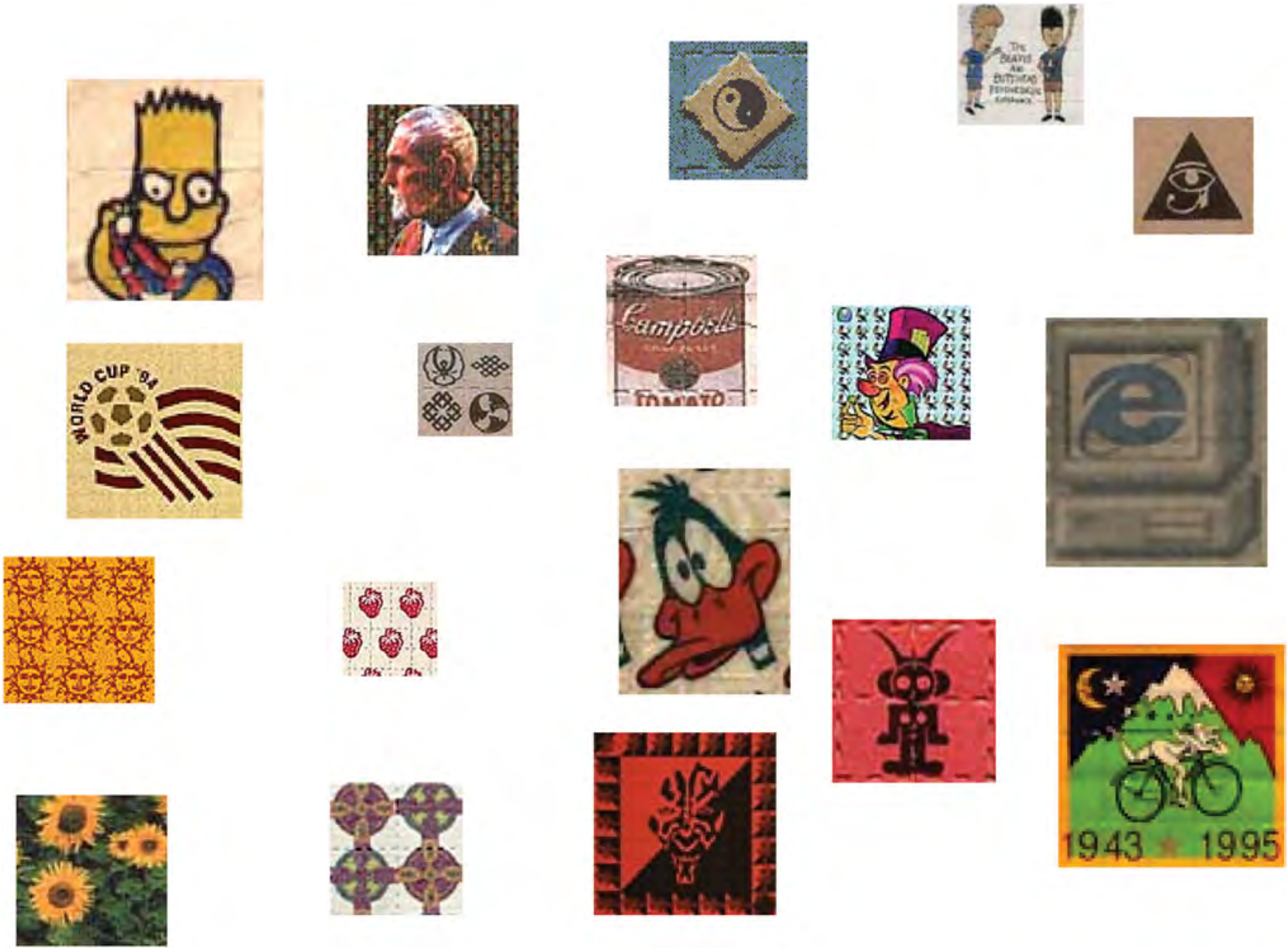


Figure 19.6 "Blotter acid" forms of LSD. The LSD is dissolved in a liquid and poured on the paper, which has been previously treated with the designs.

Other Hallucinogens

LSD

LSD is probably the most potent hallucinogen. One small droplet (approximately 50 μg) can cause visual and auditory hallucinations that can last up to 12 h. Because of its potency, it is taken in some unusual dosage forms. A common form of LSD is called "blotter acid". LSD is diluted with a solvent and dripped onto blotter paper or other absorbent paper. The paper is cut into tiny squares that are then eaten. LSD has also been made into tiny tablets called "microdots" or other colorful names such as "orange sunshine" or "purple haze". It has even been mixed with gelatin and cut into small squares called "windowpanes". It has also been found on decals that kids lick and put on their bodies. LSD can be absorbed through skin, so law enforcement agents and forensic chemists must be careful when handling it (see Figure 19.6 for a picture of blotter acid LSD).

Peyote

The peyote cactus can be found in the southwestern part of the United States as well as parts of Mexico and other desert areas. For hundreds of years, some North

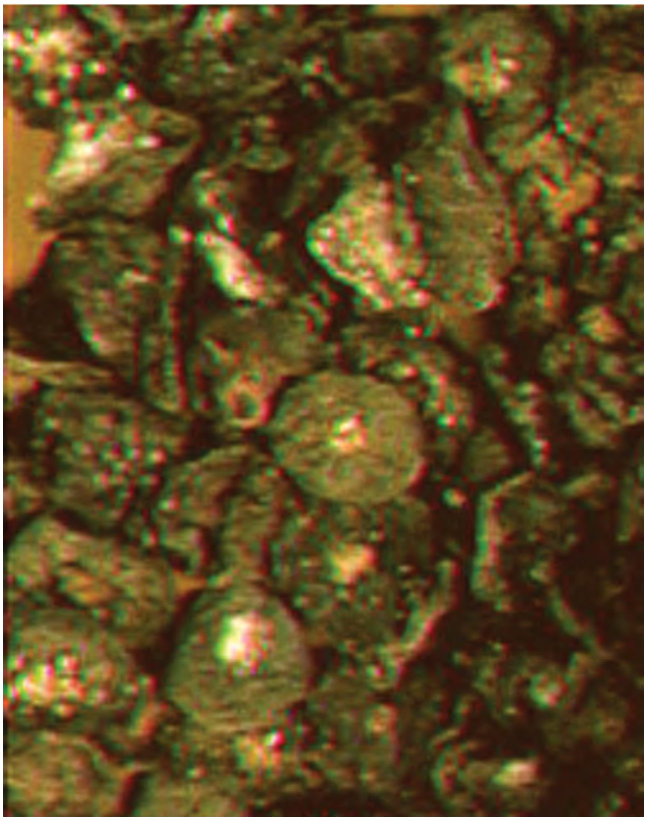


Figure 19.7 Peyote cactus buttons. These were seized in a raid in Virginia. More than 300 buttons were found in a house.

American Native American tribes have used the buttons from this plant in their religious rites. The buttons contain a hallucinogenic drug called *mescaline*. The buttons are eaten and hallucinogenic symptoms start shortly thereafter. Because the buttons contain lots of plant material, they are often not well digested. One of the authors of this book was once involved in a clandestine drug lab raid where more than 300 buttons were found along with a blender and some cocoa powder. The perpetrator was apparently making mescaline milk shakes to try and avoid the nausea that comes from eating raw cactus buttons. Figure 19.7 shows some of peyote cactus buttons.

Psilocybin

Remember "Alice in Wonderland" where Alice eats some mushrooms and grows really, really big and some other ones make her really small? There are more than a dozen types of mushrooms that grow in the United States and can cause hallucinations. These mushrooms contain *psilocybin* and *psilocin*. These are relatively mild, short-acting hallucinogens. If one is not absolutely sure about what to look for, gathering and eating these mushrooms can be a bit like Russian roulette. Many mushrooms are very poisonous and attempts to get high could easily be fatal if the wrong ones are eaten. Figure 19.8 shows some varieties of psilocybin mushrooms.

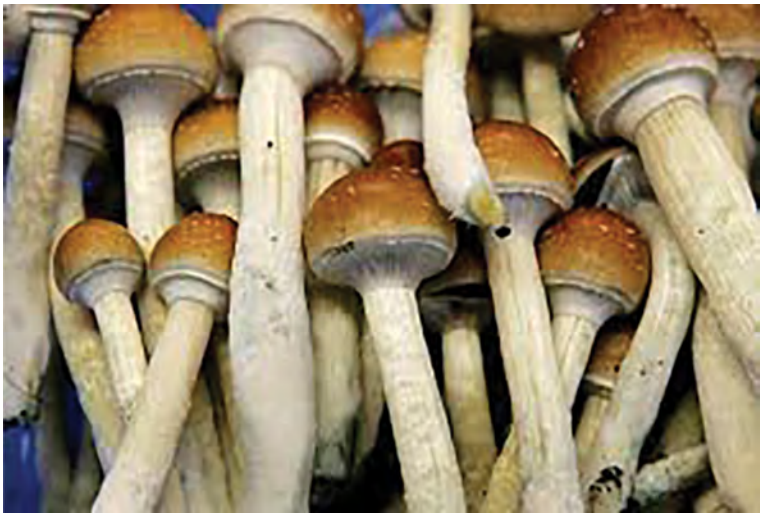


Figure 19.8 Psilocybin mushrooms. There are at least 15 varieties of mushrooms that contain psilocybin. There are many poisonous lookalikes.

Narcotics

The term *narcotic* is often associated with illicit drugs and generally has a bad connotation in the United States. The word comes from the root *narco*, which means "sleep". All narcotics are powerful sleep-inducing, central nervous system depressants. In legal circles, the term "narcotic" has referred to substances that are derived from the *opium poppy* (*Papaver somniferum)*. Remember "The Wizard of Oz"? On the way to Oz, Dorothy and her friends fall asleep while tramping through the poppy fields. This is because, at the top of the poppy plant, is a large pod that contains a gooey resin. For centuries people have been harvesting the dried resin and smoking it in opium dens. About 10% of this resin is made up of *morphine* (named for *Morpheus*, the God of sleep). Morphine is a powerful narcotic. In addition to causing sleep, it exhibits the other major characteristic of narcotics; it relieves pain. Morphine is sometimes used as a pain reliever for people who have had major surgery or trauma. Another naturally occurring narcotic found in opium is *codeine*. It is less powerful than morphine. It is used mainly in treating coughs by depressing the nerves that trigger coughing. It is also mixed with Tylenol® or other analgesics for treatment of pain after minor surgery and toothaches.

The most famous (or infamous) narcotic is *heroin*. Heroin is a semisynthetic substance made from morphine. Poppies grow mainly in the Far East, and the raw opium is shipped to France and other countries where the morphine is extracted and converted to heroin, which is distributed all over the world. The movie "The French Connection" told the story of the heroin trade in New York. Heroin is 10 times stronger than morphine for the same dose and is used in some countries for the same purpose as morphine. In this country, heroin has no accepted medical use and is in Schedule I. All of the narcotics are physically addictive, heroin especially so, and withdrawal symptoms can be quite severe but seldom fatal.

Recently there has been an uptick in prescription drug abuse. Narcotics such as fentanyl, hydrocodone (Vicodin) and oxycodone (OxyContin, Percodan) are opioids on this list. All of these drugs are prescribed for pain relief and are

Schedule II drugs. Fentanyl is more potent than both heroin and morphine. The hydrocodone and oxycodone drugs are commonly obtained by abusers using false prescriptions or by obtaining the drugs from friends or family medicine cabinets.

Preparation and Ingestion of Heroin

Heroin is sold on the street as a white or brown powder that is about 3%–10% pure. The rest is made up of cutting agents like sugars. Heroin is commonly ingested by injection with a syringe. This can cause problems beyond the heroin itself. Addicts have a habit of sharing needles and this is a good way to transmit blood-borne diseases such as AIDS and hepatitis. Typically, some of the powder is put in a small container such as a discarded bottle cap and some water is added. The mixture is heated to dissolve the heroin and then the liquid is pulled into the syringe, filtering it through a small wad of cotton or similar material. Heroin addicts will have telltale needle tracks on their arms and will often find other places on their bodies to inject the drug in order to avoid detection.

In addition to morphine and codeine, there are other narcotics in opium but they occur only in trace quantities. In recent years, many synthetic narcotics have been developed. These have similar properties to some of the naturally occurring ones but with fewer side effects. The best known of these is *methadone*, which is used as a substitute for heroin for people who are trying to “kick the habit”. There are also a number of other synthetic narcotics that have been abused off and on for years but which have made a major comeback in just the past few years. The two most popular of these are *hydrocodone* and *oxycodone*. Hydrocodone is often mixed with an analgesic such as ibuprofen and sold with a prescription as a pain reliever. Oxycodone is sold as Oxycontin®, another pain reliever. This has been widely abused as part of “rave” parties, large gatherings of young people where drugs and alcohol are liberally imbibed. As the U.S. population ages and baby boomers approach advanced age, these drugs have become prescribed to an alarming degree for aches and pains. The FDA and DEA have moved to restrict the flow of these drugs by cracking down on overprescribing. The result is that heroin is making a major comeback because people are becoming addicted to the pain-killing drugs. Because of the restrictions on them, heroin is becoming more available and cheaper.

Analysis of Illicit Drugs

Agents of the U.S. DEA as well as state and local police have personnel that are dedicated to lessening the flow of drugs into the United States and arresting people who possess or sell them to others. When these drugs are seized, they are sent to a crime laboratory where forensic drug chemists analyze them. There are a number of considerations that determine how the drugs will be analyzed. These include the following:

- What the drug is and what form it is in?
- Is there a large amount of the drug in one package or in many packages?
- Is there a very small amount of the drug?

- Is the weight of the drug mixture a consideration?

Requirements for the Analysis of Drugs

Any conclusion given by a forensic scientist in a court or on a laboratory report must be scientifically reliable and defendable. This means that if a scientist identifies a white powder as containing cocaine, he or she must prove this *to a degree of reasonable scientific certainty*. This is the standard of proof in a court. There must be no reasonable alternative to the conclusion reached by the scientist. For this reason, most drug samples must have at least one confirmatory test performed. There are a number of protocols for the analysis of drugs. The one employed by a particular chemist depends on the lab, the caseload and the instrumentation available. The international Scientific Working Group on Drug Analysis has developed standards and protocols for the analysis of common illicit drugs (www.swgdrug.org).

Schemes of Analysis for Drugs

In general, tests for drugs proceed from the general to the specific. Each test serves to give more information about the possible identity of the drug and either the scheme as a whole or a confirmatory test will positively identify the drug.

Screening Tests

The most general tests for drugs are called screening tests. These are also sometimes called spot tests or field tests. There are screening tests for most of the common illicit drugs. Most of these tests consist of adding one or more chemical reagents to a pinch of the suspected drug and then observing one or more color changes. For example, the common screening test for marijuana involves three chemicals and the final color is purple. For cocaine, the test uses three chemicals and the final color is turquoise. The purpose of these tests is to narrow down the possibilities for a drug sample. This can be especially important if the submitted sample is a white powder. This could be any of a number of things and screening tests can be very important in leading the chemist toward the actual drug. It is important to emphasize that screening tests are never used to confirm the presence of a specific drug. For each screening test, there may be many substances that could give a positive reaction.

Separation Tests

Very few illicit drug samples, especially powdered samples, are sold on the street in a pure form. Virtually all of them are diluted with one or more materials. This is done to maximize profits and minimize overdoses. Cocaine, for example, is often cut with sugars or other white powders. The same is true for heroin and methamphetamine. In order to eventually positively identify the drug, it must be separated from the cutting agents. This can be done on a large scale using liquid solvents to extract the drug away from cutting agents. On a small scale, where only a small amount of the drug may be present, gas chromatography is used. For some drugs liquid chromatography may be used. These techniques are discussed in Chapter 4. Figure 19.9 is a chromatogram of two drugs: caffeine and cocaine.

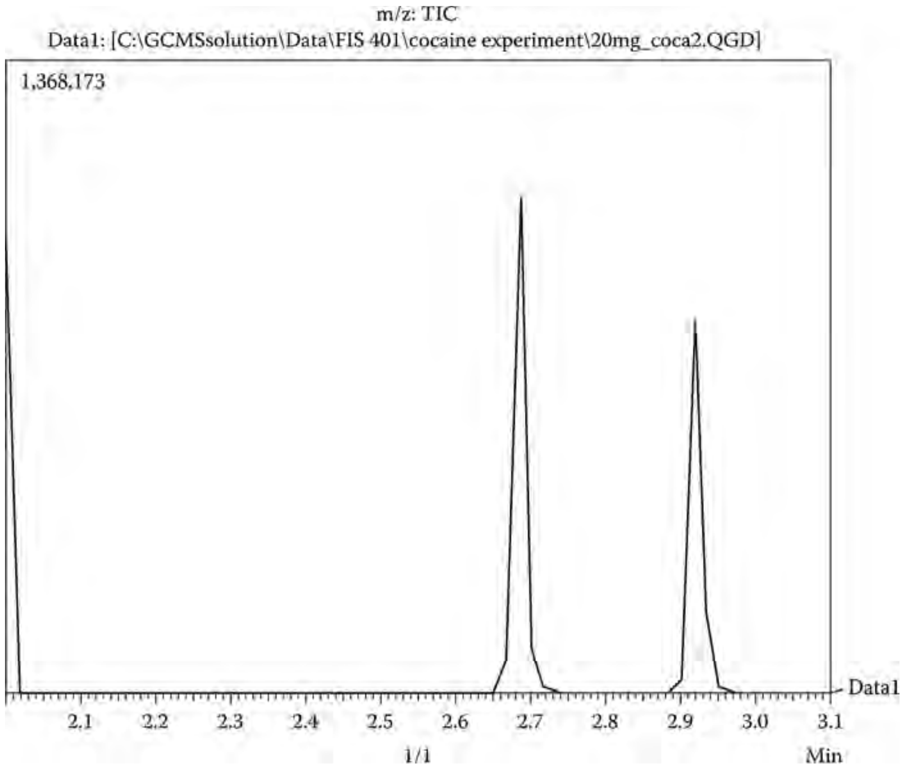


Figure 19.9 Gas chromatogram of caffeine (first peak) and cocaine (second peak). These are common stimulant drugs.

Confirmation Tests

As mentioned earlier, most drug samples must be confirmed by a single test so that there is no uncertainty in the identity of the drug. In most crime labs, the confirmatory test is mass spectrometry. This test is explained in Chapter 5. Figure 19.10 is a mass spectrum of cocaine.

One of the few drugs that didn't normally require a confirmatory test is marijuana. This is because it is a plant that is easily recognized. The visual recognition of parts of the plant under a microscope is part of the protocol. Other tests, such as a screening test and perhaps a separation test are usually done to isolate the THC and the protocol as a whole is considered to be confirmatory for marijuana. Sometimes it is not possible to confirm the presence of a drug when there is so little drug present that there is not enough to complete the analysis. Examples of this might be testing the residue in a syringe for heroin or the dust in a straw for cocaine. In such cases, nondestructive tests are done first. Other tests would only be performed if there were enough of the drug left to test further. Sometimes this partial scheme results in a report that gives only a qualified identification of the drug. Sometimes the opposite problem arises when there is a very large amount of the drug in many packages. Decisions must be made as to how the packages will be sampled and tested and how many packages will be opened and tested. One of the authors of this book once had a case that consisted of 16,000 lb of marijuana in 50 lb bricks. Samples of each of the 320 bricks were taken and tested. In another case, the author received 535 small packets containing suspected cocaine. All of them were opened and weighed and screened. All were about the same weight and responded the same to the screening test for cocaine. Portions

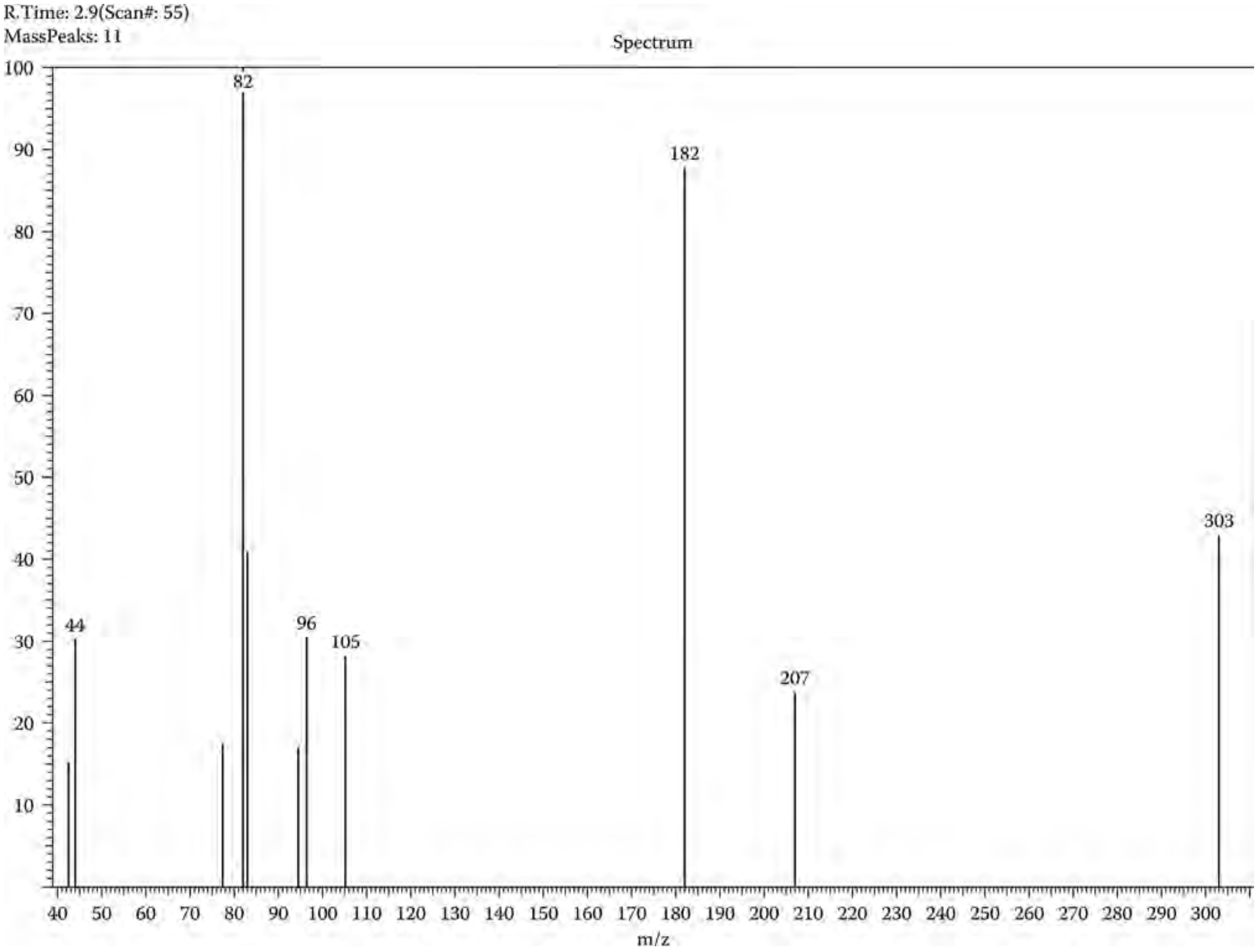


Figure 19.10 Mass spectrum of cocaine. The parent peak of ***m/e*** = 303 is the molecular weight of unfragmented cocaine. The base peak (most intense) is at ***m/e*** = 82.

of the packets were subjected to further testing to confirm the presence of the cocaine. This is permissible as long as representative samples are tested.

Summary

Illicit drugs are those that are either legitimately manufactured drugs that are taken for purposes other than those they were made for or they are drugs that have no medical use and are taken solely for abuse purposes. Illicit drugs fall into four classes by major effects: stimulants, depressants, narcotics and hallucinogens. The federal government controls many illicit drugs through a set of laws that create five schedules where drugs are put. These schedules regulate drugs by the presence or absence of a legitimate medical use and by their potential for abuse. Illicit drugs are analyzed by forensic chemists who develop protocols for analysis that take into account the form and quantity of the drug present as well as its purity. In most cases, a confirmatory test must be done on a drug sample to unequivocally identify it.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following would not be an illicit drug?
   a. Aspirin
   b. Cocaine
   c. Heroin
   d. Tylenol with codeine
   e. LSD
2. A drug with a high potential for abuse and a legitimate medical use would most likely be put in federal schedule
   a. 1
   b. 2
   c. 3
   d. 4
   e. 5
3. Heroin is classified as a
   a. Stimulant
   b. Narcotic
   c. Steroid
   d. Hallucinogen
   e. Over-the-counter medicine
4. Marijuana
   a. Comes from a plant
   b. Is totally synthetic
   c. Is chemically made from another drug
   d. Is a plant
   e. Is usually injected with a syringe and needle
5. If a forensic chemist receives only a very small amount of a drug
   a. She won't analyze it at all.
   b. She will do nondestructive tests first.
   c. She will do only the confirmatory test.
   d. She will do just one test and then stop.
   e. She will analyze the drug but won't write a report of her findings.
6. SWGDRUG is
   a. A confirmatory test for illicit drugs
   b. A liquid form of cocaine
   c. An international committee that set standards for the analysis of drugs
   d. The federal agency with the responsibility for arresting drug traffickers
7. Which of the following is not classified as a hallucinogen?
   a. Marijuana
   b. Methadone
   c. Psilocybin
   d. LSD
   e. Mescaline
8. If a new drug were discovered that had a high potential for abuse and no accepted medical use, it would most likely be put in schedule
   a. 5
   b. 1

  c. 2
  d. 6
  e. It wouldn't be in a schedule
9. If a chemist received a case that contained 1000 small baggies of a tan powder, all in the same type of packaging and with all about the same weight of powder, which scheme should he or she use to test these?
  a. Run all tests on all 1000 packets.
  b. Run a field test on all 1000 packets and then confirm the identity on one sample.
  c. Combine the powders from all 1000 packets and run one set of tests.
  d. Take a representative sample of the packets and run the tests on them.
  e. Pick out one sample of the 1000 at random and run all tests on it.
10. Which of the following drugs does not require a confirmatory test?
  a. Cocaine
  b. Heroin
  c. Marijuana
  d. PCP
  e. None of the above

True or False

11. Mass spectrometry is a confirmatory test for drugs (true or false).
12. Most street drugs are relatively pure and separation tests are seldom needed.
13. Prescription drugs are not put in any federal schedule.
14. States' drug laws must be exactly the same as the federal laws.
15. LSD is considered to be the most powerful of the hallucinogenic drugs.
16. Cocaine is a naturally occurring substance found in the poppy plant.
17. Marijuana analysis does not normally require a confirmatory test.

Match Each Term with Its Definition

18. Hash oil	a. Naturally occurring drug from poppy plant
19. Mescaline	b. Synthetic hallucinogen
20. Morphine	c. Synthetic narcotic
21. PCP	d. Preparation of marijuana
22. Methadone	e. Naturally occurring drug from cactus

Short Answer Questions

23. Name and describe the two criteria that are used for the classification of drugs into a federal schedule. Who has the ultimate responsibility for putting drugs in a schedule?

Go to the following web site: http://www.dea.gov/pubs/abuse/index.htm.

Use the information in the publication "Drugs of Abuse" published by the DEA to find the following information:

24. What Schedule is marijuana in?_______________
25. What Schedule is cocaine in? _________________

Further Reading

Liu, R. H. and D. E. Gadzala. (1997). *Handbook of Drug Analysis: Applications in Forensic and Clinical Laboratories*. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC.

Siegel, J. (2004). Analysis of illicit drugs, in *Handbook of Forensic Science*, vol. II, 2nd edn., R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Smith, F. (2004). *Handbook of Forensic Drug Analysis*. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

On the Web

Information on careers in forensic drug analysis: https://www.mymajors.com/career/drug-analysis-unit-forensic-scientist/.

Simplified Guide to Drug Chemistry: http://www.forensicsciencesimplified.org/drugs/DrugChemistry.pdf

The homepage of *SWGDRUG*, the scientific working group on drug analysis: http://www.swgdrug.org/.

Detailed list of Scheduled Drugs: https://www.deadiversion.usdoj.gov/21cfr/cfr/2108cfrt.htm

Marijuana laws by state: https://www.oberk.com/marijuanalawsbystatein2020

DEA Guide to Drugs of Abuse: https://www.dea.gov/sites/default/files/2018-06/drug_of_abuse.pdf

Case Study

Case Study: Mexican Drug Lord Joaquin "El Chapo" Guzman Arrest and Conviction

One of the most notorious Mexican drug lords, Joaquin "El Chapo" Guzman, who was responsible for moving drugs from Columbia, South America, through Mexico, to cities across the United States was sentenced to life in prison plus 30 years on February 20, 2019. The arrest and conviction of Guzman, also known as "El Rapido" for how quickly he could move the drugs through Mexico, was a joint effort of many federal, state and international law enforcement agencies.

Juaquin Guzman's list of crimes included narcotics trafficking, using a firearm in drug crimes, and money laundering, just a few among a total of 10 indictments. He was the head of the Sinaloa Cartel, a Mexican organized crime syndicate that trafficked illegal drugs to the United States from 1989 to 2014. In 1993 he was arrested by Mexican authorities; however, he was able to escape prison in 2001 by hiding in a pushcart full of laundry. Throughout his rein, Guzman and his cartel were responsible for moving more than a million kilograms of heroin, cocaine, marijuana and methamphetamine into the United States.

Guzman used bribery, intimidation and murder to keep his business running without interruption. His bodyguards were known to kidnap, interrogate, torture and murder in his defense. Drugs were transported by elaborate means such as tunnels, carbon fiber airplanes, boats, trains and submarines.

In July of 2019, Guzman’s legal team requested a new trial based on juror misconduct, claiming a few jurors were biased against the defendant. U.S. District Court Brian Cogan denied the request saying that the claim was weak and did not establish improper bias. He also stated, “This request is the textbook definition of a fishing expedition, rather than 'clear, strong, substantial and incontrovertible evidence that a specific, nonspeculative impropriety has occurred'”.

For more information: https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/joaquin-el-chapo-guzman-sinaloa-cartel-leader-sentenced-life-prison-plus-30-years

20

Forensic Toxicology

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define forensic toxicology
2. To be able to define and give examples of absorption, metabolism, elimination and metabolite
3. To be able to describe the major effects on the rate of absorption of alcohol from the stomach into the bloodstream
4. To be able to describe the major metabolites of alcohol
5. To be able to describe the major effects on the rate of elimination of alcohol from the bloodstream
6. To be able to draw and describe a Widmark curve
7. To be able to describe the major effects of alcohol on the body
8. To be able to describe the major methods of measuring blood and breath alcohol
9. To be able to describe how a drug recognition expert tests for drivers under the influence of drugs.

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Forensic Toxicology*
- *Becoming a Forensic Toxicologist*
- *Principles of Pharmacology*
  - *Drug Intake*
  - *Absorption*
  - *Circulation of Drugs in the Bloodstream*
  - *Elimination of Drugs from the Body*
    - *Metabolism*
    - *Elimination*
  - *Synergism*
  - *Tolerance*
  - *Addiction v. Dependence*
- *Pharmacology and Toxicology of Ethyl Alcohol*
- *Absorption of Ethanol*
  - *Circulation of Ethanol in the Bloodstream*
  - *Elimination of Ethanol*
  - *Maximum Blood Alcohol Concentration*
    - *How Much Drinking Does It Take to Get Drunk?*
- *Drunk Driving Laws*
  - *Testing Alcohol Levels*
- *Field Sobriety Testing*
- *Measurement of BAC*
- *Driving Under the Influence of Drugs*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Driving Under Influence of Drugs*
- *DRE Information*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Addiction: Physical effects of a drug on a person, manifested by an extreme craving for the drug. If deprived of the drug, withdrawal will set in.

Deciliter: One-tenth of a liter. 100 mL.

Dependence: A psychological phenomenon. Any physical changes that may accompany regular use of a drug are insufficient to cause addiction. There may still be a powerful craving for the drug but failure to take the drug does not cause withdrawal.

Enteric dosage form: Form of a drug that is made to be released overtime in the bloodstream.

Forensic toxicology: The legal application of toxicology as well as other scientific disciplines such as analytical chemistry and clinical chemistry to criminal and civil cases including drug use, medicolegal investigation of death and poisoning.

Half-life: The time it takes for the concentration of a drug in the body to be reduced by 50%.

Horizontal and vertical gaze nystagmus: Movement of the eyeball as an object is passed slowly in front of the eyes horizontally and vertically.

Implied consent: Permission to submit to a drunk driving alcohol test that you give when you sign your driver's license.

Metabolite: The action of the liver on a drug to change it into a different substance that is generally less harmful and easier to eliminate from the body.

Oxidation–reduction reaction: In this type of reaction, electrons are moved from one substance to another, changing the valence state of one or more atoms.

Pharmacology: The study of drugs and all of their harmful and beneficial effects on living things.

Proof: A measure of alcohol concentration in hard liquors. It is equal to twice the percentage of alcohol in the drink.

Synergism: Magnified effects from a combination of similarly acting drugs.

Tolerance: Occurs when increasing doses are required to maintain the same level of effects on the subject as the original dose.

Toxicology: The study of the harmful effects of drugs and poisons on living things.

Withdrawal: A syndrome; a set of reactions to the lack of the drug. The symptoms include sleeplessness, restlessness, nausea, hallucinations, headaches and other pain. Withdrawal can last for days or even weeks.

Acronyms

BAC	Blood alcohol concentration
DRE	Drug Recognition Expert
DUI	Driving Under the Influence (of drugs or alcohol)
DWI	Driving While Intoxicated or Driving While Impaired
LSD	Lysergic acid diethylamide
Redox	Oxidation–reduction reaction

Introduction

Janice Joplin, a famous 1960s and 1970s rock star, died of an overdose of heroin, possibly complicated by alcohol. Jimi Hendrix, another famous rock star of the same era, died of an accidental overdose of barbiturates. The website http://www.av1611.org/rockdead.html lists 40 rock stars who died from drug overdoses.

In some of these cases, drugs are sometimes combined with alcohol to cause death, often accidental. In Chapter 19, we learned that central nervous system depressants are one of the four major types of abused drugs. Alcohol is also a central nervous system depressant, although it works somewhat differently from the drugs. It is not too difficult to accidentally overdose on this combination, when someone takes depressants that, by themselves, wouldn't be lethal and drinking an amount of alcohol that, likewise, wouldn't be lethal by itself. As we shall see in this chapter, drugs can combine their effects to cause overall effects that are greater than the sum of the individual effects. This can result in an accidental (or deliberate) overdose.

Chapter 19 covered illicit drugs seized from drug users and sellers on the street. The major categories and effects of these substances were discussed. Of course, the effects that drugs have on a particular person depend upon the physical and emotional traits of the person as well as the amount and strength of the drug and the frequency that is taken by the user. This chapter is concerned with the fate of these drugs when they are ingested. First, the general principles of toxicology are covered. These include the methods of ingestion of drugs, how they get into the bloodstream and then to the various organs in the body, how they are treated chemically in the body and how they are eliminated. Then, the particular example of ethyl alcohol (spirits) is used to illustrate these principles. Although alcohol is not classified as an illicit drug, its behavior in the human body provides an excellent example of how drugs in general are handled. In addition to the toxicology of alcohol, its chemical analysis for the purpose of drunk driving enforcement is also discussed. More than half of the cases that forensic toxicologists receive in public crime laboratories are concerned with drunk driving, so it is appropriate that we focus on alcohol.

Forensic Toxicology

Toxicology is the study of the harmful effects of drugs and poisons on living things. It includes study of symptoms, mechanisms, treatment and detection of these drugs and poisons. Toxicology is part of the science of **pharmacology**, which is the study of drugs and all of their harmful and beneficial effects on living things. So when scientists use the principles of pharmacology to analyze the harmful effects of drugs and poisons on living things in cases involving the criminal justice system, they are practicing **forensic toxicology**; the legal application of toxicology as well as other scientific disciplines such as analytical chemistry and clinical chemistry to criminal and civil cases including drug use, medicolegal investigation of death and poisoning. The relationships between toxicology, pharmacology and forensic toxicology are illustrated in Figure 20.1.

Becoming a Forensic Toxicologist

One of the most important tasks of a forensic toxicologist is to measure the concentration of drugs and poisons in various body fluids and substances such as blood, urine and breath. This is done in some cases on living humans as in drunk driving cases, but mostly on people who have died under circumstances where the coroner or medical examiner would have to determine the cause and manner of death. These measurements are a type of analytical chemistry, and so much of what forensic toxicologists have to know is chemistry. A good preparation for becoming a forensic toxicologist is a bachelor's degree in chemistry. Some universities also offer bachelor's degrees in clinical chemistry or in toxicology although these are more often offered at the graduate level. With a bachelor's degree, a scientist is qualified to make measurements of drug, poison and alcohol levels in a body but would not be qualified to interpret these levels in terms of their contribution to a death. In order to make these determinations, a

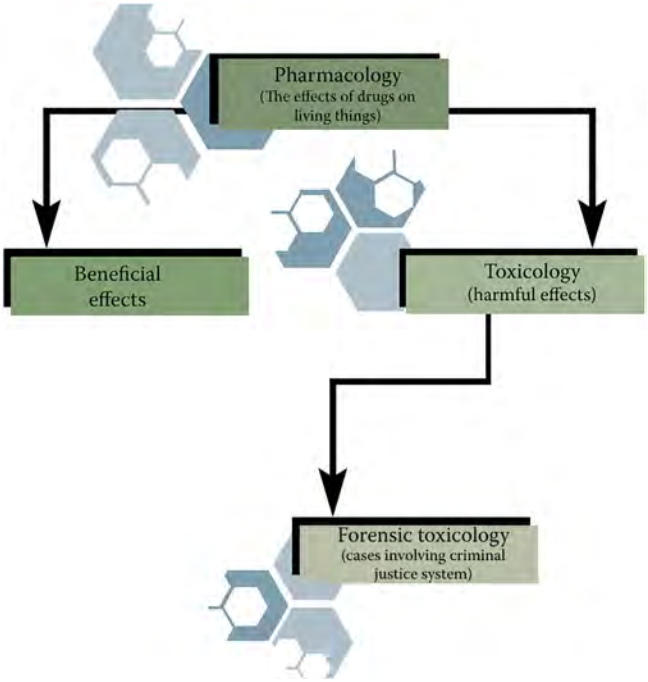

Pharmacology
(The effects of drugs on living things)
Beneficial effects
Toxicology
(harmful effects)
Forensic toxicology
(cases involving criminal justice system)

Figure 20.1 Relationships between pharmacology, toxicology and forensic toxicology.

scientist must be educated in pharmacology and toxicology. This normally requires a PhD in one of those fields. A PhD in chemistry is normally not specific enough unless it is in clinical chemistry. A forensic toxicologist with a PhD may be certified by the American Board of Forensic Toxicology (www.abft.org). A bachelor's level toxicologist may be certified as a forensic toxicologist specialist.

Principles of Pharmacology

In Chapter 19, the term "drug" was defined as a substance that is designed to have specific physical and/or emotional effects on living things. Licit drugs are manufactured to have beneficial effects. Poisons, by definition, have harmful effects. Some drugs, if taken inappropriately or in combination with other drugs or in high doses, can have harmful effects and a person can therefore be poisoned by them. Pharmacologists study all sorts of drugs and poisons. They learn what happens to a drug when it is taken, and what effects it has on organisms and the effects of drugs taken in combination with other drugs or alcohol. This chapter is concerned mainly with what happens to a drug when it is taken. This branch of pharmacology is called "pharmacodynamics". It includes methods of ingestion of a drug, how it is absorbed into the bloodstream and other parts of the body, how it is distributed throughout the body, how it is changed (metabolized) into other substances and how it is eliminated.

Drug Intake

Drugs can be administered in a number of ways. These include swallowing a powder, tablet or capsule or dissolving a powder in water and then drinking it. Liquids and vapors may be inhaled through the nose. Sometimes drugs are taken via an intramuscular, subcutaneous or intravenous injection with a syringe and needle. The best method of ingestion for a particular drug depends upon how it interacts with organs such as the stomach and how quickly the drug needs to be absorbed and distributed. If stomach acids destroy a drug, then this route of ingestion must be avoided. In order to prevent a drug from dissolving too quickly in the stomach or small intestine, it may be coated with a material that slows down solution of the drug or it may come in the form of tiny, coated particles that enter the bloodstream over a long period of time (timed release capsules). Drugs that are protected in this way are called "enteric dosage forms". The route of ingestion will also affect the rate that the drug enters the bloodstream. As will be shown later, this has a profound influence upon the effects of the drug. Intravenous injections directly into the bloodstream provide the fastest route, followed by intramuscular and subcutaneous injections. Oral administration is normally the slowest means of getting a drug into the bloodstream. Occasionally, drugs enter the body via unusual routes. One of the most popular ways of ingesting cocaine used to be by "snorting" or inhaling through the nose. Now the most popular method of taking cocaine and some other drugs such as marijuana is by smoking it in a pipe or, in the case of marijuana leaf, by rolling it into cigarettes. Some drugs that are designed to act on the digestive system or intestines are administered anally (suppositories).

Absorption

Once the drug has entered the body, it is absorbed into the bloodstream. If the drug is a vapor and is inhaled into the lungs, then it will eventually enter the blood through tiny capillaries that are in contact with the smallest sacs in the lungs, known as "alveoli". Figure 20.2 shows the structure of a human lung including the alveoli.

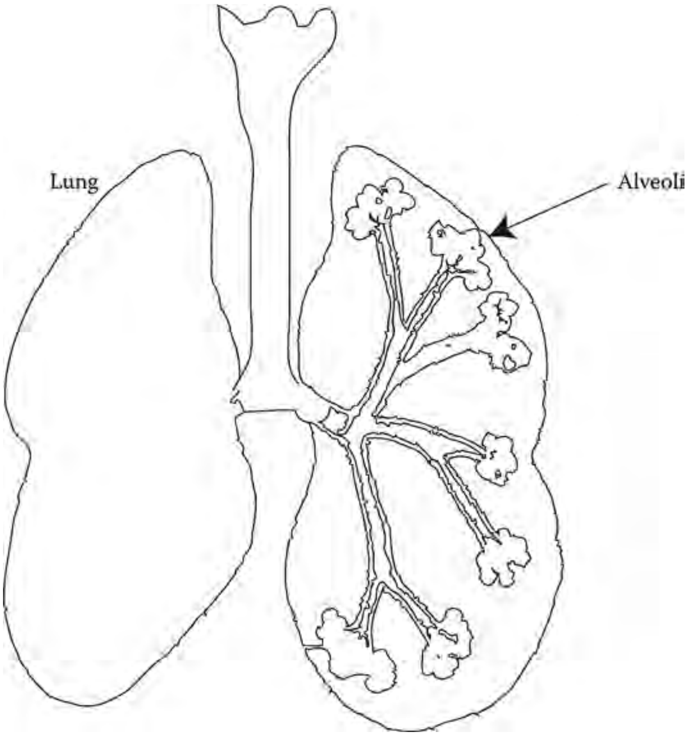


Figure 20.2 The human lung showing alveoli.

Drugs that are introduced via intramuscular or subcutaneous injection enter the bloodstream through capillaries that are present in muscle or skin tissue. If the drug is taken orally, it will first enter the stomach. It may then pass through the stomach through the "pylorus" (a valve that connects the stomach to the small intestine) and then into the small intestine. Some drugs are absorbed into the bloodstream from the stomach, some from the small intestine and some drugs are absorbed in both places. Figure 20.3 shows the stomach and small intestine.

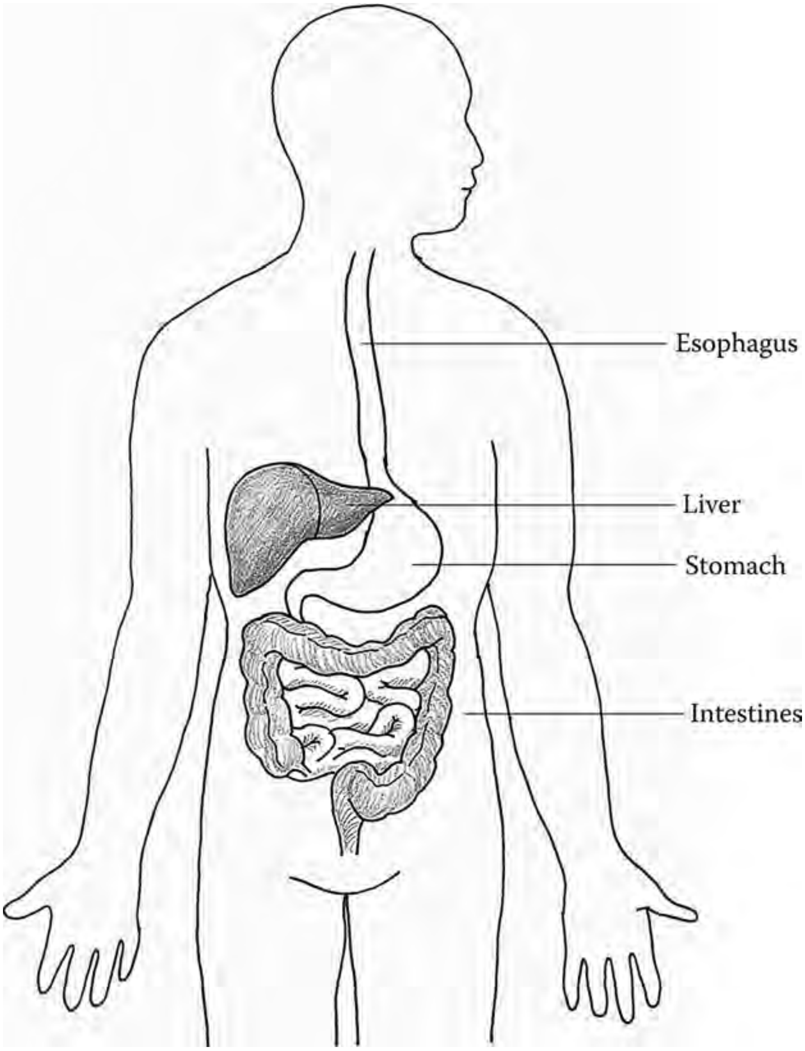


Figure 20.3 The stomach and small intestine. Courtesy of Richard Li.

With the exception of oral ingestion, the drug user has no control over the rate of absorption of a drug. When the drug is taken orally, then the rate of absorption depends upon what is in the stomach already. If the stomach is empty, then the drug will be absorbed rapidly. If there is already food in the stomach, then the drug will have to compete with the food already there for absorption into the bloodstream. This means that the drug will be absorbed more slowly and the ultimate concentration of the drug in the blood will be lower than if the stomach were empty. To some extent, the type of food in the stomach will affect the rate of absorption of the drug. Some foods are absorbed more slowly than others and so they will inhibit the absorption of a drug more or less depending upon the type of food. This concept is especially important to grasp in the study of drunk driving cases, where the ultimate concentration of alcohol in a person's body will be dependent upon what he or she has eaten prior to drinking.

Circulation of Drugs in the Bloodstream

Once drugs enter the bloodstream, they circulate throughout the body. Although some drugs are targeted for specific organs such as the heart, drugs have their most important effects in the brain. Pharmaceutical chemistry has advanced to the point where drugs can be manufactured to have a particular interaction with a single part of the brain resulting in a predictable effect. The higher the concentration of the drug in the bloodstream, the more pronounced the effects would be. In some cases, certain effects don't even appear at low drug concentrations. In theory, every drug should distribute itself more or less equally throughout the body because the bloodstream carries the drug to every tissue and every cell. In fact, some drugs have a tendency to collect in certain tissues or organs. For example, pesticides will collect and build up in fatty tissues. This makes them especially dangerous overtime. A pesticide may not cause too much harm at low concentrations; however, as it builds up in fatty tissues instead of being eliminated, its concentration can reach toxic levels overtime. Heavy metals such as mercury or lead will collect preferentially in teeth and gums, fingernails and toenails, and hair. LSD appears to collect and remain in certain parts of the brain. This may explain the so-called flashbacks that occur with LSD whereby a person can have a relapse effect from LSD taken years earlier.

Elimination of Drugs from the Body

As the drug is absorbed into the bloodstream, its concentration increases. As it circulates through the body, its concentration begins to decrease in the blood through mechanisms such as metabolism, the action of kidneys, a preference for certain types of tissue, etc. Pharmacologists describe the decrease in concentration of a drug in terms of its "half-life". This is the time interval it takes for the concentration of a drug to drop to half of its initial concentration. Half-lives can vary greatly. The hypnotic drug gamma-hydroxy butyric acid (GHB) has a half-life of about 30 min, whereas cocaine's half-life is 60–90 min. By contrast, heroin has a half-life of only 3 min. The decrease in concentration of a drug is caused mainly by two processes: metabolism and elimination.

Metabolism

As drugs circulate throughout the body in the bloodstream, sooner or later they will reach the liver. This is the body's chemical factory. The liver has the ability to change a drug into a different substance, forming what is called a "metabolite". This primary metabolite may itself be metabolized into another substance, forming a secondary metabolite. For example, the primary metabolite of heroin is morphine, another naturally occurring narcotic. Figure 20.4 shows the conversion of heroin to morphine.

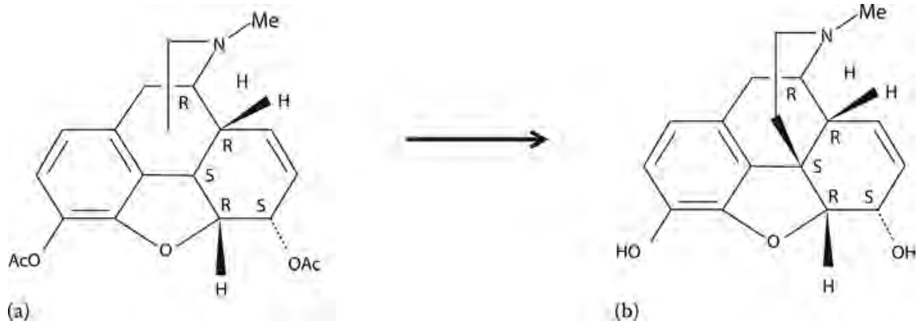


Figure 20.4 The metabolism of (a) heroin into (b) morphine.

Metabolism in the liver generally accomplishes one or more of the following: it changes the drug into a less harmful or toxic substance, it changes the drug into a form that cells can more easily convert to energy or it changes the drug into a form that makes it easier to eliminate in the urine, usually by making it more water soluble. This is normally done by changing the drug into an ionic, salt form that is much more soluble in water, the main component of urine. With many drugs, metabolism takes place so quickly that toxicologists don't look for the parent drug in a blood sample. They look for known metabolites whose presence proves that the parent drug was there previously. A person has no control over the rate of metabolism of a substance by the liver. This rate varies from person to person and depends upon the general health of the person at a given time and especially upon the condition of the liver.

Elimination

There are several ways that drugs can be eliminated from the body. If the drug is volatile (easily vaporized), it can be exhaled in the breath. If the drug is water soluble, it can be sweated out during vigorous exercise or exposure to hot, humid conditions. At best, these account for only a small percentage of the elimination of drugs. The majority of drugs are eliminated in urine, either as the drug itself or after metabolism by the liver. The person or animal has no control over the rate at which this happens. It cannot be speeded up or slowed down by intervention. This process is entirely under the control of the liver and kidneys.

Synergism

At the beginning of the chapter, the issue of how and whether accidental overdose of depressant drugs and alcohol can cause death was raised. A toxicologist might conclude that the victim did not take enough of either substance to cause death. It was the combination of the two that killed him. This phenomenon, whereby someone exhibits magnified effects from a combination of drugs, is called "synergism". It means that the whole is greater than the sum of the parts. In this particular overdose case, it means that the effects of the alcohol and barbiturates taken together are greater than the sum of their effects if taken separately. In this case, both alcohol and barbiturates are central nervous system depressants. The synergistic effects slow down the victim's respiration so much that he or she stops breathing and dies. Synergism can be very tricky. With so many new drugs coming on the market, it is very important for pharmaceutical companies to test new drugs against existing ones to uncover possible dangerous synergisms. Toxicologists and pathologists must be careful in assessing the role that drugs could have had in causing death. Synergism must be ruled out before the drug levels are taken into account in determination of cause and manner of death.

The term synergism is used in other fields besides pharmacology. It is often used in business to denote how different divisions of a company can work together to achieve results that go beyond what both divisions can achieve acting separately.

Tolerance

"Tolerance" to a drug occurs when increasing doses are required to maintain the same level of effects on the subject as the original dose. It shows up very often in people who continually abuse the same drug. For example, someone who abuses methamphetamine may get "high" initially from a 10 mg dose. After several days, he might find that he must take 20 mg at a time to get the same effects he was getting from 10 mg before. Then, it may go up to 30 mg and so on. This can become a serious problem when the person becomes addicted to a drug and then wants to quit. If he tries to quit, withdrawal symptoms will set in because the person has become biochemically dependent on the drug. In some cases, such as with barbiturates, sudden ("cold turkey") withdrawal can be fatal, so the person has to be taken off the drug very slowly. If a person becomes tolerant to a drug, that means he can take ever larger quantities without having catastrophic reactions. When a person dies and a high concentration of a drug is found in his bloodstream, the toxicologist must determine the drug history of that person before making a conclusion about the role that the drug played in the death. A high concentration does not necessarily mean that the drug caused death or even contributed to it.

With certain drugs, a type of "reverse tolerance" effect has been noted. This is sometimes reported by marijuana users, who indicate that they get more heightened effects overtime without taking more of the drug. One explanation for this observation is that the symptoms resulting from marijuana use are learned behavior. The more one smokes marijuana, the more that the effects will be expected and this is perceived as reverse tolerance. There is also evidence that tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), the active ingredient in marijuana, may remain in the body for months after ingestion and, with regular use, will increase in concentration, thus increasing its effects. LSD is another drug to which reverse tolerance has been reported. The reasons for this are not well understood.

Addiction v. Dependence

The term "drug addict" is familiar to everyone but what does it really mean? Why do some drugs cause addiction and some cause dependence and what is the difference? "Drug addiction" is a physical process. As a person takes a drug, it may, with time, cause biochemical changes in the body as a means of helping to tolerate the drug. After a period of time, the person may become addicted to the drug. Addiction is manifested by an extreme craving for the drug. One's entire life is centered on how to get the next dose. Personal hygiene and health may be neglected. A significant amount of crime committed today in this country is the result of addicts getting money to buy drugs. Failure to procure the drug will cause "withdrawal". This is a syndrome; a set of reactions to the lack of the drug. The symptoms include sleeplessness, restlessness, nausea, hallucinations, headaches and other pain. Withdrawal can last for days or even weeks. Some drugs are not addictive. Instead users can become dependent on the drug. “Dependence” on a drug is a psychological phenomenon. Any physical changes that may accompany regular use of a drug are insufficient to cause addiction. There may still be a powerful craving for the drug but failure to take the drug does not cause withdrawal. For some, drug addiction or dependence depends upon the amount of the drug taken. Cocaine is a good example. Cocaine in its salt form is usually “snorted” through the nose. Once in the nasal passages, the cocaine is absorbed slowly into the bloodstream and usually will not reach concentrations that are high enough to result in addiction, even with repeated use. If cocaine is injected into a muscle or vein or if it is smoked (e.g., crack), it is absorbed more efficiently and can reach high enough concentrations to be addictive.

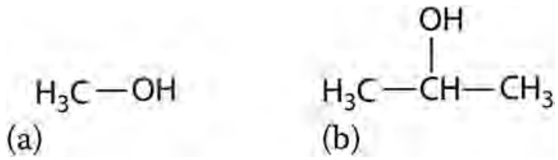
Pharmacology and Toxicology of Ethyl Alcohol

Ethyl alcohol, also called ethanol, can be distilled from a number of foodstuffs and is a product of fermentation. Its chemical structure is shown in Figure 20.5.

$$H_3C—CH_2—OH$$

Figure 20.5 Ethyl alcohol (ethanol).

Ethanol is the active ingredient in all spirits, wine and beer. In spirits, its concentration is measured in “proof”, which is twice the volume percentage of ethanol. Thus, 100-proof whiskey contains 50% alcohol by volume. In beer and wine, ethanol is measured in volume percent. A typical wine contains 12–15% ethanol and a typical beer contains about 4–6% ethanol. Ethanol is a central nervous system depressant. It acts as a mild tranquilizer. It is also a “neurotoxin”, which is a substance that kills nerve cells. It is estimated that 1 ounce of ethanol will kill about 10,000 nerve cells. Early in the twentieth century, the federal government attempted to prohibit the use of ethanol in drinks in the United States by enacting a constitutional amendment that prohibited alcohol use. This had disastrous results in that it promoted illegal “bootlegging” of liquor by organized crime and it caused many people to turn to substitutes such as methyl alcohol and isopropyl alcohol (rubbing alcohol) as substitutes. Both of these alcohols destroy optic nerves and cause blindness. Figure 20.6 shows the structures of methyl alcohol (methanol) and isopropyl alcohol (isopropanol). After a time, the amendment was repealed and the use of alcohol was mitigated by the passage of laws involving public intoxication, drunk driving and the requirement that taxes had to be paid on each unit of alcohol sold.



$$H_3C—OH \qquad H_3C—\overset{\overset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}H—CH_3$$

(a) (b)

Figure 20.6 (a) Methyl alcohol (methanol) and (b) isopropyl alcohol (isopropanol).

Because of its depressant properties, ethanol can have a range of effects on a person depending upon its concentration in the body. For this reason, the federal government and every state have laws that regulate the amount of alcohol a person can drink before being legally drunk when operating a motor vehicle. To be rigorous and properly scientific, alcohol levels should be measured in the brain since that is where it has its effects; this is obviously not practical. Therefore, toxicologists use surrogates (substitutes) to infer relative levels of alcohol in the brain. The most common surrogate is breath. Next is blood. Urine is not a good surrogate because it does not give accurate measurements of alcohol in the body. Most states describe the level of alcohol in terms of its "BAC" or "blood alcohol concentration". In the United States, the concentration of alcohol in the blood is expressed as the number of grams of alcohol (weight) present in 0.1 L (100 mL or 1 dL) of blood (volume). Currently, a person is considered under the influence of alcohol when operating a motor vehicle when the BAC = 0.08 g/dL. When a driver is stopped for suspicion of drunk driving, the officer will usually determine the alcohol concentration by measuring the subject's breath rather than blood. There are instruments that measure breath alcohol and convert it to BAC by using an equivalent of 210 L of breath instead of 100 mL of blood. The instruments do an automatic conversion of breath alcohol to BAC. At least one state, Oklahoma, has a separate law that relates operating a vehicle under the influence of alcohol to breath alcohol level. Their breath testing instruments do not make the conversion to BAC. One reason for this is that the conversion factor to 210 L of breath may not be accurate for all people.

There has been a good deal of research into how most people react to a given BAC of ethanol. It should be pointed out that people react differently to the same quantity of alcohol. There are many factors at work here, including the person's weight, experience with alcohol, what is already in the stomach at the time of drinking and the form of the alcohol being ingested (beer v. wine, v. hard liquor). Even so, there are some general findings about the effects of alcohol on people. Some of these findings are listed in the following:

- Most people will begin to feel some effect from alcohol when their BAC reaches as little as 0.02.
- At 0.04, there is a definite feeling of relaxation.
- At 0.06, most people will definitely be less able to make rational decisions about their own capabilities. Their driving will start to become impaired.
- At 0.08, there is definite impairment in motor coordination skills and the ability to drive safely is seriously compromised. This is now the level at which a driver is considered to be intoxicated in most states and under federal law.
- When the BAC reaches 0.12, vomiting may occur in people who are not experienced drinkers.
- At 0.15, balance is seriously compromised. This amount of alcohol is equivalent to half pint of liquor in the bloodstream.
- At 0.4, most people will lose consciousness and will die. This is called the **LD_{50}**—the dose that will cause death in 50% of the population.

Absorption of Ethanol

The ultimate concentration and therefore the effects that alcohol will have depend upon the rate at which it is absorbed. Ethanol is absorbed from both the stomach and small intestine. Two major factors affect the rate at which ethanol is absorbed.

They are the concentration of alcohol in the drink and the contents of the stomach at the time of drinking. The more concentrated the drink, the faster it will be absorbed into the bloodstream and the higher the level that will be reached. If the stomach has food in it when the ethanol is ingested, then the rate of absorption will be slowed due to competing absorption of the food that is already in the stomach. This food will slow the passage of the alcohol into the small intestine and into the bloodstream and lower the ultimate BAC. Research has shown that the most effective foods at slowing alcohol absorption are carbohydrates because they are the slowest foods to be absorbed from the stomach into the small intestine. The implication of these influences on the rate of absorption of alcohol is that the same amount of alcohol taken on an empty stomach will result in a higher BAC than if the stomach had food in it at the time of drinking. In addition, the same amount of alcohol taken in highly concentrated drinks will result in a higher BAC than more dilute drinks.

Circulation of Ethanol in the Bloodstream

Once ethanol gets absorbed into the bloodstream through the stomach and small intestine, it circulates throughout the body, eventually reaching the brain. The alcohol will first act on the outer surfaces of the brain. These are the areas that affect motor coordination. If the concentration of the alcohol is high enough, it will penetrate into the inner parts of the brain overtime. These areas affect the ability to see and talk clearly, balance, judgment and inhibitions. If the alcohol is able to penetrate more deeply into the brain, it will affect the autonomic nervous system where involuntary functions such as breathing are controlled. As a central nervous system depressant, alcohol will cause loss of consciousness and then slowing down and eventually cessation of breathing, thus causing death. Not only does alcohol reach the brain but it also penetrates other organs and parts of the body. If a person dies and there is not enough blood left to get an accurate measurement of BAC, other body fluids can be used because they will contain alcohol in proportion to the concentration in the blood. Forensic toxicologists will commonly use spinal fluid, vitreous humor (eye fluid), urine and sometimes even brain tissue to obtain BAC equivalents.

Elimination of Ethanol

On its journey through the body, alcohol eventually reaches the liver. The liver acts on the alcohol by metabolizing it to substances that are less harmful and more easily eliminated from the body. One of the pathways of metabolism of alcohol is to change it to “acetaldehyde” and then to “acetic acid”. Both of these are oxidation reactions and take place under the control of liver enzymes. This chemical path is shown in Figure 20.7.

As ethanol is metabolized, the metabolites are eliminated from the body by dissolving in urine and passing. Thus, as ethanol passes through the liver, its concentration decreases. In most people, the rate of metabolism of ethanol is about 0.015%/h ± 0.03. This means that if a person has a BAC of 0.15%, it will take approximately 10 h to remove all of it. Ethanol can be eliminated in other ways besides metabolism. It can be exhaled through the breath. This is because ethanol is fairly volatile and will pass easily from the bloodstream through the alveoli in the lungs and be exhaled through the breath. This is the principle behind breath alcohol concentration instruments. Alcohol can also be eliminated through

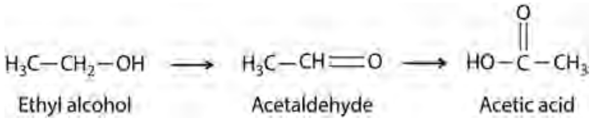


Figure 20.7 Metabolism of ethanol into acetaldehyde and acetic acid.

perspiration; however, elimination by breathing and perspiration together accounts for a maximum of about 5% of the total elimination.

Maximum Blood Alcohol Concentration

As soon as ethanol starts being absorbed into the bloodstream, the BAC starts to rise. As it reaches the liver, it starts to metabolize, which acts to reduce the BAC. As long as ethanol is being absorbed faster than it is being metabolized, the BAC will increase. At some point, the absorption will slow until it is occurring at the same rate as the elimination, and the BAC remains at a steady state. Then elimination will surpass absorption and the BAC will start to decline. When absorption ceases, only elimination is taking place (at an average rate of 0.015% per hour) until there is no more alcohol. Since 95% or more of ethanol is eliminated by metabolism and subsequent elimination in the urine, elimination is taking place at a nearly constant rate. Only the rate of absorption will alter the ultimate concentration in the blood. If drinking takes place rapidly on an empty stomach with high concentration drinks, then absorption will be rapid and the ultimate BAC will be high. If, on the other hand, there is food in the stomach, and/or drinking takes place slowly using beer or wine, the maximum BAC will be lower even if the same amount of alcohol is consumed.

Something for You to Do

You can illustrate the interplay between absorption and elimination of alcohol using a plastic bucket or similar container and water. Get a one-gallon disposable paint bucket and punch a few holes in the bottom about the thickness of a pencil. Put the bucket on some sort of stand so that the holes in the bottom are not obstructed. Start adding water to the bucket. The level of water at any time represents the BAC. Adding water to the bucket represents the absorption of alcohol into the bloodstream. Water escaping through the holes represents the elimination of alcohol by metabolism and excretion in the urine. If you add water rapidly to the bucket, the level will rise quickly. If you slow down the addition of water so that it is escaping as fast as you are adding it, the level will remain constant. If you slow down the amount of water you add and then stop adding it altogether, the level will drop because it is escaping faster than you are adding it. You can see the analogies to the principles of alcohol absorption and elimination explained earlier.

These concepts are embodied in the results of work by Professor Erik Widmark at the University of Lund in Sweden in the early 1930s. The BAC level overtime is illustrated with the “Widmark curve” as shown in Figure 20.8.

Figure 20.8 shows two curves, one for alcohol on an empty stomach and one where the subject has eaten a plate of French fries before drinking. French fries

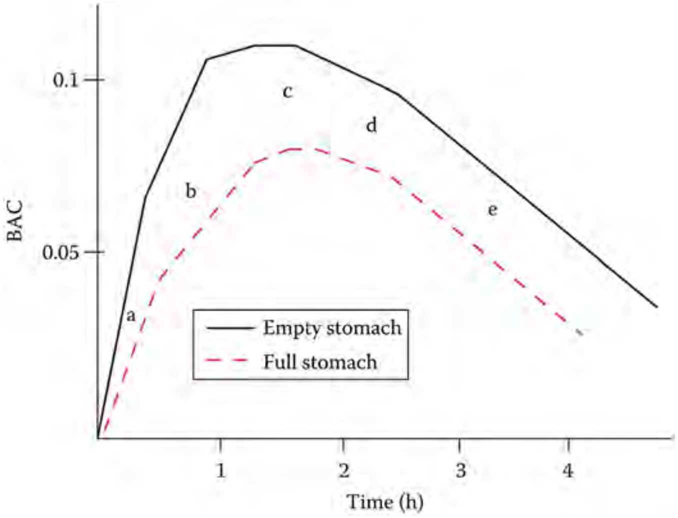


Figure 20.8 The Widmark curve. In region a, essentially only absorption of ethanol is taking place. In region b, some elimination by metabolism is beginning. In region c, the rates of absorption and elimination are approximately the same. In region d, absorption has slowed and elimination predominates. In region e, only elimination by metabolism and excretion by the urine is taking place at a constant rate.

are mostly carbohydrates that impede absorption of alcohol most efficiently. In both cases, the same amount of alcohol has been ingested. Several features of the curve (which is not to scale) are important to note. First, region “a” is where essentially only absorption taking place. Note that the absorption is slower in the case where food is present. At region “b”, elimination is starting to take place but absorption still dominates. In region “c”, both processes are taking place approximately equally. Note here that the BAC is much higher where drinking has taken place on an empty stomach and that it has taken longer for the maximum BAC to be reached. In region “d”, elimination is starting to dominate, and in region “e”, only elimination is taking place at the same constant rate in both cases.

How Much Drinking Does It Take to Get Drunk?

How much alcohol does it take to achieve a given BAC? Pharmacologists have worked out formulae that will give approximate numbers.

Given the following set of conditions, assume that

- Drinking is done on an empty stomach
- The drinks are 100-proof liquor and are taken in one swallow (volume is in ounces)
- Weight (wgt) is in pounds
- BAC is in g/dL

For a male:

$$\text{Volume} = \frac{\text{wgt} \times \text{BAC}}{3.78} \tag{20.1}$$

For a female:

$$\text{Volume} = \frac{\text{wgt} \times \text{BAC}}{4.67} \tag{20.2}$$

As an example, a 140 lb female wants to know how many ounces of liquor she can drink so that her BAC will just reach 0.08, the level at which she would be considered intoxicated in most states.

$$\text{Wgt} = 140, \text{BAC} = 0.08$$

$$\text{Volume} = \frac{140 \times 0.08}{4.67}$$

$$\text{Volume} = 2.4\ \text{oz}$$

One shot of whiskey contains about 1.25 oz, so this woman will be intoxicated after just two drinks. If she is drinking wine, then 10 oz would do the job, assuming that the wine contains 12% alcohol. If she is drinking beer, with an alcohol concentration of about 6%, then she could drink 20 oz of beer and her BAC would be 0.08. That is not even two beers!

Something for You to Do

Using the earlier equations, calculate how much 100-proof liquor, wine and beer that a 140 lb man would have to drink in order to reach a level of 0.08 BAC. Then do the same calculation for yourself, using your own weight. You don't have to hand this in so be honest about your weight!

Drunk Driving Laws

Every state has a set of laws that seek to control drunk driving and punish people who drive while intoxicated. This starts when a person applies for a driver's license. When you sign your license, you are giving "implied consent" that you will submit to a blood or breath test if you are stopped for drunk driving. Refusal to submit to the test when requested by a law enforcement agent may result in your losing your license to drive whether or not you are subsequently found to be intoxicated. The action to take your license is done by the Bureau of Motor Vehicles or Secretary of State as an administrative procedure. The length of time you lose your license is usually between 90 and 180 days.

Testing Alcohol Levels

Most states use a breath testing instrument to obtain an alcohol level in the field. The venerable breathalyzer is still used in many places although it is being gradually replaced by portable breath testers. Breathalyzers work by a type of chemical reaction called “oxidation–reduction (redox)”. In this type of reaction, electrons are moved from one substance to another, changing the valence state of one or more atoms. In the redox reaction that is the heart of the breathalyzer, alcohol participates in the reaction.

The major reaction is given as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &\underset{\text{Potassium dichromate (orange)}}{2K_2Cr_2O_7} + \underset{\text{Ethanol}}{3CH_3CH_2OH} + \underset{\text{Sulfuric acid}}{8H_2SO_4} \\ &\rightarrow \underset{\text{Chromium sulfate (green)}}{2Cr_2(SO_4)_3} + \underset{\text{Potassium sulfate}}{2K_2SO_4} + \underset{\text{Acetic acid}}{3CH_3COOH} + \underset{\text{Water}}{11H_2O} \end{aligned} \tag{20.3}$$

The solution without alcohol starts out orange owing to the potassium dichromate. As alcohol is added, it changes the potassium dichromate to chromium sulfate, which is green. A spectrophotometer is used to measure the loss of the orange color. This loss is proportional to the amount of ethanol present. The subject introduces the alcohol into the instrument by breathing into a tube connected to the breathalyzer.

Newer breath testing instruments use fuel cell technology whereby the alcohol is part of a fuel cell that produces electricity. The more alcohol that is present, the more electricity is produced. Other instruments measure the amount of infrared light that is absorbed by alcohol. In most cases, the breath alcohol concentration measured by these instruments can be converted to BAC internally using the experimentally determined 210:1 ratio (210 L of breath contain the same amount of alcohol as one deciliter of blood).

Once a BAC level is determined in the field, how is it interpreted? How does the police officer or toxicologist know where on the Widmark curve the measurement is? This can be an important consideration in many drunk driving cases as can be seen in the following example:

A driver is stopped for operating a vehicle while intoxicated. The officer administers a breath test and determines that the BAC is 0.06. The driver was seen leaving a bar 2 h prior to the stop. If the toxicologist uses the rate of elimination figure of 0.015% per hour and back-calculates 2 h previously, then the driver’s BAC must have been 0.09 when he left the bar. (How did he arrive at this number?) That means that the driver was intoxicated when he left the bar and got behind the wheel because the law defines intoxication as a BAC of 0.08 or above.

Can the driver be prosecuted for operating a motor vehicle while intoxicated? There are some prosecutors who will prosecute this as an intoxication case if they can get a toxicologist to testify to this back-calculation. Most toxicologists are wary of doing this because of the assumptions that have to be made. The most important one is that the rate of elimination is exactly 0.015% in every person. This is known to be not accurate. It could be higher or lower in a particular case. The only way to find out would be to take a series of BAC or breath alcohol measurements overtime on that particular person. In some states, there is a provision for charging a driver with being *impaired* rather than intoxicated in cases where the BAC is over 0.05% but less than 0.08% when the driver is stopped.

Field Sobriety Testing

Although drunk driving laws in most states require only that the driver's BAC be over the limit in order to sustain a charge of operating a vehicle while intoxicated, sometimes officers will want to document the impaired behavior of the driver when the driver is stopped. Many states have adopted a field sobriety testing program that was first developed in California. Officers who administer the suite of tests are specially trained and certified. The suite includes three tests and all of them must be done:

1. *Walk and turn*: The subject must walk in a straight line putting one foot directly in front of the other with the toe of one foot touching the heel of the other. People who are intoxicated will not be able to keep in a straight line and may lose their balance.
2. *Stand on one foot*: The subject must lift one foot and stand on the other for a period of time. People who are intoxicated will not be able to keep one foot off the ground or will lose their balance.
3. *Horizontal gaze nystagmus*: The officer holds a pencil or similar object about 12″ in front of the subject's face at eye level. The officer then moves the pencil across the field of view of the subject, instructing the subject to keep the head still and follow the pencil only with the eyes. The eyes of a sober person will move smoothly as he follows the pencil back and forth. The eyes of an intoxicated person will travel with jerky movements when trying to follow the pencil.

In states that recognize the field sobriety testing program, the results of the tests are admissible in court as evidence of impairment. Many illicit drugs will also elicit similar responses to those of ethanol. If a person is driving erratically and stopped for drunk driving and a breath testing instrument indicates that the subject wasn't drinking, then the field sobriety testing program can show that the subject was under the influence of an illicit drug.

Measurement of BAC

Drunk driving cases represent more than half of the caseload of forensic toxicologists nationwide. Even though the results of a breath test may be admissible in court as evidence of intoxication, many prosecutors require that a blood test be done to directly measure BAC. Some forensic science laboratories get dozens of blood samples each day that were taken from people suspected of Driving While Intoxicated (DWI). These people are taken to a hospital or clinic and have their blood drawn by a professional phlebotomist. The blood is then sent to the crime lab. The most popular method of BAC analysis in a forensic science lab is by gas chromatography using headspace analysis. The tube containing the blood is heated slightly and a gas tight syringe is inserted and a sample of the vapor above the blood is withdrawn and injected into a gas chromatograph. An internal standard is also put in the tube to help in the quantitative analysis of the alcohol in the blood. An automatic sampler is often used so that many blood samples can be run automatically overnight. A computer calculates the amount of ethanol present. The next day, the toxicologist interprets the findings and writes the reports.

Driving Under the Influence of Drugs

Now that many states have changed their laws legalizing the use of marijuana either medically, recreationally or both, police agencies are having to deal with drivers under the influence of THC as well as other drugs. Unlike with drunk driving, there is no field sobriety instrument like the breathalyzer to quickly test for drugs or a standard "legal limit" amount that would indicate a driver's ability to operate a motorized vehicle while high on marijuana or other drugs.

Statistics from the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration show that nationally the number of drivers involved in weekend traffic accidents who test positive for THC has risen by 4% in six years. The state of Washington, which legalized marijuana in 2012, saw an increase in fatal accidents from 8 percent to 17 percent in a one-year period from 2013-2014. Like alcohol, a driver under the influence of cannabis exhibits impaired judgment, increased reaction times and decreased motor coordination. In many cases, police encounter drivers in crashes who are under the influence of both alcohol and drugs, be it marijuana or prescription drugs. The combination of effects can make it difficult to assess what substance has influenced the driver's ability to operate the motor vehicle. If a breathalyzer test is negative, but the officer observes erratic driving behavior, other substances could be the cause. Drug testing can be done using saliva, blood and/or urine. However, some drugs remain in the body for days or weeks after being ingested, and pinpointing whether the drug was used just prior to driving and its effects on driving can be difficult.

Due to the lack of a field drug sobriety test, law enforcement has developed an alternative method to help determine whether a person is under the influence of a drug while driving. Specially trained police officers, referred to as Drug Recognition Expert officers or DRE officers, are now located in every state in the United States. These officers attend special training designed to determine what type of substance a driver has ingested. DRE officers use a 12-step process that applies the body's physiological indicators of drug use to determine which of 7 categories of drugs is influencing a driver. The 12 steps are summarized below.

1. Breath alcohol test—determines if driver is under the influence of a substance other than alcohol.
2. Interview the arresting officer—determines driving behavior prior to being stopped.
3. Preliminary examination and taking pulse (first time)—determines if driver is injured or suffers from a medical condition that may explain erratic driving. This is first of three pulse checks.
4. Eye examination—determining nystagmus and lack of convergence,
5. Divided attention psychophysical tests—using the roadside balance and coordination tests.
6. Taking vital signs and second pulse check—taking blood pressure, temperature and pulse.
7. Dark room examinations—checking pupil sizes and reaction to light stimuli.

8. Examination of muscle tone—some drugs may cause muscles to be rigid.
9. Third pulse check and look for injection sites—looking for intravenous drug injection points and compare pulse rates.
10. Subject's statements and other observations—asking about drug use and other questions. Reads Miranda rights if not done previously.
11. Analysis and opinions of the evaluator—DRE determines if subject is under the influence of drugs and also what category of drug.
12. Toxicological examination—based on the examination results, chemical drug tests are administered to support the conclusion of the DRE and for admission to court, if needed.

The seven categories that Drug Recognition Expert officers use to classify drugs used by subjects under the influence are;

- Central Nervous System Stimulants
- Central Nervous System Depressants
- Hallucinogens
- Inhalants
- Cannabis
- Dissociative Anesthetics
- Narcotic Analgesics

Summary

Pharmacology is the study of the effects of drugs and poisons on living organisms. Forensic toxicologists determine the presence and amount of drugs and poisons in people and interpret their effects. They study the ingestion, absorption and elimination of drugs from the body. They also have to be aware of synergistic effects and tolerance. In order to do proper interpretations of findings about drugs, the toxicologist must know the subject's drug history including any addictions or drug dependencies. The most commonly abused substance is ethyl alcohol, or ethanol. More than half of the caseload of forensic toxicologists is in drunk driving cases. The BAC is affected by the type of drinks, the amount of alcohol, how fast it is ingested and what is in the stomach at the time of ingestion. Ethanol is a central nervous depressant and neurotoxin. It is eliminated from the body mainly by metabolism and excretion in the urine. The concentration of ethanol can be measured in either blood or breath. Field sobriety testing is also used as additional evidence of impairment.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is not a metabolite of ethanol?
    a. Acetaldehyde
    b. Acetone
    c. Acetic acid
    d. All of the above are metabolites of alcohol

2. Most drugs and ethanol are eliminated from the body mainly by
   a. Breathing
   b. Sweating
   c. Metabolism followed by excretion in the urine
   d. Decomposition by the kidneys
3. Synergism takes place when
   a. Someone becomes addicted to a drug
   b. A person has to take larger doses of a drug to get the same effects
   c. A drug is metabolized into two different substances
   d. Two drugs are taken at once and their effects magnify each other
4. When a person builds up tolerance to a drug, it means that
   a. He must take larger doses to continue to realize the same effects
   b. He will undergo withdrawal if he stops taking the drug
   c. He will no longer be affected by the drug
   d. He must stop taking the drug right away
5. Which of the following is not used in field sobriety testing?
   a. Walk and turn
   b. Count backwards from 100
   c. Horizontal gas nystagmus
   d. Stand on one foot
6. Which of the following would not affect the rate of absorption of ethanol into the bloodstream?
   a. How fast you drink
   b. The concentration of alcohol in the drink
   c. What is in the stomach at the time of drinking
   d. How soon before drinking you exercised
7. The Widmark curve displays
   a. The relationship between absorption and metabolism
   b. The blood alcohol level as a function of time
   c. The blood alcohol level as a function of metabolic rate
   d. The ratio between the amount of alcohol eliminated by metabolism to that eliminated by respiration
8. Synergism is
   a. A form of metabolism in the liver
   b. The buildup of drugs in fatty tissue
   c. The travel of drugs from the stomach to the small intestine
   d. The magnification of the effects of two or more drugs that have similar actions
9. Tolerance is
   a. The need for ever-increasing amounts of a drug the more it is taken
   b. The elimination of a drug directly through the urine without passing through the liver
   c. A measure of the activity of a drug on the brain
   d. Slowing down absorption of a drug into the bloodstream by the presence of food in the stomach
10. The most common surrogate for brain alcohol measurement in drunk driving cases is
    a. Blood
    b. Breath
    c. Urine
    d. Vitreous humor

True or False

11. Stopping taking an addictive drug will bring on symptoms of withdrawal.
12. If you are stopped for driving while intoxicated and you refuse to take a sobriety test, you can lose your driver's license.
13. The LD_{50} of alcohol is about 0.4 g/dL.
14. Marihuana is believed to exhibit a reverse tolerance effect at times.
15. The half-life of a drug is the time it takes to reduce its concentration in the blood by 50%.
16. The LD_{50} of a drug is the concentration of the drug that causes death in half the people who take that amount.
17. The amount of alcohol in the bloodstream that constitutes being under the influence in drunk driving cases is 1.0 g/dL.

Match Each Term with Its Definition

18. Toxicology
19. Pharmacology
20. Metabolism
21. Acetaldehyde
22. Half-life

a. Time it takes to decrease drug concentration by 50%
b. Substance that liver converts alcohol into
c. Study of harmful effects of drug and poisons
d. Study of all effects of drugs
e. Action of liver on drugs

Short Answer Questions

23. What is the Widmark curve? What does it tell you about blood alcohol concentration?
24. What are the major methods for analyzing alcohol in the blood? Which one(s) can be used at the scene?
25. Describe the role of the Drug Recognition Expert officer and how they perform their tests.

Further Reading

Garriott, J. C. (ed.). (1996). *Medicolegal Aspects of Alcohol*, 3rd edn. Lawyers and Judges Publishing Co., Tucson, AZ.

Levine, B. (ed.). (1999). *Principles of Forensic Toxicology*. AACC Press, Washington, DC.

On the Web

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forensic_toxicology—Good overview of forensic toxicology.

https://www.soft-tox.org/—Homepage of Society of Forensic Toxicologists.

http://www.abft.org/—Homepage of American Board of Forensic Toxicologists, which offers certification of forensic toxicologists.
https://forensicresources.org/forensic-disciplines/toxicology/—Resource list for Forensic Toxicology

Driving Under Influence of Drugs

https://www.drugabuse.gov/publications/research-reports/marijuana/does-marijuana-use-affect-driving
https://www.drugabuse.gov/publications/drugfacts/drugged-driving
https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/68/wr/mm6850a1.htm

DRE Information

https://www.verywellmind.com/dre-protocol-used-to-detect-drugged-drivers-67019
https://www.theiacp.org/12-step-process
https://www.theiacp.org/what-they-do
https://www.theiacp.org/sites/default/files/all/3-9/7-Drug-Categories.pdf
https://www.chicagotribune.com/suburbs/aurora-beacon-news/ct-abn-aurora-drug-recognition-experts-st-1229-20191227-lq34jrsz6nh6hhlmy5nyd7hdnm-story.html

Case Study

Case Study: Poisonings by Richard Overton

Richard Overton was a college lecturer and computer consultant. His second wife, 46 year old Janet, a well-liked trustee in the Capistrano Unified School District, was usually a happy, gregarious lady, but in her last years she became mysteriously ill. She suffered from nausea, dehydration and had painful lesions on her body. She lost a great deal of weight. On January 24, 1988, she collapsed in the family driveway on the way to a family whale watching trip. She died shortly thereafter. An autopsy was performed and there was no evidence of foul play. Tissue and blood samples were taken and her body was cremated.

Dorothy Boyer, Richard Overton's first wife saw the notice of the unexplained sudden death of Janet Overton and contacted authorities. Boyer had divorced Overton in 1969, after learning that Overton had secretly married another woman, Caroline Draper, and was carrying on a secret life with both women, unbeknownst to either. When Caroline found out, she had her marriage annulled and Boyer divorced Overton. After the divorce, Boyer began to have health problems, with symptoms similar to Janet Overton, nausea and painful lesions. She discovered that her coffee, milk and shampoo had been laced with selenium by Richard, who still had a key to the divorced couple's home. He was upset because of the divorce and wanted her to suffer. Unfortunately, Boyer did not want to testify in court, so Overton was never convicted of the poisoning.

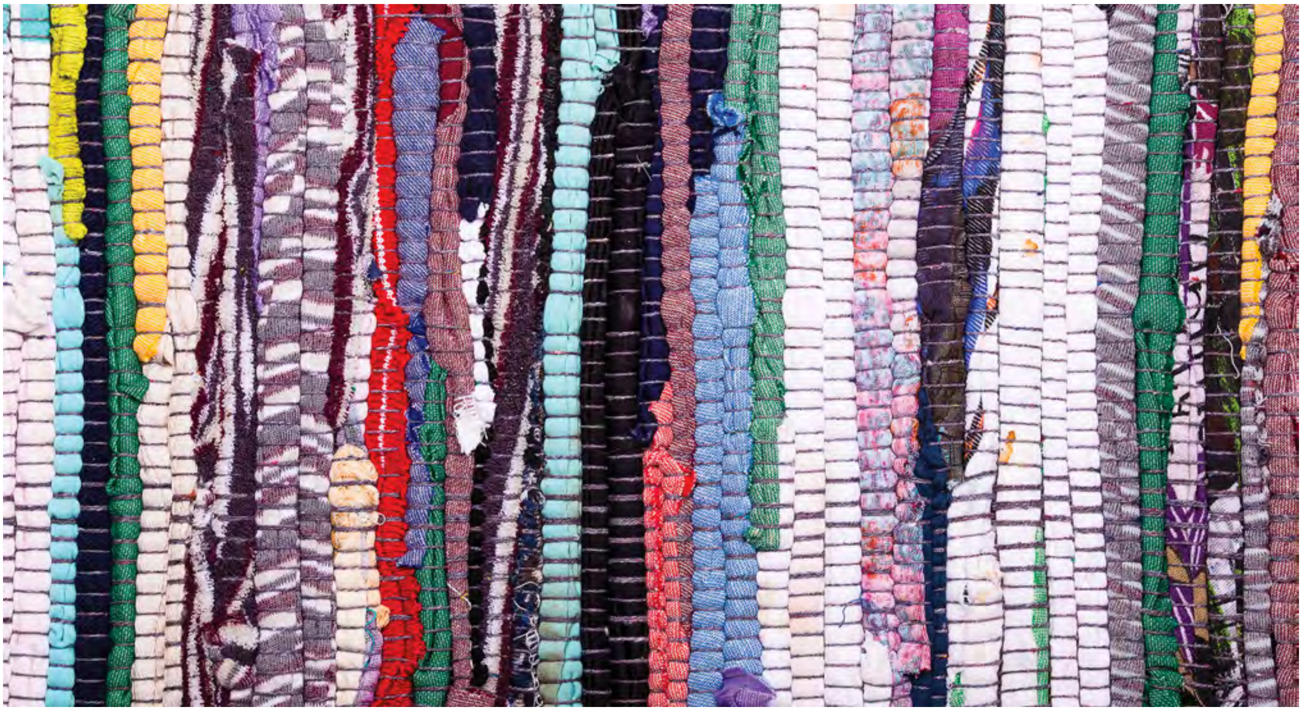
After learning of Boyer's selenium poisoning, the samples collected from Janet Overton were analyzed and results showed the presence of cyanide in her system. Her death was now classified as a homicide. Richard Overton claimed innocence, but police confiscated his computer and files. Overton was a jealous man and his journaled diaries, found on his computer, showed that he was furious with his wife's extramarital affairs and she refused to agree to a divorce. He wanted her to suffer, so he laced her eyeliner with selenium. She slowly deteriorated. On the day that she collapsed the prosecution alleged that he put cyanide in her coffee.

After two trials, the first was a mistrial, Richard Overton was convicted in September 1995 and sentenced to life in prison without parole. He died in 2009 at the age of 81 from complications of diabetes and advanced dementia.

For more information: https://www.ocregister.com/2009/06/07/richard-overton-convicted-of-poisoning-wife-in-1988-dies/

21

Fibers, Paints and Other Polymers



Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define a monomer and polymer
2. To be able to describe the types of evidence that are polymer based
3. To be able to define paint
4. To be able to describe the different types of paint by end use
5. To be able to describe how paint evidence is encountered, collected and preserved
6. To be able to describe the common methods of analysis of paint
7. To be able to describe the different types of fibers
8. To be able to describe the common types of natural fibers
9. To be able to describe the common types of synthetic fibers
10. To be able to describe how fiber evidence is encountered, collected and preserved
11. To be able to describe the common methods of analysis of fibers
12. To be able to describe how other types of polymer-based evidence are analyzed

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is a Polymer?*
- *Textile Fibers*
- *Types of Fibers*
- *Fiber Morphology*
- *Analysis of Synthetic Fibers*
  - *Microscopy*
    - *Cross Section*
    - *Diameter*
    - *Delusterants*
    - *Refractive Index*
    - *Color*
- *Chemical Analysis of Fibers*
  - *Analysis of Fibers as a Whole*
  - *Dye Analysis*
- *Interpretation of Fiber Evidence*
- *Paints and Other Coatings*
  - *What Are Paints?*
  - *Other Coatings*
- *Types of Paint*
- *How Cars Are Painted*
- *Collection of Paint Evidence*
- *Analysis of Paint*
  - *Physical Properties*
  - *Chemical Properties*
    - *Solubility*
    - *Chromatography*
    - *Infrared Microspectrophotometry*
    - *Pigments*
  - *Paint Smears*
- *Evidentiary Value of Paint*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *More Short Answer Questions*
  - *Match the Fiber with its Correct Category*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Paint Analysis*
- *Fiber Analysis*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Clear coat: The final layer of paint applied to an automobile that adds durability and ultraviolet protection to the colored paint layer.

Dye: Generally organic substances that bind to fiber and absorb various wavelengths of light, producing a colored appearance.

Fracture match: Matching broken objects to the original source.

FTIR: Acronym for Fourier transform infrared spectrophotometry. FTIR microscopy is used to analyze the composition of small objects.

Metamerism: The quality of some colors that causes them to appear differently under different light sources. For instance, two color samples may look identical in natural light but not in artificial light.

Monomer: Single repeating units of molecules.

Natural fiber: A fiber that exists in nature. Natural fibers can come from animals, plants or minerals.

Pigment: Mostly inorganic particles, small in size and insoluble; they suspend in the chemical mixture of a fiber and absorb different wavelengths of light.

Polymer: Long chains of repeating molecular units or long chains of monomers.

Primer: The primer layer is the coating layer applied to the unpainted automobile—the first layer applied after the bare metal has been treated for rust.

PyGC: An acronym for pyrolysis gas chromatography, an instrumental technique used to analyze the chemical compositions of small amounts of evidence.

Refractive index: A number that represents the ratio between the speed of light in air and the speed of light in the medium analyzed.

Semisynthetic fiber: A fiber that is sourced to a natural, nonfibrous material but undergoes chemical processing to produce a fiber.

Synthetic fiber: Fibers that are man-made chemical compounds formed into predetermined fiber shapes by extrusion from a machine.

Tear match: Two materials that have been ripped in pieces that can be shown to match based on examination (usually microscopically) of the patterns.

Topcoat: The coating layer for an automobile that imparts the color to the vehicle.

Acronyms

DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
PyGC	Pyrolysis Gas Chromatography
THC	Tetrahydrocannabinol

Introduction

This chapter covers several types of forensic evidence. They may seem to be different from each other, but they share common characteristics. First, they are all *polymers*. This means that they have a special chemical structure that dictates how they will be analyzed. The major types of polymer evidence are paints, other coatings and textile fibers. Other polymers are less frequently encountered and include plastics, rubber and paint-like products such as varnishes, shellacs, stains and even some types of inks. Human and animal hairs are also polymers, but they are different enough from the other types of polymer evidence that they will be covered in a separate chapter. Another aspect that these objects share is that they are examples of *trace evidence*. Trace evidence is evidence that occurs in small quantities or that is naturally small in size.

What Is a Polymer?

Most substances are arranged in relatively small, discrete molecules. They tend to have relatively low boiling and melting points (except for metals). There is a class of materials that exist as long chains of repeating molecular units. These chains are called polymers. The repeating units are called *monomers*. The general structure of polymers is shown in Figure 21.1.

Figure 21.2 shows a substance called styrene. When it polymerizes, it forms long, repeating units called polystyrene, also shown in Figure 21.2. The part of the molecule inside the parentheses is the repeating unit. Polystyrene is a common plastic and also a member of a subclass of polymers called *homopolymers*. These are polymers with only one repeating unit. Because of this, few modifications can easily be made to the polymer and, therefore, few subgroups are possible.

Some polymers use two (or more) monomers to construct a polymer. These are called *copolymers*. An example of a copolymer is *nylon*. The term nylon actually refers to a family of polymers. There are currently more than 40 different types of nylon being commercially manufactured. One of the common types of nylon is nylon 66. This is made up of alternating monomers. One of them is *adipic acid*, a diacid containing six carbons. The other monomer is *hexamethylenediamine*, a diamine containing six carbons. The two monomers react by a process known as condensation. A molecule of adipic acid loses an OH group and the diamine loses an H. Water is formed and the two molecules combine to form an *amide*. This is shown in Figure 21.3.

Finally, there are *block polymers*. These contain blocks of similar monomers that repeat. Polymers form long chains of monomers and are fibrous in shape. They are ideal for use as textile fibers. If the polymer is to be used to make sheets as in plastics, rubber or paints, the polymer strands are *cross-linked*. These cross-links are small molecules that attach two strands together as shown diagrammatically in Figure 21.4.

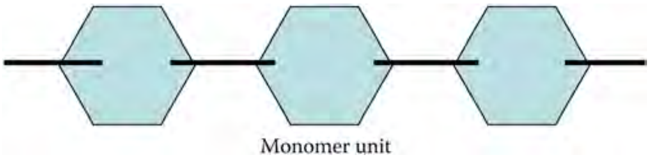


Figure 21.1 General chemical structure of a polymer.

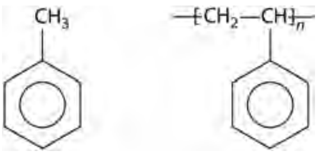


Figure 21.2 The chemical structure of styrene (left) and polystyrene (right).

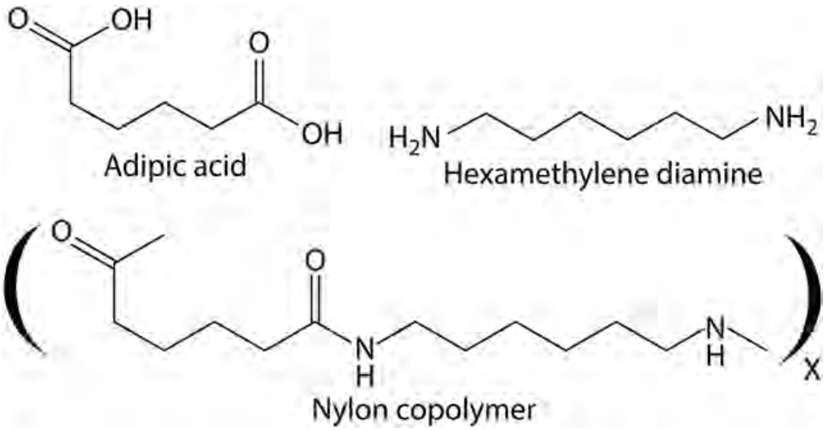


Figure 21.3 The chemical structure of one of the nylon polymers.

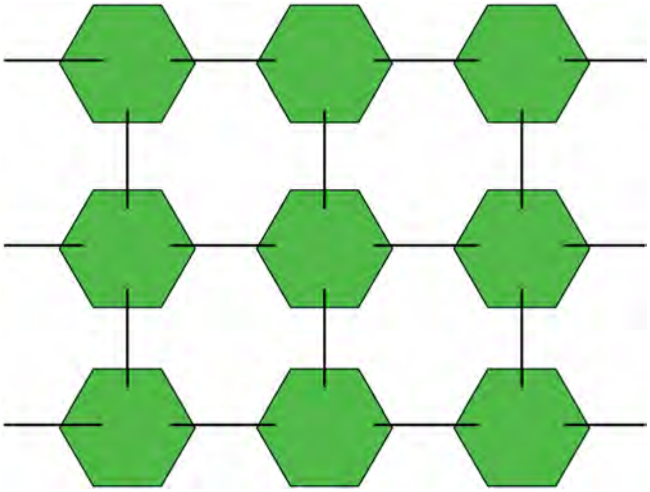


Figure 21.4 Cross-linking of polymers to form two-dimensional films.

Textile Fibers

Textile fibers are very common in our environment. They are used in the manufacture of clothing, automobile seats and carpets, home furnishings and a host of other items. Depending on the characteristics of the fabric, fibers may be easily shed. When people make contact with other people or with objects, fibers may be deposited on the object or exchanged between the people. Once fibers are transferred, they may remain on the recipient for a short time or for many hours.

With today's emphasis on DNA, trace evidence such as fibers has become all but ignored. This is a mistake because there are many cases in which DNA is not found or no suspect has yet been identified for comparison of recovered DNA. Fibers can be very important evidence for a number of reasons:

They may be easily transferred.
There may be multiple transfers, thus helping determine a series of events.

They are often produced with a specific end use in mind, like wrapping a body for disposal. Certain objects such as carpets are made from fibers with particular properties that best suited for this use. Finding particular types of fibers can lead to the specific type of source.

Fibers come in a huge variety of colors, and thousands of dyes and pigments are used to produce them. There are literally millions of hues and colors available. This means that it is rare to find fibers at random that have the same microscopic and color properties.

One of the drawbacks of fiber evidence (and trace evidence in general) is that it is difficult to make quantitative interpretations about them. For example, if a few red, acrylic fibers are found on the victim of a crime and the suspect was known to have been wearing a red, acrylic sweater made of microscopically and optically similar fibers at the time of the crime, it would be very useful at trial for the jury to know how common these fibers are in the general population. If they are rare, then the fact that the fibers found at the scene match the sweater worn by the suspect takes on potentially great significance. There have been a few studies that attempt to assess the prevalence of certain fiber types in the environment. One type of research is the "target fiber study". A crime lab will pick a fiber—red acrylic, for example—and then determine how often such a fiber occurs in casework over a long period of time. In general, these studies show that the chances of finding any particular fiber at random are very small. However, there is little data to determine exactly how common a fiber type is and numerical probabilities are not calculated for fiber evidence.

Types of Fibers

In order for a polymer to be classified as a fiber, its length must be at least 100 times its diameter. There are two major types of fibers: *natural* and *synthetic*. A natural fiber exists in nature as a fiber. Natural fibers can come from animals, plants or minerals. A synthetic fiber is manufactured from materials that are not fibers.

Some scientists also designate *semisynthetic* as a separate type of fiber. This is a fiber made from a naturally occurring substance. For example, *rayon* is manufactured from wood pulp residue from the manufacture of paper. Table 21.1 lists common fibers by category and, in the case of the natural fibers, their sources.

TABLE 21.1
Common Fibers and Their Origins

Natural	Synthetic	Semisynthetic
Cotton–plant–cotton plant	Nylon	Rayon–wood pulp
Wool–animal–sheep	Polyester	
Linen–plant–flax plant	Olefin	
Silk–animal–silkworm	Acetate	
Asbestos–mineral–asbestos	Acrylic	
Cashmere–animal–goat	Spandex	
Mohair–animal–rabbit	Fiberglass	

Synthetic fibers must adhere to particular naming conventions. The Federal Trade Commission (FTC) publishes a list of the approved names for fibers and their chemical contents.

Fiber Morphology

One of the key examinations in the comparison of fibers is the morphology or structure of the fiber. Certainly, if a fiber from a crime scene arose from a particular fabric, the structures of the known and unknown fibers must be the same. The following are the most important characteristics of fiber morphology:

Type: This is the most important characteristic. The examiner must be able to classify a fiber according to the FTC-approved name or some other standard systems for describing fibers. There are a number of tests that can help determine fiber type. In addition to microscopy, fibers can be burn tested, tested for solubility or chemically treated to determine their affinity for dye. Some of these methods, however, are destructive to the evidence and therefore should be the last method of typing a fiber. Figure 21.5 shows different types of fiber using microscopic methods and Figure 21.6 shows a comparison chart for dye matching.

Size: Fibers range in diameter from 10 to 50 μm (micrometers) or from 2×10^{-3} to 4×10^{-4} inches. Naturally occurring fibers are measured in micrometers (μm). Synthetic fibers are usually measured in denier. This is a measure of the weight of a bundle of fibers that is 9000 meters long. More dense fibers will have higher deniers.

Cross section: Not all fibers are round. Their cross sections may give a clue to their end use. For example, many carpet fibers are trilobal or bilobal. Synthetic fibers can have any of hundreds of cross-sectional shapes.

Color: Many natural fibers are white or some shade of brown. They are usually bleached before they are dyed. Fibers are colored by either dyeing them or printing a pattern directly onto the fabric. An individual fiber that

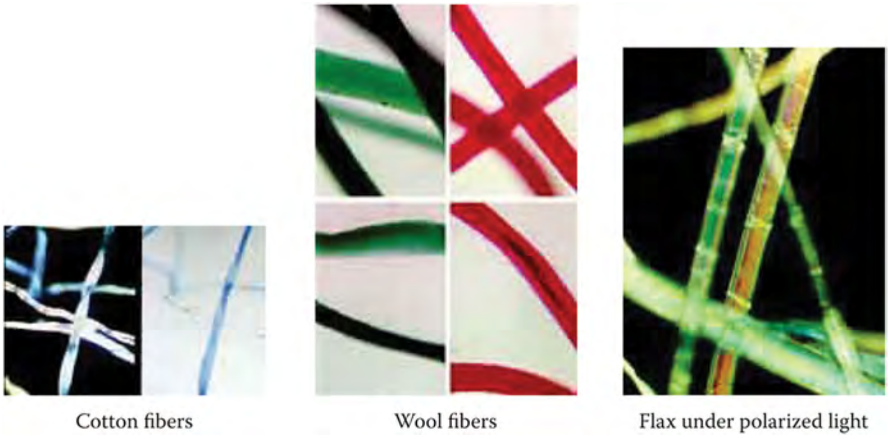
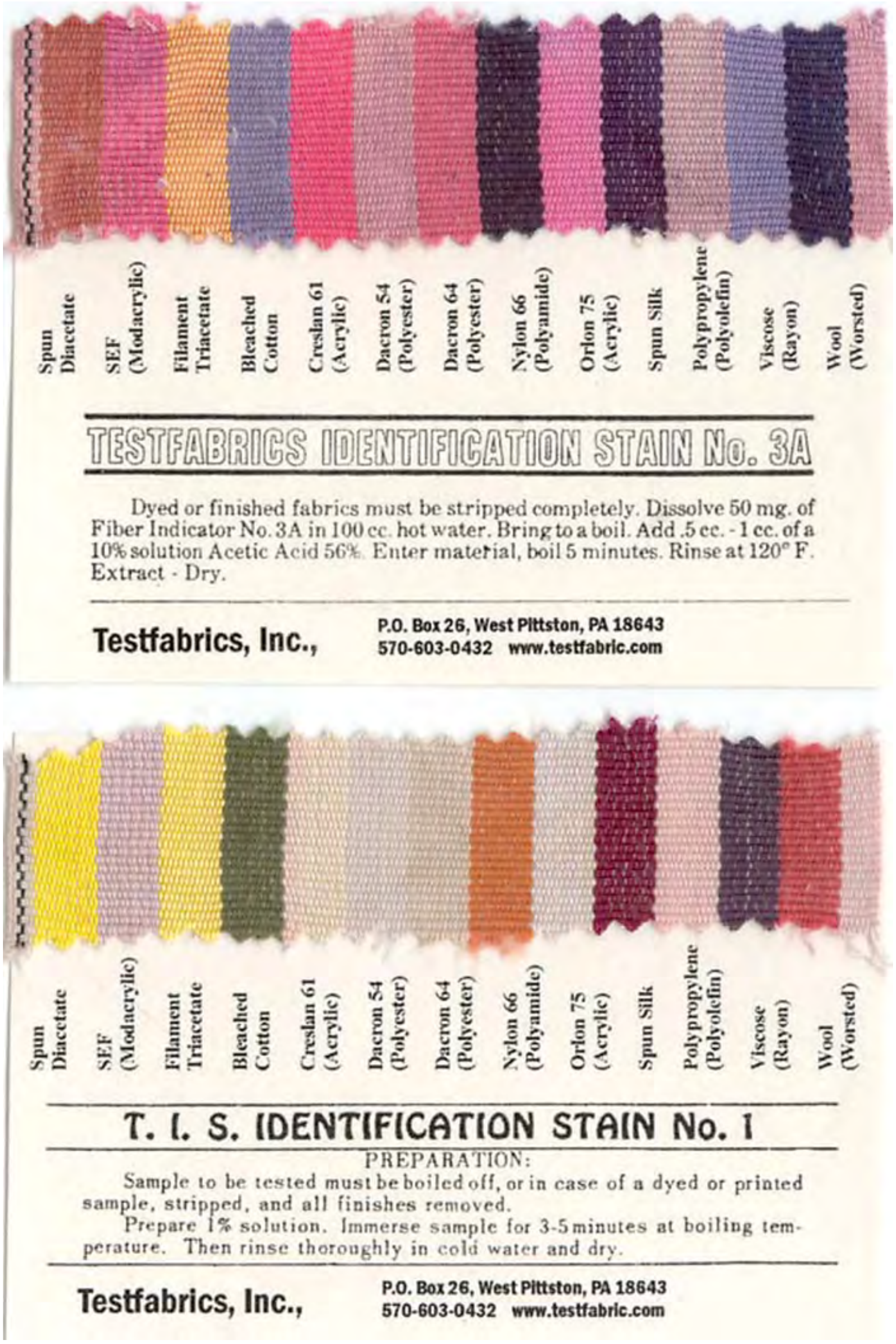


Figure 21.5 Microscopic examination of fibers. Note the twisting of the cotton fibers and the presence of a medulla in the wool fibers. The structure of flax is enhanced using polarized light microscopy. From Deedrick, D.W., *Forensic Sci. Commun.*, 2(3), July 2007. www.fbi.gov/hq/lab /fsc/backissu/july2000/deedric 3.htm#Index (Fibers).


Spun Diacetate
SEF (Modacrylic)
Filament Triacetate
Bleached Cotton
Creslan 61 (Acrylic)
Dacron 54 (Polyester)
Dacron 64 (Polyester)
Nylon 66 (Polyamide)
Orlon 75 (Acrylic)
Spun Silk
Polypropylene (Polyolefin)
Viscose (Rayon)
Wool (Worsted)

TESTFABRICS IDENTIFICATION STAIN No. 3A

Dyed or finished fabrics must be stripped completely. Dissolve 50 mg. of Fiber Indicator No. 3A in 100 cc. hot water. Bring to a boil. Add .5 cc. - 1 cc. of a 10% solution Acetic Acid 56%. Enter material, boil 5 minutes. Rinse at 120° F. Extract - Dry.

Testfabrics, Inc.,
P.O. Box 26, West Pittston, PA 18643
570-603-0432 www.testfabric.com

Spun Diacetate
SEF (Modacrylic)
Filament Triacetate
Bleached Cotton
Creslan 61 (Acrylic)
Dacron 54 (Polyester)
Dacron 64 (Polyester)
Nylon 66 (Polyamide)
Orlon 75 (Acrylic)
Spun Silk
Polypropylene (Polyolefin)
Viscose (Rayon)
Wool (Worsted)

T. I. S. IDENTIFICATION STAIN No. 1

PREPARATION:

Sample to be tested must be boiled off, or in case of a dyed or printed sample, stripped, and all finishes removed.

Prepare 1% solution. Immerse sample for 3-5 minutes at boiling temperature. Then rinse thoroughly in cold water and dry.

Testfabrics, Inc.,
P.O. Box 26, West Pittston, PA 18643
570-603-0432 www.testfabric.com

Figure 21.6 T.I.S. identification key for dye stain testing of fabric.

has been dyed will usually have a uniform appearance under a microscope, whereas a fiber that has been printed may be uneven in color.

Crimp: Some fibers have a natural wave or twist. Cotton is one of these fibers and its twisting nature is shown in Figure 21.7. Synthetic fibers must have a wave mechanically applied. The crimp value is the number of crimps per unit length.

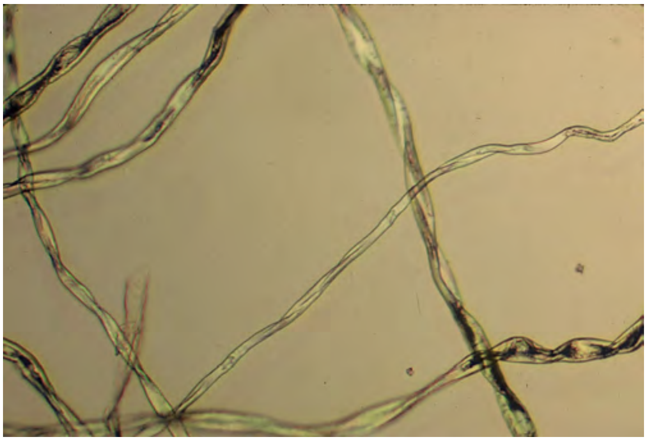


Figure 21.7 Photomicrograph of cotton fibers. Note the natural twist in the fibers.

Analysis of Synthetic Fibers

There are a number of physical and chemical tests for individual fibers. No amount of testing will result in individualization of a fiber to a particular fabric. If the evidence consists of a piece of torn fabric and the possible source is also available, then it may be possible to individualize the torn piece by way of a *tear match*. This is illustrated in Figure 21.8. In such cases, it is helpful if the tear is irregular and/or if there is a pattern to the fabric.

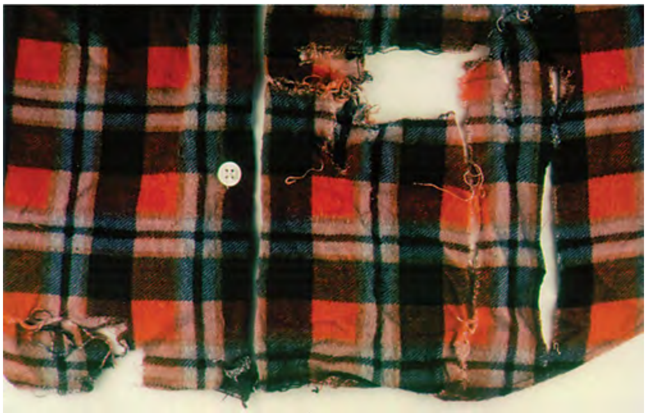


Figure 21.8 A fabric tear match.

Microscopy

A great deal can be discerned from microscopic analysis of fibers. General characteristics of the fiber such as color, length, diameter and cross-sectional shape can be viewed.

Cross Section

Many fibers are manufactured with particular shapes optimized for end use. For example, many carpet fibers are trilobal because this shape helps to hide dirt and gives the carpet a desired feel and texture. Figure 21.9 shows some trilobal fibers in cross section.

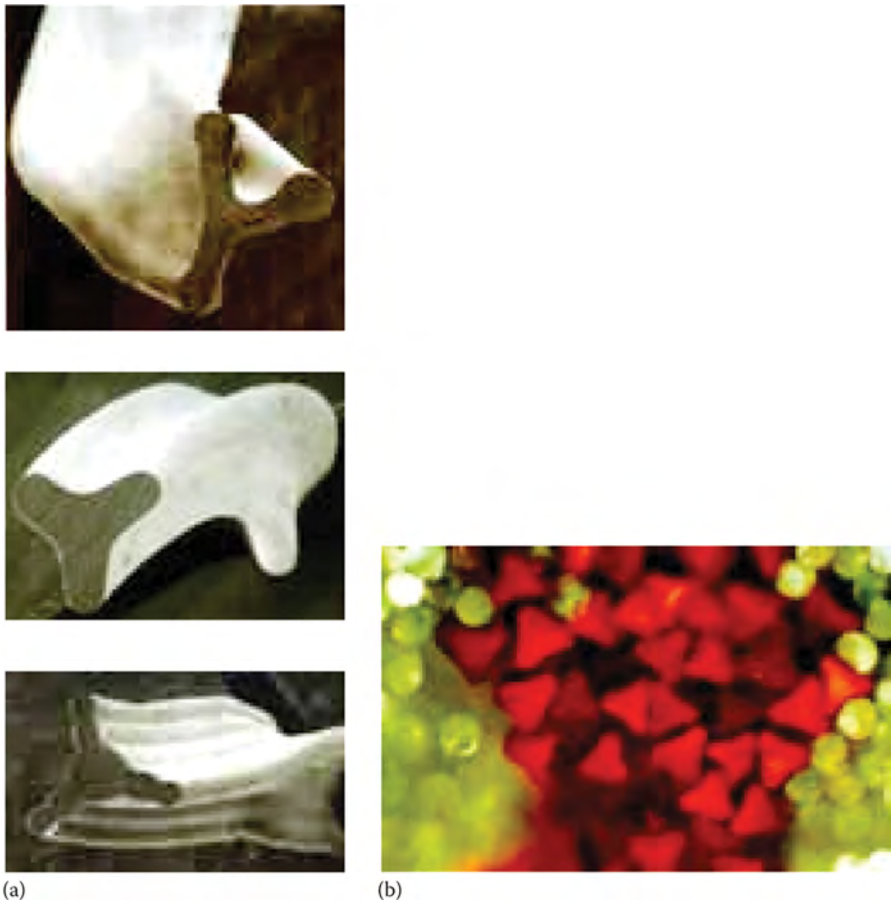


Figure 21.9 Cross section of trilobal synthetic fibers using a scanning electron microscope (a) and a regular microscope (b). From Deedrick, D.W., *Forensic Sci. Commun.*, 2(3), July 2007. www.fbi.gov/hq/lab /fsc/backis su/july2000/deedric 3.htm#Index (Fibers).

Diameter

Measurement of the diameter of a round fiber is straightforward. However, many fibers are not round. They may be oval, elongated, bilobal or trilobal. The method for determining the diameter of a fiber depends on the shape. For example, oval and elongated fibers have two diameters and both are recorded. Figure 21.10 shows some fibers and how their cross sections are measured.

Delusterants

Many synthetic fiber polymers are shiny when exposed to light. This may give an undesired sheen to the fabric. Delusterants are finely ground materials, usually titanium dioxide, introduced into the chemical mixture from which the fiber is

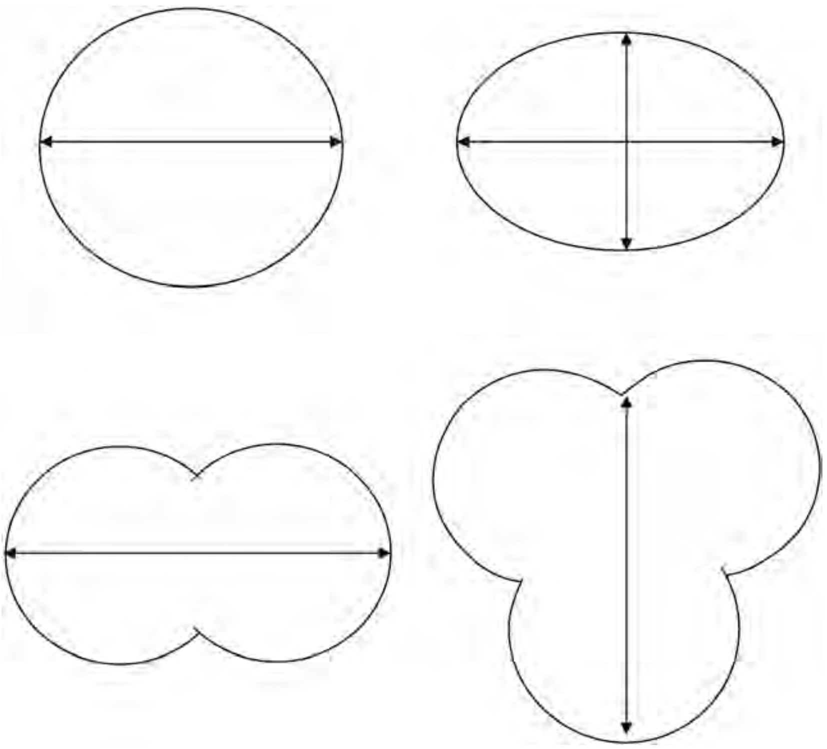


Figure 21.10 How diameters of various fiber shapes are measured.

made. They scatter light and reduce the luster of the fabric. Different manufacturers use different delusterants as well as different shapes, sizes and distributions of delusterant particles. These characteristics help in determining the degree of association of known and unknown fibers.

Refractive Index

A discussion of how refractive indices are measured in liquids and solids is presented in Chapter 22. Like glass, fibers are transparent and also exhibit the property of *refractive index*. (Refractive index is a measure of the speed light travels through a transparent substance as compared its speed in air.) One difference, however, is that the shape of a fiber may cause it to have more than one refractive index. Many fibers have two refractive indices because light will travel at a different speed depending on whether it is traveling the length of the fiber or through the diameter of the fiber. This is shown in Figure 21.11. Even if a fiber is not round, there will not be enough of a difference in refractive indices between the various diameters of the fiber to be detected.

Color

A microscope isn't needed to examine the colors of fibers. The human eye is a remarkable instrument for discerning colors and shades of differences in color when known and unknown fibers are viewed under the same light conditions. There are two problems with this method in examining scientific evidence. First, examination by the eye is qualitative and subjective. There is no objective or numerical measurement that would confirm that two fibers are the same color.

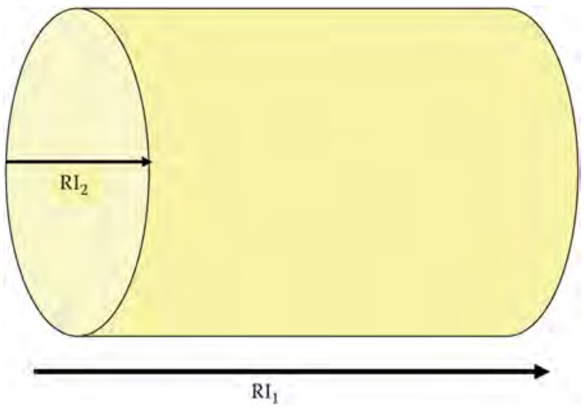


Figure 21.11 Two refractive indices of a round fiber.

The other problem is called *metamerism*. It is possible for two fibers or other objects to appear to be exactly the same color to the eye under one set of light conditions but actually be different colors when measured under a different set of conditions. To guard against this, a visible microspectrophotometer should be used to obtain the visible spectrum of the fiber. This will objectively determine the exact color of the fiber and will prove that two fibers have or do not have the same color. Microspectrophotometry is discussed in Chapters 5 and 6.

Color is imparted to fibers using *dyes* and *pigments*. Dyes are generally organic substances that absorb visible light. They are soluble in the chemicals from which the fiber will be produced and are introduced during production. Pigments are generally, but not always, colored inorganic materials. They are finely divided into small particles that are generally insoluble. They can be suspended in the chemical mixture as the fiber is made or bonded to the surface of the fiber after manufacture. Coloring fibers can be a complex process. There are more than a dozen ways that dyes and pigments can be applied. Most fabrics are dyed with more than one dye and are dyed in batches rather than in a continuous process. Because of this, there will virtually always be slight differences in dye colors and concentrations from batch to batch of the same fabric. This can be a useful characteristic when comparing fibers.

Fibers may also be colored by printing colored patterns onto the surface of the fabric. This is more akin to painting than dyeing.

Chemical Analysis of Fibers

Fibers contain a polymer backbone and one or more dyes or pigments. There may also be delustering agents added during manufacturing. Some chemical examinations are performed on a fiber as a whole. It is also possible to extract dyes from the fibers and analyze them separately.

Analysis of Fibers as a Whole

There are two major methods for analyzing the chemical composition of fibers.

1. *Fourier transform infrared spectrophotometry* (*FTIR*) microscopy is widely used in crime labs. It is nondestructive and cannot only determine what broad class the fiber belongs to but can also identify the subclass. For

example, nylon 66 can be differentiated from nylon 6–12 by FTIR. The microscope permits the analysis of one single fiber. FTIR microscopy is discussed in Chapter 5.

2. *Pyrolysis gas chromatography* (*PyGC*) is also used to analyze fibers. A pyrogram can be generated from as little as ⅛ in. of fiber, but it is a destructive technique. It is superior to FTIR in distinguishing closely related fibers because it is sensitive to small differences in chemical makeup of the fibers. PyGC is discussed in Chapter 4.

Examples of FTIR and PyGC testing results will be illustrated in the next section about paints.

In addition to the aforementioned analytical tests, other examinations may be employed on fibers. Different classes of fibers are soluble in different solvents. Although this test is destructive, *solubility* can be accomplished using very little fiber and can be a quick way of determining the class to which a fiber belongs.

Dye Analysis

Dyes can be extracted from fibers using organic solvents. The particular solvent used depends on the type of fiber and dye. Once extracted, dyes are usually analyzed by thin layer chromatography. The dyes are not identified. Dyes from known and unknown fibers can be compared by this method. More recently, liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry has been employed in the analysis of fiber dyes. This method can be used to both separate and identify the individual dyes.

Interpretation of Fiber Evidence

As mentioned previously, target fiber studies show that most fibers occur infrequently in the environment. The main exception would be indigo-dyed cotton (blue jeans). This means that, if known and unknown fibers are similar in all physical and chemical respects, the degree of association is likely to be high. This is not the same as individualizing the evidence. *Only a tear match can individualize fibers*.

Fiber evidence can also assist in piecing together a crime. Fibers are easily transferred from one fabric to another or from a fabric to another surface such as a chair seat. Once transferred, the fibers may persist on the recipient object or be easily transferred again (secondary transfer). Analyzing the journey of fibers from one place to another can help determine whether the wearer of the source of the fibers was at the scene of the crime. There have been a number of recent studies concerning primary and subsequent transfers of hairs and fibers as well as the ease of transfer and persistence of fibers.

Paints and Other Coatings

In 1996, a man was injured when driving his motorcycle through the downtown streets of Detroit, Michigan. He claimed that he was sideswiped by a white Detroit Police Department car. This caused him to lose control of his motorcycle and careen into another police car that was parked on the street. The man was arrested for reckless driving, drunk driving and for damaging the parked patrol car. As part of the investigation, the police submitted evidence to the Detroit Police Department Crime Lab. The evidence included painted parts of the motorcycle as well as paint from the parked police car and paint from the police car that the man alleged had hit him. The motorcycle had been painted dark purple. There were some white smears of paint on parts of the motorcycle and some purple paint smears on the parked police car.

Even though both law enforcement vehicles were white, they had been painted at different times and some of the chemical characteristics of the paints were dissimilar so the paint from both cars could be differentiated. The white paint smears on the motorcycle were found to be chemically and physically similar to the paint on the parked police car and different from the paint on the other car. The purple paint on the parked police car was found to be similar physically and chemically to the paint on the motorcycle. No purple paint was found on the other car. On the basis of this evidence and a breath alcohol test, the motorcycle driver was found guilty of reckless driving and drunk driving.

What Are Paints?

Paints have something in common with fibers. They both contain polymers. In some cases, the polymers in paint are the same type of polymers found in fibers. Whereas the polymers in fibers are manufactured into long strands, in paints they are formed into sheets when they dry. Paint is a type of coating designed to cover a surface for the purposes of imparting color and/or protection. Paint chemistry is extremely complicated. Hundreds of compounds are used in the manufacture of a huge variety of paints. The interactions of these substances are so complex that a paint chemist can easily spend an entire career learning to understand just a few different types of paint chemistry. This great variation in paints is beneficial to forensic chemists because careful analysis and comparisons of paint evidence can lead to a high degree of association between known and unknown samples.

Chemically, the major components of paint are a binder and one or more pigments. Pigments are generally colored, inorganic substances ground into a fine powder and suspended (not dissolved) in the binder. The binder is mixed with other additives such as drying agents, delusterants and surfactants and then dissolved in a solvent. Sometimes, the binder, solvents and additives are collectively called the vehicle or film former. The solvent imparts liquidity to the paint so that it can be easily applied to the surface. The amount and nature of the solvent can be varied to accommodate brushing, rolling or spraying the paint. When the solvent evaporates, the binder polymerizes and forms a film that traps the pigment particles and smoothly covers the surface. Figure 21.12 shows the composition of typical automotive paint coatings.

There are some common terms used to describe particular kinds of paint. The word “enamel” is used to describe any paint that dries to a high gloss. Lacquers are fast-drying paints that dry by solvent evaporation.

Other Coatings

There are other materials besides paint designed to protect or impart color to surfaces. *Shellac* is a very old coating made from an insect extract (the *lac*)

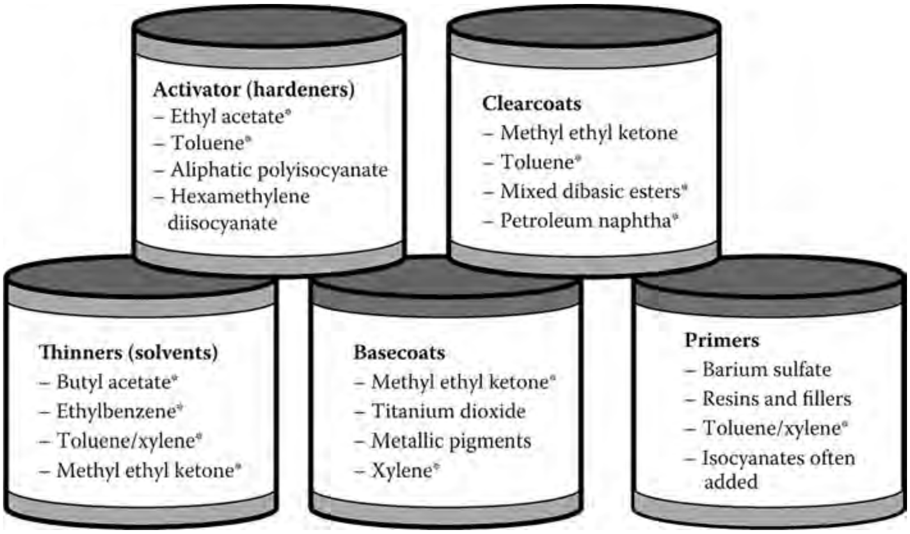

Activator (hardeners)
– Ethyl acetate*
– Toluene*
– Aliphatic polyisocyanate
– Hexamethylene diisocyanate
Clearcoats
– Methyl ethyl ketone
– Toluene*
– Mixed dibasic esters*
– Petroleum naphtha*
Thinners (solvents)
– Butyl acetate*
– Ethylbenzene*
– Toluene/xylene*
– Methyl ethyl ketone*
Basecoats
– Methyl ethyl ketone*
– Titanium dioxide
– Metallic pigments
– Xylene*
Primers
– Barium sulfate
– Resins and fillers
– Toluene/xylene*
– Isocyanates often added

Figure 21.12 Chemical compositions of typical paints. Components followed by * are solvents.

dissolved in methyl alcohol. It is mainly used to protect wood, although it has been largely replaced by varnishes. *Varnish* is a solution of film formers and resins dissolved in a solvent. It is used to protect wood. When a solvent evaporates, the film formers polymerize, leaving a hard, protective coating. Varnishes usually do not contain pigments or dyes. A *stain* contains soluble dyes or suspended pigments in a solvent. Stains will color a wood surface but will not coat it and offer no protection for the wood.

Types of Paint

For forensic purposes, paints are categorized by their use. There are three basic types.

1. *Automotive paints*: This is the most important type of paint in forensic work. Automobiles are widely used in crimes and many accidents involve cars and trucks.
2. *Structural paints*: These are used to paint buildings such as houses as well as objects such as mail boxes. They are used for protection as well as to impart color. The first house paints were oil based. These were very slow drying paints that usually contained linseed oil as the film former. The solvents were often toxic organic compounds. People could not safely remain inside a house right after it was painted. Today, homes are painted with latex-based paints that use water as the solvent. House paints are sometimes found as evidence in burglary cases and thefts.
3. *Artistic paints*: These are the oldest types of paints. They are designed to last a long time. Most are made from naturally occurring oils and pigments. Forgery is the most common forensic occurrence involving these paints.

There are also special purpose paints used for protection, color or other purposes. For example, special paints are used to color and seal concrete floors. Fluorescent paints are used on some road and warning signs. Skid-resistant paints are used in public places where there is heavy foot traffic.

Automotive paints are, by far, the most commonly encountered paints in forensic science. Automobiles are always painted with several layers of paint, each one of a different type. The layer structure of automotive paints presents some interesting analytical challenges and evidentiary opportunities that are not usually found with other types of paint. For this reason, the remainder of the chapter focuses on automotive paints, although the sections on collection and analysis could be generalized to the other types (structural and artistic).

How Cars Are Painted

Most cars have four coats within the paint finish when they are first manufactured. The exception would be some luxury cars that have more than one topcoat layer. Two coats of rustproofing are first applied to the car by bathing it in a pool of liquefied zinc and then an electroplate process is used. After this, the *primer* is applied. This is also done by electroplating. The pigments in this paint are designed to minimize corrosion of the body of the car. The color of the pigments is similar to that of the topcoat layers.

The next layer is the topcoat. This is the layer that imparts color to the car. It may contain metallic or pearlescent pigments that provide unique color effects. Traditionally, topcoats have been lacquers or more expensive enamel paints that use organic solvents. Today, water-based systems are more environmentally friendly. Topcoats usually dry by heat (thermosetting).

The final layer of paint is the *clear coat*. At one time, only the most expensive cars received clear coating, but today, all new cars have this top layer. The clear coat is acrylic or urethane based and has no pigments. It imparts extra durability and ultraviolet light resistance.

Each coat of paint imparts a layer to the overall paint job. A cross section of the paint on a car would show each layer. Many cars are repainted after an accident or simply because the owner wants to spruce up the car. Depending on the circumstances, different parts of the car may have different layer structures. This has implications on how paint evidence is collected from cars suspected of being involved in crashes or crimes.

Collection of Paint Evidence

Paint evidence comes in two types: *chips* (*flakes*) and *smears*. Paint chips contain most or all of the layers in the paint. Figure 21.13 shows paint chips from two different colored cars in a cross-sectional view. During a crash, paint chips may fall from the car and be transferred to a person or another object and even another car. Because the layer structure is intact, paint chips provide the most information in analysis. There are a number of methods used to remove chips of paint from a car surface. If the chips are loose, they can be pried off. If not, a sharp scalpel or knife is used to cut the chips out. The knife must cut all the way down to the surface on which the paint was applied to make sure that all the layers are collected.

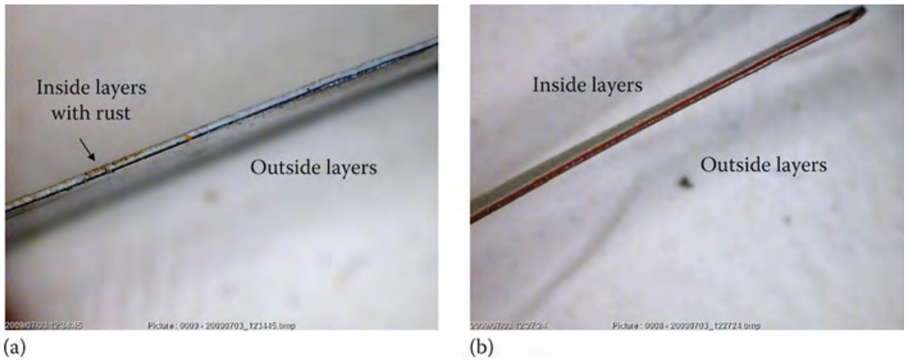


Figure 21.13 The photos are cross-sectional views of paint chips taken from a black car (a) and a red car (b). The black vehicle was an older car and showed evidence of rust on the inner coating of the paint chip.

Paint smears are much more difficult to handle. Paint smears usually consist of just the top layer of paint. When the top layer is a clear coat, it may be difficult to see the transferred paint. Smears are often transferred when an automobile sideswipes another object. When the other object is a car, it is even more difficult to interpret a smear since it may be mixed in with other layers of paint.

Proper collection of known samples of paint from an automobile is critical to successful analysis. Like most forensic evidence, paint analysis is most valuable when the unknown can be compared with the known. It is important to collect all of the layers of paint in the known sample. Where the paint is collected from is just as important. In general, known paint samples should not be collected from the damaged area of the car, such as the driver's side of the car as shown in Figure 21.14. It is likely that foreign materials from the object that the car hit or that hit the car have gotten into the paint. Paint from the other object may have become intermixed with paint that is original to the car. The best practice is to gather known samples from *undamaged* areas as near as possible to the damaged area. Taking paint far away from the damaged area can be misleading. Parts of cars may have been repainted or even replaced and the characteristics of the paint in those parts may be very different from those in the damaged area.

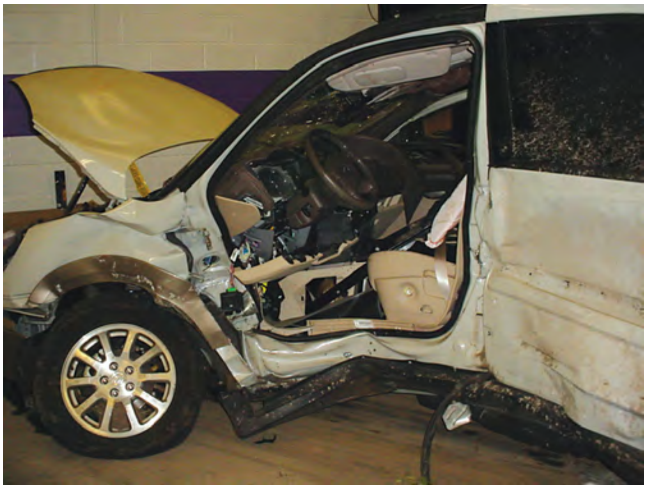


Figure 21.14 The impact site of a two-car automobile crash. Known paint samples should be collected near this site but not along any portion of the crushed area.

Paint smears should not be removed from the surface of the object at the scene. The entire object or car part should be sent to the laboratory where the smear can be removed.

Paint chips should never be taped to a card or other object. The chip may be difficult to remove from the tape and the tape adhesive can contaminate the paint chip and perhaps rendering chemical testing ineffective.

Analysis of Paint

Paint possesses a number of physical and chemical properties that can be exploited in the analysis and comparison of paint. Some focus on the pigments, while others target the binders. Others are performed on the paint sample as a whole.

Physical Properties

The most important characteristic of paint as evidence is the *color layer sequence*. Automotive paints and some structural paints contain layers. In the case of automotive paints, each layer may have a different composition and color. If an unknown paint sample and a known sample have different color layer sequences, then the known can be eliminated as a source for the unknown. It is well known that the weakest bond in an automotive paint job is the bond between the bottom layer of paint and the bare metal. Even so, paint chips may break off between layers of paint and not all layers may be present. In this case, the known and unknown may still have a common source, even if all of the layers are not present. This is shown in Figure 21.15 where *A* is an unknown paint chip and *B* and *C* are knowns. Note that *B* can be the source of *A* even though it has extra layers. *A* could have sheared off between the top layer of rust proofing and the primer layer whereas *B* was collected all the way down to the metal.

The exact colors of each layer of the paint can be confirmed using visible microspectrophotometry. In this case, the layers will have to be analyzed separately. This can be done by making "peels", peeling each layer off using a sharp scalpel. A cross section of the paint can also be made using a microtome and each layer can then be analyzed separately. Figure 21.16 shows a cross section of a paint sample.

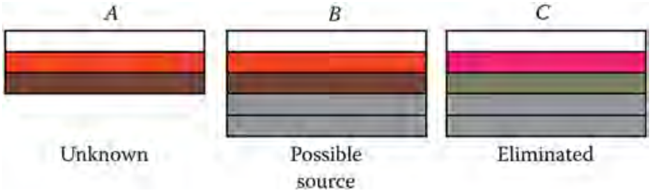


Figure 21.15 Color layer analysis of paint. Note that the only difference between the paint in ***A*** and ***B*** is that there are two more layers in ***B***. In a real case, this could mean that a paint chip could have sheared off between the third and fourth layer, giving a chip such as ***A***. Thus, the automobile painted with paint ***B*** could still be the source of the unknown ***A***. The paint chip ***C*** cannot be the source of the unknown because the second layer (topcoat) is clearly a different color.

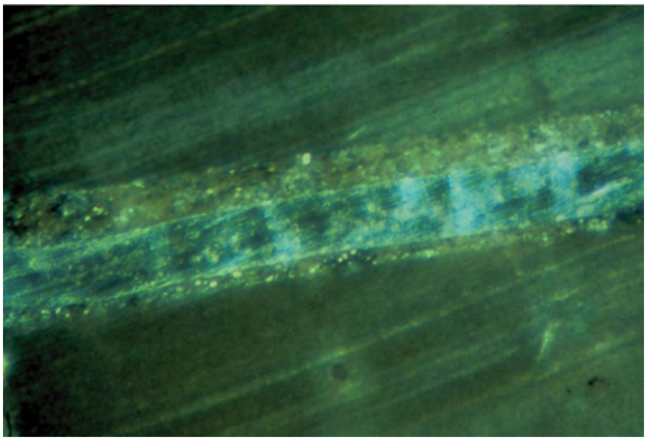


Figure 21.16 A cross section of a real paint chip showing three layers.

Chemical Properties

Solubility

Automobile paints may contain different binders. This can be a function of the manufacturer (General Motors used to employ only acrylic lacquers) or the cost of the car. Different binders may be soluble in different solvents or not soluble in any common solvent. The acrylic lacquers used in GM cars were the only automobile paints soluble in acetone. A tiny paint chip is put in a white spot plate under a stereomicroscope. A drop of solvent is added. The paint may be insoluble, soluble or partially soluble. The pigments almost never dissolve.

Chromatography

Paints must be pyrolyzed if they are to be chromatographed. Typically a paint chip is analyzed intact and pyrolyzed at about 600°C–800°C. The resulting pyrogram will be a composite of all of the binders present in the paints. In general, the pigments will not appear in pyrolysis if they are inorganic. Figure 21.17 shows a pyrogram of an automobile paint sample. Figure 21.18 depicts sample pyrograms of two types of paint.

Infrared Microspectrophotometry

Infrared spectra of paints can be obtained in one of two ways. The entire paint chip can be ground up and mixed with potassium bromide and pressed into a pellet. The transmission spectrum of the paint as a whole can then be obtained. This spectrum will be a composite, which contains peaks for all of the binders and dyes, if any, that are present in the paint. This is useful for comparing one paint chip with another but is not used to determine the nature of a single binder. Another way to obtain a spectrum of paint is to make peels and run the transmission spectrum of each layer. Finally, a cross section can be made of the paint chip, and each layer can be viewed and analyzed under the microscope attached to the FTIR. Figure 21.19 shows the infrared spectrum of a paint chip. The sample was prepared by pressing the chip into a pellet with potassium bromide (KBr).

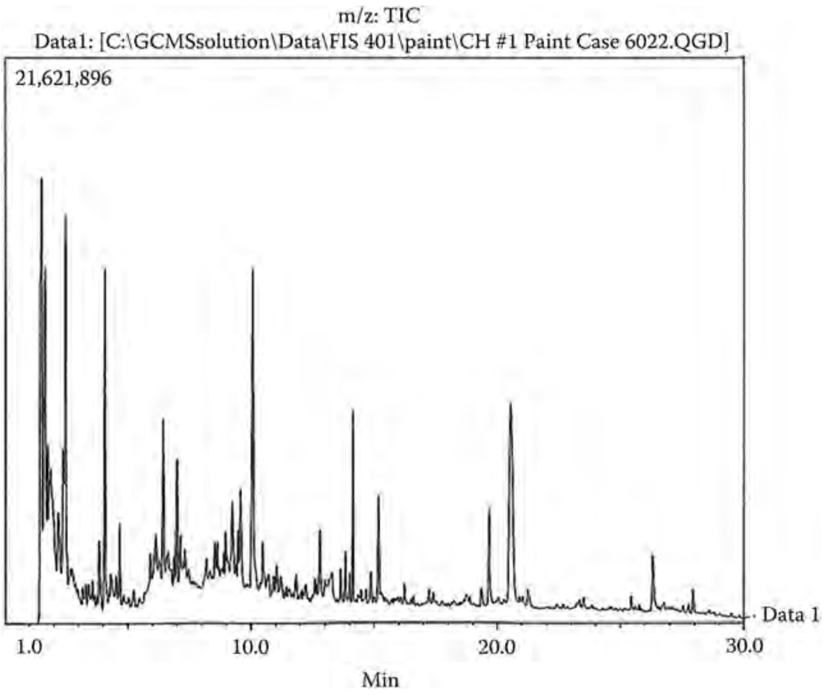
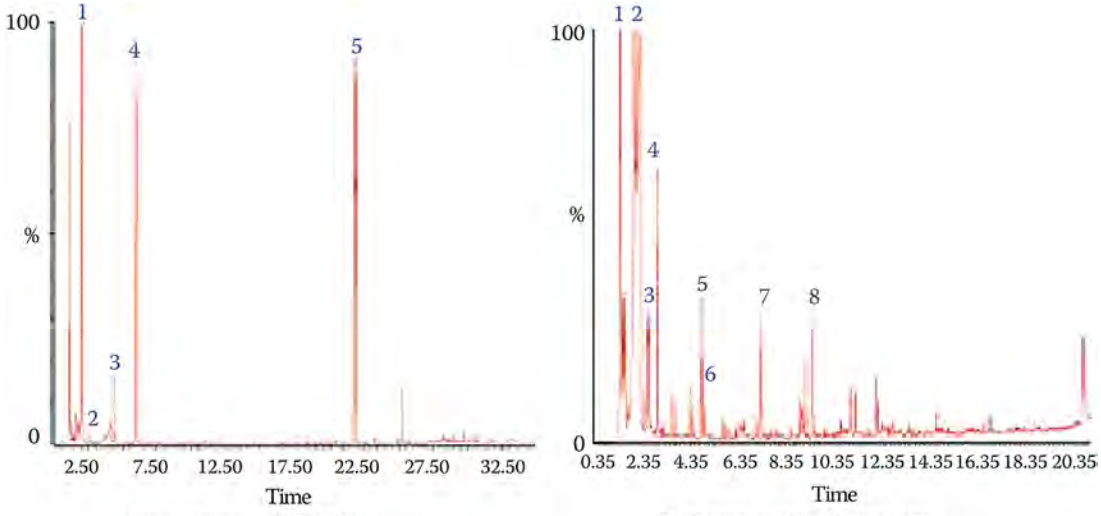


Figure 21.17 Pyrogram of an automobile paint.



Automotive touch-up paint.
Peak #1 = methyl methacrylate,
2 = methacrylic acid, 3 = styrene,
4 = butyl methacrylate, 5 = benzylbutyl
phthalate.

Black latex emulsion house paint.
Peak #1 = benzene, 2 = acetic acid,
3 = methyl methacrylate, 4 = toluene,
5 = styrene, 6 = butyl acrylate, 7 = indene,
8 = naphthalene.

Figure 21.18 Sample pyrograms of vehicle touch-up paint and house paint.

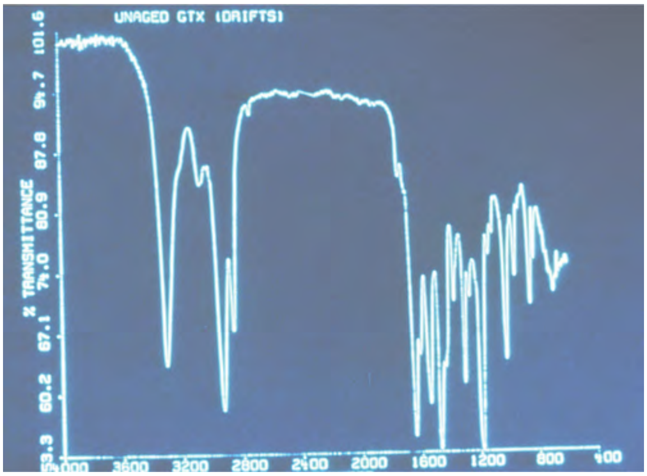


Figure 21.19 Infrared spectrum of an automobile paint.

Pigments

Most pigments are inorganic. Many are colored minerals. One of the best ways to analyze pigments is by scanning electron microscopy with energy-dispersive X-ray analysis (SEM/EDX). This will show what elements are present and in what relative concentrations. This method is quick and practically nondestructive. It is a good complement to color analysis. As mentioned previously, peels or cross sections of paint chips can be analyzed for color by visible microspectrophotometry.

Paint Smears

Paint smears can present significant problems. If they are transferred to another surface by impact, they may be practically fused to the paint on that surface. They can be very difficult to remove. In many cases, there is mostly pigment present in the smear, and SEM/EDX may be the best way to characterize the smear. If it can be removed, visible microspectrophotometry can be used to determine the colors. If there is sufficient binder present, then FTIR and PyGC can be utilized in the analysis.

Evidentiary Value of Paint

With few exceptions, paint is class evidence. Mass production of automobiles at a single factory using robots means that many car paint jobs will be chemically and physically too similar to distinguish. Thus, paint analysis can easily eliminate a car from consideration but cannot individualize it. There are rare cases when a large paint chip is broken off a car and it can be *fracture matched* back to the original spot, but these occurrences are extremely rare.

With structural paints, the situation is the same. Usually, homes or objects will have only one layer of paint, and the color layer sequence will be absent. Many structural paints are applied by brush or roller, and the layers tend to be thicker than with automobiles. This means that the chance of finding a large enough paint chip to fracture match is increased, although this situation is still relatively rare.

Summary

Paints and fibers are examples of polymers, which are long chain molecules made up of repeating links or monomers. Fibers can be natural or synthetic. Natural fibers can be of plant, mineral or animal origin. There are many varieties of synthetic fibers. Fibers are normally class evidence, except when large pieces of fabric can be fit together in a tear match. Fibers are long molecules with a variety of cross-sectional shapes. These are often designed for particular end uses and knowing the cross-sectional shape can give a clue to the possible source of the fiber. Fibers are analyzed using microscopy to describe the cross section, diameter, color and refractive indices. FTIR and PyGC are used to characterize the polymers in the fiber. Dyes can be extracted and chromatographed for comparing known and unknown fibers. Fibers are easily shed and transferred to other objects. This can help in showing that a particular garment may have been worn to a crime scene.

Paints are also polymers, but the strands are cross-linked so that the polymer forms sheets. Paints are made up of binders that hold the pigments on the surface. Pigments impart color to the paint. There are other additives in paint that give it desirable characteristics. Automotive paints are the most commonly found types of paint evidence. Each automobile is painted with several layers of different types of paints, including rustproofing layers, primer, topcoat and clear coat. Physical properties of paint, including color layer sequence, are measured. The pigments in paint are analyzed using SEM. The binders are analyzed using FTIR, solubility and PyGC. Paint is normally class evidence unless it can be fracture matched back to a source, a rare occurrence.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following fibers does *not* have a natural origin?
   a. Wool
   b. Rayon
   c. Silk
   d. Nylon
2. Which of the following fibers is animal in origin?
   a. Cotton
   b. Silk
   c. Asbestos
   d. Linen
3. Which of the following fibers is partially natural and partially artificial?
   a. Wool
   b. Rayon
   c. Silk
   d. Nylon
4. Which of the following fibers is *not* animal in origin?
   a. Cashmere
   b. Silk
   c. Linen
   d. Wool

5. Which of the following tests can individualize fiber evidence?
   a. Burn testing
   b. Solvent testing
   c. Refractive index
   d. Tear matching
6. Which of the following tests can individualize paint evidence?
   a. SEM analysis
   b. FTIR analysis
   c. Fracture matching
   d. Color layering
7. A fiber is examined under the microscope and it has a twisted appearance. The class of this fiber could be
   a. Cotton
   b. Wool
   c. Polyester
   d. Rayon
8. A polymer constructed with two or more monomers is called
   a. Homopolymer
   b. Copolymer
   c. Cross-linked polymer
   d. Block polymer

True or False

9. Paints and fibers are similar because they are examples of trace evidence.
10. It is possible to define the trail of a perpetrator by due to multiple transfers of fiber.
11. It is not possible to individualize a suspect fabric piece to a crime scene sample.
12. Forensically, there are only two paints that are most commonly analyzed for evidence: automotive (in accidents) and artistic (in forgeries).
13. Automotive paint can have four or more layers of paint finish.

Short Answer Questions

14. What is a polymer? A monomer?
15. Define and give an example of a homopolymer and a copolymer.
16. What is paint? What are the major ingredients?
17. What is a fiber? What are the major types?
18. Why do some fibers have more than one refractive index?
19. Name and briefly describe the different layers of automobile paint.
20. What is a paint “peel”? What purpose does it have in paint analysis?
21. What is denier? What does it measure?
22. What does thermosetting mean?
23. What is color layer sequence? Why is it important in paint analysis?

More Short Answer Questions

24. A red fiber is found interlaced in the hair of a victim. Describe what types of tests and procedures might be performed to identify and trace the origin of the fiber.
25. A three-vehicle accident occurs. The three vehicles involved are different colors: blue, silver and red. The investigator wants to take evidence from the crash to substantiate victim's stories of what happened in the crash. It is noted by the investigator that all three cars have paint transfer marks on them, and the colors seem similar to the vehicles involved. Describe in detail the proper procedure that should be followed to obtain evidence from the scene.

Match the Fiber with Its Correct Category

26. Cotton
27. Acetate
28. Rayon
29. Asbestos
30. Linen

a. Natural
b. Synthetic
c. Semisynthetic

Further Reading

Caddy, B. (ed.). (2001). *Forensic Examination of Glass and Paint*. Taylor & Francis, New York.

Robertson, J. and M. Grieve (eds.). (1999). *Forensic Examination of Fibres*, 2nd edn. Taylor & Francis, New York.

Thornton, J. L. (2002). Forensic paint examination, in *Forensic Science Handbook*, R. Saferstein, ed. *vol*. 1, 2nd edn. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

On the Web

Forensic Paint and Arson Investigation—http://science.howstuffworks.com/forensic-lab-technique3.htm.

Making Nylon—http://pslc.ws/macrog/lab/lab01.htm.

Paint Analysis

http://www.welshcolor.com/paint-analysis.html
https://dps.mn.gov/divisions/bca/bca-divisions/forensic-science/Pages/trace-paint.aspx
https://www.sas.upenn.edu/~carrolld/SpecProjectPages/Paints.html
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JL0f4PcU1C0

Fiber Analysis

https://www.crimemuseum.org/crime-library/forensic-investigation/fiber/
https://archives.fbi.gov/archives/about-us/lab/forensic-science-communications/fsc/july2000/deedric3.htm

https://sites.google.com/site/fiberanalysis/home
https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S0039914014000526
http://what-when-how.com/forensic-sciences/identification-and-comparison/

Case Studies

Case Study Using Fiber Analysis: The Wayne Williams Case

On July 28, 1979, a woman hunting for empty cans and bottles along an Atlanta, Georgia roadside stumbled upon a pair of dead African-American males. One had been shot and the coroner later determined that the other had been choked to death. Both had been reported missing for about a week. Thus, the investigation of a string of homicides of young, black males in the Atlanta area began. Ultimately, Wayne Bertram Williams was blamed for 23 of 30 homicides. He was convicted of the deaths of two of them, both adult ex-convicts. Williams became a suspect when officers starting staking out bridges over the Chattahoochee River because several of the victims had been dumped into the river. On May 22, 1981, an officer heard a splash in the water. At the same time, a car drove across the bridge near where the officer was stationed. He radioed to FBI and police nearby who stopped Williams and then interrogated him for over 2 hours and then released him. On June 21, Williams was arrested and charged with the murders of Nathaniel Carter and Jimmy Payne.

Since there were no witnesses to the killings, no fingerprints on the bodies and DNA typing had not yet been developed, trace evidence became very important in this case. Dog hairs that matched Wayne Williams' dog and carpet fibers that matched known fibers from his car and office were found on a number of the victims. The FBI took great pains to research the fibers from Williams' office. They traced the fibers back to the manufacturer and followed the trail to carpet manufacturers who used the fibers to make carpets. They determined how many yards of carpeting were made from this type of fiber and estimated how many yards were sold in Atlanta. They also made estimates of the number of rooms in homes and apartments in the Atlanta area and, from that, estimated the likelihood that a room contained a carpet of the same type as Wayne Williams' office. They were able to testify that the fibers in Wayne Williams' office were rare and that the fibers of this type found on the victims were likely to have come from his office. Williams was subsequently convicted of the murders and is currently serving a life sentence in prison. He maintains his innocence.

For updates on this case: https://www.distractify.com/p/did-wayne-williams-ever-confess

Case Study Using Paint Analysis: Malcolm Fairley Case

In 1984, England was stricken with a series of crimes from an unknown assailant. The perpetrator began the crime spree by breaking and entering homes in quiet neighborhoods and stealing money and various items from the homeowners. As time passed, the criminal nature of his crimes escalated from robbery to assault, and finally to rape. Nicknamed “The Fox” by law enforcement, Malcolm Fairley would break into homes, sometimes while the owners were away, watch videos under tents made from blankets and furniture and eat food from the kitchen. Due to this type of behavior, the police coined his nickname. When the homeowners returned to their residence, he would tie them up and rob and/or assault them.

During one of his later robberies, Fairley recovered a shotgun from his victim. He used the gun to intimidate others during subsequent crimes. Although he claimed it was not loaded and he had no intent of shooting anyone, the possession of the gun was enough impetus to intensify the severity of his crimes from robbery to rape.

Fairley could not be identified by his victims because he wore masks during his crimes. One mask was a leg cut from a pair of trousers with two slits cut into the pant leg for the eyes. Although he did not kill anyone, Fairley assaulted the females, threatened the males with the gun in their faces and then raped the female while the male watched. He would then leave with some of their possessions and money. This continued for almost a year, and at one point, the shotgun went off and hit a male victim in the leg. Fairley was shocked by this and decided to hide the gun, mask and gloves in a wooded area. The burial was the beginning of his downfall. After hiding the items under some brush, The Fox’s British Leyland car scraped a tree and left a paint trail. There were paint flecks on the branches.

Police found the mask, gloves and gun, and then happened on the tire tracks that led them to the scraped tree. They took samples, analyzed them and identified them as the Harvest Yellow color of a British Leyland vehicle. The task then was to question the thousands of owners of that class and color of car. Upon questioning various owners, one office located Malcolm Fairley washing his scraped Harvest Yellow vehicle. They searched his property and also found the trousers with a leg missing, the match to his mask. The Fox, Malcolm Fairley, was apprehended, put on trial and sent to prison for this crime spree. He was sentenced in London to six life sentences but has been released under a new identity after serving 20 years.

For more information: https://www.lutontoday.co.uk/news/people/thirty-five-years-crime-spree-shook-dunstable-1995915

Case Study Using Fibers: The I-5 Strangler, Roger Kibbe

Interstate 5 runs north to south along the west side of California. It is a very well-traveled stretch of highway, running along large cities like Sacramento and Los Angeles, as well as small rural municipalities. Beginning in 1986 there were a string of murders along the northern stretch of this highway. The homicides had similarities; they were young females, strangled either with their clothing or some type of cording, they were all raped and, in many cases, their clothing and hair were cut with scissors. The perpetrator did not leave much evidence for investigators, suggesting that he might have knowledge of crime scene investigation. There were a few witnesses who described the possible suspect as a white, middle-aged man with a big nose. One of these witnesses was the mother of a victim. Their car had broken down along I-5 at night and a man in a 2-seater sports car stopped to help. Charmaine Sabrah, the daughter, went with the man to get help. Her badly decomposed body was found three months later in El Dorado County by a hunter. She had been strangled and her clothing had been cut.

Additional victims of this seemingly serial killer were Stephanie Brown, who also had car trouble, Lora Heedick, a 20-year-old prostitute, Karen Finch, a 25 years old whose cut hair showed traces of duct tape and Darcie Frackenpohl, a 17-year-old runaway who was strangled by a rope garrote. And there were others. Then, in 1988, a young prostitute became alarmed when the man she was with in his car, got rough with her. She screamed and escaped from the car. Luckily, this was witnessed by a passing patrol officer, who arrested the man. The man's name was Roger Kibbe, a 48-year-old woodworker who managed some storage units and in his free time liked to skydive. His brother was a homicide detective. Kibbe resembled the witness description of the man who police believed was responsible for the I-5 killings. When they searched his car, they found evidence that would link him to the murders, scissors, cording and handcuffs.

Ultimately, the trace fiber evidence, tied Roger Kibbe to the murders of Darcie Frackenpohl and Charmaine Sabrah. Trace evidence specialist, Faye Springer, analyzed a two blue fibers found on a dress that Darcie was wearing and found they were very similar to blue carpet fibers from a car mat to a Hyundai auto belonging to Kibbe. Not only were these fibers the same color and type (trilobular Dupont fibers), but one of the blue fibers from the dress had microscope dark particles on it. Similar dark particles were found on the blue car mat fibers. The second blue fiber had a red speck on it. Springer also found hair similar to Kibbe's on the dress along with dog and cat hair, most likely from the two dogs and cat that he owned. Pieces of rope found in Kibbe's car, in his storage shed and also at Darcie Frackenpohl's crime scene were compared. All were the same type of nylon parachute rope and ALL had red specks (identified at red spray paint) on them. The red paint specks were analyzed and had the same organic and inorganic components to them.

Springer found four blue fibers on the pantyhose of Charmaine Sabrah. These were similar to fibers from the seats of Kibbe's Datsun 280Z, a sportscar that he owned. Fiber evidence from the socks of another murder victim, Lora Heedick, was examined by Springer and linked Kibbe's car fibers.

This trace evidence helped connect Roger Kibbe to these horrible crimes. On April 28, 1988, he was charged with two of the murders. On May 12, 1991, he was convicted and sentenced to 25 years to life in prison. Subsequently, in 2008, with DNA analysis he was linked to several of the I-5 murders. He was indicted for six counts of murder and was eligible for the death penalty. To avoid this, he pleaded guilty in 2009 to all six murders and was sentenced to six consecutive life terms.

For more information: https://web.archive.org/web/20120107124449/http://www.trutv.com/library/crime/serial_killers/predators/roger_reece_kibbe/10.html

https://www.google.com/books/edition/Trace_Evidence/UXYAAAAACAAJ?hl=en

22

Glass and Soil

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define and classify glass
2. To be able to define soil
3. To be able to define fracture match
4. To be able to sequence multiple fractures
5. To be able to determine direction of force on a piece of glass
6. To be able to define refractive index
7. To be able to describe the Becke line method for determining refractive index
8. To be able to describe the common methods for the analysis of soil

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronym*
- *Introduction*
- *Glass*
  - *Types of Glass*
- *Glass as Forensic Evidence*
  - *Fracture Match*
    - *Analyzing Broken Glass*
      - *Sequencing Glass Fractures*
  - *Direction of Force*
  - *Class Characteristics of Glass*
    - *Refractive Index*
    - *Refractive Index Determination of a Small Glass Fragment*
- *Soil*
  - *Soil as Forensic Evidence*
    - *Color Analysis of Soils*
  - *Physical Analysis of Soils*
  - *Analysis of Humic Fractions of Soils*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
  - *Match the Columns*
  - *Problem-Solving*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*
- *Glass*
- *Soil Analysis*
- *Case Studies*

Mini Glossary

Amorphous: This means to have no definite shape, form or structure.

Becke line: The white line or "halo" around a solid object (in this case, glass) that has been immersed in a liquid medium, visible when viewed under a polarized light microscope.

Concentric fracture: The lines of fracture that tend to form a circle around the point of impact on a piece of glass.

Conchoidal lines: Curved stress lines along the side of a fractured piece of glass.

Fracture match: Fitting a piece of evidence into the source, like fitting a puzzle piece into a jigsaw puzzle, individualizing that piece of evidence.

Hot stage microscope: A special type of microscope in which the stage or platform for the slide changes temperature, heating the slide mounted on the stage.

Humus: The organic material in soil comprised of decayed plant and animal material.

ICP/MS: Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometer, an instrument used to analyze the chemical composition of a sample material.

Radial fracture: The lines of fracture that extend outward from the point of impact on a piece of glass.

Refraction: The bending of light due to a change in speed as it travels from one medium to another of different density.

Refractive index: A measure of how the speed of light is reduced as it travels through a medium as compared to its speed of light in a vacuum.

Soil: A mixture of crushed rock, minerals and decayed plant and animal materials.

Acronym

ICP/MS	Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometer
RI	Refractive index

Introduction

This chapter is about glass and soils and similar materials. Although they are distinct types of evidence, glass and soils have some common characteristics. Forensic analysis involves primarily the physical properties of glass and soil, although some chemical analysis is performed on this evidence. Another common characteristic is that most laboratories do not do much testing on this evidence. A large portion of crime labs do no testing on soils directly. Examiners concentrate on soil analysis when soil at a crime scene contains a shoeprint or tire tread. In many glass cases, the only testing that is done is the refractive index test, which will be covered in some detail in this chapter.

Glass

In school, everyone is taught that there are three states of matter: solid, liquid and gas. Later on, the concepts of plasma and fluid may be introduced. Glass is an example of yet another form of matter: the *amorphous solid*. Most solids have an ordered structure and many have a definite crystal habit. Table salt (sodium chloride) is made of cubic crystals, for example. Even metals have an ordered structure, described as *metal–metal bonding*. Glass has no ordered structure and no crystal habit, making it an amorphous solid. In its purest form, glass is made up of silicon and oxygen molecules in the ratio of 2:1. All glass has, as a common base, the compound **silicon dioxide**. Its chemical formula could best be described as $(SiO_2)_n$. The chemical structure of glass is shown in Figure 22.1. Because of its properties, glass has also been referred to as a *supercooled liquid*.

Glass has properties of a solid and some of a liquid. It has a high melting point, in excess of 2000°C, and is very hard and brittle like a solid. It is colorless and transparent and has no regular order to its chemical bonds like a liquid. There have been some reports that glass can flow, albeit very slowly. These have been the

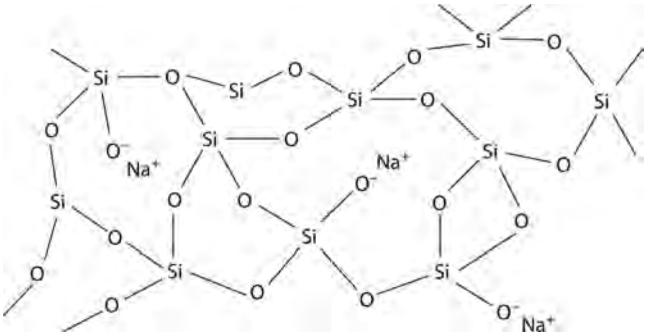


Figure 22.1 The chemical structure of glass.

result of observations that glass windows that have been hung for many years seem to be thicker at the bottom than the top so that the glass sagged under the influence of gravity. There is no evidence that this happens and is likely due to poor-quality manufacturing of the glass.

Types of Glass

The basic ingredient in glass is silicon dioxide. It comes from very pure sand, which is heated until it melts and then allowed to cool. There are very few types of glass that are made of pure silicon dioxide. Most glass is made up of the base silicon dioxide with different chemical additives that give diversity to the properties of the glass and hence change its usage. Some types of glass may be similar in chemical content but differ in the way they are manufactured resulting in certain desirable properties. Some of the common types of glass are as follows:

- *Float glass or soda lime glass*: This is a type of glass that is used to make windows and other flat glass objects. There are three categories of chemicals that make up soda lime glass: the formers, the fluxes and the stabilizers. The formers are the main ingredient common to all glass types; the silicon dioxide (SiO_2) or silica in the form of sand. Fluxes help lower the temperature of the mixture, making it easier to manufacture. Alkali ingredients are fluxes, and the float glass flux additive is sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3) or soda. Calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) or calcined limestone is the third additive, the stabilizer, which adds strength and water resistance to the glass. It is easy to see from the list of ingredients how this type of glass came to be called "soda lime" glass. The ingredients are heated to 1500°C and then poured onto a bath of molten tin. The glass is very viscous, and the tin is very fluid so the two do not mix. As the glass cools, it forms a very flat surface because the surface of the molten tin bath is very flat.
- *Borosilicate glass*: This type of glass is made by "doping" molten glass with boron. The main ingredients are similar to soda lime. Borosilicate glass is composed of mostly silica, a smaller amount of alkali and boric oxide (B_2O_3, the source of the boron) and a smattering of aluminum oxide (Al_2O_3). The atoms of boron fit in holes in the glass structure and alter its properties. This type of glass has a high coefficient of thermal expansion. This means that it will not break easily when its temperature is rapidly increased or decreased. If you take a regular glass object and cool it down and then plunge it into hot water, it will break. Borosilicate glass (sometimes called Pyrex, which is a

proprietary name) resists breaking due to a temperature change. It is used in cookware and other applications where stability in the presence of rapidly changing temperatures is needed.

- *Tempered glass*: This type of glass is used in automobile windows and plate glass windows in stores. Although it has the same chemical makeup as soda lime glass, it is specially treated so that it is up to four times stronger than regular glass. When it breaks, it forms small spheres that do not have sharp edges. It is made by taking regular glass and reheating it to about 700°C and then cooling rapidly. It can also be made using a chemical treatment.
- *Tinted glass*: This type of glass contains colorants. It is used for decoration or sometimes to reduce glare or heat penetration. The colorants in tinted glass are minerals of various colors. They are melted and mixed with the raw materials of the glass during the manufacturing process.
- *Leaded glass* (*crystal stemware*): This type of glass has become rare in today's society, due to the additive ingredient, lead oxide (PbO). Crystal wine glasses, figurines and paperweights are examples in this category. The lead additive gives the glass a higher refractive index, causing light to bend more as it passes through, ultimately resulting in the sparkle of crystal glassware and figurines. A characteristic *ping* sound is produced when leaded glass is lightly tapped, a resonant property caused by the bonding of the additives.

Glass as Forensic Evidence

There are more than 700 types of glass but only about 70 are in common use today. Glass is widely used in consumer and commercial products and therefore is found just about everywhere. It isn't surprising that it shows up at many crime scenes, especially those that involve automobiles. On many city streets, there is broken glass left from some accident or left as debris from any action that could cause broken glass. This glass may be incidental to a crime or other some incident that might have happened at that location. It is very important to collect proper known samples so incidental glass can be eliminated from consideration.

Glass is forensically important because

- It is frequently found in most crime scenes due to its plentiful nature and due to actions commonly involved in a crime (broken windows and doors, bottles and drinking glasses, auto windows, etc.).
- It can be carried away undetected from the scene.
- It does not decay under normal circumstances; it is stable evidence.
- It can contribute as class evidence in the pool of evidence linking a suspect to a crime.

Fracture Match

Because glass is mass produced, there are few characteristics that are unique to a particular piece. For this reason, glass is generally considered to be *class* evidence, and a piece of glass cannot normally be matched to a particular source. There is one exception, however. This occurs when there are broken pieces of glass that are large enough to manipulate and they can be fitted together like pieces of a jigsaw puzzle. This is called a *fracture match* and is considered to be an *individual* characteristic. In some cases, there are a few pieces of glass, and the fracture match is fairly easy. Figure 22.2 is a broken Molotov cocktail, which is a device for starting fires. The glass container has been reassembled.

Other fracture matches are not so easy to interpret. Fortunately, there are microscopic characteristics that can help in making a decision about the suspected match. When glass breaks, the applied forces cause the glass to stretch first. Glass is not very malleable and it won't stretch very far, but microscopic stress marks will form in the glass at the break. Since the application of the breaking force is randomly applied (not easily reproducible), the pattern of stress marks on either side of the break are unique. This can be seen in Figure 22.3, which is a

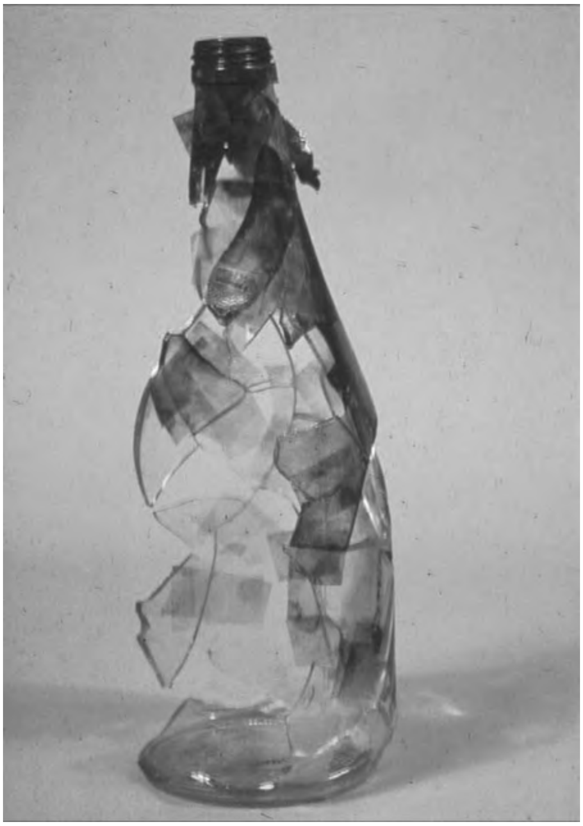


Figure 22.2 A Molotov cocktail.

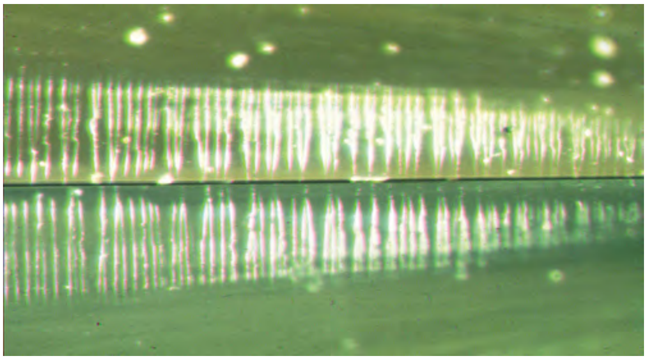


Figure 22.3 Stress marks in glass. The two edges at a break in an eyeglass lens are shown. The white lines are stress marks in the glass caused by the break.

photomicrograph of the broken edges of a piece of glass. Note the numerous stress marks and how they all correspond to each other. It would be virtually impossible to break the same type of glass the same way and get the same pattern of stress marks. This means that if the two sets of stress marks match like the ones in Figure 22.3, this is an *individual* characteristic.

It is relatively rare to get pieces of glass from crime scenes that are large enough to fit back into a possible source. The majority of cases involve pieces of glass that are too small to fracture match and are thus *class* evidence.

Analyzing Broken Glass

Sequencing Glass Fractures

When a force is applied to a glass object, it will bend until it reaches its elastic limit. When the limit is reached, the glass splits in two. The portion of the glass that fails first will have a stress mark at right angles to the plane of the glass—whereas the remaining portion of the glass stresses to the breaking point. This results in a curved pattern of lines on the edge of a broken piece of glass, called "conchoidal lines". The edge of a broken piece of glass is shown in Figure 22.4 with visible conchoidal lines.

The point of impact is usually obvious and can also yield information to the glass examiner. The first task is to determine what type of object caused the damage to the glass. Examination of the hole (if there is one) or point of impact can help identify whether the object was a low-velocity or high-velocity projectile. A bullet or other projectile traveling at high velocity produces a hole on the entry side that is smooth and of similar diameter as the bullet. The exit side will be cratered around the hole, producing a much larger circle than the bullet. Figure 22.5 shows entry and exit holes in glass.

A low-velocity bullet hole will exhibit more shattering around the hole, and the hole may be irregular in shape. Sometimes, stones at high speed (coming off of a tire) may cause damage to glass that mimic bullet fracture patterns. Therefore, it is important to carefully search the area of the crime scene for other evidence in order to determine what caused the breakage.

Two different lines of fracture are usually present near the impact site. These fracture lines can be helpful when determining the sequence of impacts when glass is impacted multiple times. For example, if a window has multiple gunshots, the shapes of the entry and exit holes will indicate the *direction* from which the shots were fired (from the inside or outside of the residence). Looking at the

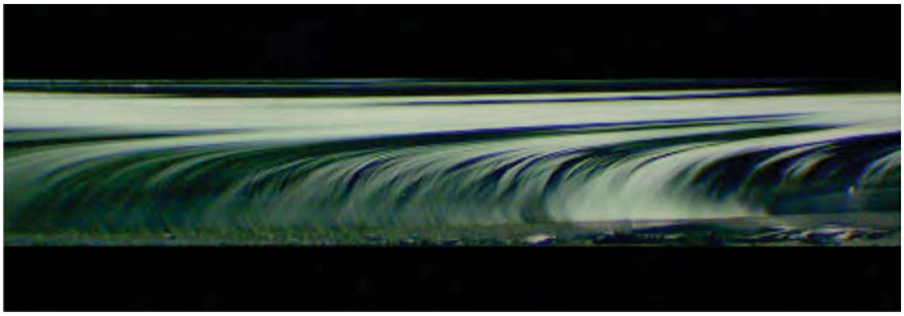


Figure 22.4 This is a photo of the edge of a broken piece of glass. The curved lines are called conchoidal lines. They are formed in this sample as a result of a force of impact from the top side of the glass to the bottom.

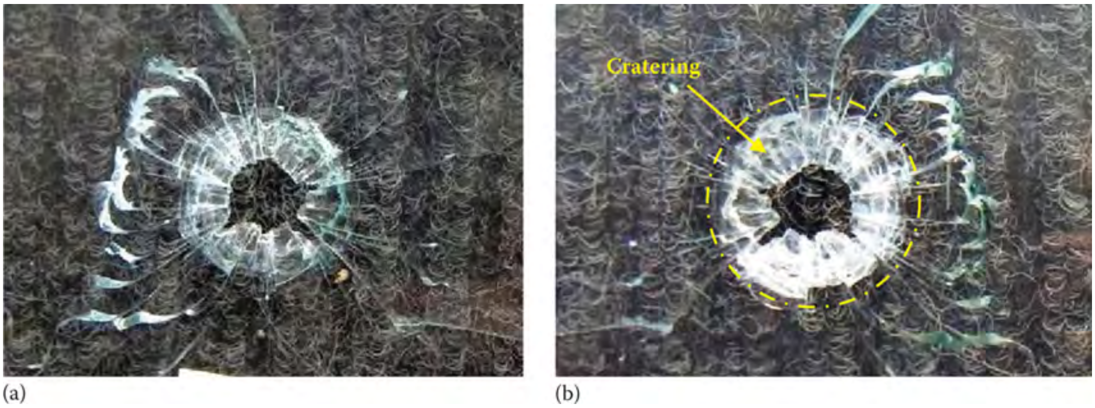


Figure 22.5 These two photos show the (a) entry and (b) exit holes produced by the same bullet going through a glass window. The hole on the left is entry, characterized by a smoother hole and no cratering on the entry side. The hole on the right is exit, characterized by the cratering around the entry hole (whiter areas around the hole highlighted by the dotted circle).

fracture lines, it is possible to determine the *order* of impacts. There are two types of fracture lines: *radial* and *concentric* (see Figure 22.6). *Radial fractures* extend outward in a line from the point of impact origin on the glass. *Concentric fractures* make relatively circular patterns around the point of origin of the force.

Radial fractures cause the glass to stress initially on the side *opposite* the force, causing the glass to break on that side first. The side of the glass where the force originated snaps after. The opposite is true of concentric fractures. The action of the radial break causes the side of impact to fail first and the opposite after. This is illustrated in Figure 22.7.

In the case of multiple impacts, the radial fracture lines give indication of which impact preceded another. No radial fracture can extend through an existing fracture line. If the glass has already been compromised, the secondary fracture must end when it intersects a previous radial fracture. Therefore, it is possible to speculate on the order of a series of impacts. For example, in the succeeding sketch of a window with three impacts, A, B and C, impact A had to have been first, because impact B's radial fractures terminate in impact A's. Impact C must

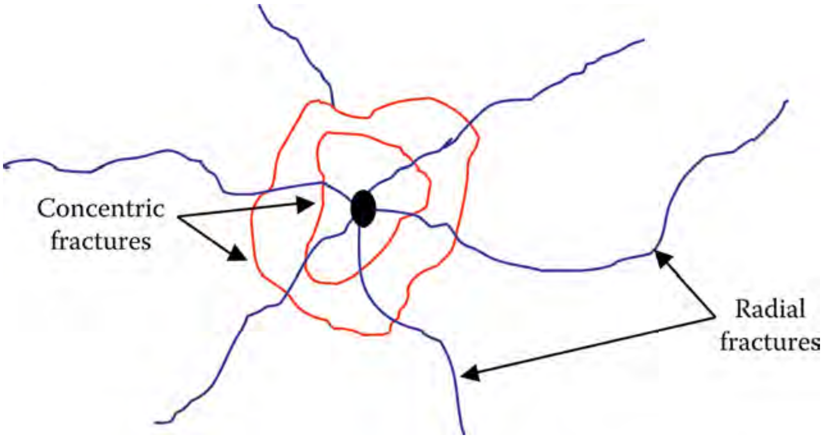


Figure 22.6 The lines of fracture due to impact on glass. The fracture lines that originate at the point of impact and move outward are radial fractures. The circular lines of fracture around the impact point are concentric fractures.

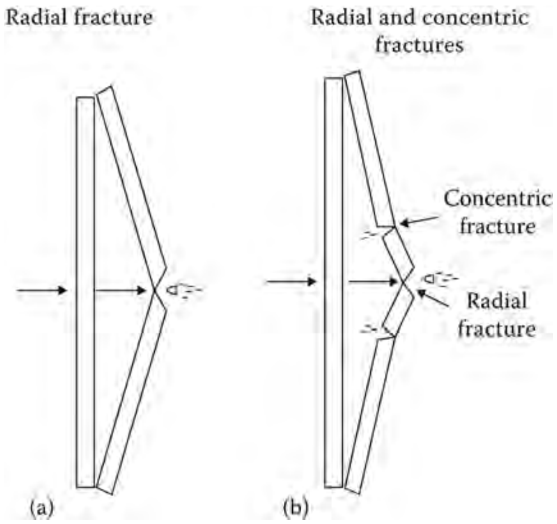
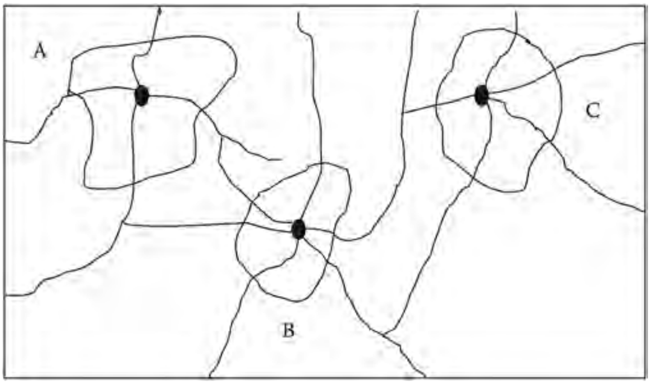
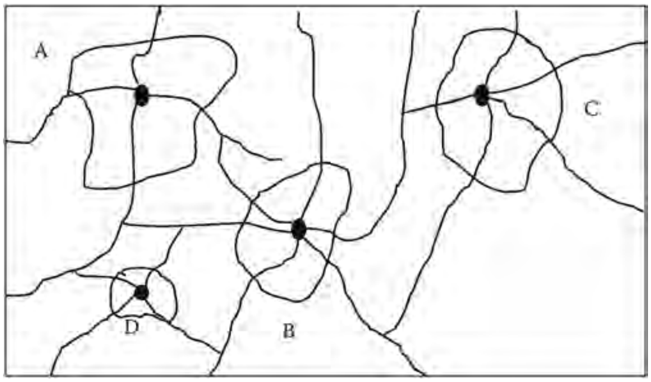

Radial fracture
Radial and concentric fractures
Concentric fracture
Radial fracture
(a)
(b)

Figure 22.7 (a) Shows the path of a projectile through a window, first when it impacts the window from the left and then upon exit, producing radial fractures. (b) Shows the path of a projectile upon entry (arrow at left) and then exit, producing radial and concentric fractures.

have occurred after B, as its lines terminate in impact B's. Therefore, the sequence of impacts to the glass is A, then B and lastly C.



It is not always this easy. For instance, if the window had one more impact, impact D, nestled between A and B, the order is not as definite. Possible sequences could be A–B–C–D or A–B–D–C. The only statements that can be made for certain are that A was first and B came after A. The timing of C and D is unknown.



Sequencing fractures and analyzing holes in glass can be important contributions in reconstructing a crime.

Direction of Force

The stress lines or *conchoidal lines*, formed as a result of impact and breakage as seen in Figure 22.4, are useful tools in the determination of the direction of impact (force) on the glass. This information may be viable to corroborate statements or reconstruct the incident. Remember that the radial fractures break first on the opposite side of impact and then stress until they fall apart on the side of impact. Conchoidal lines are the result of this two-step occurrence. The first side of the glass to fail forms a perpendicular (right angle) line to the surface as seen on the edge of the glass, and the side that fails last has lines that curve obliquely to its surface. The rule, commonly referred to as the *3R rule* is when looking at the side edge of a *radial* fracture line, there is a *right* angle on the *reverse* (opposite) side of the impact force. Figure 22.8 shows the same conchoidal lines with the right angles and direction of force labeled.

The opposite of the 3R rule applies to concentric fracture lines. In this case, the right angle is formed on the *same* side as the impact force. This again is because the concentric fractures break first on the side of impact and last on the opposite side. The graphic in Figure 22.9 illustrates how force is determined using these lines of fracture.

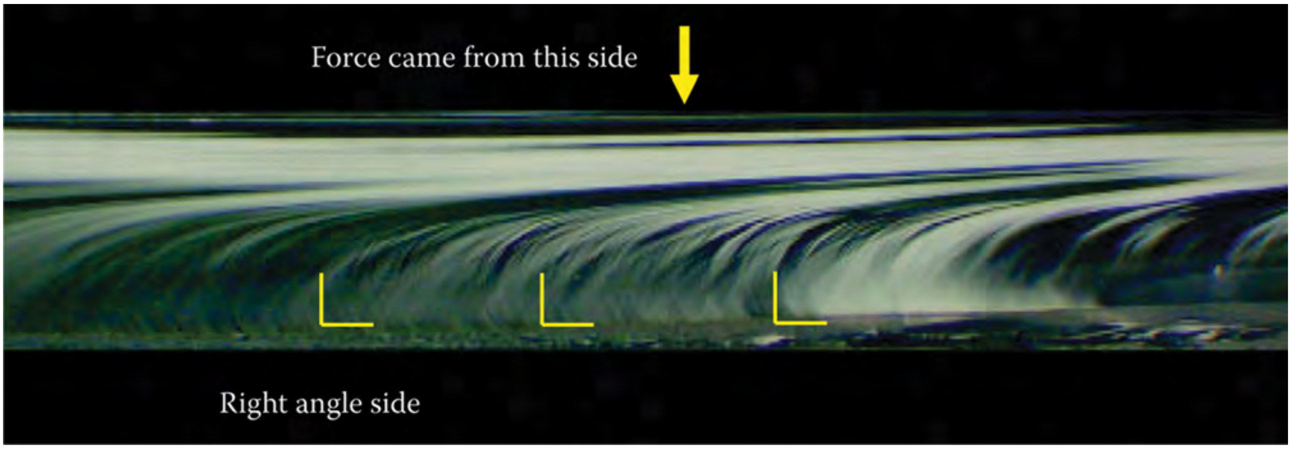


Figure 22.8 Direction of force using the ***3R*** rule for a radial fracture piece of glass. ***Radial*** fractures have a ***right*** angle on the ***reverse*** side of the force.

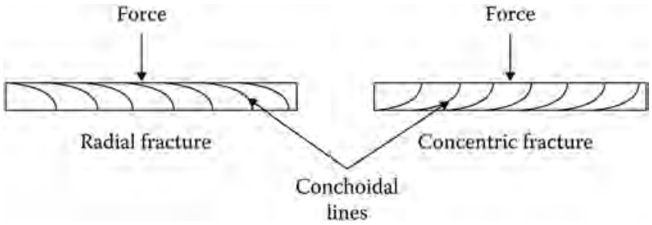


Figure 22.9 Using conchoidal lines on the edge of a piece of glass to determine direction of impact.

Class Characteristics of Glass

The number of class characteristics of glass is very limited because glass is so inert, resulting in its being difficult to dissolve in any common solvents. This limits the chemical properties that can be described. A few crime labs have access to an *inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometer*. This instrument is capable of digesting glass and performing elemental analysis to determine its chemical composition. These instruments are expensive and require a good deal of skill to operate, and thus are not commonly used in local crime labs. As a result, most forensic scientists concentrate on the physical characteristics of the glass in making comparisons between glass of known and unknown sources. Some of the more common physical properties are as follows:

- Size, shape, dimensions, thickness
- Color
- Density
- Refractive index

Of these properties, the most discriminating is refractive index.

Refractive Index

Everyone learns in school that the speed of light is about 186,000 miles/s or about 3×10^8 m/s. This is only true when light travels through a vacuum. When light travels through any other transparent medium, it slows down. The effect that a particular medium has on the speed of light roughly correlates to its density. Just as you cannot walk as fast through water as you can through air (because water is denser than air and offers more resistance to your movement), so it is with light passing through water. The magnitude of the decrease in the velocity of light as it passes through a transparent medium is called the "refractive index," expressed as a ratio as shown in Equation 22.1

$$\mathrm{RI} = \frac{\text{The velocity of light in a vacuum}}{\text{The velocity of light in the transparent medium of interest}} \tag{22.1}$$

The ratio or *refractive index* is a result of *refraction* of light passing through multiple media. The varying speed of light when it passes from one medium to another causes the light to refract, change its direction or bend. This is shown in Figure 22.10. A straight straw is partially immersed in water. When viewed from the side, the straw appears to have been bent. This is an example of refraction.

Refraction has several interesting properties that are utilized in the analysis of glass.

- If two transparent materials, such as a liquid and a solid, have the same refractive index, then light beams that pass through them will be refracted the same amount, and light will not bend as it passes from one material to the other. The two materials will therefore look like one and cannot be distinguished. If the solid is immersed in the liquid, it will essentially disappear from human sight. Figure 22.11 is an example of a solid that has a refractive index similar to water. In the series of photographs, the transparent solid

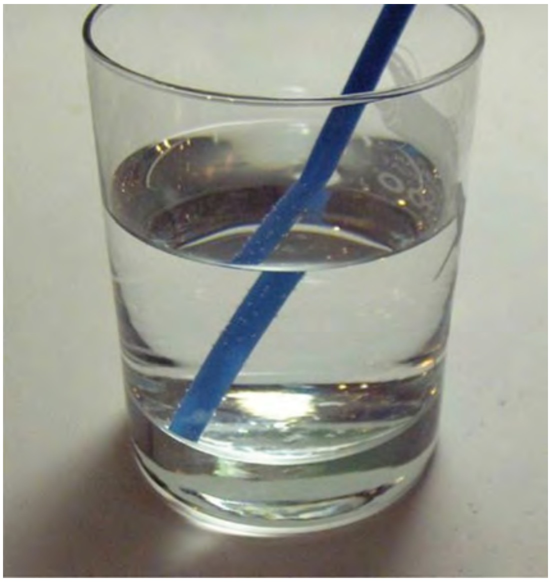


Figure 22.10 Refraction of a plastic straw partially immersed in water. The straw appears to bend due to refraction.

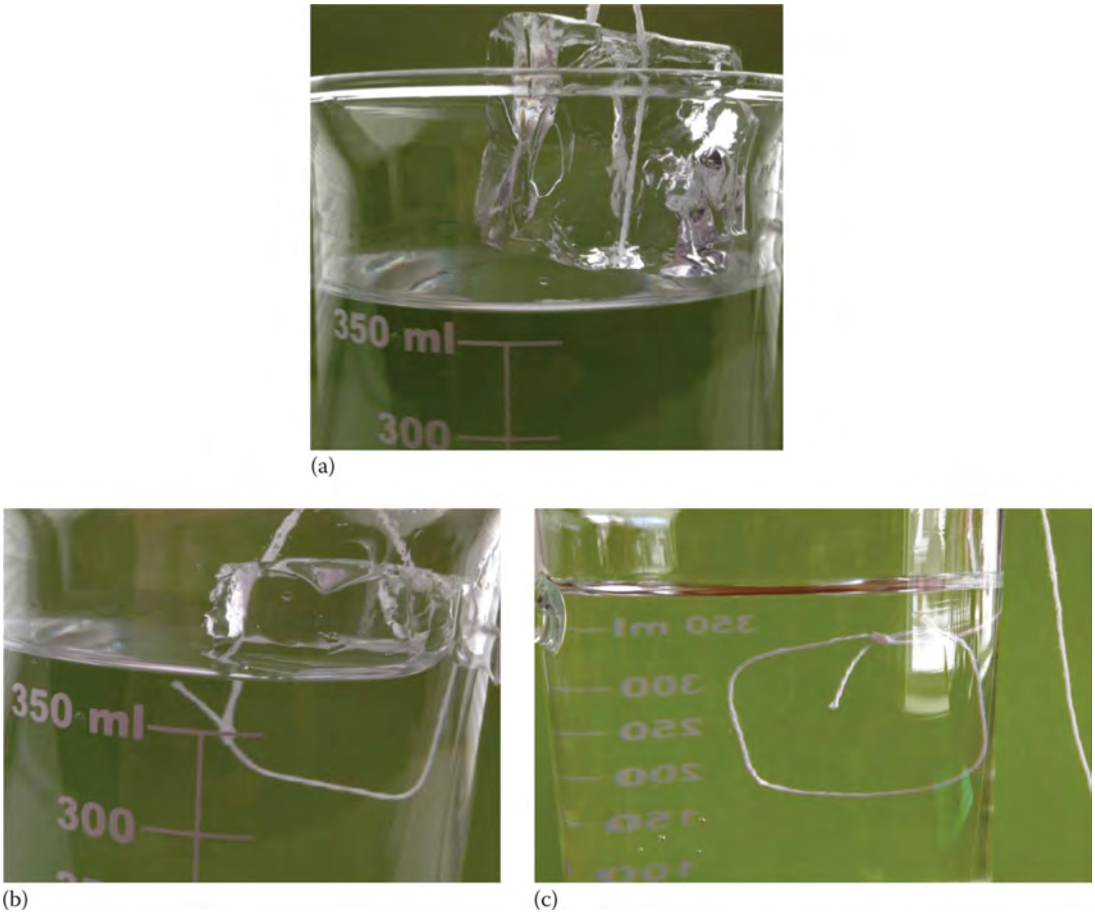

350 ml
300
(a)
350 ml
300
(b)
350 ml
300
250
200
150
100
(c)

Figure 22.11 These photos show the immersion of a solid, transparent material into a liquid of the same refractive index. (a) Shows the cube in air. In (b), the half of the cube still in air is visible, while the other half now in water is not. The solid is immersed and not visible in (c).

cube, a cross-linked polyacrylamide, is immersed into distilled water, and the cube seems to disappear.

- If a transparent material is heated, its refractive index will decrease. This is because, as a material is heated, it becomes less dense and more gas like. This means that light passing through it will encounter less resistance and bend to a lesser degree. This effect is much more dramatic on liquids than solids. Glass, being solid material, barely changes its refractive index as it is heated.
- The amount of refraction that light undergoes depends upon its wavelength. The longer the wavelength of light, the less it bends as it travels from one medium to the next. For example, red light, with a wavelength of approximately 700 nm, bends less than blue light, wavelength around 400 nm.
- If a transparent solid is immersed in a transparent liquid of different refractive index, a bright halo of light will be seen around the solid. This is called the *Becke line*. Since it is formed at the boundary between two different refractive indices, it will disappear if the solid and liquid have the same refractive index. Figure 22.12 shows the Becke line around a piece of glass immersed in a liquid at 100 times magnification.
- If a transparent solid is immersed in a transparent liquid of different refractive index and put under a microscope, the Becke line will move as the ocular to objective lens distance is increased. If the liquid has a higher refractive index than the solid, the Becke line will move away from the solid toward the liquid. This is illustrated in Figure 22.13.

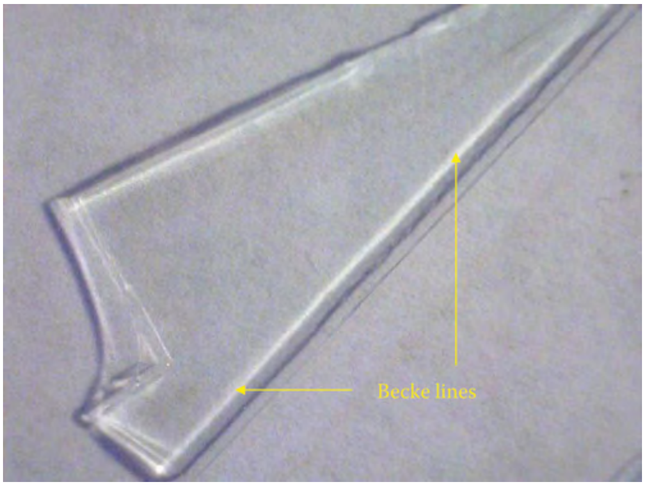


Figure 22.12 A Becke line. The white halo around the glass is the Becke line. It follows the exact contours of the glass.

Refractive Index Determination of a Small Glass Fragment

In many cases, glass recovered as evidence is in the form of very small fragments. Figure 22.14 shows a very small piece of borosilicate (Pyrex©) glass being tested in two liquids of known indices of refraction. When the Pyrex is placed in water, which has an index of refraction of 1.33, the glass fragment is visible. When the Pyrex is placed in vegetable oil, which has an index of refraction of 1.47, it

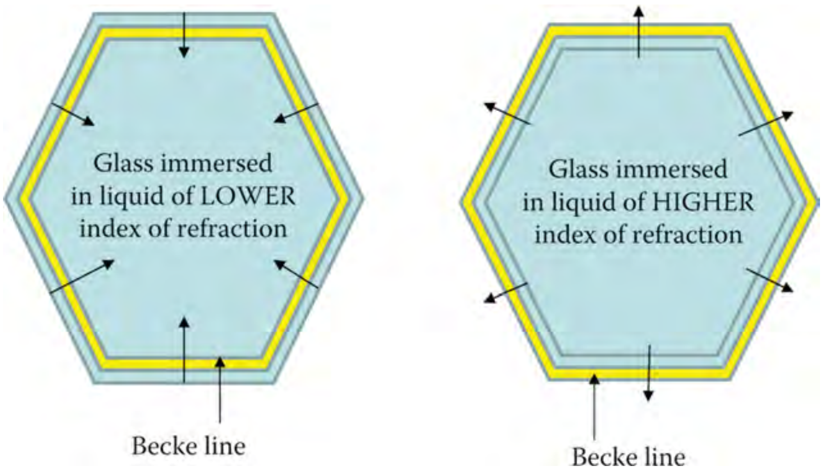

Glass immersed in liquid of LOWER index of refraction
Becke line
Glass immersed in liquid of HIGHER index of refraction
Becke line

Figure 22.13 A diagram of how the Becke line moves as the focus of the microscope is changed. As the stage and objective are moved apart, the Becke line moves toward the medium of higher refractive index. If the glass has a higher refractive index than the liquid, the Becke line would move in toward the glass as the objective lens and stage are moved away from each other.

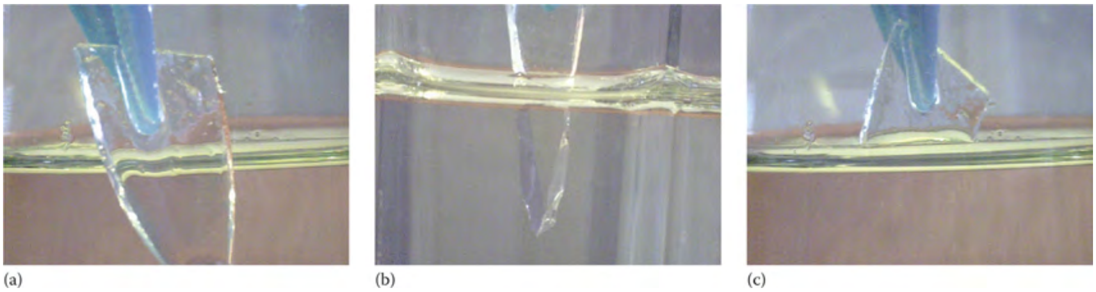


Figure 22.14 (a) Shows a small piece of Pyrex glass not immersed in a liquid. (b) Shows the same piece of glass immersed in water. (c) Shows the piece immersed in vegetable oil. Pyrex and vegetable oil have similar indices of refraction as evidenced by the disappearance of the glass in the oil.

"disappears". This indicates that both the Pyrex glass and vegetable oil have the same refractive index. Figure 22.15a shows a laboratory beaker half filled with oil. Figure 22.15b shows a Pyrex test tube with nothing but air in it immersed in the oil. Figure 22.15c shows the same test tube with a small amount of the vegetable oil added. Notice that it looks like part of the tube has disappeared! Obviously vegetable oil and Pyrex refract light in the same manner.

In a similar fashion, the refractive index of such pieces of glass can be determined using a set of commercially available liquids whose refractive indices are known. Each liquid also has, printed on its label, the amount of refractive index change there is with each rise in temperature of one degree Celsius (1°C). Crime labs also use a *hot stage microscope*. This is a microfurnace that fits on top of the stage of a microscope. It can be heated under controlled conditions. A fragment of glass is immersed in a liquid whose refractive index is slightly higher than the glass and mounted on the hot stage. As the hot stage is heated, the temperature of the liquid and the glass will increase. The refractive index of the liquid will start to decrease. The refractive index of the glass will barely change because it is a solid. At some point, the refractive index of the liquid will drop until it is the same as the glass, and the Becke line will disappear. If the glass is thin enough,

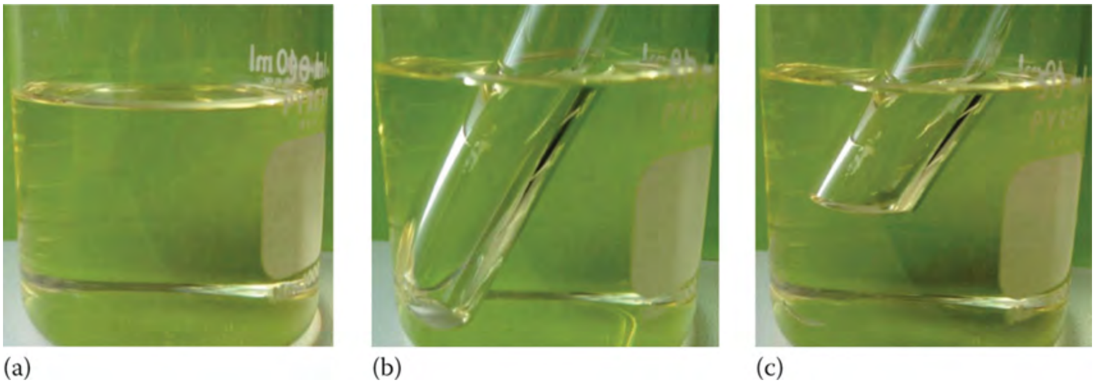


Figure 22.15 The “disappearing” test tube. The Pyrex beaker in (a) is filled with vegetable oil. An empty test tube is placed in the oil in photo (b). The same test tube is partially filled with vegetable oil in photo (c).

it too will disappear. The hot stage monitors the temperature and how much it increases. The increase is noted at the time the Becke line disappears. From the data on the decrease of the refractive index with each degree rise in temperature, the refractive index of the glass can be determined. Figure 22.16 is a microscope with a hot stage mounted on the stage.

The refractive index for known and unknown glass particles can be determined in this way. Some forensic scientists go a step further and use special filters on the microscope that select particular wavelengths of light that are shone on the glass. This way, several refractive indices can be determined. If two pieces of glass are similar, all their refractive indices taken at various wavelengths of light will have to agree. Remember that, even if two pieces of glass have the same physical properties such as refractive index, this is still *class* evidence.

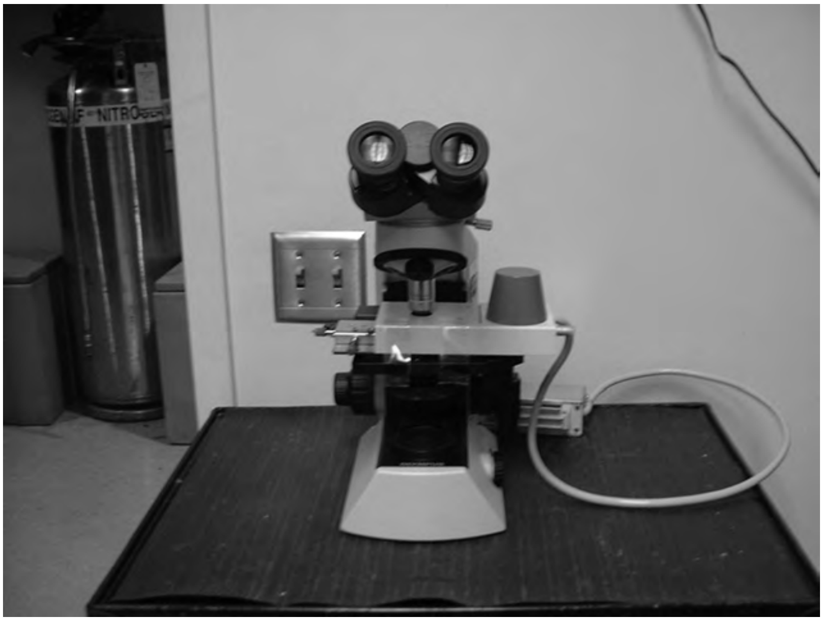


Figure 22.16 A compound microscope with a hot stage mounted on the stage.

Soil

Soil is found almost anywhere outdoors. It is very familiar to most people, who sometimes disparagingly call it "dirt." *Soil* is made up of crushed rocks and minerals mixed with decayed plant and animal material (*humus*). It can range from almost all crushed rock (beach sand) to almost all humus (peat bog). Except where there is water or man-made objects, soil covers the entire surface of the earth. Soil can be difficult to categorize, and it takes a good deal of skill to identify its components. For these reasons, most forensic science laboratories do not analyze soil evidence except to the extent that someone has left a shoeprint or a car has left a tire tread in the soil. This is unfortunate because the presence of soil evidence can tell a good deal about where a person or object has been. A good example of how important soil can be in solving crimes is exemplified in the Coors kidnapping case presented at the beginning of this chapter.

Soil as Forensic Evidence

Soil evidence presents a number of challenges to forensic scientists. These may be the reason why few laboratories take the time to analyze it.

- Soil varies in its chemical and physical properties from place to place, even within the same plot of ground. Studies have shown that soil profiles may differ markedly within a few meters of each other horizontally and vertically.
- There is no forensic classification scheme for soils. This means that there are potentially an infinite number of soil types making it difficult to reach meaningful conclusions about associations among soil samples.
- It takes a good deal of skill to characterize the minerals present in soil. One must be familiar with crystal shapes and with polarizing light microscopy in order to analyze the inorganic fraction of soils.
- Soil is usually considered *class* evidence. There are few unique characteristics in soil that enable individualization.

Color Analysis of Soils

Sometimes, it is possible to characterize soils by their color. The color of a soil is due to its mineral distribution and moisture content. Many minerals have characteristic colors. For example, copper-based minerals are green or blue. Iron minerals tend to be red or brown. In the early 1900s, a professor named Albert Munsell developed a color chart of all the various color hues in soil. The Munsell color chart for soil, an offshoot of the master color chart, is used today by forensic geologists to analyze soil types. Soils can be examined visually for color, or sometimes, the minerals can be dissolved in water. If there are enough colored minerals in the soil, they will impart a tint to the water.

Physical Analysis of Soils

A soil sample's physical attributes can be analyzed microscopically. Equally sized samples of soil can be viewed under magnification, and the percent of humus versus mineral materials can be estimated. The color, size and shape of rock and mineral grains can be compared.

The sample can then be filtered using a sieve, which separates the organic (plant and animal) material from the soil, leaving the inorganic, crushed rock and mineral grains. The density of the sample can be determined using a density gradient, a column of various liquids of differing density. Soil components settle out in liquid layers of similar density, forming a visual column of soil density as seen in Figure 22.17.

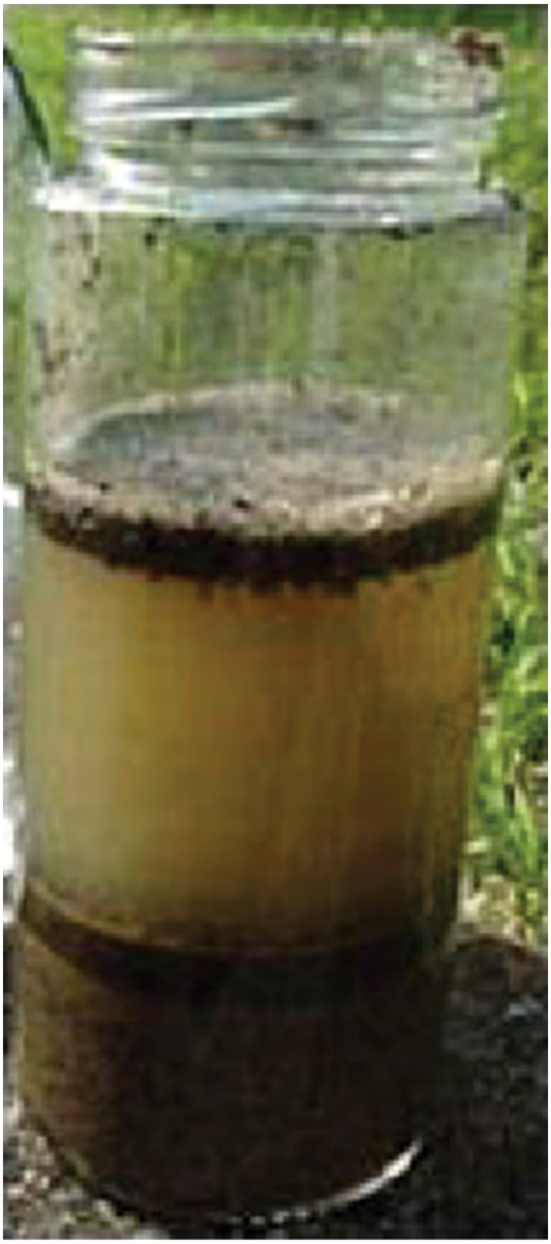


Figure 22.17 Soil density column.

Analysis of Humic Fractions of Soils

Some laboratories use high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) to separate and display some of the common humus components of soils. The soil is extracted with acetonitrile and filtered. The filtrate is analyzed by HPLC. Figure 22.18 shows the liquid chromatogram of a soil sample.

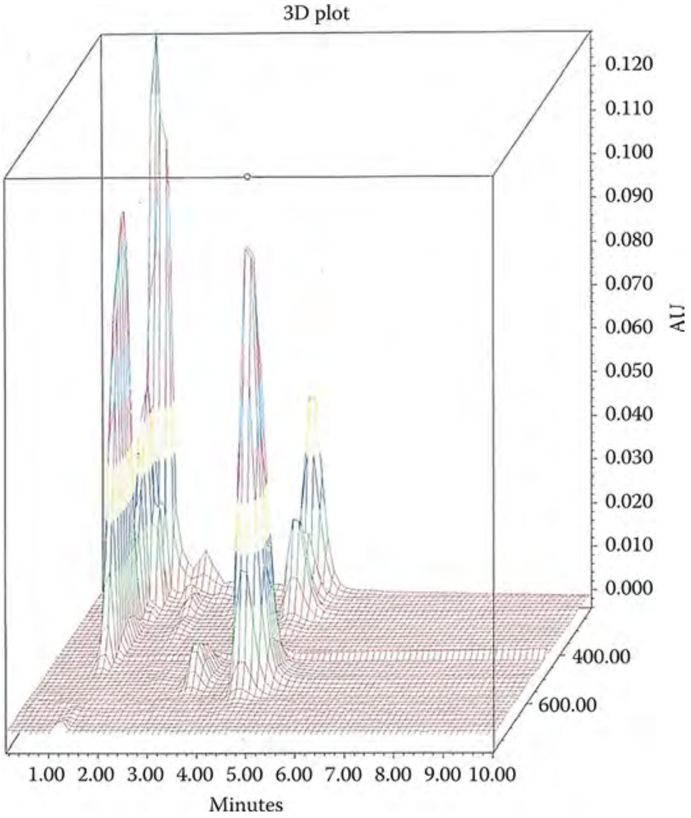


Figure 22.18 A liquid chromatogram of a soil sample. This is a pseudo-3D chromatogram. The ***x***-axis is time in minutes. The ***y***-axis is absorbance of light by the UV detector. The ***z***-axis is the wavelength of light that exposes the soil sample. The wavelength range is 200–800 nm.

Summary

Glass and soil are generally characterized by their physical properties. Glass is an amorphous solid made from pure silicon dioxide (beach sand). It contains various additives that alter its properties to make particular products. Glass is very inert and difficult to dissolve. The major tests performed on glass include color, dimensions and thickness and refractive index.

Direction of force and determination of sequence can be inferred by analyzing the radial and concentric fracture lines, entry and exit holes of projectiles and the conchoidal lines along the broken edges of a piece of glass.

As a transparent material, glass will bend and slow the velocity of light as it passes through the glass. This is called refraction. Different types of glass have different refractive indices. The refractive index of a tiny piece of glass is measured by immersing the glass in a liquid of known refractive index. If the refractive index of the liquid is different than the glass, a bright halo, called the Becke line, will appear around the glass. If the refractive index of the liquid and glass match, the Becke line will disappear. Refractive index varies with temperature and wavelength of light. These properties help in determining the refractive index of glass. Glass can be individualized if there are large enough pieces that can fit together like pieces of a jigsaw puzzle. In such cases, a microscope is used to visualize the stress marks formed when glass breaks.

Soil contains inorganic crushed rocks and minerals and organic decayed plant and animal material called humus. There is no forensic classification system for soils, and soil content can differ markedly among samples taken a few meters from each other vertically and horizontally. This makes it difficult to successfully compare known and unknown soils. The inorganic fraction of soils can be analyzed by identifying the minerals present or by examining the color of the soils. Density of the inorganic portion of the soil can be visualized with a liquid density column. The organic humus fraction can be analyzed by liquid chromatography. Soil evidence is class evidence.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. When the temperature of a liquid is raised,
   a. Its refractive index increases
   b. Its refractive index decreases
   c. Its refractive index disappears
   d. Its refractive index does not change
2. A piece of glass has a refractive index of 1.53 when measured with 400 nm wavelength light. If the same piece of glass is analyzed with 600 nm light, its refractive index
   a. Doubles to 2.06
   b. Increases
   c. Decreases
   d. Stays the same
3. If a beam of light travels through a piece of glass at 90,000 miles/s, the refractive index of the glass is
   a. 0.5
   b. 1.0
   c. 2.0
   d. 90,000
4. Most labs do not analyze soil because
   a. There is no forensic classification system for soils
   b. It is almost never individualizable
   c. Chemical composition of soil samples vary within a few meters of each other
   d. All of these apply
5. Adding boron to molten glass
   a. Makes it more stable to rapid temperature changes
   b. Adds a greenish tint to the glass

   c. Makes the glass much harder
   d. Makes the glass more liquid like so that it flows

True or False

6. Glass is an amorphous solid.
7. The primary chemical compound found in all types of glass is silicon carbonate.
8. The direction of force causing breakage can be determined using concentric lines of force.
9. Density columns use the physical properties of the components of a sample to determine the soil composition.
10. Glass can never be individual evidence, only class evidence.

Short Answer Questions

11. What is the definition of glass?
12. What properties does glass have in common with a liquid? A solid?
13. Define refractive index and refraction?
14. What is a Becke line and what causes it to form?
15. What is soil? What are the two major fractions of soil?

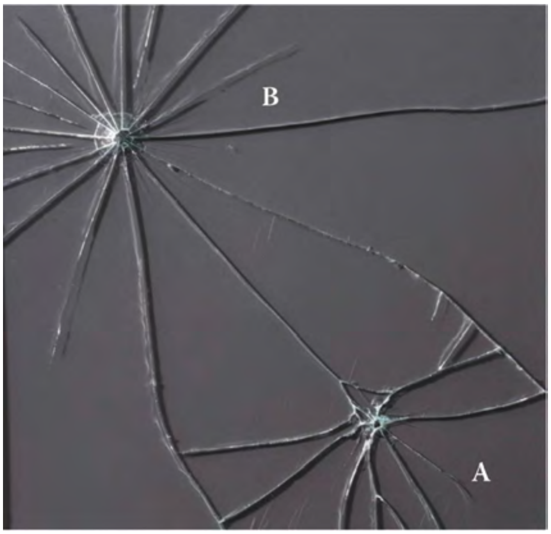
Match the Columns

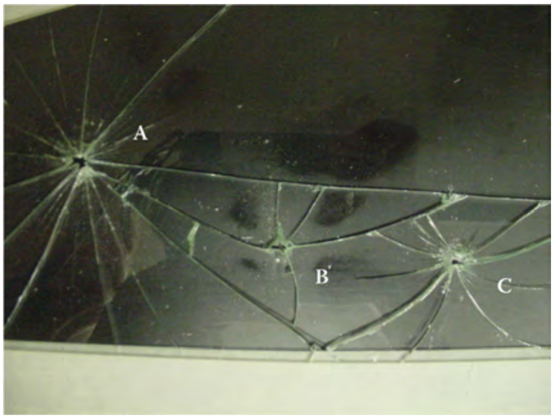
16. Determined by dividing mass by volume	a. Concentric
17. Decayed plant and animal material	b. Conchoidal
18. Lines of fracture that extend outward from point of force	c. Density
19. Lines of fracture that circle the point of force	d. Humus
20. Lines of stress on the side of a fracture that determine force	e. Radial

Problem-Solving

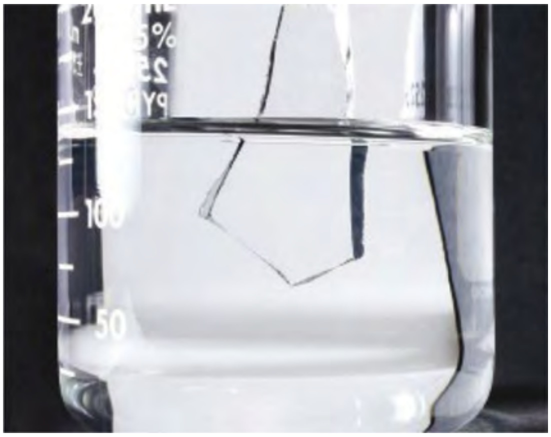
21. A tiny fragment of glass is immersed in a liquid at 25°C on a microscope slide and then mounted in a hot stage furnace, which is placed on a microscope stage. The Becke line is clearly visible and moves toward the liquid as the ocular to objective distance is increased, indicating that the liquid has a higher refractive index than the glass. The label on the bottle of the liquid indicates that the refractive index of the liquid at 25°C is 1.52. The hot stage is heated, and the Becke line disappears when the temperature of the liquid has reached 45°C. The label on the bottle of the liquid indicates that the refractive index of the liquid decreases 0.005 for each degree rise in temperature. From this data, determine the refractive index of the glass.
22. A beam of light passes from air through Plexiglas, which has an index of refraction of 1.43. By what amount does the speed of light change?

23. Light traveling into an aquarium slows to a speed of 2.26×10^8 m/s. Calculate the index of refraction of water.
24. Sequence the impacts for the glass fractures in Photos 1 and 2. Explain your reasoning.





25. Photo A shows a piece of glass in water, index of refraction 1.33, and Photo B shows the same piece of glass in oil, index of refraction 1.47. Explain the results.



Further Reading

Caddy, B. (ed.). (2001). *Forensic Examination of Glass and Paint: Analysis and Interpretation*. Taylor & Francis, London, U.K.

Miller, E. T. (1982). *Forensic glass comparisons, in Forensic Science Handbook*, vol. 1, R. Saferstein, ed. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

On the Web

Glass

http://micro.magnet.fsu.edu/optics/timeline/people/becke.html.
http://www.edinformatics.com/inventions_inventors/glass.htm.
https://archives.fbi.gov/archives/about-us/lab/forensic-science-communications/fsc/april2009/review

Soil Analysis

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Munsell_color_system.
http://soil.gsfc.nasa.gov/index.html.
https://munsell.com/color-blog/color-analysis-forensic-application-crime-scene/
https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/wps/portal/nrcs/detail/soils/edu/?cid=nrcseprd1429417
https://www.crimemuseum.org/crime-library/forensic-investigation/forensic-soil-analysis/
https://sites.google.com/site/apchemprojectforensicchemistry/techniques-and-technology/soil-analysis

Case Studies

Case Study: Case Solved Using Soil Evidence

On February 9, 1960, Adolph Coors III, an heir to the Coors Brewing Company and fortune, is kidnapped and killed on a bridge near his home near Morrison, Colorado, in what was eventually determined to be a botched ransom demand. The kidnapper was Joseph Corbett, who had been working at the Coors brewery so he could stalk Coors and determine his habits. Prior to the kidnapping, Corbett bought a 1951 four-door Mercury car under the name of Walter Osborne. Residents near the sight of the kidnapping saw the car parked there several times before the incident took place. A few days before the kidnapping, Corbett quit his job at the Coors brewery.

On February 9, Coors left his home for the brewery. On the way, he was kidnapped. Residents near the home heard shouting and a crack that sounded like a gun. Later, a witness saw Coors' truck parked with the engine running on a bridge at the kidnapping site. Coors had apparently resisted the kidnapping attempt and was killed at the scene and put in the trunk. Later that day, Corbett mailed a $500,000 ransom note to Coors' wife. The next day, he drove up into the Rocky Mountains near Pikes' Peak and dumped the body in a trash dump near a religious retreat. He then drove to New Jersey. The FBI traced the name Walter Osborne to Corbett and found that he had escaped from prison in Washington State in 1955. They tracked him to Atlantic City, New Jersey, where his car was spotted on fire. Corbett had fled to Canada, where he was captured a few months later.

Even though the truck had been burned, investigators were able to locate soil under the wheel wells. There were four layers in total under each well. From the innermost layer, the soils were as follows:

Fourth contained material from around New Jersey dump where he burned the car.

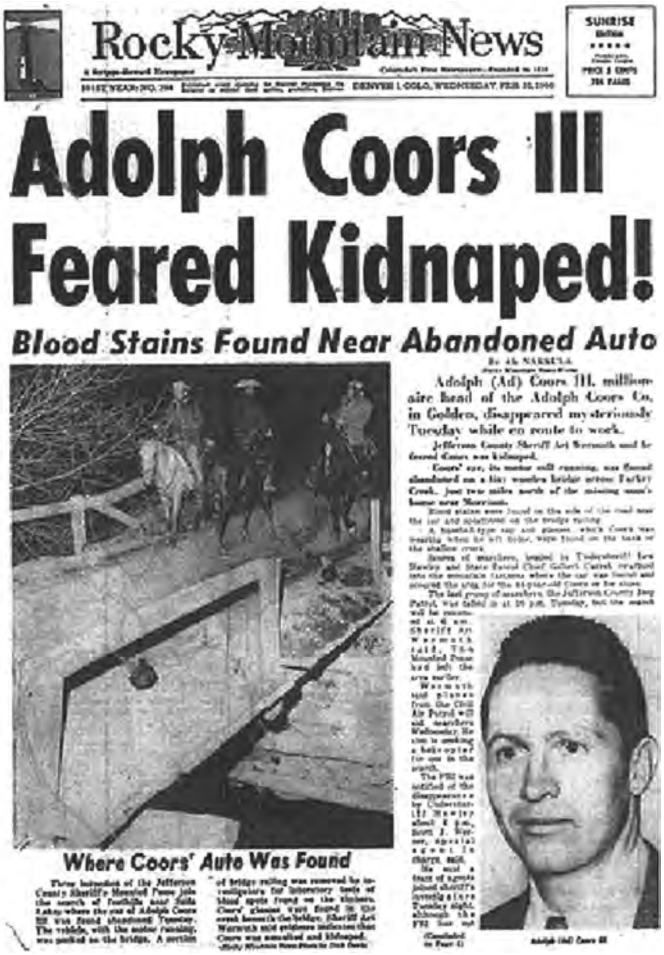
Third contained pink feldspars of Pike's Peak granite—near where the body was found.

Second had materials from Morrison hogback formation—around Coors' ranch.

First had pink feldspars of other Front Range granites—generally related to Rocky Mountain Front Range.

The soils told the story of where the car had been since Corbett purchased it. The innermost layer was soil picked up from his routine trips around his home in Denver and the Coors Brewery. The second indicated that his car was near the Coors Ranch. The third was similar to soil near the burial site and the fourth from the area near where the car was buried. Although soil is not individual evidence, the evidence was clearly convincing that this was the right car.

For more information: https://web.mst.edu/~rogersda/forensic_geology/Geoforensics%20Case%20Histories.htm



Rocky Mountain News

SUNRISE

Adolph Coors III Feared Kidnaped!

Blood Stains Found Near Abandoned Auto

Adolph (Ad) Coors III, millionaire head of the Adolph Coors Co. in Golden, disappeared mysteriously Tuesday while en route to work.

Jefferson County Sheriff Art Wermuth said he feared Coors was kidnaped.

Coors' car, its motor still running, was found abandoned on a tiny wooden bridge across Turkey Creek, just two miles north of the missing man's home near Morrison.

Where Coors' Auto Was Found

Figure 22.19 Newspaper headlines after Coors' disappearance.

Case Study: Case Solved Using Trace Evidence, Automobile Plastic Chip and Glass

Twenty-two-year-old Tracy Tomko left her Akron, Ohio apartment on her normal 6 am jog on August 11, 2000. She did not return. Her body was found later in a wooded area off the road near her apartment complex. She had been hit by a car and her body dragged into the woods and laid in a puddle. It was determined that she drowned in the puddle. The only trace evidence recovered were small pieces of glass and a tiny plastic chip off an automobile. The chip was processed and it was determined that it came from an early 1990's model Ford Tempo. Police began searching for a damaged Ford Tempo.

The search did not take long. A police officer spotted a Ford Tempo with front end damage, missing a small piece of plastic. It was discovered that the driver of the vehicle had taken the car out of state to have the windshield replaced on dates that matched the date of Tracy's hit and run accident. With this evidence, the driver was questioned and he confessed to the hit and run. Thirty-eight-year-old Ralph Blackman, the driver, pleaded guilty to involuntary manslaughter, tampering with evidence and hit-and-run driving. He was sentenced to ten years in prison.

For more information: https://www.news5cleveland.com/news/local-news/oh-summit/this-piece-of-evidence-the-size-of-a-quarter-helped-akron-police-solve-a-2000-murder

23

Fires and Explosions

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define fire and explosion
2. To be able to define and give examples of arson and incendiary fires
3. To be able to define combustion and give examples of combustion reactions
4. To be able to describe how fire and explosion scenes are investigated and what evidence is sought
5. To be able to describe methods for the laboratory analysis of fire and explosion debris

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is a Fire?*
- *Extinguishing a Fire*
- *Incendiary Fires*
- *Investigation of a Fire*
  - *Causes of a Fire*
  - *Point of Origin of a Fire*
  - *Other Evidence at Fire Scenes*
- *Role of Accelerants*
  - *Detection and Collection of Accelerants*
- *Analysis of Fire Scene Evidence*
- *Analysis of Accelerants*
- *Explosions*
  - *Deflagration*
  - *Detonation*
    - *Initiating and Noninitiating High Explosives*
- *Investigation of Bombing Scenes*
  - *Analysis of Evidence from a Bomb Scene*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match Each Term with Its Definition*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *References*
- *On the Web*
- *You Tube Arson Fire Videos*
- *Fire Statistical Sources*
- *Case Study*

Mini Glossary

Accelerant: A fuel that is used to start a fire that wouldn't start on its own or speed up a fire.

Adsorption/elution: A method of recovery of accelerant vapors from fire debris that employs a material that adsorbs the vapors that are then removed (eluted) and concentrated for analysis.

Black powder: A low explosive made from potassium nitrate, sulfur and carbon.

Bomb seat: The point of origin of a bombing.

Combustion: A type of chemical reaction whereby a *fuel* reacts with oxygen to release energy.

Deflagration: A type of explosion whereby the oxygen is physically mixed with the fuel and is in a form where the O is bonded to other atoms that form weaker bonds than in O_2 and thus require less activation energy to break.

Detonation: An instantaneous explosion. It produces escaping gases that travel in excess of the speed of sound.

Dynamite: An explosive containing nitroglycerine that is impregnated in paper and other absorbent materials.

Exothermic: A chemical reaction that gives off heat.

Fire tetrahedron: A diagram that shows the four factors that must be present for a fire to start and maintain. These are fuel, oxygen, activation energy (heat) and combustion (chemical reaction).

Fire trail: This is when an accelerant is poured on a floor from room to room and then it is ignited. This is an efficient way to carry a fire from one place to another inside a building.

Griess test: A chemical test used in the analysis of explosive. It gives a positive reaction to all substances that contain nitrate or nitrite.

Headspace: The airspace above a closed container that contains debris from a fire.

Hydrocarbon: A substance made up of hydrogen and carbon atoms. Many are fuels used to accelerate fires.

Incendiary fire: A fire started deliberately with the intention of committing or hiding a crime.

Initiating (primary) explosive: A high explosive that is sensitive to detonation.

Low explosive: Explosions that produce escaping gases of velocities less than the speed of sound.

Molotov cocktail: A bottle or other breakable container that is filled with an accelerant such as gasoline. Then, a wick is inserted in the top. This is usually a length of rag. The wick is ignited and the bottle is thrown into the building or other place where the arsonist wants to start the fire.

Noninitiating (secondary) explosive: Explosives that require a booster charge.

Plastique: An explosive that is impregnated with a claylike material so it can be shaped.

Point of origin: The location where the fire started.

Solid-phase microextraction (SPME): A method of adsorption–elution where the adsorbing medium is a small, coated needle.

Spalling: Blistering of concrete by exposure to extreme heat.

Acronyms

Δ	The Greek letter "delta" that stands for heat or energy
ANFO	Ammonium nitrate and fuel oil
PETN	Pentaerythritol tetranitrate
TNT	Trinitrotoluene

Introduction

On November 28, 1942, one of the most destructive fires in the U.S. history occurred at the Cocoanut Grove Night Club in Boston. The club was supposed to have a capacity of 500 people but, on that night, had more than 1000. The club was formerly a speakeasy (an illegal bar that operated during Prohibition) during the 1920s. Some of the entrances and exits had been boarded up since then. The only working entrance was a revolving door in the front. The club also had flammable decorations such as cloth curtains and palm trees throughout. The refrigeration system used methyl chloride as the refrigerant. Methyl chloride is very flammable. It was a substitute for Freon, which was in short supply owing to World War II.

Fire scene investigators traced the point of origin of the fire to the Melody lounge in the basement. A lightbulb had burned out and a busboy was using a match for light while he changed the bulb. He apparently dropped the match. Within five minutes the entire lounge was engulfed in flame. Many people tried to escape through a stairway to the main floor but the door at the top was locked. Several people died in the stairwell from asphyxiation. The fire spread quickly to the main floor and engulfed it within another five minutes. Many people were trapped in the revolving door. Others were trampled to death and some died at their tables of asphyxiation from poisonous fumes. As a result of the fire, 490 people died and the owner was convicted of involuntary manslaughter and sentenced to 3½ years in prison.

This fire turned to be set by accident but the conditions in the night club were such that it should have been foreseen that any fire, deliberate or not, had the potential to kill and injure many people. Even as far back as 1942, there were fire codes in place that, had they been enforced, could have prevented many deaths. Surely you can name a number of issues in this situation that caused the damage and loss of life. Many destructive fires occur by accidental causes and some by natural causes, such as lightning strikes. Still other fires are deliberate. There are two types of deliberate fires. The first does not involve any criminal activity or an attempt to cover a crime. In some communities, it is permissible to burn leaves or trash or other debris on one's own property although a license may be necessary. In other cases, however, a fire is set with the intent to commit a crime or cover up another crime. Such fires are called "incendiary", and the crime is "arson". For example, someone may burn down a failing business in an attempt to collect fire insurance money. In other cases, a murderer may burn a house where he has killed the owner in the hopes of destroying the body and any incriminating evidence. In still other cases, an accountant may destroy documents in a fire to hide evidence of embezzlement. As we will see later, the determination of whether a fire was incendiary may boil down to eliminating the other causes: natural or accidental.

What Is a Fire?

Fire is the evolution of energy in the form of light and heat and smoke as the result of *combustion*. Combustion is a type of chemical reaction whereby a *fuel* reacts with oxygen to release energy. Reactions that give off energy are termed "exothermic". When a fuel substance reacts with oxygen, the reaction is always exothermic. Equation 23.1 is the simplest combustion reaction. It is the reaction of natural gas (methane) with oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water and heat energy. This is the reaction that heats homes or stoves that use natural gas.

$$\underset{\text{methane}}{CH_4} + \underset{\text{oxygen}}{O_2} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \underset{\text{carbon dioxide}}{CO_2} + \underset{\text{water}}{2H_2O} + \Delta \tag{23.1}$$

The symbol Δ (the Greek letter delta) is the symbol used for heat energy in chemistry and physics. Notice that the Δ also appears over the reaction arrow. In chemistry, a symbol put over the reaction arrow means "in the presence of". This means that heat is being put into the reaction. This heat is called the "activation energy". In order to get methane and oxygen to react, it is necessary to break up the oxygen molecule as shown in Equation 23.2. As long as the energy produced by the reaction is greater than the activation energy, the overall reaction is exothermic.

$$O_2 \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2O \tag{23.2}$$

The atomic oxygen now reacts with the methane in the combustion. The amount of activation energy needed to get the reaction started is very little compared to the energy that is emitted by the reaction. The activation energy can be in the form of a spark or small flame. Exothermic reactions like methane and oxygen produce energy because the energy stored in C–H bonds is greater than that in C–O or O–H bonds. The excess energy is given off in the form of heat and flame and smoke.

Gasoline is a petroleum distillate that contains more than 300 substances. Most of them are *hydrocarbons*, which are substances made up of carbon and hydrogen. Methane is also a hydrocarbon. These are all potent fuels that will combust with oxygen. A very common combustion reaction takes place inside of the internal combustion engine. Here, gasoline is compressed into a small space and ignited with a spark plug. This provides the activation energy for the reaction. The gasoline combusts in the air present in the engine cylinders and the energy produced causes the pistons to move and propel the car. One of the compounds in gasoline is *octane*, C_8H_{18}. It combusts with oxygen as shown in Equation 23.3. The activation energy needed for this reaction serves two purposes. It breaks the oxygen molecule up into oxygen atoms (Equation 23.2) and it vaporizes the octane, which is a liquid at room temperature. In general, fuels must be in the vapor phase for them to undergo combustion. Activation energy is partly used to convert liquid and solid fuels to vapor.

$$2C_8H_{18} + 25O_2 \xrightarrow{\Delta} 16CO_2 + 18H_2O + \Delta \tag{23.3}$$

Note: This equation is balanced. All chemical equations must have the same number of each type of atom on both sides of the equation.

There are many more bonds in this reaction than in the one involving methane, so there is much more energy given off by the combustion of octane. This reaction, along with many others in gasoline, can be put to work inside an internal combustion engine in a car. There are many other substances that can act as fuels in combustion reactions. Wood, plastic, natural and synthetic fibers and fabrics, carpeting, tile, drywall and most building materials will undergo combustion as long as there is sufficient activation energy available to vaporize the fuel. Once sufficient activation energy is available and the combustion reaction gets going, it will produce enough energy to provide additional activation energy to vaporize more fuel so that the reaction can continue. The reaction will continue perpetually until the fuel or the oxygen is spent or the temperature falls below what is needed to continue to vaporize the fuel.

Extinguishing a Fire

Fire experts use the concept of the *fire tetrahedron* when describing the materials and conditions needed to sustain a fire. Figure 23.1 shows a diagram of a fire tetrahedron. At each apex of the tetrahedron is one of the elements that must be present for a fire to be sustained: fuel + oxygen + activation energy (heat) + combustion (chemical reaction).

All four of these elements must be present to have a fire. If any one of them is removed, the fire goes out. Fire extinguishers are based on this principle. They remove one or more of the elements of a fire. For example, water makes a good fire extinguisher for some fires. It cools the fire off so that there is insufficient activation energy to split oxygen molecules and/or vaporize the fuel. Fire blankets smother a fire by preventing oxygen from getting to the fuel. Foam extinguishers work like the blanket in that they prevent oxygen from reaching the fire (see Figure 23.2 for a picture of a foam extinguisher). Carbon dioxide extinguishers blow out the fire like blowing out a candle. The carbon dioxide is sprayed at the fire under pressure and it blows away the oxygen. Carbon dioxide will not support combustion so the fire goes out.

Something for You to Do

Go to various buildings such as your school, a department store and a gas station and ask if there are any fire extinguishers. If so, look at the labels on them. The label will usually indicate what types of fires that the extinguisher is designed to put out. Particular types of extinguishers are designed for different types of fires. You can also see a variety of fire extinguishers at building supply stores. Fire extinguishers do not contain water since this is available at most homes and businesses in large quantities. Besides, water is not a good extinguisher for certain types of fires such as electrical or grease (why?).

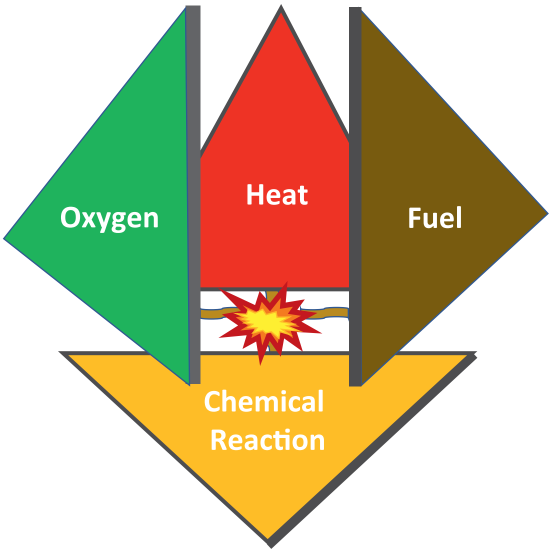


Figure 23.1 The fire tetrahedron. Courtesy of Forensic Science Educational Consulting, LLC.

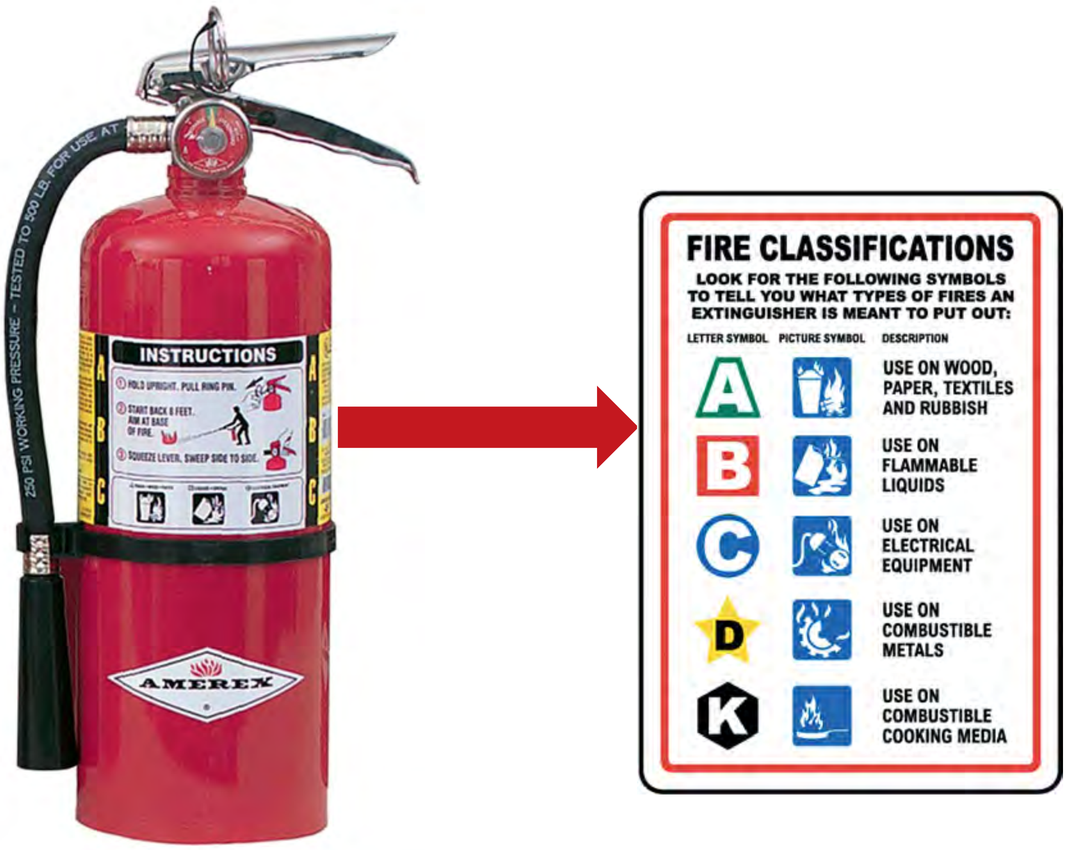

250 PSI WORKING PRESSURE – TESTED TO 500 LB. FOR USE AT
INSTRUCTIONS
1 HOLD UPRIGHT. PULL RING PIN.
2 START BACK 8 FEET. AIM AT BASE OF FIRE.
3 SQUEEZE LEVER, SWEEP SIDE TO SIDE.
A
B
C
AMEREX
FIRE CLASSIFICATIONS
LOOK FOR THE FOLLOWING SYMBOLS TO TELL YOU WHAT TYPES OF FIRES AN EXTINGUISHER IS MEANT TO PUT OUT:
LETTER SYMBOL
PICTURE SYMBOL
DESCRIPTION
A
USE ON WOOD, PAPER, TEXTILES AND RUBBISH
B
USE ON FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS
C
USE ON ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT
D
USE ON COMBUSTIBLE METALS
K
USE ON COMBUSTIBLE COOKING MEDIA

Figure 23.2 A chemical fire extinguisher. Different extinguishers are rated for different types of fires and are clearly marked with a lettering and symbol system as to which types of fires they are suitable.

Incendiary Fires

Fire experts and the legal system use two closely related terms to describe fires that are deliberately set. The term "incendiary fire" means a fire that is willfully and intentionally set. The National Fire Protection Association recently has changed from using the term "incendiary" to "intentionally", but *incendiary* is still widely used. When an incendiary fire is set in order to commit a crime or destroy evidence from a previous crime, the crime of *arson* has been committed. Arson is one of the most serious and costly crimes in the United States. Statistics from the National Fire Protection Association for 16 years ending in 2018 and the costs of these fires are shown in Table 23.1.

This table shows that the number of incendiary fires, deaths and dollar loss for structure fires only. Other intentionally set fires can occur in vehicles or outside (in "controlled burns").

In 2009, the Federal Emergency Management Agency published the results of a research study on arson. A summary of their finding included the following:

- Intentionally set fires account for 13 percent of all fires responded to by departments.

- Fifty seven percent of arson fires occur outdoors, while 22% occur in buildings and approximately 15 % occur in vehicles.
- Most arsons occur in March and April with another peak in July.
- Matches are the leading heat source for incendiary fires.

There are a number of ways to start an incendiary fire. One could use a match or a lighter or a blow torch to get something burning and then just leave the premises. This may not be as easy as it sounds. Have you ever tried to start a fire in a fireplace by lighting a large log with a match? It usually doesn't work. You have to light small twigs or pieces of paper with the match and then gradually add larger pieces of wood until there is enough energy being put out by the fire to provide enough energy to vaporize parts of large pieces of wood. Generally, arsonists do not want to be at a fire scene any longer than necessary for fear of being seen. They want to start the fire as fast as possible and get out. In many cases, fires can be started remotely using a time delay to supply the activation energy. Figure 23.3 shows how matches can delay the start an incendiary fire.

For a moment, try and think of what an arsonist would want to accomplish if he or she were going to deliberately start a fire without being present when the fire started and without being caught. First, they would want to delay the start of the fire until they are out of the vicinity. Second, if complete destruction of the building is the goal, then fires need to be started in several places at once or there must be a method of causing the fire to spread rapidly. There must also be a continual source of air in the premises or the fire will extinguish after the oxygen

TABLE 23.1
Arson Fire Statistics

Year	Fires	Deaths	Direct Dollar Loss in Millions
2002	52,300	330	$908
2003	53,000	440	$860
2004	49,600	310	$818
2005	55,500	430	$915
2006	55,100	330	$991
2007	54,700	420	$1,027
2008	53,600	400	$1,263
2009	50,400	350	$1,148
2010	46,300	330	$1,001
2011	48,800	340	$797
2012	53,500	460	$981
2013	51,000	450	$805
2014	49,100	330	$724
2015*	23,000	205	$460
2016*	20,000	310	$473
2017*	22,500	280	$582
2018*	25,500	350	$593

Source: National Fire Protection Association Intentional Fires Research Report 2017, https://www.nfpa.org//-/media/Files/News-and-Research/Fire-statistics-and-reports/US-Fire-Problem/Fire-causes/osintentional.pdf.

* *Note:* 2014-2018 data are estimates from annual NFPA Reports and not part of the Research Report.

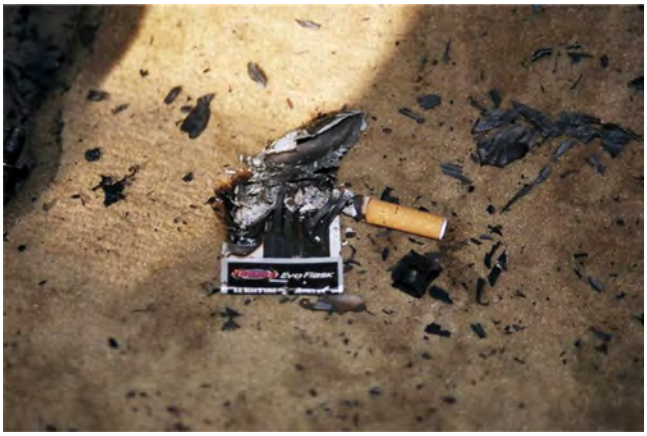


Figure 23.3 A fire was started in the carpeting in a car using a smoldering cigarette and a book of matches.

present at the time of the fire is consumed. It is difficult to start a fire in several places in a building all at once remotely so arsonists often use *accelerants* to spread a fire rapidly throughout. An accelerant is a fuel that is used to start a fire that otherwise couldn't be easily started or to make a fire burn faster. Accelerants are generally liquids that require low activation energy so they can be readily combusted. They undergo highly exothermic reactions so there is plenty of energy around to keep the fire going and to involve materials that are harder to burn. Accelerants can generally be obtained without calling attention to the purchaser. This is why gasoline, charcoal lighters, paint thinners and other similar consumer products are widely used as accelerants. Gasoline is the accelerant of choice in more than half of all arson fires. Unfortunately for the arsonist and fortunately for forensic scientists, even burned accelerants leave residues behind that can be detected and identified as to type. In most cases, a forensic chemist can determine if an accelerant was used in a fire and if so, whether it was gasoline or some other type of product. If this evidence is located and collected by the fire scene investigator, a forensic chemist can usually determine what type of product (e.g., gasoline, kerosene) it is, but cannot determine if the accelerant came from a particular source such as a container found in the suspect's garage.

Investigation of a Fire

Trained fire scene investigators normally carry out investigation of fires. Most of these people are trained first as firefighters and come to fire scene investigation from a career as a firefighter. Some have college degrees. A few universities and community colleges offer classes and even degrees in fire science where students learn about the chemistry of fire and how fires start and spread, how they are suppressed and how to investigate a fire and properly collect and preserve evidence. It is the responsibility of the fire scene investigator to determine the cause of the fire. This is done by a physical inspection of the fire scene, discussion with the firefighters and witnesses, support of the forensic science laboratory in the analysis of fire residues and perhaps even the use of dogs that are specially trained to detect common accelerants. This process is made more difficult by what happens

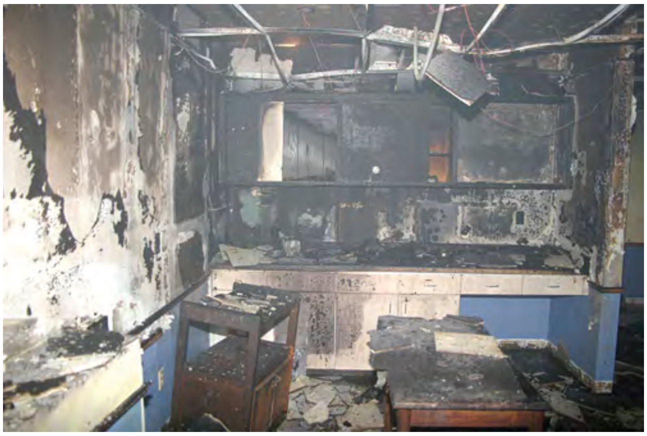


Figure 23.4 A fire in a kitchen. Note the ***V*** pattern of burning on the wall on the left side. Courtesy of James Novak.

to the structure when a fire occurs and when the fire department responds to the fire. When a fire is discovered, the fire department will respond as quickly as possible. They have two major duties at a fire scene. The first is to remove everyone who may be trapped in the fire and the second is to extinguish the fire. The latter is normally accomplished with thousands of gallons of water. After the fire is put out, the electricity and gas are turned off if the fire didn't already knock them out. After the fire is out and the firefighters have left, the fire scene investigator takes over. Fire scene investigation can be very difficult. As aforementioned, there may be no light or heat or air conditioning. Everything will be very wet. The fire may have weakened the structure of the building and walking through it can be hazardous. There may be hazardous chemical fumes or residues present that were formed from burning materials. Figure 23.4 shows an indoor kitchen fire started by a defective coffee maker.

If a fire in a multistory building is severe enough, the upper floors may collapse on top of the lower floors. If the point of origin is on a lower floor, it may be buried in tons of material from upper floors. Heavy moving equipment may be needed to remove the debris layer by layer. This must be done carefully as important evidence may be found in any of the layers.

Causes of a Fire

From the standpoint of the fire scene investigator, there are three causes of fires:

- *Natural*: This could be a fire that is started by a lightning strike.
- *Accidental*: Someone accidentally drops a match in bed or an electrical circuit becomes overloaded.
- *Deliberate*: Arson.

There are two ways that a fire scene investigator determines that a fire is arson. The first is to have compelling evidence at the scene. This could be the presence of a fire setting device such as a *Molotov cocktail*, a bottle or other breakable container that is filled with an accelerant such as gasoline. Then, a wick is inserted in the top. This is usually a length of rag. The wick is ignited and the bottle is thrown into the building or other place where the arsonist wants to start the fire. The Molotov cocktail contains three of the legs of the fire tetrahedron: activation energy, fuel and heat. A picture of a Molotov cocktail can be found in Figure 22.2 in Chapter 22 on Glass and Soil. Another piece of evidence that strongly suggests arson is a *fire trail*. This is when an accelerant is poured on a floor from room to room and then it is ignited. This is an efficient way to carry a fire from one place to another inside a building.

The other way that a fire scene investigator determines that a fire is arson is to eliminate all possible natural or accidental causes of the fire. If this is done then, the only type that is left is arson. Eliminating accidental causes of a fire can be difficult. Suppose, for example, that a furnace explodes during the course of a fire. This could have happened because it was rigged to explode and actually caused the fire or it could have gotten involved in a fire that started elsewhere in the building or it could have accidentally malfunctioned and caused the fire. Often, a fire scene investigator will call in a heating contractor to examine the remains of the furnace to try and determine what happened. Other appliances such as water heaters, dryers, toasters and ovens may also be involved in fires or cause them. Electrical system overloads can also be hard to interpret. It is possible to create an electrical overload that causes overheating of wires and can cause a fire. Many fires are caused by accidental electrical overload, especially in older buildings.

Point of Origin of a Fire

By far, the most important piece of information that a fire scene investigator needs to determine the cause of a fire is the *point of origin*. This is the location where the fire started. If an accelerant was used to start a fire, its residue will be most likely found at the point of origin. If an appliance malfunction caused the fire, the point of origin will be near the appliance. In a multistory building, arson fires are generally started on the first floor so the arsonist can escape easily without getting trapped in the fire. As mentioned earlier, this means that locating the point of origin may mean moving tons of material that could have collapsed on it. The point of origin is generally where the most extensive burning takes place and where it often gets the hottest. Some of the characteristics that fire scene investigators look for in searching for the point of origin include V-patterns of burning, spalling (blistering) of concrete, the beginning of a fire trail, the presence of accelerants and the apparent gathering or piling up of fuel materials.

It was mentioned before that arson fires are often characterized by fire trails and the presence of accelerants. Another clue that a fire may be arson is the presence of multiple points of origin. If an arsonist wants to make sure that an entire building becomes involved in the fire, then he will start fires at multiple points in the building. This can also be accomplished by the use of a fire trail. Here, an accelerant is poured in a trail from room to room. Then, the accelerant can be ignited at one point and the ensuing fire will travel along the trail. The result is that it appears as if multiple fires were started in each room. If the burning is not too severe, the fire scene investigator can see remnants of the fire trail. Figure 23.5 shows a fire trail.

Other Evidence at Fire Scenes

In their zeal to find the point of origin of a fire and determine its cause, fire scene investigators sometimes overlook other important evidence. Even though fires normally destroy much of the trace evidence that is found at other types of crime scenes, sometimes, the fire doesn’t reach some of the evidence. Fingerprints, hairs

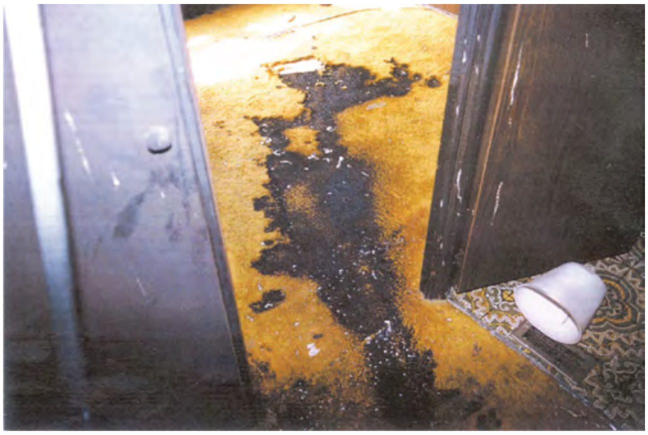


Figure 23.5 A fire trail in a mobile home. Courtesy of Charles Hughes.

and fibers, shoeprints, blood and documents can survive a fire under the right circumstances. These should not be overlooked. It is normally not difficult to determine if a fire is arson but it can be very hard to determine who did it. Trace and other evidence can be crucial in making this determination.

Role of Accelerants

The presence of residues from a fuel such as gasoline can be strongly indicative of an arson fire. It should be kept in mind, however, that finding such residues doesn't necessarily mean that the fire was deliberate. Many people keep cans or bottles of gasoline, charcoal lighter, paint thinner or other accelerants in their homes or businesses. Any fire could reach these stored liquids and they could easily become involved in the fire. It can sometimes be difficult to determine if these accelerants were used to start the fire or were innocently involved. Accelerants can also greatly increase the damage of a fire because they give off so much heat. Such increased damage can destroy evidence that would otherwise have survived the fire. An example of this was a fire aboard an aircraft carrier that was docked at the Norfolk, Virginia Navy Yard. The damage to some of the rooms below decks on the ship was horrific because the heat from the fire ruptured overhead lines that carried hydraulic fluid used in the elevators that moved the planes up to the flight deck. This hydraulic fluid emitted copious amounts of heat energy when it burned resulting in a great deal of damage. Metal beams that might otherwise have been weakened, deformed or twisted, actually melted and collapsed.

Detection and Collection of Accelerants

Fire scene investigators are well trained to spot signs that accelerants were used in a fire. Evidence includes extreme heat and damage, sooty V-pattern burning and fire trails. There are hydrocarbon *sniffer* instruments that can detect the presence of small quantities of common accelerants. In recent years, live sniffers—the so-called arson dogs—have become popular among fire scene investigators. These dogs are specially trained to detect minute quantities of common accelerants.

Some materials are better than others for trapping and holding accelerants. The best materials are those that can easily absorb liquids. These include bedding, furniture with cushions, carpeting, clothing and soil. Substances like tile, wood, wall board and other building materials do not absorb and trap liquids very well and are less suitable candidates for containing accelerant residues. The more absorbent a material is, the better it is for holding accelerants. If some of the accelerant can get into the material, it may be protected from the fire and some unburned liquid may be trapped. This is the best evidence for analysis by forensic chemists. Once evidence of an accelerant has been located, then the debris must be collected and packaged for delivery to the crime laboratory. Since accelerants are volatile and evaporate easily, they must be packaged in airtight containers. Forensic chemists strongly recommend employing unused paint cans for packaging fire scene evidence. They can be made airtight but at the same time, the top can be easily removed in case access to the debris is needed. They come in various sizes up to five gallons to accommodate various amounts of evidence. Some fire scene investigators use empty glass jars with screw caps. These are not as useful as paint cans because they are breakable and because they can crack or break if subjected to heat, which is sometimes used in the analysis of fire residues. If there are large pieces of fire debris, they can be packaged in plastic bags, but only the type that doesn't breathe (can be made airtight). Care must be taken to seal these bags tightly. From the analytical standpoint, it is better to use several paint cans than one large plastic bag because large bags are difficult to manipulate in the laboratory.

Analysis of Fire Scene Evidence

The biggest challenge facing forensic chemists in the analysis of fire scene evidence is separating and concentrating the accelerant residues from the fire debris. This can be a real challenge because of the amount of debris present (sometimes too much, sometimes too little), the way it is packaged and the nature and concentration of the accelerant. Over the years, there have been a number of ways of separating and concentrating accelerant residues. The methods used today are designed so that once the concentration step has been accomplished, the identification of the accelerant type can be performed by gas chromatography (GC). This method is practically universal in crime laboratories. The concentration methods that are commonly used today are described here:

- *Passive headspace*: This is the most popular method of concentration of accelerant residues. This method is shown in Figure 23.6. The container is airtight. It is gently heated so that some of the accelerant will evaporate into the air space above the debris (*headspace*). Eventually, the amount of accelerant in the headspace will be in equilibrium with the amount in the debris. The higher the temperature, the more accelerant will be in the headspace. The container can only be heated a small amount because heating raises the pressure in the can and it could rupture. This is also why glass containers shouldn't be used. After the container is heated, the headspace can be sampled with a gastight syringe that can then be used to introduce the headspace vapor directly into a gas chromatograph.

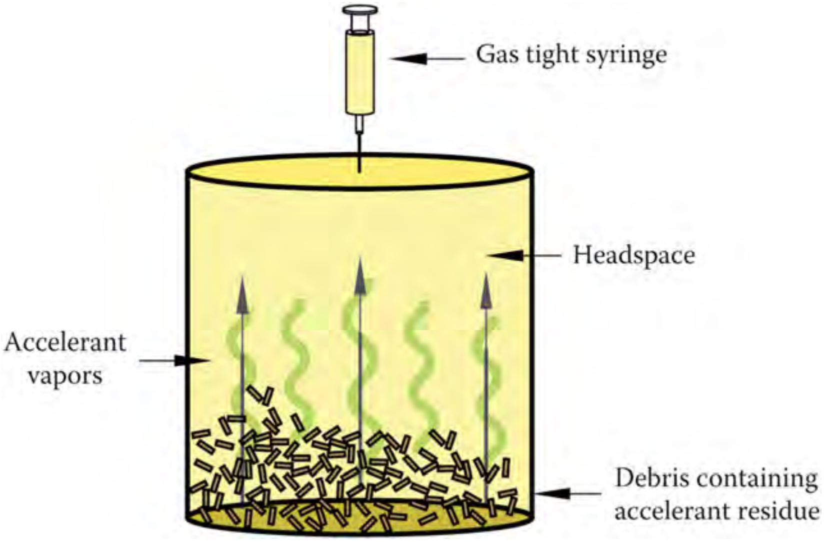


Figure 23.6 Diagram showing how the headspace in a sealed container of fire debris is sampled with a gastight syringe. The container is usually heated to drive more of the fire residue into the vapor phase. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

- *Adsorption/elution*: This is a modification of the passive headspace method. Two small holes are punched in the top of the can and a tube containing *activated charcoal* (fine carbon powder) is put in each hole. A vacuum pump is then connected to one of the tubes. When the vacuum is turned on, it pulls the air out of the headspace of the can. The air is pulled through one of the tubes containing the charcoal. Instead of a vacuum, the accelerant can be removed by pumping an inert gas such as nitrogen through one of the tubes. This pushes the accelerant vapors out of the other tube. The charcoal traps the accelerant vapors. This apparatus can be seen in Figure 23.7. As the headspace becomes evacuated, air rushes in from the outside through the other tube. More of the accelerant will evaporate from the fire debris into the headspace to reestablish the equilibrium. But this air is continuously being pulled out of the can by the vacuum pump, and more air continually rushes in through the other tube. Eventually, practically all of the accelerant will be trapped (adsorbed) onto the charcoal. Then, the charcoal tubes are removed and a small amount of solvent is poured through the charcoal. This dissolves the accelerant and *elutes it* off the charcoal. The dissolved accelerant can then be injected into a gas chromatograph for analysis (Figure 23.9).
- *Solid-phase microextraction* (*SPME*): SPME is the newest technique in accelerant concentration. It takes advantage of the sensitivity of today's modern GC/MS instruments that require only a few micrograms of analyte. The SPME apparatus consists of a syringe whose needle is coated with charcoal or another polymer that is efficient at adsorbing accelerant molecules. The needle is inserted into the headspace in a container of fire residue. The residue is heated and the accelerant will adsorb onto the surface of the coated needle. After about 30 min, the needle is withdrawn and inserted directly into a gas chromatograph. The heat from the GC will elute the accelerant off the coating on the needle. SPME analysis removes the need for the concentrated accelerant to be eluted from whatever substrate it has been collected on.

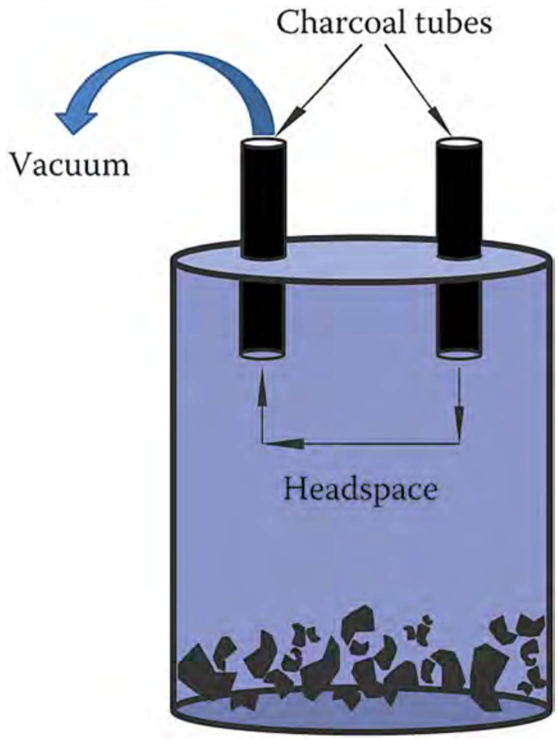


Figure 23.7 Absorption elution method of concentrating fire residue. The debris is heated, driving more of the residue into the vapor phase. A vacuum is drawn on the container that pulls the headspace vapors out, trapping them in the charcoal strip. Air rushes in through the other tube.

- *Solvent extraction*: Solvent extraction is used to be a popular method of accelerant concentration. It is performed by opening the can of fire residue and adding a suitable solvent, usually pentane (C_5H_{12}) or a similar solvent and mixing well. Then, the mixture is filtered and the solvent evaporated to a small volume and injected into a gas chromatograph. The main drawback of solvent extraction is that many materials found in a home or business contain substances made from petroleum that will dissolve in the solvent and interfere with the GC used to analyze the accelerant.

Something for You to Do

Why are there two holes in the top of the can? Why not simply put one hole in the can and insert a charcoal tube and then apply a vacuum to that tube? If you can figure out why there must be two holes in the can, then why is there a charcoal tube in each hole? If you cannot figure it out, then see the following hint (Figure 23.8):

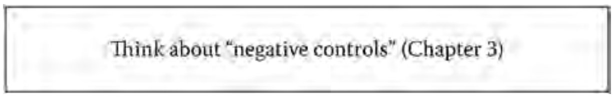

Think about "negative controls" (Chapter 3)

Figure 23.8 Answer to quiz question.

Analysis of Accelerants

As aforementioned, the universal method for the analysis of accelerant residues is by GC, usually coupled to a mass spectrometer. The most common accelerants are gasoline and other consumer products such as charcoal lighter, paint thinners and lamp oils. Fuels used in camping lanterns and stoves are also popular accelerants. Each of these products contains many components. Gasoline has more than 300 substances. The purpose of GC is not to identify each component, but to display the pattern of peaks obtained from a sample of fire debris. Figure 23.9 is a gas chromatogram of gasoline and Figure 23.10 is a gas chromatogram of charcoal lighter made from kerosene.

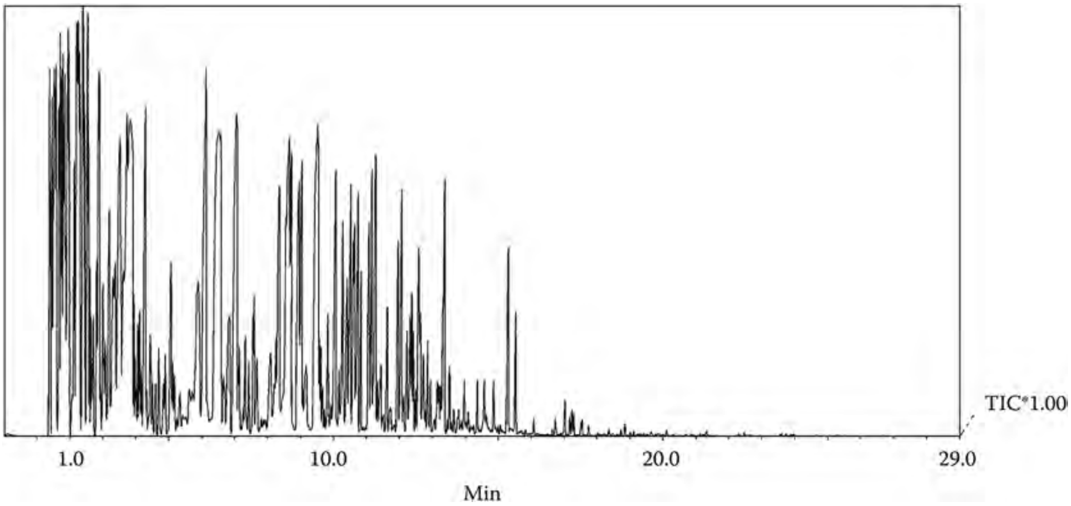


Figure 23.9 Capillary gas chromatogram of neat gasoline. There are more than 300 substances in gasoline. Most of them are displayed as discreet peaks.

Interpretation of gas chromatograms of accelerants can be difficult. The chromatograms of gasoline and kerosene shown in Figures 23.9 and 23.10 are obtained from pristine materials, right out of the can. Accelerants that have been subjected to the heat from a fire undergo physical and chemical changes that will affect their chromatograms. Some of the components of all accelerants are volatile and will evaporate if exposed to heat. In the chromatograms in the figures, the most volatile substances are shown first (on the left). If they have evaporated, their peaks will be reduced and the chromatograms will be distorted. In extreme cases, an accelerant will evaporate or combust significantly and the associated chromatogram will look very different than the ones in Figures 23.9 and 23.10. Forensic chemists who analyze fire residues will prepare chromatographic libraries of common accelerants that have undergone various amounts of degradation due to partial combustion and/or evaporation. These can be used to compare against casework samples from a fire.

On the basis of the laboratory analysis of fire residues, a forensic chemist can reasonably conclude that accelerant residues are present in fire debris. If there is enough present, the chemist may be able to determine the type of product it is. One must be careful here. There are a number of commercial products made from the same material. For example, kerosene is used not only as a fuel itself for

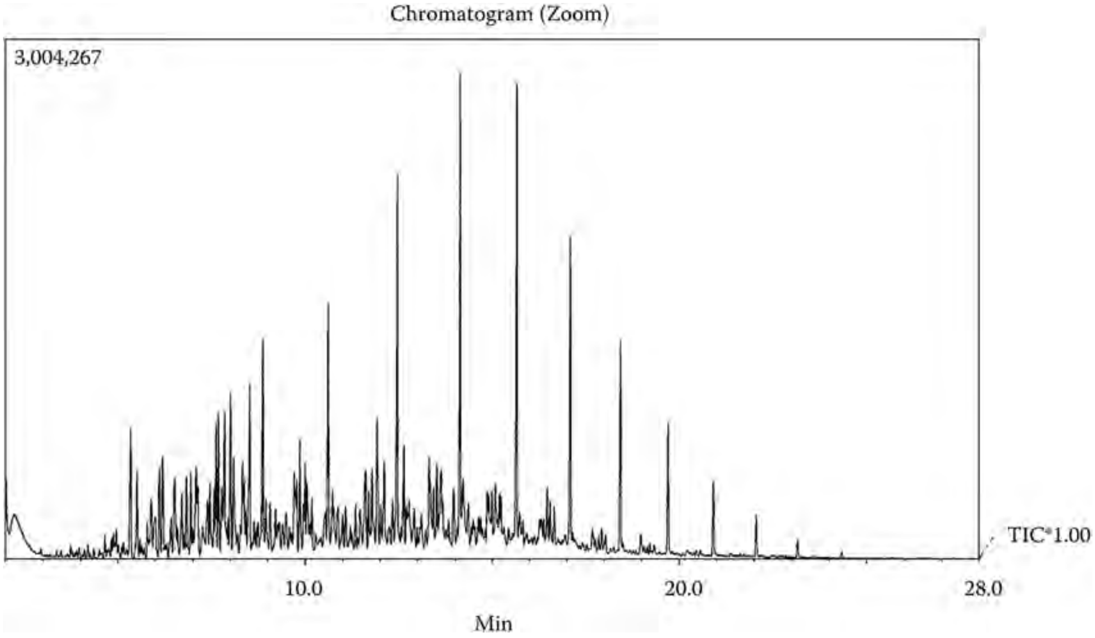


Figure 23.10 Gas chromatogram of a charcoal lighter fluid. This one is based on kerosene and the peak pattern is similar to that of any produce that is predominantly kerosene.

heating homes and businesses but also the main ingredient in many charcoal lighters and paint thinners. Thus, a finding of a kerosene pattern in a chromatogram of a fire residue does not itself justify naming what type of product it is, and of course, there are no circumstances where a chemist would be justified in reaching a conclusion that fire residue came from a particular container. There is nothing unique about a gas chromatogram of one sample of gasoline compared to another. No matter what conclusion the forensic scientist reaches about the presence and type of accelerant in fire residues, this information is only advisory to the fire scene investigator. The absence of an accelerant in fire residues does not mean that the fire was not deliberately set. The wrong evidence may have been collected or there may have been insufficient accelerant present in the evidence owing to its having been consumed by the fire. Likewise, the presence of an accelerant in fire residues doesn't mean that the fire was deliberately set. As was previously mentioned, it is not unusual for there to be accelerant materials such as gasoline stored in homes or businesses that may be innocently involved in a fire. It may be possible to determine the role of such materials in a fire if they are found some distance from the point of origin or are, in fact, used to make fire trail.

Explosions

If a fuel such as gasoline is confined to a closed space and then set on fire, gaseous products are produced (CO_2, H_2O, etc.) along with energy. This will cause the pressure to build up in the container until it ruptures. Most people would refer to this as an explosion, but it is actually just a fire that has been confined. To someone standing nearby, this is a distinction without a difference. It sure looks and sounds like an explosion. Most people think of an explosion as a violent release of energy, but a confined fire can also fit this definition. When a gun is fired, it looks like there has been an explosion inside the cartridge that expels the bullet, but this is also a confined fire because smokeless powder (the propellant) burns rather than explodes. To a forensic chemist, however, there are important differences between a confined fire and an explosion. The major difference between an explosion and a fire is the amount of energy released and how fast the products of the explosion travel as they move away from the point of origin. Chemical explosions are combustions just like fires. (Nuclear explosions operate on different principles and are not included in this discussion.) The difference between an explosion and a combustion lies in how much energy is emitted by a given amount of fuel and how intimate the oxygen is mixed with the fuel. There are two types of explosions: *deflagrations* and *detonations*.

Deflagration

Recall that the source of oxygen in a fire is in the air that surrounds the fuel in the form of O_2 and that activation energy is needed to break the oxygen bonds before the fire can take place. This is partly responsible for the relatively slow speed of the combustion in a fire relative to that in an explosion. In a deflagration, the oxygen is physically mixed with the fuel and is in a form where the O is bonded to other atoms that form weaker bonds than in O_2 and thus require less activation energy to break. An example of an explosive that deflagrates when activated is *black powder*. Black powder is one of the oldest known explosives. It is composed of potassium nitrate (KNO_3), charcoal (a form of carbon) and sulfur in a weight ratio of 15:3:2. The ingredients are all powders and are finely divided and mixed together. The activation energy to begin the combustion is supplied by a match or a spark. When ignited, the reaction will produce gases that escape at velocities up to the speed of sound (740 mph or about 1100 fps). The bonds between the nitrogen and oxygen atoms in potassium nitrate are broken by the activation energy, and these atoms then react with the carbon and sulfur forming many products. A great deal of energy is produced by these reactions. Explosions that produce escaping gases of velocities less than the speed of sound are referred to as "low explosives". Another low explosive that has been used in terrorist attacks such as the Murrah Federal Building in Oklahoma City (see Figure 23.11) is *ammonium nitrate and fuel oil (ANFO)*, which is ammonium nitrate (NH_4NO_3) and fuel oil, a hydrocarbon fuel used to heat buildings. Ammonium nitrate is a pelleted fertilizer widely used by farmers. To make ANFO, these pellets are soaked in the fuel oil. This provides an intimate physical mixture of the fuel and the oxygen, but the velocities of the gases produced by the reaction are still slower than the speed of sound. Low explosives produce much more energetic products than fires but are still slow relative to high explosives, which are discussed next.

Detonation

A detonation is essentially an instantaneous explosion. It is so powerful that escaping gases travel at speeds greater than the speed of sound. Explosives that detonate are termed "high explosives". The tremendous forces produced by high explosives push the surrounding air with such power that it can collapse buildings and move huge amounts of earth. In a high explosive, the oxygen is actually incorporated into the fuel molecules. When the activation energy is applied, the bonds connecting the oxygen atoms to the explosive molecule break as do all of the

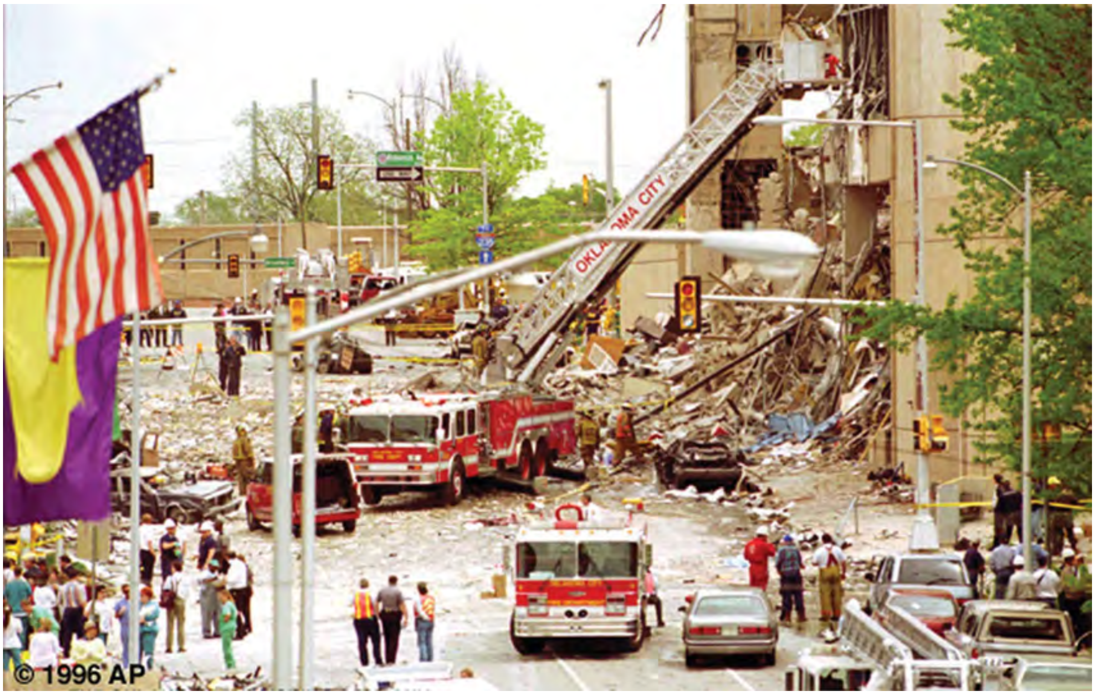


Figure 23.11 The Murrah Federal Building in Oklahoma City shortly after the 1996 bombing. Courtesy of Oklahoma Bombing Investigation Committee, www.okbombing.org; Reprinted by Associated Press.

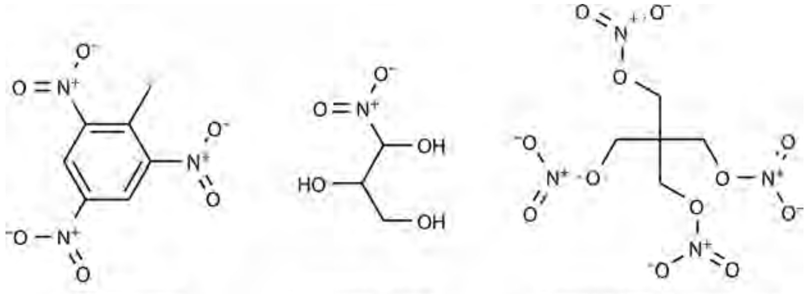

Trinitrotoluene Nitroglycerine Pentaerythritol tetranitrate

Figure 23.12 Chemical structures of some high explosives.

other bonds, and then, recombination takes place forming lower energy products. Since the oxygen is so intimately combined with the fuel, the combustion reaction is essentially instantaneous. Examples of some high explosives are given in Figure 23.12.

Notice that all of these explosives have oxygen incorporated as NO_2 or COH. Oxygen in this form is readily available to react with the other atoms in the fuel to release large amounts of energy very quickly. Some high explosives have very low activation energy and can detonate when only with only a small disturbance. Others are very stable and need another explosive to cause detonation.

Initiating and Noninitiating High Explosives

There are two types of high explosives: *initiating and noninitiating*. These are also called *primary* and *secondary* high explosives. The relationships between these types of high explosives and some examples are given in Figure 23.13.

Initiating explosives are relatively sensitive to detonation. The extreme example of this is nitroglycerine, a syrupy liquid that is so sensitive that a small shock such as shaking or dropping can cause detonation. Noninitiating explosives such as dynamite or trinitrotoluene (TNT) require a *booster charge* such as pentaerythritol tetranitrate (PETN) (see Figure 23.13). There have been a number of modern modifications of explosives so they can be adapted to specialized uses. One of the more important of these advances has been the development of *plastique* explosives. These generally contain PETN and/or RDX mixed with a polymer plastic that has the consistency of clay. These explosives can be shaped or molded so their blast can be directed in particular directions. These explosives are highly popular in demolitions, especially of the type where a large building is to be destroyed with a minimum debris scattering. The charges are set in various locations and timed to detonate at particular intervals so that the building seems to implode. A picture gallery of the stadium Kingdome in Seattle, Washington, can be seen at http://seattlepi.nwsource.com/kingdome/gallery.asp.

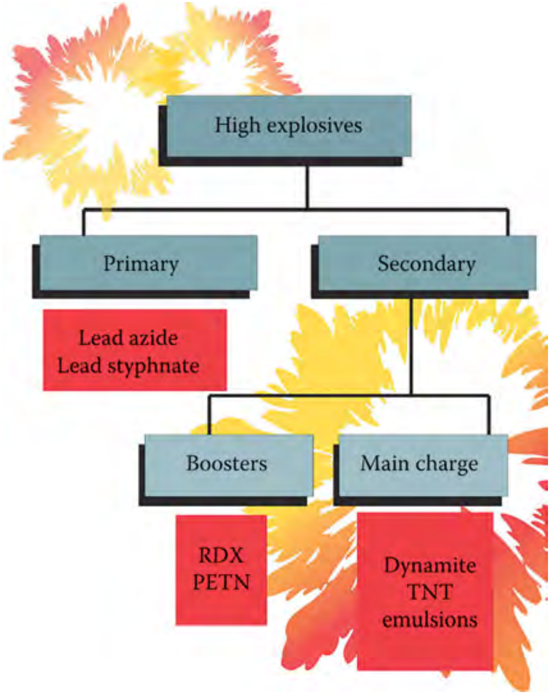


Figure 23.13 The relationships among different types of high explosives. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

Did You Know: Dynamite and the Nobel Prize?

One of the most potent and popular of all chemical high explosives is dynamite. The fuel in dynamite is nitroglycerine (Figure 23.12), but this is too unstable in its pure, liquid form, so it is mixed with *diatomaceous earth* and calcium carbonate (kieselguhr) and then rolled into a cylindrical shape. In this form, it is much more stable and easy to handle and is considered to be a secondary explosive. It needs a blasting cap or primer cord to detonate it. Dynamite is widely used as an earthmover because of its high pushing force. It has also been used as a military explosive.

The inventor of dynamite was *Alfred Nobel*. He was born in Sweden in 1833 and rose to be one of the most influential industrialists in the world. As a young man, he was fluent in five languages and was more interested in literature than chemistry. He wrote plays, poetry and novels in his spare time on his extensive travels. In the 1860s, Nobel began experimenting with nitroglycerine in a factory owned by his father. He concentrated on making the sensitive explosive easier to handle and more stable. He mixed it with many different substrates and finally settled on kieselguhr. He obtained a patent on the mixture and called it "dynamite". He sold dynamite all over the world and became very wealthy. He continued his chemical research throughout his life, ultimately making contributions to the development of artificial rubber and silk. As he grew older, Alfred Nobel became more interested in fostering the works of other inventors, especially those whose inventions or work benefited humanity. By the time he died in 1896, he had endowed a fund to make awards to people who exhibited great examples of human ingenuity. His first prize was awarded in 1901. Today, the most famous prize is the *Nobel Peace Prize*.

Ironically, Alfred Nobel thought that his invention of dynamite would banish war forever as man could see what terrible destruction it could wreak. He expressed this sentiment in a statement he made after receiving the patent on dynamite:

> My dynamite will sooner lead to peace than a thousand world conventions. As soon as men will find that in one instant, whole armies can be utterly destroyed, they surely will abide by golden peace.

One may reflect upon this statement and note that the same sentiments were expressed when the atomic bomb was developed by the United States. The real irony, of course is that the Noble Prize for Peace is given to a person or organization that promotes the cause of peace and this prize is endowed with profits from the manufacture and sale of an explosive used in war.

Investigation of Bombing Scenes

The investigation of the scene of a bombing can be one of the most difficult types of crime scenes. The majority of criminal or terrorist bombings take place outdoors and debris (and evidence) can be scattered over a wide area. Access to the scene after a bombing may be relatively uncontrolled and very difficult to seal off. People may enter the scene or leave it bringing in extraneous materials or carrying off evidence. There may be human remains and dead bodies that could present problems and health hazards. If buildings are involved, there could be secondary effects such as further collapse, dust and hazardous debris. In some ways, investigation of bomb scenes is similar to that of fire scenes; the most important aspect is to locate the point of origin. In bombing scenes, the term "bomb seat" is often used but it means the same thing. The bomb seat will most likely be the best spot for locating and recovering unexploded residues of the explosive and/or parts of the bomb device. If the bombing takes place in the lower levels of a building, then the upper floors of the building may collapse onto the bomb seat, making its detection and recovery more difficult. In the first attempt to destroy the Twin Towers of the World Trade Center in New York in 2001, a truck loaded with explosives was parked in the parking garage under the center on the fourth level below the ground. Although the buildings didn't collapse, there was a great deal of damage to the parking garage. Upper levels of the garage including many cars crashed down onto the bomb seat. It took many weeks and heavy equipment to remove the rubble and expose the bomb seat where parts of the truck, bomb parts and the unexploded and partially consumed explosive, urea nitrate, were found. In the Oklahoma City bombing, a truck filled with ANFO was parked in front of the Murrah building and the explosive was detonated remotely. There is evidence that the fasteners holding up wall of the truck that faced the building were loosened, so that the escaping energy and gases would be directed toward the building. The truck was not entirely destroyed and evidence of its identity was an important clue in this case.

Consider what happens when a bomb goes off. When the detonation takes place, very hot gases are formed, which race away from the bomb seat at high velocities, creating a *blast pressure* front and carrying debris and explosive residues along. The air around the explosion is pushed away, creating a partial vacuum at the site. As the blast pressure subsides, air rushes back toward the bomb seat to fill the vacuum, carrying debris with it and causing more destruction in the vicinity of the bomb seat. The actual location of the blast may be buried under tons of rubble. The progression of an explosion is depicted in Figure 23.14.

Finding parts of the explosive device can be very important, especially in terrorist bombings. The vast majority of terrorist bombs employ homemade devices and terrorist groups tend to use the same technology each time. Even small pieces of the device that set off the bomb can yield important clues about who made it or how it was made and detonated. Finding pieces of the device in large amounts of rubble can involve painstaking searching and sifting. Figure 23.15 shows a typical homemade bomb device.

Locating unburned explosive material can also be very important. This material can be directly analyzed by instrumental and other methods, and the exact explosive can then be identified easily. Exploded material will leave behind ions such as nitrite or nitrate, but these are generally components of soil anyway, and finding them is not certain evidence of the presence of an explosive. Explosive-sniffing dogs can help here.

It is very important to locate people in the wreckage of an explosion. Of course, finding survivors and getting them treated is the first responsibility of bomb scene responders. It is also important to locate dead bodies and remove them as early in the investigation as possible. The so-called cadaver dogs can be used here (see Chapter 7).

One investigator at the Oklahoma City bombing case indicated that they used a forensic entomologist who was able to *follow the flies* into the tons of debris and

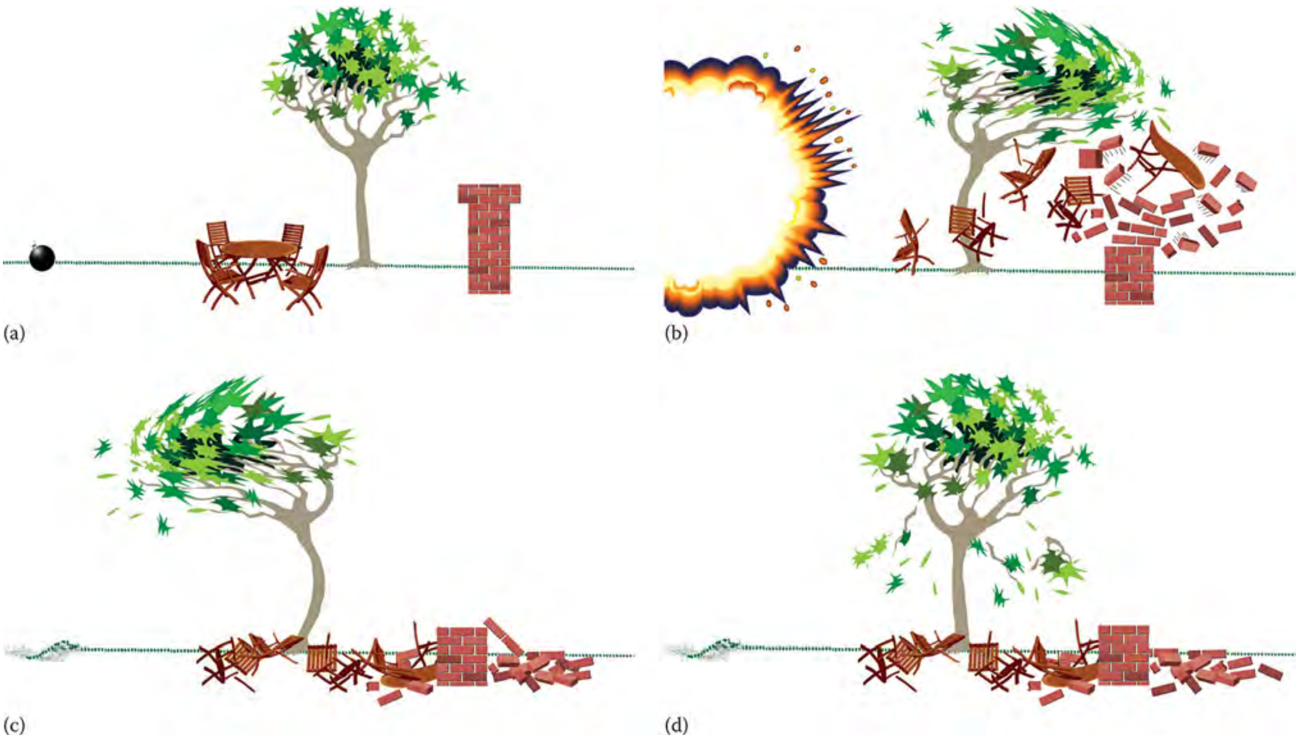


Figure 23.14 The progression of an explosion. (a) The condition of the scene before the explosion. (b) The positive pressure phase. (c) The damage after the negative pressure phase. (d) The condition of the scene after the explosion is over. Courtesy of Meredith Haddon.

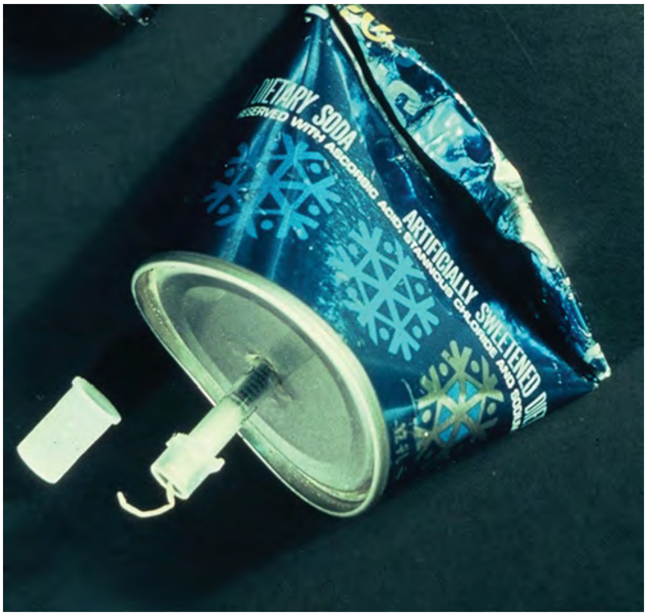


Figure 23.15 Homemade explosive device. The can is filled with smokeless or black powder to make a bomb. This was made in a prison workshop and seized from one of the inmates.

located dead bodies that attracted the flies (see Chapter 15 for a discussion of the role of insects in death investigation).

Analysis of Evidence from a Bomb Scene

The obvious evidence from a bomb scene includes burned or partially burned explosive and the device that exploded. These are certainly important but are not the only evidence that forensic scientists process. If the bomb is delivered to the site in a car or truck, identifying the remains of the vehicle can yield important clues. There may also be trace evidence inside the remains of the vehicle or fingerprints that can help identify the perpetrator. If the bomber himself is carrying the device and explodes it, there may be enough biological evidence to get DNA or perhaps even an identification from his remains.

In most bombing cases, parts of the device survive the blast. If they can be recovered, important information can be gained. There are a relatively limited number of people who repeatedly assemble bombs for major terrorist groups and, like everyone else, are creatures of habit. Assuming that they can obtain parts in a regular fashion, they will assemble bombs pretty much the same way each time and the type of device provides a kind of signature of the bomb maker. There are a few investigators in major law enforcement agencies worldwide who are so knowledgeable about bombs that they may be able to identify the assembler from a few bomb fragments.

In most bombing incidents, some of the explosive material will remain unexploded or partially exploded. How much of this remains depends upon the amount of explosive, how it is confined, the location of the explosion and the type of bomb seat. If particles of unexploded material are located, it is relatively easy to identify the type of explosive used, but even exploded debris can yield clues about the type of explosive. Intact particles of organic explosive can be analyzed by infrared spectrophotometry. GC is generally not used with explosive residues because the heat inside the instrument can detonate the residue particles, causing damage to the column or instrument. One of the most important tests for explosive residues is called the "Griess test". Many explosives contain nitrate or nitrite groups as part of the explosive because the N–O bonds are easily broken and provide lots of energy. The Griess test detects the presence of nitrates and nitrates. If a particle is suspected of being an explosive residue, it will usually test positive for Griess because most explosives have nitrates or nitrites in them. The residue can be spotted on a thin layer chromatography plate and, after development, can be sprayed with the two reagents that make up the Griess test. The result will be an orange or red spot on the plate.

Summary

Both fires and explosions arise from a combustion: the reaction of a fuel with oxygen to produce energy. The reaction generally needs a boost of energy to get it started. This is called the activation energy. The differences between a fire and an explosion are the amount of energy produced by the combustion and how the oxygen is made available for the reaction. In the case of fires, the oxygen is supplied by the surrounding air. Explosives are either of the *low* or *high* variety. Low explosives produce escaping gases whose velocities are less than the speed of light. High explosives produce gases that travel faster than the speed of light. In the case of low explosives, the oxygen is physically mixed with the fuel. In high explosives, the oxygen is part of the chemical structure of the explosive.

In fires and explosions, it is critical to find the point of origin (bomb seat, in the case of explosions). This is where evidence of how the fire or explosion started is most likely to be. In fires, this is the place where the hottest burning usually takes place and where fire trails or accelerants may be found. At the bomb seat, there is generally a great deal of debris and perhaps a crater. Accelerant residues are generally hydrocarbon fuels. There are various methods for removing the accelerant from the debris and concentrating it. The accelerant can be identified by GC. Explosive residues include unburned or partially burned explosive and parts of the explosive device. Hand sifting is generally necessary to recover these materials. Chromatography and spectroscopy are used to identify explosive residues.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is *not* necessary to have a fire?
   a. Fuel
   b. Activation energy
   c. Accelerant
   d. Oxygen
2. Which of the following is *not* evidence of the point of origin of a fire?
   a. Beginnings of fire trails
   b. Burned bed clothes
   c. Presence of accelerants
   d. Most intense burning
3. Which of the following is *not* a method of removing accelerant residues from fire debris?
   a. Gas chromatography
   b. Heated headspace
   c. Solvent extraction
   d. Absorption–elution
   e. SPME
4. In a low explosive, oxygen is
   a. Physically mixed with the fuel
   b. Chemically part of the fuel
   c. In the air surrounding the fuel
   d. Not needed
5. Secondary explosives
   a. Are a type of low explosive
   b. Are noninitiating
   c. Require a booster
   d. Always contain oxygen in the form of O_2 molecules
6. ANFO is
   a. A high explosive
   b. A mixture of a fertilizer and a commercial heating oil
   c. Burned rather than exploded when ignited
   d. Is very sensitive to detonation

7. Dynamite
   a. Is an initiating explosive
   b. Is a mixture containing nitroglycerine
   c. Deflagrates when ignited
   d. Produces escaping gases whose velocities are less than the speed of light
8. SPME
   a. Is a method for detecting explosive residues
   b. Is the same thing as absorption–elution but on a microscale
   c. Uses a coated wire inserted into the headspace of a container of fire debris to adsorb accelerant residues
   d. Is a method for the identification of fire residues
9. The Griess test
   a. Is used in the analysis of accelerants
   b. Detects the presence of oxygen in any form
   c. Reacts with nitrates and nitrates
   d. Reacts with all explosives
10. The activation energy that is needed to get a fire started is used to
   a. Break up molecular oxygen into atoms
   b. Decompose the fuel into carbon dioxide and water
   c. Extract accelerant residues from fire debris in a closed can
   d. Convert liquid oxygen to a vapor

True or False

11. The bomb seat is the same thing as the point of origin.
12. If a fire scene investigator can eliminate natural and accidental causes of a fire, then the fire must be arson.
13. A low explosive creates gases that escape at velocities up to the speed of sound.
14. Nitroglycerine is an initiating high explosive.
15. The presence of a fire trail always means that the fire was arson.
16. The presence of an accelerant in fire residues always means that the fire is arson.
17. The most important evidence of the cause of a fire can usually be found at the point of origin.

Match Each Term with Its Definition

18. Detonation	a. Requires initiation by another high explosive
19. Incendiary	b. Damage to concrete by fire
20. Accelerant	c. Instantaneous combustion
21. Secondary high explosive	d. Deliberate fire
22. Spalling	e. Starts or speeds up a fire that otherwise wouldn't start on its own

Short Answer Questions

23. Briefly describe and give an example of the three causes of a fire.
24. What is the fire tetrahedron? What are its parts? What relation does this have to putting out a fire?
25. What are the types of high explosive? How do they differ?

References

DeHaan, J. (1991). *Kirk's Fire Investigation*, 3rd edn. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Redsiker, D. and J. O'Connor. (1997). *Practical Fire and Arson Investigation*, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Siegel, J. (ed.). (2000). *Fire investigation, in Encyclopedia of Forensic Science*. Academic Press, London, U.K.

Urbanski, T. (1964). *Chemistry and Technology of Explosives*, vols. 1–3. Pergamon Press, Oxford, U.K.

Yinon, J. and S. Zitrin. (1991). *The Analysis of Explosives*. Pergamon Press, Oxford, U.K.

Yinon, J. and S. Zitrin. (1993). *Modern Methods and Applications in Analysis of Explosives*. John Wiley, New York.

On the Web

Story and pictures of London, England bombing: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/7_July_2005_London_bombings.

Story and pictures of Madrid bombing: http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/in_depth/europe/2004/madrid_train_attacks/default.stm.

Story and pictures of Oklahoma City Bombing: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oklahoma_City_bombing.

Very good website on fire and arson investigations: http://www.interfire.org/.

You Tube Arson Fire Videos

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P1t2h7gMCMA
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jYaLO-BlTSU
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KiC3-xdsWU4
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=uym8ceKzoUo

Fire Statistical Sources

https://www.nfpa.org//-/media/Files/News-and-Research/Fire-statistics-and-reports/US-Fire-Problem/Fire-causes/osintentional.pdf
https://www.nfpa.org/~/media/FD0144A044C84FC5BAF90C05C04890B7.ashx
https://www.usfa.fema.gov/data/library/research/topics/top_fire_investigations.html
https://www.usfa.fema.gov/downloads/pdf/statistics/v9i5.pdf

Case Study

Case Study: The Boston Marathon Bombings

On April 15, 2013, two homemade pressure cooker bombs detonated within minutes of each other near the crowded finish line of the Boston Marathon. The first bomb went off at approximately 2:50 pm and the second bomb exploded seconds later about 100 yards from the first. The aftermath of the bombing was horrendous. Three spectators died; eight-year-old Martin Richard of Boston, Krystle Campbell, 29, from Medford, Massachusetts and Lingzi Lu, originally from China, a graduate student at Boston University. The blasts injured 260 people, seventeen of which lost limbs due to the explosions. The bombs were remotely detonated and contained explosive material with nails and ball bearings as shrapnel. Many emergency personnel and bystanders tended to the wounded until they could be transported to local hospitals.

In the meantime, the search for the person(s) responsible began. Surveillance video footage and photographs taken at the location were reviewed. After two days of analyzing video and photographs, on April 18th the FBI shared photographs of two suspects, identity unknown, with the general public. The evening of the same day, a Massachusetts Institute of Technology security officer, Sean Collier, was shot and killed on the MIT campus by the suspects who had now been identified as brothers, Tamerlan Tsarnaev, 26, and Dzhokhar Tsarnaev, 19. Collier was allegedly shot in his patrol car in an effort to acquire his service revolver. A few hours later a Mercedez SUV was carjacked at gunpoint by the brothers. They forced the driver to withdrawal funds from an ATM and told him they were the bombers and they wanted to go to New York City. When they stopped at a gas station to get fuel, the driver escaped and called police, informing them that he left his cell phone in the car which would help track the vehicle.

Just after midnight on April 19th, police caught up with the brothers on a street in Watertown, MA, and a gunfight ensued in the street. The Tsarnaev brothers threw explosives at authorities in addition to answering with gunshots. The older brother, Tamerlan, was critically injured and his brother, Dzhokhar, ran over him with the car. Tamerlan was taken to the hospital, but succumbed to his injuries. Dzhokhar escaped. The city of Watertown and surrounding area were on lockdown while the manhunt for the remaining brother ensued. FBI and police went door to door hunting for Dzhokhar, who had abandoned the SUV and fled on foot. At approximately 8:30 pm, a homeowner in Watertown went outside to check his boat in the driveway. Under the boat tarp was the injured and bleeding Dzhokhar. The homeowner called 911 and police apprehended him without incident.

Who were these brothers? Why did they commit such a horrible crime? The brothers were originally from the republic of Kyrgyzstan, part of the former Soviet Union. Dzhorkhar migrated to the United States in 2002 with his parents. The family settled in Cambridge, Massachusetts after applying for political asylum. Tamerlan Tsarnaev, the older brother, came to the United States in 2003 with his two sisters. He had a green card, was a college dropout and

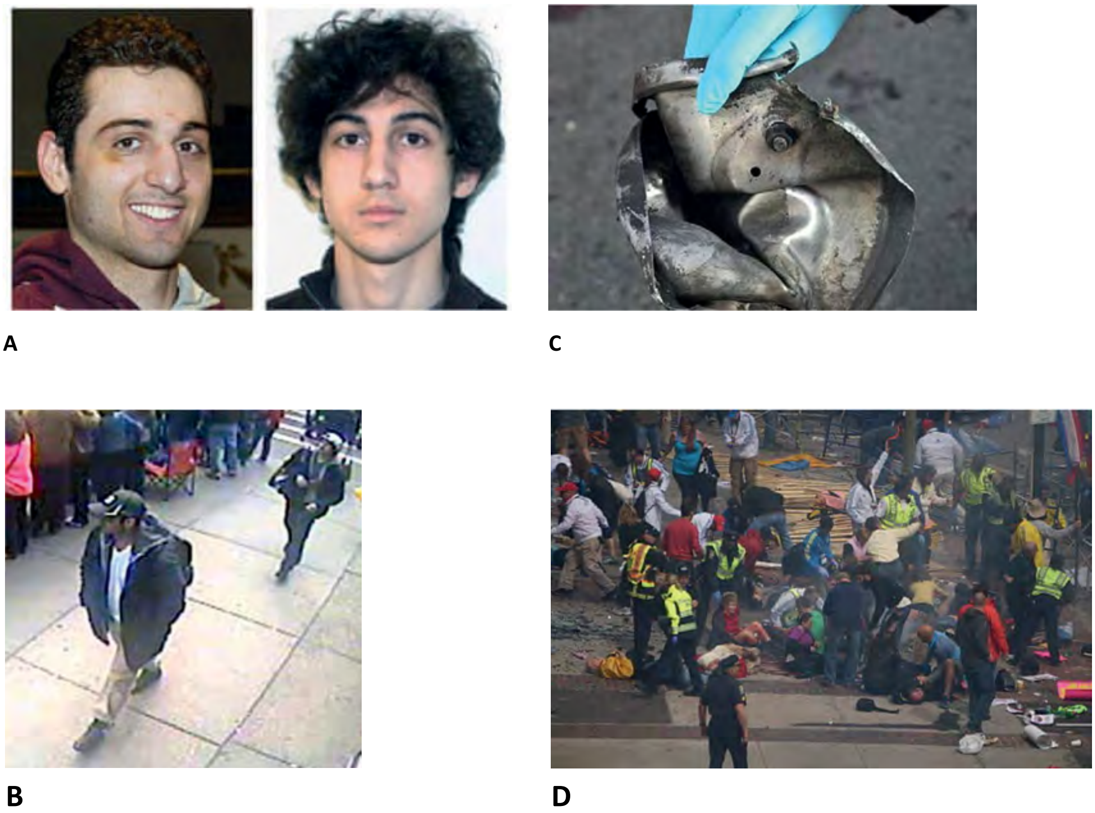


Figure 23.16 Photo A—The Tsarnaev brothers. Tamerlan on the left; Dzhokhar on the right. Photo B—The brothers at the Boston Marathon just before the bombing. Tamerlan is in front, Dzhokhar is behind in white ball cap. Photo C—The top of one of the pressure cooker bombs. Photo D—The post bombing scene.

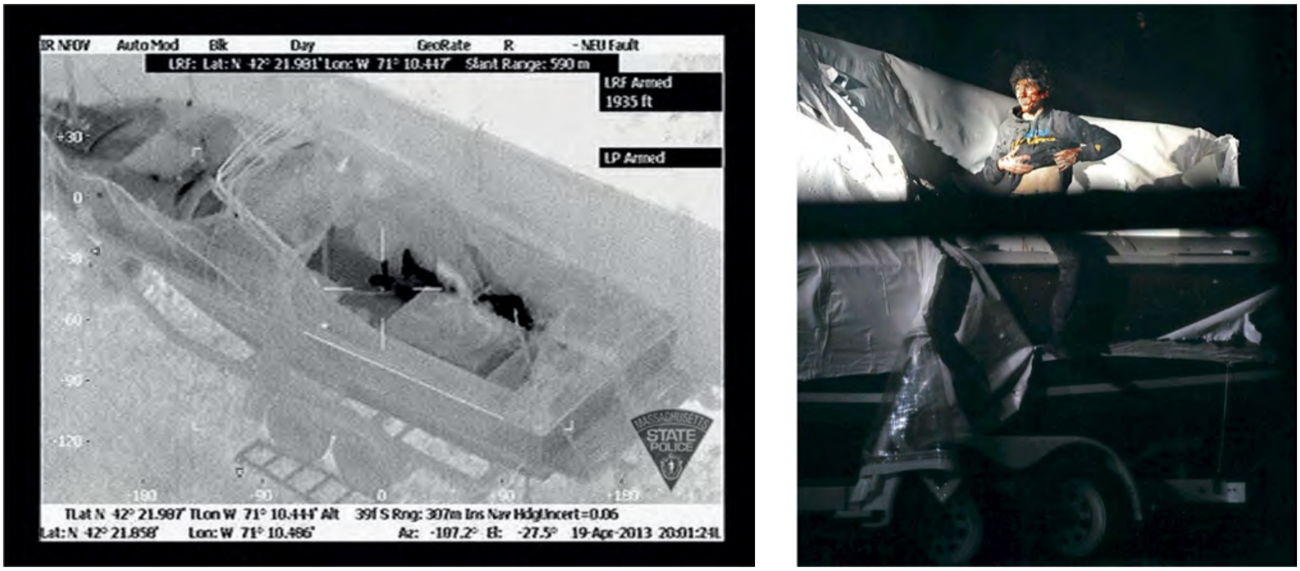

IR NFOV
Auto Mod
Blk
Day
GeoRate
R
- NEU Fault
LRF: Lat: N 42° 21.981' Lon: W 71° 10.447' Slant Range: 590 m
LRF Armed
1935 ft
LP Armed
+30
0
-30
-60
-90
-120
-180
-90
0
90
+180
MASSACHUSETTS
STATE
POLICE
TLat N 42° 21.987' TLon W 71° 10.444' Alt 39f S Rng: 307m Ins Nav HdgUncert=0.06
Lat: N 42° 21.858' Lon: W 71° 10.486' Az: -107.2° El: -27.5° 19-Apr-2013 20:01:24L

Figure 23.17 On the left is an infrared image of Dzhokhar hiding in boat. On the right, he surrenders to authorities, showing he has no weapons or bombs.

worked odd jobs. Dzhorkhar, who became a naturalized U.S. citizen, was a sophomore at the University of Massachusetts Dartmouth. It is believed that Tamerlan was the mastermind of the bombing attacks. Both brothers were motivated by extremist Islamic beliefs; however, they were not linked to terrorist groups.

Tsarnaev was found guilty of 30 federal charges filed against him on April 8, 2015. He was sentenced to death. Currently he is housed in a high security federal penitentiary in Colorado called Florence-High. His lawyer is appealing the court decision.

For more information:

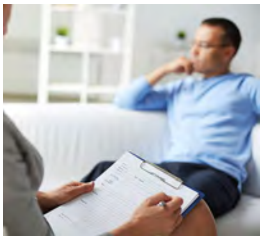
https://www.bostonglobe.com/metro/2015/04/07/critical-pieces-evidence-marathon-bombing-trial/nwAc6xKBG3gKckuVFOT3lN/story.html

https://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-srv/special/national/boston-marathon-explosions-map/

https://www.justice.gov/usao-ma/tsarnaev-trial-exhibits

PART VI

Additional Forensic Science Topics



24

Presentation of Forensic Evidence in Court

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define admissibility of evidence
2. To be able to define and give examples of relevance of evidence
3. To be able to define and give examples of competence of evidence
4. To be able to describe the contributions of *Frye v. United States* to the admissibility of scientific evidence
5. To be able to describe the contributions of *Daubert v. Merrell Dow* to the admissibility of scientific evidence
6. To be able to describe the main features of a good forensic science laboratory report
7. To be able to define expert witness and distinguish an expert witness from a lay witness
8. To be able to describe the procedure of offering expert testimony
9. To be able to define *voir dire* discuss its importance in expert testimony

Chapter Outline

- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *Admissibility of Evidence*
  - *Relevance*
  - *Competence*
  - *Admissibility of Scientific Evidence*
  - *Development of the Rules for Scientific Evidence*
    - *Federal Rules of Evidence*
    - *Daubert v. Merrell Dow*
- *Forensic Laboratories: Accreditation, Certification and Laboratory Reports*
  - *Accreditation of Forensic Laboratories*
  - *Certification of Forensic Science Professionals*
    - *Laboratory Reports*
  - *Past Recollection Refreshed*
  - *Past Recollection Recorded*
- *Expert Testimony*
  - *Expert Witness in Court*
    - *Bias in the Presentation of Forensic Evidence in Court*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
  - *Multiple Choice Questions*
  - *True or False*
  - *Match the Columns*
  - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*

Mini Glossary

Bench trial: A trial where the trier of fact is the judge.

Competence: A condition of admissibility of evidence. A set of legal constraints on the admissibility of evidence.

Expert witness: A witness who is qualified by knowledge, skills or education to offer expert testimony and inferences or opinions that the average person could not.

General acceptance: A standard for the admissibility of scientific evidence. It means that the underlying scientific principle of the evidence is agreed upon as true by the scientific community that would be most informed about the evidence.

Hearsay: A statement made outside of a court by someone who is not under oath that is being used in court to assert the truth of the statement.

Jury trial: A trial where the trier of fact is the jury.

Lay witness: A witness who is not an expert and can only testify what he or she experienced with their five senses.

Materiality: The evidence has something to do with the case being tried here and now.

Peer review: A process whereby a research manuscript is reviewed by experts in the scientific field of the manuscript subject.

Probative: Tendency to prove a fact.

Relevance: A condition of admissibility of evidence. It is made up of materiality and probativeness.

Statistically significant: A statistical test that determines whether differences between two measurements are real or a product of the sample or other issue.

Subpoena: A command to appear in court for a hearing or trial at a set date.

Subpoena duces tecum: A command to appear in court that includes all reports and records concerning the case.

Trier of fact: The party that makes the decision of guilty or not guilty in a trial.

Acronyms

AFIS	Automated Fingerprint Identification System
FRE	Federal Rules of Evidence
FSAB	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board
NAS	National Academy of Sciences

Introduction

In 1923, James Alphonso Frye was convicted of murder in Washington, D.C., in the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia. During his trial, he sought to have the results of a systolic blood pressure deception test admitted to help prove that he was not guilty of the crime. This test was a forerunner of today's modern polygraph test. The test measured changes in the subject's systolic blood pressure. The underlying principle of the test was that when someone spoke the truth, he did so without any conscious effort, but that telling a deliberate lie requires conscious effort and is stressful and results in an involuntary change in systolic blood pressure. The prosecutor objected to the admission of this test claiming that it was controversial and that scientists didn't agree whether the test was reliable, and therefore, the jury shouldn't have to speculate about its reliability and whether to put any weight on the results. The judge agreed with the prosecutor and Fry appealed to the U.S. Court of Appeals. The judges in the Court of Appeals affirmed the lower court ruling and sustained the guilty verdict. In their written opinion, the justices claimed that the systolic blood pressure deception test was not generally accepted by the relevant scientific community and was, therefore, not admissible.

The *Frye* decision is one of the most important in U.S. law and in its application to forensic science and scientific evidence. It set out the standard for admissibility of scientific evidence in most state and federal courts for more than a half century. Although it was overturned as the standard for admissibility of scientific evidence in federal court in the 1970s, it is still the standard for admissibility in close to half the states in the United States.

This chapter is about the relationship and interface between law and science. The reason that forensic science exists is because it helps provide evidence and answer legal questions such as who committed a crime, who is responsible for illegal acts that can harm society and who should be blamed when a person is harmed. This book is mostly about the criminal justice system but it is important to know that there is a parallel civil justice system. This system is for when people or institutions are the victims of harmful or illegal acts that do not amount to a crime, but for which damages may be paid. Although there are significant differences in how justice is carried out in these two systems, the way that forensic science is viewed and employed is the same. The United States and many other countries employ an *adversary* system of justice. It is important to know that many other countries treat forensic evidence in court very differently than we do in the United States. They use an *inquisitorial* justice system.

Where does forensic science fit into the criminal justice system? Once a crime is reported or discovered, the police will launch an investigation. In large police departments, detectives perform criminal investigations. They take overall charge of the investigation. Part of the investigation will be a search of the crime scene. This is a critical phase because much or all of the physical evidence of the crime will be found at the scene. As explained in Chapter 2, most of the search of the crime scene is carried out by crime scene investigators. They collect, preserve and package the evidence and have it sent to the forensic science lab for analysis. As the investigation proceeds, this is a continuing process. Before a trial, witnesses may be *deposed*, although this process is much more common in civil than criminal cases. This is an evidence gathering process for the attorneys who question witnesses outside the courtroom. In this setting, witnesses are under oath and the questions and answers are recorded. If there is a preliminary hearing and/or trial, forensic scientists may be called to testify as expert witnesses. In some cases, reports written by forensic scientists that set out their findings may be admitted in lieu of actual testimony. This process gives rise to three important considerations that affect the use of forensic science in the criminal justice system:

- The admissibility of scientific evidence
- Forensic science laboratory reports and their legal status
- The role of the expert witness in court

Of these, the most important and most studied is the admissibility of scientific evidence. Our adjudicative system operates by a series of rules. Some of these rules govern the admissibility of evidence in general and still others the admissibility of scientific evidence in particular.

Admissibility of Evidence

In the U.S. adjudicative system, the party that determines guilt or innocence of the accused is called the “trier of fact”. In a *bench trial*, the trier of fact is the judge. In such cases, the judge presides over the trial and makes the final decision as to guilt or innocence. In a *jury trial*, the trier of fact is the jury. The jury can be as few as 6 people and as many as 12 (plus alternates). They listen to the evidence presented during the trial and are instructed by the judge as to the applicable law that governs the case. They apply the law to the facts and evidence of the case and reach a decision of guilt or innocence. In some cases, the jury may have a role in the punishment although this is usually the purview of the judge. During the trial, either or both parties (prosecutor or defendant) will present evidence that supports that side's theory of what happened in the incident. This evidence can take a variety of forms including testimony from eyewitness, police or experts, as well as physical evidence such as drugs, blood or bullets. All evidence must comport to rules governing its admissibility and it is up to the judge to make determinations of admissibility even in a jury trial. The judge always makes decisions that are legal in nature at a trial even if the trier of fact is a jury.

Admissibility of evidence is the determination of what matters may come before the trier of fact. There are many rules of evidence that seek to protect the jury from hearing evidence that is contaminated in one way or another. Examples include evidence that is prejudicial, irrelevant, time wasting, unconstitutional or unreliable. The major rule that applies to ALL evidence, scientific or not, is that evidence must be *relevant* and *competent* in order to be admitted at trial. Evidence that is relevant may still be inadmissible if it is not competent. Each of these concepts will be discussed in turn. Please keep in mind that there are many exceptions to the rules that follow. The explanations of the rules are generalities that apply in the majority of basic situations. Also, keep in mind that legal terminology such as competence may have different meanings than it would otherwise have in a nonlegal setting.

Relevance

Relevance is made up of two components: *materiality and probativeness*. In order for evidence to be relevant, it must be both material and probative. *Material* means that the evidence has something to do with the case being tried here and now. It cannot refer back to evidence that arose from some previous incident. For example, assume that a person is on trial for sexual assault. The fact that he or she may have committed previous sexual assaults is not material to this trial and is generally not admissible. Juries are not permitted to hear of a defendant's previous criminal record because it is not material and may also be prejudicial. *Probativeness* means that the evidence must prove something. In legal parlance, it means that the evidence must make a proposition more or less likely than it would be without the evidence. Probative evidence can help prove or disprove a proposition or accusation or set of facts. For example, suppose a person is accused of killing another person by shooting him. When arrested, the suspect is found to be carrying a large knife. As the death was by shooting, the knife is not probative. It doesn't help prove or disprove that the defendant shot the victim.

To summarize, if evidence tends to prove or disprove a proposition about the case being tried here and now, it is probative and material and, therefore, relevant.

Competence

Competence doesn't mean the same thing in the context of admissibility of evidence as it does in other situations. Here, competence can mean a number of things having to do with the law:

- *Prejudice*: Evidence cannot unduly prejudice the trier of fact for or against the accused. Highly inflammatory, gory color pictures of an autopsy of the dead victim may be inadmissible because their probativeness is outweighed by prejudice. The jury may become so horrified by the pictures that they can no longer be objective about the guilt or innocence of the defendant. Prior criminal activity and evidence of bad character are also generally inadmissible on the grounds of prejudice (and perhaps relevance).

- *Constitutional constraints*: The fourth amendment of the constitution prohibits unreasonable searches of people and places and usually requires that a judge or magistrate issue a search warrant before a search can take place. The warrant and supporting affidavit (statement) must specify the location and persons to be searched and the items being sought. If evidence is seized in violation of these requirements, then it may be inadmissible no matter how relevant it is. Other constitutional amendments such as the Miranda rights, the right to a speedy trial and the right to confront witnesses may also play into considerations of competency.
- *Statutory constraints*: The common law provides for a number of *privileges*. These are protected types of speech between doctor–patient, lawyer–client, marital partners, cleric–penitent, etc. For example, if one spouse makes potentially incriminating statements to his spouse in the course of private communication, the spouse cannot be compelled to testify against her husband, and the husband can prevent the testimony even if the spouse wants to testify. These are the marital privileges. All of these privileges are designed to foster communications that are deemed necessary without placing the speaker in danger of prosecution. You can see, for example, how you would want private communications with your attorney to remain private. Many people would not go to a doctor for treatment if they thought that information about their medical condition could show up in a workplace or court.
- *Hearsay*: Hearsay refers to a statement made outside of a court by someone who is not under oath that is being used in court to assert the truth of the statement. Hearsay evidence can be unreliable because the person who repeats the statement in court can only testify as to what he or she heard or saw and not the truth of the statement. For example, if Person A overhears a conversation between two people where Person B tells the other one that he or she robbed a bank, Person A's retelling of what he or she overheard in a courtroom would be inadmissible hearsay. Person A could only testify that he or she heard the statement but could not answer questions about its truth. Even written documents can be considered statements and may be inadmissible. For example, a laboratory report by a forensic scientist is a form of hearsay but still may be admissible in court as an exception to the hearsay rule. There are many exceptions to the hearsay rule in modern jurisprudence. The hearsay rule was originally developed in medieval England as a way of keeping unreliable statements out of court.

Remember that in order for any evidence to be admissible in court, it must pass both the relevance and competence tests. Sometimes, it is hard for the public to understand this. Have you ever heard of a situation where someone is found not guilty of a crime even though there existed incriminating evidence that couldn't be admitted because it was obtained illegally by a police officer who was executing an improper search warrant? Such cases are said to be decided unfairly because the defendant *got off on a technicality*. The fact is that the rules of evidence are all technicalities: hurdles that must be surmounted if the evidence is to be admitted into court. These rules of evidence apply to ALL evidence including testimony and physical evidence. In general, once evidence has been deemed to be relevant and competent, the trier of fact is presumed to possess enough knowledge to make judgments about the truth of the evidence and how much weight to give it.

Admissibility of Scientific Evidence

Have you ever seen a TV commercial for a product such as a new medicine? The spokesperson sometimes wears a white lab coat and perhaps even a stethoscope. The idea here is that the viewer is supposed to believe that the speaker is a doctor or other type of scientist and as such should be believed. This is the aura of truth that accompanies scientific matters simply because they are scientific. The problem is that much of the scientific and technical evidence presented in court is complex and often beyond the ability of jurors and judges who are not trained in science to understand. This opens the door for unreliable, unvalidated testimony that masquerades as science to be offered in court to unsuspecting judges and juries. There must be legal safeguards in place to ensure that the evidence that the trier of fact hears is reliable and scientifically valid. Therefore, in addition to all of the other rules of evidence discussed earlier, there are some special rules that apply only to the admissibility of scientific and technical evidence.

Development of the Rules for Scientific Evidence

Prior to 1923 in the United States, scientific evidence was treated like any other evidence. If there was a witness who could vouch for and explain the evidence and it was otherwise relevant and competent, it was admissible and the trier of fact could put whatever weight on it that they wanted. This is called the "relevance" standard for the admissibility of evidence. The *Frye* case described in the introduction to this chapter changed all that. A new standard for admissibility of scientific evidence arose from this case. It is called the "general acceptance" standard. It means that whenever a party seeks to introduce a new scientific test or technique, the relevant scientific community must first generally accept it. In the case of the systolic blood pressure deception test mentioned in the *Frye* case, the relevant scientific community would be psychologists and neurophysiologists. One of the problems with the *Frye* decision was that the Court of Appeals never defined what it meant by *general acceptance*. During the intervening years since *Frye*, general acceptance has grown to mean that the technique has been published in a *peer-reviewed* book or journal.

Did You Know: The Peer-Review Process

When a scientist makes a discovery, he or she will seek to publish it in a reputable book or journal so that he or she can claim credit for the discovery and so that other scientists can use his or her technique and build upon it and make other discoveries. That is how science progresses. How does a reader of the journal know that the articles are reliable? One way is to engage in a peer-review process. Before the publisher and editor of the book or journal will accept the manuscript, they will send it out to experts in the same field as the author (peers). They will read the manuscript carefully and may even try to replicate some of the methodologies to make sure that they work properly. If they agree, then the article is published. Although the peer-review process is very helpful in determining whether new methods and techniques are reliable and scientifically valid, it is not perfect. Very often the peers only read the manuscript and do not attempt to replicate the experiments or procedures because of lack of resources and time. Another problem is that a group of people who advocate the use of a scientifically questionable or invalid technique might set up their own journal and accept manuscripts from like-minded people. The manuscripts undergo a kind of peer review and the article gets published in the journal but its methods are still suspect. This type of practice is a form of *junk science*. Sometimes, it is difficult to discredit or stamp out this practice.

Once the *Frye* decision was announced, it became the rule for federal courts in the United States. Federal court decisions generally do not apply to individual state court systems, but about half of the states eventually adopted the *Frye* standard, while the other half continued to use the old relevancy standard. For the next 50+ years, new scientific techniques were subjected to a *Frye* test in court in an effort to insure that they were scientifically sound. Even DNA typing survived a number of *Frye* challenges in several states before being accepted nationwide.

Federal Rules of Evidence

It is the responsibility of the Congress to make rules that govern court procedures. This is done by enacting a set of rules called the "Federal Rules of Evidence" (FRE). Many of these rules arose from the common law that came down from medieval England when the United States was founded. Others have developed over time out of court decisions. Some of these rules refer to scientific evidence. In 1975, the Congress decided after many hearings, to overhaul and modernize the rules of evidence. These changes included the rules that applied to scientific and technical evidence. An extensive discussion of these changes is beyond the scope of this book but one new rule, FRE 702, warrants discussion. It reads as follows:

> If scientific, technical, or other specialized knowledge will assist the trier of fact to understand the evidence or to determine a fact in issue, a witness qualified as an expert by knowledge, skill, experience, training, or education, may testify thereto in the form of an opinion or otherwise, if (1) the testimony is based upon sufficient facts or data, (2) the testimony is the product of reliable principles and methods, and (3) the witness has applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case.

Essentially, this rule hearkens back to the old relevancy standard. The judge decides if the proposed scientific testimony will help the jury understand the evidence. Then, the judge will permit an expert witness to testify about the scientific issue if the testimony is based on reliable scientific methods and principles. Note that the concept of general acceptance by a relevant scientific community is not mentioned.

Once the Congress passed these new rules, they became the law for all federal courts. Although they did not apply to state judicial systems, most states adopted many of these rules in whole or in part for their own courts. It is interesting to note that many federal courts ignored the FREs when making decisions about the admissibility of novel scientific evidence, instead continuing to rely on the *Frye* standard. This lasted until 1993 when the *Daubert* case was decided.

Daubert v. Merrell Dow

The *Daubert* case is an example of a *toxic tort*. A tort is a type of civil infraction. It is harm to a person or group by another person, group or organization, or company. A toxic tort is a harm that is alleged to have been caused by a dangerous or poisonous substance. The movie *Erin Brockovich* depicted a toxic tort caused by a company that dumped toxic substances into a water supply, leading to many illnesses and deaths. In the Daubert case, Mrs. Daubert was a pregnant woman whose doctor prescribed *Bendectin*, a drug that was commonly prescribed to relieve nausea among women in their first trimester of pregnancy. Mrs. Daubert took Bendectin during two successive pregnancies resulting in two babies that had birth defects. She sued the manufacturer of Bendectin, Merrell Dow, in federal court, claiming that the drug was the cause of the birth defects in her children. (The case was heard in federal court rather than state court because Merrell Dow engages in interstate commerce and federal courts have jurisdiction in such situations). Merrell Dow denied that their drug caused the birth defects and a trial ensued.

The biochemical mechanisms that result in birth defects are not well known, and there was no way at that time to prove medically that Bendectin caused birth defects. As a result, the plaintiff, Mrs. Daubert, had to use *epidemiology*, the study of disease that occurs in a large population, to prove her case. This is the same type of strategy that is used in court to allege that cigarettes cause cancer. Essentially, her epidemiologists had to gather data about the number of women who gave birth to babies with birth defects, the number of women who took Bendectin while pregnant and the number of women who took Bendectin while pregnant and gave birth to babies with birth defects. They then took the data and used statistics to determine whether there was a *statistically significant* increase in the number of birth defects in babies from women who took Bendectin over the number in women who did not. The statistically significant requirement is very important in statistics. It is a test that determines whether a difference between two measurements is a real difference or a trivial one. For example, statistics may show an increase in birth defects with Bendectin, but that increase may be due to the type and size of the sample of cases studied and may not be a true difference. Mrs. Daubert's statisticians determined that there was an increase and that it was statistically significant. Merrell Dow's statisticians determined from approximately the same data that there was no statistically significant difference in birth defects with Bendectin.

When Mrs. Daubert's epidemiologists were going to offer their testimony, the defense objected on the grounds that her scientists did not use *generally accepted* methods of statistics in order to reach their conclusions and because of that, their testimony should not be admitted. In raising this objection, the defense was invoking the *Frye* rule. The judge agreed with the defense and disallowed the plaintiff's testimony. As her statisticians could not testify about their data, the defense had no case and the judge directed the jury to return a verdict for Merrell Dow (this outcome of a case is called a "directed verdict"). Mrs. Daubert's lawyers appealed the decision on the grounds that the trial judge used the wrong standard of admissibility of the scientific evidence and should have allowed the statisticians for the plaintiff to testify. They claimed that the judge should have used the standards set out in FRE 702 and not the *Frye* standard.

The U.S. Supreme Court agreed to hear the appeal and ultimately agreed with Mrs. Daubert. They remanded the case back to the trial court for a rehearing and directed the judge to use the FREs to make his determination on the admissibility of the plaintiff's statistical evidence. The Supreme Court decision stated that the *Frye* standard no longer applied to the Federal Courts and that it was too restrictive. They determined that FRE 702 put the responsibility on the judge to act as a *gatekeeper* and determine the admissibility of scientific evidence on broader grounds. The justices indicated that there were many possible tests of scientific validity beyond general acceptance and, in their decision in the *Daubert* case, listed a few:

- *Falsifiability*: This concept refers to testing a new theory or method. When a new scientific theory is proposed, it is subjected to rigorous experimentation that attempts to prove that the theory is false or doesn't work. If repeated attempts to prove it false fail, this provides evidence that the theory is valid. An example would be the theory that gravity on earth pulls all objects toward the center of the earth. If someone drops a hammer on earth, it should fall. Repeated tests of this theory show that a dropped hammer will always fall down and not up. As no examples of the theory being false have been shown, it must be true.
- *Known error rates*: During the development of a new technique or method, a scientist will determine or estimate the frequency of errors and their types when the method is used. All scientific tests and methods are subject to errors. Knowing the frequency of these errors will help the trier of fact determine the validity of the method.
- *Peer review*: The Supreme Court recognized the value of publishing and peer review of scientific methods and techniques, and they included it in their suggested means of assessing scientific validity.
- *General acceptance*: The Supreme Court didn't say that the *Frye* standard wasn't a valid means of assessing scientific validity, only that it cannot be the sole means of doing so. They recognized that scientific consensus has significant value in evaluating a new scientific technique.

Since the Supreme Court ruling in *Daubert*, most states have adopted the decision in whole or in part. There are still a few *Frye* states and a few that rely on the old relevance standard, but *Daubert* has essentially become the law of the land. There have been further court decisions that have clarified and extended Daubert since 1993, and there are still test cases being prepared to determine whether *Daubert* should be extended to *soft* sciences such as psychology and whether it can be applied to old scientific techniques that have already been accepted in court. For example, there have been challenges recently to fingerprint and handwriting testimony on the grounds that they have not been proven to be scientifically valid. These challenges would not have been possible under the *Frye* standard because that decision referred only to new or novel scientific evidence and did not apply to evidence such as fingerprints, which had been accepted in courts for more than 100 years.

Forensic Laboratories: Accreditation, Certification and Laboratory Reports

Accreditation of Forensic Laboratories

Recommendation 7 of the Report of the Forensic Science Committee of the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) in 2009 called for mandatory accreditation of forensic science laboratories. The NAS also suggested that laboratory accreditation model the standards of ISO/IEC 17024. ISO is the International Organization for

Standardization and IEC stands for International Electrotechnical Commission. The 17024 standard is an international standard that delineates quality, validity and reliability requirements for certification programs. There has been a positive movement toward accrediting publicly funded crime laboratories. By the end of 2014, 88% of the national crime labs, 99% of the state crime labs, 85% of the county labs and 67% of the municipal crime labs were accredited. Three quarters of the publicly funded labs had written standards for performance of employees. Over 90% of the labs performed proficiency testing and maintained a written code of ethics. Twelve percent more laboratories reported at least one externally certified forensic science analyst in their facility as compared to the numbers in 2009, when the NAS Report was published. Certification of individual forensic science professionals continues to be a roadblock in reform efforts. Accreditation of forensic science service providers (labs) does not by itself suffice to increase credibility of forensic testing. Accreditation monitors the laboratory methods and operational guidelines, whereas certification of lab personnel increases the reliability and credibility of lab testing outcomes.

Certification of Forensic Science Professionals

In addition to laboratory accreditation, the NAS recommendation 7 also called for mandatory individual certification of forensic science professionals. This was underscored by the National Commission on Forensic Science which declared that all forensic scientists should be certified within their discipline. Unfortunately, the Commission was disbanded in 2016 by the Department of Justice, so the push for certification has not been organized or standardized on a national level. Currently the certification process is voluntary and the certifying bodies (those entities who issue professional certification in a discipline) are many (see Table 24.1 for a list of forensic disciplines and certifying organizations).

Within the forensic science community, the call for professional certification of analysts is escalating, driven by wrongful convictions due to false testimony and laboratory testing errors. Of sixty-two exoneration cases investigated by the Innocence Project, 27% were wrongful convictions due to incorrect or misleading testimony by an expert and 63% were due to lab testing errors. The Bureau of Labor Statistics estimated that in 2016 the United States had 15,400 forensic science technicians employed in laboratories. That same year, the National Commission on Forensic Science estimated that 6556 forensic science analysts were certified by an organization recognized by the Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB). FSAB was created in 2000 to monitor certifying bodies making sure they conform to the standards of ISO/ICE 17024. Table 24.1 lists the certifying organizations that are FSAB accredited. Given that not all certifying bodies are FSAB accredited, the number of certified forensic professionals could be closer to 50% of all technicians. As jurors and court professionals continue to assess the credibility of expert testimony in the courtroom, the NAS call for professional forensic certification in the area of expertise is increasingly likely.

Laboratory Reports

All scientific examinations, especially those that are meant for public consumption, culminate in a scientific report. This is always true in forensic science. Every case examined in a crime laboratory must have a written report that goes to the attorneys and to the court. The forensic scientist may be called to court to

TABLE 24.1
Certification and Accreditation in Forensic Science Disciplines

Forensic Science Discipline	Certification Organization	Accreditation Organization
Crime Scene Investigation	International Association for Identification (IAI)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Forensic Art	International Association for Identification (IAI)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Bloodstain Pattern Analysis	International Association for Identification (IAI)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Fingerprints—Latent Analysis	International Association for Identification (IAI)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Fingerprints—Ten Print Analysis	International Association for Identification (IAI)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Forensic Photography	International Association for Identification (IAI)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Forensic Video	International Association for Identification (IAI)	
Footwear & Tiretrack Analysis	International Association for Identification (IAI)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Drug Analysis	American Board of Criminalistics (ABC)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Comprehensive Criminalistics	American Board of Criminalistics (ABC)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Molecular Biology	American Board of Criminalistics (ABC)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Fire Debris Analysis	American Board of Criminalistics (ABC)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Paint & Polymer Analysis	American Board of Criminalistics (ABC)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Hair & Fiber Analysis	American Board of Criminalistics (ABC)	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Forensic Anthropology	American Board of Forensic Anthropologists	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Document Examination	American Board of Document Examiners	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Forensic Entomology	American Board Forensic Entomologists	
Forensic Odontology	American Board of Forensic Odontology	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Firearm & Toolmark Analysis	Association of Firearm & Toolmark Examiners	
Forensic Pathology	American Board of Pathologists	American Board of Medical Specialties (ABMS)
Digital Forensics	International Association of Computer Investigative Specialists	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Medicolegal Death Investigation	American Board of Medicolegal Death Investigators	
Forensic Engineering	National Academy of Forensic Engineers	Council of Engineering and Scientific Specialty

(*Continued*)

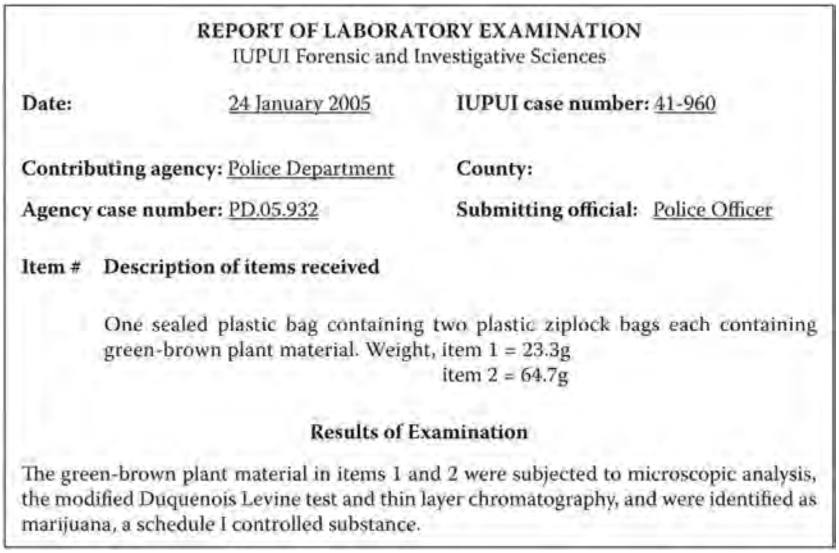
TABLE 24.1 (CONTINUED)

Forensic Science Discipline	Certification Organization	Accreditation Organization
Forensic Toxicology	American Board of Forensic Toxicology	Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB)
Forensic Psychology	American Board of Forensic Psychology	

Source: https://theiai.org/docs/5.NCFS_AccreditationForensicScienceCertificationBodies.pdf

authenticate, substantiate and explain the report to the trier of fact. The report is based on notes taken by the scientist during the evidence examination. These notes may also be required to be produced in court along with the report. There is no standard reporting system for forensic science in the United States. Some laboratories use a brief report format, reporting only the evidence received, demographic data and the results of the tests. Other labs use formal scientific reports that include a description of the examinations, their limitations and error rates. Figure 24.1 is a specimen of a brief laboratory report issued by a crime laboratory.

Recall the discussion of the Report of the Forensic Science Committee of the National Academy of Sciences (NAS), in Chapters 1 and 3. Recommendation 2 of the report is concerned in part with laboratory reports in forensic science. Testimony given to the committee indicated that laboratory reports in forensic science are often little more than certificates of analysis that lacked data and explanations of how conclusions are reached as well as detailed procedures for the analyses that are being reported. Such reports are not considered to be scientific in nature. The recommendation calls for the establishment of model and scientific report formats that would have to be used by all accredited forensic science laboratories. Currently, the Scientific Working Groups (SWGs) and Scientific Area



REPORT OF LABORATORY EXAMINATION
IUPUI Forensic and Investigative Sciences

Date: 24 January 2005 **IUPUI case number:** 41-960

Contributing agency: Police Department **County:**

Agency case number: PD.05.932 **Submitting official:** Police Officer

Item # **Description of items received**

One sealed plastic bag containing two plastic ziplock bags each containing green-brown plant material. Weight, item 1 = 23.3g
item 2 = 64.7g

Results of Examination

The green-brown plant material in items 1 and 2 were subjected to microscopic analysis, the modified Duquenois Levine test and thin layer chromatography, and were identified as marijuana, a schedule I controlled substance.

Figure 24.1 This is a specimen of a brief laboratory report issued by a forensic science laboratory. Note that the only information presented about the evidence is a description, weight and the identity of the controlled substance. There is no information about what tests were done and their results.

Committees (SACs) as part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) are working on standards and report writing formats within their specific forensic discipline. There is not a model report developed for use by all forensic science labs.

A recent study conducted by one of the authors of this book looked at 421 redacted forensic science laboratory reports from more than 40 laboratories nationwide. The study showed that the testimony before the Forensic Science Committee was very often borne out and that reports from forensic science laboratories were often inadequate from the standpoint of completeness and comprehensiveness, inclusion of data generated by the scientific analyses and a discussion of how conclusions about the evidence were reached. This study also examined recommendations made by more than 30 organizations in forensic science and the legal and criminal justice systems. It was found that most of these organizations recommended that forensic science reports contain data and explanations and generally be scientific in nature.

Laboratory reports are an example of hearsay. They contain statements that are made outside of court by a person (the forensic scientist) who is not under oath at the time they wrote the report. Clearly, the opposing attorney cannot cross-examine the report, so unless the scientist who wrote it is present in court, the report would have to stand on its own. Many states have provisions in their laws that permit the admission of lab reports if both sides stipulate (agree). Other states require the author of the report to be present in court if the report is to be admitted as evidence. In some states, lab reports are admissible as a *business records* exception to the hearsay rule. This exception provides for the admission of records that are made in the regular course of business. They are deemed to be reliable because accurate records are essential to the functioning of a business. The U.S. Supreme Court has recently taken up some cases to decide under what circumstances a laboratory report may be admissible on its own, without supporting testimony by its author.

Sometimes, a laboratory report can play a crucial role in a trial. Over the course of a year, a forensic scientist may perform thousands of examinations on hundreds or thousands of cases. It is not unusual for a drug chemist to analyze more than 100 cases per month. Many of them are routine cases containing cocaine, marihuana, heroin, etc. Most of these cases will never be called to court and those that do may not be tried for 1–2 years later. When an old case does come to trial, the scientist may not remember working on that specific case. The only evidence that he or she analyzed the case is his or her notes and the laboratory report. In such situations, the best evidence of the analysis of the evidence is not the scientist, but the lab report! This situation is illustrated below.

Past Recollection Refreshed

Consider the case where a forensic scientist is in court to testify about a case involving the possession of cocaine. He or she analyzed this evidence 18 months ago and has since analyzed hundreds of other cocaine cases and other types of drug cases. He or she wrote a report detailing her findings in this case and has the notes he or she took at the time he or she did her analysis. During direct examination, the prosecutor shows her a bag containing the drug evidence and he asks her if he or she can remember analyzing this evidence. He or she answers that she cannot remember working on this specific bag of white powder. The prosecutor then shows her the lab report that she wrote that details her work on the case, and he asks her if she can now remember working on this case. If the lab report triggers her memory, then she can testify about the case. This is called "past recollection refreshed". The report and notes trigger her memory of the particular case, and then, she can remember analyzing it. Sometimes, having the report and notes is still not enough to refresh the scientist's memory. This gives rise to another possible remedy.

Past Recollection Recorded

If the scientist cannot remember doing the case even after looking at his or her report and his or her notes, then he or she cannot testify about the case but his or her lab report and notes can be admitted as a proof of the facts therein. The report is clearly the most reliable evidence about the case. This is called "past recollection recorded". This means that at the time of the analysis, the scientist took notes and wrote the report. As long as the notes and report can be linked unequivocally to the evidence in court, the report can be used as evidence that the evidence was analyzed even if the scientist cannot remember doing that analysis.

Expert Testimony

So far in this chapter, you have learned that there are two types of real evidence: scientific and nonscientific. There are also two types of witnesses that can offer testimony in court: *expert* and *nonexpert* (*lay*) witnesses. Different rules govern the types of testimony these witnesses are permitted to offer. A lay witness can only testify to matters that he or she witnessed. In this sense, the term "witnessed" means that a person can testify to what they experienced with their five senses (as long as the evidence is relevant and competent). In general, lay witnesses are not permitted to offer opinions except those that any juror would understand and agree with. For example, a lay witness is permitted to testify that it was cold outside when he or she saw the suspect leave the bank. He or she could not, however, testify that a man who was driving erratically was drunk because that would require an expert opinion.

Federal Rule 702, which was presented earlier in this chapter, defines an expert witness as "a witness qualified as an expert by knowledge, skill, experience, training, or education". This statement has several implications. First, the witness must be *qualified as an expert*. This is the judge's responsibility. In a trial, either party can decide that it wants to offer testimony by an expert. The witness is brought into court and the party offering him or her as an expert will ask questions about his or her qualifications to be an expert and the areas of his or her expertise. The other party will then have the opportunity to *voir dire* or challenge the witness. This is a French term that means "to speak the truth". After this, the judge will accept or reject the witness as an expert and indicate the areas of expertise. Note that FRE 702 doesn't require an expert to be a PhD or to be qualified solely by education. Consider the following scenario:

> A man is killed in an automobile crash when he loses control of his car on a steep mountain road. A witness who was following the victim's car noticed that its brake lights were on most of the time but the car did not appear to be slowing down. After the crash, the car is taken to a repair facility for inspection.

Suppose an acquaintance of the victim were accused of tampering with the brakes so that the man would be killed. If there were a trial, then an important issue would be what caused the brakes to fail. How would this be determined? It would do little good to have the jury inspect its brakes because the average juror does not possess the knowledge needed to determine if and how the brakes failed. An expert would be needed to examine the brakes and *offer an expert opinion* about the condition of the brakes. This expert would be a brake mechanic who may have a high school education but who has many years of experience repairing brakes and may have taken classes that specifically addressed issues in how to diagnose and repair malfunctioning brakes. Experience can be just as important as formal education in qualifying an expert. Notice that the expert's testimony in this case consists of opinions about the condition of the brakes. The expert examines the brakes and then draws inferences (conclusions) about what caused them to fail. These inferences are beyond the knowledge of the average person. Therein lies another way of defining an expert witness: a person who is qualified to draw inferences from facts that the average person cannot.

This discussion has highlighted two important differences between an expert witness and a lay witness:

1. An expert witness must be qualified as an expert every time he or she testifies in court.
2. An expert witness is permitted to offer opinions, whereas a lay witness generally cannot.

Sometimes, an expert witness is required to offer an opinion even if he or she would rather not. This is often accomplished in the form of a *hypothetical question*. This tactic is used when an attorney wishes to ask a question that would ordinarily not be permitted. Consider the following situation:

> A forensic pathologist is testifying about the death of a young child. The father has been charged with homicide, specifically for beating the child. The father claims that the child accidentally fell down the stairs. The prosecutor would like to ask the pathologist if the father beat the child, but that question is for the jury to decide and would not be permitted. Instead, the prosecutor will ask the witness to assume (hypothetically) certain facts, in this case, the exact pattern of injuries that the child sustained. Then, the prosecutor would ask for an opinion about whether these injuries are consistent with the child being beaten by a strong adult or they did likely arise from the child falling down the stairs. The prosecutor is counting on the jury to make the connection between the hypothetical set of circumstances and the real circumstances of the case.

Expert Witness in Court

Being an effective witness in court requires that one follows certain guidelines about behavior and comportment in court. A few of the more important rules are given here. Some of them apply to all witnesses, whereas others are for expert witnesses:

- All witnesses are called to a trial with a *subpoena*. This is an order to appear in court for a specific matter on a specific date. A judge signs it. Ignoring a subpoena can put one in contempt of court and result in a jail sentence. For an expert witness, a *subpoena duces tecum* is usually issued. This commands the witness to produce all documents that are relevant to the case. This would include all reports, charts, graphs and notes produced by the witness during the analysis of the evidence.

- When not testifying, all witnesses are usually sequestered and are not permitted in the court room until they are called to testify. This is accomplished by one party or the other, invoking the *rule on witnesses*. Witnesses are instructed not to discuss the case or their testimony while in the waiting room.
- Court testimony by any witness consists of *direct examination* conducted by the party who has requested the witness and *cross-examination* conducted by the other party. This may be followed up by redirect and then recross and so on until both parties have finished asking questions.
- Expert witnesses may consult their notes or reports during testimony, but either attorney may inspect any documents they refer to in court.
- In a jury trial, it is good practice to look at the attorney when being asked a question, but one should focus on the jury when answering the question. If it is a bench trial, then the witness should look at the judge when answering. This is especially important for expert witnesses. Their testimony is most effective when they have established a rapport with the trier of fact.
- Expert witnesses are often called upon to explain complicated scientific or technical matters. It is easy to slip into the language or jargon of the trade. This language would be understood by other experts in the field but not by the average person. It is very important that an expert witness explain difficult concepts using language that the average person would understand.
- All witnesses would do well to remember that a jury or judge is free to give whatever weight they choose to witnesses' testimony. Just because someone is qualified by the judge to be an expert doesn't mean that the jury is required to believe what the witness says.

Bias in the Presentation of Forensic Evidence in Court

In 2004, a train station in Madrid, Spain, was bombed. Many people were killed. The Madrid Police immediately considered this to be an act of terrorism and began to seek out possible suspects. As part of the investigation, they recovered a partial fingerprint from the station and submitted a photograph of the print to the U.S. FBI and asked the bureau to conduct a search of its Automated Fingerprint Identification System (AFIS) to see whether any known terrorists came up on the database (see the chapter on fingerprints for more information on AFIS). An AFIS search normally returns the top 10 or so hits in its database; the closest matches to the submitted fingerprint. A search of the AFIS system yielded one Brandon Mayfield as the fourth best match. Mr. Mayfield was an attorney in the Portland, Oregon, area who had recently converted to Islam and whose wife was Egyptian born. These facts along with the similarities of Mayfield's prints to the print recovered in the bombing led to his being a person of interest in the investigation. An FBI examiner conducted an examination of his prints against the lifted print. No other known fingerprints of any other suspect were examined during this time. The FBI examiner concluded that the print lifted from the scene in Madrid matched one of Mr. Mayfield's prints, and he was subsequently arrested for the bombing. He protested his innocence and hired an attorney to help him. Wanting to protect against an error, the FBI had another examiner compare the prints in question. He was given the case file *including the report of the first examiner*. He supported the conclusion of the first examiner. Then, the file and prints were given to a third FBI examiner. The file included the reports of the first two examiners. The third examiner confirmed the conclusions of the first two.

Mr. Mayfield's attorney then retained the services of an independent expert fingerprint examiner to reexamine the print evidence. He was given access to all of the FBI files on the fingerprint examinations including the conclusions of the three Bureau examiners. Not surprisingly, he confirmed the conclusions of those examiners that Mayfield left the print at the Madrid bombing.

While these examinations were taking place in the United States, the Madrid and Spanish Police were continuing their investigation of the bombing. They were very skeptical of Mayfield's involvement and ultimately arrested a known terrorist suspect for the crime. His fingerprint was a spot on match for the print lifted from the scene. When informed of this development, the FBI sent a fingerprint team to Madrid to examine the fingerprint evidence. They concurred with the conclusions reached by the Spanish Police. Mayfield was released from custody. He was ultimately successful in a wrongful arrest lawsuit filed against the FBI, collecting millions of dollars in damages. Figure 24.2 shows the partial fingerprint lifted from the scene by the Madrid Police as well as the fingerprints from Mayfield and the suspect that the Madrid Police had arrested, which were used for comparison.

The aforementioned case (and others like it) is an example of a *confirmational bias*. This arises from cases where one investigator or examiner confirms the conclusions of another, and it can be shown that part of the reason for the confirmation was the second examiner's knowledge of the conclusions reached by the first examiner. Confirmational bias is just one type of bias that has been shown to have sometimes severe repercussions in forensic analysis and many other types of scientific examinations. Another important type that occurs more frequently and can be more insidious is the so-called *cognitive bias*. This type of bias occurs when an examiner is in possession of knowledge about the case or investigation that may cause him or her to bias his or her analysis or conclusions toward or against this knowledge. An example of this in forensic science was reported by Dr. Itiel Dror in the United Kingdom. Five volunteer fingerprint examiners were each given different known and unknown fingerprints for comparison. Along with the prints, they received made-up case scenarios that described the circumstances under which the prints were obtained. Using this

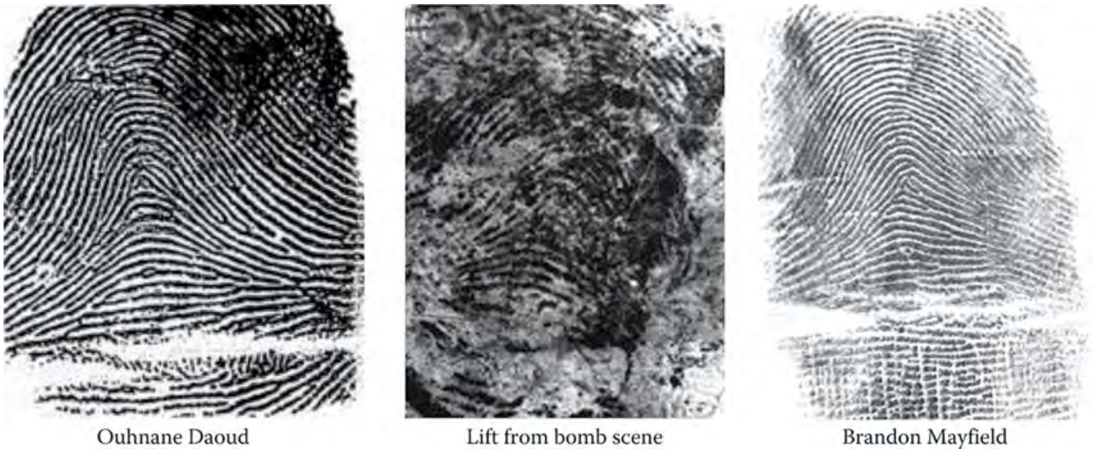

Ouhnane Daoud
Lift from bomb scene
Brandon Mayfield

Figure 24.2 Fingerprints from the Madrid bombing case. The print in the middle is a photograph of the partial fingerprint lifted from the bombing scene. The others are exemplars taken from Mayfield and Daoud.

information, the examiners each reached conclusions about the associations of the unknowns to the knowns. Unbeknownst to the examiners, each of them had received the same evidence in previous casework along with information about the real circumstances that generated the print evidence. The circumstances given them by the researchers were purposely at odds with the original information. The result was that three of the five examiners changed their conclusions to comport to the new information. One did not change his conclusions and the fifth changed his conclusion from a match to inconclusive.

This research illustrates the damaging effects that knowing too much about a case can bias the conclusions reached by the examiner. Cognitive bias is well known by the scientific community at large. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration, for example, requires *double-blind* testing of all proposed new pharmaceuticals before they will agree to permit them to be dispensed to the public. Double-blind testing refers to a methodology whereby a group of people who suffer from the disease or disorder that a new drug is supposed to affect is divided into two groups; one will get the new drug and the other will get a placebo (a fake dosage that looks like the authentic drug). Neither the participants in the study nor the scientists who are administering the drug or placebo know which participants are getting which. This will minimize the chance of cognitive bias influencing the results of the trial. The NAS Forensic Science Committee heard from Dr. Dror and others about cognitive and confirmational bias and felt that this was an area that needed study. Recommendation 5 calls for research on the general topic of human observer bias. Research into cognitive bias is still ongoing; therefore, no bias preventative guidelines have been established in the forensic science community.

Something for You to Do: A Mock Trial

A mock trial is an excellent class project. The class can be divided into teams. The project may begin with a mock crime scene where members of the team collect evidence and perhaps even analyze it. Then, the team is divided up for the trial. There will be a prosecutor, a defense attorney, one or more government expert witnesses and one or more defense expert witnesses. The prosecution team will prepare expert testimony about the evidence that was collected and analyzed, and the defense team will prepare to cross-examine the government's expert(s) and counter with expert testimony of their own. Someone can be appointed to be the judge and other members of the class can be the jury. At the end of the trial, the jury can vote to determine whether the defendant is guilty.

Summary

Scientific and technical evidence is treated differently than nontechnical evidence in our courts because it is difficult to understand by laypersons and because it has an aura of reliability by its very nature. The rules of evidence determine how and when evidence shall be admitted into court. Scientific evidence must obey all of these rules plus additional ones that have been developed by court cases such as *Daubert* and *Frye* as well as the federal and state rules of evidence. Laboratory reports of forensic scientific analysis can be important evidence in criminal and civil cases. They are the written record, along with the scientist's notes, of how a case was analyzed. If a scientist cannot remember doing the case, the report may be the best evidence.

Expert witnesses are treated differently in court than are nonexpert or lay witnesses. An expert must be qualified every time he or she testifies by reciting his or her qualifications. He or she is then subject to cross-examination on those qualifications (*voir dire*). The judge decides if that person can testify as an expert in that case. A person can be an expert by any appropriate combination of knowledge, skills, experience and education.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. *Voir dire* is
   a. A French court
   b. A type of cross-examination about witnesses' qualifications
   c. A set of expert witness qualifications
   d. A famous case that helped shaped the rules for the admissibility of scientific evidence
2. A person can be qualified as an expert on the basis of
   a. Experience
   b. Education
   c. Knowledge
   d. Skills
   e. All of the above
3. In *Daubert v. Merrell Dow*, the U.S. Supreme Court set out some criteria for testing the scientific validity of a scientific method or technique. Which of the following is *not* one of those criteria?
   a. Peer review
   b. Whether anyone has ever offered testimony in a federal court on this topic
   c. General acceptance of the scientific principle
   d. Error rates of the technique
   e. Falsifiability of the underlying theory
4. Which of the following applies to all types of testimony?
   a. Relevance
   b. *Frye v. United States*
   c. *Daubert v. Merrell Dow*
   d. FRE 702
5. Relevance consists of
   a. Competence + admissibility
   b. Materiality + probativeness
   c. Materiality + competence
   d. Hearsay + constitutional constrains
6. Which of the following is not a type of competence (criterion for admissibility of evidence)?
   a. Relevance
   b. Obeys fourth amendment of the Constitution
   c. Prejudice
   d. Privileges

7. In *Daubert v. Merrell Dow*
    a. Mrs. Daubert prevailed because Merrell Dow's experts failed to prove that Bendectin doesn't cause birth defects.
    b. Merrell Dow prevailed because Daubert's epidemiologists didn't use scientifically valid methods for applying statistics to their data about Bendectin.
    c. The U.S. Supreme Court refused to hear the appeal of the trial court.
    d. The U.S. Supreme Court reversed the trial court's decision and awarded Mrs. Daubert damages for Bendectin's harm to her baby.
8. In *Frye v. United States*
    a. The trial court judge admitted the results of the systolic blood pressure deception test but he was reversed by the Court of Appeals.
    b. Frye was found not guilty of murder.
    c. The Court of Appeals set a standard of "general acceptance by the relevant scientific community" for the admissibility of scientific evidence.
    d. The U.S. Supreme Court ruled that the results of the deception test were inadmissible because of the decision in *Daubert v. Merrell Dow*.
9. Scientific laboratory reports
    a. Are never admissible in court
    b. May be admissible in some states if both sides agree
    c. Cannot be the included in a subpoena of a witness
    d. Cannot be viewed in court by anyone other than the scientist who wrote it
    e. Are always admissible in court as a *business records exception* to the hearsay rule
10. There are extra rules that govern the admissibility of scientific and technical evidence because
    a. Juries must be protected from junk science and unreliable or invalid science
    b. Only PhDs can offer expert testimony
    c. The U.S. Supreme Court ruled in *Frye v. United States* that scientific evidence must have extra rules
    d. Courts ruled as far back as medieval times in England that scientific evidence must be accorded special treatment

True or False

11. If evidence is probative, it is always admissible.
12. Properly signed laboratory reports are always admissible in court with our without the author's presence.
13. If a client makes a guilty admission to his or her attorney in private, the attorney cannot be compelled to testify against the client.
14. *Daubert v. Merrell Dow* is an example of a toxic tort case.
15. The *general acceptance* rule was developed in the *Frye* case.
16. An expert witness must have a college degree to be qualified to testify in court.
17. A judge can never be the trier of fact.

Match the Columns

18. Federal Rule 702
19. *Daubert v. Merrell Dow*
20. *Frye v*. United States
21. Competence
22. Relevance

a. Legal constraint on admissibility of evidence
b. Congressional rule concerning scientific evidence
c. Probativeness + materiality
d. Set out general acceptance rule
e. Set out scientific validity standard for evidence

Short Answer Questions

23. What are the two major criteria for the admissibility of evidence? Give an example of each.
24. How does an expert witness differ from a lay witness?
25. Why are there special rules for the admissibility of scientific or technical evidence?

Further Reading

Giannelli, P. C. (1996). *Snyder Rules of Evidence Handbook: Ohio Practice 1996*. West Information Pub Group, New York.

Kiely, T. F. (2001). *Forensic Evidence: Science and the Criminal Law*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Moessens, A. A., Starrs, J. E., Henderson, C. E., and F. E. Inbau. (1995). *Scientific Evidence in Civil and Criminal Cases*, 4th edn. Foundation Press, New York.

On the Web

A brief analysis of the *Frye* case: http://www.daubertontheweb.com/frye_opinion.htm.

Complete Federal Rules of Evidence: http://www.law.cornell.edu/rules/fre/.

Excellent explanation of expert qualifications and testimony by Paul C. Giannelli: http://www.scientific.org/distribution/law-review/giannelli.pdf.

The complete U.S. Supreme Court opinion in *Daubert v. Merrell Dow*: http://supct.law.cornell.edu/supct/html/92-102.ZO.html.

A synopsis of the IAI (International Association for Identification): http://supct.law.cornell.edu/supct/html/92-102.ZO.html

National Commission on Forensic Science accreditation report (2016): https://theiai.org/docs/5.NCFS_AccreditationForensicScienceCertificationBodies.pdf

DOJ 2016 Report on Forensic Science Laboratories: https://www.bjs.gov/content/pub/pdf/pffclqap14.pdf

Paper on Mandatory Certification of Forensic Science Professionals: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S2589871X19301408

25

Forensic Psychology

Stephanie Scott-Snyder

Learning Objectives

1. To be able to define forensic psychology
2. To understand how forensic psychology is used in a criminal case
3. To be able to distinguish between the various areas of forensic psychology
4. To describe the role of forensic psychology in various court proceedings
5. To describe criminal cases that involved the application of forensic psychology

Chapter Outline

- *Learning Objectives*
- *Chapter Outline*
- *Mini Glossary*
- *Acronyms*
- *Introduction*
- *What Is Forensic Psychology?*
    - *Activities of Forensic Psychologists*
    - *Historical Development*
- *Behavioral Evidence Analysis: The Truth About Profiling*
    - *Crime Scene Analysis*
        - *Step 1: Profiling Inputs*
        - *Step 2: Decision-Process Models*
        - *Step 3: Crime Assessment*
        - *Step 4: Building the Profile*
        - *Step 5: Investigation*
        - *Step 6: Apprehension*
    - *Applying Profiling*
- *Treatment and Evaluation of Offenders*
    - *Assessing Insanity*
    - *Case Study: Slender Man*
    - *Evaluating Competency*
    - *Risk Assessment*
    - *Court-Mandated Treatment*
- *Research*
    - *False Confessions*
    - *The Paul Ingram Case*
    - *Memory and Eyewitness Identification*
    - *The Case of Brenton Butler*
    - *Trial Consultation*
- *Summary*
- *Test Yourself*
    - *Multiple Choice Questions*
    - *True or False*
    - *Match Each Term with its Definition*
    - *Short Answer Questions*
- *Further Reading*
- *On the Web*

Mini Glossary

Actus reus: "a guilty act"; a criminal act

Antecedent: trigger or stressor

Clinical psychology: branch of psychology focused on the treatment and evaluation of mental illness

Coerced-compliant confessions: confessions given by suspects who know that they're innocent, but are pressured to confess when under interrogation

Coerced-internalized confessions: confessions offered by innocent people who, through undue pressure, have come to believe that they are or could be guilty

Competency: ability to understand the nature and purpose of court proceedings and to function within them

Crime Scene Analysis: the FBI's process of evaluating behavioral patterns at crime scenes in order to profile violent serial offenses

Criminogenic needs: characteristics, needs or issues that make reoffending more likely

Dynamic risk factors: moods, attitudes and thought processes that fluctuate over time and can be targeted by therapeutic intervention

Estimator variables: elements relating to an eyewitness ID that law enforcement cannot control

Foils: people known to be innocent, who are included in a lineup or photo array; they match the general description of the perpetrator given by the victim or witness

Forensic evaluation: psychological assessment of a justice-involved person's mental status, behaviors, cognitive abilities, etc., used to assist the court/ justice system

Forensic psychology: application of psychological principles to the legal system

Groupthink: psychological phenomenon that occurs when people in a group desire conformity among themselves, to the extent that there is a loss of independent thought

Lineup: process during which a crime victim or witness views a group of people in order to identify a suspect

Mens rea: "a guilty mind"; criminal intent

MO: perpetrator's standard operating procedure; the way in which an offender goes about committing a crime

Persecutory delusions: a form of paranoia whereby a person believes that someone is trying to harm them, despite a lack of proof, or in the face of evidence to the contrary

Photo array: assemblage of photos including the suspect and foils viewed in lieu of a live lineup

Profiling: process of creating a psychological, behavioral, demographic or geographic sketch of the type of person likely to have committed a crime or series of crimes

Psychology: scientific study of the mind and how it affects human behavior

Psychopathy: personality disorder marked by a cluster of interpersonal, affective and socially predatory behavior

Recall memory: ability to retrieve past information

Recognition memory: capacity to recognize previously encountered people, places or things.

Risk management predictors: elements of an offender's environment that indicate stability or lack thereof

Show-up: prejudicial process involving the viewing of one suspect by a victim or witness

Signature: pattern of criminal behavior that fulfills an offender's fantasy and is so distinctive that it is used to connect crimes

Static risk factors: historical/unchanging elements that predict future risk of criminal behavior

System variables: procedural elements that law enforcement can control in order to avoid preventable misidentifications by eyewitnesses

UNSUB: "unidentified subject"; an as of yet unknown offender in a crime or series of crimes

Voir dire: the process of jury selection

Voluntary false confessions: confessions offered willingly and without coercion

Acronyms

CBT	Cognitive behavioral therapy
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
ME	Medical examiner
MO	Modus operandi
NGRI	Not guilty by reason of insanity
PTP	Pretrial publicity
RPP	Relapse prevention plan

Introduction

Popular media has fueled public fascination with the forensic sciences and criminal investigations. Interest in the niche discipline that seeks to understand what makes criminals tick and how mental processes interact with crime has, in part, been driven by shows like *Criminal Minds* and *The Following,* which largely focus on serial murder, sexual predation and mass shootings. Although less flashy than profiling and hunting serial killers, the real-life application of forensic psychology has proven that dissecting an offender's mental state and motivations can benefit investigations, the court and public safety. As a result, forensic psychology has made enormous strides in recent years, thus becoming an integral part of the criminal justice system.

What Is Forensic Psychology?

Psychology is the scientific study of the mind and how it affects human behavior. Its five basic goals are to describe, explain, predict, control and improve behavior.

Over the course of the past several years, interest in the subspecialty of psychology known as forensic psychology has surged due in large part to fictional depictions wherein criminal profilers have an uncanny ability to pinpoint the behavioral traits, lifestyle idiosyncrasies and personality features of an "**UNSUB**" or unidentified subject. Such fictional portrayals about the role of forensic psychology can create confusion with regard to its utility in the real world. Therefore, it's critical to begin by defining the parameters of the field.

Forensic psychology is the discipline that sits at the intersection of psychology and the law. It applies psychological principles to problems faced by the justice system, including understanding how various mental processes impact criminal behavior and evaluating offenders' perception of their own criminal acts or ability to function within the adjudicative process.

Many academics identify two distinct definitions of forensic psychology: a narrow characterization as well as a broader one. The narrower designation views forensic psychology as a subclassification of **clinical psychology,** which is the branch of psychological science focused on the treatment and evaluation of mental illness. Thus, this narrower definition includes only clinical activities relevant to the legal system, such as treatment and assessment of offenders. It precludes research-oriented activities, such as the study of memory, false confessions and eyewitness identification. The narrower scope of the definition also fails to recognize trial consultants as engaging in legitimate forensic psychology. Trial consultants analyze phenomena including how groups make decisions in order to advise attorneys during **voir dire**, the process also referred to as jury selection.

Due to the justice system's increasing reliance on both clinical practice *and* research, there is a school of thought which posits that the narrow clinical definition of forensic psychology is too restrictive because psychological research pertaining to the legal system should be considered forensic psychology. For the purposes of this chapter, the broader definition will be used.

Activities of Forensic Psychologists

Forensic psychologists work as therapists, mental health evaluators and researchers. They don't frequent crime scenes, examine dead bodies, test DNA or analyze blood spatter. They are social scientists who:

- Counsel offenders in jails and prisons as well as those on parole or probation. Such treatment is typically court-ordered which presents challenges for clinicians as offenders may not be invested in therapy or may present as combative, resistant or in denial. Forensic psychologists work to develop a therapeutic alliance, or professional rapport, with clients in order to understand the thoughts, feelings and behaviors that triggered them to commit crimes. Then they work with offenders to help them change maladaptive and dangerous behavioral patterns.
- Evaluate people involved in criminal and civil proceedings. Forensic psychologists weigh in on things like a defendant's state of mind at the time of a crime (insanity), a person's competency to proceed through the judicial process and/or stand trial, or an inmate's risk of future violence.
- Research memory, perception, eyewitness identification, police interrogation methods, jury decision-making, etc. Forensic psychologists study which factors make an eyewitness ID more (or less) reliable. They also drive courtroom strategy by applying their knowledge of body language, bias and group think to trial tactics in headline-making cases such as the Bill Cosby trial.

Historical Development

Ever since society has sought to regulate human behavior by establishing laws, courts have been obligated to determine how best to deal with individuals who, due to mental disease or disorder, are unable to conform their behavior to the requirements of the law.

In 1843, Daniel McNaughten shot and killed the British Prime Minister's Secretary, Edward Drummond in what was a failed attempted to assassinate the British Prime Minister himself. Under questioning, McNaughten reported having experienced **persecutory delusions** which had compelled him to commit the murder. [Persecutory delusions are a form of paranoia whereby a person believes that someone is trying to harm them despite a lack of proof, or the presence of concrete evidence to the contrary.] As a result, McNaughten's mental state became an issue at trial, and he was ultimately found not guilty on the grounds of insanity.

Widespread public upset ensued as people debated the fairness of the verdict. How could someone who'd tried to murder the Prime Minister *not* be held criminally responsible for his actions? To answer this, the House of Lords, which is the upper part of Parliament in the United Kingdom, posed several psychologically-based questions to the British judiciary. Among them: What is the proper standard for insanity?

The McNaughten case was one of the first and most significant attempts to merge psychology with the legal system. The psychological issue of a defendant's mental state at the time of his crime and its bearing on mounting an insanity defense became standardized in the landmark decision known as the "McNaughten Rule". Still in force today, it stipulates that a person is eligible to plead insanity if it is clearly proved that he was acting under "…a defect of reason, from disease of the mind, as not to know the nature and quality of the act he was doing; or, if he did know it, that he did not know he was doing what was wrong".

The late nineteenth century through the early twentieth century was punctuated by several more attempts to incorporate psychological science into the legal system. In Italy, Cesare Lombroso (1836—1909) sought to understand the biological bases of criminal behavior; he became known as the father of criminology. Concurrently, juvenile courts—separate from adult courts—were being developed in the United States, with the first one opening in Illinois in 1899. This led physician William Healy to examine the causes underlying juvenile delinquency. In 1909, Dr. Healy founded the Juvenile Psychopathic Institute and hired psychologist Grace Fernald, who became a pioneer in the diagnosis and treatment of juvenile offenders.

Also during this time period, Sigmund Freud had been developing his theories of personality. His writings about psychopathology strongly influenced thinking about the etiology of criminal behavior. During a speech before a group of Austrian judges in 1906, Freud suggested that psychology could be very useful to the justice system.

In 1908, psychology gained wide recognition for its potential impact on the legal system when researcher Hugo Munsterberg published his controversial book entitled *On the Witness Stand*. The text delved into topics such as eyewitness accuracy, confessions, hypnosis, crime detection and prevention, and fallibility of memory. Munsterberg's purpose in writing the book was to advise the legal system, much as Freud had done, that psychology could make an important contribution to their profession. Munsterberg's central premise was that regarding the use of psychology in the courtroom, "…the individual could not accurately judge the real world that existed outside him, or for that matter the nature and processes of his own mind". Therefore, in order for legal proceedings to be completed accurately, assistance from a psychologist was needed. Munsterberg later became known as the father of forensic psychology.

Behavioral Evidence Analysis: The Truth About Profiling

In film and on TV, criminal profiling is portrayed as a sensational—almost mystical—craft that yields in depth insight into the most dangerous serial offenders. In reality, **profiling** is the development of a psychological, behavioral, demographic or geographic sketch of the type of person most likely to have committed a crime or series of crimes. Through the examination of evidence at crime scenes, profilers construct a description that includes the UNSUB's psychopathology, personality, and criminal history.

There is some debate as to whether criminal profiling should be included in a discussion about forensic psychology because it is more an art than it is a scientific approach to investigation. As such, its results vary widely and it does not have a standard margin of error or confidence interval. In other words, it cannot be determined how often or how consistently profiling will generate correct information. Therefore, it's critical to understand that profiling is only one tool used to help focus investigations; suspects should not be discounted nor should leads be ignored because they don't seem to fit the profile.

The rubric of profiling includes varied approaches to the analysis of criminal behavior, such as extracting identifiable characteristics of known individuals, including political leaders, war criminals and hostage takers. Another more generalist approach involves identifying core characteristics specific to a type of offender: serial killers, for example. Such a profile is based upon information from past crimes and seeks to discern commonalities among offenders, including personality constellation or background. It would answer questions such as, "Are all serial killers alike?" This profiling method draws upon inductive logic, as it assumes that if crimes committed by different offenders share common characteristics, then the offenders themselves must share common characteristics.

However, when most people talk about profiling, they are referring to the Federal Bureau of Investigation's (FBI) process of evaluating behavioral patterns in order to profile violent serial offenses. This procedure is known as **Crime Scene Analysis**.

Crime Scene Analysis employs deductive logic, which is predicated on the idea that physical evidence is a strong indicator of nonphysical (emotional, psychological, behavioral) evidence and therefore an offender's behavior is inextricably linked to their rich fantasy life. Deductive profiling techniques also assume that the more the profiler knows about the victim, the greater the number of conclusions that can be drawn about the offender. From evidence evaluated at the crime scene, profilers extrapolate psychological and/or physical attributes of the unknown offender. With this information, investigators can not only narrow down the suspect pool but also determine crime linkage—or whether offense/behavioral patterns at one crime scene are related to patterns evident at other scenes.

Crime Scene Analysis

In order to assess criminal behavior and offender characteristics, Crime Scene Analysis seeks to identify an UNSUB's MO (modus operandi) and signature. **MO** refers to how a perpetrator goes about committing a crime or series of crimes; it is their standard operating procedure and includes only what is necessary to complete the offense. As the perpetrator gains criminal competence, this protocol evolves, thus reducing the offender's likelihood of being arrested. For example, a first-time burglar might smash a window to gain entry to a home that they targeted. However, recognizing that breaking glass makes noise which may lead to unwanted attention and subsequent apprehension, they may refine this approach and begin using glass-cutting tools or disabling alarm systems and picking locks.

Unlike MO, **signature** rarely changes and is not an act that is required for successful completion of the crime. Rather, its presence signifies the fulfillment (emotional and/or sexual) of the offender's fantasy. A clear illustration of the difference between MO and signature is present in the case of a bank robber who,

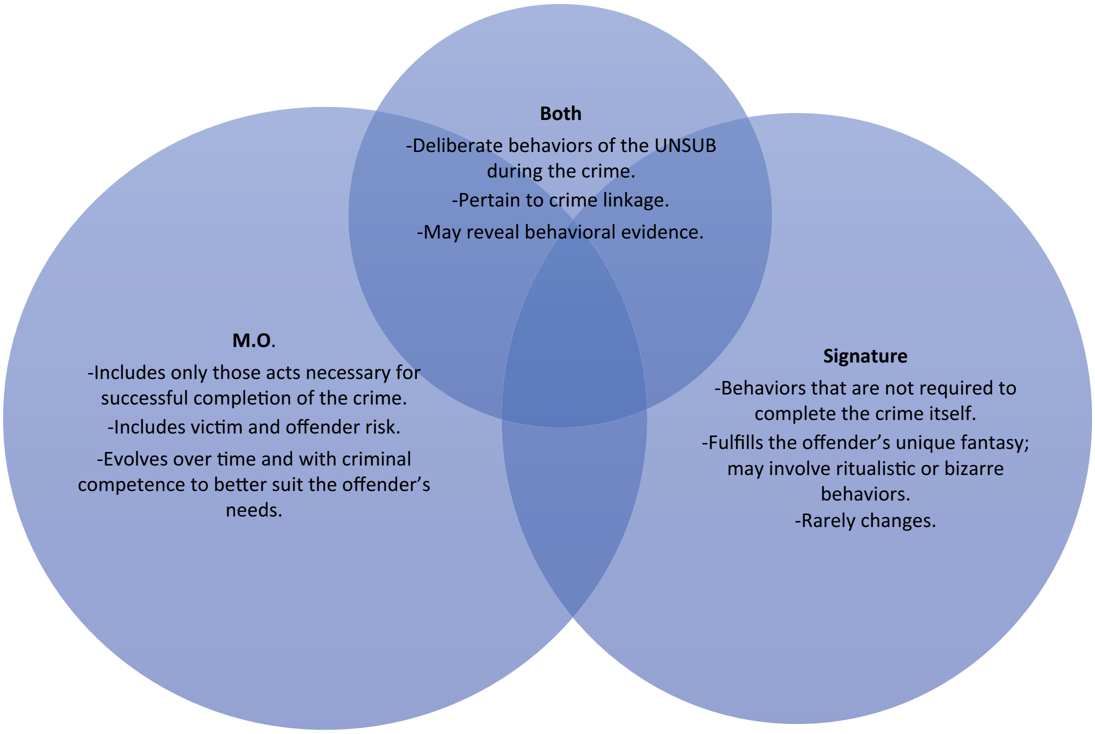

Both
-Deliberate behaviors of the UNSUB during the crime.
-Pertain to crime linkage.
-May reveal behavioral evidence.
M.O.
-Includes only those acts necessary for successful completion of the crime.
-Includes victim and offender risk.
-Evolves over time and with criminal competence to better suit the offender's needs.
Signature
-Behaviors that are not required to complete the crime itself.
-Fulfills the offender's unique fantasy; may involve ritualistic or bizarre behaviors.
-Rarely changes.

Figure 25.1 M.O. vs. Signature

after obtaining money from the bank, forced the individuals present to undress. He then directed them to pose in various positions while he photographed them. Not only did this not assist in the completion of the robbery, it actually hindered the offender's getaway by slowing him down; he remained at the crime scene longer than necessary in order to pose and photograph his victims. Because this was something that the robber was compelled to do for his own idiosyncratic sense of satisfaction, it is classified as a signature. See Figure 25.1 for an overview of MO and signature.

Crime Scene Analysis involves six procedural stages, which help investigators to generate hypotheses about how the crime occurred, why it occurred, the characteristics of the person or persons who committed it, and how to best apprehend the UNSUB.

Step 1: Profiling Inputs

During the initial stage of the profiling process, investigators gather and review all available information pertaining to the case as follows: a detailed description of the crime/crime scene, diagrams and photos of the scene, illustrations of the location(s) of the wound(s) as well as of the scale of crime scene elements and their relation to one another, witness statements, crime scene-specific location information such as the weather conditions and political climate and medical examiner's (ME) findings. Throughout this phase, profilers also piece together **victimology**, which is an overview of the victim's life, such as living situation, employment history, social contacts, medical and/or psychological conditions, personality and reputation.

Step 2: Decision-Process Models

The data collected during the previous stage is analyzed to reveal significant information about the behaviors, motivations and characteristics of the perpetrator. The profiling inputs are arranged into meaningful patterns across seven decision points:

- Homicide classification: (single-victim, spree killing, mass murder or serial murder)
- Motive: (e.g., money/criminal enterprise, emotional disturbance, revenge, sex)
- Victim risk: whether the victim's lifestyle made them vulnerable to attack
- Offender risk: amount of risk taken by the offender to attack a particular victim. When combined with victim risk, this paints an overarching picture of the offender's brashness.
- Potential for escalation: pattern analysis of increasingly violent behavior (i.e., peeping to molestation to sexual assault to sexual homicide)
- Temporal factors: time of day/night when the crime occurred. Also includes the length of time that it took to kill the victim, commit any additional acts at the scene and dispose of the body.
- Location: specifics about where the crime occurred

Step 3: Crime Assessment

During the crime assessment stage, investigators establish the sequence of events before, during and after the crime. Determinations are made regarding each of the following:

- Antecedent: trigger/stressor that set the offender's behavior in motion
- Method/Manner: tactic used to con/abduct/overcome victim; how the victim was killed
- Post-offense behavior: actions of the offender *after* the murder, including returning to the burial site to "visit" the victim, injecting themselves into the investigation, taunting law enforcement, following the case in the news, or reaching out to media
- Body disposal: whether the victim's remains were discarded at the scene, buried, left in the open, moved to a secondary location, hidden, burned, dismembered, etc.

During the third phase of the profiling process, the UNSUB's behavior is also categorized as organized or disorganized (or an amalgamation of the two), based upon characteristics of the crime scene. An organized scene reflects planning and control on the part of the offender, whereas a disorganized crime scene appears unplanned and exhibits a lack of control in addition to elements of impulsivity, disorder, chaos and possible psychosis. Organized offenders are methodical, so they are more likely to engage in careful victim selection than their disorganized counterparts. Additionally, an organized UNSUB is not only more likely to be intelligent, charismatic and emotionally controlled but also to stage the crime scene in a purposeful attempt to mislead detectives (see Tables 25.1 and 25.2).

TABLE 25.1
Organized-Disorganized Crime Scene Characteristics

Organized	Disorganized
Planned, controlled	Impulsive; chaotic
Manipulated the victim with conversation prior to the crime	Little to no conversation with victim
Violence / aggression toward victim prior to death	Sexual acts committed post-mortem
Used restraints to make victim submissive	No restraints used
Weapon brought to the scene	Weapon improvised from the scene
Body hidden / disposed of	Body left exposed at the scene
Transports victim to secondary location	Leaves body at the scene

TABLE 25.2
Organized-Disorganized Offender Characteristics

Organized	Disorganized
Average to above-average intelligence	Below-average intelligence
High birth order, possibly first born	Low birth order
Charismatic; Socially integrated	Socially inept and immature
Sexually competent	Sexually incompetent; Seldom dates
Triggered by stressful event	Minimal situational stress
Married and/or lives with a partner	Lives alone
Geographically mobile	Lives and/or works near the crime scene
Controlled emotions during the crime	Experiences anxiety during the crime
Skilled worker	Unskilled laborer

Step 4: Building the Profile

During this stage, investigators create the profile itself, which consists of an outline of the UNSUB's beliefs, values, criminal history and psychological status, as well as key demographic information.

A typical profile should include the following details about the UNSUB:

- Sex, gender, race, age (differentiating between chronological and emotional age as appropriate)
- Marital/relationship status, including history of divorce or domestic abuse
- Living arrangements
- Occupation/employment status as well as military service history
- Likely psychological diagnoses, history of past treatment, prognosis
- Beliefs and values (including extremist and misogynistic views)
- Anticipated criminal history with consideration for similar/related offenses and/or a developing pattern of escalation
- Expected reactions to law enforcement, such as whether the UNSUB will become violent, commit suicide by cop or inject themselves into the investigation

Step 5: Investigation

Once the profile has been drafted, a report is disseminated to the agency/agencies working the case to advise of investigative recommendations. At this time, suspects matching the profile are evaluated.

Step 6: Apprehension

Based upon the behavioral evidence gathered, investigators are advised as to the safest way to apprehend the UNSUB.

Applying Profiling

The following is a vignette that, although very brief, provides significant insight into the behavioral characteristics and motivations of the offender:

> A 42-year-old female is found stabbed to death on her kitchen floor. There are no signs of forced entry. Autopsy results reveal that the cause of death was multiple stab wounds to the head, neck and face. There are a total of 19 wounds, 7 of which were delivered post-mortem. Forensic analysis concludes that the murder weapon was a carving knife taken from the victim's own collection.

The first impression of this crime is that it was emotionally charged and impulsive. Because the UNSUB did not bring a weapon to the crime scene but rather used a knife from the victim's home, it can be assumed that the killing was unplanned. Additionally, the scene was not staged—this is clearly a homicide and no attempt was made to hide that fact. Therefore, the offender was most likely disorganized.

With regard to the way in which the victim was killed, facial injuries typically indicate a perpetrator who knows their victim well, as this is not only a personal way to kill someone but also a substantial sign of rage. Additionally, there were multiple stab wounds, some of which were delivered *after* the victim was already dead. This is referred to as overkill because more effort was exerted than was necessary to kill the victim. Overkill is also a strong indicator of extreme anger. This behavioral evidence, along with the lack of forced entry, points to a killer who was known to the victim.

Treatment and Evaluation of Offenders

As mentioned earlier in this chapter, certain forensic activities such as evaluations rely heavily on skills rooted in clinical psychology. A **forensic evaluation** is a psychological assessment of a justice-involved person's mental status, behaviors, cognitive abilities and so forth, in order to assist the trier of fact (i.e., judge or jury) or requesting agency (e.g., parole board, children's services) in making decisions. In the criminal arena, such evaluations are often sought in cases where a defendant's sanity, competency or recidivism risk is in question.

Evaluations are typically comprised of three parts: 1) a review of all available documentation about the subject's legal case and psychosocial history, which may include collateral information; 2) the administration of psychometric testing or the completion of evaluation-specific measures; and 3) a clinical interview. It is critical to note that the purpose of an evaluation is to provide psychological information and/or recommendations pertaining to a specific forensic issue (e.g., an offender's risk level for reoffense). While assessments identify a subject's psychopathologies and maladaptive responses, they are not therapy and are never meant to treat these issues.

Assessing Insanity

The word "insanity" is often used in the vernacular to mean bizarre, irrational or extreme. It is also used to refer inappropriately to mental illness or madness. Within the domain of forensic psychology, **insanity** is a legal term that means: "Due to a defect of reason or disease of the mind, the defendant did not know the nature and quality of the act he was doing. As a result, he did not know that what he was doing was wrong" (McNaughten Rule). In other words, as a direct result of mental illness, the defendant was unable to know the difference between right and wrong—at the time of their crime.

Whether or not a defendant meets criteria for insanity is decided by the trier of fact (judge or jury) after considering psychological data from a specialized assessment. An insanity assessment is one of most difficult types of evaluations for a forensic psychologist to conduct because it is retrospective; it seeks to understand an individual's past mental state, specifically at the time of their crime. Insanity assessments are often not ordered until months or even years after the offense occurred.

The need to assess insanity is predicated on the idea that a person who is not aware of their actions should not be held criminally responsible for them; punishment should follow mal intent. In order for someone to be culpable, two things must be present: actus reus and mens rea. Translated from Latin, **actus reus** means "a guilty act" and **mens rea** means "a guilty mind", so the defendant must have engaged in illegal behavior (actus rea) and had an understanding of the implications of their crime or an intent to cause harm.

When assessing insanity, psychologists review the defendant's mental health history and use interviews to query their mental state at the time of the offense. They also use various screening measures with quantifiable variables of psycholegal relevance, such as cognitive control, behavioral control and psychopathology.

It's important to understand that a diagnosis of psychosis or other mental illness does not guarantee a finding of insanity. In order for psychopathology to support insanity, the mental illness must directly correlate with the offender's inability to understand their criminal behavior and form intent. For example, if Mrs. Smith is under the delusion that she can fly, she is suffering from psychosis. After murdering her neighbor, Mrs. Smith wants to plead Not Guilty by Reason of Insanity (NGRI). However, her particular delusion does not seem to interfere with this particular crime. However, if Mrs. Smith has a paranoid delusion that her neighbor is spying on her, poisoning her cat and ultimately plotting to kill her, and *then as a result,* kills the neighbor, she would be eligible to mount an insanity defense.

NGRI is referred to as an affirmative defense because if successful, the defendant is acquitted. However, they will then be mandated to a forensic psychiatric facility until such time as they are deemed to no longer be a danger to themselves or others. This period of time can be longer than the prison sentence would have been had they been found guilty.

Case Study: Slender Man

Morgan Geyser and Anissa Weier entered mental health defenses in the widely-publicized "Slender Man" case. In May of 2014, Geyser and Weier lured their friend Payton Leutner into the woods where they stabbed her 19 times in an attempt to kill her. All three girls were 12 years old at the time.

When interrogated by police, Geyser and Weier appeared relaxed and meek, despite being covered in blood. Investigators reported that the girls didn't seem concerned about Leutner or their own situation. Both girls admitted to having attacked Leutner, and Weier told investigators that they *had* to do it because otherwise, Slender Man would kill their families. Slender Man is a fictional character from a horror story on the internet. He is a faceless man who preys on children. In order to avoid being harmed by him, one must kill someone to prove themselves.

Attorneys for Geyser and Weier argued that together the girls had developed a delusional belief system that precluded them from being held criminally responsible. Anissa Weier was found not guilty by reason of mental disease or defect and sentenced to 25 years in a psychiatric facility. Morgan Geyser, pleaded guilty but not criminally responsible due to mental illness. She was committed to a secure state hospital for 40 years.

Evaluating Competency

Competency refers to a person's ability to understand the nature and purpose of court proceedings and can be called into question at any point in the adjudicative process including but not limited to offering a confession, entering a plea, standing trial or being sentenced.

Dusky v. United States 362, U.S. 402 (1960) was a landmark case that resulted in the standard for competency. *Dusky* requires that in order to be deemed competent, the defendant must have a reasonable degree of understanding about the proceedings and the role of each party involved (prosecutor, defense attorney, judge, jury). It further stipulates that the defendant must have a present ability to function within the court process. Defendants who are able but unwilling to consult with their attorneys or to otherwise participate in their own defense are not incompetent. Additionally, *Dusky* is not concerned with mental illness per se, but rather only to the extent that it compromises "reasonable understanding". Therefore, a history of psychosis does not in and of itself mean that someone is unfit to stand trial.

As competency only deals with an individual's present ability to function, it is possible for a defendant to be deemed sane and then later found incompetent to stand trial or vice versa. When evaluating competency, psychologists gauge the defendant's mental state during the court process. They may ask questions about why the defendant wants to plead guilty and whether they understand the implications of doing so, including punishment (e.g., incarceration, parole, probation) and the relinquishing of certain rights (the right to a trial). A defendant must be in the frame of mind to be able to make decisions that are "knowing, intelligent, and voluntary".

Competency screening measures as well as interviews are used to complete these evaluations. Psychologists may seek the defendant's answers to basic questions such as:

- Do you understand that you have been charged with a criminal offense?
- Can you describe what the offense is?

- Do you understand that you will be tried in a court room?
- Do you understand that there is a judge overseeing the trial?
- Do you understand that there is a prosecutor whose job it is to convict you?
- Do you understand that there is a lawyer whose job it is to defend you?
- Do you understand that you are expected to tell your lawyer, to the best of your ability, all of the facts about your case?
- Do you understand that a jury will determine whether you are guilty or not guilty?
- Do you understand what the penalties could be if you are found guilty?

If found incompetent, a pre-trial defendant is remanded to a psychiatric hospital. They cannot be held for more than a *reasonable* period, usually no more than six months, during which time it is determined whether there exists a substantial probability of restoration of competence. In other words, it must be determined whether the defendant, through psychopharmaceuticals or other treatment, will likely attain the capacity to stand trial in the foreseeable future.

Risk Assessment

The primary goal of risk assessment is to make predictions about an individual's future behavior based on factors that are combined into a predictive scheme. An individual's likelihood to reoffend is relevant to the imposition of the death penalty, appropriateness of parole or probation, and the tiering and supervision of sex offenders.

Psychologists assess three types of factors when determining risk: static, dynamic and risk management. **Static factors** are features of a person or historical events that cannot be changed. Examples include past violent behavior, early maladjustment, attempted or successful escapes from psychiatric facilities and psychopathy. **Psychopathy** is a cluster of interpersonal, affective and socially predatory behavior. Psychopaths are charming, manipulative and lack remorse for harming others. **Dynamic factors** are moods, attitudes and thought processes that fluctuate over the course of time and can be changed through therapeutic intervention, such as lack of insight into oneself, negative emotionality, hostility toward women and the nature and quality of social relationships. **Risk management predictors** focus on the offender's current environment, or that in which they will live post-release. Positive environments that consist of stable housing, employment and support networks are associated with a lower risk of recidivism.

Court-Mandated Treatment

Oftentimes, offenders are court-mandated to counseling for crimes including assault, domestic violence, substance abuse, child neglect and sexual violence. Treatment corresponds to the particular offender's **criminogenic needs**, or those characteristics, needs or issues that make reoffending more likely and can range from misogynistic attitudes to addiction to psychosis to poverty.

Psychologists often use an approach called cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) to target offense-specific behaviors. CBT is based on the premise that thoughts, feelings and behaviors are interconnected. Negative thoughts can lead to unwanted feelings and then result in maladaptive or criminal behavior. Learning to change unhealthy thoughts or assumptions leads to changing negative emotions into more positive ones, which can help the patient avoid acting out criminally.

For example, if Mr. Jones is turned down for a date, he might jump to the incorrect thought, “women hate me” or “I’m not good enough”. These distorted thoughts can lead to feeling depressed, angry, ashamed and struggling with poor self-esteem. If Mr. Jones lacks appropriate coping skills, these emotions might result in him drinking heavily, using drugs, or acting out aggressively toward a female target.

Throughout the course of treatment, clients identify a behavior chain or offense cycle comprised of the thoughts, feelings and behaviors that led up to their crime. Once this is clearly established and they have gained insight into their criminal patterns, they can then build a safety plan or relapse prevention plan (RPP) to help them avoid reoffense. An RPP includes identifying and recognizing triggers which can be situational (e.g., hanging out with friends who use drugs), emotional (e.g., feeling lonely, bored, depressed, angry, etc.) or cognitive (e.g., thinking “I’m not good enough” or “I can get away with committing this crime one more time”). These unhealthy experiences are replaced by healthy coping mechanisms such as the development of a pro-social support system.

Offense-specific treatment is usually done in groups. When the group dynamic is working well, group members will confront one another on issues such as denial, minimization, distorted thinking and engaging in risky behavior that could lead to a criminal relapse. The clinician continues to redirect clients and tease out conscious and subconscious patterns of maladaptive thinking and their connection to emotion and behavior (see Figures 25.2 and 25.3 for examples of how negative thinking leads to criminal behaviors, versus how positive thinking leads to prosocial behaviors).

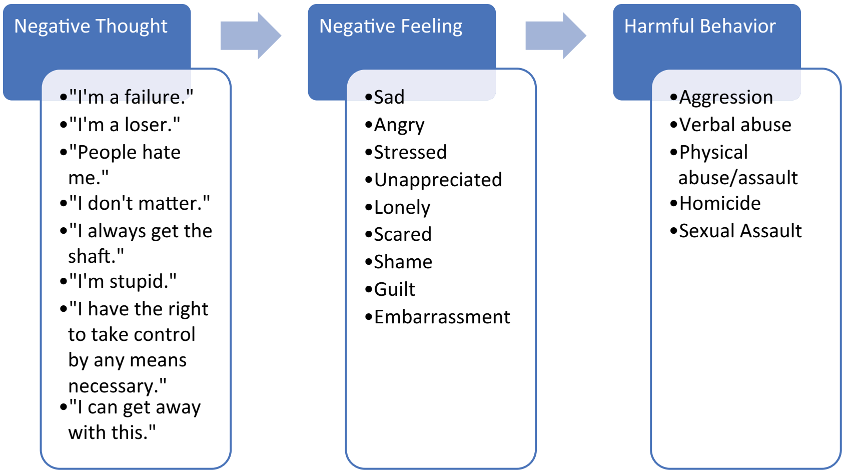
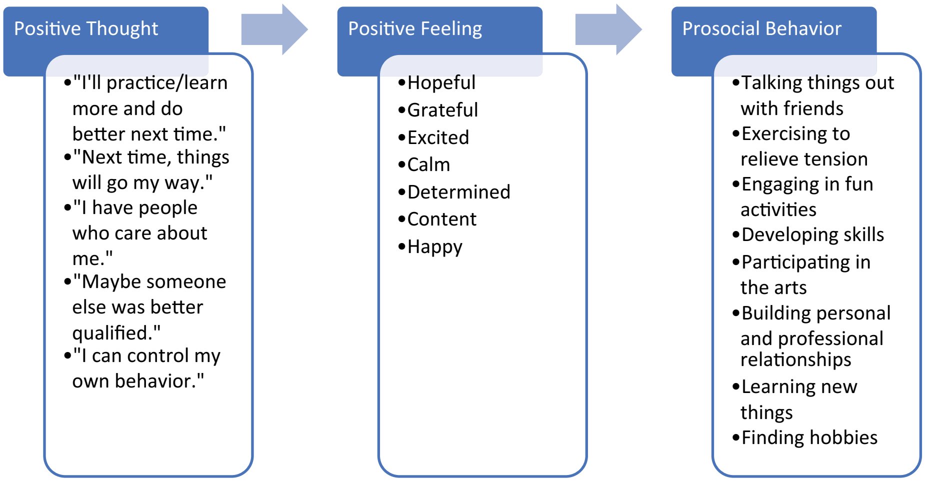

Negative Thought
•"I'm a failure."
•"I'm a loser."
•"People hate me."
•"I don't matter."
•"I always get the shaft."
•"I'm stupid."
•"I have the right to take control by any means necessary."
•"I can get away with this."
Negative Feeling
•Sad
•Angry
•Stressed
•Unappreciated
•Lonely
•Scared
•Shame
•Guilt
•Embarrassment
Harmful Behavior
•Aggression
•Verbal abuse
•Physical abuse/assault
•Homicide
•Sexual Assault

Figure 25.2 How negative thinking leads to criminal behaviors.



Positive Thought

- "I'll practice/learn more and do better next time."
- "Next time, things will go my way."
- "I have people who care about me."
- "Maybe someone else was better qualified."
- "I can control my own behavior."

Positive Feeling

- Hopeful
- Grateful
- Excited
- Calm
- Determined
- Content
- Happy

Prosocial Behavior

- Talking things out with friends
- Exercising to relieve tension
- Engaging in fun activities
- Developing skills
- Participating in the arts
- Building personal and professional relationships
- Learning new things
- Finding hobbies

Figure 25.3 How positive thinking leads to prosocial behaviors.

Research

Research-based endeavors for forensic psychologists encompass trial consultation, the study of psycholegal topics such as false confessions, memory and the veracity of eyewitness identification, and the provision of subsequent expert testimony with regard to research findings.

False Confessions

A confession is considered to be one of, if not the most significant piece of evidence at trial. Therefore, it's critical for psychologists to delve into the reasoning behind why people confess to crimes that they didn't commit. There are three types of false confessions: voluntary, coerced-compliant and coerced-internalized.

Voluntary false confessions are those that are offered willingly; they are not coerced, provoked or elicited. The reasons why people voluntarily confess are varied. Some do so because they experience generalized guilt for other, often unrelated, offenses. Others confess to a lesser crime than that which they actually committed in an attempt to avoid more serious punishment. For example, if a suspect committed a murder, but is *only* being questioned in relation to a burglary, they might confess to the burglary in the hope that the murder investigation will not focus on them. Another reason for volunteering a false admission is the desire to protect someone else. For instance, a mother may falsely confess to a crime that she believes her son or daughter committed. Still others who falsely confess may do so because they are seeking attention or fame. Such statements may be indicative of psychosis.

Coerced-compliant confessions are those given by suspects who know that they're innocent but are pressured to confess during the interrogation. Between 39% and 48% of all interrogations result in a confession, while another 13% to 16% end with the suspect making self-incriminating statements. Research reveals that standard interrogation tactics can lead to false confessions because the suspect may confess to avoid further interrogation, to gain a promised benefit such as a plea bargain or to avoid threatened harm, like the death penalty.

The last classification of false confession is **coerced-internalized confessions.** These occur when undue stress from an acutely intense police interrogation results in the suspect's heightened suggestibility to the extent that they believe they may actually be guilty. The suspect becomes confused, and as the interrogator expresses more and more confidence in their guilt, the suspect ultimately has difficulty differentiating truth from falsehood.

The Paul Ingram Case

After a religious retreat sponsored by his family's church, husband, father and state deputy Paul Ingram was accused of ritualistic sexual abuse. The allegations were made by his daughter Ericka who alleged that her father had abused her since childhood. Subsequently, Ingram's other daughter Julie also alleged abuse that consisted of killing babies. As a result, Ingram was charged with multiple felonies.

Following the allegations, Ingram was arrested and jailed for a period of five months, during which time he was interrogated 23 times. He initially denied having committed the assaults. However, after encouragement from his pastor to confess and following a conversation with a forensic psychologist working on the case who informed Ingram that sex offenders often repress memories of their crimes due to the heinous nature inherent to such offenses, Ingram's story began to change. He stated that he couldn't explain the accusations, but his daughters had not been raised to lie. Ingram's initial response of "I didn't do it" was soon replaced by "I don't remember doing it", and finally, "If this did happen, we need to take care of it".

Despite having no recollection of ever abusing his children, Ingram later reported that he believed that the allegations had occurred and that he had repressed it. "My girls know me. They wouldn't lie about something like this". In response to later leading questions by investigators and undue suggestion, Ingram reported being able to visualize details of the abuse and thus offered a confession in which he confabulated elements of the crimes.

After interviewing Ingram, psychologist Richard Ofshe testified as an expert in the case. He determined that the interrogation process—which included hypnosis—had "brainwashed" Ingram into believing that he had committed the various offenses and ultimately resulted in a false confession. To test his theory, Ofshe suggested to Ingram that he had forced his son to have sex with one of his daughters. Such an allegation had never been made against Ingram, yet after repeated and suggestive questioning, Ingram reported that he could "remember" the incident and wrote a lengthy account of incestuous activity, including excessive detail.

As a result, Ofshe testified that he had serious doubts as to Ingram's guilt and rather viewed him as a highly suggestible person with an unhealthy desire to please authority figures. Despite Ofshe's objections and a complete lack of physical evidence, Ingram pleaded guilty to six counts of rape in the third degree and was sentenced to 20 years in prison. Ingram later came to believe in his innocence, but the appeal filed by his attorneys was denied.

Memory and Eyewitness Identification

Understanding how memory functions is critical when evaluating witness statements. Memory is not simply a mental video that can be rewound and played back to show the same exact depiction of an event over and over. In fact, every time that a memory is retrieved, it can be different; certain details may be embellished or others minimized. Still other parts may be confabulated to fill gaps where the particulars can't be recalled.

Eyewitness memory is divided into two categories: recall and recognition memory. **Recall memory** is the ability to retrieve past information. When applied to eyewitness memory, it is the recounting of facets of a previously witnessed person or event (e.g., a crime). Describing the offender's clothing is an example of a recall task. In contrast, **recognition memory** refers to the capacity to recognize previously encountered people, places or things. Therefore, when an eyewitness views a police lineup and determines whether the person that they saw commit the crime in question is the same person they see in the lineup, recognition memory is being utilized.

Therefore, it's clear that memory and the veracity of eyewitness identification are inextricably linked.

In addition to memory, the reliability of eyewitness testimony is also impacted by the witness's level of suggestibility, self-confidence, desire to conform and please authorities, circumstances surrounding the viewing of the offense and police identification procedures.

Forensic psychological research notes that the conditions present when a person witnesses a crime as well as the methods used by investigators can impact the veracity of eyewitness identification. **Estimator variables** are those things over which law enforcement has no control, such as the witness's eyesight, the distance that they were from the crime and/or perpetrator, the time of day (light vs. dark), the length of time that the witness was in the offender's presence and the witness's state of mind (stressed, fearful, etc.). It stands to reason that the precision of an identification made by a person who was five yards from a perpetrator for 10 minutes in broad daylight versus that made by a witness who fled from a crime fifty yards away and who ducked after hearing gunshots would differ.

System variables on the other hand are procedural elements that law enforcement can regulate in order to avoid preventable misidentifications. These include the way in which the witness is interviewed, the presentation of the lineup or photo array and the presence of video and/or audio recording during the interview with the witness. With regard to interviewing practices, questioning is less likely to yield accurate information if the officer interrupts the witness, fails to pose relevant questions or asks closed-ended or leading questions, as opposed to allowing the witness to offer an open-ended report. Additionally, the presentation of incorrect information or information inconsistent with the witness's recollection can lead to memory interference. For example, if the witness remembers seeing three bank robbers, but the investigator questions them about the *four* suspects involved, the witness may then report that they saw four people, even if they only saw three. Detectives should never interview witnesses in the midst of chaotic conditions, when they are distracted, traumatized or injured, or when witnesses are within earshot of one another, as doing so can cause memory interference.

In addition to inadequate questioning techniques, suggestive visual identification methods can lead to false identification. When witnesses view a lineup**,** they are more likely to make a correct ID if the individuals in the lineup are presented sequentially rather than simultaneously. A witness who looks at multiple potential suspects at once is more likely to compare them to each other rather than to their memory of the offender, while a witness who views the suspects individually, one after the other, is more likely to compare said suspects to their memory. A

lineup is defined as a group of people that includes the suspect and **foils** or known innocents who match the witness's description of the offender (e.g., height, build, race, facial hair, etc.). When showing a **photo array**, or an assemblage of photos including the suspect and foils instead of a live lineup, images should also be presented sequentially.

A third identification procedure, known as a **show-up**, is particularly prejudicial, and research indicates that it often leads to misidentification. During a show-up, police show the witness a single suspect and ask whether he or she is the offender.

The Case of Brenton Butler

Fifteen-year-old Brenton Butler was arrested and tried for the fatal shooting of a tourist in Jacksonville, Florida. He allegedly shot the woman in the head in front of her husband before fleeing from the scene. The prosecution's case was heavily based upon an eyewitness identification made by the victim's husband as well as on Butler's own confession. The victim's husband ID'd Butler during a show-up conducted by police. Additionally, Butler reported that during the course of the interrogation, he had been physically abused, threatened and coerced into offering a confession.

Butler's public defenders provided photographic evidence of bruises he sustained while in police custody. Butler was acquitted, with a member of the jury citing testimony about the nature of the interrogation as a deciding factor. The State Attorney's Office ultimately reopened the case and pursued two suspects unrelated to the first proceeding and who were later convicted of the murder.

Trial Consultation

Trial consultation is another research-based area of forensic psychology. It involves the evaluation of multiple topics, including the effects of pretrial publicity (PTP) or the media attention garnered by a particular case prior to trial, and which can result in a tainted jury pool.

Trial consultants assist attorneys by advising on trial strategy, preparing witnesses and assisting with voir dire. In order to tackle these issues, an understanding of **groupthink** is critical. Groupthink is a psychological phenomenon that occurs when people in a group so desire conformity among themselves that there is a loss of individuality and independent thought. Therefore, people are less likely to raise opposing views, which can lead to dysfunctional decision-making by the group as a whole.

Summary

Forensic psychology is the application of psychological principles to problems faced by the justice system. It encompasses the evaluation of an offender's mental state at the time of their crime (insanity) and throughout the adjudicative process (competency), as well as their likelihood to reoffend (violence risk). Another facet of forensic psychology is the treatment of convicted persons. Through therapy, criminogenic needs are targeted and offenders develop an understanding of the thoughts, feelings and behaviors that led to their crimes. They also gain insight into their offense-specific situational, emotional and cognitive triggers and in turn create a relapse prevention plan geared toward healthy, non-criminal behavior. In addition to treatment and evaluation, forensic psychology includes psycholegal research on topics such as memory, false confessions, eyewitness identification and jury decision-making. Through empirical data and clinical judgment, forensic psychologists aid in the understanding of human behavior and its relationship to the law.

Test Yourself

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The broad definition of forensic psychology includes not only research but also the ______ of psychological concepts to the criminal justice system.
   a. Enhancement
   b. Application
   c. Evaluation
   d. Assessment
2. Which type of crime scene suggests planning, premeditation and control on the part of the offender?
   a. Disorganized
   b. Mixed Manic
   c. Organized
   d. Psychopathic
3. How is insanity determined?
   a. By evaluating an offender's mental state at the time of the offense
   b. By evaluating an offender's mental state at the time of trial
   c. By seeing how much progress an offender makes in therapy
   d. By identifying changeable risk factors such present in the offender's life
4. How does the justice system view competency?
   a. The defendant must be able to communicate with his / her attorney
   b. The defendant must be aware of what is happening at every stage in the adjudicative process.
   c. The defendant must understand the role of the jury.
   d. The defendant must be competent to be executed.
5. This researcher wrote *On the Witness Stand* and is considered the founder of forensic psychology.
   a. Caesar Lombroso
   b. William Healy
   c. Sigmund Freud
   d. Hugo Munsterberg
6. What is a static risk factor?
   a. An unchanging risk factor such as a history of violence
   b. A risk that can be targeted by treatment such as negative emotionality
   c. A changeable risk such as a history of violence
   d. None of the above
7. When profiling a crime, investigators often notice that the ___________ changes as the offender learns to better facilitate his/her crime. However, the ________ does not change.

   a. Modus operandi / signature
   b. Signature / modus operandi
   c. victimology / signature
   d. Signature / taken items

8. What type of confession was offered by Paul Ingram?
   a. Voluntary false confession
   b. True voluntary confession
   c. Coerced internalized confession
   d. Coerced compliant confession
9. With regard to eyewitness identification, which of the following is NOT a system variable?
   a. Style of questioning
   b. Presence/absence of videotape procedures
   c. Distance from the defendant at the time of the crime
   d. Nature of photo array
10. For a confession or plea to be valid (i.e., given competently), it must be offered:
   a. Quickly
   b. Without recantation
   c. In a manner that is knowing, intelligent and voluntary
   d. Under duress

True or False

11. John is currently on trial for murder. His attorney can raise the issue of his competence at any point in the adjudicative process.
12. People who voluntarily give a false confession do so for numerous reasons, including believing that they committed the crime and being coerced to confess.
13. Dynamic risk factors change over time and indicate therapeutic intervention
14. When building a sketch of an UNSUB, profilers should be presented with the names of all potential suspects.

Match Each Term with its Definition

15. mens rea
16. groupthink
17. photo array
18. signature
19. MO
20. system variables

a. psychological phenomenon that occurs when people in a group desire conformity
b. “a guilty mind”; criminal intent
c. procedural elements that law enforcement can control to avoid preventable misidentifications by eyewitnesses
d. assemblage of photos including the suspect and foils viewed in lieu of a live lineup
e. pattern of criminal behavior that fulfills an offender’s fantasy and is so distinctive that it is used to connect crimes

Short Answer Questions

21. Explain the relationship between mental illness and legal criteria for insanity.
22. Describe the treatment goals of CBT.
23. What is the difference between recall memory and recognition memory?
24. Discuss the problems with the case against Brenton Butler. What was done wrong, and what *should* law enforcement have done?
25. What is the difference between insanity and competency?

Further Reading

Introduction to Forensic Psychology: Essentials for Law Enforcement (Stephanie Scott-Snyder)
Minds on Trial: Great Cases in Law and Psychology (Charles Patrick Ewing, Joseph T. McCann)
Criminal Profiling: An Introduction to Behavioral Evidence Analysis (Brent Turvey)
The Cases that Haunt Us (John Douglas, Mark Olshaker)
Mindhunter: Inside the FBI's Elite Serial Crime Unit (John Douglas, Mark Olshaker)
Confession of a Serial Killer: The Untold Story of BTK (Katherine Ramsland)
Without Conscience (Robert Hare)
When Women Offend: Crime and the Female Perpetrator (Stephanie Scott-Snyder)

On the Web

https://ap-ls.org
https://apa.org
https://vault.fbi.gov/Criminal%20Profiling
https://www.crimemuseum.org/crime-library/
Murder on a Sunday Morning: The Brenton Butler Story (Video documentary)
Crimes Unlimited (True Crime Podcast)

INDEX

Page numbers in **bold** refers table; *italics* refers figure.

A

ABO blood typing system, 434–436, 447, 465, 466
abuse cases, 404
  forensic odontology, 393
abused drugs
  same as “illicit drugs”, 510
accelerant concentration, 610, 621–623, 633
accelerant detection, 172, *173*, 181, *181*
accelerant detector dog (ADD), 181, *181*
accelerant residues, 619, 633
  concentration methods, 621–623
  separation from fire debris, 621
accelerants, 617, 618, 633
  analysis, 624–625
  chromatographic libraries, 624
  definition, 610
  detection and collection, 620–621
  identification by gas chromatography, 621
  role, 620–621
accidental death, 353, 358, *358*, 369
accidental fires, 611–612
accidental whorl, 256, 264
accident investigation
  EDR role (case study), 242–243
  mechanical failure, 232
accident reconstruction, 51, 224–238, 239
  definition, 212, 215
  education and training, 225
  investigative procedures, 226
  post-scene analysis, 226–228
  post-scene analysis (“black box”), 228–234
  at scene, 226–227
  vehicular collisions and physics, 224–225, *225*
accidents, 213, 215
  DUI, 237
  multivehicle chain reaction incident, *238*, 238
  road and weather conditions, 237–238, *238*
accident scene, 213, *214*
  scale drawing, 228, *229*
accreditation, 30–32, **652–653**
acetaldehyde, 545, *546*
acetic acid, 545, *546*
acidic substances, 98–99
acrylic fibers, 76, *159*, **562**
activated charcoal (fine carbon powder), 622
activation energy (heat), 613, 614, *614*, 616, 617, 626, 632
Activity Log, 198
actus reus, 674
  definition, 664
addiction
  definition, 534
additions, 303–305, *305*; *see also* alterations
adenine (A), 459, *460*, 462–463, 468
adipic acid, 560, *561*
admissibility of evidence, 57, 70, 78, 193, 294, 407, 426, 428, 643–650
  competence, 645–646
  Daubert versus Merrell Dow case (1993), 648–650
  federal rules, 648
  field sobriety testing, 550
  handwriting comparisons, 291
  relevance, 645, 646
  scientific evidence (development of rules), 647–648
  scientific evidence (general acceptance standard), 647
Adobe Photoshop®, 53
adsorption, 92, 101, 610, 622, *623–624*
African-Americans, 469–472, **474**, 581
agarose, 114
age, 9, 499
agglutination, 434–435, *435*, **436**, 447
  definition, 425
  website, 452
AIDS, 465, 525
airbag control module (ACM), 234–235, 242
  functions, 235
Airbag Module Download, 242
aircraft carrier fire (Norfolk, Virginia), 620
air scenting, 171, 178–179
alcohol, 108, 110, 363–364, 510, 512, 535–537
  combination with barbiturates “can cause death”, 519
  testing levels, 548
alerts, 170, 178, 183
algor mortis, 352, 365–366
alkali ingredients (fluxes), 588
alkaline solution, 429
alkaline substances, 98–99
alleles, 448, 461–462, 463, *467*, 470
  definition, 456
  dominant versus recessive, 462
  frequencies, 471–472
  separation and detection, *472*
alpha-amylase test, 438
alterations, 298; *see also* charred writing
altered bloodstains, 425, *446*, 457
aluminum oxide (Al_2O_3), 110, 588
alveoli, 538, *538*, 545
amelogenin, 471, 473–474
  definition, 456
American Academy of Forensic Sciences (AAFS, 1950–), 8, 15, 18
  website, 19, 20
American Board of Criminalistics (ABC), **652**
American Board of Document Examiners, **652**
American Board of Forensic Anthropologists, **652**

American Board of Forensic Document Examiners (ABFDE), 290, 291
American Board of Forensic Entomology (ABFE), 409, **652**
  homepage, 419
American Board of Forensic Odontology, **652**
American Board of Forensic Pathology, 354
American Board of Forensic Psychology, **653**
American Board of Forensic Toxicology, 536, 555, **653**
American Board of Medical Specialties (ABMS), **652**
American Board of Medicolegal Death Investigators, 31, **652**
American Board of Pathologists, **652**
American Journal of Police Science (1930–), 14
American Registry of Professional Entomologists (ARPE), 409
American Society of Crime Laboratory Directors (ASCLD), 18
American Society of Questioned Document Examiners (ASQDE), 290
  website, 314
Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA, 2020), 171–172
amide, 560
ammonia, 99, 518
ammonium hydroxide (NH_4OH), 99, 100
ammonium nitrate (NH_4NO_3), 626
ammonium nitrate and fuel oil (ANFO), 626, 630
ammunition
  digital imaging systems, 325, 335
  primers, 163
amorphous solids, 586, 587, 602
amphetamines, 512, 519
  infrared spectra, *135*
  legitimate uses, 518
  structure, 134, *134*
amplified fragment length polymorphisms (AMP-FLPs), 470
anaerobic bacteria, 367, 415
anagen phase, 486, *490*, 490, 491, 495, 501
analysis area (in laboratory), 26–27
analyte, 102–111 *passim*, 113, 115, 116
  definition, 92
analyte components
  detections, 111–112
analytical chemistry, 536
analyzer, 144, 158–159
anatomic pathology, 352–354, 368
AncestryDNA, 478
Android OS, 200
angel dust, *see* phencyclidine
animal hair, 495–496, *496*
  microscopic characteristics, 495
animals, factor affecting PMI, 416
anisotropic materials, 158–159, 166
anisotropic property, definition, 144
annealing, *469*, 469
  definition, 456
antecedent, definition, 664
antemortem
  definition, 374
  evidence, 376
anthropology, definition, 374
anthropometry, 251
  definition, 249
antibodies, 432, 434–436, 447
  definition, 425
antigens, 432, 447, 458
  definition, 425
  red blood cell, 434–436
antilock brake system (ABS), 236, 242
antimony, 326, 330
antiserum, 432, 447
ants, 415, 417
Apple iOS devices, 200
appliance malfunction fire, 619
appropriate personnel, 44
archeology, 43, 44, 46, 69, 376, 390, 393, 402
arches, 249, 264
Argentina, 252
argon ion laser, 260
arson, 612, 615, 618–620
arson statistics (2002–2018), **616**
arthropods, 403, 404, 409, 415–417
  role in decomposition of corpses, 412–413
artistic paints, 571
asbestos, origin, **562**
aspect ratio, 273
aspermic males, 437, 438
Associated Press, *11*
Association of Firearm & Toolmark Examiners, **652**
Atlanta, 581
  ransomware attack, 207–208
attempted manufacture (of target drugs), 509
Attorney General, 20, **33**, 33–34, 354
Australia, 6
Australian "Body Farm", 390
Austria, 409
authentication, 42, 57
Automated Fingerprint Identification Systems (AFIS), 32, 34, 266–267, 275–276, 283, 284, 657
  human element, 267
automatic video system, 52
automobile crashes, 11
automobile crime scenes
  presence of glass, 589
automobile windows (tempered glass), 589
automotive paint analysis, 574–577
  chemical properties, 575–577, 578
  physical properties, 574, *575*, 578
automotive paint (chemical properties), 575–577
  chromatography, 575
  color layer sequence, 574, *574*
  infrared microspectrophotometry, 575, *577*
  paint smears, 577
  pigments, 577
  solubility, 575, 578
automotive paint evidence
  collection, 572–574
automotive paint layers, 572, 578
automotive paints, 571, 572–578
  evidentiary value, 577
autopsies, 8–9, 15, 354, 356, 358–360, 404, 673
  contribution to medical advances, 359
  definition, 352
  religious objections, 358, 359
  safety requirements, 31
  website, 9; *see also* medicolegal autopsies
autosomes, 460, *462*

B

Backdraft (Universal Studios, 1991), 47
backscattered electrons, 163, *162*
  definition, 144

bacteria, 412, 414
Bain, James, 483
Baldo murder case (1992), 476–477
ballistics, 318, 321, 335
barbiturates, 363–364, 512, 519, 535, 541–542
    use in death sentences, 519
bar codes, *26*, 26, 57
barium particles, 330
barrel, class characteristics, *323*
barrels, 332
    size, 325
baseball pitcher, 322
baseline evidence, 56
baseline standards, 32
base pairs (bp), 459–463, 468, 470, 471, 474–475, *475*
base pair sequences, 461, 463
base peak, 136
basic (*versus* “acidic”) substances, 98–99
Becke line, 586, 597, *596–597*, 599, 603, 604
bed bugs, 185
beetles, 12, 412, *413*, 414–415, 417
behavioral evidence analysis, 668–673
behavioral forensic sciences
    definition, 5
bench trial, 644
    definition, 642
Bendectin (drug), 649
Benjamin Cardozo School of Law, 458
benzene, *131*, 509
benzocaine, 516
benzodiazepines, 520
Bertillion, Alphonse, 251
best evidence rule, 290
    definition, 288
best practice, 28, 30, 31, 34, 184, 573
bias, 29, 30, 283–284, 657–659, 667
binocular microscope, 144, 150, 153, 154, 156
biological evidence
    deficiencies, 458–459
    protective clothing, 465
    special packaging, 60
biological fluids, 427
    saliva, 438, 447
    semen, 437–438, 447
    vaginal secretions, 438, 447
biological profile
    age, 381–383, 393
    class characteristics, 380–381
    individual characteristics, 381
biometric signature pads, 307
birth defects, 649
Bishop, Robin (case study), 346–348
Bitcoin, 194, 207
bite marks, 10, 392–393
    Bundy case study, 398–399
black box
    same as airbag control module (ACM), 234
Blackman, Ralph, 608
black powder, 327, 626, *631*
    definition, 610
blast pressure, 630
block polymers, 560
blood, 55, 71, 268, 331, 403, 458, 459, 491, 536, 544, 551, 620
    basic information, 427, *428*
    chemical tests, 431, *431*
    confirmatory tests, 431, *431*
    crystalline tests, 15
    definition, 425
    evidence packaging, 60
    evidence preservation, 428
    phenolphthalein test, 80
    physical properties, 438–439
    positive and negative controls, 80
    positive identification, 428–429
    postmortem, 365, 368
    viscosity, 439
blood alcohol concentration (BAC), 544–552
    maximum, 546–547
    measurement, 550–551
blood analysis, 14, 75, 368, 428–436
    confirmatory tests, 429, 431, 447
    drug detection, 500
    fluorescein, 429, 430, *430–431*
    locating blood on objects, 429
    luminol, 429–430, *430*
    photography and videotaping, 428
    preliminary considerations, 428–429, 447
    screening tests, 429, 447
blood analysis (species determination), 432–436, 447
    blood enzyme markers, 436
    genetic markers in blood, 434–436
    red blood cell antigens, 434–436
blood droplets, 438–439, *439–440*, *448*
blood enzyme markers, 436
blood groups, 434, *434*, **436**
    properties, **435**
blood samples, 360, 465
blood spatter, 48, 64, 422, 426, 439, *441*
    apparent (actually insect or larvae action), 416
    arterial spurts, 445, *445*, **446**
    cast-off pattern, 445, *445*, **446**
    expirated, *445*, 445–446, **446**
    projected, 445
    size and shape, 445, 447
    type of bloodstain pattern, 443–445
blood spatter directionality, 425, 440, 441, 443, 447
bloodstain location
    trigonometrical calculation, 441, *448*
bloodstain pattern analysis (BPA), 427, 438–446
    definition, 425
    geometry of bloodstains, 440–441, *442–443*
    physical properties of blood, 438–439, *440*
    websites, 452
bloodstain patterns, 443–446
    prints, 443, **446**
    types, 443
bloodstains, 15, 54, *427*, 458
    altered category, 446, *446*, **446**, 447
    angle of impact, 440–441, *442–443*, 447
    area of convergence, 440, *441*, *443*, *448*
    geometry, 440–441, *442–443*
    original shape measurement, 440
    shape, 441
    spines and tails, 440, 441
    voids, wipes, swipes, 446, *446*, **446**
bloodstream, 540, 542, 544
    circulation of blood tests, 237, 548
    circulation of drugs, 539
    website, 452
blood transfusions, 435
blood types, 64, 447, 482
    ABO system, 15

    class evidence, 436
blood typing, 347, 458, 465–466
    genetics, 448–449
    website, 452
    ethanol, 545
blotter acid, 522
blowfly, 12, 409–412, 414, 417
    adult of species, *411*
    egg laying, 410
blowfly maggots, *411*
blue jeans (indigo-dyed cotton), 569
blue light, 597
blunt force, 361, 362, 393
    impact blood spatter, 443–445, *445*, **446**
blunt force trauma, 64, 65, 399, 400, 422, 452
Bode Laboratories, 24
body farm links, 398
body fluids, 15, 54, 55
    evidence packaging, 60
body tube (viewing tube), 144, 145, 150–152, 154, 165
bombing scenes (investigation), 629–632
    analysis of evidence, 632
    difficulties and hazards, 629–630
    finding parts of explosive device, 630
    location of people in wreckage, 630
    location of point of origin, 630
    terrorist groups “creatures of habit” (bomber signature), 632
    unexploded material, 632
    websites, 635
bomb seat (point of origin), 610, 630, 633
Bond, Bella (“Baby Jane Doe” forensic palynology case study, 2015), 420
bonds
    C-H, 611
    C-O, 611
    O-H, 611
    N-O, 632
bone marrow, 427, 459
bones, 9, 65, *377*, 381
    functions, 377
bone structure, *378*, 378–379
bone trauma, 387–388
booster charge, 628, *628*
boric oxide (B_2O_3), 588
borosilicate glass, 588–589, 597
    “disappearing” test tube experiment, 598, *599*
    same RI as vegetable oil, 598, *599*
Bosch Crash Data Retrieval (CDR), 235, 236
Boston: Cocoanut Grove Night Club fire (1942), 611–612
Boston Marathon, 104
    bombings (2013), 636–638
brain, 377, 540, 544, 545
braking systems, 232–234, *233*
breath, 536, 541, 544, 546
    alcohol test, 551
    tests, 548, 551
breathable containers, 60, 465
breathalyzer, 549
breech face, 320, *329*, 334, *334*, 335, 341
Brentamine Fast Blue B reagent, 437
Bridges, Timothy, 504
broken glass, 589, 591–594
    direction of force, 594
    sequencing glass factures, 591–594
Bromgard, Jimmy Ray, 487
brow ridges, *385*, 385
buccal samples, 465
building a face, 9
bullet holes, 336, *363*
    anatomy, *336*
bullets, 74, 78, 95, 152, 166, 319, 320, 362
    class characteristics, *323–324*, 332, 341
    comparison microscope, 152–153
    databases, 335
    forensic microscopy, **148**
    glass damage (entry and exit holes), 591, *592*, 602
    groove impression (raised area), 323
    individual characteristics, *324*, 332, 341
    land impression (indentation) or land-engraved area, 323
    types, 325–327, *328*
bullet stria, 323, *324*, 325, 332, 335, 341
    photomicrograph, 154, *155*
Bundy, Theodore, 6
    case study (bite marks as crucial evidence), 10, 398–399
Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (BATF), *21*, 22, 319, 335
    fire research laboratory (Beltsville, MD), 52
Bureau of Internal Revenue, 511
Bureau of Justice Statistics, 320
Bureau of Labor Statistics, 651
Bureau of Motor Vehicles, 548
Bureau of Narcotics and Dangerous Drugs (BNDD), 512
burglary, 55, 71, 504, 571, 669
Butler, Brenton, 681, 684

C

cadaver dogs, 630
caffeine, 517
    component chromatograph, 105, *106*
    gas chromatogram, 526, *527*
calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) or calcined limestone, 588
calcium carbonate (kieselguhr), 629
caliber (bore diameter), 318, *324*, 325
California, 23–24, 550, 582–583
canaliculi, *379*, 379
cancer, 515, 649
canine olfactory system, 173–180
    directionality, 177
    function, 175–176
    interspecies differences, 176–177, *177*
    nostrils and nasal passage (turbinates), 174
    odor, 174
    olfactory nerves and bulb, 175
    receptor cells (ORCs) and receptors (OR), 174–175, *175*
    training, 177–180
cannabis, *see* marijuana
cannelures, 325, 327
capillary action, 110
capillary electrophoresis, *115–116*, 115, 118, 470, 471, 474, 479
capillary gas chromatogram
    gasoline, *624*
car brakes, 16–17
carbohydrates, 545, 547
carbon dioxide, 612, 614
carbon monoxide (CO), 364
carboxyhemoglobin, 364

careers information, 20
Cargille liquids, 498
Carnegie Mellon University, 35
carpet fibers, 563, 566
carrion beetles, *413*
cartilage, 375, *382*, 382, 415
cartridge cases, 320, 325, 327, *329*
  chamber marks, *329*, 334, *334*
  FBI database, 335
  markings, 327, *329*, 332, 341
  striations, 333, *333*, 334
cartridges, 74, 152, 166, 268, 319, 325–330
  comparison microscope, 153
  diagram, *326*
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  primers, 327–330, 333
  propellants, 327, 330
casting, *272*
  definition, 249, 271
casting wax (tire impressions in snow), 274
cat hair, *496*, 497
  ladder medullae, 406
catagen growth phase, 486, *490*, 490, 495, 501
cathode ray tube (CRT), 163, *164*, 166
Catts, EP, 412, 419
causes of death, 354–356–358, 360–364, 368, 376, 393, 536
  case study, 371–372
  chemical, 363–364
  definition, 352
  electrical, 364
  mechanical, 361–362
  primary (immediate), 357–358
  secondary (contributing), 357–358
  thermal, 364
CEDAR-FOX computer program, 291, 314
Ceglia, Paul, 208–209, *209*
cell cytoplasm, *461*
cell nucleus, 459, *461*, 474
cell phone investigation, 200–203
  investigative reporting, 203
  social media, 201–202, *202*
  tools of trade, 200–201
cell phones, 13, 198, *199*, 237
cellular DNA, 460–462
Center for Statistics and Applications in Forensic Evidence (CSAFE), 35, 39, 75
Centers for Disease Control, 31, 32
central nervous system, 545
certification, 30, **652–653**
chain of custody, 25, *26*, 42, 44, 56, 57, *58*
Challenger disaster (1986), 218–220, 241
chamber marks, 334, *334*
change of behavior (COB), 170, 179, 183
charcoal, 101, 622, 626
charcoal lighters, 617, 620
  gas chromatogram, 624, *625*
charcoal tubes, *623*
charred writing, 299, *302*; *see also* erasures
chemical bonds
  vibrations, 138
chemical erasures, 299, *301*
chemical explosions, 6
chemical fingerprinting, 249, 258–259
chemical fire extinguisher, *615*
chemical structure, 129
chemiluminescence, 430
chemoreceptors, 171, 175–176
Chevrolet, 235
Chicago, 24
Chief Coroner's Office, 368
child abuse, 11
China, 14, 251, 275, 327, 403
chloroform ($CHCl_3$), 100, 101, 110
Christmas tree stain, 437, *437*
chromatography, 102–116, 578
  automotive paint, 575
  definition, 92, 102
  improvement, 113
  quantitative analysis, 104–105
  stationary and mobile phases, 102–104, *104*
  websites, 118
chromatography (types), 105–116
  electrophoresis, 115–118
  gas chromatography (GC), 105–108
  high-performance liquid chromatography, 105, 108–110
  paper chromatography, 110
  pyrolysis gas chromatography, 107–108
  thin-layer chromatography, 105, 110–115
chromosome(s), 460, *461*, 473–474, 499
  diploid state, 461
  gene "locus", 461
  haploid complement, *462*
Cimex lectularius (common bed bugs), 182
civil cases, 196, 204, 217–218, 250, 289, 294, 644, 659
clandestine laboratories, 54–55, 56
Clanton, James, 482–483
class evidence, 72, 76–78
  definition, 68
  fibers, 578
  glass, 589, 591
  paint, 578
  soil, 600, 603
  types and characteristics, **77**
clear coat, 572, 573, 578
  definition, 558
climate, factor affecting PMI, 415–416
climatic and temperature conditions, 404
clinical pathology, 353, 354, 368
clinical psychology, 664, 666
close range shot, 336
clothing, 57–58
cloud technology, 199, 204
Coast Guard case (1985), 57
cocaine, 12, 94, 97, 285, 364, 412, 415, 500, 510–513, **514**, 516–518, 531, 538, 543, 654
  gas chromatogram, 527, *527*
  mass spectrum, *107*, *528*
  preparation and ingestion, 517–518
  screening test, 526
  separation from sucrose, *100*, 100–101
  "slightly basic [alkaline]", 99–100
  structure, *99*
  topical anesthetic, 517
cocaine hydrochloride ("snow", "flake", "blow"), 517, *518*
cocaine snorting, 517
coca leaves, *516*, 517
coccyx (tail bone), 384, *385*
codeine, *113*, 524, 525
codes of ethics, 30, 32, 651
coerced-compliant confessions, 664, 678
coerced-internalized confessions, 664, 679
Cogan, Brian, 532

cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), 676–677, *677–678*, 681–682
cognitive bias, 658–659
coin flipping, 463–464
cold cases, 476–478
cold turkey withdrawal, 519, 542
collection of bones (outdoor crime scene), 389–390
Colombia, 516
color, 123, 131, 138, 260
  fibers, 567
  soils, 600, 603
  variations according to type of light, 131, *131*
color layer sequences, 578
  known and unknown automotive paint samples, 574, *574*
column chromatography, 102, *103*
Combined DNA Index System (CODIS, 1990–), 476–478, 479, 482
  forensic genetic genealogy, 478
  three levels, 476, *477*
  success stories, 476–477
combustion (chemical reaction), 614, *614*, 626, 627, 632
  definition, 610
commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) applications, 203
common law, 358, 646, 648
compact bone, 378, *382*
comparison bridge, 144, 153, *153*, 154, 166
comparison microscope, **148**, 152–155, 166, 323, 332, 498
  cameras to capture compared images, 154, *154–155*
  definition, 144
  sample holders, 154, *155*
  typical example, *153*
competence (of evidence), 645–646, 647, 655
  definition, 642
competency (fitness to stand trial), 664, 675–676, 681
complex mixtures (separation), 91–118
  chromatography, 102–116
  examples, *94*
  physical separation, 95–101
  separation "depends upon nature and amount of material present", 116, 117
  solid-phase extractions, 101
  websites, 118
compound magnifiers, 149–150, *150*
compound microscope, 147, **148**, 150–152, 165, 599
  definition, 144
  modifications, 152–162
  parts, *151*
Comprehensive Controlled Substances Act (1970), 512, 515
computed tomography (CT), 368
  advantages, 359
  website, 371
computer algorithms, 32, 75, 332
computer crime, 193–194
  definition, 190
  evolution into "cybercrime", 193
  Justice Department definition (1979), 193
  roughly equivalent to "cybercrime", 192
computer forensics, 5, 37, 190–192, 203, 204
computer forensic scientist
  career entry (optimal education and job markets), **18**
  FEPAC accreditation program, 19
computerization, 266–267
computer printers, 307
computers, 13–14, 130, 272, 376, 388
concentric fracture, 586, *592–594*, 594, 602
conchoidal lines (broken glass), 591, *591*, 594, *594*, 602
  definition, 586
condensation (reaction of two monomers), 560
condenser, *151*, 152, 165
  definition, 144
conductors (of electricity), 163
confessions, 664, 668, 678–679
confined fire *versus* "explosion", 625–626
confirmational bias, 283–284, 658, 659
confirmatory drug test, definition, 508
confirmatory test, definition, 425
Congress, 511–512, 513, 648
  NAS forensic science report (2009), 27–32
congruent matching profile segments (CMPS), 332
conjugated double bonds, 131, *132*, 132, 138
Connecticut: first murder conviction when entire corpse never recovered (1989), 65
consent, 47
Constitution, 47, 196, 646
constitutional law, 193
contact shot, 362, *362*
contamination, 54, 57, 60, 192, 203, 407
  biological evidence, 465
  crime scene, 44
contempt of court, 656
context, 69, 295
controlled burns, 615
controlled substances
  same as "illicit drugs", 510
controlling the scene, 44
contusion ring, 336, *336*
convex lens, 148–150, *149–150*, 165
Cook, Jay, 478
Coors murder case (soil evidence case study), 600, 607–608
Corbett, Joseph, 607
Coren, S, 178, 187
Coronavirus Pandemic
  cybercrime (2020), 193, 207
coroner, 8–9, 356, 536
  definition, 353
  investigation of death, 355–356
  performance of autopsies, 358
coroner system, 31, 368
coroner's office, 34, 48
corpse environmental variables, 409–412, 417
corpse location
  "following the flies", 410, 630–632
corpus delicti, 42, 44
cortex (middle layer of hair), 486, 492, *493–494*, 494–495, 498, 501
cortical fusi, 495, 498
  definition, 486
Cosby trial, 667
cosmetic glitter particles, 161, *161*
cosmetics, 113
cotton, **562**
  natural twist, *563*, 564, *565*
  fibers (microscopic examination), *563*
Council of Engineering and Scientific Specialty, **652**
counts, 104–105
Court of Appeals, 647
court-mandated treatment, 676–677, *677–678*
covalent chemical bonds, 131
  vibrations, 133, *133*
crack (cocaine), 513, 517, *518*, 543
Crafts, Helle, *63*, 63–65
Crafts, Richard, 63–65, *64*

- crime
  - assessment, 671
  - definition, 193
  - laboratories, 8, 14, 16, 36
- crime laboratory forensic scientist
  - career entry (optimal education and job markets), **18**
- crime location, 671
- crime reconstruction, 60
- crime records and reports
  - computerized, 49
- crime reports, 45–46
- crime scene, as recent history, 43–44, 60, 61
- crime scene analysis, 665, 669–673
  - step 1: profiling inputs, 670
  - step 2: decision-process models, 671
  - step 3: crime assessment, 671, **672**
  - step 4: building profile, 672
  - step 5: investigation, 673
  - step 6: apprehension, 673
- crime scene characteristics, **672**
- crime scene investigation, 41–65, 644
  - basic steps, 61
  - case study (murder of Helle Crafts, 1986), 63–65
  - websites, 63, 65
- crime scene investigation process, 45–60
  - crime occurs and is discovered, 45–46
  - crime reconstruction, 60
  - evidence collection, 54–56
  - evidence packaging, 57–60
  - evidence preservation, 60
  - evidence recognition, 55–56
  - first officer at crime scene (duties), 46–47
  - hot search (for perpetrator) *versus* cold search, 46
  - protocol at crime scene, 43, 47–48
  - recording crime scene, 50–54
  - search methods, *49*, 49–50
  - sting operation, 46
  - systematic search, 48–49
  - typical steps, *45*
- *Crime Scene Investigation* (television show), 6, 7–8, 14
  - *CSI* Effect, 69–70
- crime scene investigation unit, 16, 47, 56
  - preliminary scene examination, 48
- crime scene investigators, 7, 32, 268
  - neglect evidential value of tire impressions, 273–274
  - pollen and spore evidence, 407
  - training deficiencies, 404
- crime scene perimeter (securing scene), 47, 48
- crime scene processing
  - firearms evidence, 330–331
- crime scene protection (evidence preservation), 192
- crime scene reconstruction software, 51
- criminal cases, 294, 659
- criminal courts, 218
- criminal investigation process, 250
- criminalistics
  - definition, 5
  - often interchangeable with forensic science, 8
- criminal justice system, 16, 644
- *Criminal Minds*, 666
- criminal negligence, 232, 239
- criminal trials, 196, 204
- criminogenic needs, 665, 676, 681
- critical speed yaw, 229
- cross-examination, 657, 660
- cross-links (polymer strands), 560, *561*
- crowner
  - antecedent of "coroner", 355
  - definition, 353
- crystal violet
  - dye, 309
  - structure, 131, *132*
- cupric chloride ($CuCl_2$), 341
- cursive handwriting, 291–292
- Customs, *21*
- Customs and Border Protection, 420
- cuticle, 493–494, 500, 501
  - definition, 486
  - human *versus* animal hair, 495
  - refractive index, 498
- cyanoacrylate (Super Glue®) fuming, 257, **258**, 275
- cybercrime, 189–209
  - cell phone and handheld technology investigation, 200–203
  - challenges, 191–192
  - criminal law, 194–195
  - definition, 190, 192
  - evidence preservation, 192–193
  - evolution from "computer crime", 193
  - examples (listed), 193
  - jurisdiction issue, 196
  - legal proceedings, 204
  - legislation website, 207
  - location, 196
  - *versus* physical crimes, 192–193
  - prosecutors and judiciary (deficiencies), 196
  - synonyms, 192
  - websites, 207
  - wireless and handheld devices, 198–200
- cybercrime case studies
  - digital forensics (Ceglia *versus* Zuckerberg), 208–209
  - ransomware attack on Atlanta (2018), 207–208
- cybercrime federal law (list of statutes), 195
- cybercrime investigation, 195–198
  - disclosure requirement, 196
  - evidence preservation, 198
  - "more art than science", 204
  - plan, 197, 204
  - plan execution, 198
  - process, 197
  - search warrants, 197
  - type of system to be seized (identification), 197
  - videotape, 198
- cytosine (C), 459, *460*, 462–463, 468

D

- dactyloscopy, 249, 250, 253
- Daimler Chrysler, 236
- Daoud, Ouhnane, *284*, *658*
- Darwin, Charles, 251
- data processors, 130, 137
- *Daubert versus Merrell Dow* (1993), 648–650, 659, 662
- daughter ions, 135
- DeAngelo, Joseph (Golden State Killer), 478
- death certificate, 356, *357–358*
- death investigation process, 356–364
  - cause of death, 356–358
  - classification of violent deaths, 360–364

  death certificate, 356, *357*
  external examination, 360
  internal examination, 360
  manner of death, 358, *358*
  medicolegal autopsy, 358–359, *359*, 360
  patterns of injury, 360–361, 369
death penalty, 678
death scene CSI squad, 48
deciduous teeth, 375, 381, 392
deciliter, 534, 549
decomposition, 367, 368, 392, 412–415, 417
  environmental variables, 413, 417
  role of arthropods, 412–413
  stages, 413–415
  websites, 419
deer hair, *496*
defense attorneys, 56, 57
deflagration, 610, 626
deliberate fires, 612
delusterants, 566–567, 568, 570
demolitions, 628
demonstrative evidence, 68, 71
denaturation, 456, *469*, 469
dental crown, 65
dental records, 392, 400
dental remains
  identification, 392
dental stone, 271, *272*, 274, 276
dentition, 381
dentures, 392
deoxyribonucleic acid, *see* DNA
Department of Agriculture, 511, 512
Department of Commerce, 27, 386
Department of Homeland Security, 13, *21*
Department of Interior, *21*, 23, 36
Department of Justice (DOJ), 20, *21*, 27, 32, **33**, 33, 36, 75, 193, 207, 512, 515, 651
  forensic genetic genealogy, 478
  report on forensic science laboratories (website), 662
Department of Treasury, *21*, 21–23, 36, 511–512
depressants, 363–364, 415, 515, 519–520, 524, 528, 535, 543
  definition, 508
depth of focus, 145, 152
dermal papillae, 249, 252, 267
dermis, 249, 252
detail levels, 75–76
detector dogs, xxiii, 169–188, 389, 617, 620
  anatomy, 173–177
  bombing scenes, 630
  canine olfaction (forensic tool), 173–180
  cases, 181–184
  definition, 171
  scenarios, 172–173
  training, 177–180
  use of nose, 173
  utility in forensics, 184–185
  websites, 188
detector dog training, 177–180
  certifications, 179
  deployment (operational use), 179
  maintenance training, 179–180
  notification behavior, 178
  odor recognition, 178
  pairing or linking behaviors, 178–179
  role of handler, 180
  role of handler (deploying the tool), 180, *180*
detectors, 10, 103, 104, *106*, *109*, 110, *130*, 130, 137, *160*, 161, *162*, *164*
detonation, 611, 626–628, 630
Detroit Police Department, 16, 569–570
diaphragm, 145, 152
diaphysis (long bone shaft), 375, *378*, 381, 386
diaries, 294
diatomaceous earth, 629
dictations, 293
digital camera, 376
digital devices, 307, *308*
digital evidence, 13–14, 191, 198, 202, 204
digital forensics, 13–14, 191
digital imaging systems
  ammunition, 335
digital mapping system, 51
digital photography, 270, 276
  advantages, 52–53
  enhancement (not same as “altering”), 53
digital signature, 307
direct examination, 657
direction of force, 594, *594*, 602
dirt, 268, 360
disclosure requirement, 196
discovery process, 204
distance-of-fire determinations, 335–337, 341
  gunshots, 335–336
  shotgun shots, 337
distance shot, 336, 362
DNA, 24, 28, 44, 56, 58, 78, 182, 284–285, 347, 399, 400, 437, 561, 632
  base pairs, 459, *460*
  definition, 456, 459
  electrophoresis technique, *114*, 115, *115*
  individual evidence, **77**
  location in cell (nucleus and mitochondria), 459
  nature, 459–464
  polymorphic parts, 79, 479
DNA amplification process, *469*
DNA analysis, 54, 75, 409, 583
  hair, 499, 500
  pollen, 417
DNA bands, *471*
DNA databases, 463, 476–478
DNA evidence, 392
  collection and preservation, 464–465
  “not possible to prove individuality”, 472
  but sufficient for criminal trial, 473
DNA fingerprinting, 15
  former name of “DNA typing”, 466
DNA fragments, 117, *469*
DNA molecule, 459, *469*
DNA polymerase, 456, 468
DNA polymorphisms, 462–464
DNA primers, 456, 468, *469–470*
DNA sample, electropherogram, *116*
DNA sequences, 466
DNA strands, 463
  tandem repeats, 463
DNA template strands, *469*
DNA testing
  convictions overturned, 504
  postconviction, 457–458
DNA typing, 79, 426, 429, 430, 436, 447, 455–483, 488, 648
  case study (Bain exoneration), 483
  case study (*Titanic* disaster), 483

  CODIS, 476–478
  current method (STRs), 471–474
  “determination of gender”, 473–474
  mitochondrial DNA, 474–476
  population frequencies, 471
  websites, 481–482
DNA typing (history), 465–470
  polymerase chain reaction, 466–470
  polymerase chain reaction (DNA amplification), 468–470
  polymerase chain reaction (first DNA typing methods), 470
  Restriction Fragment Length Polymorphism, 466
documentation, 48
  crime scene as recent history, 44
  definition, 42
document dating, 309
documents, 17, 620
dog hairs, 497
Doyle, Arthur Conan, 6
DQ alpha system, 470
drag factor, 212, 226–228
drag sled, 226, *227*
driving while impaired, 549
driving under influence (DUI), 237, 363, 550–552, 555
driving while intoxicated (DWI), 550
Dror, Itiel, 658–659
drowning, 367, 392
drug
  absorption (into bloodstream), 538–540
  definition, 508, 537
drug addiction, 512, 513, 519, 525, 552
  versus “drug dependence”, 542–543
  “physical process”, 542–543
drug analysis, performed on hair, 489
drug dependence, 552
  psychological phenomenon, 534, 543
Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA), *21*, 509, 512, 525
  laboratories, 21, 57
  website, 512, 531
Drug Recognition Expert (DRE), 551–552, 555
drug tolerance, 513, 535, 542
drug trafficking, pollen analysis, 408–409
DRUGFIRE system (FBI, 1993–), 318, 319, 335
druggist’s fold (evidence fold), 42, 60
drugs, 56, 108, 110, 113, 129, 360, 363, 368, 404, 412, 415, 417, 422, 487–488, 536, 537
  class evidence, **77**
  DUI, 237
  elimination from body, 540
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  tendency to collect in certain tissues or organs, 540
  use of pollen to track (website), 419; *see also* illicit drugs
drugs-alcohol combination, 535–536, 541–542
drunk driving, 110, 536, 540, 543, 552
  paint evidence, 569–570
drunk driving laws, 548–549
  field sobriety testing, 550
  testing alcohol levels, 548–549
drunkenness, 547–548
DS180 system, 470, 471
Dummars, Melvin, 315
DuMond, Wayne, 477
Dusky versus United States (1960), 675
dust, **148**, 268
dye matching, 563, *564*
dyes, 110–113, *116*, 131, 275, 309, *310*, 492, 562, 563, 569, 575, 578
  application to fibers, 568
  definition, 558
  nature, 568
dynamic risk factors, 665, 676
dynamite, 611, 628, *628*, 629

E

e-crime, equivalent to “cybercrime”, 192
ecstasy, **514**
  same as MDMA, 510
Ecuador, 209
education, ethics and terminology (EET) IWG, 32
egg, 461, *462*
Egypt, 215
Ehrlich’s reagent, 112
electric current, 105, 114–115
electricity, 549, 618
electromagnetic (EM) radiation, 123, 129, 260
electromagnetic spectrum, 122, 126, 127, 136
  light as wave, 124–125, *125*
electromagnetic waves, 123, *124*
electron beam (source of energy), 136
electronic signature, 307
electronic total work station (ETWS), 228, *229*
electron microscopy, 145, 147, 162–165
electrons, 260
  energy levels, 129, *129*
  high-speed (means of delivering energy to matter), 134
  promotion to higher orbitals, 125, 138
electropherogram, 115, *116*, 471, *473*
electrophoresis, 92, 113–118, 447
  capillary electrophoresis, 115, *115–116*
  gel electrophoresis, *114*, 114
electrostatic detection apparatus (ESDA), *300*, 303
elimination samples, 56, 457, 465
elution, 92, 102, 610, 622, *623–624*
embalming, 353, 367–368, 415
empty magnification, 150
enamel paints, 570, 572
enamel (teeth), 390
energy, 128, 129, 136–137
  emission, 260
  transfer direction, *124*
energy-dispersive X-ray (EDX) analysis, 163, 166, 577
  definition, 145
  printout, *165*
  unusual case, 164–165
engineering
  failure, 217
  problem-solving, 215, 216
  specialities, 216, 217
engineering profession, 215–217
  history, 215–216
  tasks, 216–217
engineers, 212, 215
  skills, 216–217
engine speed (RPM), 236, 242
England, 353, 355, 358, 581–582, 646, 648
enteric dosage forms, 534, 538
entomology, 402, 403
envelopes, 464
enzymes, 470

epidemiology, 649
epidermis, 249, 252, 486, 488
epiphyseal line, 375, 382
epiphyseal plate, 375, 381
epiphysis (long bone ends), 375, *378*, 381
erasures, 299, *300*; *see also* obliterations
erg (unit of energy), 128
Erin Brockovich (film), 649
erythrocytes, 425, *434*
estimator variables (eyewitness identification), 665, 680
Estrada, Olivia, 399, 400
ethanol, same as "ethyl alcohol", 543
ethyl alcohol, 510, 511, 536, 552
    chemical structure, *543*
    metabolism into acetaldehyde and acetic acid, 545, *546*
    pharmacology and toxicology, 543–544
ethyl alcohol absorption, 544–548
    circulation of ethanol in bloodstream, 545
    drunkenness, 547–548
    elimination of ethanol, 545–546
    maximum blood alcohol concentration, 546–547
ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid (EDTA), 60, 465
ethyl ether, 509
ethyl groups, 309, *310*
Europe, 14, 252
event data recorders (EDRs), 234–237, *235*, 241
    capable of capturing two types of event, 235
    compulsory data, 236
    role in accident investigation (case study), 242–243
    voluntary additional data, 236
events, deployment level *versus* non-deployment level, 235
evidence, 7
    definitions, 68, 69
    flows from crime scene to court, *58*
    missing, 84–87
    positive and negative controls, 80
    small amounts of material, 160
    three-dimensional, 155–156
evidence analysis scheme, *79*
evidence (classification), 70–75, 81
    individual–class, 72–74
    known–unknown, 71–72
    physical–nonphysical, 70
    real–demonstrative, 71
evidence collection, 54–56
    steps, *55*, 55
evidence comparison, 75–79
evidence destruction (imminence)
    right to search without warrant, 196
evidence fold, definition, 42
evidence identification, 75–79
evidence (nature), 67–88
    case study (no corpse in murder trial), 84–87, *88*
    websites, 83
evidence packaging, 57–60
evidence preservation, 60
evidence recognition, 55–56
evidence recording, 56
evidentiary law, 193
exemplars, 56, 74, 288
    definition, 42–43
    handwriting comparisons, 292–293
    requested versus nonrequested (handwriting comparisons), 293
exhumation, 353, 367–368, 415
exigent circumstances doctrine, 196
exonerations
    DNA evidence, 499
    website, 482; *see also* Innocence Project
exothermic reaction, 612–613
    definition, 611
experience, 16, **18**, 19, 69, 74, 77, 218, 225, 237, 269, 655, 656, 660
expert opinion, 70
expert testimony, 655–659
    website, 662
expert witnesses, 16–17, 34, 36, 73, 648, 660, 679
    in court (guidelines), 656–657
    definitions, 642, 655, 656
    false testimony, 651
    forensic engineers, 218
    permitted to offer opinions, 656
    role in court, 644
explosions, 392, 610–611, 625–633
    case study (Boston Marathon Bombings, 2013), 636–638
    versus "confined fires", 625–626
    deflagration, 626
    detonation, 626–628, 630
    differences from "fires", 632
    high explosives (initiating and noninitiating), 628, *628*
    investigation of bombing scenes, 629–632
    point of origin, 633
    progression, *631*
explosive detector dog (EDD), 179
explosive device (homemade), *631*
explosive residues, 95, 110, 113, 146
explosives, 129, 327
    class evidence, **77**
extension, *469*, 469
    definition, 457
external occipital protuberance, *385*, 385
extractor, *329*
extractor marks, 334
eye color, 461
eye orbits, 386
eyewitnesses, 45, 72, 228
    accuracy, 668
eyewitness identification, 667, 679–681

F

Facebook, 208–209
facial features construction over skull, 376
facial reconstruction, 9, *389*, 399, *400*
    websites, 398
Fairley, Malcolm, 581–582
false confessions, 667, 678–679
false negative test, 68, 80
false positive conclusions (fingerprints), 78
false positive test, 68, 80
falsifiability (test of scientific validity), 650
fantasy, 669, *670*
Faraday technology, 199, 200
Faramarz Shahi Savandi, 207
Fast Blue BB (spray reagent), 112
fatty acids, 260
fatty tissues, 540
Faulds, Henry, 14, 251

FBI cybercrime website, 207
FBI fingerprint classification system, 252, 263–265
FBI Laboratory (Quantico, 1932–), 14, 16, *21*, 21, 23
FBI Questioned Documents Cases
  website, 314
Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI 1905–), 14, 32, 34, 46, 194, 249, 283, 316, 348, 470, 483, 499, 500, 504, 581, 636, 657–658, 669
  CODIS, *477*
  fingerprint classification system, 252
  fingerprint database, 249, 263
  hair analysis websites, 503
Federal Criminal Code, 194
Federal Emergency Management Agency, 615–616
Federal Forensic Science Laboratories, 20, *21*
federal government, 543, 544
Federal Rules of Evidence (FRE), 662
  FRE 702 standard, 648, 649–650, 655, 659
Federal Trade Commission (FTC), 563
Federal Works Administration (FWA), 221
femur, tibia and fibula of leg, 386, **387**
fencing, 46
Fe-protoporphyrin IX, *429*
Fernald, Grace, 668
Feynman, Richard, 218–220, *219*
fiber analysis
  case study (Wayne Williams), 581
  websites, 580
fiber dyes, 113
fiber evidence, interpretation, 569
fiberglass, **562**
fiber morphology, 563–565
  color, 563–564
  comparison chart for dye matching, 563, *564*
  crimp, 564, *565*
  cross section, 563, 578
  microscopic examination, *563*
  size, 563
  type (most important characteristic), 563
fibers, 55, 56, 60, 72, 107, 108, 129, 131, 134, 160, 331, 360, 497, 561–569, 620
  blue jeans, 73–74, 76
  case study (Roger Kibbe), 582–583
  chemical analysis, 568–569
  class evidence, **77**, 578
  comparison microscope, 152–153
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  glossary, 558–559
  known and unknown comparison, 578
  solubility tests, 569
  tests for blood, 80
  white acrylic-under polarized light, *159*; *see also* paints
field diaphragm, 145, *151*, 152
field sobriety testing, 550
field of view, 145, 152
film formers, 570, 571
filter paper, *111*, 111
final response, 170, 171, 178, 181, 182
financial statements (corporate), 196
fingernails, 65, 488
fingerprint anatomy, 253–257
  arches, 254, *255*, 275
  core, 254, 255, *255*
  deltas, 254, *255*, 256, *257*
  loops, 248, *255*, 254–256, 275
  patterns, 254, *255*, 275
  ridge characteristics (minutiae), 253–254, *254*, 265, 266, 275
  ridges (types), 253, *254*
  whorls, 254, *255*, 256, *257*, 275
fingerprint case studies
  mistaken identification and confirmational bias, 283–284, *284*
  solution to cold case, 284–285
fingerprint dusting, 249, 257–258
fingerprint evidence
  lack of scientific basis, 267
  misinterpretation, 267
fingerprint examiners, 290
fingerprint residues, 260
  reflection of UV light, 257
fingerprint ridges, 253, 259
  formation (8th–17th weeks of gestation), 252
fingerprints, 7, 14, 48, 55, 56, 60, 71–74, 247–268, 275, 619, 657–658
  bombing scenes, 632
  classification systems, 251–252
  common questions (with the answers), 267–268
  comparison, 261–265
  comparison of single, 265–266
  computer images, 261–262, *263*
  error rates, 78
  firearm evidence, 331
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  individual evidence, **77**
  known versus unknown, 261, 265, 266
  levels of detail, 75–76
  loops, arches, whorls, 251–252
  origin, 252–253
  partial, 265
  quest for reliable method of personal identification, 251–252
  scientific validity issue, 650
  standards problem, 78
  ten-print card, 261, *262*
  use of plastic impression of someone else's, 268
  wear down with use or age, 268
  websites, 282
fingerprints (detection and visualization), 257–261
  chemical methods, 258–259
  chemical reagents (type of surface on which used), **258**
  cyanoacrylate fuming, 259–260
  fluorescence of fingerprints, 260, *261*
fingerprint searches, 32
fingerprint sets, 263–265
fire, 52, 392
  basic facts, 612–613
  multistory building, 618, 619
  point of origin, 618, 633
firearm injuries, 362
firearms, 17, 74, 75, 78, 250, 341
  class characteristics, *323*
  serial numbers, 331
  test firing, 323, 331, 332, 335–337
  trace evidence, 331
  types, 321
firearms evidence, 250, 330–334
  bullet comparison, 332
  cartridge case comparison, 332–334, *334*
  crime scene processing, 330–331
  photography, 330
  preliminary examination, 331

  proper method for packaging weapon for shipment to lab, *331*, 331
firearms examiners, 290, 320–321, 335
firearms identification, 319, 320–325
  ammunition and barrels (size), 325
  definition, 318
  gun barrel calibers, **325**
  rifling, 321–325
  types of firearms, 321
firearms sections (forensic science laboratories), *26*, 27
firearms and toolmarks, 317–348
  cartridge (anatomy), 325–330
  case studies, 344–348
  digital imaging systems for ammunition, 335
  distance-of-fire determinations, 335–337
  firearms identification, 320–325
  problem of scientific validity, 320
  toolmarks, 337–341
  websites, 344
fired bullet
  size of base (caliber), 325
fire causes (natural, accidental, deliberate), 618
fire classification, *615*
fire extinguishers, 614, *614–615*
firefighters, 47, 617
  duties at fire scene, 618
fire investigation, 617–621
  determining cause of fire, 618–619
  other evidence, 619–620
  point of origin of fire, 619
  role of accelerants, 620–621
  trace evidence, 619–620
fire residues, 108, 110, 622, 623
  class evidence, **77**
  evidence packaging, 60
fires, 609–625, 632–633
fire scene evidence, 621–623
fire scene investigation
  process of elimination (leading to “arson” determination), 619
fire scene investigators, 617–619
  detection and collection of accelerants, 620–621
fire statistical sources, websites, 635
Firestone, Harvey, 272
fire tetrahedron (conditions needed to sustain fire), 611, 614, *614*, 618–619
fire trails, 611, 619, *620*, 620, 625, 633
firing pin, 321, *329–330*, 330, 341
firing pin impressions, 268, 320, 332–333, *333*, 335
  FBI database, 335
first responders, 43, 226, 232, 371
Fish and Wildlife Service (FWS), *21*, 23
flax under polarized light (microscopic examination), *563*
flesh fly, 410, *411*, 414
Fletcher, Yvonne, 49–50
flies, 417; *see also* blowfly
float glass, 588
Flores, Maria, 340, 399
flow bloodstains, 443, *444*, **446**
fluorescein, 429, 430, *431*
  structure, *430*
fluorescence, 249, 260, 430
  fingerprints, 260, *261*
fluorescent dyes, 111–112, *114*, 275
fluorescent paints, 571–572
fluxes, 588
fly larvae
  developmental stages (instars), 410
FM radio stations, 127, 128
foam extinguishers, 614
foils, 665, 681
follicles, 486–488, *489*, 490–492
Following (show), 666
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 510, 512, 513, 525, 659
food materials, improper storage, 403–404
football quarterback, 321
footprints, 250
footwear impressions, 268–272, 276
  casting, 269, 271, *272*, *278–280*
  durability, 268–269
  formation, 270
  importance neglected, 268
  individual or class evidence, 269–270
  photography (insertion of measuring tool), 270–271
  positive (shoe to surface) *versus* negative (surface to shoe), 270
  preservation, 270–271
  three-dimensional versus two dimensional, 270, *270–271*
  wear patterns, *269*
Ford, 235, 236
Ford, Kevin Thomas, 284–285, *285*
forearm bones, 255–256, *256*
forensic anthropologists, 15, 368
  career entry (optimal education and job markets), **18**
  FEPAC accreditation program, 19
forensic anthropology, 373–390, 393
  definition, 5, 37, 375
  early case (1849), 9
  subject matter, 376
  websites, 38, 397–398
forensic art
  helps to identify murderer of three women (case study), 399–400
forensic biology
  anthropology and odontology, 373–400
  DNA typing, 455–483
  forensic palynology and entomology, 401–422
  forensic pathology, 351–372
  hair, 485–504
  serology, 423–453
forensic biology revolution (early 1980s), 459
forensic, buzzword, 6
forensic chemistry, 505–638
  fibers, paints and other polymers, 557–583
  fires and explosions, 609–638
  forensic toxicology, 533–556
  glass and soil, 585–608
  HPLC, 109
  illicit drugs, 507–532
forensic chemists, 94, 105, 509, 510, 521, 526, 529, 617, 621, 624, 626
Forensic Document Examination Subcommittee website, 314
forensic drug analysis, careers website, 531
forensic drug chemists, 54, 654
forensic engineering, 11, 211–243
  accident reconstruction, 224–238, 239
  definitions, 5, 37, 212, 215
  EDR role in accident investigation (case study), 242–243
  engineering profession, 215–217
  terminology, 212–213, 215
  websites, 241

forensic engineering case studies, 218–224, 242–243
  Challenger Space Shuttle disaster (1986), 218–220, 241
  Hyatt Regency walkway collapse (1981), 221–222
  Indiana State Fairgrounds (stage collapse, 2011), 222–224
  Tacoma Narrows Bridge collapse (1940), 220–221, 241
forensic engineering investigation, 213, *214*
forensic engineers
  career entry (optimal education and job markets), **18**
  versus engineers, 217
  FEPAC accreditation program, 19
  job description, 217–218
forensic entomologists, 15, 368, 413, 415
  career entry path, 409
  function at death scene, 416
  role, 404
forensic entomology, 12, 368, 403–404, 417
  applications (civil and criminal cases), 403–404
  case study (Snow murder case, 2013), 421–422
  corroborating evidence required, 412
  definition, 5, 37, 402
  evidence collection, 416
  finding PMI (life cycle of blowfly), 409–412
  websites, 38, 419
forensic entomology evidence
  underused, 404
forensic evaluation, 665, 673–674
forensic evidence detection, 172, 181–182, *182*
forensic evidence (presentation in court), 641–662
  accreditation, certification, and laboratory reports, 650–655
  bias, 657–659
  admissibility of evidence, 644–650
  expert testimony, 655–659
  websites, 662
forensic genetic genealogy, 478
forensic laboratories, 30, 650–654
  accreditation, 650–651, **652–653**
  reports, 651, *653*, 653–654
forensic microscopy, 147, **148**
forensic odontologists, 15, 65, 368, 376
  career entry (optimal education and job markets), **18**
  FEPAC accreditation program, 19
forensic odontology, 390–393
  abuse cases, 393
  bite marks, 392–393
  definition, 5, 37, 375
  identification of dental remains, 391–392
  structure and development of teeth, 390–391
  websites, 398
forensic palynology, 403, 416–417
  career entry path, 409
  case study, 420
  definition, 402
  pollen and spores as evidence, 404–409
  website, 419
forensic pathologists, 15, 48, 321, 376, 656
  career entry (optimal education and job markets), **18**
  duties, 354
  FEPAC accreditation program, 19
  training (14–year process), 354
  training, 354
forensic pathology, 8–9, 351–372
  case study, 371–372
  death investigation process, 356–364
  definition, 5, 37, 354
  exhumations, 367–368
  investigation of death, 355–356
  postmortem interval, 365–367
  purpose, 368
  teamwork approach, 368
  websites, 371
forensic psychiatry, 12, 674
forensic psychology, xix–xx, xxiii, 12, 663–684
  activities, 667
  behavioral evidence analysis (truth about profiling), 668–673
  case study (Slender Man case, 2014), 675
  definition, 665, 666
  historical development, 667–668
  narrow versus broad characterization, 666–667
  parameters of field, 666
  purpose, 666
  treatment and evaluation of offenders, 673–677, *677–678*, 681
  websites, 684
forensic psychology research, 678–681, 682
  Butler case study, 681, 683
  false confessions, 678–679
  Ingram case, 679
  memory and eyewitness identification, 679–681
  trial consultation, 681
forensic science
  application of science to justice system, xix
  basics, 3–39
  criminal and civil aspects, 7
  versus CSI, 7–8
  definition, 5, 36
  depth and breadth, 7
  history and development, 14–15
  nature, 7–14
  place in criminal justice system, 644
  raison d'être, 643–644
  reform duties, 32
  related careers, 19–20
  websites, 38–39
forensic science (additional topics), 639–684
  forensic evidence (presentation in court), 641–662
  forensic psychology, 663–684
forensic science disciplines
  certification and accreditation, **652–653**
Forensic Science Education Accreditation Commission (FEPAC), 18–19
forensic science and investigation, 1–88
  crime scene investigation, 41–65
  evidence (nature), 67–88
  introduction to forensic science, 3–39
forensic science laboratories, 17, 24
  organization, 25–27
  sections, *26*, 26–27
  tests (order of priority), 26
forensic science laboratory reports
  legal status, 644
forensic science professionals certification, 651, **652–653**, 662
Forensic Science Research and Training Center (FSRTC), 21, *22*
forensic sciences, examination by outside organizations, 27–32
Forensic Science Standards Board (FSSB), 34, 35
forensic science systems, 20–25
  Australia, 25

  Colombia, 25
  UK, 25
forensic scientists, 15–20
  career entry paths, 17–20
  caseload, 652
  definition, 5
  duties in crime laboratory, 16
  past recollection recorded, 655
  past recollection refreshed, 654–655
  role, 15–17, **18**, 36
forensic serology, 80, 423–453
  case study (blood spatter evidence in murder trial), 452–453
  definition, 425
  importance, 426
  websites, 452
forensic serology (components)
  blood analysis, 427–436
  bloodstain-pattern analysis, 427, 438–446
  identification of other biological fluids and stains, 427, 436–438
Forensic Specialties Accreditation Board (FSAB), 651, **652– 653**
forensic taphonomy, 376–377
  definition, 375, 376
  websites, 397
forensic toxicologists, 354, 360
  career path, 536–537
  job description, 552
  tasks (one of most important), 536
forensic toxicology, 412, 533–556
  BAC measurement, 550–551
  case study (Overton poisonings), 555–556
  definition, 535
  driving under influence of drugs, 551–552
  drunk driving laws, 548–549
  field sobriety testing, 550
  life-saving in overdose cases, 108
  relationship with pharmacology and toxicology, 536, *537*
  websites, 554–555
forgery, artistic paints, 571
formers (glass ingredient), 588
Forsythe, James, 327
forum, 7
Fourier transform infrared spectrophotometry (FTIR) microscopy, 134, 568–569, 575, 577, 578
  definition, 559
fracture lines (in damaged glass), 591–592, *592–594*, 594, 602
fracture matches
  definition, 559, 586
  glass, 589–591, 603
  microscopic characteristics, 590–591
  paint chips, 577, 578
France, 525
fraud, 315
  handwriting analysis, 295–298
Frederick, James, 477
frequency (waves per second), 122, 124–125, *125*, 127–129, 131, 137
Freud, Sigmund, 668
friction ridge details (fingerprints)
  levels, 265–266, 275
friction ridges, 249, 250
  palms, 252
  pores, *266*
  soles of feet, 252
fructose, 97, 100, 101
  neutral compound, 99
  structure, *99*
Frye case, 647–650, 659
  website, 662
Frye, James Alphonso, 643
fuel cell technology, 549
fuel residues, 101
fuels, 612–614, 626, 627
Fugitive, 8
fully-jacketed bullets, 326–327

G

gait, 374
Galton, Sir Francis, 14
  Finger Prints, 251–252
gamma-hydroxy butyric acid (GHB), 540
gamma rays, 123, 124–125, *125*
garbage in, garbage out, 464
gas chamber, 364
gas chromatograph, 105, *106*, 622–623, *623*
gas chromatography (GC), 105–108, 116, 119, 526, *527*, 622, 631, 632
  BAC analysis, 548
  definition, 92
  identification of accelerant type, 619
  similarity to HPLC, 110
gasoline, 94, 98, 101, 181, 613, 618, 620, 624–625
  accelerant of choice (arson cases), 617
  capillary gas chromatogram, *624*
gastight syringe, 621, *622*
gauge, 319, 325
GEDmatch, 478, 482
  websites, 481–482
gel electrophoresis, 114–115, 466, 471, *471*
  apparatus, *114*
gender, 9, 473–474, 499
gender diagnosis (skeletal remains), 383–385, 393
general acceptance rule (admissibility of scientific evidence), 642, 647
  a (rather than *the*) test, 650
General Motors, 236, 575
genes, 461
  definition, 457
  polymorphism (types), 462–463
genetic code, 459–460, 461, *475*
genetic genealogy (case study), 482
genetic inheritance, 471, 475, 491–492
genetic markers in blood, 434–436
genotype, 448, 471
German Shepherd Dog, 176
glass, 55, 60, 71–72, 108, 153, 257, 259, 567
  basic facts, 587–589
  case study (use of trace evidence), 608
  chemical structure, 587, *588*
  class characteristics, 595–599
  class evidence, 589, 591, 599
  color test, 602
  example of "amorphous solid", 587, 602
  forensic importance, 589
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  individualized evidence (fracture matches), 590–591, 603
  known *versus* unknown sources, 595

  large pieces (individual evidence), **77**
  properties, 587–588
  stress marks, *590*, 590–591, 603
  types, 588–589
  websites, 606
glass (as forensic evidence), 587–599
  analyzing broken glass, 591–594
  class characteristics of glass, 595–599
  direction of force, 594, *594*, 602
  fracture match (individual evidence), 589–591
  individual characteristics, 590–591
  refractive index, 595–596, 602
  refractive index determination of glass fragment, 596–599
  sequencing glass factures, 591–594
glass damage
  cause (determination of type of object), 591
  direction and order of impact, 591–593
  fracture lines, 591–592
  multiple impacts, 592
glass fragments, *79*
  class evidence, **77**
  refractive index determination, 596–599
Global Positioning System (GPS), 51, 201, 204, 209, 237
Goddard, Calvin, 14
Goff, ML, 412, 419
Gonzales, Martin, 399–400, *400*
Gonzales, Sylvia Garcia, *400*, 400
graphoanalysis, same as graphology, 288
graphology, 288–289
  definition, 288
gravity, 425, 439, 443, 588, 650
grease fires, 614
greater sciatic notch, 384, *385*
  definition, 375
Green River Killer, 6
grid method (searching crime scene), 49, *49*
grooves, *see* lands and grooves
ground penetrating radar, 389, 390
groupthink, 665, 667
grubber marks, 307
guanine (G), 459, *460*, 462–463, 468
guard hairs, 495
gun barrel chamber
  chamber marks, 334, *334*
gunpowder, 323, 330
gunshot residue (GSR), 163, 320, 330, 335–336, 363
  definition, 319
  EDX printout, *165*
  forensic microscopy, **148**
gunshots
  distance-of-fire determinations, 335–336
  impact bloodstains, 445, *445*
gunshot wounds, 362, 400, 416, 476
Guzman, Juaquin, 532
Gwaltney, George, 347–348
gypsum cement, 271, *272*

H

hair, 55, 56, 58, 60, 65, 250, 360, 458, 459, 477, 485–504, 569, 583, 619
  basic facts, 488–489
  blood supply, 488, *489*, 500
  case study (conviction overturned), 504
  class evidence, **77**, 488, 497, 501
  comparison, 497–499
  comparison microscope, 152–153
  database lacking, 488
  definition, 488
  detection of drugs, 500–501
  disease, mistreatment, 499
  DNA analysis, 499
  drug analysis, 489
  dyed, 496
  evidential value, 487–488
  forcible removal, 491
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  human *versus* nonhuman, 495–496, *496*, 499, 501
  known and unknown, 498, 500, 501
  layers, 493
  pattern evidence, 488
  proper scientific caution, 498
  razor cutting *versus* scissor cutting, 496
  root, shaft, tip, 493, *493*, 498
  source (determination of part of body), 499
  structural analysis (information derived), 499–500
  structure, 493–495
  type of polymer, 560
  websites, 503
hair analysis
  miscarriages of justice, 499
  scientific validity issue, 487–488
  shift of focus (from identification of suspects to exclusion of suspects), 499
hair casts, 494
hair color, 461–462, 491–492, *492*
  artificial versus natural, 499
hair disease and degradation, 496
hair dye, 492, 497, 499
hair growth, 489–491
  stages, 489, *490*
hair layers, 501
hair roots (telogen phase), *490*, 491
  DNA analysis, 500
hair structure, 488
hair treatment and damage, 496, *497*
half-jacketed bullets, 327
half-life, 535, 540
hallucinogens, 509, 516, 529
  definition, 508
  LSD, 520, 521, *523–524*
  marijuana, 520–521, *522*
  mescaline, 520, 522
  peyote, 522, *524*
  psilocybin, 520, 522, *524*
handlers, 170, 178–182, 185
  role, 180
handwriting, 74, 78, 250, 266, 289
  changes with age or purpose of writing, 292
  class *versus* individual characteristics, 295
  development, 291–292
  fraud and forgery, 295–298
  individual evidence, **77**
  known *versus* unknown samples, 293, 295, *296*
  ornate capital letters, 295
  range of variation, 294
  slant, 295
  unusual flourishes, 295
handwriting analysis, 291–298

  case study, 315–316
  fraud and forgery, 295–298
  influence of health, 292
  love letter *versus* lecture notes, 292
  nonrequested exemplars, 294
  requested exemplars, 293–294
  scientific validity issue, 291, 650
handwriting comparison, 292–293
  characteristics used, 294–295
  exemplars, 292–293
  requested versus nonrequested exemplars, 293–294
handwriting disguise, 292–294
handwriting instrument, 293
harmonic oscillator, 132
Harmon, Linda, 477
Harris, John, 315
Harrison Act (1914), 511–512
Harvard University, 9
Haversian System, *379*, 379, 380
Hayden, Grace, 284–285
HDL computer programming website, 314
head hair, *494*
headspace, 621, *622*, *623*
  definition, 611
Healy, William, 668
hearsay, 646
  business records exception, 654
  definition, 642
  laboratory reports, 654
heat (Δ), *469*, 613; *see also* activation energy
Helium, 103, 105
heme, 429, *429*, 430, 432
hemoglobin, 364, 429, *429*, 432
Hendrix, Jimi, 364, 520, 535
Henry, Sir Edward, 14, 252, 275
Henry Classification Formula, 264–265
Henry system using whorls, 263, **263**
hepatitis, 465, 525
heroin, 102, 105, *113*, 510–513, **514**, 527, 528, 532, 535, 540, 654
  metabolism into morphine, *541*
  preparation and ingestion, 525
  UV spectrum, 132, *133*
Herschel, William, 251
Hertz (measure of frequency), 127
heterozygous gene, 462
heterozygous locus, 471–472
Hexagon OBTI test, *433*, 433–434, 447
hexamethylenediamine, 560, *561*
hexa triene, *131*
high definition three-dimensional (HD 3D) computer technology, 333
high explosives, 626–627, 632–633
  chemical structure, *637*
  initiating and non-initiating (primary and secondary), 628, *628*
high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), 105, 108–110, 116, 602
  definition, 92
  and gas chromatography, 109, 110
  instrument, *109*
history, 43–44, 60, 61
Hitler Diaries, 316
HLA DQ alpha-DQA1 (enzyme), 470
Hodgson, S, 176, 185
homicide, 9, 55, 70, 71, 192, 353, 358, *358* 369, 403, 556, 581, 582–583, 656, 673
  autopsy process, 360
  classification, 671
  time since death, 356
homopolymers, 560
homozygous cases, 471–472
homozygous gene, 462
horizontal gaze nystagmus, 535, 550
hot shock, 212, *234*, 234
hot stage microscope, 586, 598, *599*
Hsi Yuan Lu (Washing Away of Wrongs), 403
Hughes, Howard, 289, 314–315
human error sources, 29
human genome, 460, *461*, 479
  inheritance, *462*
  number of genes, 461
Human Genome Project website, 481
human genome sequence, 478
human observer bias, 29
human remains
  discovery (context), 376–377
  disruption by other humans, 377
  unidentified, 478
human remains detection (HRD), 173, 179, 182–183, *183–184*, 185
humans, number that have ever lived, 472
human skeleton, 377–390
  age (significance), 380
  anterior view, *377*
  biological profile, 380–386, 393
  bone structure, 378–379
  class characteristics, 380–386
  human bone identification, 380
  identification, 379–380
  individualization of human bone, 386–389, 393
  major bones, *377*
human trafficking, 172, 181
humerus, radius, and ulna of arm, 386, **387**
humic fractions (soil), 602
humus, 600–601, 603
  definition, 586
Hyatt Regency walkway collapse (1981), 221–222
  website, 241
Hybrid Deep Learning (HDL) architecture, 291
hydrocarbons, 98, 611, 613, 633
hydrochloric acid (HCl), 99, 100, 339, 517
hydrocodone, 525
hydrogen, 105, 309
hydrogen cyanide (HCN), 364
hydrogen ions (protons) (H^+), 98
hydrogen peroxide, 15, 429, 430, 432
hydronium ions (H_3O^+), 98–99
hydroxide ions (OH^-), 98–99, 101
hyperkinesia, 510, 518
hyperthermia, 364
  definition, 353
hypervariable region, definition, 457
hypothermia, 364
  definition, 353
hypothetical questions, 656
Hyundai, 236

I

IBM Selectric® typewriter, 306
identification of evidence, definition, 68

identity theft, 192
illicit drug control, 511–520
  drug schedules, 513–515, **514**, 529
  state modifications of federal controlled substance laws, 515
illicit drugs, 507–532
  basic facts, 510–511
  case study (Mexican drug lord), 532
  classes, 529
  classification according to effects, 515–525
  classification according to origin, 515
  definition, 508
  ingestion, absorption, elimination from body, 552
  legislation currently in force, 513
  “reasonable scientific certainty” test, 526
  types, 510–511; *see also* licit drugs
illicit drugs (analysis), 526–528
  confirmation tests, 527–528, 529
  requirements, 526
  schemes, 526
  screening tests, 526
  separation tests, 527
illicit drugs (classification according to effects), 515–525
  depressants, 516, 519–520
  hallucinogens, 516, 520–522, *523*
  narcotics, 516, 523–525
  performance-enhancing, 516
  stimulants, 516–519
Illinois, juvenile court (1899–), 668
Imhotep, 215
immiscible liquids, 93, 97
immunoprecipitation test, 432
impact blood spatter due to blunt force, 443–445, *445*, **446**
impact bloodstains due to gunshot, 445, *445*
implied consent, 535, 548
impression
  definition, 249, 268
  three-dimensional, 268
  two-dimensional, 268
impression evidence
  footwear impression and tire tread impressions, 250
  footwear treads, 268–271, *272*
  tire treads, 271–275
incendiary fires, 612, 615–617
  definition, 611
incidentals (arthropods), 413
incised wound, 361, *361*
indented writing, *302*, 302–303, *304*, 311
India, 251
Indiana Occupational Health and Safety Administration, 224
Indiana State Fairgrounds (stage collapse, 2011), 222–224
  website, 241
individual evidence, 72, 76–78, *79*
  definition, 68
  fracture matches (glass), 589–591
  types and characteristics, **77**
inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometer (ICP-MS), 595
  definition, 587
infrared (IR) lamp, 128
infrared light, 129, 138, 160, 299, *300*, 305, 549
infrared light detectors, 130
infrared micro-spectrophotometer, 134, 147
  automotive paint, 575, *577*
infrared radiation, 122, 141
infrared spectrophotometry, 132–134, *135*, 161, *162*, 632
infrared waves, 124–125, *125*
Ingram, Paul (case study), 679
initiating (primary) explosive
  definition, 611
injector, 105, *106*, 107, 109, 110
inked fingerprint, *254*, *266*, *281*
ink examinations, 308–309, *309–310*
ink jet printers, 307
inks, 108, 110, 112, 129, 132, 134, 268, 299, 303, 305, 311
Inman, Keith, 14
Innocence Project (IP), 457–458, 483, 487, 504, 651; *see also* miscarriages of justice
insanity, 12, 667–668, 681
  assessment, 674–675
  legal definition, 674
insects, 368
  alteration of bloodstains, 446, **446**
instars, 402, 410
insurance, 19–20, 196, 217, 218, 226, 612
intake section (forensic science laboratory), *26*, 26
Integrated Automated Fingerprint Identification System (IAFIS, FBI), 182, 249, 266–267
Integrated Ballistics Identification System (IBIS), 319, 335
Interagency Working Groups (IWGs), 32
interference filters, 152
interferogram, 134
intermediate shot, 362
internal combustion engine, 613
Internal Revenue Service (IRS), *21*, 23
International Association of Computer Investigative Specialists, **652**
International Association for Identification (IAI), 265, **652**, 662
International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), 650–651
International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 30
  ISO 17025 standard, 28
  ISO-IEC 17024 standard, 650–651
Internet crime, roughly equivalent to “cybercrime”, 192
Internet Service Provider (ISP), 193
internships, 17, 19
investigative process (cybercrime), 197
investigative reporting, 203
iodine fumes, 258, **258**
Iodoplatinate reagent, 112
ionization, 136, 137
ions, 93, 107
Iowa State University, 35
iris diaphragm, 165
isopropanol, same as “isopropyl alcohol”, 544
isopropyl alcohol structure, *543*
isotropic materials, 145, 158–159
Italy, 15

J

Japan, 251
Jeffries, Sir Alec, 15, 466
Joplin, Janis, 364, 520, 535
joule (unit of energy), 128
Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science, 14
Journal of Forensic Sciences (AAFS), 15
journals, 19, 29
judges, 16–17, 644–660 *passim*, 673, 674, 676
  acting as “gatekeepers”, 649–650

junk DNA, 461
junk science, 648
juries, 16–17, 49, 53, 69, 71, 73, 192, 267, 645–646, 649, 659, 673, 674, 674, 681
jurisdiction, 23, 29, 31, 33, 191–194, 196, 204, 356, 368, 649
jurors, 647, 655, 656
jury selection, 291; *see also* voir dire
jury trial, 644, 657
  definition, 642
juvenile courts, 668
Juvenile Psychopathic Institute, 668

K

K9 team, xxiii, 179, 180, 182, 185
Kansas City
  Hyatt Hotel, 11, *11*
Kastle–Meyer test, 432, *433*, 447
keratin, 486, 488, 493
kerosene, 617, 624–625, *625*
Kibbe, Roger, 582–583
kidneys, 540, 541
Kirk, Paul, 8, 14–15, 83
kitchen fire, *618*, 618
knife wound, 416
known error rates (test of scientific validity), 650
known evidence, 71–72, 74, 75–79, 81, 269
  definition, 68
knowns (comparison samples), same as "exemplars", 56
Kyrgyzstan, 636

L

laboratory information system (LIMS), *26*, 26
laboratory reports, 659–660
laboratory testing errors, 651
lacerations, 361, *361*
lacquers, 570, 572
LaMarca, Angelo, *316*, 316
lands and grooves, 322, *322*, *324*, 325, 332, 341
  definitions, 319
  direction and angle of twist, 323, *323*, 325, 341
  number, 323, *323*, 341
Landsteiner, Karl, 15, 435, 465
Lansing (Michigan State Police headquarters laboratory), 24
lanugo (neo-natal hair), 499
large volume bloodstains, 443, *444*, **446**
laser desorption mass spectrometry (LDMS), 137, 309
laser printers, 307
latent fingerprint, 249, 253, *254*, 267, 275
Lattes, Leone, 15
law enforcement agencies, 29, 32
  budgetary constraints, 196
law and science (interface), 643
laws of conservation of linear momentum and mechanical energy, 225
lay witnesses, 16, 655, 660
  definition, 5, 642
LD_{50}, definition, 544
lead, 326, 330, 539
leaded glass (crystal stemware), 589
lead oxide (PbO), 589
Lee, Henry, 65
left twist, 323
length polymorphism, 457, 463
lenses, 148–150
  compound magnifiers, 149–150, *150*
  diameter, 148–149
  focal length, 148, *149*
  simple magnifiers, 148–149, *149*
leucocytes, definition, 425
Lewis blood system, 436
liability, 212, 217–218, 239
Librium, 520
licit drugs, 537
  abused, 510, 529
  fraudulent or inappropriate use, 510–511; *see also* drugs
lidocaine, 101
light, 260
  definition, 123
  dual nature as electromagnetic wave or particle, 124, 137, 141
  frequency, 127
  nature, 123–124
  properties (website), 141
  transverse wave, 126, *126*
  wavelength, 129
light cursor, 161
light energy (interactions with matter), 129–137
  infrared spectrophotometry, 132–134, *135*
  mass spectrometry, 134–137
  spectrophotometer, 129–131, *130*
  ultraviolet spectrophotometry, 124, 131–132, *133*
light filters, 152
light and matter, 121–141
  electromagnetic spectrum (light as wave), 124–125
  interactions, 129–137
  photon (energy of light), 128–129
  waves (properties), 125–128
  websites, 141
light source, *130–131*, 137, 151–152, 154, 160, 165, 260, 275, 559
light transmission, 130, 131, 138
Lincoln, Abraham, 27
line search (of crime scene), 49, *49*
lineup, definition, 665
lip prints, 250
liquid
  chromatography, 113, 569, 603; *see also* high-performance liquid chromatography
  mixtures, 94
  phase, *104*
  solid mixtures, 94
  liquid stationary phase, 109
liquid–liquid extraction, 93, 97, 102
lithium, 519
live rounds, 321, 325
Live Scan, 262, *263*
liver, 540–541, 545–546
livor mortis, 353, 365–368
Local DNA Index System (LDIS), 476, *477*
Locard Exchange Principle, 14
Lombroso, Cesare, 668
Londino, Gina, xx
London, 635
  Libyan Embassy shooting (1984), 49–50

long bones, 375, 378, *379*, 381
  determination of stature, 386
Long Island Expressway, 237, *237*
longitudinal waves, 122, 125–126, *126*
loop, 249, 264
Los Angeles, 14, 24
low explosives, 611, 626, *627*, 632–633
luminol, 429–430, *431*
lungs, 538, *539*, 546
  iron pigments, 372
lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), 112, 415, 510, 512, **514**, 520, 521, *523*, 539, 542

M

Madrid bombing (2004), 283–284, 635, 657–658, *658*
maggots, 410, *411*, 412, 413
magnification, 144–152 *passim*, 155–156, 162, 165–166, 498
magnifying glass, 96, **148**, *149*, 346, 491
Malphighi, Marcello, 14
malware attacks, 193–194
manner of death, 354–356, *357–358*, 360, 365, 368, 369, 376, 393, 536
  definition, 353
Mansouri, MMS, 207–208, *208*
manufacture (of target drugs), 509
marijuana, 57, 112, 182, 364, 415, 489, 510–512, **514**, 520–521, *522*, 527, 528, 532, 538, 542, 551, 654
  evidence packaging, 60
  federal *versus* state divergences, 515
  medical uses, 515
  screening test, 526
  website (laws state by state), 531
marijuana leaf, 156, *157*, *521*
marrow, 377
Maryland, 24
mass action, 104, 115
mass detector, 136
mass spectrometer (MS), 106–107–109, *136*, 138, 622, 624
mass spectrometry, 108, 134–137, 527, 569
mass spectrum, cocaine, *107*, 136, *137*
Massachusetts, 420
  first state of have "medical examiner" (1877), 355
mastoid process, *385*, 385
matches, 616, *617*
material evidence, 68, 70
materiality (of evidence), 642, 645
Mirakovits, Kathy, xx
  biography, xxi
  website, xxi
matrix-assisted laser desorption-ionization (MALDI), 137
matter, interactions with light energy, 129–137
Mayfield, Brandon, 283, *284*, 657–658, *658*
Mazda, 237, *237*
McCrone Associates, 503
McNaughten Rule (1843), 667–668, 674
mechanical erasures, 299, *300*
mechanism of death, 353, 357
medical examiners (ME), 8–9, 47, 356, 536, 670
  definition, 353
  investigation of death, 355–356
  performance of autopsies, 358
medical examiner's office, 31, 34, 48, 368
medical malpractice cases, 309
medical marijuana laws, 515
medicolegal autopsies, 353, 355, 356, 358–359, 371–372, 645
  external examination of corpse, 360, 368
  internal examination of corpse, 360, 362
  photography, 360; *see also* autopsies
medicolegal death investigation, 31
medicolegal forensic entomologist
  estimation of PMI, 404
medicolegal forensic entomology
  definition, 402
  uses, 404
medulla, *493–494*, 495, 498, 499, 501
  definition, 486
  human *versus* nonhuman hair, 406
  types, *495*
medullary cavity, 378, *378*, *382*
melanin, 486, 492, 499
melanocytes, 486, 492
Melvin and Howard (1980), 315
memory, 667, 668, 679–681
mens rea, 665, 674
Merritt, Richard, 412
mescaline, 520, 522
metabolism, 540–541
metabolites, 535, 540–541
metal-jacketed bullets, 332
metal–metal bonding, 587
metamerism, 131, *131*, 559, 568
metaphysis, 375, 381
methamphetamine, 509, **514**, 527, 532, 542
  infrared spectra, *135*
  laboratory, *519*
  legitimate uses, 518
  licit drug abused, 510
  preparation and ingestion, 518–519
  structure, 133, *134*
methane, 613
  same as "natural gas", 612
methanol, 110
  same as "methyl alcohol", *543*
methyl alcohol, 105, 299, 571
  structure, *543*
methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA), 509, 510
Mexico, 519, 532
mice, ladder or stacked medullae, 406
Michaelson Interferometer, 134
Michigan State Police, 16, 24, 275
microcrystal tests, 431, *431*
microsatellites, 471
microscope photography, 153
microscopes, 266
  amount of magnification, 147
  focusing system, 152
  high-resolution cameras, 147
  types, 147
  uses and advantages, 146–147
  video cameras, 150
microscopy, 143–168
  compound microscope, 150–152, 165
  compound microscope (modifications), 152–162
  electron microscopy, 162–165
  lenses (how objects are magnified), 148–150
  teamed with other techniques, 147, **148**
  websites, 168
Microscopy Society of America homepage, 168

micro-spectrophotometer, 145, **148**, 160–161, *162*, 166, 568
  digital camera, 161, *162*
  types, 160
microwaves, 123, 124, *125*
Milwaukee, 24
mineral oil, 299
minerals, 600–601, 603
minisatellites, 471
mink hair, *496*
minutiae (in fingerprinting), 32, 75, 76, **77**, 253, *254*, 265, 266, 271
  definition, 249
Miranda rights, 646
miscarriages of justice, 504; *see also* exonerations
mitochondria, 457, 459, 474
mitochondrial DNA, 451, 455–462, 474–476
  differences from nuclear DNA, 475–476
  genes, *475*, 475
  hair, 500, 501
  inherited only from mother, 475
  inherited only through maternal line, 500
  two regions without genetic code function, *475*
mobile phase, 102–113 *passim*, 116
  definition, 93
  HPLC, 108–109
mobile phase vapor, 111
mock trial, 659
modus operandi (MO), 43, 48, 56, 665
  versus "signature", 669–670, *670*
molecular (M^+) ion, 136
molecular weight, 136
molecules, 123–126, *130*
  best absorbers of UV light, 131, *131*
  compression and expansion, *126*
  electrons and bonds, 129
Molotov cocktail, 611, 618–619
  fracture match (individual characteristic), 590, *590*
monochromator, 129–130, *130*, 134, 137–138
monocular microscope, 145, 150, 154, 156
monomer, 559, 560
Montana, 23
morphine, 113, 511, 523, 525, *541*
Morton Thiokol, 220
motive, 70, 671
Mullis, Kary, 15, 466–468
  thermal cycler, *468*
multiplex PCR, *470*
Munsell color chart (soil), 600
  website, 606
Munsterberg, Hugo: *On Witness Stand* (1908), 668
murder, 476–478, 482
muscles, 377, 552
Mythbusters (TV program), 268

N

Narcotic Drug Control Act (1956), 512
narcotics, 508, 516, 523–525, 529
  synthetic, 525
narcotics detection, 172–173, 185
narcotics detector dog (NDD), 182, *183*
National Academy of Forensic Engineers (NAFE), 215, **652**
  website, 241
National Academy of Sciences
  Forensic Science Committee, 291, 295, 488, 654
  NAS FSC report (2009), xix, 27–32, 250, 267, 320, 392
    aftermath, 32–34
    class and individual evidence, **77**
    concerns about pattern evidence, 75–79
    DNA typing situation, 79
    identification, 75–79
    forensic pathology, 28, 31, 356
    palm print comparison, *76*
    scheme for analysis of evidence, *79*
    synthetic fiber comparison, *77*
  questions raised about pattern evidence, 74–75
  recommendations
    second, 28, 653
    third, 29, 75
    fifth, 29, 659
    sixth, 29–30, 75
    seventh, 30, 650–651
National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), 218–220
National Association of Medical Examiners, 31
  website, 371
National Center for Missing and Exploited Children (NCMEC), 420
National Commission on Forensic Science, 27, 32–34, 651
  disbanded, xix, 33, 75, 651
  duties, **33**
  objectives and scope of activities, **33**
  structure, **33**
  websites, 39, 662
  Medicolegal Death Investigation Subcommittee, 354
National Crime Information Center (NCIC), 267
National DNA Index System (NDIS), 476, *477*, 477
National Fire Protection Association, 615
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, 225, 551
  data EDRs required to record (minimum standard), 236
  final ruling (2006), 236
  Notice of Proposed Rulemaking, 235
  website, 241
National Institute of Forensic Science (NIFS), 28–32
National Institute of Justice, 34
National Institutes of Health (NIH), 31
National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), xix, 27, 29–30, 32, 75, 184, 187, 267, 295, 320, 332, 654
  cartridge case statistical matching research (website), 344
  forensic hair analysis, 499
  NIST Forensic Science Center for Excellence, 35
  websites, 34, 39, 182, 344
National Integrated Ballistic Information Network (NIBIN), 319, 320, 335, 344
National Resident Match Program (2019), 354
National Science and Technology Committee, 32, **33**
  Subcommittee on Forensic Science (NSTC SoFS), 32
Native Americans, 522
natural causes (of death), 353, 358, *358*, 369
natural fibers, 559, 562, **562**, 578
Nature, 14, 251
necrophages, 402, 412
necropsy, 358
Nerntz Glower, 129
nerve cells
  DNA absent, 459
nested sieves, 95, *96*
Neufeld, Peter, 458

New York, 24, 525
  World Trade Center, 11, 630
  Yeshiva University, 458
Newark (NJ), ransomware attack, 207
Newton's laws of motion, 225
ninhydrin, **258**, 259, *259*
nitrates, 112, 632
  nitrate ions, 327
nitrites, 632
nitrogen, 105, 622
nitroglycerine, 327, 629
  chemical structure, *627*
Nixon, Richard, 290
Nobel, Alfred, 629
Nobel laureates, 15, 435
nongamete cells, *462*
nonphysical evidence, 69, 70
nonrequested exemplars, 289, 294
nonvolatile liquids, 109
Northern Illinois Police Crime Laboratory, 24
Northwestern University, 14
not guilty by reason of insanity (NGRI), 667–668, 674
notification behavior
  active or passive, 178
nuclear DNA, 427, *461*
  differences from mitochondrial DNA, 475–476
  double helix shape, 459, *460*
Nuclear Fast Red dye, 437
nucleotide sequences, 478
nylon, 560, *561*, **562**, 569
nystagmus, 535, 550, 551

O

objective lens, 145, *151*, 151, 152, 156, 596
oblique lighting, 302, *302*, 303
obliterations, 299, *301–302*; *see also* additions
occlusal surface, 391
octane (C_8H_{18}), 613
ocular lens, 152, *153*
odds of chance occurrence, 472
odontology (forensic dentistry), 9–11, 375
odor, 171, 174
  dispersal,
    smoke, 180, *180*
  recognition, 178
offender risk, 671
offenders, organized *versus* disorganized, 671, **672**
offenders (treatment and evaluation), 673–677, *677–678*
  assessing insanity, 674–675
  case study (Slender Man case), 675
  court-mandated treatment, 676–677, *677–678*
  evaluating competency, 675–676
  risk assessment, 676
offense-specific treatment, 677
Ofshe, Richard, 679
Oklahoma, 544
Oklahoma City bombing (1996), 12, 410, 626, *627*, 630–631, 635
olefin, **562**
olfactory bulb, 171, *175*, 175–176
  size, 176–177
olfactory fatigue (canine versus human), 177
olfactory receptor cells (ORCs), 174–175, *175*
  number (canine versus human), 176
  types, 176
olfactory receptors (OR), 171, 174, 175, 179
olfactory system, definition, 171; *see also* canine olfactory system
oligonucleotide primers, *469*
oligospermic males, 437, 438
omnivores, 402, 412
O'Neil, Thomas, 65
opium, 511, 512
opium poppy (*Papaver somniferum)*, 523
oral ingestion, 538
organic *versus* inorganic compounds, 98
Organization of Scientific Area Committees (OSAC) for Forensic Science, xix, 34–35, 75, 178, 187, 295
  discipline-specific subcommittees, *35*
  dogs and sensors subcommittee, 184–185
  goal, 35
  structure, 34
  websites, 39
osteocytes, *379*, 379
osteology, 375, 376
osteons, *379*, 379
Ouchterlony double diffusion test, 432, *433*
outdoor crime scene, collection of bones, 389–390
outreach and communication (OC) IWG, 32
overkill, 673
overspotting, 110
Overton poisonings (case study), 555–556
overwriting, 303, 314
ovoid bodies, 486, 495, 498
oxidation–reduction reaction (redox), 535, 549
oxycodone, 525
oxygen, 367, 612, 613, *614*, 616, 626–627, 632–633

P

packaging, 57–60
paint analysis
  case study (Malcolm Fairley), 581–582
  websites, 580
paint binders, 570, 574, 575, 577, 578
paint chemistry, 570, *571*
paint chips, 60, 134, 160, 572, *573–574*, 574, 575
  fracture matching, 577, 578
  layers, *575*
painted wood, 257
paint evidence
  known and unknown comparisons, 573
  samples from damaged and undamaged areas, 573, *573*
paint fragments
  class evidence, **77**
  forensic microscopy, **148**
paints, 107, 108, 129, 131, 560, 569–578
  automotive, 572–578
  basic facts, 570
  class evidence, 578
  example of "complex mixture", *94*
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  individual evidence, **77**
  known and unknown samples, 570
  types, 571–572; *see also* polymers

paint smears, 572–574, 577
paint speck evidence, 583
paint thinners, 617, 620, 624, 625
Palmer method, 289, 291, *292*
palm prints, 15, *76*, 250, 504
palynology, 402; *see also* forensic palynology
paper, 108, **258**, 259, *259*
  chromatography, 110
  examination, 308, 311
  individual evidence, **77**
  type, 293
paranoia, 667, 674
parent peak, 136, 137
Parkinson's disease, 292
Parkman, George (murdered, 1849), 9
Parr, Ryan, 482
passive bloodstains, 425, 443, *444*, **446**, 447
passive headspace, 621, *622*
passive response, 171, 178
patent fingerprints, 249, *253*, 253, 257, 275
patent law, 19
paternity cases, 466
pathology, 8–9, 353–354
  definition, 353
pattern evidence, xix, 250, 289, 392
  core concern, 75
  definition, 289
  NAS report, 75–79
  questions raised by NAS Forensic Science Committee, 74–75
patterns and impressions, 245–348
  fingerprints and other impressions, 247–285
  firearms and toolmarks, 317–348
  questioned documents, 287–316
patterns of injury, 360–364, 369
Paul Kirk award, 8
Pearsall, M.D., 176, 188
peels, 574, 575, 577
peer review, 28, 29, 642, 647–648, 650
pellets, 321, 325, 331, 341, 360
  distance-of-fire determinations, 336–337
pelvic bones, 393, *394*
pelvis, 382
  gender diagnosis, 384, *384–385*
pentaerythritol tetranitrate (PETN), 628, *628*
  chemical structure, *627*
pentane (C_5H_{12}), 623
pentothiobarbital (anesthetic), 519
perforating wounds, 362
performance-enhancing drugs, 511
perimortem (at death), 375
period (T) of wave, 122, 127
periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) reagent, 438
Perkin-Elmer Corporation, 470
permanent teeth, 381, 391
  definition, 375
persecutory delusions, 665, 667
personal identification
  quest for reliable method, 251–252
pesticides, 403, 539
peyote, **514**, 522, *524*
pH, 97, 98–101, 114
  definition, 93
  meaning of the "p", 99
  scale, seven units (dividing line between acid and alkali), 99
pharmaceutical chemistry, 539
pharmaceutical industry, 19, 542
pharmacodynamics, 537
pharmacology, 536, *537*, 537–543
  absorption, 538–539
  addiction *versus* dependence, 542–543
  circulation of drugs in bloodstream, 539
  definition, 535
  drug intake, 538
  elimination, 541
  elimination of drugs from body, 540–541
  ethyl alcohol, 543–544
  metabolism, 540–541
  stomach and small intestine, 538, 540, 545
  synergism, 541–542
  tolerance, 542
phencyclidine (PCP), 509, 510, 521
  synthetic substance, 511
phenolphthalein (color indicator), 432
phenotype, 448
photo array, 665, 681
photocell (converts light to electricity), 130
photocopiers, 306–307
photographic superimposition (of face on skull), 388, *388*, 393
photography, 48, 56, *85*, *87*, 198, 218, 226, 258, 269, 390, 428
  autopsy process, 360
  digital, 48–49
  insertion of measuring instrument, 51, *51*, 276
  organized manner of proceeding, 53, *53–54*
  questioned documents, 299, 302, 303
  recording crime scene, 50–53, *53–54*
photomicrographs, *154*, 154, *324*
  cotton fibers, *565*
  stress marks in glass, *590*, 590–591
  website, 168
  wire cuttings, 337, *338*
photon (energy in form of light), 122–124, 128–129, *130*, 132, *133*, 137
physical anthropology, 375, 393
physical developer, **258**, 259
physical evidence, 70
  classification as class or individual evidence, **77**
  definition, 69
physical models (of crime scenes), 71
physical separation
  adulterated products, 95
  complex mixtures, 95–101
  drugs and inert powders, 97
  explosive residue, 95
  rule of thumb in chemistry, 97
  using solvents to isolate solids, 96–97
physics
  definition, 212
  vehicular collisions, 224–225, *225*
picroindigocarmine (PIC) dye, 437
pigment granules, 494–495, 498
pigments, 110, 132, 562, 570, 572, 574, 575, 578
  application to fibers, 568
  definition, 568
  nature, 568
  scanning electron microscopy, 577
pistols, 321
plain whorl, 264
plan of attack, 44
Planck, Max, 128

Planck's constant, 128
plane crashes, 376
plant pigments, 102, *103*, 108
plasma, 425, 427
plaster, 271, *272*
plaster casts
  tire impression, *274*
plastic chip
  trace evidence (case study), 608
plastic fingerprints, 249, *253*, 253, 257, 275
plastics, 107, 108, 258, 560
plastique explosives, 611, 628
platelets (thrombocytes), 427, *428*
plexiform bone, 380
point of origin
  blood, 441, 447
  bombing, 610, 626, 630, 633
  bullet, 592
  fire, 611, 612, 618, 625, 626, 633
    spalling (blistering) of concrete, 619
    V-patterns of burning, *618*, 619, 620
poisonings, 555–556
poisons, 12, 108, 360, 368, 404, 417, 487–488, 536, 537, 552, 649
polar and nonpolar substances, 97–98, *98*
polarity, 97, 100, 104, 109, 110
  definition, 93
polarized light, 145, 158, *158*
polarized light microscope (PLM), **148**, 152, 158–159, 166, *563*, 586, 600
  crossed polarizers, *159*
  isotropic and anisotropic materials, 158–159
polarizers, 152, 158
police, 7, 72, 509, 551, 644
  accident investigations, 225–234, 237
  discovery of crime in progress, 45–46
  investigation of motor vehicle accidents, 215
  priorities, 16
police deaths, 49–50
police investigators, 268
police lineups (suspect identification), 680–681
police officers, 7
pollen, use to track drugs (website), 419
pollen grain structure, 405, *406*
pollen sequences (genetic bar code), 409
pollen and spores, 404–409, 416–417
  evidential value, 408–409
  "fingerprint" for geographical location, 406, 417
  traces of (places to look), 407
pollution, 19
polyacrylamide, 114, 596
polyacrylamide gel, 116
polyester, **562**
  pyrogram, *108*
polygraph, 13, 27, 70, 643
PolyMarker, 470
polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 15, 466–470, 479
  definition, 457
  DNA amplification, 468–470
  first DNA typing methods, 470
polymer plastics, 628
polymers, 101, 107
  basic information, 560, *560–561*, 578
  definition, 559, 560
  general structure, *560*
  "other coatings", 570–571
  in paints, 570
  styrene, 560, *560*
  test for classification as a "fiber", 562; *see also* textile fibers
polymorphic
  definition, 457
  enzymes, 436, 447, 458
polymorphism, 458
polystyrene, 560, *560*
population frequencies, 457, 471, **474**
population genetics, 462–464
portrait parlé, 251
positive and negative controls, 69, 80, 465
positive ions, 138
postage stamps, 310–311, *311*, 464
Postal Service (USPS), *21*, 23–24
postmortem interval (PMI)
  entomological meaning, 410, 417
    definition, 403
    factors, 415–416
    animals, 415
    chemical factors, 415
    climate, 415–416
    late determination, 404
    life cycle of blowfly, 409–412
    physical factors, 415
  time since death, 48, 354, 356, 365–367, 368, 376, 393, 404
    algor mortis, 365
    definition, 43, 353, 375
    early, 365
    late, 366–367
    livor mortis, 365–368
    other methods of estimating, 366
    rigor mortis, 365, 366, 368
postmortem investigation, 355
potassium bromide, 575
potassium chlorate ($KClO_3$), 330
potassium cyanide, 364
potassium dichromate, 549
potassium nitrate (KNO_3), 626
potential for escalation, 671
powder, evidence packaging, 60
precipitate, 432
precipitin ring test, 432, *432*
predators and parasites, 412
predictive scheme, 676
prejudicial evidence, 645–646
prescription drug abuse, 525
President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology, 2016 report, 392
pretrial publicity (PTP), 681
primary defects, 213, 218
primary transfer, 569
primer (paint), 559, 572, 574, 578
primer cup (cartridge case), 330, *330*
primers (firearms), 327–330, 333, 341
  FBI database, 335
primers (short pieces of DNA), 456, 468, *469*, *470*
prism, 129, *130*
Prism 310 Genetic Analyzer, *472*
privacy concerns, 478
privileges (under common law), 646
probability, 73
probative evidence, 43, 69, 70, 645
probes (complementary strands of DNA), 466, *467*

procaine, 102, 517
product rule, 463–464, 471
profiling, 668–673
  application, 673
  definition, 665
proof (liquor), 535, 543, 547
propellants, 327, 330, 341
prosecutors' offices, 29
prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 438
proteins, 260, 459–460, 461, 488, 499
proteomics, 499
protons, 98, 99, 101
prototypes, 216–217
provenance, 71
Pruszynski, Helene, 482
pseudoephedrine, 518, 519
pseudo-3D chromatogram, *602*
psilocin, 522
psilocybin, 520, 522, *524*
psychological dependence (on illicit drugs), 513, 516
psychological profiling, 12
psychologists, 647
psychology, 650, 665
psychopathology, 674
psychopathy, 665, 676
psychosis, 674, 675
pubic bones, 381–382
pubic hairs, 487, 497, *498*, 499
pubic symphysis, 375, 382–383
Public Key Infrastructure (PKI), 307
Puckett, Christopher, xxiii, 242–243
Punnet Square, 448
pupae (several species of fly), 410, *411*
Pure Food and Drugs Act (1906), 511
Purkinji, John, 14
purple haze, 521
putty, 257, 268, 275
pylorus, 538
Pyrex, same as "borosilicate glass", 588
pyrograms, 107–108, 569
  automotive paint sample, 575, *576*
  definition, 93
  polyester fibers, *108*
  vehicle touch-up paint *versus* house paint, 575, *576*
pyrolysis, 93, 109, 575
pyrolysis gas chromatography (PyGC), 107–108, 559, 569, 577, 578
pyrolyzer, 107
putrefaction, 366

Q

quality assurance, 30
quality control procedures, 30
quanta (discrete bundles of energy), 128
quantitative analysis, 104–105
quantitative data, 79, 116
quantum mechanics, 129
questioned documents, 74, 287–316
  case studies, 314–316, *316*
  definition, 289
  erasures, obliterations, alterations, 298–305, 311
  handwriting analysis, 291–298, 311
  handwriting analysis case study, 315–316
  indented writing, *302*, 302–303, *304*, 311
  ink examinations, 308–309, *309–310*
  inks, 299, 303, 305, 311
  nature, 290
  paper examination, 308, 311
  physical matches on torn paper, 310–311, *311*
  typewriters, photocopiers, digital devices, 305–307, 308, 311
  websites, 314
  will of Howard Hughes (case study), 314–315
questioned document examiners, 25, 290–291, 293–295
questioning techniques, 680
Quincy (TV show), 8, 14

R

race, 383–386, **387**, 393, 500
radial fracture
  definition, 587
  lines, 592, *592–594*, 594, 602
radial loop, 254, 255, *255*, 256, 264
radio waves, 123, 124, *125*
  not sound waves, 126
  part of EM spectrum, 126
radiocarbon dating, 380
radiologists, 368
radius (bone), 255, *256*
Ramsey, Jon Benet, 6, 316
ransomware, 191, 194, 207–208, *208*
rape, 55, 457, 476–478, 482, 483, 487, 504, 582, 679
rape kits (evidence kits), 58
rare events, 472–473
rarefaction (expansion) of molecules, *126*
rayon, 562, **562**
RDX, 628, *628*
reaction time, 238
Reagan, Ronald, 509
real evidence, 69, 71
"reasonable scientific certainty" test, 34
reasonable understanding, 675
recall memory, 665, 680
recognition memory, 680
recording crime scene, 50–54
red blood cell antigens, 434–436
red blood cells (erythrocytes), 377, 427, *428*, 429, 435, 447
  DNA absent, 459
  polymorphic enzymes, 466
red light, 596
reflected light microscopy, 145, 152
reflected light system, 165
Reflected Ultraviolet Imaging System, 257
reflecting microscope, 166
refraction, 129–130, 148, 602
  borosilicate glass (immersion in water *versus* immersion in vegetable oil), *598*
  definition, 145, 587
  immersion of solid, transparent material into liquid of same RI, *597*
  plastic straw in water, *596*
refractive index (RI), 589, 602–603, *605*
  class evidence, 599
  definition, 559, 567, 587

  glass (class characteristic), 595–596
  known and unknown glass particles, 599
relapse prevention plan (RPP), 677, 682
relevance (of evidence), 69, 70, 643, 645, 647, 648, 650, 655
remote locations, 51
reoffending risk, 681
repetitive asphyxia, 372
representative sampling, 57
requested exemplars, 289, 293–294
research, development testing and evaluation (RDT&E) IWG, 32
resolution, 93, 113, 116, 145, 148–150, 152
restriction enzymes, 457, 466
restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP), 457, 466, *467*, 479
retention factors (Rf), 93, 112
  TLC plates, 112–113, *113*
reverse tolerance, 542
Rh blood typing system, 465
Rh factor, 435, 447, 449
rhodamine 6G (fluorescent dye), 260, *261*
rhodamine B (ballpoint pens), 309, *310*
rib bones, 378, 381–382
rib ends, 383
Richter, Max, 15
rifles, 321
rifling, 319, 321–325
rifling broach for gun barrel, *322*
right twist (clockwise), 323
rigor mortis, 353, 365, 366, 368
risk assessment (likelihood of reoffending), 676
risk management predictors, 665, 676
Riviera City (Florida), ransomware attack, 194
robot autosamplers, 108
Rogers Commission, 218–220, 219
Romans, 7, 216
Roosevelt, Teddy, 14
rubber, 107, 108, 560, 629
Rudin, Norah, 14
Ruhemann's purple, 259
rule of multiplication, 472
rule of witnesses, 657
rules of evidence, 56, 57, 645, 659
  "technicalities", 646
  websites, 83
running thin-layer chromatography, 110–111
rust, 232, *233*, 234, 332, 559
rustproofing, 572, 574, 578

S

Sacco and Vanzetti (case study), 345–346
safety hazards, 47, 48, 54–55
safety issues, 44
saliva, 427, 436, 438, 447, 459, 466, 476, 551
  DNA typing, 464
SamSam malware, 207–208, *208*
satellite spatter (blood), 439, *440*
scale drawings (of crime scenes), 71
scale models (of crime scenes), 51
scanning electron microscope (SEM), 162–163, *163*, 166, 407–408, 578
  cross section of trilobal synthetic fibers, *566*
  mode of operation, *164*
  pollen grains, 405, *406*
  unusual case, 164–165
scanning electron microscopy (SEM), **148**, 162
  definition, 145
  pigments, 577
scent, definition, 171
Scheck, Barry, 458
scheduled drugs, 531
Schönbein, 15
Scientific Area Committees (SACs), 75, 653–654
scientific evidence, admissibility, 647
scientific proof, 74
Scientific Working Groups (SWGs), 30, 31, 34–35, 653
  SWGDOC for questioned documents, 291
  SWGDOG for detector dogs, 34, 184, 188
  SWGDRUG for illicit drugs, 526, 531
  SWGFEX for fire and explosives, 34
  SWGGUN for firearms and toolmarks, 34
  SWGSTAIN for bloodstain pattern analysis, 34
  SWGTOX for toxicology, 34
scientist, definition, 213, 215
Scott-Snyder, Stephanie, xix–xx, xxiii, 663–684
screening drug test, definition, 508
screening test, definition, 425
screwdrivers, 319, 337, *338–339*, 341
sculpture technique, 388
search methods, definition, 43
search warrants, 47, 72, 182, 196, 197, 646
seatbelts, 230–232, *231–232*, 235
Seattle, Kingdome, 628
secondary defects, 213, 218
secondary electrons, 145, 163, *164*
secondary locations, 48
secondary transfer, 569
Secret Service (USSS), *21*, 22–23
  library of ink samples, 308, 309
Secretary of Health, 512
selenium poisoning, 555–556
self-loading pistols, 321
semen, 348, 427, 458, 466, 477, 478, 482, 483, 487, 504
  confirmatory tests, 437
  preliminary tests, 437
seminal acid phosphatase (SAP) test, 437
seminal fluid, 436–438, 447
  prostate-specific antigen, 438
semisynthetic fibers, 559, 562, **562**
senators, 310–311
Sensabaugh, George, 438
sensitive evidence, 226
separation drug test, 509
separatory funnel, 93, 100, 101
sequence polymorphism, 457, 462–463, 470
serial killers, 10, 12, 398, 582–583, 669
serial number restorations, 320, 338–340, 341
serology, 54
  definition, 425
  forensic microscopy, **148**
sex, **387**
sex-determination, 471
sexual assault, 427, 436, 473, 474, 497, 645
sexual assault nurse examiner (SANE), 57–58
sharp force injuries, 361–362
shellac, 570–571
Sheppard, Sam, 8
sheriff, 353, 355

Shields, Carol, 477
shoeprints, 51, *51*, 75, **77**, 78, 620
short tandem repeats (STRs), 457, 465, 471–474, *472*, 479
shotgun barrel diameter (gauge), 325
shotgun cartridge with lead pellets, 325, *326*
shotgun pellet wounds, 362
shotguns, 321, 325, 341
shotgun shots, distance-of-fire determinations, 336–337
showup (identification procedure), 665, 681
side skid, 229
Siegel, Jay, xxi, 38
sieves and sieving, 95–96, 102
“signature” (*versus* “modus operandi”), 665, 669–670, *670*
signatures (on documents), 291, 292, 294, 295, 299, *301*, 307, *308*
  cut and pasted, *298*
  known versus unknown, *297*
silica, 102, 110, 588
silicon dioxide, 587, *588*, 588, 602
silk, **562**, 629
silver chloride, 259
silver ions, 258–259
silver nitrate, 258, 259
simple magnifiers, 145, 148–149, *149*
simple microscopes, 147, **148**
Simpson, O.J., 6, 14
sine wave, same as “transverse wave”, 126
single fingerprints, comparison, 265–266
single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 478
skeletal identification, underlying principle, 376
skeletal remains, 379–394
  biological profile, 380–381
  bone trauma and individual features, 387–388
  collection of bones, 389–390
  determination of age, 381–383
    bone development, 381
    bone growth, *382*
    changes in ends of ribs, 383, *383*
    dentition, 381
    pubic and rib bones, 381–382
    pubic symphysis, 382–383
  determination of gender, 383–385, 393
  determination of race, 385–386, 393
  determination of stature, 386, **387**, 393
  forensic odontology, 390–393
  identification, 379–380
  individualization of human bone, 386–389
  initial questions, 380, 393
  significance of age, 380
  wooded setting, *379*
skeleton, 251
sketches, 71, 198, 226
  recording crime scene, 50–51, 52
skid marks, 213, 226–230
skid-resistant paints, 572
skid test vehicle, *228*, 228
skin, 459
  cancer, 125
  cross section, 488, *489*
  layers (cross section), *252*
  under nails, 360
skull, 9, 65, 378, 392, *396*
  analysis, 388–389, 393
  determination of race, 386
  frontal sinuses, 388
  gender diagnosis, 384–385, *385*
Slender Man case (2014), 675
sloping forehead, *385*, 385
smokeless powder, 327
snow, 63, 64, 269, 274
snow (cocaine), 517
social media, 191, 201–202, *202*, 204
social media tools (listed), 201
social network analysis, 202
Society of Forensic Toxicologists, 554
soda lime glass, 588
sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3), 588
sodium chloride (Na^+Cl^-), 97, 98
sodium hydroxide (NaOH), 99
sodium pentothal, same as “pentothiobarbital”, 519
soil density column, *601*, 603
soils, 55, 108, 110, *271*, 271, 600–602, 603
  case study, 607, *608*
  class evidence, **77**, 600, 603
  color analysis, 600
  definition, 587
  example of “complex mixture”, *94*
  forensic evidence, 600
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  humic fractions, 602
  individualized evidence, 600
  known and unknown (comparison difficult), 603
  liquid chromatogram, *602*
  physical analysis, 600–601
  websites, 606
soil samples, physical separation, 95, *96*
soles of feet, 250
solid materials, 113
solid mixtures, 94
solid-phase extraction, 93, 101
solid-phase microextraction (SPME), 611, 622
solids, 110
solid stationary phase, 109
solubility, “like dissolves like” rule, 98, 101, 104
solute, definition, 97
solvent, 97–98, 110
solvent extraction (concentration of accelerant residues), 623
sound waves, 125–126, *126*
South America, 14, 252
spalling (blistering), 611, 619
special purpose paints, 569–572
species determination, blood analysis, 432–436
spectrophotometer, 129–131, *130*, 137, 145, 147, 160, 549
spectroscopic techniques, 76
spectroscopy, 145, 160
spectrum, 131
speed of light, 124, 127, 595
Speer, William, 477
Spencer, Ricky, 86–87
sperm, *462*, 466
  cells, 461
  counts, 437
  identification test, 437
spines (blood spatter), 439, *440*
spiral method (searching crime scene), 49, *49*
split ends, 491, *497*
spores, 405–406, *407–408*
spray reagents, 112
stab wounds, 673
stabilizers (glass), 588

stage (of microscope), 145, 150, *151*, 152, 156, 158, 160, 161, *162*
stance data, 275
standards, practices and protocols (SPP) IWG, 32
starchiodide test, 438
starch solution, 258
State DNA Index System (SDIS), 476, *477*
state law, 194
state rules of evidence, 57, 659
static electricity, 203, 270, 303, 307
static factors (risk assessment), 676
static risk factors, definition, 665
stationary phase, 102–104, *104*, 105, 107, 110–114, 116
  definition, 93
  HPLC, 108–109
statistical significance, 643, 649
statistics, 74, 75, 78
stature, 386, **387**, 393
Stejskal, Susan, xxiii, 169–188
  Death, Decomposition, and Detector Dogs (2013), 172
Step Pyramid, 215
stereo microscope, 95, **148**, 155–157, 166, 299, 314, 575
  basic type, *156*
  definition, 145
  digital video camera, 156
  light path, 156, *157*
sterile protocol, 407
sternal ends, 383
sternal rib, *383*
steroids, **514**
  licit drug fraudulently used, 510–511
Stewart, Doug, 84–87, *88*
Stewart, Venus, 84–87, *88*
stimulants, 509, 516–519, 529
  cocaine, 516–518
  methamphetamine, 518–519
sting operations, 43, 46
stippling, 319, 335, 336, 341, 344, 353, 362, *363*
stomach, 545
stomach contents (postmortem), 366
Strengthening Forensic Science in US: Path Forward (NAS report, 2009), recommendations, 27–32
stress marks, glass, *590*, 590–591, 603
stria, 323, *324*, 325, 332, 334, *334*, 335, *338*, 341
  photomicrograph, 154, *155*
structural forensic engineering, 217, 218–224, 239
structural paints, 571, 577
structure collapse, 213, *214*
styrene, 560, *560*
sublimation, 249, 258
subpoena, 643, 656
subpoena duces tecum, 643, 656–657
subpubic angle, female *versus* male, 384, *384*
substrate control, 465
  definition, 457
sucrose, 99
  separation from cocaine, *100*, 100–101
suicide, 353, 355, 358, *358*, 369
sulfur, 626
sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), 99
sun, 123
sunburn, 125
supercooled liquids, 587
support quality assurance, 34–35
Supreme Court, 654, 662
  Daubert versus Merrell Dow case, 649–650
Sûreté, 14
suspension bridges, 220–221
Sweden, 629
swipe bloodstains, **446**
synergism, 535, 541–542
synthetic fiber analysis, 565–568, 578
  color, 567–568
  cross section, 566, *566*
  delusterants, 566–567
  diameter, 566, *567*
  microscopy, 565–568
  refractive indices, 567, *568*
  tear match, 565, *565*
synthetic fibers, *77*, 559, **562**, 562–563, 578
  size measured in denier, 563
system variables (eyewitness identification), 665, 680
systems of justice, adversarial *versus* inquisitorial, 644
systolic blood pressure tests, 643, 647

T

tablets, 198
Tacoma Narrows Bridge collapse (1940), 220–221
  website, 241
Takayama test, 431, *431*
Talbot, William Earl II, 478
tamper-evident packaging, 43, 57, *58–59*
tamper-evident tape, 58, *59*
tandem repeats (DNA), 463
tape lift, 60
target fiber study, 562
taste buds, 175–176
tax, 22, 23, 355, 511, 512, 544
Taylor, Karen, *400*, 400
teamwork approach, 368
tear matches, 559, 565, *565*, 569, 578
tears and fractures, 153
Technical Criminology, 15
Technical Working Groups (TWGs)
  TWGDAM for DNA Analysis Methods, 34
  TWGDOC for questioned documents, 34
  TWGDRUG for controlled substances, 34
  TWGED for forensic science education, 18
  TWGFAST for fingerprints, 34
  TWGFIBE for fibers, 34
  TWGIT for imaging, 34
teeth, 65, 375, 381, *391*, 392
  structure and development, 390–391
Teichmann test, 431, *431*
Teichmann, Ludwig, 15
television waves, 124, *125*
telogen growth phase, 486, *490*, 490–491, 501
temperature, 415–416, *469*, 603
tempered glass, 589
Tenax©, 101
ten-print card (fingerprints), 261, *262*, 264, 266
tented arch, 264
terminal velocity, 439
tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), 489, 520–521, 528, 542, 551
Texas, 392
textile fiber evidence

  drawbacks, 562
textile fibers, 561–569
  basic information, 561–562
  morphology, 563–565
  trace evidence (importance), 561–562
  types, 562–563; *see also* fibers
thefts, 569
  sting operation, 46
thermal cycler (Mullis), 468, *468*
thermocouple (conversion of heat into electricity), 140
thermosetting, 572
thin-layer chromatography (TLC), 105, 110–113, 114, 116, 632
  definition, 93
  detection of analyte components, 111–112
  dye analysis, 569
  ink samples, *309*, 309
  interpretation of plates, 112–113
3rd Tech (company), 52
Thomas, Marie, 64
Thornton Tomasetti (Chicago), 222
3-aminophthalate, *430*, 430
3D imaging techniques, 335
3R rule, 594, *594*
thrombocytes, 425
thumb, 255, *256*
thymine (T), 459, *460*, 462–463, 468
time, 54, 127, 309
timing, 44
tin, 588
tinted glass, 589
tire impressions, 271–275, 276, *280–281*
  capturing, 274–275
  castings, 274, *274*
  evidential value, 273–274
  photography (inclusion of measuring instrument), 274–275
  two- or three dimensional, 274
tire marks, 226, 228–229
tire sidewalls, identification markings, 272–273, *273*
tire treads, 51
  development, 272
  individual evidence, **77**
tires
  cross-section, 273
  types, 273
titanium dioxide, 566
toenails, 65, 488
Tomko, Tracy, 608
toolmarks, 75, 250, 321, 337–340
  comparison criterion (sufficient similarities and no unexplainable differences), 337
  comparison microscope, *154*
  definition, 319, 337, 341
  examiners, 348
  forensic microscopy, **148**
  known and unknown, 337
  photography, 339, *340*
  serial number restoration, 338–340, 341
tools of trade, 89–243
  detector dogs, 169–188
  digital evidence, computer forensics and investigation, 189–209
  forensic engineering, 211–243
  light and matter, 121–141
  microscopy, 143–168
  separating complex mixtures, 91–118
topcoat, 559, 572, 578
TopMatch-GS 3D Scanner, *333*
torn paper, 310–311, *311*
Total Station (digital mapping system), 51
toxicology, 535, 536, *537*
  ethyl alcohol, 543–544
toxic tort, 648–649
trabecular bone, 378
trace amino acids, 260
trace evidence, 192, 356, 360, 458, 560
  fire scenes, 619–620
  glass (case study), 608
  scientists, 54
  special packaging, 60
  textile fibers, 561–562
  Williams case, 581; *see also* polymers
tracing, 295, 297
trained final response, same as "final response", 171
tranquilizers, 543
transfer bloodstains, 443, *444*
transmission electron microscopy, 146, 162
transmission microscope, 166
transmitted light microscopy, 146, 151–152
transmitted light system, 165
Transportation Security Administration, 12
transverse waves, 122, 126, *126*, 137
trial consultants, 667, 681
trier of fact, 644–645–648, 650, 653, 657, 673, 674
  definition, 643
trinitrotoluene (TNT), 628, *628*
  chemical structure, *627*
trinocular microscope, 146, 150, 153, 154, 156
Tsarnaev, Dzhokhar, 636–638
Tsarnaev, Tamerlan, 636–638
turbinates, 171, 174, 176
23andMe, 478, 482
twists, *324*, 341
  definition, 319
  direction and angle, 323, *323*
Tylenol®, 523
typewriters, *306*, 306, 314

U

ulna, 255, *256*
ulnar loop, 254, *255*, 256, 264, 265
ultraviolet light, 111–112, 129–130, *130*, 138, 160, *160*, 161, 299, *301*, 305
  best absorbers, 131, *131*
  fingerprint residues, 257
  probes of DNA, 466
ultraviolet light detector, 60
ultraviolet light resistance, 572
ultraviolet radiation, 122, 141
ultraviolet spectra, 132
  heroin, 132, *133*
ultraviolet spectrophotometry, 131–132, *133*, 134
ultraviolet waves, 124–125, *125*
unidentified subject (UNSUB), 665, 666
  profiling, 668–673
  profiling (psychopathology, personality, criminal history), 668–669

uniqueness, 73, 74, 76–79, 81, 133, 136, 138, 251, 269, 291, 426
United Kingdom, 6, 17, 25, 38, 658, 667–668
United States, 6, 8
United States versus David, 196
universities, 28, 30–31, 35, 409, 537
University of California
  Berkeley, 8, 15
  Irvine, 35
university degree courses (forensic science), 17–18
  accreditation process, 18–19
University of Leicester, 15
University of Virginia, 35
unknown evidence, 56, 71–72, 74, 75–79, *79*, 81, 123, 269
  definition, 69
unknown materials, identification, 136
urban forensic entomology, definition, 403
urine, 489, 536, 541, 544–546, 551, 552
urine samples, 360
  drug detection, 500
Utah Supreme Court, 426

V

vacuum, 123, *623*
vaginal secretions, 427, 436, 438, 447
vaginal swabs, 58, 474
valence electrons, 131, 132
Van Cuylenborg, Tanya, 478
vapor phase, *104*
variable number of tandem repeats (VNTRs), 466, *467*
vegetable oil, same RI as borosilicate, 598, *599*
vehicle fires, 615, 616, *617*
vehicle lights, hot shock, *234*, 234
vehicle remains, bombing scenes, 632
vehicular collisions and physics, 224–225, *225*
ventricular fibrillation, 364
Verbruggen, H, 176, 188
Vericom VC3000, *228*
Vericom VC4000 Brake Test Computer, 228
vertical blood drops, 443, *444*, **446**
victim risk, 671
video, 52, 71, 226, 388, 428
Vidocq, E, 14
viewing tube, 150–151, 152
violent deaths, 368
  classification, 360–364
  patterns of injury
    chemical, 363–364
    electrical, 364
    mechanical, 361–362
    thermal, 364
Virginia, 57
Virginia Bureau of Forensic Sciences, 509
virtual image (microscopy), 148, *149*
  definition, 146
viruses (computer type), 203
viscous, definition, 425
visible light, 122, 125, 129, 130, 138, 160
  definition, 123
  dual nature, 124
  spectra, 132
visible microspectrophotometry
  paint chips, 577
  paint layers, 574
visible spectrophotometry, 131–132, 134
voiceprints, 56
voir dire (jury selection), 655, 660, 665, 667, 681
volatile liquids, 101
Vollmer, August, 14
voluntary false confessions, 665, 678
V-pattern burning, 620
Vucetich, Juan, 14, 252

W

Washington, 12, *13*, 46, 643
wasps, 12, 412, 417
water, 327, 612, 614
  pH exactly seven, 99
  polarity, 97, *98*
water molecule, vibrations, 132, *134*
wave motion, types (longitudinal and transverse), 125
wavelength (λ), *124*, 124–131, 134, 137–138, 160, 260, 596, 599, *602*, 603
  definition, 123
waves, properties, 125–128
weapons, 55, 71, 74
Webster, John, 9
Weinberger baby kidnapping, 315–316, *316*
wet paint, evidence packaging, 60
wheelbase measurements, 275
whiskey, 543, 548
white blood cells (leukocytes), 427, *428*, 447
  polymorphic enzymes, 466
whorls, 264, 265
  definition, 249
  Henry classification system using, 263, **263**
Widmark curve, *547*, 547, 549
Williams, Johnny, 457–458
Williams, Wayne Bertram, 581
Will West affair (Kansas, 1903), 251
wind, 416
wine glass fingerprints, 72–73, 75–76
wire cutters, 250, 319, 337, 341
wireless and handheld devices, 198–200
wisdom teeth, 391
Wise, Modine, 504
withdrawal syndrome, 509, 513, 535, 543
witness deposition, 644
witness identification, 53
witnesses, 204
  "expert" versus "lay", 16–17
Witt Associates, 222
Wizard of Oz, 523
wobble weed, 509, 521
Wolf Technical Services, 222
women, 6, 381, 399–400, 676
wooded areas, 51
wool, **562**
  presence of medulla, *563*
working distance (microscopy), 146, 156, 166
World Trade Center, 376
wound ballistics, 321
wrongful convictions, 457–458

X

X-ray analyzer, 163
X-rays, 115, 122–126 *passim*, 386, 387–388, 391–393
xenon lamp, 129

Y

Y-STRs, 474
  definition, 457
yaw, definition, 213
yaw marks, 226, *230*
  definition, 228–229
  measurement, 230
Ydstie, John, 482
yellow jackets, 414, 417
YouTube, 481–482
  arson videos, 635

Z

Zaner-Bloser method, 289, 291
zone method (searching crime scene), 49, *49*
Zuckerberg, Mark, 208–209, *209*
zygote, *462*